



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2011 with funding from
University of Toronto

LIBRARY

831

Early English Text Society.

STATEMENT FOR 1887 and 1888.

WITH this goes out to Members the third Text of the *Original Series* for 1886,

86. *The Prose Lives of Women Saints*, edited from the unique MS. ab. 1610 A.D., by Dr. Carl Horstmann, with a Glossarial and general Index by Mr. W. M. Wood.

The first and main Text of the *Extra Series* for 1886,

- XLVII. *The Wars of Alexander*, edited by the Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., Litt. Doc.,

is nearly ready, and should be issued in March.

For the two Texts of the Original Series for 1887, the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints* from the Laud MS., the earliest, and the *Life of St. Werburghe*, englisht A.D. 1513, and printed by Pynson in 1521, both edited by Dr. Carl Horstmann, will be in type by the end of March, and the volumes will no doubt be issued by May, if not before.

The *Original Series* Texts for 1888 will probably be two of these :

- Cursor Mundi*, Part VI, with Preface by the Rev. Dr. Richard Morris, and Essays by Dr. Haenisch and Dr. Hupe, and a Glossary by Dr. Kaluza.

- The *Festiall* by John Mirk, Part I, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Carl Horstmann.

Lyndesay's Works, Part VI and last, edited by Mr. W. H. Utley.

The Lay Folks' Catechism, edited by the late Canon Simmons, and Frederic D. Matthew.

In the *Extra Series* the second Text for 1886, and the two for 1887 will be those three of the following Parts, all now at press, which are ready first:—

Torrent of Portyngale, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Adam.

Bp. Fisher's English Works, Part II, with his *Life and Letters*, edited by the Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A.

Charlemagne Romances: Huon of Bordeaux, by Lord Berners, ab. 1532 A.D., edited by Sidney L. Lee, B.A. Part IV.

Bullein's Treatise against the Feuer Pestilence, 1573, edited by A. H. Bullen, B.A., and Mark Bullen.

Sir Bevis of Hamtoun, edited from the Auchinleck and other MSS., by Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., Part II.

Caxton's Book of the Ordre of Chyualry or Knyghthode (A.D. 1484), with Loutfut's Scotch copy of it, from the Harl. MS. 6149.

The fourth and fifth of the last-named Texts which are first ready will form the issue of the Extra Series for 1888, unless Mr. A. J. Ellis's fifth and last Part of his great work on *Early English Pronunciation*, that on our Dialects, is in time to be substituted for one of them. He hopes to send it to press this year.

A try will be made to get out one or two Reprints in 1887. Donations for them will be welcome. Mr. Mortimer Harris has kindly started our *Jubilee Reprint Fund* with a cheque for two guineas. Mr. M. T. Culley of Coupland Castle will send a Letter of Appeal to every Member for support. All gifts should be paid to the Honorary Secretary, Mr. W. A. Dalziel, 67 Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, under the

editorship of Dr. Carl Horstmann. The Society cannot leave out any of them, even though some are dull. In many will be found interesting incidental details of our forefathers' social state, and all are worthful for the history of our language. The Lives may be lookt on as the religious romances or story-books of their period.

The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS, the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 86, with additions, and in right order. The differences between the foundation MS., the Laud, and its followers, is so great, that, to prevent quite unwieldy collations, Dr. Horstmann decided that the Laud MS. must be printed alone, as the first of the Series of Saints' Lives. The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes. The Glossary to the whole set, the discussion of the sources, and of the relation of the MSS. to one another, &c., will be put in a final volume.

When the Saints' Lives are complete, Trevisa's englising of *Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking.

F. J. FURNIVALL.

March 11, 1887.

The Wars of Alexander.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XLVII.

1886.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Wars of Alexander:

AN

ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE

TRANSLATED CHIEFLY FROM THE

HISTORIA ALEXANDRI MAGNI DE PRELIIS.

RE-EDITED FROM MS. ASHMOLE 44, IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD,
AND MS. D. 4. 12, IN THE LIBRARY OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN:

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, LITT.D., LL.D.,

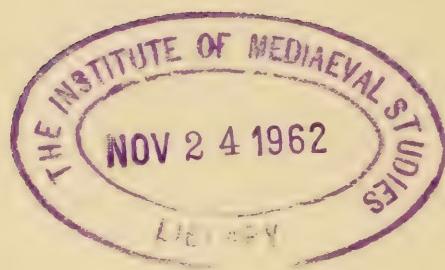
ELEBRINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON,
AND FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.



LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXVI.



23501

Extra Series,
XLVII.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION.	
§ 1. THE three fragments in alliterative verse of the Romance of Alexander. § 2. Fragments A and B belong to the same version : Fragment C is here printed. § 3. Stevenson's edition of MS. Ashmole 44. § 4. A gap in the story in that MS.; supplied from the Dublin MS. § 5. Plan of the present edition. § 6. Numbering of the lines. § 7. Description of MS. Ashmole 44; discussion of the dialect. § 8. Description of the Dublin MS. D. 4. 12; part 1: Piers the Plowman. § 9. Part 2: Alexander, and other contents. § 10. Dialect of the poem further discussed. § 11. Both MSS. printed in full; results of comparing them. § 12. Method adopted by the translator of the Latin text. § 13. Conjectures as to the date and dialect of the present version. The Glossarial Index	ix

THE WARS OF ALEXANDER.

PASSUS I. Introduction. Anectanabus, king of Egypt, is master of astronomy and magic. Egypt is invaded by Artaxerxes. By making ships of wax, Anectanabus discovers that his fleet is being defeated. He disguises himself, and flees to Macedonia. The god Serapis prophesies the future defeat of the Persians. The Egyptians raise to Anectanabus an image of black stone ...	1
PASSUS II. During the absence of Philip, Anectanabus visits queen Olympias, and tells her that the god Ammon will appear to her in a dream. Anectanabus visits Olympias by night in the form of a dragon. He causes Philip to see in a dream his queen embraced by Ammon. A seer tells Philip that the queen's child will conquer the world. He returns to Macedon, where Anectanabus appears in a dragon's form at a feast. Omen of the bird who laid an egg in Philip's lap	7
PASSUS III. Prodigies at the birth of Alexander. His appearance described. His youth, how passed. Anectanabus predicts his own death at the hands of his own son. The prediction is accomplished when Alexander causes his death by drowning. Olympias mourns over the fate of Anectanabus	17
PASSUS IV. A wild carnivorous horse is brought to Philip. Alexander tames him, and sets out on his first expedition against Nicholas, king of Peloponnesus. Nicholas insults Alexander, who slays him, and returns home. Philip takes a second wife, named Cleopatra. Alexander interferes, and Philip is reconciled to Olympias	27
PASSUS V. Darius demands tribute from Philip, which Alexander refuses. Pausanias rebels against Philip, and wounds him mortally. Alexander appears, slays Pausanias, and buries Philip.	

	PAGE
Accession of Alexander, who addresses his army, and chooses old and experienced soldiers to accompany him. He conquers Chalcedon, Italy, and Africa. He shoots a huge hart, and offers sacrifice to Ammon. He sees Serapis in a dream, who prophesies that he will be invincible. He builds Alexandria	42
PASSUS VI. Alexander finds the black image of his father Anec-tanabus. He attacks Tyre, but meets with a stout resistance. The bishop of Jerusalem refuses him aid. The 'foray of Gaders.' ¹ Deeds of Meleager and Sampson. Balaan of Tyre destroys Alexander's siege-works. Alexander renews them, assaults and takes Tyre, and kills Balaan	58
PASSUS VII. Alexander approaches Jerusalem. Jaudas the bishop, and the inhabitants, receive him with great honour. Alexander kneels to God, and visits Solomon's temple. The prophecy of Daniel. Alexander grants Jaudas a boon. Darius scornfully sends Alexander three playthings	78
PASSUS VIII. Darius sends Alexander an insulting letter. Alexander likens him to a yelping cur that cannot bite, and sends him a defiant letter in return. Darius says Alexander wants a whipping, and again reproves him. The token of the glove full of seeds. Olympias falls ill, and Alexander determines to return to her	96
PASSUS IX. Alexander sends Darius a purse full of pepper. He defeats Amonta in a three-days' battle, who flees to Darius. Alexander goes to Sicily and Phrygia, and praises Homer. Returning to Macedonia, he finds his mother healed. He sets out for Persia, takes Abandra, comes to the Water of Winter, and advances to Thebes, which is taken and burnt. The oracle as to its rebuilding. Clytomachus fulfils it, and rebuilds the city	114
PASSUS X. Alexander sends a summons to Athens. Æschylus counsels the Athenians to resist him, but Demosthenes persuades them to submit. Alexander forgives the Athenians. The Spartans resist him, but in vain. Darius is alarmed. Alexander's parable of the wolf and the sheep. He is healed of a fever by Philip the physician. He crosses the Euphrates, destroying the bridges behind him	132
PASSUS XI. Darius collects an army. Great battle. A Persian wounds Alexander, who pardons him. Darius flees. Alexander seizes Darius' treasure, wife, and children. Darius writes to Alexander, warning him against over-confidence. Alexander replies. Porus is unable to help Darius. Rodogars, mother of Darius, advises him to submit. Lament of Darius	152
PASSUS XII. Alexander goes to Susa, and bids his men cut branches and carry them. Ammon tells Alexander to visit the camp of Darius. He crosses the river Granton alone, visits the hostile camp, and abstracts three gold cups from the tables. Anepo recognises him, and gives the alarm. He seizes a torch, mounts his horse, and flees, crossing the Granton on the ice, and escaping safely	166

¹ 'Gadres,' says M. Paul Meyer, 'is Gaza;' not Kedesh, as conjectured in the note to l. 1193.

PASSUS XIII. Decisive battle of the Grantron (Granicus). Defeat and flight of Darius. He writes to Alexander, who bids him submit. The Greeks find the tomb of Ninus, and free some Persian prisoners. Darius sends to Porus for help. Two knights lay a plot against Darius; they attack him, and he falls	... 178
PASSUS XIV. Alexander comes to Susa, and finds Darius wounded. He laments over him. Their last conversation. Death of Darius, and accession of Alexander to the throne of Persia. Description of the throne of Darius. Proclamation by Alexander. He beheads the murderers of Darius, and weds Roxana	... 190
PASSUS XV. Porus defies Alexander, who returns the defiance. Porus assembles a great army, with unicorns, elephants, and scythed chariots. Alexander frightens the elephants by a stratagem. Porus takes to flight	... 206
PASSUS XVI. Alexander discovers the great wealth of India. Letter to him from the queen of the Amazons, and his reply. He makes a treaty with them	... 212
PASSUS XVII. Porus raises another army. Want of water. A knight offers water to Alexander, which he pours on the ground. The army comes to a castle in a river. It is assailed by scorpions, snakes, dragons, lions, boars, savages, mice, bats, and red birds. They advance to Bactria, and the country of the Seres. Single combat between Alexander and the gigantic Porus, who is slain	216
PASSUS XVIII. Alexander comes to the isle of Gymnosopists, who ask him for immortality, which he cannot give them. He comes to a dark desert, a hot river, and a dried lake. A monster slain. Elephants, bearded women, amphibious people, and rhinoceroses. Great storm of four winds. A cold valley, with sparks of fire. They arrive at the Ganges. Letter of Alexander to Dindimus the Brahman, with the parable of the lighted torch. Reply of Dindimus	... 223
PASSUS XIX. Reply of Dindimus continued. Description of the life of the Brahmans. Their moderation, contentment, abstinence, truthfulness, love of peace, life in caves, and dislike of play	... 231
PASSUS XX. The same continued. Dindimus accuses the Greeks, and condemns the stories concerning the Grecian gods, and their vain worship. The Greeks have as many gods as they have limbs, and each god presides over a limb. Dindimus threatens the Greeks with future torment	... 235
PASSUS XXI. Alexander reproves Dindimus, and accuses the Brahmans, whom he condemns as miserable and foolish. Dindimus replies, declaring that the Brahmans wisely despise gold and riches. Alexander replies, and calls them wretched prisoners. He rears a pillar of marble, to mark the end of his march	... 241
PASSUS XXII. Alexander and his host leave the Ganges. They come to a wood full of giants, who are slain by them. An uncouth monster appears, and is caught and burnt. Alexander comes to the trees which wax and wane in a day. He and his host climb a huge mountain, and are attacked by dragons, dromedaries, and snakes. They are nine days in a dark valley. They encounter a basilisk, which Alexander destroys by a	

	PAGE
stratagem. Alexander ascends a cliff covered with diamonds, and arrives at the house of the Sun ...	245
PASSUS XXIII. Alexander finds in the temple a god reclining on a bed, who asks him if he wishes to learn his fate from the trees of the Sun and Moon. He replies in the affirmative, and, with two companions, is guided through a wood to a tree bare of leaves, on which sits a phœnix. The Sun-tree is like gold; the Moon-tree like silver. The Sun-tree prophesies that Alexander will not return home. The Moon-tree tells him he will die in twenty months. He bewails his fate, and returns to his host. He erects two pillars of marble ...	251
PASSUS XXIV. He comes to the Precious Land, wherein dwells queen Candace, who sends him presents. The wife of her son Candoil is stolen by the king of Bebrik. Candoil goes to Alexander for help, and is received by Ptolemy, who has been commanded to personate Alexander, who is himself disguised as Antiochus. The pretended 'Antiochus' rescues Candoil's wife, and goes with Candoil to visit Candace, who receives him with favour ...	257
PASSUS XXV. Candace calls Alexander by his true name, and tells him he is in the power of a woman. Rage of Alexander, who is pacified by Candace. Caratros, another son of Candace, says he must have Alexander's life. Candoil interferes, and the brothers quarrel. Alexander pacifies them, and all are reconciled. Candace dismisses Alexander. He consults an oracle, and asks Serapis to say by whose hand he will die. Serapis will not tell him. Alexander and his host come to the valley of crowned snakes, who kill some of his men. He mounts Bucephalus, and has a great fight with griffins. The host cross the river of reeds in barges. Account of a strange kind of sirens ...	264
PASSUS XXVI. Alexander encloses twenty-two kings, including Gog and Magog, within a mountain. He comes to the ocean at the end of the world, turns westward, and reaches the Red Sea. He ascends into the air in an iron car raised by four griffins. He descends into the sea in an air-tight glass vessel. The host encounter various strange beasts. Death of Bucephalus, who is buried in a costly tomb. Appearance of strange white birds. Alexander conquers Babylon. He writes home to his mother and Aristotle ...	270
PASSUS XXVII. Description of the great throne in Babylon, inscribed with the names of all the countries conquered by Alexander. [End of the poem] ...	275
THE STORY CONTINUED. Epitome of the remainder of the story, taken from the Historia de Prelis ...	276
THE STORY OF ALEXANDER: A prose fragment from MS. Dublin D. 4. 12 ...	279
NOTES ...	285
Notes on the "Story of Alexander" ...	317
Glossarial Index, and Index of Names ...	319

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Of the various Middle-English prose and verse translations of the Romance of Alexander the Great, only those which are in alliterative verse will be here discussed. As to these, I have already explained, in my Preface to "Alexander and Dindimus," that there are *three* such poems, all fragmentary, which I denote by the letters A, B, and C. These poems are as follows :

A. A fragment preserved in MS. Greaves 60, in the Bodleian Library, beginning—"Yee þat lengen in londe · Lordes and ooþer." This was edited by me for the E. E. T. S. in 1867, being printed in the same volume with William of Palerne, pp. 177—218. It has never been printed elsewhere.

B. A fragment preserved in MS. Bodley 264, beginning—"Whan þis weith at his wil · weduring hadde." This was edited by Mr. Stevenson for the Roxburghe Club in 1849, and re-edited by me, with numerous corrections, &c., for the E. E. T. S. in 1878, with the title "Alexander and Dindimus."

C. A fragment preserved in MS. Ashmole 44, in the Bodleian Library, of which a portion is also found in MS. Dublin D. 4. 12. It begins—"When folk ere festid & fed · fayñ wald þai here," and was also printed in 1849 by Mr. Stevenson, and in the same volume as the last, but from the Ashmole MS. only, without any consultation of the Dublin MS. This fragment C is the one which is re-edited in the present volume, and to which, for the sake of distinction, I have given the title of "The Wars of Alexander," because it follows the Latin text entitled "Historia Alexandri Magni regis Macedonie *de preliis*" more closely than either A or B does.

§ 2. With respect to fragments A and B, I must refer the reader to the Preface to "Alexander and Dindimus" for further information. It is sufficient to say here that Dr. Trautmann has shewn, from

PP
1119
E5
v. 47

internal evidence, that these two fragments are by the same author, and belong to a poem which, when complete, must have been of very great length. Fragment C, here edited, is wholly independent of these, in the sense that it was written by a different translater. Whatever it has in common with them is due to their common source. Accordingly, the remarks below refer to fragment C exclusively.

§ 3. Of the two MSS. containing this fragment C, viz. MSS. Ashmole 44, and Dublin D. 4. 12—which will henceforth be called simply the Ashmole and Dublin MSS.—the former is the more important, partly because it contains a much larger portion of the story, and partly because it is more correctly written. It was printed by Mr. Stevenson in full, and has thus become known, being frequently cited by Dr. Morris and other writers, whilst it has also been made use of by Mätzner and Stratmann in their Middle-English Dictionaries. Mr. Stevenson's text (like that of his edition of fragment B) is by no means free from faults, and was doubtless printed from an imperfect transcript, without due collation of the proof-sheets with the MS. itself.¹ Thus in l. 15, he prints “*forwart*” for “*forwith*,” and “*ettitlis*” for “*etillis*,” though the latter word is rightly given in the Glossary. In l. 16, he has “*oȝefullest*” for “*aȝefullest*,” and so on. In some cases the errors are still more serious; as in l. 70, where “*it semyd*” is turned into “*or myd*,” and in l. 417, where “*sweuyn*” appears as “*sodeyn*.” Nevertheless, the transcription was, in general, well made, and a little more caution would have given us a faithful text throughout, excepting in such minute particulars as the use of *p* for *th*, & for *and*, and the mode of expressing contractions. The chief defects of the edition, after all, are due to the fact that the Dublin MS. was not consulted. Mr. Stevenson does, indeed, mention it, but says that he only knew of it through the kindness of Sir F. Madden, who had made a note that it commenced with l. 678 of the Ashmole text, and ended with l. 3426.²

¹ Such a collation would have detected the omission of two whole lines in the transcript, viz. 4002* and 4733.

² L. 3425 of the present edition. As it is always my endeavour to keep to old numberings of lines, for the sake of reference, I must explain how this

§ 4. It is surprising to find that Mr. Stevenson edited the Ashmole text without ever discovering that there is a great gap in the story. He prints l. 723, which is the first line on leaf 13 of the Ashmole MS. (as now numbered), as if it immediately followed l. 722, which is the last line on the back of fol. 12. Yet l. 722 forms a part of a speech of Anectanabus, and l. 723 a part of a speech of Alexander; and, according to the Ashmole MS., Anectanabus drops out of the romance in the middle of uttering a sentence, and is no more heard of, whilst a king of Peloponnesus, by name Sir Nicholas, jumps into the story without any introduction, and is at once found in the midst of an angry parley with Alexander. A moderate attention to the progress of the story shews us at once, that the Ashmole MS. must, at this point, have lost one or more leaves, and we now know that it has, in fact, lost just *two* leaves, or 122 lines. The discovery of the precise state of the case was made by Mr. Hessels in 1874, after a careful examination of the Dublin MS., and comparison of it with Stevenson's edition. He found that the very passage required to fill up the gap occurs in full in that MS., which, notwithstanding its incompleteness at the beginning and end, supplies this very material contribution to the continuity of the story. Even now, the conclusion of the Romance is wanting, since the Ashmole MS. has lost a few leaves at the end also. After making this discovery, Mr. Hessels made a transcript of the entire MS., and kindly consented to assist me in editing the Romance. Owing to pressure of other work, he resigned to me the preparation of the Notes and Glossary, and expressed the wish that my name alone should appear upon the title-page; but so much of the work was done by us jointly, that it is best to describe more fully the method of editing adopted by us.

§ 5. In the first place, a collation of Stevenson's edition with the Ashmole MS. was made by Mr. George Parker; and, as that edition was printed without any punctuation, the punctuation was

difference arose. It was because it escaped my notice that l. 3028 in Stevenson is immediately followed by l. 3030; so that, after following his numbering for more than 3000 lines, I was thus, to my regret, thrown out. There are other slight differences further on, as explained at p. xiii, but the difference in the numbering never amounts to more than *one* line.

added by myself. Meanwhile, the Dublin MS. was transcribed by Mr. Hessels, and both texts, thus prepared, were sent to press, and printed in full. In general, the Ashmole text occupies the left-hand page, and the Dublin text the right-hand page ; but, throughout the first 21 pages and the last 71 pages, the Ashmole text occupies *both* pages, to save space. The word *Ashmole* or *Dublin* is printed at the top of every page, to prevent ambiguity. The gap in the Ashmole MS. is shewn by leaving a part of pp. 24 and 32 blank, as well as an entire blank on pp. 26, 28, and 30 ; and further on, a gap in the Dublin MS. is similarly shewn by leaving blank a part of pp. 197 and 201, and a blank on p. 199. Considering that the exact reproduction of the MSS. is, after all, the chief duty of editors, Mr. Hessels and myself have paid very close attention to this point. The proof-sheets were carefully compared with *both* MSS. by *both* of us separately, and we venture to think that the texts are faithfully reproduced in the minutest particular. Every tag and curl has been carefully watched, and notice is given in the foot-notes whenever a word is miswritten, or corrected, or supplied in the margin. The head-lines, side-notes, and Notes were prepared by me, and I accept the responsibility for them, but they have had the great advantage of revision by Mr. Hessels. As regards the Glossary, the shape in which it now appears is due to myself ; but it was chiefly prepared by Miss Wilkinson, who has kindly assisted me on other occasions (particularly in the glossaries to my selections from Chaucer), and was much augmented by Mr. Hessels, who added to it numerous words and forms, chiefly from the Dublin MS., and also underwent the great labour of verifying all the references, which will, we believe, be found to be correct throughout. The preparation of this Glossarial Index has occupied a long time, and has delayed the appearance of the edition for some years ; but, now that Dr. Murray's Dictionary is passing through the press, it seemed highly desirable to make the references as full as possible.¹ We also owe to Mr. Hessels the transcript of the very brief prose "Story of Alexander," which is

¹ Mr. Stevenson's Glossary, consisting of 12 pages, is rather a poor performance, and contains several false forms. Having, for example, printed "forwart" for "forwith" in l. 15, his Glossary has "*Forwart*, to promise."

here printed for the first time, from the Dublin MS., at pp. 279—283.

§ 6. One great defect, in nearly all copies of poems in alliterative metre, is caused by the liability of the scribe to lose his place, and to miss one or more lines here and there. The Ashmole MS. is the more carefully written of the two, but (in addition to the gap contained in the lines numbered 733* to 844*), it misses ten other lines. In order to avoid much deviation from Stevenson's numbering of the lines, these extra lines are here denoted by asterisks, and are called respectively, lines 1633*, 1766*, 1767*, 2168*, 2538*, 2724*, 2842*, 2980*, 3167*, and 3267*. The Dublin MS. (in addition to the gap caused by the loss of leaf 40, ll. 3296—3356) has lost 30 lines, viz. 911, 1227, 1333, 1334, 1745, 1749, 1804, 1822, 1874—7, 2012, 2120—5, 2143, 2317, 2318, 2328, 2373, 2380, 2386, 2440, 2519, 2721, and 2808. Unfortunately, I did not discover, till too late, that Stevenson's printer missed counting a line after l. 3028, so that from that point to l. 4733, the number of each line in this edition is one less than in his. Here Stevenson misses a line which I have supplied,¹ thus bringing the numbering right. Unluckily, his printer again missed counting a line after l. 4933, so that from this point to the end the number of each line in this edition is again one less than in his. My last line (5677) is the one formerly called 5678.² This will not give much trouble to readers who refer to this volume for words mentioned by Mätzner and Stratmann, but it is best to explain how the difference arose. An old numbering, even if faulty, should be adhered to, where possible, for the sake of convenience of reference. I shall describe the MSS. more particularly.

§ 7. Respecting the Ashmole MS. 44, there is not much to be said. Nothing is known of its history previously to its acquisition by Ashmole. Mr. Stevenson dates it, no doubt correctly, at "the middle of the fifteenth century," and says that "it is on paper, written by a hand coarse, rough, and irregular, without any attempt at neatness, and without much regard to accuracy. The errors into which the scribe has fallen seem to indicate, in some instances, that

¹ Stevenson also misses a line after l. 4002, but I have called it l. 4002*.

² See also note 1 on p. 56, explaining why Stevenson's l. 1098 disappears.

he was unable to read correctly the copy which he had before him, while others would appear to shew that he wrote from dictation." I have not observed any passages of the latter kind; and I think that the above description, though fairly indicating the general condition of the MS., errs somewhat on the side of severity. I should say that the scribe aimed at being both neat and regular, though his success in attaining to these is not of the highest order. Still it is a tolerably good MS., and I have seen many that are worse. No doubt it abounds with singular errors, but the number of these has been needlessly augmented in the former edition, as if it were the editor who, in just a few instances, "was unable to read correctly the copy which he had before him;"¹ though the general carefulness and correctness of that edition may be admitted. The MS. contains at present 97 leaves, wholly occupied with the Romance, and is imperfect at the end. Each leaf contains about 60 lines, sometimes more, and sometimes less; and we thus see that two leaves are missing after leaf 12, since the missing portion amounts to 122 lines; but the following leaf is numbered 13, as the gap in the MS. seems never to have been noticed. The MS. gives us no further information of any kind, so that we are entirely thrown back upon internal evidence. We may perhaps date it about 1450, as already suggested, and I think we may also say that it was probably written in the north of England. With reference to this question of locality, Mr. Stevenson ventures to "hazard the conjecture that this romance was written in one of the north-eastern counties of the midland division of England, some district in which the Anglian dialect had originally prevailed, untinctured, however, by those peculiarities of vocabulary and construction which characterize the language of ancient Northumbria." I would venture to say, on the contrary, that the Northumbrian character of the dialect is very strongly marked. If we apply, for instance, such dialectal tests as are given in the Introduction to Morris and Skeat's Specimens of

¹ Examples: "forwart" for "forwith," 15; "sodeyn" for "sweuyn," 417; "Anec" for "anes," 478; "Anec analey" (*sic*) for "Anecanabus," scribal error for "Anectanabus," 487; "sey hevyn" for "seuyn heuyns," 1528; "to within" omitted, 1634; "odde" for "ald," 2176; "twine" for "turne," 2276; "chose" for "tholid," 2329; "herde" for "parde," 2707.

English, Part II., we easily find, in the Ashmole text, all the marks of the Northumbrian dialect. It may suffice to instance the use of the suffix *-is* in the first person singular of the indicative mood, as in *I ettillis* (15); the use of *-id* or *-yd* for all persons of the preterite indicative of weak verbs, as *I neuenyd* (76), *he hauntid* (16), *þai lerid* (36); the frequent¹ loss of *e* in the infinitive mood or the gerund, as in *rehers* (21), *to knaw* (54), *flay* (110); the use of *sall* for *shall* (21), and of *suld* for *sholde* (100); present participles in *-and*, as *feȝtand* (91), *comand*, *keruand* (63); the omission of *i-* or *y-* as a prefix to past participles, as in *fourmed* (3); the preservation of the final *-en* or *-yn* of past participles of strong verbs, as in *comyn* (85), *coruen* (129); the use of *þir* for *these* (262); the use of *scho* for *she* (267); the use of *thai*, *thair*, and *thaim* (very common); the use of *hethen* for *hence* (see Glossary); *fra* for *from* (139); *at* for *that* (161); &c. But it will be convenient to defer any further discussion of the dialect till after the Dublin MS. has been described.

§ 8. The Dublin MS. D. 4. 12 contains not only a portion of Alexander, but also part of a copy of the A-text of Piers the Plowman, and has already been partially described in a foot-note to my edition of Piers Plowman (E. E. T. S.), part ii. p. vi; and again, in my Notes to P. Plowman, p. 836. But I take the present opportunity of giving a more minute account of it. It is a paper MS., the size of each page being about $8\frac{3}{4}$ inches by $5\frac{3}{4}$, and each page containing about 30 lines or rather more. The first 26 leaves contain an imperfect copy of the A-text of Piers Plowman, the contents of which have been turned by the scribe into a Northumbrian dialect. This copy shews a close connection with the curious copy in the library of University College, Oxford, denoted in my collation of the A-text by the letter U, as the following selected readings from it will shew.

PROLOGUE, l. 1. *whon—sonne*] as I south went. 2. *into*] in.
A—were] as I a scheepe were. 4. *Wende—wydene*] I went wide. 9. *leonede*] lened me. 14. *imaket*] entyred (*sic*).
32. *hit—to*] it is sene in.

¹ The scribes often write an idle final *e* where it was not meant to be sounded; this is common, for example, in the MSS. of Barbour's Bruce.

After l. 54 of the Prologue it inserts 4 lines, though they do not occur in U. These are :—

Persons with þair procurases¹ permutyne þair chirches,¹
With al þe besynes of þair body þe better to haue.
Vicars on fele halue fandyn þam to done,
Lede[r]es þai ben of lovedays & with þe lawe mellyth.

The two last lines occur also in MS. Rawlinson Poet. 137, which contains an A-text of P. Plowman of the same character.

After l. 83 of the Prologue there are two more extra lines, also not found in MS. U. These are :—

þan come þer a king knyghtis hym led,
Conciens & þe king into þe halle went.

The former of these agrees with B. prol. 112.

After l. 95 of the Prologue we find another insertion of 10 lines, also not in MS. U ; they resemble B. prol. 92—99, C. i. 90—94, and are as follows :—

Sum seruis þe kyng & hys syluer tellis
Of wardis & of wardmutis of wayues & straves.
Some sittis as synescallis & seruis other lordez,
And syttis þer apon þair acounte þe pure to distroy,
And haldis courtis in Cuntrie like men of law,
For to take vntrewly ayains conscience.
Ye suffre your parochyng[s] spyl & paire for euir,
Holy kyrke ye distroy & þat is gret rewth.
þe serue god vn-dwelly (*sic*) it is dred at þe last
þat crist in hys consistory of þow wol curse mony.

Line 100 of the Prologue runs thus :—

Talyours & tynkelers & tollers both.

In Passus I, the following remarkable readings are worthy of notice.

Instead of ll. 39 and 40, we find—

To shend þi sory saule be war with þair wyles.
For l. 93—And ryde rapely to rensake þe realmes abowte.
For l. 137—And in plente of pes preche þou it ofte.

The difficult word *a-liri* (A. vii. 115) appears as *of-lery*, shewing the nature of the compound. On fol. 6 of the MS. we find that Pass. i. 184 is immediately followed by Pass. vii. 71, thus shewing

^{1—1} Not ‘prouianses’ and ‘cherches,’ as printed in Pref. to Text B, p. vi, note.

a transposition of the subject-matter closely resembling that in MS. U (see Pref. to text A. p. xx). On the back of fol. 8 is another transposition, where A. vii. 216 is immediately followed by A. i. 182 (over again), whence the text is continuous down to A. vii. 45. Thus A. i. 182-4 occurs twice over, and the order of the subject-matter is: A. prol. 1—i. 184; vii. 71—216; i. 182—vii. 45. On fol. 13 occurs the passage printed in the Notes to P. Plowman, p. 836. The text ceases at A. vii. 45, at the bottom of the back of leaf 26, the rest of the poem having been lost before it was bound up with the Alexander Romance, which has lost (probably) eleven leaves¹ at the beginning.

§ 9. With the Alexander Romance, the numbering of the folios recommences. Fol. 1 begins with l. 678 of the poem (see p. 23); and, most fortunately, just 45 lines *before* the gap of two leaves occurs in the other MS. It thus supplies the missing passage in lines 723*—844* (see pp. 25, 27, 29, 31, 33), and goes on without a break to the end of leaf 39 (l. 3295, p. 197). Here leaf 40 is lost, as shown by the blanks on pp. 197, 199, and 201 (lines 3296—3356). Leaf 41 is the last of the poem; at the end of which the poem comes to a sudden stop (l. 3425, p. 205), the rest having been torn away before the MS. was last bound up. It may here be remarked that the scribe is even more careless than the scribe of the Ashmole MS., and repeatedly misses lines, viz. 911, 1227, 1333, 1334, 1745, 1749, 1804, 1822, 1874-7, 2012, 2120-5, 2143, 2317-8, 2328, 2373, 2380, 2386, 2440, 2519, 2721, and 2808. Leaf 42 is bound in upside down, and has some names and numbers written upon it, evidently part of some accounts. Among the names mentioned are:—T. Hagirston, Ric. Hagirston, Magister Holborn, Ric. Barow, Joh. Watson de goswyk, Willelmus sanderson de bukton, Joh. halff de bolsden, . . . de ancroft, . . . de morpet. These obviously allude to a cluster of places lying in that northern extremity of the county of Northumberland, which is so oddly considered as forming a part of the county of Durham. In Pigot's County Atlas (1831) I here find *Haggerston*, *Goswick*, *Buckton*, and *Ancroft*, and (within Northum-

¹ The first 11 extant leaves contain 680 lines. The number of lines lost at the beginning is about 677.

berland proper) *Bosedon*, now Bowsden, *Howburn*, and much further south the well-known town of Morpeth. We are thus enabled to connect the MS., beyond any doubt, with the county of Northumberland.

On leaf 43 are various scribblings, amongst which occurs “*Deletatur de libro viuentium*,” which is quoted from P. Plowman, A. vii. 68, but does not occur in the body of the MS.; also—“*Omnibus omnia non mea sompnia dicere possum*”—“*Explicit liber Amen quod Cuthbertus Emeryson (?)*”—and other trivial remarks. On the back of leaf 43 is a tale in Latin, beginning—“[Nar]racio. Legitur in vita beati remegii quod quidem miles anglicus valde probus & in actibus nimis [MS. nimus] strenu[u]s ad diversa regna vadens propter acta militaria exercenda & in omnibus locis sive ubique locorum se viriliter gerens & victoriam optinens & triumphans demum Tediit laboris & reuersus est vt repatriaret ad propria propter (?) probitatem suam in sua patria enotescendam.” And then the story goes on to tell how this invincible English soldier, riding through a forest, lost his way, wandered about for two days, being half famished, and finally met a dwarf a cubit high, who demanded who he was. On describing himself as an invincible but starving English soldier, the dwarf took him to a hall and his horse to a stable, and provided for the wants of both. Before parting, the dwarf addressed him, saying, “As you claim to be invincible, you must now fight me or one still smaller than me;” whereupon the soldier consented to wrestle, and was thrown prostrate on the earth. And so the story ends, being nearly illegible near its conclusion.

Leaf 44 merely contains four words¹ scribbled to try the pen, but in the same hand as that which wrote out the Romance. The back of the leaf is blank.

Leaf 45 is blank on the front, but on the back begins the short prose story printed at pp. 279—283. This occupies the rest of leaf 45, the whole of leaf 46, and the front of leaf 47. On the back of leaf 47 are three lines of music and some scribbling; and here the MS. ends.

¹ They begin with ornamental initials, and are merely long words in alphabetical order, viz. *Annunciauerunt. Beneuelencia. Circumdederunt*; and an illegible word beginning with D.

On a fly-leaf at the beginning are some accounts scribbled in Latin, which commence thus :—“*Ludus specialis tentus apud Petyngton vndesimo die mensis septembris per (?) Magistrum Toma[m] castell priorem, R. Heryngton existente seneschallo anno domini Milesimo quingentesimo tercio,*” &c. This is interesting as containing an allusion to a play held at “Petyngton,” which may be the modern Pittington, at no great distance from Durham, where there is now a railway station; and as giving us the date 1503. This again associates the MS. with the North of England, and leads us to suppose that the main part of the MS. was written, as would also otherwise appear, towards the close of the fifteenth century.

§ 10. The Dublin MS., like the other, shews decided marks of a Northumbrian dialect, as seen in the use of *sall* (688), of the pres. part. in *-and*, as *syl-and* (698), of *-es* in the pres. pl. indic., as *draw-es* (706), of *-yn* in the pp. of strong verbs, as *knaw-yn* (719); &c. But the remarks prefixed to Dr. Morris's second edition (1869) of the Early English Alliterative Poems warn us how extremely difficult it is to separate the pure Northumbrian dialect from the Midland dialect, where it borders upon the Northumbrian; for the latter is often marked by the use of Northumbrian forms. We have, first of all, to consider which of the MSS. probably gives the dialect more correctly; and here I have very little hesitation in at once preferring the Ashmole MS., which ought certainly to be most considered as being at once the older, more correct, and more consistent MS. of the two. If we compare, e. g., lines 678—722 (pp. 22—25), we find that the Ashmole MS. steadily keeps to the Northumbrian forms where the Dublin MS. varies from them. Examples are:¹ A. *wald*, D. *wold* (690); A. *fra*, D. *from* (694); A. *waytis*, D. *watyn* (700); A. *mon*, D. *must* (707); A. *slike*, D. *suche* (711). And a further collation of parallel passages will amply confirm these results. We even find, though rarely, in MS. A. such a clear mark of the Northumbrian dialect as the use of *at* for *to* to denote the gerund; as in *at grete*, i. e. to weep (872), *at drede*, to dread (4294). It would take a prolonged examination to enable me to speak decisively on

¹ I here (and below) denote the Ashmole MS. by “A.” and the Dublin MS. by “D.”

this point; but I am inclined to think that the translation of the Alexander Romance here printed was originally made in a pure Northumbrian dialect, in some county lying between the Humber and the Tweed; and I think it will be found to exhibit this dialect in a purer form than any other unrimed alliterative poem now extant,¹ with the obvious exception of such as are in Lowland Scotch, viz. Dunbar's poem of the Twa Maryit Women and the Wedo, and the Prophecies in MS. Kk. 1. 5 in the University Library, printed in Bernardus de Cura rei familiaris, ed. Lumby, 1870 (E. E. T. S.).

§ 11. The method here adopted, of printing the two MSS. side by side, as far as they go, not only gives fuller information than could be shewn by a mere collation, but dispenses with a great deal of explanation and emendation. It will be found, repeatedly, that one MS. corrects the other; and the reader should compare them for himself. It is sufficient to point out a few obvious instances; there are other instances which require more thought, and some where the right reading is doubtful.

In D. 681, the alliteration fails; the line is corrupt, but is given correctly in A. The contrary takes place in l. 684. In l. 687, A. misses the necessary word *is*, which we have supplied. In A. 689, the spelling *werid* is due to the trilling of the *r*; the word meant is *werd*, i. e. weird, fate. In 692, D. misses *me*, supplied from A.; on the other hand, the reading *gane* in A. is false, as shown by the failure of alliteration; we must read *done*. In D. 710, read *bhynde* for *bylyue*. In 711, the reading *hym* (D.) is better than *he* (A.). The latter half of 714 is right in D., but wrong in A. In A. 717, we may read either *angirly* or *augirly*; but the latter is intended, as shewn by the spelling *awgardly* in D., and by comparing all the other passages; see *Augard*, *Augird*, and *Augirly* in the Glossary. We find, however, *angirly* elsewhere; see *Angrile* in the same. It is needless to multiply instances, as the comparison can so easily be made. It is also worth while to add here, that further help is sometimes to be obtained by consulting the *other* alliterative translations

¹ The Troy-book, as we have it, is West-Midland (pref. p. iv); so are the Alliterative Poems edited by Morris. The Morte Arthure abounds with Midland forms.

of the Romance, viz. fragment A (printed with William of Palerne) and fragment C (printed as Alexander and Dindimus). Of these, the former illustrates ll. 23—803*, and the latter ll. 4019—4714; as noted at p. 285. For further examples of this, see the Notes.

§ 12. We come now to consider how the translator has performed his task. He has given us but little of his own, the chief original passage being the first 22 lines, which are introductory. He has also divided his work into Passus, by way of affording intervals of rest, and sometimes adds a few lines of his own at the beginnings and ends of these, such as ll. 212, 213, 214, 523, 524, &c. At such points, we may particularly observe that he uses such expressions as *þe text me recordis* (214); *as says me the text* (741*, p. 27); *as þe buke sais* (881); *For all þe first [part] is in fittis* (3473). The most explicit passage is the following (ll. 3472-3):—

“*þe lattir ende of his lyfe · me list ȝow to tell.*
“*For all þe first is in fittis · & folowand the lettir.*”

Here he expressly tells us that he has already arranged the preceding part of the work in Passus, and that it was “following the letter,” i. e. a more or less literal translation from the “text” which was before him. It does not appear that he has adopted any single text exclusively, but the main part of the narrative follows, with tolerable fidelity, the Latin text known as the “Historia de Preliis.” Of this work, I fortunately possess an excellent black-letter copy, printed at Strassburg in 1489,¹ which has been of great help and service in making out the true sense of several passages. In order to shew how the translator has treated his original, I have quoted the whole of the first Chapter of this work in the note to l. 13, on p. 285. It answers precisely to the translator’s Primus Passus, ll. 23—211; lines 1—22 and 212, 213 being obviously additions to it. I have also, in the note to l. 722, quoted the whole of the Latin text answering to the two missing leaves in the Ashmole MS. But, in general, each Passus of the English version contains several chapters of the Latin text; thus Passus Secundus is equivalent to the second,

¹ In my Notes to Alexander, fragment A (printed with William of Palerne) and fragment B (Alexander and Dindimus), I have quoted a copy in the University Library, printed in 1490.

third, fourth, and fifth chapters of the Latin, and ends at the same point as the fifth chapter, lines 521-4 being additional; see note to l. 214, p. 289. All the more important elucidations of the English version, as obtained by help of the Latin text, are pointed out in the Notes. But it is necessary to add that the "Historia de Preliis" was not the sole text which our translater consulted, and it is tolerably clear that another source was the Latin version of the story of Alexander by Julius Valerius, as shewn in the Notes. Some expressions can be explained by help of the Latin text, called The Letter of Alexander to Aristotle (*Epistola Alexandri ad Aristotelem*). A copy of this is extant in MS. Cotton, Nero D. 8, fol. 169, and is printed in *Narratiunculæ Anglice Conscriptæ*, ed. Cockayne, 1861, pp. 51—62; see notes to lines 3782, 3926, 3932, 3944. For further information, I must refer the reader to my preface to William of Palerne, &c., pp. xxxiv and xxxvi, and the notes to the same, pp. 236—249; the preface to Alexander and Dindimus, and the notes to the same; and the notes to the present volume. The development of the Story of Alexander is a most difficult problem, and cannot be fully explained without long and patient research. An excellent book on the subject has just appeared, written by M. Paul Meyer, with the title "Alexandre le Grand dans la Littérature Française du Moyen Age," published at Paris in 1886. It is full of new information, drawn from manuscript sources, and is the more important because many of the MSS. are still inedited. I may here mention, for example, that M. Meyer tells us (p. 294) that the English rimed version of King Alysaunder, as printed in vol. i. of Weber's Metrical Romances, is chiefly taken from the inedited *Roman de Toute Chevalerie*, by Eustace of Kent.

It is proper to add that there are some words and phrases which point to the occasional use of sources which I have not found; cf. note to l. 5268. Both MSS. are often corrupt, and are merely poor copies of older MSS. The Dublin MS. is, usually, the more careless of the two, but occasionally corrects the other; and the fact that one of the MSS. is often correct where the other is obviously wrong, is not a little curious. As regards proper names, the misspellings are often of the most extraordinary character, and it is useless to guess

at them without at any rate consulting the chief Latin text; and even in that they frequently assume the most singular forms. In the English text, for example, the goddess Ceres becomes a god named *Serenon* (4510), Bacchus appears as *Bary* (4506), Hercules as *Arculious* (4068), and Cyrus as *Cusys* (3219).

§ 13. As to the date and dialect of the original composition, nothing is really known. We can only conjecture that the original was probably written in a pure Northumbrian dialect rather than in West-Midland (but even this may be wrong), and that the version belongs to the former half or to the middle of the fifteenth century. When the barrenness of this period is complained of, as is not unfrequently the case, we ought to remember that, in addition to the poems by known authors, it is probable that such anonymous poems as the *Morte Arthure*, the *Troy-book*, and the two versions¹ of *Alexander* belong to the same period, and compare favourably with the poems by Chaucer's successors. I suspect that the dates usually assigned to other alliterative poems are often too early; and that, for example, the date which I formerly suggested for the other fragments of the *Alexander Romance*, viz. 1340-50, should be placed later. At the same time, this is a point of extreme difficulty, as the MS. copies are all of later date than the period of the original compositions, and there is no available evidence by which we can correctly judge of the intervals to be assigned.

In the Glossarial Index, we have endeavoured to include every form that occurs in both the MSS., as well as to furnish a complete index of all the proper names. The poem seems to me to be of unusual difficulty. Many of the words could only be correctly explained by collating both MSS.; and others only by comparing the original Latin. Several forms are thus ascertained to be corrupt or inaccurate; and, in consequence, in some passages where there is but one MS. and no clearly corresponding passage in the original, it is very difficult to be quite certain that the correct sense has been given. We consequently offer the explanations for what they are worth; though they have cost a great expenditure of time and labour.

¹ The former is that epic of tremendous length, of which fragments A and B are short relics; and the latter is the version here printed.

ERRATA AND CORRIGENDA.

(The more important corrections are marked with an asterisk.)

- P. 9, l. 281. The stop after 'thrid' should be raised, like the rest.
- *P. 15, l. 477. *For the second þe, read na.* See note on p. 290.
- P. 18, l. 554. *Insert a hyphen in Thonere-thrastis.*
- l. 562. *The same in bale-fyre.*
- *P. 19, l. 580. *For schoutid read schontid.* See note on p. 290.
- P. 20, l. 606. *Read The tane, to breue [i. e. describe], &c.*
- l. 627. *Insert a comma after wele.*
- P. 29, l. 779*. Alter the slanting stroke to a raised full-stop, as in other lines.
- P. 32, l. 740. *Insert a comma after he; and transfer the marks of quotation so as to precede hdirward instead of &.*
- P. 37, l. 798. *Read þai [þar] wod.* See note on p. 293.
- *P. 48, l. 988. *Insert a hyphen in at-flee.* See *Atflee* in the Glossary, and in Murray's Dictionary.
- P. 50, ll. 1009, 1110. *Insert hyphens in topp-haris and here-wedis.* See note on p. 294.
- *P. 60, l. 1175. *For wayne read wayue.*
- P. 72, l. 1370. *Insert a comma after nere.*
- P. 91, l. 1650. *Insert a comma after &, and alter the stop after wald to a comma.* See note on p. 298.
- *P. 99, l. 1767*. *Insert a hyphen in ouer-sheet.* See note, p. 298.
- P. 101, footnotes 1 and 4. *The MS. has a stroke over the final n in eughen, dyden.*
- P. 109, footnote 1. *The MS. has a tag to the final letter of acoaunt.*
- P. 110, l. 1970. *For wella⁷ read wella⁸.*
- P. 124, footnote 1. *The MS. has a stroke over the final n in layn.*
- P. 132, fourth side-note. *For Alexander read Strasagoras.* See note to l. 2312, p. 302.
- P. 147, l. 2519. There should be a line of dots here, to shew that a line is omitted.
- *P. 164, l. 2811. *Insert [of] before my warke.*
- *P. 176, l. 2995. *Insert [in] after fetild, and add a semi-colon at the end of the line.* See the reading of the Dublin MS.
- P. 180, footnotes 4 and 8. *There is a stroke in the MS. over the n in the words ont and spilken.*
- P. 185, l. 3104. The stop at the end of the line should perhaps be a comma.
- *P. 204, l. 3426. *For wayne read wayue.*
- *P. 234, l. 4337. *For bewenes read beweuves.*
- P. 236, l. 4417. *Insert a comma after sottis.* See note on p. 311.
- *P. 241, l. 4590. *Delete the commas after þe and lede.*
- *P. 242, l. 4606. *Delete the comma at the end of the line.*
- l. 4620. *Insert a comma at the end of the line.*
- P. 243, l. 4640. *Delete the comma after tecches.* (See note, p. 312.)
- footnote 1. *The MS. has a stroke over the n in On.*
- P. 244, l. 4658. *Insert [in] after settis.*
- l. 4665. Alter the stop at the end to a comma.
- P. 247, fourth side-note. *Read—Alexander comes to trees full of fruit. (The trees of the Sun and Moon appear at l. 5003.)*
- P. 268, fifth side-note. *For The snakes read Some beasts.* See note to l. 5433, p. 315.
- l. 5428. *For wond read woud.* See *Woud* in the Glossary.
- *P. 329. 'Baisting' means 'abasement,' not 'boasting.' It is put for 'baising' (abasing), by confusion with 'baist' (abased). Cf. l. 466.
- N.B.—A few other suggestions for amending the text will be found in the Notes and Glossarial Index.

longs to go east & Abberation Removal
northern predominant - Scandinavia

1

[Romance of Alexander the Great.]

[MS. Ashmole 44; fol. 1.]

W Hen folk ere festid & fedl · fayn waldl þai here After meals,
Sum farand þingl efter fode · to fayn þare her[t], men like to hear a
Or þai ware fourmed on foldl · or þaire fadirs oþer. story.
Sum is leue to lythe · þe lesing of Sayntis, 4 Some like to hear
þat lete þer lifis be lorne · for oure lordis¹ sake ; legends of saints,
And sum has langing² of lufe · lays to herken, others lays of
How ledis for þaire lemmans · has langor enduredl. love,
Sum couettis & has comforth · to carpe & to lestyn 8
Of curtaissys of knyȝthode · of craftis of armys,
Of kyngis at has conquerid · & ouer-comyñ landis.
Sum of wirschip I-wis · slike as þam wyse lattis, others stories of
And sum of wanton werkis · þa þat ere wild-hedidl; kings and
Bot if þai wald on many wyse · a wondire ware it els ; conquerors.
For as þaire wittis ere with-in · so þer wiþ folowis.
And I forwith ȝow all · etwillis to schewe I will try and tell
Of ane Emperoure þe aȝefullest · þat euer armys hauntidl, you about the
þat was þe athill Alexsandire · as þe buke tellis, 17 most renowned
þat aȝte euyn as his awyñ · all the werd ouire. emperor
For he recouerd quills he regnyd · þe regions all clene,
And all rialme & þe riches · in-to þe rede est. 20
I saþ rehers, & ȝe wiþ, renkis · rekyn ȝour tongis,
A remnant of his rialte · & rist quen vs likis.

Read by
John...
16...
16...
16...

Read by
John...
16...
16...
16...

Read by
John...
16...
16...
16...

¶ Oute in þe erth of Egipt · enhabet ymquile In the land of
þe wysest wees of the werdl · as I in writh fyndl. 24 Egypt lived the
For þai þe mesure & þe mett · of all þe mulde couthe,
þe sise of all þe grete see · & of þe grym wawys ;

¹ MS. lordl = lordis perhaps.

They knew the
courses of the
stars,

[Fol. 1 b.]
and the signs.

All men heard of
their lore.

Their king was
Anectanabus.

He knew all the
japes of
geometry.

As he sat one day
on the daſs,
news came that
Artaxerxes, king
of Persia, had
invaded his land.

He fills a brazen
bowl with water,

and invokes the
spirits.

Of þe ordere of þat odde home · þat ouer þe aire hingis
Knew þe kynd, & þe curses · of þe clere sternys, 28
Of Articus the aghil · tre¹ airis & oþire

Of þe fold & of þe firmament · wele þe fete cuthe;
And Antarcticus also · þat all² apoñ turnys,
þe pasage of þe planettis · þe poyntis & þe sygnes. 32
þai ware þe kiddest of þat craft · knawyn in þaire tyme,
And þe sotellest vndere son · segis in þaire lyfe.
þus ware þai breued for þe best · as þe buke tellis;

All þai lerid of þat³ lare · þat it lere wald. 36
As wide as þe werd was · went worde of þaire teching,
Of sorsery & slike werkis · sleȝtis enogh.

And þe kyng of þat contre · was a clerke noble,
þe athelest ane of þe werd · & Anec was hatten. 40
He was wyse enoȝe · wirdis to reken,
When he þe heuyn beheld · of lede[s] opon lyfe;
þe iapis of al gemetri · gentilli he couth,
And wele as Aristotill · þe artis al sewyn. 44
þer preued neuer name his prik · for passing of witt,
Plato nor Piktgaras · ne Prektane him seluen.

Emang his duykis on a day · as he oñ dese syttis,
þañ was him bodword vnblith · broȝt to þe sale, 48
þat Artaxenses was armed · with þe men of his rewme,
þe proude king of Persy · to pase him agayñ.

þoȝe he þa sawis herd say · ȝit samyd he na princis,
Ne ost ordand he nane · of na kyd knyȝtis, 52
Bot airis euen furth him ane · & entirs his chambre,
To knew by his clergi · þe come of his faa.

He takis a Boll of bras · burneschid fuȝt clene,
And fuȝt he fillis it of the flode · at feȝt fra þe heuen.
On hiȝt in his a hand⁴ · haldis a wand, 57
And kenely be coniurisons · callis to him spritis.
In-to þis water as he waitis · was he ware sone

¹ So in MS.; read athille · thre. ² MS. repeats all.

³ MS. 'þat o,' but o is expuncted.

⁴ MS. hand hand, the latter underlined.

- Of his enmys in þat Element · ane endles nombre ; 60 He sees his
He saȝe þam in þe hiȝe see · sailand to-gedire,
[Fol. 2.]
Was neuer sene slike a some · vnder þe son bemys.
on the sea.
- Carrygis comand he knew · keruand þe ithis,
Dromonds dryfes ouer þe depe · with dukis & Erles, 64
Gales & grete schipis · fuȝt of grym wapens,
And fuȝt of breneid bernes · bargis a hundreth,
He beholds a
great navy.
- Of slik a naue is noy · to here or to teȝt,
For all þe largenes of lenth · at he luke myȝt, 68
Slik was þe multitude of mast · so mekil & so thike,
þat alȝ him þoȝt bot he treis · a hare wod it semyd.
The masts were
as thick as trees
in a wood.
- At þe enteris of Egipt · as Anec had beden,
Ware peris of his prouynce · & princes of his cytes, 72
Was comandid of þaire kyng · to kepe þa landis,
þat nane aproche it to paire · of Persy ne othire.
- þan was a wardaȝ ware · oute in þe wale stremys
One of his princes
sees the fleet
come,
- Of all þe naue & þe note · I neuenyd be-fore ; 76
Laȝt liȝtly his ledis · & leuys his warde,
Comes to courte to þe kyng · & oñ kneys fallis,
Anec bi his awyn name · he onane gretis,
Sais, "zare þe now zapely · or ȝild vp þi rewme ; 80
Artaxenses is at hand · & has ane ost reryd,
And resyn vp with alȝ his rewme · to ride vs agayȝ ;
For he him-self is oñ þe se · with siche a somme armedȝ,
þat any hathill vnder heueȝ · ware hardy to rekyn. 84 "Artaxerxes
comes with a
great navy;
- For þer is comyȝ with him knyȝt[es]¹ · of landis dyuerse,
Segis of many syde · oute of sere remys,
þe perseyns & a pupiȝ · þat parthy² is callidȝ,
Men of Mesepotayme · & of Mede bathe,
88 Persians and
Medes,
- Of Syre & of Sychim · a selle nounbre,
Of Capidos & Caldec · kene meñ of armes,
Feȝ feȝtand folke · þat Faire we caȝt,
Cappadocians
and Chaldeans,
[Fol. 2 b.]
- þe Arrabiens & all þa · [of] þat origyne, 92
Bernys out of Batary · batails arayedȝ,
And opire out of þe orient · many od hundrethe."
- and others of
the east."

¹ MS. knyȝt.² MS. panthy.

¶ þen Anec onane riȝt · efter þire wordis,

The king laughs. A lowde laȝter he loȝe · & to þe lede said, 96

"Hauē þou na care," quod þe kyng · "bot kene to þe
marche,

As I have demyd þe to do · & dred þou na ferryre;
For soth it is vnsemely¹ · slike sawis of a prynce.

I kan noȝt knaw at þou carpis · as a knyȝt suld, 100
Bot as a frek at ware ferid · & feynes riȝt nowe.

Ert þou noȝt hurtles & hale? · lat noȝt þi hert faile.

For vertu vailes noȝt aȝt · if þou avaied worthe, 103

Emang' þe multitude² of meñ · quare mane ere togeder,
Bot þer aboute as þai ere blend · with bignes of wiȝt.

If þai be folke bot a fa · oft tydis þam þe better.

Or elis wate þou noȝt wele · þe witles berne,

How it is comonly carpēd · in contries a-boute, 108

þat anelepy leoñ · þat ouer þe land rynnys,

Wiȝt make to fange to þe flȝt · & flay many hertiȝ?"

With þat þe segge³ all him selfe · silis to his chambre,

And in þe brasen boȝt · fuȝt [of] blak watere 112

He shapis him of shire wax · litiȝt schipis many,

And ȝapely ȝarkid in his hand · a ȝerd of a palme.

þen coñ he chater & enchant · with aȝt his chefe miȝtis,

A-vysid him in þe vessel · & was avaied sone, 116

How þe powere out of Persy · pellid doun his knyȝtis,

And how his land suld be lost · withouten lett mare.

When he was ware of þis wathe · how it worthe suld,

þan wendis he wiȝtly furth · & his wede changis, 120

Clede him aȝt as a clerke · & his croune shauys,

And with a bytand blade · he his bered voydis.

þen takis to him tresour · & trusses in baggis,

As many Besandis oñ his bake · as he bere miȝt, 124

And oþire necessari notis · as nedis to his craftis,

To sike salmary dangeȝt · as him self vyses.

He toke traimes him with · to tute in þe sternes,

¹ MS. vmsemely. ² MS. multitudo.

³ MS. 'gegge,' but the line is marked for correction.

He reproves the
prince, and
accuses him of
cowardice.

"Will not a lion
put to flight many
harts?"

He makes little
ships of wax,

and sees how the
Persians are
defeating his own
men.

[Fol. 3.]

Then he disguises
himself as a
clerk,

and takes with
him all things
that he requires.

Astralabus¹ algate · as his arte wald, 128

Quadrentis² coruen aH. of quyte / siluyre fuH quaynte,

Mustours & mekil quat · mare þen a littiH.

When he was graþed with his gere · a gladen he waytis,

And passis furþe at a Posterne · preualy alane, 132

He slips out at a posterne gate,

Furþe on his fete withouten fole · he passis his way,

Vn-wetandly to any wee · þat wont in his wanes.

þus airis he out of Egipte · & his erde leuys,

and leaves Egypt.

Fled for ferd of his fais · fere fra his kythis, 136

It was na bote him to bide · ne batih to ȝelde;

For all his kyngdome he knew · suld be kast vnder.

Fra þe partis of Persy · he past bot a littiH,

And euyn so þurȝe Ethyope · & þar him eft clethis, 140

AH his liche in lyn clæþe · for ledis suld trowe

He clothes himself as a prophet,

And all þe purple persayue · a prophete³ he were.

þen metis he furthe to Messadoñ · fuH vñ-mete gatis,

and goes to Macedonia.

And quen he come to þat kith · as þe chance tellis, 144

Oft with his instrumentis out · he openly deuynes,

And noþer hild he it ne hid · bot here qua sa likid.

Bot þan was methe⁴ for to mele · þurȝe men of his burȝ,

þat he by-hind him at hame · withoute hede leuyd. 148

[Fol. 3 b.]

Slik care kindils in his curte · quen þai þer kyng myssid,

His subjects miss him, and lament.

þat it ware tere any tonge · of þar tene to reken;

Princes of his palas · preses in-to chambre,

To laite þar lord at was lost · with latis vn-blythe; 152

Kairis in-to closettis · knyȝtis & Erlis,

Knights and earls seek their king.

Sekand þar souerayñ · with many salt terys;

Barons & bachelors · balefully gretis,

Swiers swemyle · swouned ladys, 156

And many was þe bald berne · at banned þar quile,

þat euer he dured þat day · vndede opon erthe.

Bot quen þai wist he was went · & wald noȝt be foun,

Finding he is gone,

Couth þai na bote þan ebland · how best for to wirke,

Bot silis to ser Sirraphis · at sittis in his trone, 161

they ask counsel

¹ MS. Astralalus.

² MS. In adrentes.

³ MS. proplete.

⁴ or meche.

of Serapis their god.

Serapis says,
"Your king is gone."

He knew the Persians would conquer.

[Fol. 4.]

Artaxerxes will come and take the kingdom.

But cease from your sorrow.

Your king will yet avenge you,

and regain the kingdom."

They raise an image of black stone to Anectanabus.

*oylet
other*

þat was þar god alþire-graythist; on þe ground sameyn
Him þai supplyed & soȝt · & him ensence castis,
Honourd him with offyrings · & el kend him fayre, 164

þat he suld say þam þe sothe · & sorely þam teche
Queder þaire kyng was becōmen · at þar care kyndils.
þan sayd Syraphis him selfe · he sayd þam þir wordis: *Nost. Sem.*
"A nec, ȝour athill kyng · is out of his awyn land, 168

For Artaxenses aȝe / is aH him ane foundid, *as by her wend*
þe proude kyng of Persee · þut passes vs a-gaynes.
FuH wele he wist, cr he went · quat suld worþe efter,
And aH þe fourme of þe fare · þat fah ȝow be-houys.
For aH þe erth of Egyp · fra end vñ-to othire 173

Bees conquirid & ouercomyn · clene alto-gedre.
þe puple out of Persee · is purvaid aH samen ;
þe kyng is comand fuH kene · with his kene ostis, 176
þat saH oure renkis aH rayme · & oure rewme bathe,
And we be aH at þare wiH · þus is wirdis schapen.
Sen it is sett to be soo · & slipe it ne may,
Ne schewidk to be na noþire schap · ne we to schount *ansid*
nouthire, 180

Bot gefe þaim vp þe girdiH · vs gaynes noȝt ellis.
Bot seses, seris, of ȝour syte · & soruȝes na mare ;
For certayn," quod Syraphis · "my-selfe I it knawe,
ȝour king saH in a noþire kithe · kast out his elde, 184

And come a-gayn eft ȝonge man · ȝit to his rewme.
þaH sall þat victoure ȝow venge · on ȝour vile fais,
And þe province of Persee · purely distruye, 187

And gett agayn his aȝyñ gronde · at he forgais nowe,
And ane of þe oddist Emperours · of þe werde worthe."
¶ When he þis talis had tald · þen tuke þai be-lyfe, *of to iste and*
And after A nec on-ane · a ne ymage gert make ; *gret*
þe buke sais, of blake stane · aH þe bode ouyre, 192
With corone & with conyschantis · as it a kynge were.
Quen it was perfite & piȝt · a place þai it wayted,
And stallid him in a stoute stede · & stiȝthed him faire.
Lordis lift him on loft · & lawe to him bowid, 196

In reuerence of þe riche kyng · at had þer rewme gydil.	
Quen he was semely vp set · with septour in hand,	At the feet of the image is written the prophecy of Serapis.
þen ledis at ware lettird · oñ lawe at his feet ¹	
AH þe sawis of þaire Syre · as Siraphis talð, 200	
þare gañ þai graithly þañ graue · in golden lettirs,	
AH þe wordis at he þaim werpid · of þaire ware kynge. <i>w. .</i>	
þare þai wrate þam I-wis · as þe buke tellis,	
Supposand þaim in sum tyme · for sothe to be knawen,	
And men to make of þañ mynd · euer-mare efter. 205	
Be þat, þaire enmes þar erde · was entird with-in,	The Persians attack them;
þe powere oute of Persee · with many proude ostes ;	
Bot of þar batails to brefe · it botis me na ferrire. 208	
For aH þai conquirid clene · þis eithe at þaire wiH,	[Fol. 4 b.]
And Anec ² is aH his ane · ferre of his awyñ landis,	and conquer.
With-in þe merris of Messedoyñ · þar na mañ him knewe.	
Bot will ȝe herken hende · now saH ȝe here 212	I will tell you more about Anectanabus.
How he kide him in þe courete · & quayntid him with ladis.	

¶ Secundus passus Alexandri.

S yre, it be-tid oñ a tyme · þe text me recordis,
þat þe mode kynge of Messedone · with mekiñ
nounbre,
þat was sire Philip þe fers · farne out of toune, 216 King Philip
For to feȝt with his fais · out of fere landis. leaves Macedon
Quen he was boune oute of burȝe · & his bake turned,
As tite as Anec him amed · out of his awyn kythe,
He paste vp to þe Palais · & preualy entirs, 220
þat he miȝt lend þare on loft · & luke on þe qwene.
Sone as him selfe was in þe sale · & saȝe hire with eȝe,
He beheld Olympadas · þat honourable lady ;
Hire bewte bitis in his brest · & his bodi thrillis, 224 And drifes thurȝe his depe hert · as he ware dart-
wondid.

¹ MS. fortés; cf. 'at his feete' in Alex. A. 570. ² MS. Anes.

þe lede lawid in hire lofe · as leme dose of gledis,
Put vp his hand to his hare · & heldid it bot littiH.

"Hail, qucen!"
he said.

"Haile, modi qwene of Messidoyne" · he maister-like
said^l ;

228

He did not call
her madam.

þare deyned him na daynte · 'madame' hire to caH,
Be-cause he knew him a kyng · he carpid oñ þis wyse.
For if he come as A clerke · with a croune schauyn,
And diȝt as a Doctour · in drabland wedis,

232

3it aH þe erth of Egipt · had he bene aire ouire.

þan answars him þe qwene · with fuH myld speche,
"Haile, maister," quod þat myld · & made him to sytt
On a sege hire be-syde · of silkyn clathis,

236

And þar hire spakid with his speche · & spird of him
wordis.

She asks if he is
of Egypt.

Quen he was sete in his sete · þat semely qwene
Ai of Egipt erd · enquirid if he were,
þoȝt him like of þat lede · be langage & othire ;

240

For-þi scho wetis if he wald · wete hire to say.

"A ! athel qwene," quod Anec · "ai be þou ioyed !

"I am glad to
hear you speak of
Egypt.

If þou a wirschipfuH worde · has werpid & spoken,
A riaH roune þou me redis¹ · a resoñ of blis,

244

Quen þou mynnys of þat marche · & with þi mouth tellis.
For þare enhabetis in þat erd · þat þou are sayd.

There dwell the
wisest men of the
earth.

þe wisest wees iñ þis werd · þe welken vndire.

For þai cañ swyth of a sweuyñ · all þe swepe teH,

248

Wheþire it be sele or soroȝe · in a sete quile,

They can read
the stars, and
understand the
song of birds.

And þai can certifi & se · by sygnes of þe heuyn,

Quat soll be-fall a-pon fold · with-inen a fewe ȝerys.

Sum vndirstandis in a stounde · þe steuen of þe briddis,
To say þe by þar sapience · quat þar sange menys ;

253

Sum cañ þi consaile declare · þoȝe þou it carpid neuire,

þe poyntis of all þi preuates · pertly cañ schewe.

Sum cañ þe brefe be-life · þe birth of þine childire,

256

Be it hee, be [it] scho · haly þare werdes.

I myself have
some skill."

And if I say it my-selfe · slik sotellte I haue,

¹ MS. redis a redis ; the two latter words underlined.

- Sa clere a witt & sa clene · my creatoure I lufe,
 þat all þe notis at I neuyn · nobly I cañ, 260
 As any prophet a-perte · to proue ȝow þe sothe.”
 Quen he þire sawis had sayd · he in his sege lened,
 In stody stiH as a stane · & starid in hire face,
 Beheld haterly þat hend · þat had his hert percid, 264
 With depe desire of delite · ay on þat dere waytis.
 Sone as hire selfe it sawe · at he hire sa behaldis,
 þen scho talkis him to · & titely him fraynes :
 “Quare-on muse ȝe sa mekiH, maister?” scho sayd; 268
 “ȝe behald me sa hogely · quare-oñ is ȝour mynd?”
 “My frely fode,” quod þe freke · “noȝt bot þe werdes
 Of my gracious goddis · þe grettest on erde. 271
 þai haue tald me be-for þis tyme · þat now I trew fynd,
 How I suld¹ lenge in a land · & loke oñ a qwene.”
- þan out of his bosom he brayd · a blesand table
 Of Euour & of othire þingis · odly fourmed,
 Of bras & of brynt gold · & o[f] briȝt siluer, 276
 þat thre serclis sere · in it selfe had.
 In þe first compas I ken · as me þe claus tellis,
 Stude þe xij vndirstandings · stoutly engrauen.
 In þis oþir draȝt ware deuysid · a dusan of bestis, 280
 And semely sett was in þe thrid · þe soñ & þe mone.
 Sethen he clekis out of a cas · vij clere sternes
 To tell him takens of þe tymes · & talis of our werdis;
 And vij stele-grauyn stanys · & stoute oþire tway, 284
 þat wald for hurte or for harme · any hathill kepe.
 þus as he tuke furth his toylis · & his trammys² schewis,
 “If I saȝt lefe on þi lare” · quod þe leue qwene,
 “Say me þe day & þe same ȝere · & þe selfe tyme 288
 Of þe birth of þe bald kyng · þat I best lufe.”
- þan answars Anec onane · sayd, “is þar oȝt ellis
 At ȝe wald, hend, of me here · or at ȝoure hert willis?
 For any cas þat is to com³ · to knew if þe likis, 292

He stares on
the queen's
face.

When she notices
this, she asks
him of what he is
thinking.

“I am thinking
of what my gods
have foretold.”

[Fol. 5 b.]
He takes out a
table,

marked with
three circles.
In the first stood
the twelve ‘under-
standings’;
in the second, the
twelve signs;
in the third, the
sun and moon.

As he shews his
implements,
the queen asks
him to tell her
when Philip was
born.

He says he can
tell her anything.

¹ MS. I suld I suld; *the two latter words underlined.*

² MS. tranmys.

³ MS. con.

I saH as namely ȝow neuyn · as it ware nowe done."

"Then tell me
what shall happen
to me and
Philip."

"Jan will I," quod þe wale qwene · "ȝe wete me to say,
Quat me & Philip · sall faH vs be-twene.

For, bow he fra þe bataiH · bernys me teH, 296

þen wiH he wed anoþire wife · & wayfe me for euer."

"He will not
long have another
queen, but will
return to you."

"Nay, noȝt for ay," quod þe freke · "þar haue þai fals
spoken ;

Neuer þe latter, or oȝt lange · saH lymp as þou sayd.¹

Bot ȝit I fynd, for all his fare · fleme he saH þe toþire,

And wild ȝour self to wiH · nyH he so wiH he." 301

Jan was a-wondird of his wordis · þe worthe lady,

[Fol. 6.] Be-soȝt sekirly þis sire · if he safe vouchid,

þat scho myȝt weterly wete · þe wiH of all þingis,

He continues,

Quatkyn poynt or plyte · predestend hire were. 305

"One of our
greatest gods will
descend to you."

"A thiH qwene," quod Anec · "as I am enfourmed,

Ane of þe grettist of oure godis · of grace & of miȝt,

I fynd, or it be fere · to² fleschely þe knew, 308

And after in all aduersites · is amed þe to help."

"In what form
will he come?"

Jan sayd Olympadas · "now, honourable maister,

I be-seke þe, my sire · if þou me say wald,

Quatkyn fygour on fold · or fourme at he beris, 312

þat demyd is or destaned · þis dede for to worche."

"þat wiH I wele," quod þe wee · "& noȝt a word leȝe.

"He is of middle
age.

þis myȝty god at I me[ne] · is of a mediH age,

Noȝt of ȝouth nor of eld · nor ȝerris to many, 316

Bot euyn so be-twene twa · & to [mekyll] of nouthire.

He has two horns
on his head,

How he is merkid & made · is mervaile to neuyn,

With—tachid in his for-top— · twa tufe³ hornes;

A berd as a besom · with thyn bred haris, 320

and a mouth like
a mastiff.

A mouthe as a mastif⁴ hunde · vn-metely to shaw.

Bot, dame, if he be þus diȝt · drede þe neuer þe more,

Bot ȝe be buxsom & bayne · & boune to his wiH.

Be nyȝter-tale he saH þe neȝe · þis note to begyñ, 324

¹ Line 300 precedes l. 299 in the MS., but they are marked for transposition.

² MS. to þe ; with þe underlined.

³ haris inserted here, but struck out.

⁴ MS. mastis.

And þe be merryd neuer þe marc · bot mete him in Be not afraid.”
sweuyn.”

“ Now certayn, sire,” sayd þe qwene · “ selly me thinke. “ If this turn out
true,
Bot may I se þis be sothe · at þe me say here,

Noȝt as a prophet ne a prest · I prays saȝt þi selfe, 328

Bot rehers þe as hieȝe gode · & hie þe for euire.”

I will honour
thee as a god.”

With þat rysis vp þe renke · & his rowme lefys,

Laȝt leue at þe qwene · for a litiȝ quile,

Anectanabus
takes his leave.

Gase him dcune be þe grecis · a-gayn fra þe sale, 332

Furthe to make his maistryse · & mose in his arte.

¶ þus passis he fra þe place · to proue his sleȝtis,

[Fol. 6 b.]

Silis furth all him selfe · þe cyte with-outen,

Drafe in-to a depe dissert · & drewe vp herbis, 336

He goes into a
desert, and picks
herbs.

þe chosest for enchantement · at he chese couthe.

Quen he had gedird his grese · & grune þaim esundire,

For Iapis of his gemetry · þe ious out he wrencis,

Erne tiȝ exorȝise · & ethis euer elike, 340

þat it suld worthe as he wald · & oñ na way faile.

He clatird oñ coniurisons · & calid to him deuyls,

He begins to
conjure,
that the queen

And aȝ þe inchesoñ of his charme · with þat þe chefe
qwene

þe same nyȝt in hire slep · suld se with hire eȝen 344

may see Ammon
in her sleep.

Amoñ hire awyn god · in hire armes ligge,

And dreme at he didd̄ hire swa · & quen he done hadd̄,

þan suld he say to hire-selfe · sadly þire wordis, 347

“ Now has þou, woman, I-wys · with-in þi twa sydis

Consayued him at in aȝ þi care · þi cors saȝt defend̄.”

þis ilk euyn ouer-ȝede · & arly oñ þe morne,

Next morning
the queen tells
her dream.

As arly as þe riche qwene · was resyn fra sleþe,

þan after Anec¹ oñ-ane · scho al aboute sendis, 352

Takis him betwene þam twa · tald him hire sweuyn.

“ ȝa,” quod he, “ comly qwene · I couthe, & þou wald̄

He asks to be
allowed to have a
room in the
palace.

Preualy in þi palais · lat me a place haue,

Make þe to se þe same gode · & þi-selfe wakand̄, 356

Face to face aȝ his fourme · & his effecte clene.

¹ MS. Anes.

þis grete god fu^h of grace · sa^h glide to þi chambre,
 In a dredfu^h deuys · a dragons fourme,
 And þan þe figour of a freke · he sa^h take eftire, 360
 And preualy in þat part · a-pere ȝowe be-forne."

The queen grants it.

[Fol. 7.]

"If it turn out true, I will cherish thee as if thou wert my child."

He chooses a place for himself.

Next night he enchanteth himself into the form of a dragon,

and flies to the queen.

He then becomes a man again.

He prophesies that her son will conquer all the world.

þan answars him þe swete quene · & sone him it grantis,

"Sire, chese þe a chambre · quare þe chefe þinkis,
 Nowþire myne awen ne na nothire · god lat þe noȝt spare,
 Or any place at ȝow plece · my palas with-in. 365

For may þou hald me þis hest · as þou here tellis,
 And professe þus in my presens · as a propire sothe,
 þen sa^h I cherische þe with chere · as þou my child were,
 Loute þe louely & loue · a^h my lyfe days." 369

"Graunt mercy," quod þe grete clerke · to þe gude lady,
 Thankis¹ hire fu^h thraly · & þen forth wendis
 To loke & layte him a loge · quare he lenge myȝte,² 372
 And buske him a bedsted · quare him best likid.
 Qwen it was metyn to þe merke · þat men ware to ryst,
 And folke was on þaire firste slepe · & it was furth
 euyns,

þan Anec oñ ane · his artis he fandis, 376

And changid by enchantmentis · his chere a^h to-gedire.

þer worthid he by his wiche-craft · in-to a wild dragoñ,
 And to the ladi lere · he lendid in haste,
 Fliȝand in his fethire-hames · & ferly fast sletis, 380
 And in a braide, or he blan · he þe bed entris.
 Quen he was³ laide be-lyfe · his liknes he changis,
 Worthis agayñ to a wee · fra a worme turnys.

þen kisses he kenely þe quene · & clappis in armes,
 Langis sare to þe layke · & on-loft worthis. 385
 Quen he had wroȝt a^h his wi^h · hire wame þen he
 touches,

And with a renyst reryd · þis reson he said,
 "þis concepcion with kyngis · sal be callid here-after

¹ MS. Thangis, altered to Thankis.

² MS. myȝtes. ³ MS. he was he was, but corrected.

A verra victor a-vansid^t · with aH þe vayne werde."

þus be-gylid he this gude wyfe · & makis hire to wene
It ware na gett of na gome · bot of god ane.

Qwen þe day-raw rase · he rysis be-lyfe,

392 At daybreak he leaves her.

Lendis a-lande fra þe loft · & left hire with child^t.

Sone as hire bele gun bolne · aH hire blee changis,¹

So was scho ferd^t & a-friȝt · a ferly ware ellis. 395 [Fol. 7 b.]

To be bonden with barne · mekill bale to hire neȝehis,

For it & Philip hire fere · o-ferrom was sybb.

þan Anec hire awyn clerke · scho on-ane callis,

The queen laments, and asks for advice.

"Lo, maister, slike a myschefe!" · & maynly hire
pleynes.

"I dred þat I nere dee · bot ȝe me deme sone 400

Quat me is beste of þis case · if euer þe kyng turne."

"Be noȝt a-bayste," quod þe berne · "ne a-bleyd "No harm shall come to you;
nothire,

þare saH na chanche þe chefe · þe charge of a pese.

For Amoȝ oure athiH gode · saH aH-way þe helpe, 404 Ammon will aid you."

And kepe þe fuH careles · if any cas fallis."

¶ Quat dose now þis diuinour · bot to desert wendis,
Airis on aH him ane · out of þe cite,

ȝede him furthe eftirsons · herbis to seche, 408

Reft þam² vp be þe rotis · & radly þam stampis.

þe Iuse for his gemetry³ · þat Iogloure takis,

A[nd] sythen⁴ a brid of þe see · him seluyn him fangis,
Clatirs to hyre coynte þingis · kenely enchantis, 412 He anoints a sea-bird with their juice.

And [with] þe wose of þe wede · hire wengis anoyntis;

And all þis demerlayke he did^t · bot be þe deuyllis
craftis,

How he myȝt compas & kast · þe kynge to begyle.

Hear how he beguiled Philip.

He wroȝt a wondirfuH wile · & wiH ȝe now here 416

How he be-glouird^t þis gome · & gilid him iñ sweuyn?

þis ilk Philip þe fyrs · þat in þe fiȝt lenges,

Philip dreams

þe same nyȝt in his slepe · he saȝe, as him thoȝt,

that he sees the

¹ MS. g changis (*sic*). ² MS. him, copied from line above.

³ MS. gremetry. ⁴ MS. cythen.

queen in
Ammon's arms;

Amon his awen god · in armes with his qwene, 420
And make with hire market · as [he] a man were.
And quen he wroȝt had his wiȝt · þen witrely him metis,
þat he bowes to hire belechiste · & bigly it sewys,

and that Ammon
seals her with a
ring,

And sethen asselis it him selfe · semely & faire 424
With a rede golde rynge · on þis aray grayuyn ;
A lyons heuyd was on-loft · louely coruyñ ;

[Fol. 8.]

telling her she
has conceived her
defender.

þe bounde of a briȝt son · & a brande kene.

And þen he went furth his way · sayd, "woman, þou
hauys 428

þi fuȝt defendoure oñ fold · now frely consa[u]yed."

Als radly as þe riche kyng · rase oñ þe morne,

Philip calls a
seer,

Riȝt in þe dawyng of day · a diuinour he callis, 431

And as him dremyd ilke a dele · þat doctour he tellis,
And fraynes him fast on þis fare · how it be-faȝt sulȝt.

who tells him
the queen is with
child,

"Phyliȝ," quod þe phylysofyre · "þi fere is with childe,
And with no gett of na gome · bot of god selfe.

And, gudman, [on] þe gold rynge · þe thre grauen
thyngis,¹ 436

who will be
like a lion,

þai ere þus mekiȝt to mene · as me my mynd tellis.

To þe lyoñ hede," quod þe lede · "þen licken I, oñ firs^t,
þe birth þat scho bere saȝt · als best it be-semys, 439

þat chefe saȝt to a chiftañ · & slike a chefe maister,
As to be halden heuydman² · of aȝt þe hale werde.

Now saȝt I clerily declare · þe course oñ þe sonne ;

þat sygnyfys þe³ same mañ · þat sett is, be wird,

and will pass
over all the world
to the far east;

So many prouynce to pas · þuȝe prowis of armys, 444

þat he saȝt hit with his hede · in-to þe heghe est.

Now⁴ of þis bytand brand · berne, wiȝt ȝe here ;

And aȝt is bot þis hathiȝt mañ · as I are sayȝt, 447

þat saȝt sa fele men afraiȝ · with fauchoñ in hande,

And out of nounbre to neuyn · of nacions wynñ."

þan foundis Philip to þe fyȝt · & þe fild entres,

¹ MS. y thynges (*sic*).

² MS. heuysdman.

³ ma inserted, but struck out.

⁴ MS. W Now ; with W expunedet.

- And sone in delingis of dyntis · a dragoñ aperis,
 þat streȝt be-for him in þe stoure · strikis doune his
 faas, 452
 A dragon appears,
 and strikes down
 Philip's foes.
- And al his enmys in þat erd · he endid in a stounde.
 When Phylyp with his faire folke · had þe fild woñ,
 þan metis he him to Messadone · þar metis him þe Philip returns to
 qwene, Macedon, and
 greets the queen.
- Kyssis comly hire king · & of his come ioys, 456
 And how he fore scho him fraynes · ferly ȝerne.
 "Wele, graunt mercy," quod þe kyng · "my god, I him [Fol. 8 b.]
 loue ;
- Bot how þat ȝe ga sa¹ grete · gud dame ?" he sayd.
 þou has ragid," quod þe renge · "with vnryd gestis ; He enquires how
 Now hafe I, lede, aH to lange · lengid fra hame." 461 she does,
- þus to bre hire o bourde · he breuys þire wordis ;
 "To quam has þou þe tane tiH · teH m[e] þe sothe ?
 Outhire mete has mendid þe fuH mekiH · as may I noȝt and of her
 trowe, 464 condition.
- Or ane has stollen in my stede · sen I was stad þare."
 þus bayst he þe briȝt qwene · þat aH hire ble changid,
 To skyre skarlet hewe · skyftis hire face, The queen
 is ashamed.
 Hire chere at was chalke-quyte · as any chaffe² worthis ;
 So was scho schamed of þe schont · þat hire þe schalk
 made. 469
- "Nay, quod þe comly kyng · "cache vp þine hert,
 þose þou haue forfeit, na force · so has fele othire. Philip comforts
 her,
- þou has giltid, bot noȝt gretly · it greuys me þe les ; 472
 For god has geten þe þis gett · a-gaynes þi wiH ;
- All þat was done þe bedene · was me be dreme schewyd,
 I saȝe it surely as my-selfe · slepe in my tentis, telling her he has
 seen all in a dream.
- And oure god aH-to-gedire · is ground of þe cause ; 476
 Of me worthis þe þe³ wite · ne of na wee ellis."
- ¶ þen tyd it anes oñ a tym · a lytiH terme efter,
 þis dere kyng oñ a day · oñ his dese syttis, 479 One day, at a
 feast,
 Had parrelid him a proude feste · of princes & dukis,

¹ MS. repeats ga sa. ² Or chasse. ³ Read na.

With maisterlingis of Messadone · & many oþire
noble[s].

he sits beside the
queen.

þus as he sat in his sete · softly by his qwene,
In schene schemerand schroude · aH of schire stanes,
He kest vp his contenance · & knyȝtly he lokes, 484
And gladis gudly his gestis · as his degré wald.

Anectanabus
appears in a
[Fol. 9.]
dragon's form,

þañ Anec[t]anabus on-ane · in alþire-mast ioy
Did oñ him his dragoñ-hame · & drafte thurȝe þe sale,
With slike a rowste & rerid · þe romance it wittnes,
þat nere had bernes for þat bere · bene broȝt out of
witt. 489

goes to the queen,
and salutes her.

He was sa hatter & sa hoge · quen he þe haH entird,
Lete sa lathely a late · & sa loude cried,
þat aH þe fest was a-ferd · & oþire folke bathe. 492
To þe chefe chaiare of þe qwene · he chese him be-lyue,
And laide as hendly as a hunde · his hede in hire arme,
Seþin kyssis he hire clene mouthe · enclynes hire lawe,
And braydis furth with a brym̄ bere · out at þe brade
ȝatis. 496

Philip recognises
the dragon.

þen sayd Philip to his fere · & aH his fre gestis,
“ ȝone selfe dragoñ forsothe · I saȝe with myne eȝen ;
Quen I was stad in þe stoure · he strenthid aH myne
oste, 499

And þar þe floure in þe filde · I fangid þurȝe him selfe.”
Anoþire ferly þar feH · within fewe days,
þe king was sett in his sale · with septer in hand ;
þen come þar-in a litiH bridk · in-to his arme floȝe,
And þar hurkils & hydis · as scho were hand-tame ; 504
Fast scho flekirs about his fete · & fleȝtirs aboute,
And þar it nestild in a noke · as it a nest were,

VIII
Soon after befell
another prodigy.

QwiH scho had layd in his laþe · a litiH tyne egg,
And þan scho fangis hire flisȝt · & floȝe away swyth.
þis egg, or þe kyng wanst · to þe erth fallis, 509
Brak, & so it wele burde · & brast aH e-soundir ;
þan wendis þar-out a litiH worm · & wald it eft enter,
And or scho hit in hire hede · a hard deth suffirs. 512

A bird comes,
who lays an egg
in Philip's lap.

The egg falls,
and breaks ; a
serpent comes
out, and soon
dies.

þañ was ser Philip of þat fare · ferly mekiñ sturbidl,
 Callis to him a kid clerke · declaris to him þis wonder,
 Besoȝt him quat it sygnifiedl · to teH him þe treuthe. [Fol. 9 b.]
 "þat graunt I gudly," quod þe gome · & þus-gate he A seer says,
 spekis : 516

"Sire, þere saH borne be a barne · of þi blithe lady,
 þat driȝtyn efter þi day · has destaned to regne,
 þe quilke soll walke aH þe werdl · & wyñ it him selfe,
 And hent saH a fuH hetire deth¹ · or he may hame
 couer." 520

"Your queen's
son shall conquer
all the earth, and
then die before
returning home."

þus he vndid him ilka dele² · & him þe dome reched,
 Said it was sett to be so · he saȝe by his artis.
 And if ȝow likis of þis lare · to lesten any forthire,
 Sone saH I teH ȝow a text · how it be-tidl after. 524

¶ Tercius passus Alexandri.

Now it teȝt þe tyme · at trauald þat qwene, The queen's time
 Quen scho suld bryng furth · hire birth to þe werdl. of travails draws
 nigh.
 Scho bidis many hard brayde · baret enduris,
 What of wandreth & wa · as wemen dose aH. 528
 Thik schouris hire thrat · tholid mekiñ soroȝe, She suffers much,
 Many peralus pull · grete Payne suffirs,
 Sa sare werkis hire þe wame · & slik vñ-wyn dreis,
 þat all scho dredis hire dede · & doute for þe werst. and expects death
 þan efter Anectanabus · scho on-ane clepis, 533
 And he was boune at hire bode · & bowes to hire
 chambre,

Gais him vp at þe grece · & gretis hiñ faire, Anectanabus
 Fand hire sett in a sege · & soroȝe ay elike. comes and
 "A ! Anec !" quod þe qwene · "me arȝes of my-selfe ; greets her.
 I am aH in aufter · sa akis me þe wame, The queen
 Of werke weH ne I wede · & slike wa tholis, laments.

þat me ware dere to be dede · &³ dure þus on lyfe." [Fol. 10.]
 "ȝa, wynnes ȝow vp," quod þe we · "& walkis a littiñ, "The moment
 he says.

¹ MS. derth ; see l. 512. ² MS. ilka adele ; wrongly.

³ Read than.

For þe aire nowe & þe elementis · ere evyn in þis tyme
So trauailid out of temperoure · & troubild of þat sone,
þat makis þi grippis and þi gridis · a grete dele þe
kenere." 544

She walks about. þan faris scho vp & farkis furth · a fute or tway,
And sone sesis aH hire syte · in a sete quyle.

At last she rests, and Alexander
is born. "Now bow þe doune," quod þe berne · & scho his bone
fillis,

And syttand so in¹ hire sege · was softly delyuerd. 548
Bot now is meruaiH · to me² of þis wondire,
Quen þis man fra his modire wambe · on þe mold feH;
For all þe erd euyn ouer · sa egirly schakis,
þat teldis, templis, & touris · tomble on hepis. 552

The earth quakes. þe liȝt lemand late · laschis fra þe heuyñ,
Thonere thrastis ware thra · thristid þe welkyn,
Cloudis clenely to-clefē · clatird vn-faire,
All blakenid a-boute · & boris þe soñ. 556

The wind arises. Wild wedirs vp werpe · & þe wynd ryse,
And aH³ flames þe flode · as it fire were,
Nowe briȝt, nowe blaa · nowe oñ blase efter,
And þan ouer-qwelmys in a qwirre · & qwatis euer
e-like. 560

There is great darkness. þan slike a derknes⁴ þar drafē · & demyd þe skewys,
As blesenand as bale fyre · & blake as þe heH,
þat it was neuer bot as nyȝt · fra þe none tyme
Till it to mydday was meten · oñ þe morne efter. 564

Stones fall from the sky. Gife þis ware mervale to myñ · ȝet emang' othire
þen rekils it vnruydrylly · & raynes doune stanys,
FeH fra þe fyrmament · as a hand lyftyng,
And some as hoge as þi hede · fra þe heuyn fallis. 568
Sa ferd was Philip of þat fare · þat his flesche
trymlid,

[Fol. 10 b.]



For sere sygnes at he saȝe · as selly ware ellis.
As wyde as aH þe werd was þurȝe · warnyng þai hadd,

¹ Added in the margin. ² MS. to me to me; but corrected.
³ a in text; but alle in margin. ⁴ MS. dreknes.

All the world
is warned.

þat¹ houre þat Olympadas · was of hire soñ liȝter. 572

Than lendis him vþ þe leue kyng · his lady to vysite,

Quod þe man to his make · “I am in many thoȝtis,

þat þis frute saH haue na fostring · ne be fedl nouþire;

I ges it be noȝt of my gett · bot of god fourmed; 576

Be many cause at I keñ · I kan noȝt suppose

It be consayued of my kynde · ne come of my-selfe.

I saȝe so, in þe same tyme · he seuyrd fra þi wambe,

þe erd & aH þe elementis · so egirly schoutid.² 580

And queþer ȝit, for any quat · a quyle latt him kepe,

And norisch him as namely · as he myne awyn warre,

ȝit wiH þare make of him mynde · & myn it here-eftire

Hathils, swilke a haly soñ · I hade in my tyme. 584

Anoþer barne,” quod þe berne · “I of my blode haue,

Ane of my sede, I suppose · & sibbire of þe twa,

þat I wan on myne oþire wyfe · þat I wedd first. 587

Lat him as ayre, quen I am erþed · enherit my landis,

And staH we him in stede of þis · to stiȝtiH my rewme,

For he is borne of my blode · & a-bore nerre,

And fede we þis oþhire, þat³ folke · quen we ere fay worthiH, and let this other be well taken care of.”

þai did all as he demed · & his domes plesed, 593

Cherest þai þis ȝonge childl · & chosely him kepid;

þai ware as besy him a-boute · birdis & ladis,

As he had bene þar hiȝe godl · for sa þai hopid aH, 596

þis barne, quen he borne was · as me þe boke tellis,

Miȝt wele a-prefe⁴ for his a-port · to any prince oute.

Bot of þe lyfe þat he liȝt off · he like was to nane,

Nouþer of fetour ne of face · to fadire ne to modyre; [Fol. 11.]

þe fax on his faire hede · was ferly to schawe, 601 His hair was like lion's locks,

Large lyons lockis · þat lange ere & scharpe;

With grete glesenand ezen · grymly he lokis,

þat ware as blyckenand briȝt · as blesand sternes, 604 his eyes were bright as stars.

¹ MS. þat o; but o is expuncted.

² MS. schoutis; altered to schoutid. ³ Added in the margin.

⁴ MS. a pere, altered to a prefē.

Philip comforts
Olympias.

Philip advises
that her son
should be
nourished as
his own.

“Let my first
son be my heir,

The ladies
cherish the
infant.

ȝit ware þai sett vn-sameñ · of serelypy hewys ;
 þe tane to brene at a blischñ · as blak as a cole,
 As any ȝare ȝeten gold · ȝalow was þe tothire.

He was wall-eyed.

And he wald-eȝed was · as þe writh schewys, 608
 ȝit it tellis me þis tale · þe tethe in his hede
 Was as bitand breme · as any bare tuskis.

His voice was as a lion.

His steuyn stiffe was [&] steryn · þat stonayd many,
 And as a lyon he lete · queñ he loude romys. 612

His feñ fygoure & his fourme · fully be-takend
 þe prowis & þe grete pryse · þat he a-preuyd eftire,
 His hardynes, his hyndelaike · & his hetter myȝtis,
 þe wirschip þat he wañ · quen he wex eldire. 616
 þañ sembled his syb meñ · be sent of þañ aȝ,
 To consaile of þis kyng soñ · how þai him caȝt suld,
 And so him neuyned was þe name · of his next frendis
 Alexsandire þe athiȝt · be allirs a-corde. 620

He is called Alexander.

He goes to school.

XII ?

Aristotle is his master.

þan was he lede furthe be-lyfe · to lere at þe scole,
 As sone as to þat sapient · him-self was of elde,
 On-ane vn-to Arystotil · þat was his awen maister,
 And one of þe coronest clerkis · þat euer knew letter.
 þan was he broȝt to a benke · a boke in his hand, 625
 And faste by his enfourme · was fettild his place ;
 For it come noȝt a kyng soñ · ȝe knew wele to sytt
 Doune in margoñ & molle · emange othire schrewis.

He is clever and wise.

[Fol. 11 b.]

He learns more in five years than others in seventy.

Sone wex he witter & wyse · & wonder wele leres, 629
 Sped him in a schort space · to speñ & to rede,
 And seȝen to gramere he gase · as þe gyse wald,
 And þat has he aȝt hale · in a hand-quyle. 632

If Aristotle was away,

he would knock his masters on the crown.

In foure or in fyfe ȝere · he ferre was in lare
 þan othire at had bene þare · seuynte wynter ;
 þat he suld passe him in þat plite · vnpussible semed,
 Bot at god wiȝt at gaa furth · qua may agayn stande ?
 In absens of Arystotil · if any of his feris 637
 Raged with him vnridly · or rofe him with harme,
 Him wald he kenely oñ þe croune · knok with his
 tablis,

þat al to-brest wald þe bordis · & þe blode folowe. 640

If any scolere in þe scole · his skorne at him makis,
He skapis him full skathely · bot if he skyþ better.

þus with his feris he faȝt · as I fynd wreteñ,

As wele iñ letter & in lare · as any laike ellis. 644

þus skilfull lange he scolaid · & þe scole vsed,
Tille he was euyn of eld · elleuyn wynter.

He had na pere in na place · þat proued so his tyme, He has no peer.

For þe principalte of all þe pake · he of a-prefe wynnys.

And qwen it teȝt to þe tyme · of ten ȝere of age, 649

þen was him kend of þe kynde · & craft of bataile,

Wele & wiȝtly in were · to welden a spere,

A[nd] preke oñ a proude stede · proudly enarmed. 652

þat lare was him lefe to · & lerid in a qwile

Was þar na lede to him like · with-in a fewe ȝeris.

So cheualus a chiftañ · he cheuys in a stonde,

þat in anters of armes · aȝt men he passes. 656

Quen Philip see him sa fers · in his first elde,

His hert & his hardynes · hiȝely he lofed,

Comendid mekiȝ his knyȝt-hede · & him callid oñ a day

Be-twene þam selfe oñ a tyme · & talkis þire wordis :

“Alexander,” quod þe kyng · “I augirly prayse 661

þi wirschip, þi worthines · þi wit & þi strengh.

Es nane so teche of þi tyme · to tryi now o lyfe.

How suld I, lede, for þi lofe · bot lufe þe in hert ? 664

Bot I am sary for sothe · my soñ, at þi fourme

Is likenand oñ na lyȝ · ne like to my selfe ;

Oft storbis me þi statour · & stingis me ȝerne,

þat þi personale proporcioñ · sa party is to myne.” 668

þis herd hire þe hend quene · & heterly scho dredis,

Sent after Anec · & askis him be-lyue,

Be-knew him clene aȝt þe case · how þe kyng sayd,

And frayns him fast quat þe freke · of hire fare thingis.

þen con he calke & a-conte · & kest on his fyngirs,

Lokis him vp to þe lifte · & þe lady swares : 674

“Be noȝt a-friȝt,” quod þe freke · “ne a-frayd nouȝir, He comforts her,

He fights with
his fellows.

He learns to
wield a spear.

He surpasses all
in arms.

Philip commends
him.

[Fol. 12.]

“I am sorry,
my son,
that you are so
unlike me.”

The queen
consults
Aeneanabus.

It saſt þe noy noȝt a neg' · name of his thoȝtis." 676

With þat he heuys vp [his] hede · & to þe heuyn lokis,

I Hedis heterly on hiȝe · behelde oñ a sterne,

Of þe quilke he hopid in his hert · sumquat to knawe,

Quat euire he wald wete · of¹ his wiȝt ah-to-gedire.

Quod Alexander to þis athiȝt · as he his arte fandis,

"Quat is þe planet or þe poynt · ȝe purpose to seme?

Quat sterne is it at ȝe stody oñ · quare stekis it in

heuyn ? 683

May ȝe oȝt me in any maner · to þat sterne schewe?"

"þat can I wele," quod þe clerke² · "ellis couthe I
littiȝt;

Noȝt bot sewe me, soñ · quen þe soñ is to reste,

Quen it [is] dreuyn to þe derke · & þe day fynyst,

And þou saſt sothely se · þe same with þine eȝen." 688

"Is oȝt þi werid to þe wissid?" · quod þe wee þan;

"For þat I couet to ken · if þou me kythe walð."

"Sire, sothely of myne awen̄ soñ² · slayne moñ I worth,

So was me destaned to dye · gane many winter." 692

As tyte as Anec[tanabus] · þis aunter had talȝt,
þen [he] treyned doune fra þe toure · to tute in þe sternes.

þañ airis ser Alexander · eftire his fadire, 695

þat euer he kyndild of his kynde · kend he bot littiȝt.

þus led he furthe his leue childȝ · late oñ ane eueñ,

Sylis softly him selfe · þe cite with-outeñ,

Boȝes him vp to a brenke · as þe buke tellis,

To þe liȝt of þe depe dike · & to þe heuyn waytis. 700

"Alexander, athil soñ" · quod Anec his syre,

"Loo! ȝonder behalȝt ouer þi hede · & se my hatter
werdis ;

þe euyȝt sterne of Ercules · how egirly it soroȝes, 703

And how þe mode Marcure · makis sa mekiȝt ioy;

Loo! ȝonder þe gentiȝt Iubiter · how Iolyle he schynes,

þe domes of my destany · drawis to me swythe.

and observes the stars.

XIII

Alexander asks him what he sees in the stars.

Anectanabus says he will tell him at night.

"I shall be slain by my own son."

[Fol. 12 b.]

Alexander follows his father

to the edge of a dyke.

Anectanabus says that his own doom approaches.

¹ MS. of w his; but w is expuncted.

² Added in the margin.

Hedes heterly on heght · beheld on a sterne, 678 [Fol. 1.]

Of þe whilke he hopyd in hys hert · somqwatt to knaw,
What euer he wilnet for to wete · hys wille aH to-geder.
þen sayd alexander to þis atheH · as he by hym stonndes,
“ What is þe planett or þe poynt · yhe purposse¹ to se ?
Or what sterne at ye stody oñ · where stekys it in
heueñ ?

May ȝe ought in any maner me · to þat merke shewe ? ” 684
“ þat can I wele,” quod þis clerke · “ ellys couth I bott
lytyH ;

Noght bott shew² me now, sone · qwen þe soñ is at rist,
Wheñ it is dryveñ to þe dirk · & þe day fynyshyt,
And þu saH sorely þe same · see with þi egheñ.” 688

“ Is ought þi werd to þe wist ? ” · quod þe wy þañ ;
“ For þat I Couett to keñ · if þu me kyth wold.”

“ Syr, sothly of myne aweñ son · slayn moñ I worth,
So was [me] destinate to dy · done mony wynter.” 692

Als tyte as anectanabus · þees aunters had tald,
Than turned he douñ from þe toure · to tote on þe sternes.

þan ayres sir alexander · aftir hys fader,
þat euer he come of hys kynde · knew [he] fuH lityH. 696
þus lede he forth is leue sonñ · late on añ eueñ,

Syland softly þaim selfe · þe cyte with-owte,
Bownes þaim vp to a brenke · as þe buke tellys,
To þe hight of þe hye dyke · & to þe heuen watyn. 700
“ Alexander, atheH sonñ ” · quod anec hys fader,
“ Beyond be-hald ouer my hed · & see my hote werdez ;

þe ilke sterne of ercules · howe egerly it sorowez,
And how þe mode of mercury · makys so mekyH Ioy ; 704
Lo ! how gentyH Iubiter · how ioyfully he shynes,
þe Domes of my destany · drawes vnto [me] swyth.

¹ MS. proposse.

² sic; read sew.

þik & þrathly am I thret · & thole moñ I sone
 þe slaȝter of myne awen soñ · as me was sett euer." 708

Alexander pushes
him into the
dyke,

Vnethis werped he þat worde · þe wrigg me recordis,
 þat ne Alexander as sone · was at him be-hindl,
 And oñ þe bake with slike a bire · he bare with his
 handis,

saying, "thou
art false in thy
predictions."

þat doune he draf to þe depest · of þe dike bothoñ, 712
 Sayd, "lo ! vnhaþeiste vndire heuyn · þat þus oñ hand
 takis

Anectanabus
cries out,

As be þe welken to wete · quat suld come efter !
 þou has feyned þe for wyse · & fals al-to-gedire,
 Wele semys slike a saccheñ · to syeze þus of lyfe !" 716

"I knew it
would be so.

þan Anec, as him aȝt · wele augirly granys,
 Dryues vp a dede voyce · & dymlly he spekis,
 " Wele was þis cas to me knawen · & kyd many wynter,
 þat I suld dee slike a dethe · be dome of my werdis. 720
 Did I not say so ? Sayd I þe noȝt so · my selfe here be-fore,
 I suld be slayñ of my son as now sothe worthis ?" 722

- Thik & thraly am I thrett · & thole must I sone
 þe slauughter of my awne sonñ · als me was sett euer." 708
- Vnneth warpyd he þis word · þe writt me recordez,
 þat alexander als belyfe · was at hym bylyue,¹
 And on þe bak with suche a bir · hym bare with hys
 handez,
- þat Douñ he drafte into þe dyppest² of þe dyke bothum ; 712 [Fol. 1 b.]
 Sayd : "lo ! vnhappyest vndir heuen · þat þus on hand
 takes
- Als be welkyn to wete · what worth sañ her-aftir !
 Hase fenyd þe for wyse · & fals añ to-geder,
 Wele semys suche a sacheñ · to sepe þus of lyfe !" 716
- þan Anec, als hym awght · wele awgardly granes,
 Dryvez vñ a dede voyce · & dynly he spekes :
 " Wele was þis to me knawyn · & kyd mony wynter,
 That I suld dey such a dede² · by² dome of my werdis. 720
 Sayd I þe noght so · my self here beforne
 I suld be slain of my sonñ · als now is soth wortheñ ?" 722
- " What, and am I," quod alexander · " ane of þi You are my
 childer ?" 723*
- " ȝha, soñ ! als glad I my god · I gat þe my selueñ." 724*
- Fro he had hym þis worde sayd³ · he wakens no more, Hic moritur
aneclanabus
 Bot gaue a gremly grane · & þe gast ȝheldez.
- That oper wy for hys werkez · wepys eueryllyke, Alexander
laments,
 So hard & so hertly · þat neȝ hys hert brestes. 728*
- þus plenys þis prouud knyght · þe pyte of hys fader,
 Cares hym downe into þe cafe · þar as þe cors ligges,
 Belife lyftes he on-lofte · euen on hys shulders, 731* and carries
home the
body.
- And beres hym forth vpon hys bake · at þe brade ȝates.
 Sone sayd þe whene, when sho hym see · with syland teres ;
 " What haue ȝe done, my dere sonñ ?" · & drowpys douñ
 in swone.
- " Dame, now is þar none other to do · bot deme it þi selueñ, Alexander
reproves the
queen.
 For as þi folly was before · so foloweth aftir." 736*

¹ read byhynde. ² written above the line in MS.³ written above the line in MS.

Than makes þis mañ & hys moder · menskfully & faire
Titely hys enterment · as þai þat tyme vsed.

þus shamesly of hys awne childe · hym chevyd such end.
And her fynes a fytt · & fayr when vs likez. 740*

So perished
Anectanabus.

Quartus passus.

The same & þe selue tyme · as says me þe text,

A prince
brings to
Philip a wild
horse,

Fro þe cuntry of capadose · come a kyd prince

To kyng philipþ þe fers · & hym a fole brynges;

A grett horse & a hoge · a hegh & a wilde,

744*

A store & a styf stede · stalwartly bondyñ;

[Fol. 2.]

His choH chaltird & chauelez · in chynez of yreñ;

In rapes fast · for ryfying of bernes;

For other mete þan manysflesche · mouthed he neuer. 748*

who fed upon
human flesh
only.

Busifolen to þis blonk · was breued þe name.

He hed so ferdfulH a face · as ony fyre lokez;

Bere als a boles¹ heued · a bryn on hys shulder;

752*

And toton owt of hys top · als tyndis of hornes.

The fayrnes of þis ilke fole · when philipþ avysed,

Philip puts
him in a
stable.

þan says he to hys seruand · to see to þis capyH,

And stighillys hym in som stede · a stable by hym one,

With lang lates of yreñ · þat he might lig in. 756*

And aH at wer dampned to þe deth · & demyd at þe lawe,

He is fed upon
criminals.

þai saH be broȝt fra þe bare · þis blonk into stable,

To very at hys awne wille · & weyle² of þe fattest. 759*

þit philipþ of hys faire goddes · hym fanges such a sware,

The gods say
that whoever
tames the
horse will
succeed
Philip.

Yff ony berne wer so bald · baroñ or other,

Or wy þat myght þis wilde best · worth for to ryde,

Was dewly aftir hys day · destinate to regne.

When alexander was of elde · awght ȝeres & foure, 764*

þan was he worthy & wight · & wisely hed leryd

At arestoteH aH ouer · þe artez aH seueñ,

And castor, ane oþer clerke þar · at wer hys kyd maisteres.

Alexander is
now 12 years
old.

So carez he in þe casteH-ȝarde & commes on a day 768*

By a wyndow als þis wild horse · [was] warlocked in bandez;

¹ Altered to boyles in later hand.

² MS. wele, corr. to weyle.

Lokes in at a lat · sagh ly hym byforne
 So mony menbres of men · wer mervayle to tell.
 þar liggez lymmes of laddes · leggez & harmes,
 Tharmes thrist owt of thees · banes & shuldres.
 Som hanchyd of þe heued · som þe handez etyñ,
 Som þar riggez owt rytte · & som þar ribbez rent.
 Of þis wonder he hed · & so he wele burd.

He sees the
horse sur-
rounded by
men's legs
and arms.

772*

And hardly hys awne hand · in at a hole puttes,
 He¹ layd owt a lang neke · & hys hand likkys ;
 Faire faldes hys fete / & falles² hym³ to þe erth,
 Hendly haldes vp hys heued · byheld in hys face,
 On Alexander ay-where · euer elike wates.

776*

The horse
licks his
hand.

þen wist þe wy wele enogh · hys wy^H aH-to-geder ;
 Brades vppe þe brade ȝate · & þe barre entres,
 On þe rige with hys right hande · hym rodelly strakez,

780*

[Fol. 2 b.]

And he fuH frely & faire · hym faunys & loutez.

He goes to
the horse,
and strokes
him.

Was neuer barslett in band · more buxum to hys lord,
 þen was þis blonke to þis berñ · for aH his breme teches.

þus lowtes þis lede on low · & lowsrys hys chynez,

784*

He gets a
bridle and
saddle,
and mounts
him.

Blyssis blythly hym abouute · & a bridyl fyndez ;

Grathez on þis gay gere · & þen a gilt sady^H ;

Ledes hym forth of þat loge · & þen of-lofte lepys.

Than strenys he hys streropes · & streȝt vp sittes ;

792*

Lad hym by þe lorañ · & hym þe lede wissez.

And he als rekyndly ran · rolland hym vnder,

As he þe sady^H hed sewyd · seuenten wynter.

Sone as philip þe ferse · hym on þis fole metes,

796*

Philip sees
Alexander,
and predicts
that he will
be king after
himself.

"Soñ," he sayd, "now er þe sawes · into þi seluen fyneshit,

Right as my graceux gode · hase galet me before.

For þou must rewle aH my realm · qwen I am raght hyne."

Quod alexander als belieue · "my awne atheH fader,

800*

I beseke þe my soueren · þat þou my sete dresse

In a chosyn chariott · as a chefe maister,

With folawand me a fair flete · of fele men of armes."

¹ MS. And, corr. to He. ² MS. faldis, corrected.

³ MS. hys fete, repeated, but struck out.

- " þat graunt I gladly," quod þe gome · with a gode wille,
 " Frist^t of my faire foles · fang þe a hundreth ; 805* Philip gives
 And syne sexty thowsand, my soñ · þou¹ þi seluen wale
 Of shillynges & of shire gold · to shote in þi Cofyre ;
 Syne of my chefe chiftanes · chese þe þe² best,
 þe most proved of my princez · in poynte of were ; 808*
 Wyes ne no wale wede · want shall þe noþer,
 And held on with a hale here · þar hersound þou worth."³
 Thys barne hym buskes as he bede · & bade he no langre,
 Bot grathes hym to þe gate · with a gyñ noble. 812*
- Forth with eufestyus he ferd · a freke þat he loued, Alexander
 þat was a fyne Philo[so]ff[e]r · a frend of hys awne. takes with
 ȝitte takez he hym with-owte þe towñ · twelf tried childer, [Fol. 3.]
 þat he hed Cosyn hym for chefe · hys chevalry to lede ;
 And fair enformed þam of fight · & fetez of armez 817*
 For ȝapest in hys awne yoke · ȝarly to drawe ;
 Fers felons with hym fangez · & florens enowe,
 Full preciouuse apparement · hys person to cleth, 820*
 Comand kenely hys knyghez · to kepe to hys blonkez,
 þat no⁴ vnchaunce þaim achefe · þat in þe chare ȝodez.
 He prekys forth on hys play · bot with a preuay menȝe,
 Chaterand with hys chiftanes · in hys child gere. 824* With a small
 To poliponenses hase he passed · a prouince vnk[n]awyñ,
 And so was strykyn or he styntyd · in-to þe strange realm̄.
 The kyng of þatt cuntree · þat þe kyth weldyd,
 Which was callyd nicholas · & hym naytly metes, 828* The king's
 Had rasyd vp a rode hoste · & heldyd hym ayaynez
 With bald baratours on bent · hym batell to ȝelde.
 He flonge ow[t] on a fers fole · far from hys hoste,
 Ayres to sir alexander · & angrely franes : 832* Nicholas
 " What is þi name, notesmañ · neuen me þe sothe ; interrogates
 And whyne ert þou & who · & what makys þou here ?"
 þe knyght, as he wele couth · hym curtasly answers :
 " Sir, kyng philip þe ferse · my fader was hateñ, 836*

¹ MS. þat, corr. to þou.² MS. the, corr. to þe.³ MS. wroth.⁴ written above the line in MS.

[Fol. 13.]

Many things
that are aloft
go to the
bottom."

"Take care lest
your predictions
come true of
yourself."

Sir Nicholas
is as wrath as a
wasp.

þof I þis wirschip þe wayfe · as wald þine astate,
Lat þou ji hert neuer þe hiȝere · hale in-to pride. 724
For it was wont," quod þe wee · "as wyse men tellis,
Fuȝt hiȝe þingis ouer-heldis · to held oþer-quile.
Slike as ere now broȝt a-bofe · nowe þe bothum askis,
And slike at leſt¹ ere on lawe · ere lift to þe sternes."
"Sa ma aydeus," quod þat oþire man · "þou tellis me
treuthe, 729
Soñ þis ensample of þi-selfe · þou sais me, I trowe.
Vn-behalde þe wele oñ ilk halfe · & haue a gud eȝe,
Les on þine ane here-etterward · þine ossyngis liȝt." 732
þan Alexander aȝt in ire · angrile spekis :
"Hy þe hethen-ward, þou hathiȝt · & houe þou na
langire.
For na-ȝing as a-nente me · þou has noȝt to meȝt,
Ne with þi domes me to dele · dole vndire sonne." 736
Now² is ser Nicollas anoyed · & nettild with ire,
As wrath as [a] waspe · & wode of his mynde,
Reviles he þis oþire renke · with vnrid speche : 739
"Behald," quod he hedirward · "& herken how I say ;
Now be þe hert & þe hele · of my hathiȝt fadire,
And be þe god," quod þe gome · "þat gafe me þe saule,
A[ls] sprent [of] my spittyng · a specke oñ þi chere,
þou saȝt be diȝt to þe deth · & drepid of my handis." 744

¹ Indistinct ; see l. 814.

² MS. Nowith ; by confusion with line above.

And al þe marche of massydon · he manours clene ;
 And I hys heyre alexander · als elders me calleñ." Alexander
 þat oþer renishit r[e]nke · hym rightes in þe sadyH,
 Stranes owt hys sterops · & sternly lokez ; 840*

With a semblan as a hye sir · settes owt þe brest,
 Sayd : " who am I þat am here · as þou supposez ?" "Who am
 " Sir, þou art a kyng of þis kyth · I ken wele my-selueñ,
 Bott neuer þe latter in þis lede · if þou be lord here, 844*
 þof¹ I² þis worship þe³ wafe · as wald þine astate, 723
 Lett þou þi hert neuer þe hyer · hale to þe pride. 724
 For it is wont," quod þe wy · "as wise men tellys,
 The hyest thyng rafest⁴ · heldes oþer while.
 Suche as now is broght a-bowue · now þe bothom askeñ,
 And sich als laft⁵ now on loft⁶ · er lyft to þe sternes." [Fol. 3 v.]

" So madeus,"⁷ quod þis oþer man · " þou mellys me þe
 sothe, 729

For þis ensampyH of þi-selfe · þou says me, I trowe.
 Vmhede þe wele on ilke halfe · & haue a god Egen,
 Lest⁸ on þi-seluen ane oþer tyme · þine asking liȝt." 732
 þan alexander al in ire · angirly spekes :
 " Hy þe hyneward, þou atheH · & hofe here no langer.

For noþ[i]ng als anense me · þou hase lityH to melle,
 Ne with me noght hase to do · ne dele vnder þe sonñ." 736
 Now [is] sir Nicholas noyet⁹ · & netlett with ire,
 Als wrath as a waspe · & wode owt of mynde,
 Revylez he þis other renke · with vnrode speche :
 " Byhald," he sayd, " hyderward · & here qwat I say ; 740
 Now by þe hert & þe heale · of my old fadir,
 And be god," quod þe gome · " at gaue me þe saule,
 Als sprent of þi⁸ spytyng¹⁰ · a speke of my⁹ face, 743
 þou saH be diȝt to the deth · and drepyd of my handes."

¹ MS. Of. ² þe follows after I in MS.
³ þe written above the line in MS. ⁴ MS. rafeest.
⁵ or last. ⁶ so in MS. ; read laft er on lawe.
⁷ MS. madeus, altered to madyng, in later ink.
⁸ so in MS. ; read of my. ⁹ read on þi.

He spits in
Alexander's face.

Quen he had spokin so, for spyte · he spittis in his face,
Dispises him despetously · dispersons him foule.

Alexander con-
trols his anger.

"Hent þe þare," quod þe hati^H · "as þe to haue² semes,
Cure, for þi kene carþe · chache nowe a schame!" 748

[Fol. 13 b.]

þan went him furthe Alexander · & his ande takis,
Lete a-swage or he sware · þe swelme of his angirs,
Be-seȝis him how he say wold^ȝ · or he his saȝe ȝeld, 751
And turnes him þen to þe tulke · & talkis þire wordis :
"For þou has noȝtid me now · Nicollas," he sayd,
I swere þe, be my syre saule · & by his selfe pite,
And be þe worthe wombe · of my wale modre
þat I was geten in of gode · & graithely consayued, 756
þou seis me, lede, or oȝt lange · in þi lande armed,
And oþire recouyre me þi rewme · or reche vp þe
girdi^H."

They appoint
a day for
fighting.

þan set þai þam slike a day · to semble & to fiȝt, 759
And þar-to tuke vp þaire trouthis · & twyned esondre.³
þen ȝode him furthe þi[s] ȝong maȝ · ȝapeli & swythe
In-to þe marche of Messedone · & manly a-semblis
Of saudiours & sekir men · a soume out of nounbre,
þat was þe baldest & þe best · breueyd in armes. 764
He parrails him a proude ost · of princes & oþire,
Farkis to ser Philip · & fangis his leue,
And þaȝ Bocifilas his blonke · he bremely ascendis,
And bounes oñ with his batai^H · out at þe brade ȝatis.
þe same day at was sett⁴ · þe sembling of bathe, 769
Aithire with a firs flote · in þe fild metis.

Alexander
gathers a host.

þe nounbre of ser Nicollas · it noyes me to reken,
And Alexander was ane oste · of augird many. 772
With þat þai tuke vp þaire trompes · a-poñ þe twa
sidis,
Braidis banars a-brade · buskis to mete.

Both armies are
very numerous.

So kinlid þe clarons · þat aȝt þe cliffe rynges,

¹ So in MS.

² MS. hame, with first stroke of m subpuncted.

³ MS. to semble & to fiȝt, struck through, with & twyned
esondre above.

⁴ Added in the margin.

When he had spokyñ so, in spite · he spittes at hys face,
 Dispysys hym dyspytussly · revylez hym foule.
 "Hent þe þar-to," quod þe atheñ · "þat þe to haue semes,
 Cure, for þi kene carpyng · cache now a shame!" 748
 þan ayres hym forth alexander · & hys aynde takes,
 To let swage or he sware · þe swelme of hys angre,
 Wysez hym how he say wald · or he aunswer ȝheldest,
 And turnyd hym þen to þis tulke · & talkez þir wordez:
 "For þou hase noȝtyd me now · nicholas," he sayd, 753
 "I swere by my syre saule · & by hys selueñ pyte,
 And be þat worthi wombe · of my wale moder
 þat I was gettyn in of god · & grathly consaued, 756
 Thu sees me, lede, in þi land · or oght lang enarmed,
 And oþer recouer me þi realm · or reche me vppe [þe]
 girdyñ."

þan sett þai þaim on suche a day · to semble & to fight,
 And þar-to takez vpp þar trewthez · & twynnoñ in-sonder.
 þan ȝode hym furth þis yong mañ · ȝapely & swithe 761
 Into þe marche of masydon · & manly assembles
 Of sowiours & of syker meñ · a some owt of nownbre,
 þat wer þe baldest & þe best · breuet in armez. 764

He Apperels hym a prouud oste · of princez & oþer,
 Ferkys to *sire philip* · & fonges hys leue,
 And þañ bucifolon hys blonk · he bremely assendes,
 And bownez on with hys bateñ · in at þe brade ȝatez. 768
 þe same day þat was set · þe semblyng of bath,
 Ather with a fers flete · in þe felde metyñ.
 þe nownbre of *sir nicholas* · it neyt¹ me to rekyñ,
 And alexander was ane ost · of awgerly mony. 772
 With þat þai tukkyñ vp þair trompez · vpon þe two
 sydez,

Bradez baners on brade · buskes to mete.
 So knellyd þe clarions · þat aþ þe clyff rongeñ,

[Fol. 4.]

¹ So in MS.

- þe holtis & þe haire heere¹ · & þe hillis scheuyn. 776
 Ilk a hathiH to hors · hiȝis him be-lyue,
 Stridis into stele-bowe · stertis apon loft,
 Has a helme oñ his hede · & honge oñ his swyre
 A schene schondirhand schild · & a schaft hentis. 780
 Steeds stamp,
 and dust rises.
 Quat of stamping of stedis · & stering of bernes,
 AH dymed þe dale · & þe dust ryses.
 With slik a bront & a brusche · þe bataiH a-sembild,
 [Fol. 14.] As þe erth & ah þe el[e]mentis · at anes had wrestild.
 Now aithire stoure oñ þar stedis · strikis to-gedire, 785
 Spurnes out spakly · with speris in hand,
 Brekis in-to blasons · bordren² shildis,
 Beris in-to briȝt stele · bitand lances, 788
 Shields are broken.
 Sone in scheuerand schidis · schaftis ere brosten,
 Lances are splintered.
 Al to-spryngis in sprotis³ · speris of syris,
 Dryfuys doune duchepers · & doykis of þar horses,
 Fellis fay to þe fold · many fresch knyȝtis. 792
 Nicholas attacks Alexander.
 Quat dose now þis Nichollas · bot nymes him a spere,
 Kest him on þis ȝong knyȝt · to couire him a name ;
 And Alexander with anothire · airis him agayne,
 Girdis grymly to-gedire · greuosly metis. 796
 Sa sare was þe semble · þire seggis be-twene,
 Their spears break.
 þat al to-wraiste þai þar wode · & werpis in-sondire,
 Al to-clatirs in-to cauels · clene to þaire handis, 799
 They fight with swords.
 þar left nouþire in þar hand · þe lengthe of an ellyn.
 þen littid þai na langer · bot laschid out swerdis,
 Aithire a blesynand brand⁴ · brait out of schethe,
 Hewis oñ hattirly · had thurgh mailes,
 Many starand stanes · strikis of þaire helmes. 804
 Alexander cleaves Nicholas' head.
 þen Alexander in ane ire · his arme vp-liftis,
 Swythe swyngis out his swerde · & his swayfe feches.
 þe noȝt of Nicollas þe kyng · he fra þe nebb partis,
 þat doun he feȝt fra his fole · & fynyst for euir. 808
 þus was him destand þat day · as driȝten had shapid,

¹ read haire wode. ² read broden.³ MS. repeats in sprotis. ⁴ Added in the margin.

- That þe holtez of þe heer wode · & þe hillez sheueñ. 776
 Ilke atheñ to hys hors · lyes hym belyue,
 Striden to stele-bowe · startyn vpon lofte,
 Had helmes vpon hedles ful hey · & hynget vmbi þar shwyre
 A shemerand sheld · & þair shaftez hynteñ. 780
- What of stampyng of stedes · & strippyng^t of baners,
 Añ demmyd þe dale · & þe duste risez.
 With suche a bront & a broush · þe bateñ assembled,
 As þe erth & añ þe elementes · at anez had wrystlyd. 784
 Now ather stoure on þar stedes · striken to-gedir,
 Sprenten owt spakly · with speres in hand,
 Brochen both basynettes · & brouden sheldez,
 Beres in-to bright stele · bitand lancez, 788
 Sone in-to sheuerand shidez · shaftez to-bristeñ,
 Añ to-sprongen into sprotes · sperez of cipriss,
 Dryvez downe docesperes · and dukez of blonkez,
 Felles fey to þe fold · many fers knyghtes. 792
 What doys me now þis nicholas · bottnymmez hym a sper,
 Kest hym on þis yong knyght · to gett hym a name;
 And alexander with an oþer · ayers hym ayayns,
 Ridyn grymly to-geder · & grysly metyn. 796
 So [sar] was þe semble · [þir] Seges by-twene,
 þat añ to-wrasted þai wod · & warpyd in-sonder,
 Añ claters in clyftez · clene to þair fistez,
 þai lefte noþer in þaire [hand] · þe lenth of¹ ane Elne. 800 [Fol. 4b.]
 þan let þai no langer · bot laughtyn owt swerdes,
 Aþir a brade blysnand brand · brade forth of shethez,
 Hewen on heterly · hadoñ þorow malys,
 Fele starand stanes · striken of þair helmes. 804
 Than alexander in ire · hys arme vpp lyftes,
 Swith swynnges vp hys swerd · & hys swaffe faches.
 The nole of nicholas þe kyng · he fra [þe] nek partes,
 That douñ he fel from hys fole · fynyshit for euer. 808
 þus was hym destinate þat day · as driȝten hym shapyd,

¹ written above the line in MS.

To hent him þe hiȝere hande · of his athiȝt fais.
 þare slike wirschip he wañ · ware wonder to teȝt;
 Had of þat hiȝe kyng · þe hede fra þe shuldirs. 812
 þen was him geuyn vp þe ȝerde · & ȝolden þe rewme,
 And aȝt at left was¹ o lyfe · lordis & othire,
 Come to þat conquerour · & oñ knese² fallis,
 And in his mercy & meth · mekely þaim put. 816
 þis renke & his rounsy · þai reche vp a croune,
 As gome at has þe garland · & aȝt þe gre wonñ.
 þus with þe floure in þe fild · he fangid his emmy,
 And haldis oñ with hale here · hame to his fadire. 820
 þañ fyndis he Philip oñ his flett · with a fest huge
 Had wed him anoþer wyfe · & wayfid his quene;
 Ane Cleopatras caled³ · a grete kyngis doȝter,
 And [laft] had Olympadas · & openly for-sakeñ. 824
 “ Fadire,” quod þis feȝt knyȝt · quen he þis fest entirs,
 “ þe palme here of my first price · I pray þe resayfe,
 Forthe to þe weding or I winde · of my wale modire,
 And kaire me to a-noȝtre kyng · to couple hire to wyfe.
 For þe to felsen ne to foloȝe · fallis me na mare, 829
 Ne here to dueȝt with þi douce · deynes me na langer,
 Now þou mas þe slike a mangery · & macchis changis,
 And I to⁴ consaile vn-callid · I cañ noȝt þar-on.” 832
 With þat þar carpis⁵ to þe kyng · a knyȝt at þe table,
 Ane lesias, a lede · & oñ loude speches:
 “ Cleopatras a knafe child · coȝsayue saȝt & bere,
 þat demed is eftir þi deth · duly to regne.” 836
 þañ Alexander at þis knyȝt · angirs vnfaire,
 Wynnes him vp a wardrere · he walt iñ his handis,
 So hard him hittis oñ þe hede · his hernes out weltid,
 And sa he lost has þe lyfe · for his leþer wordis. 840
 þan was þe wale kyng wrath · as wonder ware ellis,
 Braydis him vp fra þe borde · & a brand clekis,

¹ MS. repeats was. ² MS. ken knese, with ken struck out.

³ MS. he caled; but he is not wanted.

⁴ Added in the margin. ⁵ MS. crapis.

[Fol. 14 b.]
All submit to
Alexander.

XVIII
Returning,
he finds Philip
has wedded
another wife.

Alexander
refuses to submit
to Philip any
longer.

One Lesias,
a knight,

threatens
Alexander,

but loses his
life by

To hynt hym þe ouerhand · of hys athell foes.

þar suche a worship he wan · war wonder to telle ; 811

þan hed he of þe hye kyng · þe heued from þe shulders.

Than þai gave hym vp þe ȝerd · & yolden þe realme,

And aH þat left wer [o] liue · lordez & other,

Comes to þe¹ conquerour · & on knes fallen,

And on hys mercy & his might · mekely þaim puttes. 816

þen þus reuerently · þai rechen hym a crowne,

Als gome þat hase þe garland · & aH þe gree wonne.

þus with þe floure in þe feld · fongez he is enmy,

And heldes on with a hynde heyre · home to his fader. 820

Then fyndes he philip with his flete · at a feste hoge

Had weddit hym ane oþer wife · & waueschyd hys moder;

Ane cleopatras was callyd · a grett kyngez doghter,

And laft [had] olympades · & opynly forsaken. 824

“ Fadre,” quod þis fele child · when he þe fest entred,

“ The palme here of my first pride · I pray þe resaue,

Forth to þe weddyng wiH I wende · of my wale modre,

And caire me to ane oþer kyng · to cowpyH hir to wyfe.

For þe to filson ne to folow · falles me no more, 829

Ne here to dwelle at þi devyse · deynes me no langer,

Thou makes suche a mangery · & þi mache changes,

And I to counseH vncallyd · I can noght heron.” 832

With þat þar carpes to þe kyng · A knyght at þe table,

Ane lesyas, a lede · & on lowde spekes :

“ Cleopatras a knaffe child · consaue sall & bere,

That destinate is aftir þi day · dewly to regne.” 836

þen Alexander at þis atheH · angers vnfaire,

Wynnes hym vp a wardrerd · he weld in hys hande,

[Fol. 5.]

So hard hym hitte on þe hede · his hernes owte weltyN,

And so he lost hase hys lyfe · for his lether wordes. 840

Than [was] þe wale kyng wrath · als wonder wer elles,

Brades vp fro þe burde · & a brande clekez,

*Nota pri-
mam victo-
riam alex-
andri.*

¹ written above the line in MS.

Philip attacks
Alexander,
[Fol. 15.]

but staggers and
stumbles.

Alexander
reproaches him.

He drags the
bride out of
the hall by her
hair.

Alexander offers
Philip his
friendship,

and asks him
to forego his
anger.

The king begins
to weep.

- Airid toward Alexander · & ames him to strike.
 Bot þan him failis þe feete¹ · or he first wenys, 844
 He stakirs, he stumbils · & stande he ne miȝt,
 Bot ay fundirs & fallis · as he ferde ware.
 þe faster forward him² he faris · þe faster he snapirs ;
 Quat was þe cause of þe case · þat knawis oure lorde.
 “Quat now,” quod athiȝt Alexander · “quat³ ailis þe
 to faȝt ? 849
- Has þou na force in þi fete · ne fele of þi-selfe ?
 For a freke to be ferd · or a-fraid outhire,
 And þou þe gouernere of grece · þat ware grete
 wondire !” 852
- þen tittis he doun in þat tene · þe tablis ilkane,
 Out of þe haȝt be [þe] hare · halis he þe bride,
 And so þe wee in his wreth · wrekis his modire,
 And Philip falne [was] sare seke · & aȝt þe fest strubled.
 As sone as Alexander · of angire he slakis,⁴ 857
 He lendis o-loft to þe lede · a litiȝt days eftir,
 Cairis vp with comfurth · þe kyng for to vysite,
 He comes to þe curten · & carpis þis wordis : 860
 “Philip,” quod þis ilke freke · & forwith him standis,
 “þof it vn-semely me sytt · þe so for to caȝt,
 Noȝt as þi suget & þi soñ · my sawe I þe ȝeld,
 Bot as a felaw or a frynde · fallis to a-nothire. 864
- Sire, latt þi wreth a-wai wende · & with þi wyfe saȝtiȝt,
 And þe los of Lesias · litiȝt þou charge.
 I did bot my deuire · to drepe him, me² thinke ; 867
 For it awe him noȝt sa openly · slike ossing to make.
 And ser, vnworthely þou wroȝt · & þat þou wele knawis,
 Quen þou was boune with a brand · my bodi to
 schende.”
- þen rewis þe riche kyng · of vnride werkis,
 Blischis vp to þe berne · & braste out at grete. 872
 þen airis him oñ Alexander · to his aweñ modire ;

¹ MS. fete, altered to feete. ² Added in the margin.

³ quod. ⁴ Read aslakes.

Ayres toward alexander · & aymes¹ hym to smyte.

Bot he fayled þe fote · or he first wenes, 844

He stakez, he stombles · þat stand he ne might,

Bott ay he fonders & falles · as he ferd wer.

The ferer forthward [he fares] · þe faster [he] snappers;

What was þe cause of þis case · þat knawys our Lord. 848

"What now," quod alexander · "qwatt ayles þe to
fale?"

Hase þou no forse ne no fete · ne fele to þi selueñ?

For oñ freke to be so ferd · or afryad oþer,

And þou þe gubernare of grece · þat is a grete wondre!" 852

Then tittis he douñ in þat tene · þe tables ilkoñ,

Owt of þe halle by þe hare · hales he þe birde,

And so þe wye in his wrath · wrekes hys modre,

And philip fallyñ was seke · & aH þe fest stroblet. 856

So als byliue als alexander · on angre aslakes,

He lendes on-lofte to þe lord · a lityH dayes aftir,

Cares hym with comforth · þe kyng for to visitt,

Comes hym to þe cortyns · & carpez þees wordez: 860

"Philip," quod þis fele freke · & for-with hym standez,

"þof² it vnsemely me sitt · þe so for to calle,

Noght als a sogett ne þi sonne · my saw I þe yeld,

Bot als a fellow or a frend · falles to an-other. 864

Sir, lat þi wrethes aH wende · & with þi wyfe sagthyH,

And þe losse of sir lysyas · lityH þou charge.

I dyd bot my deuer · to drepe hym, me thynke, 867

For it awght hym noȝt so opynly · sike ossynges to make.

And vnworthly þou wroght · & þat þou wele knawys,

When þou was bowne with a brande · my body to shende."

Then rewys hym þe riche kyng · of hys vnrode werkez,

Blisshes vpp to þe berne · & bristes owt to wepe. 872

Than ayres hym on sir alexander · to hys awne modre;

¹ MS. aynes.

² MS. Of.

[Fol. 15 b.]

Philip and
Olympias are
reconciled.

"Bees not a-gloped, madame · ne greued at my fadire ;
If aH ȝe synned him be-syde · as ȝour selfe knawis,
þar-of na we may þe wite · it was godis wiH." 876
With þat he fanges hire furthe · to Philip hire ledis,
And he comly hire kist · & cordis with hire faire,
Anes with Olympadas · & þe tothire woydis,
And lofes hire lely · to his lyfes ende. 880

XIX

Heralds come
from Darius to
Philip.

They demand
tribute.
Alexander
refuses it,

saying that the
old hen is now
barren.

The messengers
take their leave.

[Fol. 16.]

¶ Quintus passus Alexandri.

Sone eftir in a seson · as þe buke sais,
Come drieuand fra Darius · þe deyne Empereure,
Heraudis on heȝe hors · hendlly a-rayed,
To ser Philip þe fers · to feche þar trouage. 884
Litil kyngis þar come · as þe clause tellis,
Liȝt doune at þe loge · & þar blonkis leues,
Caires in-to þe curte · to craue him þar dettis,
Touchis titly þar tale · & tribute him askis. 888
"ȝa, caires hame," quod Alexander · "a-gayñ to ȝour
kithes,
And sais ȝour maister, he make · na ma sandis ;
For sen Philip had a fresche soñ · þat fast now
encressis, 891
þat bees noȝt suffird, I suppose · nane slike him to ȝeld.
For sais ȝour lord, þe lefe heñ · þat laide hir first egg,¹
Hire bodi nowe with barante · is barely consumed,
And is Darius so of his dett · duly depryued ;
And be þis titill, him tellis · na tribute him fallis." 896
þen merualid þam þe messangirs · mekiȝ of his speche,
His witt & his wisdome · wonderly praysed.
Faire at ser Ph[ilip] þe fers · fang ȝai þar leue, 899
And syne clene of aH þe curte · & cairis to þar landis.
To þe palais of þe proude kyng · to persie ȝai went,
Dose þam in to Darius · þar he oñ dese syttis,
And telles him how his trouage · is tynt al-to-gedire,

¹ MS. 'eȝe', corrected to egg.

“Beys noght aglopned, gude Dame · ne greued to my fadre,
 Ak if þou haue synned hym bysyde · als þou þi-seluen says, [Fol 5 b.]
 þurfore no gome may þe gylt · for it is goddes wille.” 876
 With þat fongez hir þis freke · & to philip ledes,
 And he opynly hir kyssitt · & cordes with hir faire,
 þus [he anes] with olimphades · & þis other woydez,
 And leues louely with hir · alþ hys lyue days. 880

Quintus [Passus].

Sone aftir in a seson · als says me þe writtes,
 Come dryvand from sir darius · þe digne Emperour,
 Harraldes on hye horsez · hendly arayede,
 To sir philopp þe fers · to fett þair truage. 884
 Kengez þar come · als þe clause tellez,
 Lightyd douñ at þe loge · laftyn þar blonkes,
 Cairen fourth in-to þe courte · to crauen þair dett,
 Tochett titely þare tale · & tribute hym asked. 888
 “þa, ayres hame,” quod alexander · “agayn to your
 kythez,
 And says your maister, to me · he make no moo sondez ;
 For seth philop had a fressh sonñ · þat fast now en-
 cresse[s],¹ 891
 That beys not sufferd, I suppose · no suche to hym ȝeld.
 And says your lord, þe leyue henne · þat lade hir frist Egge,
 Hir body now with baraynte · is barely consumed,
 And so is darius of hys dette · dewly deprived ;
 And be þis tale, hym telle · no tribute hym falles.” 896
 Than mervalett þes messyngers · mykyll of hys speche,
 Hys witt & hys wisdom · þai wonderly praseñ.
 Faire at philip þe fers · þair leue þai fangeñ,
 And syne clene from þe courte · caires to þair landez. 900
 To þe palass of þe prouude [king] · to perse þai wenden,
 And dyd þaim to sir darius · þare he on dese syttes,
 And tald hym howe is truage · is tyntt alþ-togedre,

¹ The lines 890 and 891 are written after line 892 in MS.

XX

Messengers come
to tell Philip
that the men of
Armenia have
revolted.

Philip invades
Armenia.

A Macedonian,
named Pausanias,

rebels against
Philip.

He had long
loved the queen.

Philip goes out
against him.

Philip flees.

Pausanias
pursues.

As Alexander awyñ mouth · had þañ aH enfourmed. 904

¶ þen messangirs to Messedoyne · come in þe mene
qwile

To Ph[ilip] þe feH kyng · & freschly him talde,
þat aH þe erthe of Ermony · Erles & princes,
þat suld be suget to him-selfe · wald seke him with
armes. 908

And Alexander belyfe · as athil mañ sulde,
Vndirfangid to feȝt · for Ph[ilip] to wende,
Gedirs him a grete ost · graithes him in plates,
And aires toward Ermony · þat erd to distroy. 912

þan was a man in Messadone · in þe marche duellid,
A proued prince & a proude · Pausanna was hatteñ,
A big berne & a bald · in brenys to ryde,
þe soñ of ane Cerastis · as þe buke witnes. 916

þis freke aH his franche · of Ph[ilip] he haldis,
And was a suget to him-selfe · & serues him aȝt;
Bot þañ he depely many day · disired to haue þe quene,
And lyes vmlapped with hire lufe · many lange wynter.
And by¹ þat cause to þe kyng · he kest slik a hate, 921
þat he desiris his deth · & diȝtis [him] þare-fore.

aH þe folke of his affinite · he freschly a-semlis, 923
And sekis furth with a hoge some · a-saile² him to ȝeld.

Queñ Ph[ilip] heris of þat fare · gret ferly hiñ thinke[s],
Ferkis furth with a fewe folk · him in þe fild metis,
Seis þe multitude sa mekiH · of men at he brings,
Braidis oñ his blonke toward þe burȝe · & þaim þe bak
shewis. 928

þen schrikis schilli aH þe schalkis · & schoutis him at
anes,

And Pausanna þe prince · a-pon a proude stede
Sprengis out with a spere · & spedis him eftir,
And þurgh þe bac in-to þe brest · him beris to þe erd; 932

¹ Inserted in the margin.

² h inserted before a-saile, but subpuncted.

Als alex[ander] awne mouth · þaim aH had enformed. 904
þan messyngers to masydon · come in þe meyne qwyle,

To philopp þe feH kyng · & felly hym toldyñ,
þat aH þe erth of ermony · Erelez¹ & princez,
At suld be sogett to hym-seluen · wald seke hym with
armeze. 908

And alexander als belieue · als atheH man suld,
Vnderfonged þar þe feght · for philip his fader,

And ayers toward ermony · þat erth to distroy. 912

Then was a man in massidon · þat in þe marche dwellyd, [Fol. 6.]

A proved prince & a proude · pausana he heght,

A Bigg^t berne & a bald · in brenes to ryde,

þe sonne of one sorastes · als says me þe text! 916

This freke of all þe fraunches · of kyng philop haldes,

And was sogett to hym-seluen · & seruage hym at

Bot ȝett depely mony day · desired he þe whene,

And leued vnlappyd with hir loue · mony lang wynter.

And be þat cause to þe kyng · he kest suche a ha

Pat he desired hys deyde · & dight hym þarfore.

AH þe folke of hys affinite · he fresly assemblez, 923

And sekez owt with a hoge some · a-sawte hym to yelde.

When philip herd of þis fare · grett ferly he thynkez,

Ferkez forth with a few folke · & hym in feld metes,

Seys þe multitude so much · of men þat he brynges, 927

Brades toward þe burgh on hys blonk · & hys bak

shewys.

ban strikes shilly all þe shalkys² · & shotes at onys,

And pausana þe prince · vpoñ a prouude stede

Sprynges forth with a spere · & spedes hym after,

And þorow þe bake in-to þe brest · hym berez to þe erth. 932

¹ The MS. has & baron after Erelez, but crossed through and repunctuated.

² all þe is repeated here, but expuncted in MS.

[Fol. 16 b.]

AH ware he wondirly wondid · he wendis noȝt be-lyfe.
His men & ah þe Messadones · fuȝt manly ware
stourbed,

Pausanias is
puffed up with
his success.

Quat of doloure & dyn · quen þai him dede hopid.
Pausanna þan for þe prowis · slike a pride hentis, 936
Vnethes wist he for welth · wirke quat he miȝt.
He prekis in-to þe palais · to puȝt out þe quene,
Wenys to wild hire at wiȝt · & away lede. 939

Alexander
returns with
an army.

þan comes Alexander in þat cas · þe cronaclis tellis,
With a riall ost · of many able princes,
Airand out¹ of Ermony · & had ah þe erth woȝt;
Sees slike a rottillyng in þe rewme · & ridis al þe faster.
þaȝ past vp þe proud quene · in-to preue chambre, 944
Wayues out at wyndou · & waytis a-boute,
Saze be þe sygnes & be sike · as with hire soȝ comys,
And be þe alyens armes · at he was ah maister.

The queen sees
Alexander
coming.

With þat scho haldis out hire hede · & heȝe to him
callis, 948

She implores his
help.

“ Quare is þi werdes, my wale soȝ · þou waȝ of þi godis,
þou suld be victour & venge · & vencust² neuire ?

If þou haue³ any hert here · help now þi modire.”

Pausanias goes
out against
Alexander,

Sone as pausanna þe prince · with-in þe palais heris 952
þe comyng⁴ of þe kene knyȝt · he caires him agaynes,

who kills him.

Presis out of þe palais · with a⁴ pake armed,
And metes him in þe myd-fild · with a mekill nounbre.

And Alexander be-lyue · quen he oȝ him waites, 956
He swyngis out with a swerd · & swappis him to dethe;

Alexander is
told that his
father is mortally
wounded.

And þe renkis, ah the route · reches vp þaire wapen
Vn-to þis kid conuirour · & cried eftir socure.

þaȝ was þar ane in þe ost · oȝ Alexander callis, 960
Sayd, “ Ph[ilip] þi fadire · is in þe fild drepid.”

And he halis furth on hede · & halfe-dede him fynlis,
Brusches doune by þe berne · & bitterly wepis.

¹ Inserted in the margin. ² M.S. vencustis.

³ M.S. haue hafe, altered to haue. ⁴ Above the line.

He heldes douñ in þe hey way · & halfe deyde liggez, 933*
 And was so wonderly woundit · he wenyd noght to leve. 933
 Hys men & aH þe masidons · fuH fowly wer stourblett,

What for doloure & dyne · when þai hym dede hopeñ.

Pausana for þees prowes · slike a pride hentes, 936

That vneth he¹ wist for welth · what he wirke might.

He prekes into þe palace · to puH owt þe whene,

Wenes to wilde hir at wiH · & away lede.

þan comes eueñ onon · þe cronacles telles, 940

Alexander with ane oste · of mony able princez,

Ayrand owt of Ermony · hed aH þe erth wonne ;

Herd suche a rastelyng in þe realm · & rydez þe faster. 2a victoria alexandri

Than passyd forth þe prouude whene · into a prevay chamer,

Wayfez vp a wyndow · & waytes þar-owt¹, 945

Sees wele by signes · at hir sonne come,

And by þe alyens armes · þat he was aH mayster.

With þat she haldez forth hir heued · & hegh to hym

calles : 948 [Fol. 6 b.]

“ Whare er þi werdes, my wale sonn · þou wan of þi goddez,

Thu suld be victour to venge · & venkest neuer?

Yf þou haue ony hert her · help now þi moder.”

Sone as pausana in þe place · þis tale herys, 952

And þe commyng of þis kene knyght · he carys hym ayayns,

Preses owt of þe palasse · with a pake enarmed,

And metes hym in þe myd-feld · with a much nowmbre.

Bot alexander als belyfe · as he on hym wates, 956

He swyngez owt a sharpe swerde · & hym to deth swappys ;

And þen hys renkez aH in rowte · rechen vp þar waypynnez

Vnto þis kyd conquerour · & cryeñ aftir socour. 959

þen sayd þar an with-in þe ost · & oñ alexander calles,

Sayd : “ philip þi fader · is in þe feld drepyd.”

And he hyes þen fast forth · & halfe-deyde hym fyndez,

Brushys doun by þe berne · & bitterly wepys.

¹ MS. hy, *corrected to he.*

[Fol. 17.] "A ! Alexander !" quod þe kyng · "now am I at¹ ane
ende ;" 964

A litil liftis vp his liddis · & lokis in his face ;
"Bot ȝit it gladis me," quod þe gome · "to ga þus to
deth,

To se my slaare in my siȝt · be sa sone ȝolden, 967
A ! wele be þe, my wale soñ" · & waged with his hede ;
"þou has baldly oñ my bane · & bremely me vengid."
With þat he bloþirs in þe brest · & þe breth stoppis,

and dies.

And in a spedful space · so þe sprete ȝeldis.
And Alexander ay oñ-anē · augirly he wepis, 972
And gretis for him as greuously · as he him geten hade.
With barons & bachelors · him broȝt to þe cite,

And erdis him in his awen erð · as Emperoure fallis.
The day efter his deth · drerely him wendis 976

Alexander his aire · & syttis in his trone,
A clene croune oñ his hede · clustird with gemmes,
To se how him seme waldl · þe sete of his fadire.

He seis doune in þe sete · with septer in hande, 980

Makis a crie þat aH þe curte · kniȝtis & erles
Suld put þaim in-to presens · his precep to here.
And aH comyñ at a kaH · & oñ kneis heldis ; 983
þan blisches he to his baronage · & breues þir wordis :
"Lo ! maistirs of Messedone · sa miȝty meñ & noble,
ȝe Traces & of Tessaloyne · & ȝe þe trewe Grekis,
How likis ȝow nowe ȝour lege lord ? · lokis oñ my
fourme, 987

"Dismiss all fear.
And letis aH ferdschip at flee · & fange vp ȝour hertis,
And aires for nane alyens · quils Alexander lastis.
For with þe graunt of my god · I gesse, or I dye,
þat aH the Barbare blode · saH bowe to my-selfe.
þare is na region ne rewme · ne renke vnder heuen, 992
Ne nouthire-square na nacion · bot it saH my name loute.
For we of grece saH haue þe gree · with grace ay to wildl,
And anely be ouer þe werd · honourl & praysed.



Philip is glad
to know of
Alexander's
success ;



Alexander
buries him.

He assumes
the crown,

and summons all
his knights.

He addresses
them.

Every nation
shall serve me

[Fol. 17 b.]

¹ Inserted at the end of the line.

"Aa! alexander, sonn!" quod þis athe^H · "[now] am I
att on ende." 964

A lity^H lyftes hys lendes · & lukes in hys face;
"Bot ȝett me gladdes," quod þis gome · "to byde þus on
lyve,

To see my slaer in my sight · be so sone ȝholden. 967

A! wele be þou, wale son" · & wagged with hys heued;

"For þou hase baldly on my bane · & bremely me venged."

With þat he blothers in þe brest · & hys breth stoppys,

And in a spedful^H space · þe spirit he ȝeldez.

Bott alexander euerlike · awgerdly pleynez, 972

And grettes for hym als grefully · as he hym gettyn hed.

*Nota mortem
philippi, &c.*

With barons & with bachelors · he bare hym to þe cyte,

And erdes hym in hys awne erth · as emperour falles.

The day after hys deth · þen durely he¹ wendes 976

Alexander hys ayre · vppe in hys awne trone,

A clere croune on hys heued · clustird with gemmys,

To se how he¹ seme wald · þe sete of hys fader.

He sittes doun in þat sete · with septour in hand, 980

Makes a cry þat a^H þe courte · knyghtez & Erelez

Suld come & be present · hys precept^t to here.

And a^H þai come at hys calle · & on kneys heldit,

þan blyssez he vnto hys bernes · & breues þes wordez: 984

"Lo! maisterlynges of massydonⁿ · so myghty & so noble,

[Fol. 7.]

Ye tracez of thessalonⁿ · & ye trew grekez,

How likez now you your leege lord? · loke on my forme,

And lettes a^H ferdshipys² flee · & fongez vpp your hertes,
And arghes for no aliens · whilse alexander lefys. 989

For with þe graunt^t of my god · I gesse, or I dye,

þat a^H þe barberon blode · sa^H bow to my seluen.

Thare is no region ne realmⁿ · so riche vnder heuen, 992

Ne noþer-whare no nacion · bot sa^H my name lowte.

For we of grece sal haue þe gre · with grace ay to weld,

And only ouer a^H þe werld · be honourd & prassed.

¹ read him.

² MS. frendshipys.

Whoever wants
arms, let him
take them."

And quilk of al̄ myne athil̄ meñ · þat any armes
wantis,

996

Lat pas in-to my palais · & plates him delyuire,
And he¹ at of his aweñ has · harnas him swythe,
And make him boune ilka berne · to batail̄ to ride."

All the old
knights reply,
saying,

þañ answard him with [a] voice · al̄ his proud̄ princes,
And Erles in his Empire · þat ware in eld strikeñ, 1001
Hathils of hiȝe age · Auncient kniȝtis,

Barons & bachelers · & bryssid ware in Armes :

" Sire, we hafe farne to þe fiȝt · & bene in fild preued
With ser Ph[ilip] ȝour fadire · mony fele wynter, 1005
And now vs failis al̄ oure force · & oure flesch waykis ;
For be þe floure neuer sa fresche · it fadis at þe last.

" Our strength
fails us.

Sire, al̄ þe ȝeris of oure ȝouth · es ȝare syne passid,

And we for-trauailid & terid · þat now oure topp haris,
Al to heuy to be hildid · in any here wedis, 1010
Or any angwische of armes · any mare suffire.

Our heads cannot
bear the helmet.

For-þi, lord, with ȝoure leue · we lawe ȝow be-sechis

We may noȝt stand now in stede · oure strenth is [to]
febiȝt.

We beseech you
to let us go.

Wale ȝow oþer werriouris · þat wiȝt ere & ȝonger,

Slike as ere stife in a stoure · strakis to thole."

" Nay,"
says the king,
" I want old men,

" Nay, be my croune," quod þe king · " my couatyng is
elder

1016

þe sadnes of slike meñ · þan swyftnes of childir ;

For barnes in þar bignes · it baldis þam̄ mekiȝt,

Oft with vnprouednes in presse · to pas out of lyfe ;

For-thi ouer-siȝt of alde men · I anely me chese ; 1020

Be connynge & be consaile · þai kyth ai þar werkis."

þe sleȝt of hys² sapience · þai selcuthely prayse,

And clene a-cordis to his carpe · kniȝtis & othire.

¶ þen dose him furthe þis dere kyng · a litiȝ dais eftir,
Alexander with ane ost · of many athil̄ dukis, 1025

who are wary."

All praise his
choice.

[Fol. 18.]

¹ Inserted at the end of the line.

² þar, altered to hys.

And whilk of al my athe^H men · any armour wantes, 996

Bot passe into my palasse · & plates hym delyver,
And he þat of hys awne hase · harnes hym swith,
And make hym bowne euerylke berne · to bate^H to wend."
þen answerd hym with a voyce · al hys prouude princez
And Ereles of hys Empire · þat wer in elde stryken, 1001
Hatels¹ of hegh age · & auancet knyghez,

Barons & bachelers · þat bresyd wer in armys :

" Sir, we haue faren in-to feld² · & ben in feld² preuett
With sir philip your fader · many fele wyntre, 1005
And now vs falez al our force · & owr fleche wakens ;
For be þe floure neuer so freshe · it fades at þe last.
Sir, al þe ȝeres of owr youth · bene ȝare syne passyd, 1008
And we for-traveld & for-tyred · þat now owr topp horez,
Al to hevy to be hold · with ony here wedes,
Or ony awnterez of armes · to any more suffre.

For-þi, lorde, with your leve · we loughly besekes, 1012
We may noght stande you in stede · our strenthez er to
feble.

Lat wale you other weriowrs · þat wight er & yonge,
Sike as styffe er in stowre · strakez to dele."

" Nay, by my Corone," quod þe kyng · " my covetyng is
helder 1016

The sadnessse of suche men · þen swyftnes of childer ;
For barnez in þair bignes · þat beldez þaim to meky^H,
Oft with vnpro[ued]nes³ in prese⁴ · passen owt of liue ;
For-þi ouersight of ald meñ⁵ · I anely me chese ; 1020
By Connyngh & conse^H · þai kythen ay þar Werkez." [Fol. 7 b.]
So þe sleght of hys sapience · þai selcouthly praseñ,
And clene acordes to hys carpyng⁴ · knyghez & othre.⁶
Than dose hym furth þe derfe kyng⁴ · a lity^H days aftir,
Alexander with ane ost · of mony athe^H dukez, 1025

¹ So in MS.

² MS. repeats feld.

³ MS. vnproness.

⁴ MS. prorese, corrected to prese.

⁵ MS. almeñ.

⁶ MS. othree.

He goes towards Italy.

He assaults Chalcedon.

He calls on its warriors to fight to the death,

or to yield at once.

He enters Italy.

The Romans give him 60,000 besants.

He lays Europe under tribute, and goes to Africa.

He wins Africa.

[Fol. 18 b.]

Samed a vnsene somme · to saile he begynnes
 Ouer in-to ytaile · þa yles to distruye.
 In-to þe coste of Calodone · he comes him ouer first,
 And þar a cite he asailes · &¹ in sege lengis. 1029
 Bot wees wiȝtly with-in · þe wallis ascendidȝ,
 Freschly fendifid of · & fersly with-stude.
 “þe Calodoyns,” quod þe kyng · he callis fra with-
 oute, 1032
 “Outhire macches ȝow maynly þerto · or namely dies,
 And fiȝtis fast with ȝour fais · to ȝe fey worthe,
 Or ȝefes ȝarely vp þe ȝerde · & ȝeld me þe cite.”
 So chaunses it þis chiftan · or he a-cheued þine, 1036
 þat fele he brenes of þa bernes · & þe burȝe wynnes,
 And caires so out of Calodone · quen he it couerid hadȝ,
 Ouer þe ythes in-to Italee · & þat Ile entirs. 1039
 þen ware þai² [redles of] rede · aȝt redd of his come,
 Prays him aȝt of þe pees · & presandis him faire,
 Sexti thousand þai him send · of sekire besandis,
 Of clere gold of þaire kist · & coruns a hundrethe.
 þare tuke he tribute þat tyme · þe titil recordis, 1044
 Out euyn in-to þe occident · of aȝt at þare duellidȝ,
 Of qwilke þe erde & þe erthe · Europe was callid,
 And ames þan to Affrike · & aȝt at esse leues.
 þan raȝt he fra þa regions · & remowed his ost, 1048
 Cachis in-to anoþire kythe · & crossis ouer þe stremes,
 Aires in-to Affrike · with many athilȝ prince[s],
 Anoþer wing of þe werd · & wynnes it be-lyfe,
 þat syde sodanly & sone · þat ser he a-cheues. 1052
 For þar he fande bot fewe · þat felly withstude,
 Na ridars in þa³ regions · ne rebell bot littilȝ;
 He laches it þe liȝtlyere · as was þe les wonder.
 þan kaires he fra þo contres · & kerue[s] ouer þe
 stremes, 1056
 Furthe to Frantites he ferd · slike a ferre Ile,

¹ Above the line.

² MS. þe.

³ MS. na, corrected to þa.

Sampnez ane vnsene some · to sayle he begynnez
 Oure in-to Itale · þe ylez to distroy.
 In-to þe cost of calydon · he commez on first, 1028
 And þar a cyte assalez · and in a sege lenges.
 Bot wies wightlyt with-in · þe waliez ascendyñ,
 Freshly defendyngt of · & ferslyt with-stondyñ.
 "Yhe calodons," quod þe kyng · and [calles] from with-
 owte, 1032

"Owther mache yow manly¹ þarto · or maynly dyez,
 And feght fast with ȝouer faes · to yhe faye worthen,
 Or yevez ȝarely vp þe ȝerd · and gefes me vp þe cite."
 So chauncez it þat cheftan · or he achevet þine, 1036
 That fele he britens of þa bernez · & þe burgh wynnez.
 þen carez owt of calidon · when he it coueryd hadde,
 Owre þe ylez of ytale · & þa ylez entrees.
 And þai wer redles of-ragthe² · of þis kengez commyng,
 Prayed hym all for þe pease · & present hym faire, 1041
 Sixty thousand hym sendes · of sekyr besandez,
 Of clere gold of þair kystez · and corownez a hundreth.
 Thare tuke he tribute þat tyme · as þe text recordez, 1044
 Owt onon into þe occident · of alþ þat þar dwellyd,
 Of þe whilke þe erth · of Ermony is callyd,
 And amez hym toward aufrike · & alþ at ease leues.
 Than raught he from þe regions · & rowmyd hys oste, 1048
 Cachez into an-other kyth · & crosez ouer þe stremez,
 Ayrez hym into aufrik · with mony athell princez,
 An-other wynge of þe werld · wynnes it belyue,
 þat syde sodanly & sone · þat sire hym achevys. 1052
 For þar he fand bott few · to fersly hym withstonde,
 Ne ryders in þat regions · ne rebellez bot lityl;
 And he þaim laught all þe lighter · as was les wondre.
 þen cairez he fro þoes cuntrees · & kerues ouer þe
 stremes, 1056

Forth to francides he fared · suche a ferme yle,

[Fol. 8.]

¹ MS. maly, corrected by later hand to manly.² So in MS.; both MSS. corrupt.

He goes to the temple of Ammon.

On the way he sees a huge hart.

He draws a bow, and shoots it;

the place is still called Sagittarius.

Alexander offers to Ammon.

 He comes to a place with 15 towns,

and 12 rivers.

He halts there.

He sees Serapis in a dream,
[Fol. 19.]

who asks if he can move a mountain.

Seches þar to a synagoge · him-selfe & his princes,

Amon þar awen god · at þai honoure myȝt. 1059

And so to þe temple as he tiȝt · with his¹ tidl Erles,

þań metis him myddis þe way · was meruale to sene,

A hert with a huge hede · þe hareest oñ erthe,

Was to be-hald as a harow · for-helid ouer þe tyndis;

And þań comande him þe kyng · kenely to schote, 1064

Bot þar was na mań so nemyȝ · þat him hit couthe.

“A! hillia, haile,” quod Alexander · & him a narawe hent,

Droȝe, & at þe first draȝte · him dreped for euire.

Fra þethen to þis ilk day · þan is þat ilke place, 1068

þe stede þar þis stith mań · strikis þis hert,

Sagittarius forsoth · meñ gafe it to name,

And wiȝ do for þat ilke werk · ay qwen þe werd turnes.

þen aires him oñ ser Alexander · tiȝt Amoń temple,

Offirs to his awen gode · & honours him faire, 1073

Geuys him garsons of gold · & of gud stanes,

And hald hestes him to hete · him hettirly besekis.

þan passes he þethen with his princes · to sich a place wendis, 1076

Capho Resey we rede · þe romaunce it callis;

And þar-in fyndis him þe freke · fyftene Burghes,

And glidand to þe grete see · xij grym waters.

Of ilka bildl, sais þe buke · barred was þe ȝatis, 1080

Stoken stifyl with-out · with staplis & cheynes.

þare lengis him lefe þe¹ kynge · & logis aȝt a neuen,

And sacrifice þar efsones² · to many sere godis.

þe same niȝt in his slepe · Seraphis aperis, 1084

Anothire of his grete godis · in a grym fourme,

Cled in a comly clathe · of castans hewes,

And silis euyń to him-selfe · & said him þir wordis:

“Alexander, athiȝ kyng” · & asperly spekis, 1088

Toward a miȝti montayne · him myntis with his fynger,

¹ At the end of the line.

² Read efsones.

Sekes þar to a synagoge · hym-selfe & hys princez,
 Amone þar awne god · þat þai adour mighten,
 And so to hys tempyȝ to-teght · aȝt with hys tried Ereles.
 Than met þaim in myd way · was mervale to see, 1061
 Ane hert with a hoge heued · þe aughfulest on erth,
 Was to behald as a harrow · foreheld ouer with tyndez;
 And þan Comandez þaim þe kyng · kenely to shote, 1064
 Bot þar was no man so nemyȝ · þat hym hit couth.
 “A! eueȝ hale!” quod alexander · & an arow hyntes,

Drogh, and at þe frist draught · hym drepyd for euer.
 Fro þine þan vnto þis day · þan is þat ilke place, 1068
 The stede þar þis styffe man · strikez þis hert,
 Sagittarius for soth · men seggen it to name,
 And wiȝt do for þat ilke deyd · ay to þe werld lastes.
 Than ayrez hym on sir alexander · to þe amonez temple,
 Offers to hys awne god · & honours hym faire, 1073
 Gyffez hym garsons¹ of gold · and other gude stanez,
 And held hestez hym to hete · heterly besekez.
 Than passid he þine with hys princez · to siche a place
 wendes, 1076
 Chaipho rosey we rede · þe romanys it telles;
 And þarin fyndez þe freke · fyftene burges,
 And glydand to þe grett see · twelfe gret waters.
 Off ilke belde, says þe buke · barred was þe ȝates, 1080
 Stoken styfly withowte · with barrez of yren.
 Thare lengez þe leue kynge · & loges aȝt an eueȝ,
 And sacrificed þar eft-sones · to mony sere goddez.
 The same nyght in hys slepe · serapys appered, 1084
 An-other of hys grett goddez · & in a grymme forme,
 Clede in a clath · of castanez colour,
 And syles euen to hym-selfe · & sayd hym þees wordez:
 “A! alexander, ateȝ² kynge” · and asperly spekys,
 And toward a myghty mountane · hym myntyd with hys
 fynger, 1089

¹ MS. garfons.² So in MS.

"May þou oȝt, lede, þe ȝonder lawe · lyft oñ þi schulder,
And stire it oute of þe stede · & stable in a-nothire?"

He answers,
"Nay."

"Nay, qua miȝt þat," quod þe mañ · "for mede vndire
heuen?" 1092

Serapis prophesies that Alexander's name shall endure as long as the mountain. Alexander asks when his death will come.

"Sire, as ȝone ȝondire hiȝe hiȝ · saȝ ay hald his place,
So sall þi name fra now furth · be mynned in mynde,
And ay to þe day of dome · þi dedis be remenbrid." 1096

Serapis says it is better for him not to know;

þan Alexander belyue · him askis a demaunde, 1096
"I be-seche þe now, Syraphas · if þou me say wald¹
þe prophecy, or þou pas · of aȝ my playñ werdis, 1099
How me is destayned to dye · & quen my day fallis?"

but he will be poisoned while still young.

"Sire, certayne," quod Seraphis · "as to my-selfe
thinkis, 1101

For any hathiȝ vnder heuen · I hald for þe better,
Withouten wa² noȝt at wete · þe wathe of his ende
þeñ know³ þe cas or it come · & ay in care lenge. 1104
Bot neuer-þe-les I saȝ þe neueñ · sen þou me now prays,
þou sall⁴ be drechid of a drinke · a draȝte of vnsele,
And aȝ þi ȝeris ere ȝeten ȝare · & þi ȝouth fenyst, 1107
Lange or þou haue meteñ þe merke · of þi mydill age.
Bot quen ne in quat time · sal qwaite þe þis aunter,
Enquire me noȝt þat questioñ · for I queth þe it neuer.
For outhire out of þe orient · saȝ openly here-fter
Vndo þe dreȝt of þi days · & þi ded teȝ." 1112
þan waynest him þis vayne god · & voidis fra þe
chambre.

Another oracle
will tell him
more.

þe modi kyng on þe morne · aȝ monand he ryses;
þe mast parti of his princes · & of his proud ost
Hastis þam in-to Ascoiloym · & þar þai him bydis. 1116
þan callis he to him carpentaris · & comandis þaim
swyþe

[Fol. 19 b.]

He calls his
carpenters,

¹ After l. 1097 the MS. has a half-line, viz. 'For any hathiȝ vndire heuen.' This is really the former half of l. 1102 below, and is marked for omission in the MS. This accounts for the omission of l. 1098 in the numbering, which is made to agree with Stevenson's edition.

² MS. to noȝt at wete; *but either to, or at, must be omitted.*

³ *The w above the line.* ⁴ MS. sall sal.

" May þou ought, lede, yond[e]r low · lift on þi shulder,
And stere it owt of one stede · & stablet in ane other ? "

" Nay, wha myȝt þat," quod þe man, · " for mede vnder
heuen ? " 1092

" Sir, as yonder hye hille · saȝt halde ay hys place,
So saȝt þi name owt of nowmbre · be nomyn in-to mynde, [Fol. 8 b.]
And vnto þe day of dome · þi dedes be remenbryd."

Than alexander als belyue · hym askys a demande, 1096

" I beseke þe, sir serapys · yf þou me say wald¹
þe prophecy or þou passe · of all my playne werdes, 1099
How me is destanet to dye · & when my day fallez ? "

" Sir, certanly," quod seraphys · " als to my-seluen
thynkez, 1101

To ony atheȝt vnder heuen · I hald it for þe better,
With-owtyn wa noȝt to witte · þe wothe of hys ende
Ne knew þe cause or it come · & ay in care lenge. 1104

Bot neuer-þe-lesse I saȝt þe neveñ · sen þou me prayes,
Thu saȝt be drenchett with a drinke · a draught of vnclene,
And al þe yherez þar · in þi youth fynyshytt,

Lange or þou metyn haue þe merke · of þi medyȝt age.
Bott when ne in what age or tyme · saȝt falle þis awentur,
Inquire me noght þis question · I queth it þe neuer. 1110

For other owt of þe orient · saȝt openly hereafter

Vnto² þe droȝt of þi days · & þi deth to³ telle." 1112

þan vanyshit þis wayn god · & woydez from þe
chawmbre.

The mody kyng on þe morne · al murnand he risez,
þe moste party of hys princez · & of hys proude ostez
Bound to ascolon · and þar hym abydez. 1116

Than callyd he to hys carpenters · comand þaim
swythe

¹ Line 1098 is omitted in the numbering; see note on p. 56.

² So; for Vndo.

³ Better omitted.

and builds
Alexandria.

In mynde & in memory of him · to make a cite,
And neuens it his aweñ name · þat neuer syne changid,
Bot Alexsander ay furth · after him-selueñ. 1120

(XXV)

He goes to
Egypt.

There he finds a
black image.

He inquires who
it is.

He is told it is
Anectanabus.

He weeps,
saying, "It is my
own father."

T Sextus passus Alexandri.
Now airis he furthe with his ost · to Egist he
thinkes ;
And clene aH þe contre · quen þai his come herd,
As he had bene a hiȝe gode · þai ȝode him a-gayñ,
Resaued him with reuerence · & to þar rewme lede. 1124
þere entirs him þat Emperoure · & in þat erd findis
Of Anec his awen sire · ane ymage of sable,
A berne was of blake stane · aH þe body heweñ
With conyschance of a kynge · with² coroñ & septere.
þan askis of þam Alexander · as he þar-on lokis, 1129
Quat maner of mañ apoñ mold· it was made efter ?
"Sire, Anectabus" · quod aH with a steueñ,
"þat aH þe erth of Egipte · enerid vñquile." 1132
With þat þe flammend flode · feH in his eȝeñ,
"þat Anec," quod þis athil kyng · "was myne aweñ
fadire."

þañ fallis he flat oñ þe fold · & þe fete kyssis ;
On þe stane quare it stode · stilly he mournes. 1136
Syne in-to Sirie with his seggis · he soȝt at þe gaynest,
And þai² as baratours bald · him bigly with-standis,
Set oñ him sadly · & sloȝe of his kniȝtis ;
Bot ȝet ȝarely are he ȝode · þai ȝald him þe regne. 1140
þan draf he sa to Damac · with dukis & princes,
And sone he sesyd aH þat syde · & Sydoyne he takis,
And þen trussis him to Tyre · & þare his tentis settis
Be-syde þe cite with a soȝe · & in a sege lengys. 1144
þare he lies with his ledis · lang or he foundes,
Before þe burȝe with his bernes · & mekiH bale suffirs.

¹ callid added in a later hand, at the end of the line.

² Inserted at the end of the line.

Int. #1 (Pn. Fil. 82
MM 256)

Münchner Museum

In mynde & memory of hym · to make þar a cite,
 And after his¹ awne name · þat neuer syne chaungett,²
 Alexander ay forth · after hym-selueñ. 1120

Sextus Passus.

Now ayers he forth with hys Ereles, · to egip̄ he
 wendes;

And clene alþ þe cuntree · when þai hys comyng harde,
 Als he hed ben a hegh god · þai halden hym agayns,
 Resaved hym with reuerence · & to þair realm̄ ledyn.

Thare entrez hym þe Emperour · and in þat erth fyndez
 Of anec hys awne syre · ane ymage of sabyñ,

A berne was of blak stane · alþ þe body eueñ 1127

With conyshaunce of kyngez · coroñ and septur in hand.

Than askys he þaim alexander · als he þar-on wates,
 What maner of man vpon mold · þat was merkyd after?

“Sir, anec,” quod alþ men · with a sterne steven,

“That þe erth of egip̄ · enhered some tyme.” 1132

With þat þe femand flode · flasshed in hys eghen,

[Fol. 9.]

“That anec,” quod þis atheñ kyng · “my awne fadre
 was.”

þan fallez he flatt on þe fold · & þe fote kyssez

Of þat stane þat stode · & stylly murnez. 1136

Syne into surry with hys seggez · he soght þe ganest,

And þai as baratours bald · hym bigly withstandyn,

Set vpon hym sadly · & slew of hys knyghez;

Bot ȝarle or he ȝode · þai ȝolde hym vp þe realm̄. 1140

Than draue he so to Damask · with dokez & princez,

And sone he sesys alþ þat syde · and sy[do]ne he takez,

And þen he trussys hym to tyre · & þar hys tentes settes

Besyde þe site with a somme · & in a sege lengez. 1144

þair he lay with hys ledes · lange or he fondytt,

Before þe burgh with hys bernes · & muche bale suffred.

¹ MS. myne ; wrongly.

² MS. chaungett.

His men grow weary, and complain.

Quat of ane, quat of ¹ oþire · oft his oste pleynes,
For wele wist þai þañ name · to wyñ to þe cite, 1148

It was sa stiffe & sa strang¹ · & stalworthly wallid,
And ² so hedously hiȝe · it was a huge wondire,
Tildid fuȝt of turestis · & toures of defence,

The strong forts of Tyre.

Batailid & bretagid · a-boute as a casteȝt. 1152

þe wawis of þe wild see · apoñ þe wallis betis,
þe pure populande hurle³ · passis it vmbry,
It was enforced with sa fele · fludis & othire, 1155
It semed neuer sege vnder soñ · be saute it to wyñ.

He builds a vast tower.

þan etils him sir Alexander · & belyue makis
Be-side þe cite in þe See · to sett vp a loge,
A hiȝe tilde as a toure · teldid oñ schippis,
þat miȝt na Naue for þat note · neȝe to þe cite. 1160

Quen he þis baisteȝt had bild · vp to þe burȝe wallis,
And tiȝt him as tyme was · þe toune to assaiȝt,

His men are famished,

Slik mischife in þe mene quile · emang¹ his men fallis,
For megire & for meteles · ware mervaile to here. 1164
þar was Princes in poynt · to perisch for euire,
Alle in doute to be dede · dukis & erlis,

and nearly die of hunger.

In fere to be famyschist · many fers kniȝtis,
For þar is na wa in þe werd · to þe wode hunger. 1168 *and 7 cont.*

He sends to Jerusalem.

þan pleynis him þe proud kyng · þe pete of his meñ,
And sendis out his sandis-meñ · with selid lettirs,
To ierusalem to Iaudis · at þe iewes teches, 1171

[Fol. 20 b.]
He demands help and more men.

þat was þe bischop in þat burȝe · breuyd in þa dais;
Him moneste as a maister · him¹ mayñly to send
Fresch folke for þe fist · & fode for his oste,
And aȝt þe trouage þare to him · tittly to wayne,
þat he to Darius of dewe · was dangird to paye. 1176
And ȝit comand¹ he þis clerke · þe kyng¹ in his writtes,
For any richas him redis · rathere to thole

He tells them it is better to serve Greeks

þe mayntenance of þe Messedoyns · & of þe meri
Grekis,

¹ Inserted at the end of the line.

² MS. And þai; but þai is better omitted. ³ read perle.

What of o þing, whatt of oþir · ofte hys oste plenys,
 For wele trowde þai þan · none to wynne to þe cite, 1148
 It was so stiffe & so strang' · & so stalworthly wrought,
 And so hydusly hye · þat was A grett wondre,
 Tyldet fuþ of torrettes · & towrez of defencez,
 Bateld & britagett · abowt as a casteH. 1152

The wawes of þe wilde see · vpon þe walle betyñ,
 The pure populand perle · passyd it vmbe,
 It was enforsed so wele · with flodez & other, 1155
 þar semed neuer sege vnder þe son · by sawte it to wynne.
 Than etellez hym sir alexander · & als belyue makes
 Besyde þe cite in þe see · to sett vp a loge,
 A hye tylde as a towre · tyldet of shippes,
 þat might no navy for þat note · negh to þe haven. 1160
 When he þis basteH had byggyd · nere þe burgh walles,
 And tight hym as tyme was · þe burgh to assaylle,
 Such mischefe in þe meynne tyme · vppon þe men fallez,
 For meger & for metelesse · wer mervell to telle. 1164

Thare wer princez in plite · to perische for euer,
 Aþ in dowte to [be] dede · dukez & Ereles,
 In fere to be famyshyd · mony ferce knyghtez,
 For þar is [na] wa in werld · to þe wod hunger. 1168

Than rewys hym þe prouude kyng · þe pyte of hys meñ,
 And sendys forth sendesmen · with selett lettres,
 To Ierusalem to Iawdez · þat þe Iewes teches, 1172
 þat of þat burgh was byshop · brevyd in þo dayes ;
 He monyshytt hym as a minister · hym manly to sende
 Fresh folk for þe fight · & fode for þe folke,
 And aþ þair truage · tyte to hym wayfe,
 That he to Darius of dew · was dangert to pay. 1176
 And ȝit command he þis clerke · þe kyng in hys writtez,
 For any richez he redes · rather to chese
 The mayntenaunce of massidons · & of þe mony grekez,

[Fol. 9 b.]

Epistola.

than Persians.

þañ þaim¹ of Persy to pay · or to plese authere. 1180
 þañ takis þe bischop þe breue · & buȝes to a chambre,
 Resayued it with reuerence · & redis it² ouire,
 Gase him doun be degreec · a-gayne to þe sale,
 Swiftly to þe swiars · & þam his sware ȝeldis : 1184
 "Sirs, airis a-gayn to Alexander · & aH þus³ him tellis,
 þat me was done many day · depely to swere,
 Neuer Persy to paire · to pas with myne armes
 In damaging of Darius · durand his lyfe." 1188
 Sone as þe wale kyng wist · he writhis him vnfaire,
 "Now be þat god," quod þe gome · "þat gatt me on
 erthe,
 I saH anes on þe iewis · enioyne or I die, 1191
 SaH keñ þam quas comandment · to kepe at þam
 faH."

The bishop of
Jerusalem says
he will never go
against Darius.

XXVII

Alexander is
wrath, and vows
to teach them
better.

ge entited
er de gardes - 1336 =
mon to (Gaza),
place 3
2.

He sends men
out on the
'foray of Gadirs.'

Meleager and
Sampson enter
[Fol. 21.]
the valley,

and take a great
number of cattle.

3it for na torfar him tid · Tyre wald he noȝt leue,
 Bot chese him out a chiftane · & charge[s] him belyue,
 A mody man, ser Meliager · a maister of his⁴ oste,
 To fande him furth with a flote · of fyue hundreth
 kniȝtis ; 1196
 A[nd] Ioynes him to Iosaphat · his iournay to⁵ take,
 And aH þe pastours & þe playnes · prestly to driue,
 And bring in aH þe bestaiH · barayn & othire,
 þat he miȝt se oñ any syde · þe cite of Gadirs. 1200
 þañ mouys he on, ser Meliager · þis miȝtiful prince
 With a soume of sekir men · & Sampson þam ledis,
 A renke at in þa regions · had redyñ oft sythis,
 And knew þe costis & þe kitthis · clene aH-to-gedire.
 þus ȝede þai furthe egrily · & entirs þe vaile, 1205
 And slike a prai þam apreued · as pyne were to rekeñ,
 Bryngis furthe, sayd þe boke · bestis out of nounbre,⁶
 And trottes oñ toward Tyre · with taite at þaire hertis.
 Bot or þai meteñ ware a myle · þe meris with-outen,

¹ MS. þaiem. ² Inserted at the end of the line. ³ MS. þuȝ.

⁴ MS. hio. ⁵ MS. to to ; with former to struck out.

⁶ MS. mounbre.

- þen þaim of perse to pay · or to please owder. 1180
 Than takez þe Bishop þe breue · & to chawmble bownes,
 Ressaves it with reuerence · & redes it ouer,
 Gase hym downe be degreec · ayayn to þe sale,
 Swythly to þe swyers · & þaim þe sware ȝeldez : 1184
 "Sirres, ayres agayn to alexander · & all þus hym tellys, *Epiſtola.*
 That me was done mony day · deply to swere,
 Neuer perse to pare · ne passe with none armez
 In damagynge of darius · endurand hys lyue." 1188
 When þe wale kyng wist · he wex wode wroth,
 "Now by god," quod þe grome · "þat gatt me on
 erth,
 I saſſ seche Iewres on þe Iewes · enys¹ or I dye,
 Saſſ kenne whoys commaundement · þat þaim to kepe
 fallez. 1192
- ȝit for no torfer þat he tyde · tyre wald he noght leue,
 Bot chesez hym owt a chiftane · & chargez hym belyue,
 A mody man, *sir meliager*, · a maister of hys oste,
 To founde forth with a flete · of fyfe hundred knygheſez ;
- And iniones hym to Iosaphatt · hys Iornay to make, 1197
 And al þe pastours & þe playnes · prestly to² dryve,
 Bot bring in all þes bestes · bareñ & other,
 þat he might see in ony syde · þe cite of Gaders. 1200
 Than mefes on *sire Meliager* · þis mightfuſ prince
 Wyth a soume of syker meñ · & sampson þaim ledes,
 A renke þat in þa regions · had rydyn oft sytheſ,
 And knew þe costez & þe kytheſ · clene al-to-geder. 1204
 þus hyed þai forth egerly · & entird þe wale,
 And suche a pray þaim preved · als pyne wer to rekeñ,
 Bringez forth, als says þe buk · bestes owt of nowmbre,
 And trottes on toward tyre · with ioy at þair hertes. 1208
 Bot or þai metyn hed a myle · þe mers with-out,³

¹ read enioine. ² MS. de.³ MS. were out.

One Theosellus
withstands
Alexander's men.

Sir Meleager
fights manfully.

So do Sampson

and Aristes.

Caulus also
distinguishes
himself.

[Fol. 21 b.]

Meleager retreats
in triumph,
with all the
cattle.

But his troubles
are not over.

Beritinus attacks
him.

þur metis þaim with a mekill flote · þe maister of þe
playnes,

He þat was duke of þe¹ droues · & of þe derfe hillis,
Ane Theosellus, a tulke · þat tened þam vnfaire. 1212

He girdis in with¹ a ging · armed in plates,
Alto-bruntes oure bernes · & brathly woundid,
Fellis fele at a frusch · fey to þe gronde,
And many renke at he roue · rase neuer efter. 1216

þan was ser Meliager moued · & maynly debatis,
Flingis out oñ a fole · with a feñ spere,
Gers many grete syre grane · & girdis þurze maillis,
And many bernes at a braide · in his brath endis. 1220

And Sampson oñ anothire side · setis out belyue,
Bruschis furth oñ a blonk · brymly he smytis,
Betis oñ with a brande · broken was his lance,
Hewis doun of þa hirdis · hurtis þam vn-faire. 1224

Arystes, ane athill man · ai elike fiȝtis,
Spirris out with a spere · & spedis his miȝtis,
And noyed of þare note-men · at þe nete kepid,
And many bald, or he blañ · broȝt out o-lyue. 1228

Caulus, anothire kniȝt · oñ a kene stede,
Oñ Theosellus in twa · his tymbre he brekis ;
And þan he dryfes to þe duke · as demys þe textis,
And with a swyng of a swerd · swappis of hes hede. 1232

When he was drepid & dede · at þe droues ȝemyd,
þe prekars of þe pastors · & of þe proude landis,
AH þe folke of his affinite · at fresch ware vn-wondid,
þat outhire fote hadl or fole · to þe fliȝt foundid. 1236

þus Meliager with his meñ · þe menske has a-chevyd,
For þe fairere of þar faes · & þe fild wonñ ;
Raschis with rethere · & rydis bot a quyle,

þat ne neȝis þam a-nothire note · as new as þe first. 1240
þare was a maister of þe marches · miȝtist of othire
Ane Beritinus, a berne · as þe buke tellis,
Come girdand out of Gadirs · out of þe grete cite,

¹ Inserted at the end of the line.

þar metes þaime a Miche folke · þe maister of þe
 playnes,
 The duke of þe drafes · & of þe derfe fellys,
 One teosellus a tulke · þat tenyd þaim vnfaire. 1212
 He girdes in with a gyñ · grathed in playthes,
 Aþ to-brountes þes bernes · & wykydly þaim woundes,
 Felles mony fey at a frush · fast to þe grunde,
 And mony renke þat he ouer-rade · rase neuer aftir. 1216
 Than was sir meliager amoved · & manly debates,
 Flyngez forth on a fole · with a fele spere,
 And beres mony grett syre · þorow thike males, 1219
 Aþ feþ bernes at [a] brayde · whilse his breth lastez.
 And sampson on ane other syde · settez on belyue,
 Brushes forth on a blonke · brathly he smytez,
 Betes on with a brande · for brokyn was hys launce,
 Hewes douñ on þe herdez · & hurtez þaim vnfaire. 1224
 Then arestes, an atheþ man · &¹ ay elike feghtez,
 Sparres forth with a spere · & spedes hys mightez,

 Mony bald or he blan · broght owt of lyfe. 1228
 Than Caulus, an other knyght · on a ked stede,
 On thoosellus in twa · hys tembre he brekys;
 And þen he dryffes to þe duke · als tellys me þe texte,
 Bot with a swyng of a swerde · swappez of hys heued.
 When he was drepyd þus & dede · & þe drawes ȝemyd,
 þe prekers of þe pasturs · & of þe prouud Landez,
 Aþ þe folk of hys affinitate · þat fressse² wer vnwoundet,
 þat other fote hed or fole · to þe flyȝt foundez. 1236
 Thus meliager with hys meñ · þe menske þaracheuett,
 Fellyd þe feirare³ of þar foes · and þe feld wonnez⁴;
 And rachen with þair route · & ryden bott a while,
 Bot þar neghyd þaim ane oþer note · als new as before;
 þar was a maister of þe marche · þe myghtiest of other.
 One beritinus, a berne · als þe buke telles, 1242
 Come girdand furth of gaders · owt of þe grete cyte,

¹ Better omitted. ² Sic. ³ MS. feirhare. ⁴ Read wonn.

With þe selcuthest soume · þat semblid was euire. 1244
 Slik a mynd vñ-to¹ me · ware meruaiþ to reken,

30,000 foes attack
the Greeks.

Thretti thousand in thede · of thra men of armes,
 Slike as was buskest on blonkes · in brenys & platis,
 And othire folawand on fote · fele with-outen nounbre.
 þe multitude was sa mekiþ · as mynes vs þe writtis,
 Of wees & of wild horsis · & wapened prenys,
 Sa stithe a steuyn in þe stoure · of stedis & ellis,
 As it was semand to siȝt · as aH þe soyle trymblid. 1252

The Macedonians
are dismayed.

þan ware þe Messedones amayd · quen þa see² sa many;
 Sire Meliager [was] in gret mynd · a man out to sende
 To ser Alexander belyue · þaire allire maister, 1255
 To come & help with his here · or þai to hande ȝode.

None like to go on
a message to
Alexander.

þare was nane þat was glad · þat message to gange,
 Bot ilka lathire & othire · to leue þaire frynde,
 Fest þar forward in-fere · þat fewe at þai ware,
 To do as driȝten wald deme · & dyi aH to-gedire; 1260
 To telle þaire torfere entyre · it taryed me swythe.

[Fol. 22.] Sir Meleager kills
Beritinus,

Bot so þe mode Meliager · & his men feȝtis,
 þat ser Beritinus þe bald · þai bretned to dethe,
 And Sampsoñ on þis side · was slay þar-agaynys. 1264

but Sampson is
slain.

þen mournes aH þe Messedones · & maynteñ him ȝerne,
 Makis þar mane for þat man · & many othire noble,
 For maistris & mynistris · menere & grettir, 1267
 þat was in morsels magged · & martrid a hundreth.

Many Greeks are
killed.

And þat left ware on lyfe · bot a litil meȝne,
 Ware als malstrid³ & mased · & matid of þaire strenthes,
 Sa waike & so wyndles · & wery for-foȝteñ, 1271
 þat þai were wiH in þis werd · qwat þai worthe suld.

Sir Meleager is
sore wounded.

Sire Meliager & othire maa · mayned were sare,
 AH be-bled & to-brissid · þat neȝe þar breth failes,
 þai were sa feble & sa faynt · & fuH of þaim-selfe,
 þat all in fere was in fourme · þe fild for to ȝeld. 1276
 þan aires him forth Arestes · was augrily wondid,
 To Alexander onone · þas auntirs him tellis,

Arestes goes to
tell Alexander.

¹ to added in margin. ² see added in margin. ³ Sie.

With þe selcouutest soume · þat semblyd was euer, 1244

With a mynd to me · wer merveH to rekyñ, [Fol. 10 v.]

A threti thouusand in thede · of thro men of armes,

Suche as wer on blonnkes · in brenys & platez,

And other folowand on fote · fele owt of nowmbre. 1248

The multitude was so much · as menys vs þe writtez,

Of wyes & of wild horse · & of wapenned bernes,

So styf a steuen in þe stoure · of stedes & enmys,

As it was semand [to siȝt] · as þe soñ tremblyd. 1252

þen wer þe masydons ameved · when þai so mony seeñ;

Sir meliager was in grete mynd · a mañ owt to send

To alexander als belyue · þaire aller maister, 1255

To Come to help with hys heir · or þai to hand rydyn.

Bot þar was nane þat was made · þe message to fannge,

Bot ilke lede elike loth · to leven þair frendes,

And festned þair forwardez in-fere · þe few þat þar wer,

To do as drighthen wald deme · & dye aH to-geder; 1260

To teH þair torfer in tere · it wald tary me to lang.

Bot so þe mody meliager · & hys men foghteñ,

þat Sir bertinus þe bald · þai brityned to dede,

And sampson was of hys syde · slain þar-agayns. 1264

þen murned aH þe masydons · & meynyd hym swyth,

Made grett mone for þis mañ · & mony oþer noble,

For maisters & ministers · meyner & gretter, 1267

þat wer in morsellys made · & martyred by hundrethis.

And þat left wer on-lyue · bot a lyteH meynhe,

Wer also maistrett & masyd · & mated of þair strennthes,

So wake & so wyndles · & wery for-foughteñ,

þat þai wer wille in þe werld · qwat þai worth suld. 1272

Sir meliager & oþer mo · mayned wer sare,

AH to-bled & to-brysed · þat nere þair breth fayled,

Thai wer so feble and so faynte · and fuH of þaim-selueñ,

þat aH in fere & in forme · þe feld for to ȝeld. 1276

Than ayres hym forth aristes · was augerdly woundett,

To alexander anone · þees aunders hym telles,

þe morth of aH þe Messedone[s] · & of þe many grekis,
Rekens him þar resons · þat reuthe was to here. 1280

Alexander rallies
some men round
him, and leaves
Tyre.

With þat þe semely kyng · chacches his bernes,
Semblis him a huge soume · & fra þe sege wendis,
þe toure of Tire & þe toune · titly he leues,
And Ioynes him to Iosaphat · fulþ ioyles he rydes. 1284

He laments the
loss of Sampson.

Ay he gretis as he gase · for grefe of his knyȝtis,
Ay he pleynys as he passes · þe pite of his erlis,
Ay he wepis as he wendis · for his wale princes,
And soueraynly for Sampson · he sorowis ay elike. 1288

[Fol. 22 b.]

When he was tane fraward¹ Tyre · toward þe vaile,
þe werke at he wroȝt hadl · þat water whyt-in,

Sir Balaan of
Tyre assails
Alexander's siege-
works,

þat he hadl sett in þe see · þe cite with-out,

þar-in he lefte hadl a lede · þe loge for to kepe. 1292

Bot þan ser Balaan, a berne · at in þe burȝe lengis,

Ane of þe terands of Tyre · atyres him² belyue,

Buskes him in breneis · with big meñ of armes, 1295

With traumes & with tribochetis · þe tild to asaile.

He bekirs out at þe bild · within þe burȝe-wallis,

And þai without in þe werke · wiȝtly defendis,

Schot scharply betwene · schomes³ of dartis ;

Weris wondirly wele⁴ · werpis out stanes. 1300

and breaks them
down.

Bot Balaa[n] in þe barmeken · sa bitterly fiȝtis,

AH to-combirs þam clene · with cast of engynes.

Sone þe top of þe toure · he tiltis in-to þe watir,

And aH þe tulkis in þe tildl · he termens o lyue ; 1304

And þan in batis & in bargis · he bownes him swyth,

To þe bothum of þe baistell · he buskis him with-out,

Bretens doun aH þe bild · & þe bernys quellis, 1307

Drenches hire in þe hiȝe see · & drawis hire oñ hepis.

Quen it was smeten in smalH · with þe smert waȝes,

Ilka gobet his gate · glidis fra othire.

He destroys
Alexander's
towers, and
throws them into
the sea.

þus⁵ þe strenth ilk stike⁶ · was in a stounde wastedl,

¹ MS. toward altered to fraward.

² MS. here inserts h, but it is struck out. ³ Read schoures.

⁴ Added in the margin. ⁵ MS. þus was.

⁶ MS. stilk stike ; but stilk is struck out.

The morte of al þe masydons · & of þe mony grekez,
Rekens hym þe resonis · þat reuth was to here. 1280

With þat þe comle kynge · chakez hys bernes,

Sembllett Hym A Hoge soume · & fro þe seige wendys, [Fol. 11.]

The toure of tyre & þe towne · tately he levys,
And ioynes hym to Iosaphatt · full ioyles to ryde. 1284

Ay he gretes as he goys · þe grefe of hys knyghez,

Ay he plenys as he passez · þe pite of hys Ereles,

Ay he wepys as he wendes · for hys wale princes,

And souerandly for sampson · he sorows euerilyke. 1288

When he was turnyd froward tyre · toward þe wale,

The werk at he wroght had · þe water withiñ,

þat he hed sett in þe see · þe cite withowte,

Thare-in he left hed a lity^H ¹ · [þe] loge for to kepe. 1292

Bott þen sir balaan, a berne · þat in þe burgh lenged,

One of þe tiraundez of tire · atired hym belyue,

Buskes hym in brenes · with big meñ of armes,

With trawynns & trebgetes ² · þe towre to assaylle. 1296

He bekers owt at þe beld · ouer þe brade walle,

And þai within ³ þe werk · wightly defendeñ,

Shotoñ sharply bytwene · swappyn owt darte;

Weres wondrely wele · warpyn owt stanes. 1300

Bot balaan in þe britage · so bitterly feghtez,

All to-combers þaim clene · with cast of engynes.

Sone þe toppe of þe toure · he typys in þe water,

And al þe tulkez in þe told · he termys þe lyve; 1304

Than in bargez & in botez · he bownes hym swyth,

To þe bothom of þe baste^H · he buskez hym withowte,

Bretens downe al þe belde · & þe bernes whelles,

Drenches hir in þe depe · & drawes hir on heypys. 1308

When it was smytyn so in smal · within þe smert wawes,

Ilke gobett fro oþer · glydes ⁴ fast þair way.

Thus þis strenth ilke steke · in a stound wastyd,

¹ Read lede.

² MS. trelgetes.

³ MS. withowt within.

⁴ MS. gydes, corr. to glydes.

And Balaa[n] bowis in-to þe burȝe · & barris to þe ȝatis.
Be þis oure kyng with his kniȝt[is] · is comen in-to þe
vaile, 1313

Alexander
arrives at the
valley,

Alexander with ane ost · his kniȝtis to help̄,
Fyndis a fewe of his folke · feȝtand ȝerne,
And ay a segge be him-selfe · sett alh a hundreth. 1316
With þat Bucifalon his blonke · he brased¹ in þe side,
Springis out with a spere · spillis at þe gaynest,
Ridis euen ȝurȝe þe route · þar rankest þai were,

spurs Bucefalos,

[Fol. 23.]
and overthrows
all before him.

Be rawe of þar rabetis · he ruscid to þe erthe, 1320
He strikis alh fra þar stedis · streȝt him be-forne.
Was nane sa stiffe in þat stoure · miȝt stand him
agayn̄ ;
Quare althire-thickest was þe thrange · ȝurȝe þaim he
rynnes,

He draws his
sword, and leaves
no foe unslain
except the
captives.

And makis a wai wyde enoȝe · waynes to mete. 1324
He laschis out a lange swerde · quen his launce failes,
Threschis doun in a² thrawe · many threuyн dukis,
Stirs him sa in a stonde · & his stithe erlis
þat þar was [na] berne on bent · bott bretened or
ȝolden. 1328

He buries his own
dead.

þe seggis on̄ his awen side · þat he slayn̄ fyndis,
He mas to graue sum in grete · & sum in gray marble.
And þa þat laft ware o-lyue · he lokis þar woundis,
And faire fangis his folke · & fra þe fild wendis. 1332
þan bowes he to þe baistalh · & brymly it semblis,
Gedirs of ilk glode · grettir & smallire,

He leaves Gadirs, And prekis furth with his pray · & passes fraward
Gadirs,

and returns to
Tyre.

He sees his siegeworks destroyed.

And tiȝt agayne toward Tyre · to termen his sege. 1336
Quen he was dreuyн ouer þe dales · & drewe to þe cite,
With þat he blisches to þe burȝe · & sees his bild
voidid²,
Als bare as a bast · his baisteȝ a-way,
But outhire burde or bate · bot þe brade wattir, 1340

¹ The a is ill-formed.

² Added in the margin.

And balaan bownes to þe burgh · & barres þe ȝatez. 1312
 Be þat owr kyng with hys knyghez · was comen to þe
 wale,

Alex[ander] with an hoste · hys athell to helþ,
 Fyndes a few of hys folke · feghtyng fuþ ȝarne,
 And a sege by hym-self · sett to a hundredth. 1316

With þat bucifelōn hys blonke · he brochys in þe sydez,
 Spryngez forth with a spere · spyllez at þe ganest,

Rides euen þorow þe route · þare rankest þai were, [Fol. 11 b.]

The rawes of þair arayes · he rushes to þe erth, 1320
 He strikez all þair stedes · streght downe hym before,
 Was none so styffe in þe stoure · to stand hym ayayns ;

þar all þe thikest wer of thrange · thrugh þaim he
 rynnes,

And makez a way wyde enogh · waynez for to mete. 1324

He lashes owt a lang swerde · when hys launce wantes,

Thristerz downe in a thraw · mony thryme dokes,

Stirrez hym so in a stound · he and hys styff ereles,

þat þar ne was berñ on þe bent · bot brytynett or
 ȝoldeñ. 1328

The segges of hys awne syde · all at he slain fyndez,

He makes to grave, some in grete · some in gray marbyþ.

And þo þat left wer on lyue · he leches þair woundez,

And fair fangez he hys folke · & fro þe feld turnes. 1332 3a victoria
 alexandri.

Then prekes forth with hys pray · þus before gaders,

And turnes agayn toward tyre · to terme hys seige. 1336

When he was dreven ouer þe dales · & drew to þe cite,

With þat he blyshys to þe burgh · & seys hys beylde
 woydett,

Also bare as ony baste · hys basteþ away,

Bout ony buske or borde · bot þe brode water. 1340

þan mournes aH þe Messadones · & maynly was
sturb[i]d.¹

And Alexander also · was augrely greuyd,

Alexander de-
spairs of taking
Tyre,

So ware þai troubild out of tone · quen þai þaire tilde
miste,

þat of þe taking of Tire · trest þai na langire. 1344

And so him-selfe in his slepe · þe same niȝt eftir,

but dreams
that he has a ripe
grape
in his hand,

Him thoȝt he had in his hand · & held of a vyne
A growen grape of a grype · a grete & a rype, 1347
þe quilke he flange² oñ þe flore · & with his fete
tredis.

And quen he broken had þe bery · als þe berne semes,

[Fol. 23 b.]
which yields
much wine.

þar folowis out of fresche wyne · feetles to mete;
So largely & so delaulyly · of licoure, him thinkis,
Of ane rasyn to ryñ · it was a ryfe wondire. 1352

A clerk tells him
that this predicts
his victory over
Tyre.

þe kyng callis him a clerke · kenely oñ þe³ morne,

Als radly as he rase · to reche him his sweuyn.
“Sire, bees a-dred neuir a dele” · þe diuinour said,
“I vndire-take on my trouthe · Tire is þine aweñ ; 1356

For þe bery at ȝe brake sa · is þe burȝe euen.

þai saH be sesid þe fuH sone · & to þi-selfe ȝoldeñ,

For þou saH eft aH oñ ernest · entire oñ þe wallis,

And foulire⁴ vndir þi feete · with-in a fewe days. 1360

Now compas kenely þis kyng · & castis in his mynd

How he miȝt couir in any cas · to come to þe cite,

Deuynes depely on dais · dropis many wiles,

Alexander builds
up a larger tower
than before,

If he cuthe seke any sleȝt · þat him serue wald; 1364

And makis to sett in þe see² · riȝt in þe same place,

þar as þe bild at he bi[l]did · biggid wasse first,

To stable vp a grete strenthe · aH on store schipis,

Hugir be þe halfe dele · & hiȝere þañ þe toþire ; 1368

And þat he fiches & firmes · sa fast to þe waH,

So nere vnethes at ane eld · miȝt narowly betwene,

higher than the
walls of the town,

And band hire, as þe buke sais · bigly to-gedire, 1371

¹ The i is illegible. ² MS. inserts of, but it is struck out.

³ Added in the margin.

⁴ Read foule hire.

Than murnes aff þe masidons · & felly wer trublett,

And alexander was also · awgerdly grevyde,
So wer þai turblett of þe towne · qwen þai þar till
myssyd,

That of þe takyng of tire · tristed þai no lenger. 1344

And so hym-selfe in hys slepe · þe same nyght after,
Hym toght¹ he had in hys hand · a held of a wyne,
A growen grope of a gripe · a grett & a rype, 1347
þe whilke he flonge of þe floure · & with hys fete
tredes;

And when he brokyn hed þe bery · als þe berñ semys,
þar flowe owt of fresh wynne · flodez enowe;
So largly & so delavy · of liquor hym thynkez,
Of ane raysyn to ryn · þat was a gret wondre. 1352

þe kynge callez a clerke · kenely on þe morne,
Als radly as euer he rose · to rachen hym hys swevyn.
“ Sir, beys dred neuer a dele ” · þe devinour hym sayde,
“ I vndertake it on my trewth · tyre is þi nawne; 1356
For þe bery þat þou brake · þat is þe burgh eueñ,
That shat be sesyd þe ful sone · & to þi-seluen ȝoldeñ,
For þou saH eft in ernest · enter þe walles,

And feH hir vnder fote · within a few days.” 1360

Now Compas kenely þe kyng · & castes in hys mynd
How he couthe in ony case · come to þe cyte,
Devynez deply on days · dropes mony willes,
If he couht seke ony sleight · þat hym serue wald; 1364
And makes to sett in þe see · right in þe same place,
þair as þe tild þat he bild · biggest was frist,
To stabill vp a strenth · aff of store schippes,
Hoger by þe halfe dele · & hyer þen þat oþer; 1368
And þat he feghys & fermes · so fast to þe waH,
So negh þat vnneth a nedyh · myght narowly bytwene,
And band hir, as þe boke says · bigly to-geder,

[Fol. 12.]

¹ Sic in MS.

With þat scho flisch noþer fayle¹ · fyue score aunkirs.
 Quen he had tiȝt vp þis tram · & þis tild rerid,
 Hit had of bradnes abofe · to breue out of mesure;
 and close against them. And to hede be a huge thing · hiȝere it semed
 þan was þe wallis, sais þe writh · of þe wale touris. 1376
 He ascends the tower, þan Alexander aȝt his ane · an-anē he ascendis,
 Closid aȝt in clere stele · & in clene plates,
 [Fol. 24.] And monestis ilk modire soñ · maynly & swyth,
 þat all be bowne at a brayd · þe burȝe to assaile. 1380
 and bids his men be ready. And aȝt þe ost euyñ ouir · he openly comandis
 To be² radly aȝt arayd · & redy to fiȝt;
 He assaults Tyre; And quen þai saȝe þat him-selfe³ · þe cite was entrid,
 Wan vp wiȝtly on þe waHis · ilk wee him eftir. 1384
 Now tenelis vp taburs · and aȝt þe toūn rengis,
 drums and trumpets sound. Steryñ steuyn vþ strake · strakid þar trumpis,
 Blewe bemys of bras · bernes assemblis,
 Seȝes to oñ ilk syde · & a saute ȝeldis. 1388
 þare presis to with paues · peple withouten;
 Archers approach the walls. Archars with arows · of atter envemonde⁴
 Schotis vp scharply · at shalkis oñ þe waHis,
 Lasch at þam of loft · many lede floȝen, 1392
 The besieged defend themselves. And þai ȝapely a-ȝayne · & ȝildis þam swythe,
 Bekire out of þe burȝe · bald men many,
 Kenely þai kast of · with kastis of stanys,
 Driues dartis at oure dukis · dedly þam woundid,
 The Greeks ascend the tower. þan passe vp oure princes · prestly⁵ enarmed,
 In-to þe baistell a-bofe · bremely ascendið,
 Sum with lances oñ-loft · & with lange swerdis,
 With ax & with alblaster · & alkens wapeñ. 1400
 Alexander performs wonders. Alexander ai elike · augrily feȝtis,
 Now a schaft, now a schild · nowe a scheue hentis,
 Now a sparth, now a spere · & sped so his miȝtis,
 þat it ware tere any tongue · to of his turnes rekyñ. 1404

¹ MS. flay fayle; but flay is struck out.² Added in the margin. ³ selfe added in the margin.⁴ Sic.⁵ MS. inserts er, but it is struck out.

- Lest sho flechett or faylett · with fyfe score ankers. 1372
 When he hed tight vp þis trame · & þis teld reryd,
 It hed of bradnes aboue · to breue owt of mesour;
 And to hede by hoge þing · hegher it semyd
 Than was [þe walles], as þe writte says · of þe wale tourez.
 þan alexander aH [his ane] · a-none he ascendez, 1377
 Closed aH in clere stele · & in clene platez,
 And monyshit iche modersoñ · manly & swythe,
 þat aH be bowne at a brade · þe burght to asayle. 1380
 AH þe hoste¹ euen ouer · opynly he comandes
 ȝarly aH to be arraed · and redy to fight;
 And when þat þai see þat hym-selfe · þe cite was entird,
 Wynnen vpp vppo² þe walle · ilke wy hym after. 1384
 Now tynkyH vp taburnes · þat aH þe towne ringes,
 Sterne stevyn vpon stroke · straked trompettes,
 Blew bemes of brace · bernes assembled,
 Sought to on ilk syde · & a saute ȝeldyñ, 1388
 To prese to with paves · a peple withowte;
 Archers with arowes · of atter enuenmonyd³
 Shoton vp sharply · at salkez on þe wallez,
 Lashe at þaim on-lofte · in mony lowd showte, 1392
 And þai ȝopely ayayn · ȝeldyn þaim swythe,
 Bekeryng forth of þe burgh · bald men many,
 Kenely þai kepe · with castyng of stanes,
 Dryves dartez at owr dukez · deply þaim woundeñ. 1396
 Than passyd vp of princez · pristly enarmed,
 Into þe basteH abowne · bremely ascendeñ,
 Some with launcez on-lofte · & some with long swerdez,
 With ax & with awblester · & alken wapens. 1400
 And alexander ay elik · awgerdly feghetz,
 Now a shafte, now a shelde, · now a swerde hentez,
 Now a sparth, now a spere · & sped so hys mightez,
 þat it wald tere ony tong · hys tourneys to rekeñ. 1404

¹ Better oste.² Sic.³ Read enuenomyd.

[Fol. 12 b.]

And þai with-in on þe waſ · worthili with-stude,
 Fersly defend̄ of · & fellid of his knyȝtis,
 Thristis ouir thikefald · many threuyñ berne[s], 1407

[Fol. 24 b.]

The Greeks are
hard pressed.

And doun bakward̄ þam̄ bare · in-to þe brad̄ wattir.

With þat oure wees without · writhis þam̄ vnfare,

Went wode of þaire witt · & wrekiſ þam̄ swyth̄;

For na wounde ne na wathe · wand þai na langir,

Bot aſt wirkis him þe wa · & wrake at he cuthe. 1412

The Greeks fight
very fiercely,

Sum braidis to þar bowis · bremely þai schut,

Quethirs out quarels · quikly be-twene;

Strykis vp of þe stoure · stanes of engynes,

þat þe bretage a-boue · brast aſt in soundire, 1416

Girdis ouir garettis · with gomes to þe erthe,

Tilt torettis doun · toures oñ hepis,

Spedely with sprygaldis · spilt þaire braynes,

Many miȝtful man · marris oñ þe wallis. 1420

And be þe kirnells ware kast · & kutt doun before,

Be þat þe baistell & þe burȝe · ware bathe elike hiȝe,

And all oure werke without þe wallis · weterly semed̄,

þe sidis of þe cite · to se to o fernes, 1424

Then Alexander
enters the breach,þañ Alexander belyf¹ · oñ þam̄ aſt entris,

Bruschis in with a brand · on bernes a hundredth,

Thranḡ thurȝe a thousand · þare thikest þai were,

Wynnes worthy ouer þe wallis · with-in to þe cite. 1428

slays Balaan,

þe first modire soñ he mett · oþire mañ outhire,

Was Balaan þe bald berne · as þe boke tellis,

And him he settis oñ a saute · & sloȝe him belyue, 1431

and throws
him over the
wall.

And werpid him out ouir þe waſ · in-to þe wild streme.

Sone as oure athils be-hind · saȝe þar he entred,

His men & aſt þe Messedones · maynly ascendis,

And þai of Grece gredely · girdis vp eftire,

Thringis vp oñ a thraw · thousandis many. 1436

[Fol. 25.]
The Greeks climb
up,

Sum stepis vp on sties · to þe stane wallis,

On ilka staffe of a staire² · stike wald a cluster;¹ MS. bely, altered to belyf in later hand.² MS. repeats staire.

And þai within on þe waſ · wightly withſtondyñ,
 Derfley defenden of · & fellez of hys bernes,
 Thraste ouer thikeſald · mony thrifen knygheſz,
 And douñ bakeward þai bare · into þe brade water. 1408
 With þat oure wyes withoute · wrathen þaim vnfaire,
 Went ne wode owt of þar witte · & wrekes þaim swyth ;
 For no wa ne no wound · waned þai no langer,
 Bot aſ wirkyd þaim wa · & wrake at þai couth. 1412
 Som braden to þair bowes · & bremely shotyñ,
 Whirres owt quarels · whikly betwene ;
 Strike vp of þe stoure · stanſ & ¹ engynes,
 þat þe britage aboſe · brast aſ in ſonder, 1416
 Girdes ouer garrates · with gomes² to þe erth,
 Typed torrettes doun · towres on hepes,
 Spedely with ſpringalteſ · ſpilten þair bernes,
 Many mightyfull man · merred on þe walles. 1420
 And be þe kernels wer keſt · & cut³ doun before,
 Be þat þe basteſ & þe burgh · was bath elike hye,
 And aſ owre þe werke without · witterly ſemyd,
 The sydes of þe cite · to ſe to on fernesse, 1424
 Than alexander als belyue · on þaim aſ entres,
 Brushes in with a brannde · on bernes an hundreth,
 Thrang þorow a thouſand · þar as þai thikest wer,
 Wynnes wightly ouer þe waſ · within to þe cite. 1428
 The frift moderon þat he mett · or other man other,

[Fol. 18.]

Was balaan þe bald berne · as þe buke tellez,
 And hym he ſettes on a ſawte · & ſlogh hym belyfe,
 And wappyd⁴ hym ouer þe walles · in-to þe wild ſtremes.
 When þair hatels byhynde · ſaw þar heued entre, 1433
 Hys men & aſ þe masydons · manly ascendeñ,
 And þai of grece gredely · girdes vp after,
 Thronge vp on a thraw · thouſandez mony. 1436
 Some ſpettyn⁵ vp on ſtyes · to þe ſtane walles,
 On ilke ſtaffe on a ſtare · ſteke wald a cloſtre ;

¹ & written above the line; read of. ² MS. cunes; wrongly.
³ MS. owt. ⁴ Read warpyd. ⁵ Read ſteppyn.

some with
ladders,
and some
without.

And qua sa leddirs hadl nane · as þe lyne tellis, 1439
 Wald gett þam hald with þar hend · & oñ-loft clyme.
 Sa freȝt ware þar othire · þat feȝtis withiñ,
 For Balaan þar bald duke · þat broȝt was¹ of lyue,
 þat al failis þam þe force · & so ferd worthe,
 þat nothire with stafe ne with stane · witlstand þai na
 langir. 1444

Sire Alexander with his athils · & his aweñ sleȝtis] end of ² dñe.

Thus was Tyre
taken.

þe toune of Tire þus he tuke · & othire twa burȝes,
 In þe quilke þe siriens of þis sire · so many soroȝes
 hadl,

As wald bot tary al oure tale · þaire tourment to reken.

Sone as þis cite was sesid · & slayne vp & zolden, 1449

Alexander takes
Gaza,

þen ridis furth þe riche kyng^t · & remowed his ost,
 Gais him furth to Gasa · a-nothire grete cite,

And þat he settis on a saute · & sesis it be-lyue ; 1452

And quen þis Gasa was geten · he graythis him swyth,

and approaches
Jerusalem.

And Ioynes him toward Ierusalem · þe iewis to distroy ;
 And ze þat² kepis of þis carþe · to knew any ferre,
 Sone sah I neuen ȝow þe note · þat is next eftir. 1456

(XXVIII)

Septimus passus Alexandri.

When the bishop
hears of his
approach,

Als hastily as þai herdl of · in þe haly cite,
 And bodwordl to þe bischop · broȝt of his come,
 For Alexander aȝe · almast he euen deis, 1459
 For he had nite him a nerandl · noȝt bot o new time.
 And now him þinke in his þost · him thurt noȝt haue
 carid

In all his mast mystir · nad he þat man faylidl,

[Fol. 25, b] When he for socure to þe cite · sent him his lettir ;

And he soyned him be his sorement · þat sare him for-
 thinkis. 1464

¹ Added in the margin.

² MS. inserts kis ; but it is struck out.

And who so leddrys couth lache · as þe line wittnes,
 Wald gett þair hand with þair hand · & on-lofte wynne.
 So fr̄ist wer þase other folke · þat foghteñ within, 1441
 Fro¹ balaan þair bald duke · þat broght was of liue,
 þat aH failez þaim þe force · & so ferd worthen,
 þat nowder with staffe ne with stane · withstode þai no
 langer. 1444

Sir alexander with þoes athellys · & with hys awne
 sleghetz

The toure of tire þus he tuke · and other ij burghez,
 In þe whilke þe sariens of þis syre · so many sorowys
 haddyñ;

AH wald bot tary owr tale · þaire turment to rekeñ. 1448 Obsid[et] le
 tyre.

Sone als þis cite was sesyd · slayne vp & ȝoldeñ,
 þan rides forth þe riche kyng · & removes þe hoste,
 Gase forth to gaza · ane othre grete cite,
 And he settes on a sawte · and seses it belieue; 1452
 And when þis gaza was gettyn · he grathes hym swyth,
 And ioynes hym toward Ierusalem · þe Iewez to distroy;
 And ȝe þat kepys of þis carpyng · to here any ferrer,
 Sone saH I neuen þou þe note · þat now is next after.

Septimus passus.

Als hastely as þai herd of · in haly cite, 1457
 And Bodword to þe bischop · was broght of hys come,
 For alexander aw · almost he dyes, 1459
 And for he hed nekyd hym with nay · in a new tyme.
 And now he þenkez in his thought · he turht² noght haue
 cared

In aH hys maste mister · made he hym faylez,³
 When he for socour to þe cite · send hym hys *lettre*;
 And he soned hym by þis case · þat nowe hym for-
 thynkez. 1464

¹ Read For. ² Read thurt. ³ Read nad he þe man fayled.

He had rather
have been
forsworn than
have denied
Alexander
anything.

"For me had^t leuer," quod þe lede · "be lethirely for-
sworñ

Oñ as many halidoms · as opens¹ & speris,
þañ anys haue greuyd þat gome · or warned him his
erand! 1467

þat euer I warned him his wiñ · wa is me þat stonde!"
þus was Iaudes of ioy · & iolite depryued;
And all þe iewis of ierusalem · he Ioyntly a-sembles.

He addresses the
Jews,

He said, "Alexander is at hand · & wiñ vs añ cumbre,
And we ere dredles vndone · bot driȝten vs heþ." 1472
þan bedis þe bischop añ þe burȝe · barnes & othire,
Athils of añ age · eldire & ȝongire,

and proclaims a
3 days' fast.

Comandis to ilka creatour · to erie þurȝe þe stretis,
To thre dais oñ a thrawe · be threpild to-gedire, 1476

All pray for help,

Ilk a frek & ilka fante · to fast & to pray,
To occupy þar oures & orisons · & offire in þar temple,
And call vp with a clene voice · to þe kyng^t of heuyñ,
To kepe þam, at þis conquiroure · encumbrid þaim
neuir. 1480

to be delivered
from Alexander's
vengeance.

Now seȝen þai to þar Sinagogis · añ þe cite ouire,
Ilka bodi þar bedis · þat in þe burȝe lengis,
Putt þam to prayris · & penaunce enduris,
þe vengeance of þis victoure · to voide if þai miȝt. 1484
þe niȝt eftir þe note · as² tellis me þe writtis,
Quen añ þe cite was on-slepe · & sacrificis endid^t,

An angel appears
to the bishop,
and comforts
him.

In ane abite of þe aire · ane Aungell aperis
To Iaudas of ierusalem · & him with ioy gretis: 1488
"I bringe þe bodword^t of blis · ser bischop," he said^t,
"With salutis of solas · I am sent fra þe trone,
Fra þe maister of man · þe miȝtfull fadere,
þat bedis þe noȝt be³ a-baist · he has þi bone herd; 1492
And I amonest þe to-morne · as I am enIoyned,
þat þou as radly as þou rise · aray añ þe cite,

[Fol. 26.]
"Array the city
as if to receive a
victor,

þe stretis & in añ stedis · stoutly & faire,

¹ MS. open; altered to opens in later hand.

² MS. &. ³ Added in the margin.

"For me hed leuer," quod þe lede · "bene letherly [Fol. 13 b.]
forsworne

On aH þe halydoms · as opyn are to nevyñ,
Than onys haue greved þis gome · or groched with hys
erand !

1467

þut euer I warned hym hys wille · wa is me bestound !"

Thus was Iaudes of ioy · & iolyte depreuett;

And aH þe Iewes of Ierusalem · he iontly assemblez.

And¹, "alexander is at hand · & wille vs aH combred,²

And we er vtterly vndone · bot dryghten vs shelde." 1472

Than biddez þe bischop aH þe burgh · bernes & oþer,

AtheHes of aH age · bath elder & yonger,

Comand iche creature · & cryed þorow þe stretes,

TiH thre days on a throw · wer threpelytt to-geder, 1476

And ilke freke & euery faunt · to fast & to pray,

To occupy in þair orisons · & offers³ in þe temple,

And calle vp with kene cry · vnto þe kyng^t of heuen,

And kepe þaim with þis conquerour · he comber þaim
neuer.

1480

Thai soght to þair sinagoge · aH þe cite ouer;

Iche body to þair bedes · at in þe burgh lendedes

Putten þaim to prayers · & pennance indurett,

þe vengeance of þis victor · to voyde if þai might. 1484

The thred nyght after þis note · as neuuen me þe text,

When aH þe cite was slepe · & sacrificese endytt,

In ane habett of þe ayre · an angeH apperes

To Iaudes of Ierusalem · and hym with ioy gretes: 1488

"I brynge þe bodworde of [blis] · sir bischop," he sayd,

"With salutez of solace · am send fro þe trone,

Fro þe hye maister of mageste · & þat mightfull fadre,

A byddes þe noght be abaysed · he hase þi bone herd;

And I amonesh þe to-morne · als me was amoved, 1493

þat þou als radly as þou ryses · aray all þi cite,

The stretes & aH stedes · stoutly & faire,

apparicio
angeli
episcopo
Ieromo-
solitano.

¹ Read Said. ² Read combre. ³ Read offer.

þut it be onest aH ouire · & opeñ vp þe ȝatis. 1496

*Lett þañ þe pupiH ilka poll · apareld be clene,
And al manere of men · in mylk-quyte clathis.*

*And pas, þou & þi prelatis · & prestis of þe temple,
Raueste aH oñ a raw · as ȝoure rewiH askis.* 1500

and go to meet
Alexander,
the great
conqueror of the
world."

*And quen þis conquirour comes · caire him agaynes ;
For he moñ ride þus & regne · ouire aH þe ronde werle
Be lordschip in ilka lede · in-to his laste days,
And þen be¹ diȝt to þe deth · of driȝtins ire.* 1504

All the Jews
agree to receive
Alexander with
honour.

*¶ Sone þe derke ouire-drafe · & þe day springis,
Oure bischop bounes him of bedl · & buskis on his wedis,
And þen iogis aH þe iewis · & generaH callis,
A-vaines þaim his visioñ · how þe voice bedis ; 1508
þan consals him þe clergy · clene aH-to-gedire,
And all þe cite asentis · sarazens & oþir,
To buwne furth with aH þe burȝe · & buske þam
belyue,*

As him was said in his slepe · þis souerayn to mete. 1512

Then he arrays
the city to
receive Alexander.

*þan rynnes he furth in a rase · & arais aH þe cite,
Braidis ouire with bawdkyns · aH þe brade stretis,*

With tars & with tafeta · þar he trede sulde, 1515

For þe erth to slike ane Emperoure · ware ouire feble.

He puts up
awnings to keep
off the sun's heat.

He plyes ouire þe pauement · with² pallen webis,

Mas on liȝt ouire his hede · for hete of þe soñ,

Sylours of sendale · to sele ouire þe gatis, 1519

And sammes þaim oñ aithire side · with silken rapis,

And þen he caggis vp on cordis · as curteyns it were,

Euen as þe esyngis ȝede · ouire be þe costes,

All þe wawis with-outte · in webis of ynde,

Of briȝt blasand blewe · browdeñ with sternes. 1524

[Fol. 26 b.]

þus atired he þe toune · & titely þar-eftir

He opens the
gates.

On ilka way wid open · werped he þe ȝatis ;

And qua so lukis fra with-out · & with-in haldis,

It semyd as þe cite to se · ane of þe seuyñ³ heuyns. 1528

¹ MS. he. ² Added above the line.

³ MS. seuyñs ; with final s expuncted.

- þat it be honest al ouer · & opyn vp þe ȝates. 1496
 Lett þen þi peple euerilke polle · aparaeld¹ be clene,
 And al maner of men · in milke-whitte clathez.
 Bott passe, þou & þi pristez · & prelatez of þe temple,
 Reuest al on rawe · as your rewle askez. 1500
- And when þis conquerour comez · carez hym agayns ; [Fol. 14.]
 For he must ryde & reyne · ouer al þe brede of þe werlde,
 And be Lord of ilke lede · vnto hys last dayes,
 And þen be dight vnto þe deth · of drightenez ayre." 1504
 Sone þe dyrke ouer-drafe · & þe day springez,
 Oure Bishop bownes hym of bede · & buskes hys wedes,
 And þen þat Iew of all Iewes · in generall he clepys,
 Says þaim hys vision · & as þe voyce biddes ; 1508
 Than councellys hym þe Clerge · clene al-to-geder,
 And all þe cety be assent · sariauntez & other,
 To bowne hym forth with al þe burgh · & buske hym
 beliue,
- As hym was sayd in hys slepe · þis souerand to mete.
 Than rynnes forth in a rese · arayes al þe cyte, 1513
 Spredes ouer with bawdkens · al þe brode stretes,
 With riche clothez of taffata · qwer he trede suld,
 For þe erth to siche ane emperorur · wer al to feble. 1516
 He plyes ouer þe payment · palleñ webbes,
 Makez on hight ouer þe heued · for het² of þe soñ,
 Silours of sendale · to syle ouer þe gatez, 1519
 And sampnez þaime on aþer [side] · with sylkyn rapez,
 And þan he cachez vp on cordez · als curtayneze it were,
 Euen als þe esynges ȝode · ouer be þe costez,
 Al þe wallez withowte · in webbez of Inde,
 Of bright blysnand blew · browden with sternes. 1524
 Thus attyred he þis toune · & titely þar-after
 Of ilke way wide hopyn · warpyd he þe ȝatez ;
 Att who so wates fro withowte · & within hedes,
 It semyd as to se to · on of þe seuen heuens. 1528

¹ MS. aparaerld; see l. 1552.² The t is written above the line.

The bishop and
priests are richly
arrayed.

Now passis furth þis prelate · with prestis of þe temple,
Reueschid him rially · & þat in riche wedis,

With erst &¹ abite vndire aþ · as I am in-fourmede,
Fulle of bridis & of bestis · of bise & of purpre ; 1532

And þat was garnest^t full gay · with golden skirtis,
Store starand stanes · strekilland all ouire,

Saudið fuþ of safirs · & oþire sere gemmes,
And poudird with perry · was perrour & othire. 1536

And sithen he castis oñ a Cape · of kastand hewes,

With riche rabies of gold · railed bi þe² hemmes,

A vestoure to vise oñ · of violet floures,

Wroȝt fuþ of wodwose · & oþer wild bestis ; 1540

And þan him hiȝtild^t his hede · & had^t on a Mitre,

Was forgid aþ of fyne gold · & fret fuþ of perrils,

Stiȝt staffuþ of stanes · þat straȝt out bemes,

As it ware shemerand shaftis · of þe shire soñ. 1544

Doctours & diuinours · & othire dere maistris,

Iustis of iewry · & iogis of þe lawe,

Ware tired aþ in tonacles · of tarrayn webbis ;

þai were bret-full of bees · aþ þe body ouire, 1548

And oþer clientis & clerkis · as to þe kirke fallis,

Ware all samen of a soyte · in surples of raynes,

þat slike a siȝt, I suppose · was neuer sene eftire,

So parailed a processioñ · a person a-gaynes. 1552

Now bowis furth þe bischop · at þe burȝe ȝatis,

With prestis & with prelatis · a pake out of nombre ;

And aþ þe cite in sorte · felowis him eftir,

Quirris furth all in quite · of qualite as aungels ; 1556

Maistirs, marchands, & Maire · mynistris & othire,

Worthi wedous & wenchis · & wyues of þe cite ;

Be ilka barne in þe burgh · as blaȝt ere þaire wedis

As any snyppand^t snawe · þat in þe Snape liȝtis. 1560

þar passis þe processioñ · a piple be-forne,

Of childire aþ in chalk³ quyte · chosen out a hundredth,

With bellis & with baners · & blasand torchis,

So rich a sight
was never seen.

[Fol. 27.]

The citizens
follow in the
bishop's train,

all in robes white
as snow.

¹ Read an. ² Added in the margin. ³ MS. shalk.

Now passes þis prelate · with prestez of þe temple,
Reuest fully rially · & with ryche wedes,
First ane habett^t vnder aH · as I am enformed.

FuH of birdes & of bestes · of byse & of purpurre ; 1532

And þat was garnished full gay · with gold skirtez,
Store starand stanes · strenklett aH ouer,

Sawdett with saphirez · and oþer sere gemmys,

And pouuderet with perre · was purer þar¹ oþer. 1536

Bot syne he kest on a Cape · of castans hewe,

With riche rybans of gold · raythely þe hein,

A vesture of vyce · of vyolet flourez,

[Fol. 14 b.]

Wroght fuH [of] wodwose · & oþer wylle bestes ; 1540

And þen he heghtlet on hys heued · a hoge fair myter,

Was forgett aH [of] fyne gold · & frett fuH of perlez,

Stight staffuH of stanes · þat straughten owt bemes,

Als it wer shemerand shaftez · shott fro þe soñ. 1544

Doctours & deuynours · & oþer dere maistres,

Iustes of Iewry · & Iewes of þe lawe,

Wer tyrett^t aH in tonacles · of tartareñ webbys ;

And þai wer brightfuH of bleez · aH þe body ouer, 1548

And oþer clerkez & colettes · at to þe kirke longeñ,

Wer aH sampnen in a sott · with surples of reynes,

That suche a sight, I suppose · was neuer sene aftir,

So paraeld a processionñ · ane persoñ agayns. 1552

Now bownes furth þe bischop · at þe brode ȝates,

With pristes & with prelatez · a pake owt of nowmbre ;

And aH þe cite of sorte · sylez hym after,

Whirrez forth aH in white · of qualite of angels ; 1556

Marchaundez, maister mair · mynister and oþer,

Worthy wedous and wifes · & whenches of þe cite ;

Be ilke a barne in þe burgh · aH blaught is hys wedes

Als any snappand snaw · þat in þe snape lightes. 1560

Than passys þe procession · a peple beforne,

Of childer aH in chalke white · chosyn a hundreth,

With belllys & with banners² · & blesand torchez,

¹ Read þan.

² MS. barners.

Instrumentis & ymagis · with-in of þe Mynstire ; 1564

Children bear censers.

Sum with sensours & so[m] · with silueryn cheynes,

Quare-of þe reke aromatike · rase to þe welken ;

Sum with of þe saynt-ware · many sere thingis,

With tablis & topoures · & tretice of þe lawe ; 1568

Sum bolstirs of burnet · en-brouden with periſt,

Bare before þe bischop · his buke on to lig ;

Sum candilstickis of clere gold · & of clene siluer,

With releckis ful rially · þe richest on þe autere. 1572

þus seyis all þe semle · þe cite with-out,

Vn-to a stonen stede · streȝt on þe temple,

Scopulus, by sum skil · þe scripture it callis,

And þare þe come of þe kynge · þis couent abidis. 1576

Sone Alexander with ane ost · of¹ many athille dukis,

Alexander arrives, and finds all waiting to receive him.

Come prekand toward þe place · with princes & erlis,

Sees slige a multitude of men · in milke-quite clathis,

And ilk seg in a soyte · at selly him thinkis. 1580

þan fyndis he in þis oþire flote · fanons and stolis,

Practisirs & prematis · & prestis of þe lawe,

Of dialiticus & decre · doctours of aythir, 1583

Bathe chambirlayn & chaplayne · in chalk-quite wedis.

And as he waytis in a wra · þan was he ware sone

Of þe maister of þat meneyhe · in-myddis þe puple,

þat was þe bald bischop · a-bofe alle þ[e]² iewis,

Was graþid in a garment · of gold & of pu[r]pree. 1588

And þan he heues vp his eȝe · be-haldis on his myter,

Be-fore he saȝe of³ fyne gold · forgid a plate,

þar-in grauen þe grettest · of al god's names,

þis title, Tetragramaton · for so þe text tellis. 1592

With þat comandis þe kyng · his knyȝtis ouire⁴ ilkane,

Bathe beron & bachelere · & bald men of armes,

Na nere þat place to aproche · a payn of þar lyuys,

Bot al to hald þam be-hynd · heraud & othire. 1596

He sees the bishop in his mitre,

with the title Tetragrammaton.

þan airis he furth al him ane · to þis athiſt meneȝe,

¹ Added in the margin.

² MS. þ.

³ Here forgid is inserted, but is underlined. ⁴ Read euire.

The king advances alone,

- Instrumentes & ymagez · within of þe temple ; 1564
 Som with censours & som¹ · with syluer chynes,
 Whar-of þe reke of aromatyke · rase to þe welken ;
 And of þe sanctuary · mony sere þingez,
 With tabels & tapers · & tretes of þe law ; 1568
 Som bolsters of burnett · enbrowden with perle,
 Borne byfore þe bishop · hys boke on to lig ;
 Som candelstyke of clene gold · & of good syluer,
 With relikkez fully rially · þe richest of þe werld. 1572
 Thus sezes al þis semble · þe cite withowte,
 Vnto a stonon stede · streȝt on þe temple,
 Scopulus, be some skely · þe scriptur it calles,
 And þar þe come of þe kyng · þis Couent abydez. 1576
 Sone² Alexander with an hoste · of many atheȝt dukez, [FOL. 15.]
 Come prekand to þe palace · with princez & Erelez,
 Saugh suche a multitude of men · [in] mylke-white wedes,
 And ilke a sege in a sote · þat selly hym thynkez. 1580
 Than fyndez he in a nother flete · of fanons & stoles,
 Practyf men in prevatez · & prestez of þe lawe,
 Of Dialeticus and decre · doctours of ather,
 Bath chamerlayn³ & chapelayn · in chalke-white wedes.
 And als he wates in a wray · þen was he war sone 1585
 Off þe maister of þat meynȝe · in-myddeȝ of þe peple,
 That was þe bald bischop · abowne al þe Iewes,
 Was grathed in a garment · of gold & of siluer. 1588
 Than he heldes vp on hegh · beheld on hys myter,
 Before he se of fyne gold · forgett a playte,
 An þar-on grauen on þe grethest · of al godeȝ namez,
 This title, tetragramatoȝ · for so þe text wittnesse. 1592
 With þat Comand þe kynge · hys knyghtez all,
 Bath barouns & bachelors · bald men of armez,
 No nere þe place [to aproche] · vpon payn of þair lyfez,
 Bot al to hald þaim byhynde · þe lesse & þe more. 1596
 Than ayres he forth al hym one · to þis atheȝt meynȝe,

¹ MS. so, alt. to set ; but read sō = som.

² MS. Some.

³ MS. chamernlayn.

and kneels to the
bishop.

Bowis him doun of his blonke · þe bischop be-forne,
And kneland̄ oñ þe cald̄ erth · he knockis oñ his brest,
And reuerencez þis haly name · at he seis wreñ. 1600
þan þe iewis of ierusalem · Iustis & othire,
Lordis & ladis · & be þe litiH childere,
Enclynes þam to þe conquirour · & him oñ¹ kneis gretis,
Kest vp a kene crie · & carpis þir wordis. 1604
“Ay moȝt he lefe, ay moȝt he lefe” · quod ilka man
twyse,

The lords kneel
to the king.

They cry, “Long
live Alexander!”
“Alexander, þe athill aire · vndire þe heuyñ,
Ay moȝt he lefe, ay moȝt he lefe² · þe lege Emperoure,
þe wildire of alþ þe werde · & worthist oñ erthe, 1608
Ay moȝt he lef, ay moȝt he¹ leue¹” · quod loude alþ
at anys,

Conqueror of all
the earth !”

“Ouircomere clene of ilka coste · & ouircomyn neuir,
þe gretest & þe gloriosest · þat euir god formed,
Erle or Emperoure · & any erdly prince.” 1612

All wonder at
this greeting.

[Fol. 28.]

Then Permeon
asks him why he
knelt to the
bishop.

þare was comen with him kyngis · as þe clause tellis,
Seneiours out of Sireland³ · was to him-selfe ȝoldeñ,
And þai meruailed þam mekiH · as þe buke tellis, 1615
When þai it herd so be-heryd̄ · & held it in wondire.

He replies that
he knelt to the
great God,

þan Permeoñ, a proude kniȝt · a prince of his oste,
Aires to sir Alexander · & askis at him swythe,
Syn him adoured alþ men · eldire & ȝongir, 1619
Qui he obeschid̄ so lawe & bende · þe bischop̄ of iewis ?
“Nay,” quod þe comly kynge · & þe knyȝt swaris,
“Nouthire haylsid I him · ne hildid̄ him nouthire,
Bot it was gode at I grete · þe gouernoure of alþ, 1623
Of quam in þe abite & þe armes · he was alþ clethid̄.
For in þe marche of Messedone · me mynes on a tyme,
þat slike a segg in my slepe · me sodanly aperið,
Euyn in slike a similitude · & þis same wedis,
For alþ þe werd as þis wee · wendis now atired. 1628

¹ Inserted in the margin.

² Here the MS. wrongly inserts quod.

³ land is above the line in MS.

Bowes hym downe of hys blonke · þe bischopp̄ before,
 Kneland on¹ þe cald erth · & knokez on hys briste,
 And hersouns þat haly name · þat he byheld written.

þan aH þe Iewes of Ierusalem · Justice & oþer, 1601 *Processio
versus alex-
andrum apud
Ierusalem.*
 Lordez & lades · be þe lityH sottez,

Inclines þaim to þis conquerour · & hym on knees gretes,
 Kest vp a kene crye · & carpyd þees wordes : 1604
 "Ay mott he leue, ay mot he leue" · quod ilke a lede
 twyse,

"Alexander, þe athelfullest · hayr vnder heven, 1606
 Ay mot he leue, ay mott he leue · þis lege Emperour,
 The welder of aH þe werld · & worthiest vnder wylde,
 Ay mott he leue," quod þe Land · [loude all] at anes,

"Ouercommer clene of ilke coste · & ouercommyn neuer,
 The grettest & þe gloriest · þat euer god formed,
 EreH or ony Emperour · or erthlich prince !" 1612

þan Wer þair commoñ whit hym kyngez · als þe clause telles, [Fol. 15 b.]

Senyours owt of Surry · wer to hym-selue ȝoldeñ,
 And þai amervale þaime mekyH · as menys me þe writtes,
 When þai saw hym so heret · & heldyn it a wondre. 1616
 Than Permeoñ, a proude knyȝt · a prince of hys hoste,
 Ayres to sir alexander · and askys hym swith,

Sen hym adouret aH meñ · alder & yonger,
 Why he obeyd & bowed so · to þe bischop of Lewes ?

"Nay," quod þe comly kyng² · & þe knyȝt swerez, 1621

"Noþer haylsed I hym · ne heldit hym noþer,
 Bod it was god at I gret · þe gouernour of aH,
 Of whome in þe habett & þe armez · he was aH clethyd.
 For in þe marche of masydoñ · me menys on a tyme,
 Suche a segh in my slepe · me sodenly appered, 1626
 Euen in suche a semblant · & in þe same wedes,
 For aH þis werld as þis wy · wendes now attyred. 1628

¹ MS. of.

² MS. knyge.

And þen I mused¹ in my mynde · how at I myȝt wyñ
 Anothire aneȝt of þe erth² · þat Aysy we caȝt it,
 And me thret to be thra³ · & for na þing turne,
 Bot tire me titely þarto · & tristly to wende. 1632
 And syne saȝe I na segḡ · þat sa was arayd ;

· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

"of whom I once
dreamt."

Now I hope to
destroy all the
Persians."

[Fol. 28 b.]

Alexander is
royally received,

and goes to
Solomon's temple.

Jaudas brings out
a book of Daniel's
prophecy,

how the Greeks

And sekirly yone semys · þe same to se⁴ to withiñ,
 þe same gode at I in my slepe · saȝe in my days ; 1635
 And now I hope me, þurȝe þe helpe⁵ of þe haly fadire,
 Of quam þe hered haly name · is ȝondire oñ hiȝe wreten,
 To do with Darius or I dyi · how so me dere thinke,
 And þe pride of aȝt þe Persens · purely distroy.
 And ȝit I sothely suppose · quat so my sale hopis, 1640
 þat saȝt faȝt apon fold · slik fyaunce I haue
 In þe grace of grete god · at gyes aȝt þe sternes,
 þat it saȝt be in my wiȝt · & oñ na way faile." 1643
 Now tas þe bischop þe berne · & to þe burȝe wendis,
 With sange & solempnite · him to þe cite ledis,
 He was resayued, as I rede · with reuerence & Ioye,
 As he ware duke of ilk douth · & dreuyn doun fra
 heuen. 1647

þan gas he furth with his gingis · to godis awen temple,
 þat of sir Salamon þe sage · sett was & foundid,
 And þare he lythis of þare lare · as þe law wald⁶ ;
 He offird in þat oratori · & honourd oure lorde.

And Iaudas of ierusalem · & aȝt þe iewis eftir 1652
 Bringis out a brade buke · & to þe berne reches,
 Was plant ful of prophasys · playnely aȝt ouire,
 Of þe doctrine of Daniel · & of his dere sawis.
 þe lord⁵ lokis on þe lyne · & oñ a lefe fyndis 1656
 How þe gomes out of grece · suld with þaire grete miȝtis

¹ The d is above the line in MS.

² MS. werd erth ; but werd is struck out.

³ MS. repeats to be thra ; partly underlined.

⁴ MS. þe in same to to w ; altered to þe same to se.

⁵ Inserted in the margin.

And þan I musyd in my mynde · how þat I might wynne,
 Ane oþer angle of þe erth · þat asy we calle,
 And he me thrett to be tra¹ · & for no thyng turne,

Bot tyre me titely þarto · & tristly to wend. 1632

And syne saw I no segh · þat so was atired ; 1633

And he² hoppyd þe holder þat þis was he · at he² saw
 þeñ, 1633*

For sekerly he semys so · to se withowte, 1634

The³ same god þat in my slepe · I sawe in þo days ;

And now I hope, þorow help · of þe hye fadre, 1636

On whom þe holy name is ȝond · on hye writteñ,

To do with Darius, or I dye · how I some dere thynke,

And þe pride of all þe persens · purely distroy.

Bot ȝitte I sothly suppose · qwat so my saule þinkez, 1640

That sall be-falle vpon falde · slyke fiance I haue

In þe grace of þe grett god · þat gydez al sternes,

That it saH in my will be · & in no ways faille."

Now takys þis Bishop þe berne · & to burgh ledes, 1644

With sange & solemnite · with hym to cite wendes,

He was resaued, as I rede · with reuerence & Ioy,

As he wer duke of iche dochre · & drevyn owt of
 heueñ.

þan gays he forth with hys gyng · to goddes awne temple,

[Fol. 16.]

That of sir salamoñ þe sage · sett was & fondyñ, 1649

And þar he lightez of þar lare · & als þe lawe wald ;

He offers in þat oratory · & honours owr Lorde.

And Iaudes of Ierusalem · þe Iewes fadir, 1652

Bringes forth a brade buke · & to þe berne reches,

Was plantyd full of prophecyes · playnly al ouer,

Of þe doctryne of daniel · & of hys dere sawes.

The lede lokys on a lefe · & in a lyne fyndes 1656 *prophecia*

How þat þe gomez owt of grece · suld with þair grett mightez

¹ Read thra.

² Read I; twice.

³ MS. Thame.

- should destroy Persia.
Persia.
- Alexander richly rewards all,
- and tells the bishop to take all he wants,
- and to ask a boon.
- [Fol. 29.]
- The bishop asks for leave to abide in his own religion,
- and that the men of Media and Babylon should become Jews.
- Alexander grants this,
- and offers more.
- Alexander leaves a viceroy behind him.
- þe pupill out of Persye · purely distroy ;
And þat he hopis shall be he · & hertly he ioyes.
þan partis he to þa prelatis · many proude giftis, 1660
Was name sa pore in þat place · bot he his purse fillis,
Geues þam garsons of gold · & of gud stanes,
Rife riches enoȝe · robies & perles,
Besands to þe bischop · he bed out of nounbre, 1664
Reches him of rede gold · ransons many,
Tas him to his tresory · talent him to shewe,
Bad him wale quat he wald · & wild him þe toþir.
ȝit bedis he him, þe bald kyng · as þe buke tellis : 1668
“Sire, quat þou wiȝt in þis werd · to wild & to haue,
Noȝt bot aske it at¹ Alexander · quat þou wiȝt apon
resoȝn,
And I sall grant, or I ga · with a gud wiȝt.”
- þan bowis doun þe bischop · & him a bone askis, 1672
“Sire, þis I depely disire · durst I it neuyñ,
þat it be leueful vs oure lare · & oure law vse,
As oure fadirs has folowid · forwith þis tyme ;
As of ȝoure grete gudnes · at ȝe grant wald 1676
To lat vs sitt be safe · bot for þis seuyn wyntir,
But tribute or trouag · quils þe terme lastis,
þan were we halden all þe hepe · to hiȝe þe for euir.
And ȝit I wiȝt, be ȝoure leue · a worde & na mare, 1680
þat þe men of Medi · man, be ȝoure leue,
Lang aȝt in oure lawe · lely to-gedire,
And þai of Babiloȝ bathe · & bede I na nothire.”
- Quod Alexander belyue · “all þis I graunt, 1684
And els any othire thing · aske & be serued.”
- “Nay, now na mare,” quod þe man · & mekly him
thankid^t,
“Bot ay þi lordschip & þi loue · quils my lyfe dures.”
- Now kastis þis conquirour · to caire fra þe cite, 1688
And mas to bide in þe burȝe · a berne of his awyn,
A messagere to myn · on quat meȝn of him said,

¹ MS. at it.

The peple owt of perse · purely distroy ;
 And [þat] he hopys suld be he · & heterly he ioyes.
 Than he *partes* to þe *prelates* · mony prouude gyttes, 1660
 Was non so pure in þe place · bot he hys purse fillez,
 Gyfez þaim garisons of gold · & of god stanez,
 Riche giftez enogh · bath rubies & perelez,
 Besaundez to þe bischopp · he badde owt of nowmbre,
 Rechez hym of rede gold · raunsons mony, 1665
 Takez hym to hys tresory · talentes hym shewys,
 Bade hym wale qwat he walde · & wyld hym þaes oþer.
 ȝit biddez hym þe bald kyng · als þe boke tellez : 1668
 "Sir, qwat þou wiþ in þis werld · to weld or to haue,
 Noȝt bot aske at alexander · any thyng of resoñ,

And I saȝ graunte, or I gay · with a goode wille."
 Than bowes downe our bischop̄ · & hym a bone askez,
 "Sir, þis I depely desirre · durst I it neueñ. 1673
 þat ȝe wald latte vs oure lare · & owre lawez vse,
 Als owr faders hase foloued · forewith þis tyme ;
 And of your grett goodnessse · if ȝe þis graunte wald 1676
 To latt vs sitte & be safe · bot for þis seuen wynter,
 Withowte tribute or truage · whils þe terme lastes,
 þen wer we halden aȝt þe hepe · to pray for you for euer.
 And ȝitt I wille, be your leue · a worde & no more, 1680
 þat þe men of mede · may, be your leue,
 Lenge aȝt in your¹ lawe · lely to-geder,
 And þai of babilon bath · þan bid I none oþre."
 Quod alexander als belyue · "aȝt þis I graunt, 1684

[Fol. 16 b.1]

And ellys ony oþer thyng · aske & be serued."
 "Nay, nowe no more," quod þis mañ · & mekely hym
 thankez,
 "Bot your lordship and youre loue · whille my lyve lastes."
 Now kyst hym þis conquerour · to care fro þe cite, 1688
 And made to byde in þe burgh · a berne of hir awne,
 A messynger to meyn on · qwat' men of hym sayd,

¹ Read our.

Ane Ardromacius, a gome · as¹ þe buke tellis.
 þan bowis to þe bischop · his benyson to fang^t, 1692
 Takis lufly his leue · & lendis oñ forthere.

To Sere cites þar be-syde · he soȝt with his hostis,
 And þai frendly & faire · freely resayued him.

þan of þe Siriens summe · in þe same tyme 1696
 Folow fra þe fell kyng^t · as fals men suld,
 Did þam to sir Darius · & depely þam playnt,

Quat errore of þis Emperoure · & euil þai suffird. 1699
 And he¹ þam faire vndir-fong^t · & fraynes þam ;erne,
 Askis þam of sir Alexander · aH at he cuthe,
 Bathe of his statoure & his strenth · if he² ware store ben,

His qualite, his quantite · he quirys aH-to-gedire;
 And þai in parchement him payntid · his person him
 shewid, 1704

Ane amlaȝe, ane asalenȝ · ane ape of aH othire,
 A wirling, a wayryngle · a wawil-eȝid shrewe,
 þe cait[if]este creatour · þat cried was euire.

And þan, as he lenes · & lokis on his fourme, 1708
 His litillaike & his licknes · he laythly dispiced,

And thre thingis of his thede · he þoȝt him sa feble,
 He dressis to him in dedeyne · & in dispiste sendis :
 First a baH, says þe buke · þe barne with to play, 1712

A herne-pañ es of a berne · of brend gold yeuen,
 For hottre & for hething^t · a Hatt made of twyggis;
 Sayd þat was benere him to bere · þan a briȝt helme.
 Slike presandis out of Persy · he to þe prince sendis, 1716
 His brefe with a brade sele · & biddis hum³ ga
 swythe.

And qua sa wiH has to wete · howe it worthis eftir,
 Now sall I neuen vs here next · þe note of his lettir.

¹ Inserted in the margin. ² MS. repeats if he.

³ Read him.

Some of the
Syrians complain
of Alexander to
Darius.

[Fol. 29 b.]
Darius enquires
about Alexander,

and is shewn a
caricature of him.

Darius despises
Alexander,

and in disdain
sends him a ball
to play with,

a golden head-
piece,
and a hat made of
twigs.

And¹ andromacius, a mañ · as I am enformed.
 þan bowys he to þe Bishop · hys benyson to fange, 1692
 Keches lufly hys leue · & lendez on ferther.
 To setez þar bysyde · he soght with hys hostez,
 And þai frendly & faire · & frely resaued hym.
 Bot þen of surriens a soume · in þe same tyme 1696
 Flowen from þis feſt kyng · as fals men suldyñ,
 Did þaim to sir Darius · & depely þaim plenyd,
 What errour of þis emperour · & ille þat þai suffred.
 And he þaim faire vnderfangez · & franez þaim þarne,
 Askez þaim of sir alexander · aſt þat he couth, 1701
 Bath of hys stature & hys strenth · if he wer sture-baned,
 Hys qualite, hys quantite · enquirez aſt-to-gedyr;
 And þai in perchemyn depayntyd · hys person hym
 sweyd,
 Ane amlaugh, ane aslyn · ane ape of aſt other, 1705
 A wiſlyng, a warlow · a waugle-eſhed shrewe,
 The catyfest creatur · þat credylytt was euer.
 And þen þe Lord, as he lenytt · & lokett on hys formē,
 Hys litilayke & hys liknes · he loudly dispysez, 1709
 And thro² thynges of hys thede · hym thoght so feble,
 He dressyd to hym in dysdene · & dispiste sendes:
 Frist to³ þe barne, says þe buke · a balle with to play,
 A brayn-pañ of a berne · of brent gold þeñ, 1713
 For hocour & for hethyng · a hat made of wiggez⁴;
 Sayd, þat was bener hym to bring · þen a bright helme.
 Suche presandez owt of perse · he to þe prince wayfez,
 Hys brefe with a brade seale · & byddes þaim go
 swithe. 1717
 And who sa wete wald · how it worshed aftir,
 Now saſt I neuuen vs on next · þe note of hys lettrea.

¹ Read Ane.² Read thre.³ to above the line in MS.⁴ Read twiggez.

Octauus passus Alexandri.

A letter:
" Darius to
Alexander."

" **S**ire dero Darius on dese · þe digne Emperoure,
 þe kyng without comparrison · of kyngis aH othire,
 Of aH lordis þe lord · þat leues in erthe,
 Predicessour of princes · & peree¹ to þe sonn, 1723
 þe souerayne sire of my soyle · þat sittis in my trone,
 In fang with my faire godis · þat I affie maste,
 To Alexander, þat of aH · so augrily him letes,
 Oure subiet & oure seruand · þus we oure-selfe write.
 For it is wayued vs to wete · þat wickidly þou haues,
 þurȝe enmyte & enuy · elacion of pride, 1729
 Be vanyte & vayne glori · þat in þi wayns kindlis,
 Puruayd þe pletours · oure partis to ride.
 For þou has samed, as men he² sais · a selly nounbre
 Of wrichis & wirlingis · out of þe west endis, 1733
 Of laddis & of losengers · & of litil theuys,
 Slike sary soroȝis as þi-selfe · to seke vs agaynes,
 And wenes to wild aH þi wiH · & þat worthis ful late,
 þe prouynce & principalte · of Persye la graunt. 1737
 For þou ert fere al to faynt · oure force to ministere;
 þof þou had gedird all þe gomes · þat euire god fourmed,
 So, man, riued is oure rewme · þat þou may reȝt lycken
 þe store strenthe of oure stoure · to sternes of þe heuen.
 And slike a nekard as þi-selfe · a noȝt of aH othire,
 Is bot a madding to meH · with mare þan him-seluen.
 Forthi is bettir vnbynd · & of þe brathe leue, 1744
 And feyne aH with fairnes · & fayne at þou may.
 For mare menseke³ is a man · to meke him be tyme,
 þan eftir made to be meke · malegreue his chekis.
 For aH þe gracious godis · & gudnes oñ erthe, 1748
 þat sanys sete & soile · & sustaynes þe erth,
 Prayses ay þe Persyns · passing aH othire,

[Fol. 30.]

Thou art too
proud and vain.

Thy men are lads
and thieves.

Thou art too
weak to harm us.

Thou hadst
better submit to
me at once.

The Persians are
a mighty race.

¹ Read pere.

² Inserted in the margin; better omitted.

³ So; for menske.

Octavus passus.

Syr Dere Darius on dese · þe digne Emperour,	1720	Epistola darij.
The kyng without comparisoñ · of kyngez all oþer,		[Fol. 17.]
Of al lordes þe Lord · þat leues in erthe,		
Predecessour of princez · & peir to þe Soñ,		
The souerane syre of my sole · þat sittis in myne trone,		
In fange with my faire god · þat I affye maste,	1725	
To Alexander, þat of aH · so augerdly hym letes,		
Oure seget & our siruant ¹ · þus our-selfe writtez.		
For it is wayfed vs to wete · þou haues wikedly,	1728	
Thrugh enmyte & enuye · Elacion of pride,		
Be vanyte & vaynglory · þat in þi vaynes kyndeles,		
Purvayd þe pletours · oure partez to ryde.		
For þou hase sampned, als men sayn · a sellich nowmbre		
Off wrechez & of wyrlyngez · out of þe west ende,	1733	
Off laddez & of losyngers · & of lityH thefez,		
Siche sary sorowez as þi-self · to seke vs agayns,		
And wenys to weld at þi wille · þat worthez fuH late,		
The prouince & þe principalite · of perse le graunt.	1737	
Bot þou ert fere aH to faynte · oure force to withstande;		
þof ² þou hade gederit ³ aH þe gomez · þat euer god formede,		
So, man, ryfe is owr reme · þat þou may wele lekyñ		
þe sture strenth of owr stoure · to þe sternez of heueñ;		
And sike a neker als þi selfe · ane noght of aH oþer,		
Is bot ⁴ a maddyng ¹ to meH · with mare þen þi-selue.		
For-þi is better vnbende · & of þi brathe leue,	1744	
· · · · ·		
For mare menske is a man · to meke hym be tyme,		
Than after made to be meke · mawgre hys chekys.		
For aH þe graciouse goddes · & goddesse on erth,	1748	
· · · · ·		
Praysez ay þe persens · passyng aH oþer,	1750	

¹ MS. souerent siruant; the former word expuncted.

² MS. Of. ³ it written above the line. ⁴ MS. bod.

And for þe oddest of ilke one oste · honours owr name.
 And slyke a dwynyng · a drawgh of þi-selueñ, 1752
 A grob, a grig out of grece · ane irth-groweñ sorow,
 Wyȝt couett ȝitte as a kyng · with catyffez liteȝt,
 To couer & to combre aȝt þe kyngez · vnder þe Cape of
 heueñ !

Right as a flaw of fell snaw · fallen wer fro þe driftie, 1756
 Of a wistus wondyn wagh · with þe wynd blayñ,
 So with a flote of fresons · folowand thi heles,
 Thu sekys fraward sychim · þi-selue with eueȝt haille,
 And Leues as a loseȝt · owr land for to entre, 1760 [Fol. 17 b.]
 And make þi lepys & þi lakez · & qwat þou list ellys,
 As ratons or ronke myce · in a rowme chaumbre,
 About on beddes or in bernez · þar baddez er nane.

Bott I haue willyly wayted · þi wilez & þi castez, 1764
 And when þou hopys aȝt-þir eldest · to haue at þou likez,
 I saȝt þe sett on a sawte · & slaye þe with my handez, 1766
 And so saȝt, fole, for þi folez · be fenyshit on dawes. 1766*
 For þi pompe & þi pride · þi purpasse avyse,¹ 1767
 For yf þou shote ouer sheet · þou shendes þi flayne. 1767*
 Turne² þe, trechour, be tyme · þat þou no treson hable, 1768
 And [drawe] agayn to þi den · vnder þi dame wengez.
 Se qwat I sende þe, soñ · þi-selfe with to layke,
 A hatt here & a hand-balle · & a herne-panne;³
 Slike presantes⁴ to play with · as pertenys þe to haue. 1772
 For ay a childe most hym chose · vnto childer gammez ;
 For mister & for michefe · vneth may þou forth
 þine awne catef cors · to cloth & to fede,
 And ȝit supposes as A sott · to sesyn owr Landez, 1776
 And Darius to drepe · & dryve owt of hys⁵ kythes !
 Bot be þe grace & þe goode · þat god gafe my fader,
 So ryfe is þe rede gold · oure regions within,
 At who so had it on a hepe · holy to-gedre,⁶ 1780

¹ MS. to avyse ; but to is better omitted. ² MS. To me wrongly.

³ MS. payne, corrected to panne. ⁴ MS. presandez presantes.

⁵ lys, corrected to hys. ⁶ MS. to gredre.

It wald vs let, as I leue · þe liȝt of þe soñ !

For-þi bid I þe badrich · on bathe twa þine eȝen,

And oñ þe plegg & þe payñ · & periñ as folowis,

AH þi vanyte to voide · & þi vayne pride,

1784

And mew agayñ to Messedone · or any mare fañ.

For be þe saule of my sire · bot if þou sone turne,

We sall þe send like a soume · of segis en-armed,

Noȝt as Philips fant · sall fare with þi-selfe,

1788

Bot as a prince of proued theues · pyne þe to dede."

Als sone as his sandismen · to þis sire come,

þai present him þe playntis · þe pistill him rechis,

And Alexander belyue · be-fore aH his princes, 1792

To aH his ost euyñ oñ · he openly declaris.

And quen his kniȝtis of þis clause · þe carpe vndirstode,

þen ware þai frekly a-frayd · of þe feH saȝes ;

And as sone¹ as him-selfe saȝe · his seggis amoued, 1796

In bilding of his bachelers · he breuys þire wordis :

"Quat now ? my worthi werriouris · sa wiȝt & sa noble,

Mi bernes & my baratours · þe best vndire heuen ;

Lettis neuire it broȝt be oñ brade · for vpbraide of
schame, 1800

"Be not afraid of
Darius.

þe doute for þe indityngs · of Darius pistils.

I sett ȝowe ane ensample · ȝe se it aH daye,

In thorps & in many thede · þar ȝe þurȝe ride,

At ilka cote a kene curre · as he þe chache wald; 1804

Bot as bremely as he baies² · he bitis neuir þe fastir.

Bot in sum, I suppose wele · þat sothe is þe lettir,

þare as he tellis quyche a tunne · of tresoure he hauys.

For-þi vs buse to be bigg · & bataill him ȝeld, 1808

þe grete garisons of gold · saH gedire vp oure hertis."

With þat comands þe kyng · his knyȝtis be-lyue,

þe donesmen þat fra Darius come · with þe derfe lettir,

þat þai suld titly þam take · & by þe toȝe throtis, 1812

He gives orders And for þaire souerayne sake · þam send to þe galawis.

¹ MS. inserts him s; but it is struck out.

² The e is above the line.



¹ MS. eugeñ. ² So in MS. ³ MS. fellyd.

⁴ MS. dydeñ. ⁵ MS. tyme.

to hang the messengers.

They beseech him to be merciful.

[Fol. 31 b.]

He says it is because Darius calls him a thief.

They remind him that it is Darius who wrote the letter.

He pardons them, and entertains them.

"Alexander to Darius, who calls himself a conqueror."

þan was þa messangers a-maied · as mervale ware ellis,

With kene carefull crie · þis conquirour þai said : 1815

"Allas ! quat lake lyse in vs lord · if it be ȝoure wiþ,
þus causeles for oure kynge · encumbird to worthe?"

"The sazes of ȝour souerayn" · said þe kynge þeñ,

"Nedis me to slike notis · as I had neuer etlid,

þat has ȝow sent to my-selfe · noȝt sa as him aȝe ; 1820

Loo 'litiþ thefe' in ilka lyne · his lettir me callis."

"ȝa," quod þai, "comly kyng" · & oñ knes¹ fallis,

"þase ditis endited to ȝowe · sir Darius him-seluyñ,

For he knew noȝt of ȝour kniȝthede · ne of ȝour kid

strength ;

1824

Ne wist noȝt of ȝour worthenes · & wrate all þe baldire.

Bot wald ȝe grant vs to gaa · & gefe vs ȝour lefe,

þen suld we bremely ȝour bill · to þe berne shewe."

þen lete þe lord þam allane · & went till his fest, 1828

Takis þam with him to his tent · & þam at ese makis.

Sone as þai in his sale · were sett at þe table,

"Sire Alexander, athiþ kyng" · quod aȝt with a steuyn,

"Comands with vs to caire · kniȝtis a thousand, 1832

And we sall surely oure sire · þe send in þaire handis."

"ȝa, make we blis," quod þe kyng · "blithe mote ȝe
worthe,

For as for takyng of ȝour lord · saȝt na lede wynde."

To Darius anofir day · enditis he a pistil, 1836

A crest clenly inclosid · þat consayued þis wordis.

Alexander, þe aire · & eldest childe bathe

Of kyng Philip þe fers · þe fendere of grece,

And als of Olimpades · þat honourable lady, 1840

To þe, Darius, oñ dese · þus dite I my lettir.

þou prince of aȝt þe Persyns · þat peres to þe sonne,

þe conquirour of ilka cost · callid of þi-selfe,

With all þi gracious godis · graithid iñ þi trone, 1844

All þus I send to ȝowe I my² sawe · vndir my sele wreten.

Sire, if we se with a suth · surely me thinkie,

¹ MS. keies, altered to knes. ² written above the line in MS.

XXXI

He writes to Darius.

þen wer þees messyngers amaced · as merveil wer ellez,
 With carfuil chere · to þe conquerour þai saydyñ :
 “Alas ! what lake lyes in vs · lord, be your lefe, 1816
 Thus causles for owr kyng · encombred to worthe ?”

| “The sawez of your soueren ” · sayd þe kyng þeñ,
 “Nedes me now to seche notes · as I neuer attelytt,
 That he hase sent to my-seluen · noght as he awght’ ; 1820
 Lo ! ‘lityll thefe’ in iche line · hys lettre me calles.”

·
 “þis doynges sir darius · indited you hym-selueñ,
 For he knew noght your knyghthode · ne your kyd
 strenthez ; 1824

Ne wist noght of yowr worthiness · & wrote alil þe balder.
 Bot ȝe wald graunt vs to go · & gyfe vs owr lyfez,
 Than suld we bremely your blysse · vnto þe berne shewe.”
 þan lete þe Lord þaim aloñ · & lathys þaim to hys feste,
 Takes þaim with hym to hys tent · & makez þaim at ease.
 Sone as þees sandesmeñ in sale · wer sett at þe table, [Fol. 18 b.]
 “Sir alexander, ateil kyng ” · quod alil with a stevyñ,
 “Comand with vs to care · knyghez a thowsand, 1832
 And we saill surely owr syre · you send in þair handez.”
 “ȝa, make ȝe blysse,” quod þe kynge · “blyth mote ȝe
 worthe,

For þe lachynge of your Lorde · saill noght a lede weynde.”
 Bot to Darius on þat oþer day · indited he a pisteil, 1836
 A lettred clenly enclosyt · þat consaued þees wordes.

“I, alexander, ayr · & eldeste childe bothe Epistola.
 Of kyng philip þe ferse · þe fender of grece,
 And als of olimphades · þat honorable ladye, 1840
 To þe, sir Darius, on dese · þus dite I my lettred.
 þou prince of alil persens · þat apperys to þe soñ,
 The conquerour of ilke coste · callyd of þi-selueñ,
 With alil þi graciouse goddes · grathed in þi trone, 1844
 Alil þus I send þow to say · vnder my sealle wrytten.
 Sir, yf we se þe sothe · surely me thynke,

All men's lands
are but their own
for a day.

Oure facultes, oure faire fees · oure fermes & our landis,
We may noȝt chalangȝ þam ne clayme · ne caȝt þaim
oure awen,

1848

[Fol. 32.]

Bot all I deme it as det · & to a day borowidȝ.

For sen we rideñ on þe rime · & oñ þe ringe seteñ
Of þe qwele of Fortoun, þe quene · þat swiftly changis,
Ofte pas we in pouert · fra plente of gudis, 1852
Fra mirthe in-to mournyng · fra mournyng in-to Ioye.
For now vs wantis in a qwirre · as þe quele turnes;

When we think to
be highest,
Fortune drowns
us.

Queñ we suppose in oure sele · to sit alþir heist,
þan fondis furth dame Fortoun · to þe flode-ȝatis, 1856
Draȝes vp þe damme-borde · & drenchis vs euire.
For-þi a we þat has wit · þofe he wele suffir,
So sadly in soueraynete · he set neuire his hope 1859
For pride of na pro[s]perite · ne prise at him folewis,
To olle ay oñ his vndireling · for ouer-laike a quyle.

Let no man
despise his
smaller neigh-
bour.

For any sele vndire son · a sott I him haldȝ,
þat ay has deyne & dispote · at dedis of litiȝ,
Sen oft þe hauenlest here · is houen to þe sternes, 1864
And he þat graithist is of gudis · gird aȝ to poudire.

Ye dishonour
your name in
reviling me.

For-þi a depe dishonoure · ȝe do to ȝoure name,
Ane emperoure þat oñ erth · is euyñ to ȝoure-selfe,
To me sa litiȝ & sa lawe · slike lettirs to sende, 1868
And presand out of Persy · bot for a pure hethyng.
For þou enherestis aȝ pis erth · & euens to þe soñ,

You call yourself
king of all men,
as if you were
immortal.

And callis þe kyng of ilka kithe · vndir þe cape of heuen,
And þarto sittis, as þou sais · in sege as ane Aungeȝ,
To-gedire with þi grete¹ gods · and oñ a gilt trone. 1873
Bot syn gostid godesses & gods · ere graythid neuir to dye,
Bot ai soll last furth elike · oñ-lyue ouire² mare,
þai naue no wiȝt to my notis · ne wilnyng to haue,
No dole ne no daliance · of dedely bernes. 1877

I know myself to
be mortal, and
attack you.

Bot I knew I am coruptible · & caire ȝow agaynes,
Als with a dedly duke · to do my bataiȝ;

¹ MS. repeats with grete.² Read euire.

Our facultez or faire feys · owr fermez & owre goldes,
 We may noght chalynge þaim ne clame · ne calle þaim our
 awne,

1848

Bot aſt I deme as dett · vnto a day borowed.

For yff we ryde on þi reme · & on þi renke settyñ

Off þe whele of forton & þe whene · þat whistely chaungez,
 Of[t] passe we in-to pouerte · fro plente of godez, 1852
 Fro mirthe into murnyng · fro murnyng into Ioy.

For now vs vantes in a whirre · as þe whele chaungez;
 When we supposye in howre-selfe · to sitte aſt-þar heldest,
 þen fonndez douñ dame forton · to þe flode-ȝates, 1856
 Drawez vp þe dame-borde · & drenchez vs for euer.

For-þi a wye þat hase witte · of þe whele sofre,
 So¹ sodandly in hys souerente · to sett neron² hys hope
 For pride of no prosperite · ne prise at hym folowez, 1860
 To olle ay on hys vnderlinges · for ouerlayke a while.

For ony ceyle vnder heven · a sot I hym halde,
 þat ay hase dene & dispyle · of dedes of lityȝ,
 Syon oft þe haslokst her · is heuen to þe sternes, 1864
 And he þat³ grethest was of goddez · gird aſt to-geder.

For-þi a depe disHonor · yhe do to your Name, [Fol. 19.]
 Ane Emperour þat on þis erth · is euuen to your-selueñ,
 To me so lityȝ & so lawe · such lettres to wayfe, 1868
 And presentes owt of perse · bot for a pure hethinge.
 For þou inheretes aſt þis werld · & euens vnto þe suñ,
 And calles þe kyng of ilke kyth · vnder þe cape of heueñ,
 And þarto sittes as þou says · in sege as an angeȝ, 1872
 To-gedre with þi grett goddez · on a gilt trone.

I knew I am corruptible · & caire þow agayns,
 Als a dedlich duk · to do my bateȝ;

¹ MS. So doys he so sodandly; *of which* doys he *is subpuncted*.
² So in MS.; *for* neuer on. ³ MS. þ, *with ht above the line*.

[Fol. 32 b.]
If I win, great
will be my
honour.

You speak of the
plenty of your
gold.

This makes us
bold to hope to
win it.

I will explain
what the play-
things mean.

The ball is the
world, which
shall be mine.

The hollow hat
shews that all
shall give way to
me.

The headpiece
shews I shall be
head."

XXXII

A letter.

" Darius to Sir
Priamus.

[Fol. 33.]

Bot þof¹ þou þe victor a-vaile · na vaunte saſt arise,
Ne lose, bot as a litill thefe · ȝow limpid to encumbre.
Bot chance it me, þat am a childe · þe cheuer to worthe,
So þat be geuyn me þe gree · grete glorie is myn aweñ.
For þan sall spring vp þe speche · & sprede out² of
mynd,

1884

How I haue conquired a kyng · þe kidest of þe werd.
Bot a tale ȝe me tald · I trow be na faile,

Of þe ryfenes of þe rede gold · ȝour region with-in,
Quilke plente is in Persy · of perett & of ellis, 1888

þe somme of siluer & of siche · & of sere stanes,
þare-with oure wittes has þou wele · & oure wiſh sharpid,

And blid with þi besands · þe bataiſt to ȝeld, 1891
Made vs corageous & kene · ȝoure clere gold to wyñ,
And put a-way oure pouert · ȝe plede vs to hald.

Bot as touchand þe trufils · þat ȝe to me sent, 1894
þe herne-pan, þe hand-baſt · þe hatt made of twiggis,
þare has þou prophesid apert · & playnely vs schewid,

And faire affirmed vs before · þat saſt fall eftir. 1897
For by þe baſt, sir, I breue · aſt þe brode werd,
þe erthe at to myne empire · enterely bees ȝolden.

And be þe hat, þat is holewe · be-for þe heued bowed,
I constru þat ilka kyng · saſt clyne to my-selfe. 1901

þan hope I by þe hernepañ · þat þe hede couirs,
Ouir-comers³ to be callid · & ouire-comen neuire.
Now þou, þe grettest vndir god · graithis me trouage,
With aſt þis dignites be-dene · þat I diuined haue."

þis brefe bedis þaim him bere · & besands þam rechis;
And eftir armes aſt his ost · & airis oñ eftir forthire.
Sire Darius for þe ditis · nere died he for angire, 1908

To twa of þe derrest of his dukis · ditis he þis pistill :

"I, þe corounnest kyng · of kyngis aſt othire,
To þe, sir primus, a prince · of Persye þe grettest, 1911
And als to ser Antagoyne · myñ aweñ athiſt dukis,

¹ MS. Bot þou þof ; but þou is underlined.

² Inserted in the margin. ³ Read Ouir-comer.

Bot if þou þe victour availe · no vaunt salt þar rise, 1880

No lose, bot of a lityH thef · enlympyd you to combre.

Bot chaunce it me, þat I am childe · þe cheuer to worth,

So þat if be¹ gefyn me þe gre · grete glory is my awne.

For þan salt springe vp þe speche · & sprede owt of
mynde, 1884

How at I haue Conquired a king · þe kyddest of þe werld.

Bot one tale ;e me tald · I trowe be no fable,

Of þe refuse of rede gold · your regions within,

Which plente is in perse · of perle & of ellys, 1888

þe some of siluer & of siche · & of sere stones,

þar-with owr willes er replete · & our wittes sharped,

And baldit vs with þi besaundez · þe bateH to byd,

Made vs coragiouse & kene · þi clere gold to wynne, 1892

And put away our pouerte · yhe pledyn vs to hald.

Bot as tochand þe trufels · þat ;e to me send,

þe herne-payn, þe hand-balle · þe hat made of twyggis,

þair hase þou prophecied apert · & playnly vs schewed,

And fair enformed vs before · þat falle salt after. 1897

For be þe bale, sir, I breue · aH þe brode werld,

The erth þat to myne empire · entirely is ȝholdeñ. 1899

And be þe hatte, þat is holys² · & before þe heued³ boȝet,

I Constrew þat iche kyng · salt incline to my-selueñ.

þan hope I, be þe harnepanne · þat þe heued Couers,

Ouercommer to be callyd · & ouercomyñ neuer.

Now þe gretest vnder god · gyfes me truage, 1904

With aH þar dignitez be-dene · þat deuised I Haue."

THys brefe he biddez þaim Bere · & besaundes þaim reches ; [Fol. 19 b.]

And aftyr armes hys oste · & ayres on forther.

Sir darius for þis detes · nere dyes for sorow, 1908

And to two þe derrest of hys dukes · ditez he þis pistell :

"I, Coroundest kyng · of kyngez aH oþer, Epistola.

To þe, sir Priamus, a prince · of þe gretest perse,

And also to þe, sir antigoñ · myne awne atheH dukes, 1912

¹ be, written above the line. ² Read holow.

³ MS. heuend ; but see l. 1902.

þe soueraynest of my seniourie · my saroparis¹ hatten,
Se here I send ȝow my seele · with salutis of ioye.

Since Alexander
invades my lands,

Fra Alexander þe kyng · as I am in-fourmed,
Is entrid with oure enmys · añ endles nounbre, 1916

I charge you to
attack him.

þe Anglies of Asie · & has þam all stroyed,
For-þi of life & o lym · my lege men I charge
To prestli ȝow apparaill · & pas þam agaynes,
With all þe hathils & þe heris · & þe hiȝe maistris 1920
þat ȝe may semble in þe sidis · saudiours & othire.

Take this boaster,

þen chese ȝow furth my chiftanes · & me þe child take,
Laches me þis losengere · & ledis me him hedire,
þat I may him skelp with a skorge · & þen² of³ skire
porpуре 1924

that I may
scourge him and
send him to his
mother.

A side slauyn him sewe · & send him to his modire;
For now he proches for pride · & propurly he wedis,
For-þi him bose to bebett · as a barne fallis.

For it⁴ aȝe noȝt slik ane Asald · nane abletus to off
werres, 1928

He is only fit to
play at bowls."

Bot at þe bowlis as a brode · or with a ball playe."
þire princes, sone as þe pistill · was put þam in hand,
þan part þai þe proud sele · þe printe þai adhoured,
Vn-lappis liȝtly þe lefe · & þe line redes, 1932

A letter.

And þus-gate agynward · þai graithid him anothire.
" To þe kiddest kyng to a-count · of kyngis all othire,
Sire Dari, with þi dere godis · drised on þi trone,
Gouernoure of ilk a gome · & god all þi-selfe, 1936
þi satrapairs, þi seniours · with seruage obescheñ:
Sire, wetis it wele, ȝoure worthines · & wenys it na
langire,

This child, as you
call him,
has wasted our
lands.

[Fol. 33 b.]

þat þis child, with his chiftans · þat ȝe charge vs to take,
Has reden all oure regions · & raymed oure landis, 1940
Departid all oure prouynce · & purely it wastid.
And we þan lift vp a lite · & lent him a-gayne,
Ferd furth with a flote · & him in þe fyld metis; 1943

¹ Read satroparis; see l. 1937.

² MS. þen þe; but þe is struck out.

³ Inserted in the margin. ⁴ Written above the line in MS.

The soueranest of my senory · my satrapers haldeñ,
 Se here I send þou my sealle · with salutes of Ioy.
 For alexander the kynge · as I am informed,
 Is entred with owr enmys · ane endles nowmbre, 1916
 In þe anglez of asy · & hase þaim aþ stroyde,
 For-þi on life & on lymez · my legemen I charge
 To pristly þou apperale · & passe hym agayns,
 With aþ þe hatellys & þe herez · & þe hye maisters 1920
 þat ȝe may assemble on þai sydez · saugeours & oþer.
 Chesse þou forth chiftanez · & me þis childe takes,
 Laches me þis losynger · & ledes me hym heder,
 And [I] saþ hym skelp with a scourge · & þen in skyre
 purpure 1924

A syde slauyn hym insew · & send hym hys modre;
 For now he prokes for pride · & p[ro]prely wodez,
 For-þi he must be bett · as a barne falles.
 Bot it aught nocht suche brolle · in none armez of
 werez, 1928

Bot at þe bulez as a brode · or with a bale to play.”
 þire princez, when þis pistell · was putt þaim in hand,
 þai departyd þe prowde sealle · þe printe þai honour,
 And vnlappyd lightly þe leffe · & þe lines redyñ, 1932
 And þus agaynard · þ[a]i grathed hym one oþer.
 “To þe kyng to acount¹ · of aþ kyngez on erth, Epistola.
 Sir Dary with þi dere goddez · dressyd in trone,
 Gouernour² of ilke grome · & god aþ þi-selueñ, 1936
 þi satrapers, þi senyowrs · with seruyce obidiens:
 Sir, wetes it your worthynes · & wenys no langer,

þat þis childe with hys chiftanys · ȝe charge vs to take,
 He hase rideñ aþ your regions · & raymet owr landez, 1940
 Desperset aþ our prouince · & purely distroyde.
 And we þen liften vp a lite · & rydyn hym ayayns,
 Ferd forth with a folke · & hym in þe feld metyñ; 1943 [Fol. 20.]

¹ MS. acoaunt.² MS. Geuernour.

We fled before
him.

We beseech your
help."

Bot sone we bed him þe bake · & besely¹ we shapid
Out of þe handis vn-hewyñ · of oure hatill² fais.

And now haly aH þe hepe · at ze³ ȝoure help callis,
Vn-to ȝoure mekiH maieste · we mekely beseke,

þat vs ȝour lege & ȝoure lele meñ · it likid ȝow to
forthire, 1948

Or þañ oure wirschip at-wynde · & wastid be þe regme." 1949

As radly as þe riche kyng · had red ouir þis pistiH,

Be þat mevis in A³ Messangere · & maynly him tellis,
þat Alexander was at hand · & had his ost loygiH 1952

A-poñ þe streme of Struma⁴ · þat strekis þurȝe his landis.

Sire Darius for þa ditis · was depely a-greuyd,

Callis him his consail · a clause he him enditis,

Mas a brefe at a braide · & it in brathe sendis, 1956

To Alexander as be-lyue · & aH þus him gretes.

¶ "I, sir Dari, þe deyne · & derfe Emperoure,
þe kyng of kyngis I am callid · & conquirour bathe,

Of all lordis þe lord · a-lose⁵ þurȝe þe werd, 1960

And ane of þe souerayne sires · vndir þe vij sternes,

To þe, my seruand, I send · & suthely þou knawes,

And wete þou wele þurȝe aH þe werde · is wirschip
oure name.⁶

For aH þe gracious gods · at þe ground visitis, 1964

AH ere done me to doute · ducsses⁷ & othire.

How couldst thou
be so bold?

How burde þe þan be sa bald⁸ · for blod in þi heued,

To moue þus ouir þe mountey[n]s · & ouir þe many
watirs 1967

With slike a soumme ouir þe see · a saute vs to ȝeld,

Or any maistrie to make · my maieste a-gayne ?

For wella⁷ wide ware þe wele · wete þou na nothire,

Bathe þi glorie & þi grace · þi gladnes in erthe, 1971

Miȝt þou þe marches of Messedoyne · mayntene þi-selfe,

And gouerne bot þine aweñ gronde · agaynes oure⁸ wiH.

[Fol. 34.]

Thou hadst
enough to do to
keep Macedonia.

¹ MS. & hi besely.

² Read hathill.

³ Inserted in the margin.

⁴ The u is above the line.

⁵ Read alosed.

⁶ MS. namo.

⁷ So (or ducsses) in MS.

⁸ Inserted in the margin.

(XXXIV)

Darius hears that
Alexander
approaches.

He is grieved.

A letter.

" Darius to his
servant Alex-
ander.

Bot sone wer biddeñ þaim þe bake · & besely echapyñ 1944
 Owt of handez to þe swerde · mony of owr athelles.
 And we now haly aþ þe hepe · þat ȝe your helpe callyñ,
 Vnto your mykle mageste · we mekely besekyñ,
 þat vs your lege & your lele meñ · it liked ȝou to
 forther, 1948

For owr worship is weynd · & wasted is owr remes."
 And als radeley as þe ryche kyng · had red ouer þe pisteñ,
 Be þat mefys in a messynger · & manyly hym tellys,
 þat alexander was at hand · & hed an hoste loget 1952
 Vppon þe streme of streuma · þat straughit þorow þe land.
 þen sir dary for þoe dedes · was deply agrevyd,
 Callys hys counseñ · a clause he inditez,
 Makez a breue in a brayde · & in a breth sendes, 1956
 To alexander als belyue · & aþ þus hym gretes.

"I, Sir Dary þe digne · & derfe Emperour, Epistola
 The king of kyngez am called · & conquerour bath, darij.
 Of aþ Lordes Lord · lowsed þorow þe werld, 1960
 And one of þe souerenest syres · vndir þe seuen sternes,
 To þe, my siruand, I send · & sothly I knew,
 And wete þou wele aþ þe werld · worshippys my name.

For aþ þe gracieux goddez · þat þe ground viseteñ, 1964
 Aþ er vndir my obedience · dredles I telle.
 How durst þou be so bald · for blode in þi heued,
 To mefe þus ouer þees montannez · & þes mony waters

With syke a soume for to seke · a sawt vs to ȝelde, 1968
 Or ony maistre to make · my mageste ayayns?
 For wele wyde wer þi wele · wete þou none other,
 Both þi glory & grace · þi gladnesse in erth, 1971
 Might þou þe marche of masidoñ · mayntene þi-selueñ,
 And gouern þine aweñ grund · agayns owr wyñ.

[Return home,](#)

before my hate
kindles upon thy
head.

As a token,
I send thee my
glove, full of
seeds.

If thou canst
count them, then
count my men.

They are number-
less."

XXXV

The messengers
bring the letter
and the seeds.

[Fol. 34 b.]

Alexander bites
the seeds, and
says,
"They may be
many, but they
are soft."

For-þi ware bettir vnhynde · or þou bale suffire,
Remowe agayne to þi rewme · & rew of þi werkis.

For certayne, nyf my seniourie · ne I my-selfe nouthire,
Añ þe werd myȝt a wedowe · wele þañ be calliȝt. 1977

For-þi turne þe be-time · or any tene worthe,
Or at þe hate of my hert · a-poñ þi hede kindiȝt.

Lend agayñ to þi lande · nowe quen þou leue hauys,
þat I mete þe in my malicoly · my meth be to littiȝt.

For-þi to keñ þe to knaw · my kyndnes here-eftir, 1982

Bath my grace & my glori · & my grete strenthe,
Loo here a gloue fulȝ of graynes · I graythe þe to take,
Of þe chesses of a chesboȝt · chosen for þe nanys. 1985

For may þou sowme me þire sedis · surely þou trowe,
þou miȝt a-count aȝt oure kniȝtis · & oure kyd ostis;

And þou truches þaim to teȝt · þen tidis þe na noþir,
Bot move a-gayñ to Messedone · & meve¹ þe na forthire.
Fyne, fole, of þi fare · & fange to þi kythis; 1990

For þis sede I þe send · vnsowmyd bees neuire.

So ere we of all folke · folke to be nombrid,
Or any wee to a-counte · vndire þe clere sternys." 1993

Now aires furth his athiȝt meñ · to Alexander wendis,
Vn-to þe streme of struma · streȝt with þa lettirs,

And he þam̄ redis in a rese · & reches to² þe sedis,

Tastis þam̄ vndire his tuthe · & talkis þir wordis: 1997

"Here I se," quod þis sire · "be þire ilke cornes,

þat þe pupiȝt out of Persy · ere passandly many,³

Bot þam̄ semes to be softe · as þir sedis prouys; 2000

For-þi how fele be aȝt þe flote · it forces bot littiȝt."

Be þis was meñ of Messedone · fra his modire comen,

And said þat semely was seke · & semed to die;

And he þe waest of þe werd · wald worth hire to visite,

Bot ȝit to Dary, or he went · he⁴ diȝt þus a lettir. 2005

¹ MS. me, altered to meve. ² Added in margin.

³ MS. meke many; but meke is struck out.

⁴ MS. his, altered to he.

For-þi it wer better vnbenden · or þou bale suffre,
Remefe agayn to þi realm · or þou sall it rewe.
For certan, yf my senory · & my-selue ne wer, 1976
Ah þe werld might albido¹ · wele þen be called.
For-þi turne þe be-tyme · or ony tene worth,
Or þe hate of my hert · on þi heued kyndle.
Lend Agayn to þi Land · WiH I Leue gefe þe, 1980 [Fol. 20 b.]
Lest þou mete with my malicoly · þi might be to lityH.
For-þi to ken þe to knawe · my kyngdome her-after,
Both my glory & my grace · & my grete strentch,
Lo, her a glofe fuH of granes · I grath þe to rekyn, 1984
Off þe chefest of² chessebollez · chosyn for þe nonest.
For and þou may soume þees sedes · seurly þou leue,
Thu may acoount³ aH owr knyghtez · & owr kyd ostez;
And yf þou thynkes þaim to tell · þen tydez þe none oþer,
To mefe agayn to masidoñ · & meH þe no forther. 1989
Fyne, fole, of þi fare · and fange to þi kythes;
For as þis sede þat I send · vnsoumed is euer,
So ben we of aH⁴ frekes · & folkez vnnowmyrd, 1992
Or ony weght to acoount · vnder þe clere welkyñ."
Now ayres forth þees messyngers · & to alexander wendyn,
Vnto þe streme of struma · streghht with þis lettres,
And þaim redes on a rase he · & rechez to þe sedes, 1996
Castes þaim vnder his tothe · & talkys þees wordes:
"Here I see," quod þis sire · "be þir selue cornes,
þat þe peple out of perse · er passandly mony,
Bot þaim semys to be softe · as þees sedis preuez; 2000
And þen how fele be aH þe flote · it forcez bot lityH."
Be þat was men of masidon · fro hys moder commyn,
And þat semely was seke · & semyd to die;
And he þe woest of þe werld · wald for hir to visytt, 2004
Bot ȝit to Darius or he diȝt · he ditez suche a pistyH.

¹ Read a wido. ² MS. oft. ³ MS. acoount; see l. 1993.

⁴ Here follows ben we of all fo, crossed through.

Nonus passus Alexandri.

A letter.
"Alexander to
Darius."

I find I must
go home for the
present.

It is not for thy
boasts, but my
mother is ill.

I shall soon
return, with fresh
men.

[Fol. 35.]
I send you a
purse, full of
sharp pepper."

Alexander returns
home.

In Arabia he is
attacked by Duke
Amonta.

" **A** lexsaundere þe athiñ · aire oute [of] grece,
þe soñ of Ph[ilip] þe fers · & of his faire lady,
Honoured Olimpadas · þe oddest vndire heuyn, 2008
To þe, ser Dari, oñ þi dese · þis dities I write.
For I am sent, be þe sure · many sere letters,
And namly now on newe time · fra myne aweñ kith,
Out of þe marche of Messadone · þatmekill me greues,
Añ oper wais to wirke · & my wiñ likis. 2013
Bot I warne þe, or I wynd· · & wiñ at þou knew,
þat for na drede I with-draw · ne doute of þi pride,
For baisting of þi bobance · ne of þi breme wordis, 2016
Bot for to se þat is seke · my semely modire.
Bot wete þou wele þis, I-wis · with-in a wale time,
Fra þat I fraist haue þat faire · of my fayre lady,
I sañ þe seke with a sowme · of seggis enarmed, 2020
Ane ost to noy þus to neuyñ · añ of new knyȝtis.
And for þe sake of þi sede · þou sent with þi lettir,
Loo, here a purse ful of pepire · my powere to keñ,
To se þi-selfe a similitude · how all þi soft grayns 2024
Sall vndire-put be añ þe pake · vn-to þir peper-cornes."
þis pistill to Persyns · he with his pepir takis,
Partis prestly þam to · many proude giftis, 2027
And þai haue laȝt þam þar leue · & þe lettir fangis,
And passis oñ to Persy · þe princes to schewe.
þan Alexander belyue · with his athiñ dukis,
Rais him radly to ride · & remowis his ost; 2031
Fra þe streme of struma he streȝtis · & stilh mournes,
And mevis him toward Messedone · his modir to visit.
He aires þurȝe Arabie · & armed þar he findis
A duke of Darys þe kyng · þat draf him agayne,
A pere out of Persy · & prince of his ost, 2036
A maister man in þa marches · Amont was hatten.
He girdis him with a ging · þe grekis he asailes.

Nonus Passus.

"I, alexander, eldest · ayr out of grece, Epistola.

þe son of Philip þe fers · & of hys faire lady,
Honored olimphades · þe odlest vnder heuen, 2008
To þe, sir darius, on þi dese · þis ditez I write.
For I am send, be þe sure · mony sere *lettres*,
And nomely now on new tyme · fro my awne kithies.

All ober-wyse to wirke · ten my wille liked. 2013

Bot þis I werne, or I wende · & will at þou knew,
þat for no drede I withdraw · þe dow of þi pryd,¹
For basyng ne for bobas · ne for breme wordes,

Bot for to Se þat is Seke · my awne Semelych Modre.

Bot wete þou wele þis, I-wisse · in a wale tyme,

Fra þat I fraysted haue þe fare · of my faire lady

I sal be seche with a soume · of seggez enarmed, 2020

One oste to ney vs to newyn · & all of new knyghtez.

And for þe sake of þi sede · þou send with þi writte

Lo, here a purse full of piper · my power to ken.

To se bi-selfe a similitude · how all bees softe graues 2024

So vnder-put [be] all be pake : of his pete cornez."

Thys pisty^H to be persons : he with his penes takys

Partes pristly to haim : mony proude cyfitez

And haue laughteñ hair leue : & be lettrez

And passyd vnto perse : he prince it to shewe

Then *alexander* : with hys atell Dukez

Bachez hym radly to ride : & remoyez hym est.

Ero be strame of struma : he moved & a

And mafaz on toward masydeñ ; his moder to wi-

He comes toward archy; & around him he finds

A dule of Dorus he brouȝt; but do falle

A Duke of Darius þe kynge · þat drake hym agay
A Bone out of ymber · & myne · fleshe bret

A fele owt of perse & prince of hys hoste,
A myghty man of armes, he was callid

A maister man of þe marche · amonta was callyd.
He ride in with a red cappe and a red hood.

He girdez in with a gyn · þe grekes assaylez,

¹ MS. *proyde*, or *peryde* (like *per* in *piper*, l. 2023).

¹ MS. *pryde*, or *peryde* (like *per* in *piper*, l. 2023); *read* *pryde*.

They fight all day.

With Alexander all day · asperly feȝtis,
 Marres of þe Messedons · miȝtfuȝt kniȝtis, 2040
 Dingis doun of þe dukis · deris þam vn-faire,
 Fra morne to þe mirke niȝt · maynly þa cockeñ,
 Seȝes doun oñ aythire side · segis out of nounbre. 2043
 Begynnys sone in þe gray day · as any gleme springis,
 And so to sett of þe soñ · sesid þai neuire.

The battle lasts for three days.

þus thre dais out a thraw · þai threp ay elike ;
 So lange, sais me þe lyne · lastid þe bataiȝt, 2047
 Sike scoures were of blude · of schondirhed bernes,
 þat foles ferd in þe flosches · to þe fetelakis ;
 Sa store & stithe was þe stoure · þe story me tellis,

[Fol. 35 b.]

þat for soroȝe of þe siȝt · þe¹ soñ² oñ þe heuen
 Kest away his clerete · & his clippis suffirs, 2052
 For bale to blische oñ þe blode · at on þe bent floȝes.
 With þat oure gomes out of grece · gedirs vp þar hertis,
 Fey fallis in þe fild · fele of þire othire,
 þo pouwere of Persy · iñ partis many 2056
 Seȝes sidlings doun · slayn of þaire blonkis.

The sun is eclipsed.
 At last the Greeks prevail,

And quen þe duke of ser Darys · þa dedis be-haldis,
 Amonta þe miȝtfuȝt · his men þañ he fangis, 2059
 And vneth limpid him þe lee · þe lyne me recordis,
 Fra his faes with a fewe · þe filde to de-voide.

Amonta flees to Darius,

And slike a pas, sais þe prose · to Persy he ridis,
 þat ȝit þe² selfe sandismen · he in þe sale fyndis, 2063
 þat fra þe streme of struma · were apon stedis wysid
 Fra Alexander & his ost · with his athiȝt pistiȝt.

and finds him perusing Alexander's last letter.

And ȝit ser dary oñ his dese · þa dities a-visis,
 Held þe lettir in his loue · & at þe ledis fraynes,
 Quat he said of þe sedis · þat he² him-selfe sent. 2068
 And þai swiftly him sward · & swyth þus him tellis :
 “ þe kyng him kaȝt,” quod þe kniȝtis “ & on þe cornes
 bitis,

And wele he geses be þe graynes · ȝoure gomes ere fele,

¹ MS. of the ; of being added in the margin, but smeared out.

² Added in the margin.

And with alexander al þe day · asperly feghtez,
 Marres of þe masidons · mightfuþ knyghtez, 2040
 Dynges downe of þe dukez · deres þaim vnfaire,
 Fro morne vnto mirke nyght · manly þai feghtyn̄,
 Slew downe on ather syde · seges owt of nowmbre.
 Began in þe gray day · when þe gleme spongē,
 And so to þe sett of þe soñ · sessyd þai neuēr.
 þus iij dayes in a thraw · þai threpyd euerelike ;
 So lang, says þe line · lastyd þe bateþ,
 Slyke showrez of shire blode · of shenderet bernes, 2048
 þat folez faired in flosshez · to þe fete-lakez ;
 So sture & styff was þe stoure · þe story me telles,
 þat for sorow of þat fight · þe soñ of heueñ
 Lost hase is clarite · & hys cleyps sufers, 2052
For bale to Bliss on blod · þat on þe bent flowes.

[Fol. 21 b.]

With þat owr gomes owt of grece · gerdyn vp þair hertes,
 And fellyd fele in þe feld · feyle of þis oþer,
 þe power owt of perse · in parteez mony 2056
 Sweyd sleghly downe · slayn of þair blonkes.
 And when sir Darius duke¹ · þis dedes bihaldyn̄,
 Amonta þe mightfuþ · hys men þen he fannges,
 And vneth limpyd hym þe lyfe · þe line me recordes, 2060
 And fro hys faes with A few folke · þe feld he deuodes.
 And suche a passe, þen says þe prose · to perse he rydez,
 þat ȝit þe some sendesman · he in þe sale fyndez,
 At fro þe streme of strema · was on stedes wysett 2064
 Fro alexander & hys hoste · with hys athell pistyþ.
 And ȝitt sir darius on þe dese · on þis dytes awysez,
 Held þis lett̄e in hys loue · & at þe ledes franes,
 What he sayd of þaes sedes · þat he þaim send hed. 2068
 And þai² swyftly hym sware · & sothly hym tald :
 “The kyng þaim kacht,”³ quod þe knyghtes · “& on þe
 kirnels bote,

And wele he gessed be þe granes · your gomes er softe,

¹ MS. ye duke ; but ye is subpuncted.

² MS. þai hym, but hym is subpuncted. ³ MS. kahht.

Bot a thing, he said, he saȝe · þat solast him maste, 2072

þai ware bot soft, he suposed · for so þe sede proued."

Darius tastes the
pepper, and finds
it sharp.

þan pullis him vp þe proude kyng · & oñ þe pepire tastis,
Said, as it tuke him by þe tonge · "his tulkis ere fewe,

Bot, be his kniȝtis as kene · as me þis cornes shewis, 2076

AH þe w提醒 war to waike · his wrothe¹ to with-stand."²

þe mody mañ Amonta · þan melis þir wordis,

[Fol. 36.]

"ȝis, he ledis bot a lite · lordl, with ȝoure lefe ; 2079

þare is³ bot fewe at him foloȝes · bot feȝtand bernes,

Bot mare fersere in feldl · feȝt neuire of modire.

Amonta says,
"I attacked the
Greeks with a
larger army.

For I my-selfe with a sowme · set þaim agayns,

With of þe Persyns proude · a pake out of nounbre,

Felire þañ his folke · be fuȝt fyue thousandl, 2084

And ȝit vs feȝt all to ferre · þe fayntir to worthe ;

For þai haue hedid of oure hathils · & a hepe woundid,

Fey falne to þe fold · many fers erlis,

Bet doun oure bachelers · my banir to-rased, 2088

And a selly somme · slayne of my kniȝtis.

They beat us.

Quethire days³ thre þurȝe-out · thraly we foȝteñ,

Derfe dintis & dreȝe · delt & takeñ,

And ȝit þe lawest at þe last · vs limpid to bee, 2092

And vnethis sauyd I my-selfe · vn-slayn of þar handis.

Bot treuly, ser," quod þe duke · "gret tresore me thinke

At Alexander þe athil · for of⁴ aH ware he maister,

A-vanced with þe victore · & vengid oñ his faes, 2096

Was neuire þe heȝare of a hawe · his hert fuȝt of pride.

For mekely ilka modire soñ · his awen meñ & othire,

Als wele þe pure Persens · as þe grete grekis,

AH þe douth at was dede · be-dene he comands 2100

To gedire þam vp ilka gome · & þam in grauys ligg."

For three days
we fought them,

and at last we
gave way.

As for Alexander,
he was none the
prouder."

Alexander goes
to Sicily.

Now Alexander & his ost · armed oñ ridis,

And sone Cecile he · with his seggis entridl,

¹ MS. to wrohe, altered to wrothe to in the margin.

² MS. hbith stand. ³ Added in the margin.

⁴ Of added above the line, indistinctly written; it is hardly wanted.

Bot on¹ thyngē, he sayd,² he sawgh · þat solast hym
mekyH,

2072

Thai wer bot softe, he supposyd · for so þe sede preved."
þen pullys hym vp þe prouude gome³ · & on þe peper tastez,
Sayd, als it toke hym be þe tong · "hys tulkes wer feH,
For, be hys knyghez als kene · as me þe corne shewys,
AH þe werld is to wake · hys wrothe to wit-stande." 2077

The worthy mañ amonta · þan mellys þir wordes,
Sayd, "he ledes bot a lityH · lord, be your lefe ;
Thai er bot few at hym folows · of feghtand bernes, 2080
Bot more force on a feld · felle neuer of moder.

For I my-selfe with a soume · set hym agayns,
With þe persens prouude · a pake out of nowmbre,

Mo þen hys awne meynȝe · be fuH fyue thousand, 2084 Victoria con-
tra amontam-
ducem darij.
And ȝit vs fell aH be fere · þe faynter to worth ;

For þai he⁴ hedit of owr athellys · & a [hepe] woundett,
And fey fallyn in þe feld · mony fierce Erelez,

Betyn Done owr Bachelors · my Barons aH distroyd, 2088 [Fol. 22.]

And a selly soume of my knyghe[s] · in þe feld slayne.

Wheþer thre⁵ days out-þorow · thraly we feyten,
Drafe dyntes derfe · deltyn & token,

And ȝit þe lawest at þe last · vs limpyd to be, 2092

Bot vnneth sauued I my-selue · vnslayne of þair handes.

Bot trewly, sir," quod þe duke · "grete tresour me thynke
At alexander þe atheH · for aH was he maister,

Auancyd with wictory · & vengyd on hys enmys, 2096

Was neuer þe holder of a haw · [his] hert full of pride.

For mekely ilke modersoñ · hys awne men & othre,

Als wele þe pure persens · as þe prouude grekez,

AH þe doghty be-dene · þat was dede he Commandez 2100

To geder þaim vp ilke grome · & þaim in graue bring."

Now alexander & hys oste · armyd on he rydez,

And sone into cesyH · he with hys segez enters, 2103

¹ MS. ony, corrected to on.

² he sayd repeated; but once expuncted.

³ Above the line in MS. ⁴ Read haue.

⁵ The r is above the line in MS.

þar sere citis of þa sidis · to him-selfe sweren, 2104
 And saudiours him to sewe · seuyntene thousand.

[Fol. 36 b.]

On the top of a
cliff he finds
Persepolis.

þan ȝede he ouire in-to ane Ile · Yssanna was hatteñ,
 And þat was ȝapely him ȝeuyn · & ȝolden be-lyue.

þan vp he clame to a cliffe · þat to þe cloudis semed,
 þe Tor¹ of Tare to taken · þe tretis it callis, 2109

þare fand he tildid on þe top · & tild² vp a cite,
 þe proud³ touñ of Persopole · & to þe place he neȝes.

þare saȝe he selcuthis sere · as þe buke sais, 2112

þe muses of musike & þe merke · how it was made first.
 þan aires he in-to Asie · & ai as he fonndis,

AH þe citis of þa sidis · he sesis þam clene,
 So fares he furth⁴ to Frigie · a-noȝire faire Ile, 2116

And ane þar of his ald gods · he honourd in a temple.

þan ferd he furth to a Flum · was fyue cubetis brad,
 Scamandra þe slire⁵ flode · þe scriptour it callis.

He goes to
Phrygia,

and sees
Scamander.

"Happy are all," "Now happy be ȝee," quod þe hathiH · "aH in hert
 beris 2120

he says, "who are
 honoured
 by that odd
 clerk, Homer."

þe honouris of þat odd clerke · Homore þe grete."

"MekiH dere," quod ane Doctoneus · "of ȝow I deme saH,
 And he of þe takyng of Troi · tald aH his lyue."

"Nay, I wald more worth," quod þe [wee] · "a wyse
 man disc[i]ple, 2124

þaH þe honour þat Achelles · aȝt aH his time."

þaH moves he him to Messedone · with his mony princes,
 Amendid of hire malidy · his modire he fyndis,

A litiH dais with hire lengis · & of hire lyfe ioyes, 2128
 And graythes him þan with his gere · & a-gayn fondis.

He passes on to-ward Persy · & piȝt doun his tentis
 Besyd a burȝe at þe buke · Abandra meñ⁶ callis.

þai faH on freshly · þe folke of þe cite, 2132
 And barris bremely at a burȝe · þe foure brad ȝatis.

[Fol. 37.] þan takis þe kyng his kniȝtis · vmlapis þe wallis,

¹ MS. Top, altered to Tor.

² MS. do tild ; with do underlined. ³ MS. perroude.

⁴ MS. he furth he ; with second he struck out.

⁵ Read skire. ⁶ Added in the margin.



In Macedonia, he
 finds his mother
 healed.

He returns
 towards Persia.

Thare sere citez of þai sydez · to hym-selfe was ȝoldyñ,
And saugeours hym to sewe · seuentene thousand.
þan ȝode he ouer into an Ile · Yssanna was hateñ,
And þat was ȝapely hym ȝefeñ · & yoldeñ belyfe. 2107
Than vp he clam to a clyffe · þat to þe clowdez semyd,
þe towre of taure to token · þe tretes it calles ;
þar fand he tembret on þe top · & tyldit vp a cyte,
The proud towne of persipoñ · & to þe place goys.
þar saw he selcouthez sere · as sayn me þe writtes, 2112
The musys of musik & þar merke · how it was made frist.
þan ayrez he into asy · & ay as he fonndez,
Añ þe citez of þo sydez · he sesez þam ilkoñ,
So fares he forth to frige · an-other fair yle, 2116
And one of hys olde goddes · honours in a temple.
þen faryd he forth to a flume · fyue cubettes of brede,
Scamandra þe skyr flode · þe scripture it neues. 2119

Then mefes home to masidon · with hys mony princez,
And mendyd of hir maledy · [his] moder he fyndez,
A lite dayes with hir he lenges · & of hir lyve ioys, 2128
And grathes hym þan with hys gynge · & agayn fonndez. [Fol. 22 b.]
He passed on towardl perse · & pyth douñ hys tentes
Besyde a burgh þat þe buke · bandara calles.
þen fell to þaim freshly · þe folke of þe cite, 2132
And barred bremely at a brush · þe foure brod ȝates.
Then caches þe kyng hys knyghez · vmbelappes þe wallez,

He attacks
Abandra.

The men of it
say they only
shut their gates
for fear of
Darius.

He frightens
them,
and they give up
the keys.

He comes to the
Water of Winter.

His men say,
"our horses are
dying."

He reproves
them, saying
they can get
new horses;

[Fol. 37 b.]

and bids them
advance.

Settis vp-on a saute · on sidis enoȝe ;
Bot, for þe cite was vnsure · þe seggis within 2136
Miȝt noȝt þe braidis a-bide · of bernes enarmed.
þan cries al to þe kyng · "ser conquirour," þai said :
"Ne steke we noȝt oure stiff ȝatis · ȝour strenthe to
defend,
Bot for dred of ser Dary · þe derfe Emperoure, 2140
Lest, had we haldeit to ȝour heste · he had vs eft wastid."
"ȝa, werpis þam vp," quod þe wee · "& wyde open settis,
If at ȝe shap ȝow to shount · vnschent of oure handis.
For quen I done haue with Dary · & my dede fenyshid,
þan saȝ I tell ȝow my tale · how it sall tide eftir."
So baiste þam þe bald kyng · with his breme wordis,
þat þai vnȝarked him þe ȝatis · & ȝald him þe keys.
þe burȝe þus of¹ abrandra · he with his men takis, 2148
To take & leue quat him list · & lendis on forthire.
þen wyndis he to A wath touñ · was Wyothy hatteñ,
And come so to Caldipol · anoȝer kid cite,
So to the watir of wintir · as it þe writte callis. 2152
þare nere was fey for defaute · enfamyschist his ost,
Kniȝtis kest vp a crie · & kenely þam menes :
"Loo, oure foles ere in fere · fodeles to dye ;" 2155
þai pleyne more þe pouirte · & þe pite of þar horsis
þañ þe soroȝe of þam-selfe · by þe seuynt parte.
"Quat ailes ȝow?" quod Alexander · to his athill
dukis,
"Mi barons & my baratorus · þe biggest in erth,
þat has þe angwisch of armes · ay to now suffird ; 2160
Quethire euire ȝoure hertis, I hope · for horsys abatis?
May vs noȝt limp, if any life · lenge iñ oure² brestis,
To couer be cas at a cleke · courseris a thousand?
And vs demed be þe dome · to die of þe werd, 2164
þan standis in stede noȝt of a stra · all þe store stedis.
For-þi I rede," quod þe renke³ · "we ride on forthire,

¹ Added in the margin. ² Miswritten oire in MS.

³ MS. kenke.

And settes vp a sawte · to þe towne sydes ;
But for þe cite was vnsure · þe segez within 2136
Might noght þe barettes abyde · of seggez enarmed.
þen callyd þai to þe kyng · “ sir Conquerour,” & sayd :
“ We steke noght our zates · your strentgh to defende,

Bot for þe drede of sir dary · þe derfe Emperour, 2140
Lest, hed we heldit to your hest · he hed vs eft wastyd."
"3a, warpez þain vp," quod þe wye¹ · "& wyde opyn settes,

For when I done haue with Darius · & my dede fenyshyd,
Than saH I teH you my tale · how it saH tyde after." 2145
So babyst þaim þe bald kyng^t · with hys breme wordez,
That þai vnþarked hym þe yatez · & yeld hym þe kees.
Thus þe burght of bandra · he with hys bernes takes, 2148
To lache & lese qwat hym lyst · & lendez on forþer.

þan wendes he to a wale towne · was worthyly haldyn,
And Come so to cadypolez · ane oþer kyd cite,
So to þe water of wynter · als it þe writte calleſ. 2152

Thare negh was fey for defaute · enfamyshyd hys oste,
Knyghez kest vp a cry · & kenely þaim meane ;
Sayed : "lo oure folez bene in fere : for fodeles to dye :"

Plenys more þe party · & pety of þair blonkez 2156
þan of þe sorow of þaim selfe · be þe seuent dele.
“Wherfore”

"What aylez you nowe?" quod alexander to hys athen
Dukez,

"My barons & my baratours · biggest on erth,
That hase þe angers of armes · ay to now sofferd ; 2160
Wheþer euer your hertes · for horse-fleshez abaytez ?

May we noght lympe, if ony lyfe · leng in our brestes,
To couer be case at a cleke · coursours a thouusand ?
And yf ys demyd be he dome : to dye aȝt ones. 2164

Forþi² I rede," quod þe renke · "We rydyn on **Forþer**,

¹ MS. wyez. ² The i above the line in MS.

[Fol. 23.]

¹ MS. wyez.

² The i above the line in MS.

And pas to sum othire place · þare plente is in,
 þat we may fange at þe fulþ · þe fude at vs wantis." 2168

· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
 þań prekis he furth with his princes · to slike a playń¹
 wendis,

They soon find
plenty of forage.

Luctus it hiȝt, þe letterure · & þe line þus it callis ;
 þare his forrayouris fand · þe fulth of vitaiȝ,
 Bathe to² berne & to blonk · bide queń him likid. 2172
 When he was fulþ þare & fedd̄ · he flittis with his ost,
 To Tergarontes he teȝe · þare tiȝt was a mynstre ;
 He piȝt doun his pauilioń · & passis to þe temple,
 Sire Appoline to adoure · & othire ald̄ goddis, 2176
 To offire iñ þat oritorie · with honour he wyndis,
 And sum of þam² at³ spire · how he spedē suld̄.
 Bot sone ane ȝacora him said̄ · a semely summe,
 þan was nań honour of answaringis · bot on a-noþere
 bide. 2180

Zacora tells him
to come again
another day.

The oracle
calls him
" Hercules."
Alexander says
the oracle is
false.

þan dose him furth þe dere king · &, on þe day eftire,
 He seȝis to þe Synagogi · & sacrific[is]e makis,
 And Appoline als belieue · him aykewordly swaris, 2183
 'Sire Ercules þe Emperoure' · he euire in ane callis.
 þań Alexander aȝt in ire · angrily spekis :
 "Now fynd I wele," quod þe freke · "þat fals ere þi wordis,
 Now þou neuyns me a new name · at I neuire hiȝt ;
 And þou a god," quod þe gome · "þat is grete ioye!"
 þań sekis he furth with a somme · & to A cite wyndis,
 þe toun Thebea · þe tretis it callis,
 And þare he biddis aȝt þe burȝe · þat foure bald kniȝtis
 Sulð be lett with him lend̄ · & lenge in his weris. 2192
 þen tened þe Thebees folke · & tynd to þe ȝatis,
 And to with-stand̄ his strenthe · steȝid to þe wallis,
 Bad him bow on be-lyue · & bide þare na laingire ; 2195
 For if he did̄, withouten dome · þe deth þai him hiȝt.
 þan fangis him vp þe fell kyngi · a fuyȝ feyned laȝtir,

¹ MS. ap layń. ² Added in the margin.

³ After at, to is wrongly added above the line.

He next comes to
Thebes.

[Fol. 38.]

The Thebans
oppose him.

And passe we to som oþer place · where plente is in,
 Thare we may fang at þe fuþ · þe fode at vs wantes, 2168
 And bath our folk & owr foiez · fyþ þaire wambes." 2168*

Then prekys he forth with hys princez · to suche a place
 wendes,

Luctus it þe lettre · & þe line calles ;
 Thare as hys saugeours hase fondyñ · þe fulth of þe vitale,
 Bath to berñ & to blonke · byde whils he liked. 2172
 When he was fulle þar & fed · he flittes hys ostez,
 To tergarontes he tiȝt' · þar telde was a mynster ;
 Pyȝt douñ hys pauvilons · & passyd to þe temple,
 Sir appolyn to adoure · & oþer alde goddez, 2176
 To offre in þat oratory · with honour in he wendes,
 And of som sperete to spire · how he spede suld.
 Bott on ȝacora hym sayd · a semlych Nonñ,¹ 2179
 þar was none oþer answer · bot ane oþer day to abyde.

þan draf hym for[th] þe dere kyng · &, on þe day after,
 He soght into þe sinagoge · & sacrifice makez,
 And appolyne als belyue · hym aukwardly answers,
 'Sir ercules þis emperour' · hym euer onoñ clepys. 2184
 Than alexander aȝt in ire · angerly spekys :
 " Now fynde I wele," quod þe freke · " þat false er þi wordes,
 For þou nevens a new name · þat I neuer hight ;
 And þou a god," quod þe gome · " þat is grete Ioy !" 2188
 Then sekys he forth with a soume · & to a cyte wendes,
 þat Ilke towne hight tebea · þe tretez so it calles,
 And þar he biddez aȝt þe burgh · þat foure bald knyghez
 Suld be lett with hym wende · & in hys werys lenge. 2192
 þen tenyd þe tebe folke · & tit to þe ȝatez,
 And withstode his strenth · & strode to þe walles,
 Bad hym buske on belyue · & abyde þar no langer ; 2195
 For if he dyd, withowtyn dowte · þe dede þai hight hym.
 þan fangez vp þe fele kyng · a ful fenyd laughter,

¹ So in MS.

Alexander says,
" Ye Thebans
boast to be brave,

Said, " ȝe of Tebet ere tried · þe tethiest oñ erth,
Of aH þe seggis vnder soñ · þat citizens hatt ;
Mast hiȝe ȝe ere hersid· & herid of ȝoure strenthe. 2200
And nowe sa ȝape meñ as ȝe · þe ȝatis hase stoken,
And me & þe pruddest of my princes · proferne vs werre ;
And at ȝe so wiH, I-wis · wondire me thinke, 2203
For þus wald neuer at ȝe wroȝt · þe wirscip of armes.
It contraries kniȝthede · ȝe knew wele ȝour-selfe,

yet ye shut your-
selves up behind
walls."

To any wiȝt werriours · in wallis þam to close.
For he þat kid· is & kene · & couettis a name,
WiH feȝt fersely in fild· · his famen agayns." 2208

He orders a grand
assault,

þan Alexander be-liue · aH a-boute þe cite,
Makis foure thousand· · with flanes & bowis,
Biddis þam to bend vp · brathly with arowis
To wonde þe wees with-in · þat on þe wallis houys. 2212
And twa thousand be tale · he titely comaundis,
Of wele buskid bernns · in brenys & platis,
AH þe sidis of þe cite · þat sechus had biggid,
And Amphion, añ athiȝ kempe · onane to distruy. 2216

and bids his men
fire the city.

A full thousand he fangid · to fire þe foure ȝatis,
And thre thousand of thra meñ · to throw with engynes.
Him-selfe of slingis & slike · a-semblis a me[n]ȝe, 2219
To heede & help of his hyne · if any harme lympid·.
Now ere his seggis aH sett · & þe saute neȝis,
Were wakens be-twene · werbild in trompis ;

The attack begins.

Oure pepiȝ with payñs · pressis to without,
Halis vp hemp cordis · hurled out arowis ; 2224

[Fol. 38 b.]

Othire athils of armes · Albastis bendis,

The Greeks
throw stones out
of guns.

Quirys out quarrels · quappid thurȝe mayles.

Sum with gunnes of þe grekis · girdis vp stanes,
To tene þe Tebis folke · þat oñ þe touris feȝtis ; 2228
Sum braide ouir þe barrers · in blasand wede,

The city is fired.

And faire fest on a fire · all þe foure ȝatis ;

Sayd, “*ȝe* of tebe er triest · & thethiest on erth,
 Off aH þe seges vnder suñ · þat citesyns er called ;
 Most heylly ye be auancett · & hight in hert.¹ 2200

And now so ȝope meñ as *ȝe* · ȝates **Hase** stoken, [Fol. 23 b.]

Me & my proudest of my princez · *ȝe* do profre were ;
 And þat *ȝe* so wiH, I-wys · wondre me thynke, 2203
 For þus wald neuer þat *ȝe* wroght · worschip of armes.
 It contrarays knyghthod · ye knawe wele your-selueñ,
 To any wight wereour · in walles hym to close.
 For he þat kyd is & kene · & couates hym a name,
 WiH fersly fecht in þe feld · hys faymen ayayns.” 2208

And alexander als belyfe · aH vmbe þe cyte,
 Mase iiij Mille² to fonde · with flanes & bowes,
 Byddes þame to bend vp · & brathly with arowez
 To wound þe wyes within · þat on þe wallez hoved. 2212
 And two thouusand be tale · he tytely Commandez,
 Of wele busked bernes · in brenes & in plates,
 AH þe sydes of þe cite · þat sichus had bigged,
 And amphion, þe atheH kemp · anone to distroye. 2216

And iiij Mille² he fonge · to fyre þe iiij ȝates,
 Bot thre Mille² of thra men · to throw with engynez.
 Hym-self with slengers & slyke · he somned³ a menȝe,
 To heyd & to help hys hynes · if any harme limpyd. 2220
 Now er is seges aH sett · & þe saute neghed,
 Were wakned be-twene · werblet trompez ;
 Our peple with pavyce · presen to withowt,
 Halez vp hemp cordez · hurlett owt arows ; 2224

Oþer athells of armes · alblastrez bendeñ,
 Whirres owt qwarels · wappyd thrugh males.
 Som with gunnez of þe grekys · gyrdyn vp stones,
 To tene þe tebet folke · þat on þe toure fighteñ ; 2228
 Som bradyn oure þe barres · in blysrand wedes,
 And faire fest on a fyre · aH þe foure ȝates ;

¹ *Catchword*—in hert; *wrongly*.

² *Read thousand, which is intended by this contraction for Lat. mille.*

³ *Or soumed.*

They yield.

One Sicistrus is glad to see Thebes on fire.

One Hismon is sorry to see it,

and begs Alexander to shew mercy.

The king is wrath, and destroys the city.

One Clytomachus, a Theban, follows his host.

[Fol. 39.]

An oracle says,

the man who is to rebuild Thebes will thrice conquer in wrestling.

AH þe burȝe at a braide · was on a bale kyndild, 2231
 And þa¹ þat sounde ware vnslayn · als sottes þam ȝeldis.
 þan with-out in oure ost · as þe buke tellis,

A Sire, at Sicistrus · was callid be name,
 A meri man, a Messangere · þat maynly was ioyd
 To se þe cite be sa sone · sindid to brandis. 2236

Anothre hathiȝ vndire hand · þat Hismon was² callid,
 Ane a maistre of musike · ³a man of þe cite,³
 Aires to ser Alexander · & in his hert wepis, 2239
 As qua sai, “prince, of oure place · sum pete þou haue.”
 þan lokis þe lord to þe lede · said, “letrid berne,
 Quare-to feynys þou þis fare · for-with myne ezen?”
 “Sire conuirour,” quod þe clerke · “ȝoure corage to bend,
 And in ridding of oure riche toun · ȝour reuth for
 to caȝ.” 2244

þan was þe wale kyng wrath · & wiȝtly comaundis
 To bete in-to þe bare erth · ah þe burȝe-walles ;
 And quen all kynd was oñ colis · & kast apon hepis,
 þan airis he on with his ost · mare honour to wynn.
 A Ientill mañ full ioyles · iournais him eftir, 2249
 Foloȝes þare fare · ai oñ fote as þai ride,
 A sege at of þe same toun · sire was & maistre,
 Ane callid was Cletomacus · to crie eftir socure, 2252

His ledis at left ware o-lyue · a lite of þe cite.
 þan askid at sire Appoline · al⁴ with a steuen,
 “If euire it worthe saȝ to wee · quen þe werd stand,
 Oure bu[r]ȝe agayn for to bigg · þat bretted is to noȝ?”
 þan gales þaire god · a-gayn & þus spekis : 2257
 “þe tulke þat tilld ȝour toun · saȝ tield vp & rere,
 Saȝ thre times haue þe thra · of sum threuyn gome
 Of were ore of wristilling · for þus has wirid shapeȝ.
 And quen þat wirschip is woñ · within a wale time,
 þan sall he sett vp him-selfe · þe cite as be-forne.”

¹ MS. aþa, with first a underlined.² MS. was was ; the second was underlined.³⁻³ Substituted in MS. for “& in his art wepis ;” see next line.⁴ Written above the line.

þat al þe burgh at a brayde · was on a blasse kyndlett,
 And þo þat sunde wer vnslayne · as seges þaim ȝoldeñ.
 Than was without in þe ost · als þe buke tellys, 2233
 A syre, þat sicistreus¹ · was seget to name,
 A mery man, a messyngere · þat manly **was** Ioynet² [Fol. 24.]
 To see þe cite be so sone · shendit to brandes. 2236
 Ane-oþer atheñ vnder hand · þat Hisman was callyd,
 One maister of musike · a man of þe cite,
 Ayrez hym to Alexander · & in hys hert wepys, 2239
 Als wha sa, “Prince, of your place · som pite ȝe haue.”
 Then lokys þe lord to þe led · sayd, “letted berne,
 Whare to fenys þou þis fare · for-with my egheñ I see?”
 “Sir Conquerour,” quod þis clerk · “your³ corage to bynde,
 And in riddyg of our riche towne · your reuth for to
 calle.” 2244
 Than was þe wale kyng wrought · & wittily Commandes
 To bete into þe bare erth · al þe burgh walles;
 And when al kyndlett was on colez · & castyn vppoñ heypys,
 Than ayrez he on with hys ost · more worship to wyñ. 2248
 A gentilman fuñ ioyles · þen iornays hym after,
 Folows þe folke ay on fote · as þe faire rydeñ,
 A sege of þe same cite · þat syre was & maister,
 That callyd was clytomacus · to cry after socour, 2252
 Hys ledes þat left wer on-lyue · a lyte of þe cite.
 Then askyd þai at sir Apolyñ · al with a stevyñ,
 “Yf it worth sañ to wy · whil þe world standes, 2255
 Oure burgh ayayn to be beld · þat brytynd is to noght?”
 Than galez þar god þaim ayayñ · & þus-gates he spekes:
 “The tulke þat teld moñ your towñ · sañ teld vp & rerre,
 Sañ thre tymez haue þe tro · of some kynne gamez
 Off were or of wristylyng · for so hase werdez shapyn. 2260
 And when þat worship is woñ · within a wale tyme,
 Than sañ he sett vp [him] selfe · þe cite als beforne.”

¹ Or sicisterus.² Read Ioyed.³ MS. pore.

XL

Alexander goes
to Corinth,and holds some
games.Clytomachus
asks to be allowed
to wrestle;and throws his
man thrice.He is crowned,
and they ask his
name.

[Fol. 39 b.]

He says it is
City-less."Once I had a
city, but now
have none."

þus answars þam þaire ald gode · & osseſ oñ þis wyſe,
And þai als fayne, alþ þe flote · as foweſt of þe day. 2264

þan aires on ser Alexander · with hiſ athiſt princiſ,
To þe casteſt of Corynthy · he comes with hiſ ost,
With þe Pers of þa partese · to play on þe toures,
As alþ þe sires of þa sidis · himſelfe had required. 2268
þe multitude ware ſa miche · of men for to rekeñ,
þat þare was ſembild & ſett · þat ſiȝt to be-hald.

Quod Alexander bilyue · to alþ at¹ þare ſtode,
“Quat gome ſah þis gammeñ · begin apon firſt?” 2272

þan comes forth Cletomacus · & to þe kyng ſwaris,
þe tulke out of Thebie · I tald ȝow be-forne,
“If it ȝoure mekiſt maieste · miȝt any thiſe pleſe, 2275
I wald to wacken ȝoure welth² · now wirstiſt a turne.”
þan mas þe prince him a place · & preſtly him maſhes,³
And he him girdes to þe grounde · & þe gree wynnes.
“Now faithly,” *quod* þe feſt kyng · “fall þe ſo thriſe,
þou ſall be crouned, or I caire · for kiſteſt of þe gameñ.”
þan ȝede he⁴ eftſones to · & hiſ euene kastiſ, 2281
Thringis to þe thrid time · & þe thra wynnyſ.

And þan comandis him þe kyng · a coroune oñ hede,
As for þe priſe of þe play · putfulh of ſtaſes; 2284
þan bad him beddels belyue : · ‘breue vs þi name.’⁵

“Sirres, by my ſothe,” *quod* þe ſegge · “Sitiles I hiȝt.”
“Qwi ſo, my worthe werſtillare?” · þe wale kyng ſaid,
“How tidis it þe & tou[n]les · þi⁶ toname is callid?” 2288
“Mi louely lorde,” *quod* þe lede · & law him declines,
“Be-for ȝe come ſlike a kyng · & þe croune werrid,
I had a cite⁷ myſelfe · & ſegges I-nowe;
And ſethen ȝe aȝt þis empire · I am it alþ priued.” 2292
þan trowid trewly þe kyng · þat Theby he menyd,
And beddels & bailyfs · he bad on brad crie,

¹ Added in the margin. ² MS. welah, altered to welth.

³ MS. maches, altered to matches.

⁴ MS. he to ; with to ſtruk out.

⁵ MS. name name ; the first ſtruk out.

⁶ MS. þi ton ; ton ſtruk out.

⁷ MS. a h a cite ; with a h ſtruk out.

Thus answers þaim þis old god · & ossus on þis wyse,
 And þai als fayne, alþ þe flote · als foule is on morne. 2264
 Than Ayrez hym on sir Alexander · with hys atheþ Princez,
 To þe casteþ of corinthy · he commys with hys ostez,

With þe peres of þai partez · to play on þe towrez,
 Als alþ þe syres of þat sydez · hem-selfe hed required. 2268

The multitude Wher to muche · oF men for to rekeñ,

[Fol. 24 b.]

That wer þar semblyd & set · þat fecht to be-hold.

Quod alexander als belyue · to alþ þat þar stodyn:

“What gome saH þis gameñ · begyñ vpoñ first?” 2272

Then commes furth Clytomacus · & to þe kyng sweres,

The tulke owt of tebe · I tald you beforne;

“If it your mekyH mageste · might any thyng please,
 I wald to wakyñ oure welth · now wrastyH a turne.” 2276
 þen makes þe prince hym a place · & prestly hym maches,
 And he hym grydes to þe grund · & þe gre wynnez.

“Now faithfully, quod þe feyle kyng · “þus faH þou thrisse,
 Thu saH be crownyd, or I go · for kyddest of gamme.”

þen ȝode he eftsons to · & hys eueñ castes, 2281

Thrynges to þe thryd tyme · & þe thro wynnes.

And þen Commandes þe kyng · a croune on heued,

Als for þe fee of þe play · piȝt-fuH of stanes; 2284

Then byde hym bedels belyfe: · ‘breue vs þi name.’

“Sirs, be my soght,” quod þe seghe · “siteles¹ I hyght.”

“Whi so, my worthy wristiller?” · þe wale kyng sayd,

“How tydes it þe at tounles · þi to-name is called?” 2288

“My louely Lord,” quod þe lede · & law he declynes,

“Before ȝe Come suche · & þe crowne wered,

I hed a cyte my-self · & seges enowe;

And syne ȝe aught þis empyre · & I am deprived.” 2292

Then trowyd trewly þe kyng · at tebet he neuynsd,

And Bedels & bailȝais · he bad a-none crye,

¹ I. e. city-less; so also town-less in line 2288.

Alexander
grants him to
rebuild Thebes.
He goes to
Platæa.

Diana's
prophetess
welcomes
Alexander,

and tells
Strasagoras he
will lose his
lands.

And so it
happened.
Alexander comes
to Athens.

[Fol. 40.]

Be-fore his pupill apert · þe powere him grauntis
To sett his cite vp agayn · & of him-selfe haldeñ. 2296
þan passis he to a proude touñ · Platea was hatteñ,
þare was stiȝtild ane Strasageras · þat was a¹ stiffe prince,
Duse him in with his dukis · to Dyanaas temple,
And fand a pure prophetas · aparaild iñ vailes. 2300
And scho, as sone as scho him saȝe · said him þir wordis:
“ Welcom we, at all þe werd · saȝt wyñ with þi handis.”
þe secund day before þe soñ · he at þe cite wildid,
In-to þe temple he turned · tythandis to herkeñ ; 2304
“ Quat ware þi wiȝ, ser, to wete ? ” · þe womañ frayned ;
“ þou lesis al þi lordschijp · within a lite dais.”
“ Quat, & has þou ossed to Alexander · þis ayndain wirdes,
And me þus ih? vn-ably · þine abet þou weris.” 2308
“ Nay, tene ȝow noȝt, for treuly · þus tide bose it nede.”
And so it worthid, for in a wrath · þe wale kyng swyth
Him of his principalete priued · & þan þe prince fondis
Onane to Athenas · & oñ þe athiȝ playntes ; 2312
And þai said, soure suld him sowe · bot he þe cite ȝeld.
And Alexander with his ostes · aires on forthire,
Ateynes him to-ward þe termes · & of þar tene heres,
And slike a word he þaim wayues · be writ fra him-self.
And qua so wiȝ has to wete · how it worthid eftir,
Here saȝt I teȝ þam at loues · to here forthire. 2318

Decimus passus Alexandri.

A letter.
“ Alexander to
the men of
Athens.

“ **I** Alexander, þe aire · & eldest childe hatteñ
Of kyng Philip þe fers · þat fest am iñ grece,
And of þe quene Olimpades · þe oddest vnder heuen,
To al ȝow of Athenes · þus etiȝ I my saȝes. 2322
Fra þat my fadere was fey · & farne out o lyue,
And I was sett in his sege · with septour to regne,
Sethen went I with my werriours · in-to þe west endes,

¹ Added in the margin.

Before hys peple so pert · & hym þe power grauntez
To set hys cite vp agayñ · & of hym-self hald. 2296

þan passys he to a prouud touñ · platea was hateñ,
þar was stiȝlet^t one strasagera · þat was a styffe Prince,
Dose hym in with hys Dukes · to Dienas¹ temple,
And fand a pure prophett · apparelt in wales. 2300

And als sone as sho hym see · sho sayd þees wordes :
“ Welcom̄, wye, þat þe werld · saȝt wynne with þi handes.”

Þe secund day before þe suñ · he þat cite weLdit,
To þe temple he tight · tithanndez to herken̄. 2304

“ What is² þi witt,” quod [the] woman, “ sir, to witt · &
how þou me franes ;

For þou lossez alþi Lordschips · within a lityȝ dayes.”

“ What & hase þu ossed to alexander · þus aydom̄ wordes,
And me þus? vnably · þinē habet þou werys.” 2308

“ Nay, tene þe noght, for trewly · þus tyde bus it nedes.”

And so it worthed, for in a wrath · þe wale kyng swyth
Hym of hys principalite deprives · & þen þe Prince fondes
Anone vnto athens & on · of þe atheȝ Planettes;³ 2312

And þai sayd, saire suld he sike · bot he þe cite ȝelde.
And alexander with hys ost · þen ayres on ferþer,
Attellys hym toward þe terme · & of þe tene heres, 2315
And such a word he þaim wayffez · be writte fro hym-selueñ.

[Fol. 25.]

Decimus Passus.

I alexander, ayre · & heldest child both
Off kyng philip þe fers · þat fessit am in grece, 2320
And of þe whene olimphades · þe oddest vnder hevyñ,
To all you of atthenys · þus athill I my sawes.
Fro þat my fader was fey · & fallyn out of lyve,
And I was sett in hys sege · with septour in hand, 2324
Syne went I with my weryours · in-to þe west ende.

'Read Dianas.

² Written above the line in MS.

³ So in MS.; but corruptly,

I have conquered
all Europe.

And ay with-out any armes · þaim aH at anys ȝolden,
A H Europe to myn enprie · enterely þaim geuyn,
Euyn to þe Occiane · out of ald Rome. 2328

All who resist
we destroy.

Qua þat vs rekinly resayues · na riddour þai tholid,
And all at othire wais wroȝt · we wast þam for euire.

The Thebans
resisted in vain.

And now fra þe marche of Messedone · I meued opon late
þurȝe þe anglis here of Afle · with myne athiH dukis,

Send me ten
philosophers;
I ask no more,
except that ye do
homage."

And so þe Thebies þam tiȝt · þe toun to defende, 2333
And I þar pompe¹ & þaire pride · to poudire declined.

To ȝow now write I oñ þis wise · þat, wald ȝe² me send
Ten fyne Philisofours³ · to fand with my wittes, 2336
ȝoure burȝes ne ȝour briȝt bees · bidd I þan nothire,
Bot at ȝe knew me for kyng · & caH me ȝour lord.

For & ȝe nyk now to myn enprie · ȝour nekis for² to bowe,
þan bos ȝow bigger⁴ to be · þen aH my bald princes,
Or laite anothire ladis-maH · a-losed mare of strenth
þan I my-selfe or my seggis · be þe seuent dele."

þire athils of Atenes · þir augardl clerkis 2343

þan reuerenst þai þe riche seele · & red ouer þe pistih,
Syne kest vp a crie · with a kene voice at anys,
Sum in comending of his carpe · & oñ clene it spitid.

A Filispire þan oñ first · before þe folke risis,
Ane Eschilus in erde · & ernstly he spekis, 2348

One Æschylus
recommends
them not to listen
to him.

þe douth & aH diuinours · be-dene he comaundis,
þat þai suld corde be na cas · vn-to þe kingis hestis.

With þat aH samen on a sopp · semblis þe pupiH,

One Demosthenes
is next
consulted.

A doctour, ane Domystyne · þai derely beseke 2352

To consaile þaim als iñ þe cause · & ken þam þe best.

And he rekinly rase · & rekyns þire wordis :

" I be-seke ȝow now, my citizens . if þat ȝe safe vouche,
Bot sobirly a sete quile · my saȝes for to here. 2356

Sirs, if ȝe fele ȝow so fers · his force to with-stand,

Aires agaynes him with armes · admitts noȝt his saȝes.

He recommends
the m to submit,

And if⁵ ȝe fynde ȝe be to faynt · fulfillis his wiH,

¹ MS. ponpe. ² Added in the margin.

³ so is written above the line. ⁴ MS. biggis.

⁵ MS. inserts fy, struck out.

And þai withowtyn armys · þaim aH at onys ȝeldyñ,
AH europe to my empyre · enterly þai geveñ. 2327

Who þat rekenly vs resaued · no raddour tholett,
And aH þat other-wyse wroght · we wastyd for euer.
And now fro þe marche of massydon · I mefed on late
Torow þe anglez of asy · with myne atheH Dukez, 2332

And so þe tebes þaim tyȝt · þe touñ to defende,
That I þair pompe & þair pride · to powder haue declined.
And now writte I on þis wise · þat, wold ȝe me send

Ten¹ fyne philosophirs · to fond with my wittez, 2336
Your burghes ne your bryght bees · bidde I none oþer,

Bot þat ȝe knew me for your kyng · & calle me your Lord. [Fol. 25 b.]

For nyk yhe to myne empyre · your nekkys for to bowe,
þan bus you bigger to be · þan aH my bald Princes, 2340
Oþer lates ane oþer lodesmañ · alosed more of strentch

Then I my-self & my seges · be þe seuynt dele."

þoes athels of athens · þes awgerd Clerkez

þen reuerenst þai þe riche seale · & red ouer þe pisteH,
Syne kestyn vp a clene voyce · & cried aH at onys, 2345
Some in Commandyng of hys carpyng · & som in dyspysyng.
Than A philisofre² on þe frist · before þat folke ryses,

Ane Esculus in þat erde · & egirly spekes, 2348

þe³ Doughty & aH Dyuynours · be-dene he Commandez,
þat þai suld acord be no case · to þe kyngez heste.

With þat al sampnes in a sopp · assemplies þe peple,
A Doctour, ane Domestyñ · þai derly besekyñ 2352

To CounseH þaim in þat cause · & ken þaim þe best.

And he þan rakenly rose · & rekens þees wordes :

" I Beseke you now, my citesyns · if þat ȝe sauue woche,
Bot soberly a sete qwyle · my sawys for to herkyñ." 2356
And sayd, " if ȝe feyle you so ferce · hys force to withstand,
Ayres ayayns hym with armes · admittes noght hys sawes.
And if yhe fynd ȝe faynt · fulfyH þan hys wylle,

¹ MS. Then. ² MS. philipofre. ³ MS. ȝe.

Vn-to his mekiH maieste · mekely ȝow bowe. 2360
 For Sexes in sum time · surmountid all kyngis,
 ȝit liȝt he law at þe last · for all his lethire prid.
 Bot Alexander with his armee · in alkin rewmys
 Has happend ȝit ai hedire-to · þe herre of his faes ; 2364
 Vnnombirable ere þe notis · to neuuen of his weres,
 And ȝit betid neuir þe time · þat euire tuke he schame.
 Ware noȝt þe talkis out of Tire · þe tidiest oñ erth, 2367
 þe kiddest kniȝtis to a-count · vnder þe cape of heuen,
 Quat bathe for corage & kene · & connynge in armes ?
 Loke quare it profet þam a peese · aH þaire proud strengh.
 Was noȝt þe Thebes þar-to · þe threyest¹ of othire,
 þe worthiest wees of þe werd · & of witt clerest, 2372
 Fra þat þaire cites ware sett · þe sotelest of weres ?
 Quat seruyd aH þai sapient · or seleȝt² of bataH ?
 Of Poliponenses þe pupiH · with þis prince foȝteñ,
 And þat þam lethirly con like · by þe lattir ende, 2376
 For þar þe kyng of þaire kythe · was killid doun & heded,
 His renkis raymed aH þe route · & all þe rewme ȝolden.
 Wate ȝe noȝt wele þurȝe aH þe werd · how wurdis with
 him cheues ? 2379

Hase he noȝt cites butt saute · sesyd out of nounbre ?
 And for Strasagirs þe strang¹ · he of his strengh priued,
 ȝe meue al þus malicoly · his maieste a-gayne. 2382
 þare do ȝe noȝt ȝour deuire · þat dare I wele proue,
 It was þe gilt aH of þe gome · & noȝt of þe gud lord.
 Ne had he trispast him to · I take it oñ my trouthe,
 Had neuire his cite ne his soile · be sesid fra him
 nouthire.

For þe auuant ser Alexander · is aH þe werd famyd
 For ane of þe curtast kyng · þat euir croune werid, 2388
 And wete ȝe wele at slik a we · at is³ wyse haldeñ,
 He wald neuire surprise · no sege vndir heueñ."
 With þat aH of Atenenys · þis aunceant maistir,

because Alexander always wins.

"Did he not conquer Tyre ?

[Fol. 41.]
and Thebes ?

and the people of Peloponesus ?

Ye are angry because of Strasagoras' fate.

But he deserved it.

Alexander is known to be courteous."

The Athenians

¹ MS. theyest ; with a third e above y.

² MS. seleȝt ; altered to sleȝt. ³ Added in the margin.

Vnto his meky^H mageste · mekely you bowes. 2360
For sexes in som tyme · sirmountyd a^H kyngez,
3it liȝt he lawe at þe last · for a^H hys lethir pride.
Bot alexander with hys armes · in alkyn realmes
Hase happynd ay ȝit hyder · to þe hyer of hys foes ;
Vnnowmerable er þe notez · to nevyñ of þe weres, 2365
And ȝitt betyd neuer þe tyme · þat euer toke he shame.
Wer noght þe tulkez of tire · þe triest^t of þe werld,
þe kyddest^t knyghtez to acount^t · vnder þe cope of heuen,
What bath ¹ of corage & kene · & connyngh of armez ?
Loke quar it profett þam a pese · all þair proude strent.
Wer noght þe tebettes þarto · þe titliest of oþer,
The worthiest^t wyes of þe werld · & of witte clerest, 2372 [Fol. 26.]

[Fol. 26.]

What seruyd ȝitte al þar sapience · & sleghes of were ?
Of poliponenses þe peple · with þis prince feghten,
And þat þaim lederly con like · ȝit at þe latter ende, 2376
For þar þe kyng of þe kyng · was kyllyd downe & heued,
Hys renkes raymet al þe route · & hys realme ȝoldeñ.
Wayte ȝe noght wele þorow al þe werld · how al thynge
with hym goys ? 2379

And for strasagera þe strang · he of hys strenth priues,
ȝit ȝe make you malicoly · hys mageste ayayns.
þarto yhe do not your Diuour² · I dar it wele prefe,
It was þe gilt of gome · not of þe gode Lord. 2384
For had he noght traspes hym vnto · I take on my saule,

And for þe graunt of þe sir alexander · is all þe werld famed
For one of þe curtasest^t kyng^t · þat euer crowne weryd,
And wete ȝe wele þat such a wye · þat is so wyse haldyñ,
He wald neuer sussprise · no sege vnder heven." 2390
With þat all þise athenez · & þa auancet^t maisters,

¹ MS. has *þe* after *bath*, but it is struck out.

² MS. Dinguier.

commend
Demosthenes,

and send a crown
to Alexander.

[Fol. 41 b.]

The Athenian
messengers
arrive.

Alexander thanks
them.

He learns about
Æschylus and
Demosthenes.

A letter.
“ Alexander to
the men of
Athens.

I do not attempt
to enter Athens
forcibly.

And clene aH þe clergy · comensure & othire, 2392

þis diuinour Domestyne · bedene þai comendifid,

A-cordis þaim to his consaile · & kendly it prased.

þan amed þai to ser Alexander · onane for to send

A croune aH of clere gold · clustrid with gemmes, 2396

Of fyfty ponde with þe payse · as þe prose¹ tellis,

þis tresoure tire þai him to · & tribute him hetes.

Now ere þe sandismen² · sett oñ þaire horsis,

A IentiH man þat IoweH · enioyned was to kepe, 2400

þat was full sekirly & soft · aH in silke faldeñ;

Bot clerkis to þe conquirour · caired with þaim many.

þan movis furth þe messagere · of mylis³ bot fewe,

þat þai nere liȝt as belyue⁴ · at þe kyngis tentis, 2404

Knelid doun befor þe kyng · & him þe croune rechid,

And ȝerely tribute him to geue · ȝapely him hetis.

þan takis þe gudman þe gifte · & gretly þam þankis,

And vndirstandis in a stound · how it stude clene, 2408

Of þe eging⁵ of Eschilus · þat ertid his feris,

þat þai with-sitt suld his sazes · & serue noȝt his pistiH.

þe dities of Domestiane · so did he bathe,

þat comaundid & his⁶ comandmentis · to kepe in aH
wyse, 2412

ȝit neuire-þe-lattir to þa ledis · a lettir he fourmed,

In presidine with his awen⁷ prince · reportand þa
wordis :

¶ “ I, kyng Philip soñ þe fers · & his faire ladis,

Honoured Olimpades · þat I obesche maste, 2416

I kepe neuire king to be callid · ne cache me þat name,

TiH aH þe barbarine blude · a-bowe to þe grekis.

I etiH neuir Athens · with armes for to entre, 2419

Bot ȝow to question enquere · & qwete with my wittis.⁷

I purpose ay out of repreue · ȝoure persons to leue,

And ȝe þe contrari clene · ȝoure concience it opence.

¹ MS. prorose. ² MS. sandisment.

³ MS. mylid, altered to mylis. ⁴ MS. bely, altered to belyue.

⁵ Added in the margin. ⁶ MS. awent, altered to awen.

⁷ MS. handis, altered to wittis.

- And Clene al þe clerge · commensour & oþer, 2392
 Thys Diuinour domestyn · by-dene þai commendyñ,
 Acorde þaim to hys counseH · & kenly it praseñ.
 Then ameyd þaim to sir alexander · anone for to send
 A Crowne alH of clene gold · clusted with gemmys, 2396
 Of fifty pound was þe passe · as þe prose tellys,
 Thys tresour tire þai hym to · & tribute hym highteñ.
 Now er þe sandesmen in sute · sett on þar blonkez,
 A gentilman þat IoweH · inioneyd was to kepe, 2400
 þat was fulH sarkenly & full soft · alH in sylke faldeñ ;
 Bot clerkes to þe conquerour · cayred with þaim none.
 Then meffyd forth þe messingers · myles bot a few,
 And liȝt alH belyue · at þe lordes tentes, 2404
 Knele downe before þe kyng · & hym þe crowne raughteñ,
 And ȝerly tribute hym to gyf · ȝapely hym highteñ.
 Than tase þe godmañ þair giftez · & gretly þaim thankes,
 And vnderstandes in a stound · how it stode clene, 2408
And of þe eggynge of EscuLus · þat ertyd hys foes, [Fol. 26 ȝ.]
 To withsitte hys sawe · & serue noght hys pistyH.
 The dutes of domestyn · & so dyd of both,
 þat Counsellyd hys Commaundment · to kepe on alH
 wyse. 2412
 Yit neuer-þe-leter to þo ledes · a letter he enformed,
 In presydney hys Awne prince · reportand þes wordes :

"I, kyng Philipp soñ þe ferce · & hys fayre ladys,
 Honourd olympnades · þat I obey most, 2416
 I kepe neuer kyng to be called · ne cache me þat name,
 To ¹ alH þe barberoñ blude · bowe to þe grekys.
 I attellyd neuer athens · with armes to entre, 2419
 Bot you questions to enquire · to wete with my writtes.
 And purposed ay out of reproue · your persens to leue,
 Bot ȝe þe contrary clene · in your conscience doys shew.

¹ Better Til.

Whoever opposes
me will suffer.

[Fol. 42.]

Ye reprove me
because of
Strasagoras.

I forgive you."

The Athenians
rejoice.

XLV

Alexander goes to
Lacedæmon.

They agree to
resist him.

They defend the
walls.

They prepare
their navy.

Bot quilk as first of ȝow foundis · a fote vs agayne,
Saſt neuir deuoide my dedeyne · ne my derfe ire. 2424
And ȝe at wickid ere within · ay wickidly ȝe thinke ;
For as þe grayne is in þe grape · growis þe frutis.
þe Tebies tulkid¹ vs with tene · a-tired þam in armes,
ȝit rad for all þaire rebelte · resayued þai þaire medis.
And for Strasagera þe stoutē · ȝe stithli me blamed,
þare as he gilt me agayns · & I him gradid haue, 2430
I wrate to ȝow at me to wayue · be teñ wyse clerkis ;
ȝe keſt out comaundmentis · ȝe knew noȝt my strenþ.
I miȝt a-coupe of þat cause · if I it kythe wald ; 2433
Bot I for-geue ȝow aſt þe gilt · & greues me na mare.
For-þi bees glad now, aſt þe gingis · ȝe saſt na gref haue,
þe diuinour² domestyne · for ȝe his domes held." 2436
Fra þai consayued had þe clause · & construed þe lettir,
þai ware þe meriest modirsons · on morne miȝt³ ryse.
¶ Now fonndis furth þe feſt kyng · & flittis with his ostes,
Lendis him to Lacedoyne · a litif fra þe cite, 2440
With-out þe burȝe oñ a banke · he bildis his tentis,
And þare him-selfe with a somme · in a sege le[n]gis.
þe ledis out of Lacedone · belyue þam aſemble, 2443
Said, " bow we neuir to his bode · for bale apon erth,
Ne lat vs neuir be sa lethire · at we like worthe
To þam of Ateynes · it is oure opyn schame ;
For þai ware baift of his bost · bredis for noȝt ;
Bot be we kniȝtly & kene · oure corage to scheu." 2448
With þat þai ȝarkid to þe ȝatis · & ȝode to þe wallis,
Sum in Iopons, sum in Lesserantis · sum Ioyned aſt in
platis.

A grayne of þe grete see · þaim aboute glidis ;
For-þi buskis þam þe burgi · a bataiſ with-out, 2452
Preses furth at posternes · in-to þe porte wyndis,
Schalkis scott in-to shipis · aſt in shire mailes ;
Archars with arows · with attrid barbis,

¹ Sic; perhaps for tukkid. ² MS. duinour.
³ Added in the margin.

¹ Perhaps for tukkyd.

² MS. To be.

³ MS. erthd.

MS. A

- [Fol. 42 b.] Gais þam in-to galays · & grathis þam be-forne. 2456
 Bowes bernes in-to bargis · with basinettis oñ heued,
 Sparrethis spetous to spendl · & speris in handis,
 þai crosse ouir toward þe kyng · as kyndmen suld,
 With as feyle oñ þe flode¹ · as foȝten with-in. 2460
 þe lord him lokis oñ þe ledis · & a litiH smyles,
 And sent twa vndir his seele · þir saȝes in a pistilH.
A letter.
 “Alexander to the men of Lacedæmon.
- ¶ “I, Philip soñ þe fell kyng · as I first sayd,
 And als of Olimpades · I anely ȝow rede, 2464
 þat þe end of ȝoure eldirs · enterly ȝe be-hald,²
 And roomes noȝt at³ þe ray[n]bowe · þat reche ȝe ne
 may,
- Resist me, and get you a name.”
- The assault begins.
- They yield.
- “Now you have lost your ships and your walls are broken.
- Never handle the stars.”
- [Fol. 43.]
- XLVI
- And þe powere of þe Persens · so truly ȝe traist. 2467
 Lat se now, getis ȝow a name · & naytis ȝour stre[n]the ;
 Bot bowis first fra ȝour bargis · & blythly þaim wayfe,
 For, fest I aH on a fire · þe folly is ȝoure aweñ.”
 Ledis out of Lacedone · quen þai þe lettir redd, 2471
 Were drery, bot for aH þe dole · þa diȝt þaim to fiȝt.
 With þat þe kyng & his kniȝtis · vm-clappis þe cite,
 Settis aH þe gailis on gledis · & girdis doun þe wallis ;
 þe citizens & seriantis · at vne-slayne ware
 Bowis þam to þis baratour · bodis & lyuys. 2476
 “ȝe knew wele,” quod þe conquiour · “my comyng
 was esye ;
 Bot for ȝe fangid me noȝt faire · fired is ȝour schippis,
 ȝour burȝe is bretind & ȝour bernes · I bed ȝow
 my-selfe, 2479
 ȝe suld noȝt stody ne stem · þe sternes for to handilH.
 For he þat steppis on a stee · queñ þe staues failis,
 þan fautis him festing¹ to his fete · & faH him be-houes ;
 So, riȝt as Sexis was slayn · sum time with ȝour eldirs,
 So ettild ȝe ser Alexander · bot þare ȝoure ame failes.”
 Quen he þis saȝe had þam said · þe cite he þam grauntid²,
 Fondis furth with his folke · þar fraunches þam leues.

¹ Added in the margin. ² be added in margin.
³ Above the line.

Gone þaim into galays · & grathen þaim þarforne. 2456
 Bowyn bernes into bargez · with Basynettes on heued,¹
 Sparthys spitous to spend · & speres in handes,
 þai crossyn ouer toward þe kyng · als kene men shuldeñ,
 With als fele on þe flode · as foughтен within. 2460
 þe lord hym lokez on þe ledes · & a lityll Smylez,
 And Send þaim vnder hys sealle · þis saughez in a pistyȝ.
 "Myself, philipp̄ þe feȝt kyngez [son] · as I first sayd, . . . *epistola.*
 & als of olimphades · I only you rede, . . . 2464
 þat þe ende of your elders · enterly ȝe holden,
 And rooues² noght at þe rayne-bowe · þat reche ȝe ne
 may,
 And þe power of persyens · so purely ȝe trasten.
 Lettes se, nemmys yow a name · & naytes your strenthe ;
 Bot bowes first fra your bargez · & blythly þam woydez,
 For fest I al in a fyre · þe foly is your awne."
 The ledes owt of lacidon · when þai þe lettres herd, 2471
 War drery, bot [for] aȝt þe dole · þai dight þaim to fight.
 With þat þe kyng & hys knyghtes · vmbelappes þe cite,
 Sett all þe Galays on gledes · brynt doun þe wallez ;
 The cetyners & þe sergeantes · aȝt þat vnslayne weryñ
 Bowes þan to þe baratour · both bodes & lyfez. . . 2476
 "ȝe knowe wele," quod þe conquerour · "my Commynghg [Fol. 27 b.]
 was full easy ;
 Bot for³ ȝe fonge me not fair · nowe fyryd er your shippez,
 Your borgȝ es bryttynyd & your berne[s] · I byd you my-
 selueñ,
 ȝe suld nott study ne stem · þe sternes to byholde. 2480
 For he þat steppys on a stegh · when þe stoure faylez,
 þen fallys hym þe festyng of hys fete · & falle hym byhofys ;
 So ryght as sixes was slayne · some tyme with your aldours,
 Als ettled ȝe Sir A[lexander]. · bot þar your kast faylyd."
 When he þis sagh hed þaim sayd · þe Cyte he þam grauntyd,
 Fondes forth with hys folke · þair franchez þaim lefys.

¹ MS. heuend.² Or roones.³ Above the line in MS.

He goes to Sicily. *þis souerayn with his seggis þurze Sycile¹ he wyrdis,*

þoȝt to ride & to rayme þe regions of barbres. 2488

Darius is frightened.

þan was ser Darius dred & sembled derf ostis,

His kniȝtis, his consaiȝt & carpis þire wordis,

Said: "lo! myseris, now may se ȝour-selfe with ȝour eȝen,

How Alexander in his armes aȝ-way encreses, 2492

In valour & in victori & vertues so noble;

"I threatened him as a thief;
he fights like a warrior.

þare as I thret him as a thefe thedis to dispoyle,

Now werrays he fuȝt worthily as wiȝt man suld, 2495

Constreynes with his contenance kniȝtis to him bow.

þe mare I spek him dispite & in my speche hindire,

þe hiȝere I here him enhansed & hersude his name.

I sent him playthings.

A baȝt & a hernepaȝn I to þe barne sent,

For burde & for bobance þe bab with to play. 2500

We must no longer despise him.

Him þat I countid bot a knaue may now be cald

maistir;

For quare he fondis on fold dame fortune him foloze[s].

For-þi² vs haue bos in hert þe hele of oure pupiȝt,

And for na pompe ne na pride his person dispice, 2504

For his lose, for aȝt his litillaike is loued þurze þe
werd.

God helps him."

And þe mare I myn oure maieste þe mare it abatis,

þe grace of þe grete god³ I ges, wiȝt him help,

Of prise þe hiȝe prouynce yn-to þis prince leues. 2508

Quen we hope althire-hiȝest to hery him with³ armes,

þan am I redd aȝt oure rewme be reft vs for euire."

[Fol. 43 b.]

Oriathar,
Darius' brother,
says:

Sone as ser Dary till his dukis deuysid had þir wordis,

þan answars him ane Oriathire ane of his awen
brethire, 2512

þou has þis gome out of grece so gretly e[n]hansid,

þat we Elanda suld leue & he þis landis entre.

"Your majesty
should do as he
does.

Bot wald ȝour maieste þe maners of þis man sewe,

þe miȝt ȝoure rewme haue iñ ryst & othire rewmes wyñ.

¹ MS. Sytile.

² þi added in the margin.

³ Added in the margin.

Thys souerayne with hys seneours · throghe secyH he
wendes,

thoght to ryde & to rame · þe regions of Barbers. 2488

þen was sir darius a-dredre · & derfly þan sembles

Hys knyghtes & hys CounseH · & carped þes wordes,

Sayd : "sirys, nowe may ȝe se · your-self with your eey,

How A[lexander] in hys armys · alway encreses, 2492

In valour & victory · & vertus so noble ;

þar as I thratt [him] as a thefe · thedes to dispoyle,

Nowe warreys he fuH worthily¹ · als wiȝt² man suld,

Constraynes with hys contenance · knyghtes to bowe.

þe more I speke hym dispite · & in my speche endered,

The heyar I here hym enhaunsyd · & hersud hys name.

A baH & a brayne-pañ · I to þe berne send,

For burde & for bobance · þe bab with to play. 2500

Hym þat I Counte bot a knaffe · may now be callyd
[maister] ;

For whar he ffoundez apon fold · dame fortoune hym sewes,

For-thi vs hase buse in hert · þe heyle of our peple, 2503

And for no pompe ne no pryd · hys person to dispysse,

For hys loyse, ffor all hys hattellayke · is losyt þorow þe
werld.

And þe more I meng our maieste · þe more it debates,³

The grace of þe grete god · I gesse, wele hym helpes,

[Fol. 28.]

Of pris þe hegh provynce · vnto þis prince lefys. 2508

When we hope aH þe heldest · to herye hym with armes,

þen am I raddest aH our realme · be raymed from vs first."

Sone as sir Dary to hys dukez · devysed hase þees wordez,

þen answers hym oryather · on of hys awne brether, 2512

" Now hase þis gome oute of grece · so gretly enhaunsed,

And we þe lande shuld leve · & he þe landes entre.

Bot wald ȝour maieste þe maners · of þis man sewe, 2515

ȝe myght your realme haue in rist · & other landes wynne.

¹ MS. worthly. ² MS. with.

³ Catchword—þe grace.

- | | | |
|---|--|-------|
| He helps him-self." | For Alexander al-ways · or any of his erles, | 2517 |
| Another says, | Naytis him-selfe in ilke nede · & so his name rysis." | |
| "he is of a lion's kin." | "Quat sall I take of him my temes · tittire þan he myne?" | |
| "How so?" says Darius. | "Sire, on my pereH," quod a prince · "he passes all othire;
þe wee wirkis al- be witt · he worthis þe bettir ; | 2521 |
| "Sir, I once went to Philip's court. | For-þi of þe lion, as I leue · laȝt is his birthe."
"Quat knawis þou þat?" quod þe kyng · & þen þe kniȝt
swaris : | |
| He heard that many would come to attack the Greeks, and remarked that one wolf can worry many sheep." | "Sire, I was sent on a sand · my-seH on a time,
To Philip his fadere · to feche oure trouage ;
þare had I siȝt of þe segg · his sapient I herde.
For-þi plese it to ȝour person · ȝoure princes a-sembles,
Of Mede of Mesopotane · þe men of Itaile, | 2524 |
| Alexander has 200,000 men. | þe pupiH of Appolomados · þe panthis folke,
And ma þat houes to ȝour hest · a hundredth & fisti.
Lat vs gedire þus oure gomes · oure gods wiH vs help ;
And quen he sesse vs sike a sowme · sare will he drede.
ȝa, bot a wolfe, quod a wee · wiH were many
flokkis, ¹ | 2528 |
| [Fol. 44.] He bathes in a cold river. | And so þe grace of þe grekis · ouire-gos þe barbers."
Be þis ser Ph[ilip] soñ þe fers · of feȝtand folk
Had semblid ane vñsene sowme · as þe buke sais,
Twa C. Mille in thede · alH ² of threuen kniȝtis.
Ridis furth in aray · removis his tentis ; | 2538 |
| | · | 2538* |
| | Vn-to a watere he wendis · as þe buke tellis,
þat with þa marchesmen · Mociañ was hatteñ ; | 2540 |
| | It was clerire þan cristaH · & cole as a chiH ;
þare-in couet oure kyng · his cors for to bathe.
With þat þan wan of his wede · & wesched him alH ouire,
Quare-þurze he hent slike a harme · at hatirly him
greued. | 2544 |
| | þis chele eftir chaufing · enchafis so his hernes,
þat he was fallen in a feuire · or he first wend. | |

¹ MS. folkis, i. e. flokkis. ² *Added in the margin.*

For A[lexander] always · or ony of hys bernes, 2517
 Nates hym-self in ony nede · & so hys name rysys."

" Sir, on my pereH," quod a prince · " he passes alH oþer ;
 þe wee wyrches alH with witte · & worthes ay þe better ;
 For-þi of þe lyon, as I lefe · laght he hys byrth." 2522
 " What knawez þou þat ?" quod þe kyng · & þen þe knyght
 answers :

" Sir, I was send on a sond · my-self on a tyme, 2524
 To philip hys fader · to feche hys trowage ;
 þar hed I syght of þe segge · hys sapiens I herd.

For-þi ples it yowur person · ȝour princes assembles,
 Off medy & of mesopothany · þe men of ytalle, 2528
 The peple of appolomados · þe peranthez folkez,
 And mo þen hewen¹ to your heystez · a hundredth & fyfty.
 Let vs gedir to vs our gomez · our goddes wyll vs helþ ;
 And when he seys vs suche a sowme · sore wyH he drede.
 ȝa, bot þen a wolfe, quod þe we · wyll wery mony
 flokkez, 2533

And so þe grace of þe grekez · ouergose þe barbres."

By þis sir philip son þe fers · of fightand bernes
 Had semblyd hym a sowme vnsene · & þus says þe text,
 Two hundred thousand in thede · alH of thro knyghez.
 Rydez furth in aray · remewys hys tentes, 2538 [Fol. 28 b.]
 And thoght to loge þar & rest¹ · & ease hym þat
 nyght. 2538*

VntiH a water he wendes · as þe writt shewys,
 þat with þe marche-meñ · of Mociañ es haldyñ ; 2540
 Clerar þen cristall · & cold as a chyH ;
 And þarin couett þe kyng¹ · hys Cors to be bathyd.
 With þat þai wan of hys wedez · & wessh hym all ouer,
 Whar-þorow he hynt suche a harme · þat hetterly hym
 grefyd. 2544

The chele after chawfyng · enchafys so hys harmes,
 þat he was fallen in a feuer · or he lest wende.

¹ Sic; read houen.

þan mourned all þe Messedons · as meruaiH ware ellis.
 þai saȝe him so to be seke · said ilkane to othire : 2548
 "Be þis disese to ser Darie · & his dukis knawen,
 He saH vs sett oñ a-saute · & surely en[c]ounbre."

His men are sorry.

Alexander sends for a physician named Philip,

who says he will soon heal him.

Parmeon hates Philip,

and tells Alexander not to trust him.

But Alexander drinks.

[Fol. 44 b.]

Philip says he is guiltless.

Alexander is fish-whole. Alexander thanks Philip,

þan callis to him þe conquirour · a clerke of his awen,
 Ane Philip, his fesiane · his fare to behald^t ;
 Of al manere of medcyne · man þat maste couthe,
 A ȝonge berdles barne · as þe buke tellis, 2556
 Said : " lat liȝtly my lord · for in a litiH stonde
 My-self with a serop · saH sauȝ ȝow be-lyue."
 þan permeoñ þe proude · a prince of his ost,
 þat held þe erth of Ermonye · & enmyte hadd^t 2560
 Vn-to þis clerke of þe kyngis · & be no cause els
 Bot for þe lede was loued · & with þe lord chereschest ;
 þan ames he to ser Alexander · on ane slike a pistiH :
 "Kepis ȝow," quod he, "conquirour · & eache noȝt his
 drenke ; 2564
 For Darius eftir his deth · his doȝter has him hiȝt,
 And ȝow to sla be som sleȝt · to sese him his landis."
 ȝit was þe berne noȝt a bene · baist of his wordis,
 He asurid him so sadly · þe serep he takis, 2568
 þe licor in his awen looue · þe lettir in þe tothire,
 And in-to Phili[pi]s face · fast¹ he behaldis.
 He bad him dred neuire a dele · & it drink swyth^t, 2571
 And þan þe pistill of þe prince · he put him in hand.
 þe leche lokid ouire þe lynes · "my lording!" he said,
 "I am noȝt gilty of þis gile · be aH þe grete gods!"
 As fast was he fysche-hale · & Philip he callis,
 Halsis him fuH hertly · & of his hele thankis, 2576
 Said, " wele knew þou my kynd · lufe þi concience,
 First suposid I of þi serop · syne sesid þe þe lettir.
 " Mi louely lord^t, be ȝour leue · lattes him a-pere,
 þe tulk at sike a trayne · has touchid to my-selfe." 2580

¹ MS. face face fast.

þen murnyd all þe massydons · as murvell wer ellez.
 When þai hym sawe so be seke · sayd ichone to oþer :
 “ Be þis disease to sir Dary · & to hys dukez knawyñ,
 He sall vs sett on a-saute · & surely vs Combre.”
 Yff þai wer sory & so · no selly me thynke, 2551
 For ay þe heylh of þe hede · helpis aþ þe membrys.
 þen callys to hym þe Conquerour · a clerke of hys Awne,
 On philipp, hys fysycyañ · hys fare to byholde ;
 Off all maner of medycine · mañ þat most kowth,
 A ȝong berdles¹ berñ · as þe buke tellys, 2556
 Sayd : “ letes lyghtly my lord · for in a lytyñ stounde
 My-self with a Syrope · shall safe you bylyfe.”
 þen was þar permeoñ þe prouud · a prince of his hoste,
 þat held þe erth of Ermony · & enmyte hed 2560
 Vnto þis Clerke of þe kengez · & be no cause ellez
 Bot for þe lede was lofed · & with þe lord cheryst ;
 þen says he to sir A[lexander] · anone suche a pystyll :
 “ Kepys you,” quod he, “ Conquerour · & kachez nott hys
 drynkez ; 2564
 For Darius after hys deth · hys doghter hase hym hyght,
 And you to sla by som slyght · to seyse hym hys landez.”
 Yitt was þe berñ not a beyne · bassyd of hys wordez,
 He assuryd hym so sadly · þe syroppe he fangez, 2568
 þe licour in hys Awne lofe · þe letter in þe toþer,
 And into philipp face · fast he byholdes. [Fol. 29.]
 He bad hym drede neuer a dele · bot drynke it Swyth,
 And þen þe pistyñ of þe prince · he put hym in hand.
 The leche lukyd ouer þe lynes · “ my lordyng,” he sayd,
 “ I ne am noght gylty of þis · by all þe godes owte ! ”
 Als fast was he fyssh-hole · & philip he clepys,
 Halsys hym fulþ hertly · & of hys heylle thankez, 2576
 Sayd, “ wele knew þou my kynde · þi conscience I lofe,
 First supyd of þi syroppe · syne sesyd þe my letter.
 “ My lofely Lord, be ȝour leffe · lettes hym apere, 2579
 The tulke þat suche a trayne · has attachyd to my-selueñ.”

¹ The d is above the line.

who suggests
that Permeon
should be sent for
and beheaded.

þan eftir ser Permes his prince · pres'ly he sendis,
And þare þe trechoure was tane · & for his trayne
hedid.

Alexander wins
Media and
Armenia,

þań mouys he furth with his meń · & Medy he wynnys
Enterly to his empire · & Ermonye þe mare. 2584

and makes a
bridge over
the Euphrates.

Till a dissert þan he drafē · was dry & na watere,
þurȝe Adriac till Eufraten · & ames þare his tentis,
And mas a brig^t ouire þe bourne · of Barges¹ with
cheynes ;

Comandis his kniȝtis ouire to caire · & þar þai vncachid²
hertis. 2588

His men fear to
cross.

þai saȝe þe streme so stife · it stonaid þam aȝt,
For ferd þe festing^t suld faile · & þai in þe flode droune.

He sends over
lads and grooms,

þan mas he laddis ouire to lend^t · & lokars of bestis, 2591
And monestis þam ilk modire-soñ · him maynly to tell.
ȝit was his baratours a-baist · & þen þe berne writhis,
Fandis him first on be-fore · & all foloȝes eftir.

and then crosses
himself.

þan passid þare out of Paradese · twa proude Flummes,
þurȝe Medy & Messopotane · þai move, as I fynd, 2596
And so to³ Babiloñ þai bowe · ane is þe bourne of Tygre,
þe tothire is Eufrates full euen · & rynnes so to Sylus.
þan cutis⁴ þe kyng in to þe cablis · & to his kniȝtis sais :
“Lo ! þof vs fall now to flee · we may na ferryre
wend^t ; 2600

The rivers Tigris
and Euphrates.
[Fol. 45.]
He cuts the
cables in two.

þare I rede,” quod þe kyng · “oure bakis neuir to
turne,

And if we did, with-outen dome · to die aȝt at anes ;
For he þat folowid has ai þe floure · & he at fled^t
neuire.

We will never
return till we
conquer.”

Bees liȝt & laches ȝow a lose · it is a lord gamen. 2604
For I make a-vow at Messedone · we salȝ na mare see,
Tilȝ aȝt þe barbres vs bow · þań may we blith turne.”

¹ MS. Bargos.

² MS. cachid, with vn above.

³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. tutis.

þen after for permeoñ hys prince · prestely he sendes,
And þar þe treehour was tane · & for hys trayne hated.

þen mevys he forth with hys men · & medy he wynnez
Enterly to hys empyre · & Ermonye þe more. 2584
To a deserte þen he drof · was dry & no waterez,
Throgh andriake to eufrateñ · & settes þar hys tentes,¹
And askez a brigg ouer þe burne · of bargez with
chynez ;

Commandes hys knygitez ouer to carye · þai hed kokell
hertes, 2588

Seghen þe streme be so styff · þai stoned þe holder,
For lest þe festynyng had faylyd · & þaim þe flude drenchyd.
þen makys laddes ouer to lend · & lokers of bestes, 2591
And monyshyd þen iche moderson · þaim manly to sewe.
ȝitt wer hys baratours abaist · & þen þe berñ wrothed,
Foundez first on before · & all folows after.

þar passys owt of paradyse · twa brade flomes,
Throgh medy & mesopothany · þai mouen, as I fynd, 2596
And so to babyloyne þai bowe · þat is þe burne of tigre,
þat oþer is eufrates fuþt eueñ · rynnez so to Nilus. [says :
þen Cuttes þe kyng in two hys cablys · & to hys knygthes
“ Lo ! þof vs fallys nowe to flee · we may no ferre wend ;

þarfore I breke,” quod þe berne · “ our bakkez neuer to
torne, 2601

And if we did, withowtyn dome · to dye all at ones ;
For he þat folows hase þe floure · & he flees neuer. [Fol. 29 b.]

Be light & lachys þou lose · it is a lordez gamme. 2604
For I make a-wowwe þat massydoyn · shall see vs no more,
Tyll all þe barbreñs vs bowe · þen² may we blyth bee.”

¹ Here follows—And þe knygitez of þe coste as þai þe case
seghen ; but this is l. 2641, out of place.

² Above the line in MS.

XLIX

Darius collects
an army.Alexander meets
him.Trumpets are
blown.

Knights charge.

There is hard
fighting.

[Fol. 45 b.]

Darius is grieved
to see his men
beaten.One Persian
warrior is told he
may marry
Darius' daughter
if he slays
Alexander.

Undecimus passus Alexandri.

Now has ser Darie þe derfe · of dukis & princes
 Heued vp a hoge ost · & fyue hundred kniȝtis
 Ere chosen to chiftans · & chargid þaim to lede ; 2609
 Trottis him oñ to Tigre¹ · & þare his tentis settis ;
 þañ mett þai on þe oþire morne · with a mekiȝt nombre,
 Sire Alexander þe hathiȝt · armed oñ blonkis. 2612
 þe multitude ware to me · meruaile to rekeñ,
 þat sammed was oñ aiþir side · many sadd thousand.
 Now ere þe baners out-bred · & þe bate neȝis,
 Blew bemys of bras · buskis to-gedire, 2616
 þe crie of þe clarions · þe cloudis it persyd ;
 For þe dewt² of þe dyn · daunced stedis.
 Bathe þe twa batails · bremely assemblis, 2619
 And aithire segg with his sowme · soȝt vn-to³ othire.
 Kniȝtis oñ cursours · kest þan in fewtire,
 Taches in-to targetis · tamed þaire brenys.
 þare was stomling of stedis · sticking⁴ of erles,
 Sharpe schudering of schote · schering of mailes, 2624
 So stalworthly within a stond · sterid þaim þe grekis,
 þat of þe barb[r]yne blod · al þe fild flowis.
 Sone as ser Darie þe deth · of his douth sees,
 þe pite of þe Persens · him prickis in his saule, 2628
 Sees his meneȝe so mynesch · & his men fangid,
 A few þat fresch ware vndefoulid · & to þe fliȝt
 tournes.

3it was ane of his ost · ane odd mañ of strenth,
 A burly berne & a bald · as þe buke tellis, 2632
 A segg at he ensurid had · to sese him his doȝtir,
 If he miȝt sla with any sleȝt · þe seniour of grece.
 He cled him al in clene stele · a conyschaunce ouire,
 þat made was & merkid · oñ þe messedone armes, 2636
 Aires him to ser Alexander · in al-þir-mast puple,

¹ MS. Tirgre, corrected to Tigre. ² Read dowt.³ vn in the margin.

[Undecimus Passus.]

- Nowe hafys sir Dary þe derf · of dukez & princez**
 Hefyd vp a hoge hoste · of fyfe C knyghtez 2608
 Er chosyn for chyftanes · & chargett þaim to lede;
 Trottes on to tygre · & þar hys tentes settes;
 þen mette þai on þe toþer morne · with a muche nombre,
 Sir Alexander & hys atheH men · armed on þar blonkez.
 The multitude to me · wer merveH to Rekeñ, 2613
 þe[r] sammed was on þat oþer syde · mony sad hundredeth.
 Nowe er þes baners oute brade · & þe bates neghez,
 Blew bemes of brase · & buskyn to-gedre, 2616
 þe cry of þe Clarions · the elodez it persyd;
 And for doute of þe dynne · dauncen stedes.
 Both þe two batels · bremlly assemble,
 And seggez with hys soumez · soght vnto oþer. 2620
 Knytes on þair coursours · kestyn in fewtre,
 Tachyng into targettes · tamyd þair brynnes.
 þar was stomblyng of stedes · stykkyng of Erles,
 Sharpe shoderyng of shote · sheryng of malys, 2624
 So stalwartly in a stounde · steryn þaim þe grekez,
 þat of þe Barbren blode · all þe bent flowez.
 Sone as sir Dary þe deth · of hys doghthy hedys,
 The pite of þe persyens · hym prikkez in hys sawle, 2628
 Seys hys meynze so amenyst · & hys men fonged,
 A ffew þat fresh wer vndefowled · to þe flyght turnes.

- ȝyt was on wer of hys oste · an odde man of Strenth,
 A borely berne & a bald · als þe buke tellys, 2632
 A segge þat he sured hed · to seyse hym hys doghter,
 Yf he myght slae with ony sleght · þe seneour of grece.
 He clad hym all in clene stele · a Conyscaunce ouer,
 þat mad was & markyd · on massidons armes, 2636
 Kayres hym to sir A[lexander] · in all þe most prese,¹

¹ Catchword—as he.

He comes
behind the king,

and wounds him
in the head.

Alexander asks
why he hit him;

the Persian being
dressed as a
Macedonian.

"I am no
Macedonian.

I did this to
gain Darius'
daughter."

[Fol. 46.]

"What shall be
done to him ?"
says the king.

"Let him be
hung or burnt,"
answer his
counsellors.

"Nay, he only
did as he was
told to do,"
replies the king.

As he a hathiH ware of his · behindl him he stelis,
A briȝt brynnand brand · he braidis out of shethe,
And þurȝe-out þe helme in-to þe hede · he hurt him a
littiH. 2640

And þe kniȝtis of oure cost · as þai þe cas saȝe,
þan fange þai þis ilk freke · & be-fore þe kyng bryngis.
"Quat now? my worthi werreours?" · þe wale kyng
said,

He wend wele at he ware · a wee of his aweñ, 2644
"Qui has þou brest so my brayñ · & with a brand
wondid

ȝour sekire seruant in same · alH were I sire callid,
AlH ware I halden as for hede · ȝour helpere at nede?"
"Nay, hope ȝe neuire," quod þe hathiH · "ser hiȝe
emperoure, 2648

Me any Messedone to be · þou ames of þine aweñ,
Bot of cruell kind · comen of barbres.

And þis I did for ser Darius · his doȝtir me hiȝt, 2651
And cordid on þis condicion · to couple hire to wyfe,
And he went out of þe werd · to wildl all his regne,
To hew þi hede fra þi hals · & anys it him shewe."

þañ callis oure kyng him his kniȝtis¹ · þaire consaile to
frayñ,

"Quat saH be done him for þis dede?" · & þai bedene
sware, 2656

Sum, at he hangid suld be hiȝe · sum þe hede priued,
Sum bedis in a bale-fire · brin him to poudire.

"Quat has he fauted?" quod þe frek · "þof he him
forced haue

þe charges² of his chiftan · chefely to fiH? 2660
He þat him demes to þe dede · he dampnes him-selfe,
And diȝtis him his awen dome · & þat dare I proue.

For demed I any of my douth · ser darye to spiH, 2663
As ȝe þis gentiH man enioyne · suld him be iug'd þeñ."

¹ The first i above the line.

² MS. changs, with stroke above g.

[Fol. 30.]

As he an athe^H war of hys · b[e]hynd hym he stelez,
 A bryght brynnand brand · he brade owt of sheth,
 And þorow þe helme into þe heued · he hurt hym a
 lyty^H. 2640

And þe knyghtes of þe coste · as þai þe case sawgh,
 þen fange þai þis ilke freke · & byfore þe kyng brynggez.
 “What nowe? my worthi werayour” · þe wale kyng
 sayd,

He wend þat witterly it were · a wee of hys awne, 2644
 “Why hase þou bryssyd so my brane · & with a swerd
 woundet

Your sekir seruand in same · aH wer I sir clepyd,
 AH wer I haldyn for hede · ȝour helpar at nede?”
 “Nay, hope neuer¹,” quod þe athe^H · “sir hegh Emperoure,

Me ony massydon to be · þou myssys of þi Awne, 2649
 Bot of þe crue^H kynde · Comen of þe barbrys.

And þus I dyd, for sir Darius · hys doghter hyght me,
 And cordytt vnder þis condicion · to coupill hir to wyfe,
 And qwen he went of þis warld · to weld all hys realme,
 To hewe þi hede from þi halse · & onys it hym shewe.”

Now kyng Alexander callys þen hys knyghtes · þair counsell
 to frayne,

“What suld be done hym for þis dede” · & þai bydome²
 sone, 2656

Some, þat he hanged suld be · & some þe hede pershed,³
 Some bydes in a bale-fyre · hym bryn aH to poudre.

“What hase he fautyd?” quod þe freke · “þof he hym
 forsyd hafe

The charge of hys chiftane · chefely to fylle? 2660

He þat hym demys to be dede · he dampnes hym-seluen,
 And dutes hys awne dome · & þat dar I prefe.

For demyd I ony of my doghthy · sir dary to spy^H, 2663
 As he is⁴ gente^H-man enjoyne · suld hym-self be iugged þeñ.”

¹ MS. nereuer.² Read beden.³ MS. prishyd.⁴ Read ȝe this.

He dismisses the
Persian in peace.

He latis þe Persyn in pesse · pas with his hele,
Mekiſt for his mayn strength · & for his miſt prayſed.



Darius assembles
his men,

As sone as Darye þe derfe · of þis dede heris, 2667
þat he was¹ sauyd vnslayne · he semblis his knyȝtis,

but takes to
flight.

Vp to a miȝti montayne · his men þaire he schewis,
And gessis him wele þare to degrayd · þe grekis maistis:

Alexander takes
Batran,
and finds Darius'
treasure, and his
wife and
children.

þañ fandis he furth in-to þe filde · & fled als beliue,
And Alexander with his ost · him asperly folowed 2672

Riȝt to þe bu[r]ȝe of Batran · & bildid þare his tentis,
Mas him glad² with his ginge · & to his godis offirs.

þe cite þan he assailid · & sesid oñ þe morne, 2675
With all þe burȝes þare a-boute · & busked þare his sete.

þare fand he tresour vntald · & als þe trew spouse
Of ser Dary, bath his dame · & alȝ his dere childire.

Now dose him fra Darius · a dereworth prince,

Aires to ser Alexander · adoures him lawe, 2680
“I haue erdid with ȝoure enmy · ser emperoure,” he said,

“As soiet serued haue I þat sire · many sere wyntir;
And all my trauaill I tint · for tuke I no gudes.

Bot wald it now ȝour worthines · to wend with
my-selfe, 2684

A ten Mille vs take · of tulkis enarmed,

I sall ȝow hete in ȝoure hand · to haue at ȝoure wiȝt
Sire Dary, with þe mast dole · of his derfe erles.”

“Nay, leue, lat ane,” quod þe lord · “þen leue I³ no
straungers, 2688

þat þou be willi in þi witt · to werray þine aweñ,
Ne tell þou me noȝt þat tale · I trow noȝt þi wordis.”

Be þis ser Dary fro his dukis · deuyssid his pistis:

þe kyng of kyngs was callid · & clere god bathe, 2692

þus, vndirstand I, was þe stile · & stiȝt in þare-eftir:⁴
“ȝour satrapaires, ȝour seruant · with seruand obeschon;

and offers to
deliver up
Darius.

Alexander
refuses.

A letter.
“Darius’ satraps
to their lord

¹ In the margin.

² MS. ginge glad, with ginge struck through.

³ MS. leuē þe; with þe altered to I. ⁴ or estir.

He lattes þe perseñ in pes · pas with hys heyle,
 Mekyll for hys mayne¹ strenth · & for hys myght doys
 prayss.

Als sone as sir Dary þe derfe · of þis dede herys, 2667

þat he was saffed so vnslayne · he sembles hys kneghtez,

Vp tyll a maghthy² mountane · hys men þar he schewez,

And gessys hym ȝitt degrad · þe grekyn maister. 2670

þen foundez he forth in-to þe feld · & fled als belyfe,

And A[lexander] with hys hoste · hym asperly folows

Right to þe burgh of batran · & byggyd þar hys tentes,

[Fol. 30 b.]

And makez hym glad with hys geng · & to hys goddez offers.

þe Cyte þan he assaylyd · & sesyd it vppon þe morne,

With all þe burghes þar aboute · & buskett þar hys sete.³

þar fand tresour⁴ vntalde · & þe trew spouse 2677

O[f] sir Dary, both hys dame · & hys dere chelder.

Now doys hym on from Darius · a darworth prince,

Kayres hym to alexander · & adours hym lowe, 2680

"I haue erdyd with your enmite · sir emperour," he sayd,

"As sugett seruyd þat syre · mony sere wynter;

And all my travell I tynt · for tuke I no gudez.

Bot wald now your worthynes · to wende with my-
 selueñ, 2684

And teñ thouusand vs take · of tulkez ennarmed,

I shall you hete hym in your hand · to haue at your wille

Sir Dary, witt þe most dele · of hys derfe Erles."

"Na, leyfe, lett be," quod þe lord · "þar leuyn þe no lede,

þat þou be willy in þi witte · to werre þine awne, 2689

Na tell þou me not þat tale · I trowe noght þi wordez."

By þis sir Dary fro hys dukez · devyse[d] hath a pistyȝ:

The kyng of kyngez he hym cald · & clere god both, 2692

þus, vnderstandyng I, was þe style · & styght in þar-after :

"Your satrapers, your soueraynte · with seruise obeysshyngh ;

¹ MS. maynte.

² So in MS.

³ MS. fete.

⁴ MS. turesour.

Sire, we haue wayued to ȝow writtis · ȝit write we þe same,

Alexander has defeated us.

How þis maistir of Messedone · has on oure marchis entrid,

2696

Brynd vp oure biggingis · bretted oure kniȝtis,
And we ouire-sett be to sare · to suffire any langire.

Help us."

For-þi ȝour dignite bydene · we drerily be-seke,
A-gayns þe force of oure faa · vs forthire a quile." 2700

Queñ he had red aȝt þe rawis · for rancour he swellis,
And out oñ-ane to Alexander · aȝt þus he writis.

"I, Dary, with þe dignite · þe diademe of Persee,
Of aȝt þe kyngis þe kyng · þat corouned was euire, 2704
To þe, my seruand, I say · as me was sent late,

How þi lawnes & þi litillaike · þou lickyns to my hiȝt.
Bot parde, þi prouidence · impossible it semes,

A heuy As to be houyn · vp to þe sternes, 2708

A thing threuyñ is & thiike · & þarnes þe wyngis,
And fautis þe fethirhames · & þe flȝt-loomes.

For-þi þi mynd neuir þe mare · lat mounte in-to pride
For chance of na cheualry · þat þou a-cheued hase. 2712

For vertu ne no victori · ne vant noght þi-selfe ;
He þat enhansis¹ him to heȝe · þe heldire he declynes.

I haue herd of þi hendlaike · of heraudis & of othire,
Of þi noblay now o newe time · a-nentes my modire.

Bathe to my wyfe & to my barnes · quat bounte þou shewis, 2717

Quat curtassy & kyndlaike · I ken alto-gedire.

Bot surely aȝt þe sesoñ · þat þou þam so pleses,
þou fangis me neuire to þi frynd · fyne quen þe likis.

And if þou wirke þaim all þe wa · & wrak at þou may,
þe mare vnfryndship þarfore · fall sall þe neuire ;

This will not make me thy friend.

Work them harm, if thou wilt."

For-þi to put þam to pyne · I pray þe noȝt wande, 2723
For myñ angire on þine arrogance · saȝt at þe last kindiȝt."

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

¹ MS. ens enhansis ; with ens expuncted.

LIII

A letter.
"Darius to
Alexander.

Thou likenest
thy lowness to
my height.

Thou lackest
wings.

Boast not.

[Fol. 47.]

I have heard of
thy kindness to
my kin.

Sir, we haue send to you writtes · ȝitt writte we þe
same,

How þis maister oute of massidoyne · our marches hath
enteryd, 2696

Brynt vp our biggenges · bryttynd our kneghitez,
And we ouerset be so sore · to suffre ony lenger.
For whi your dignite bedene · we derely besekyn,
Ayayne þe force of our foes · vs furthers a while." 2700
When he had rekkend all þe rawes · for rankour he swellez,
And oute anone to A[lexander] · aH þus he writtez:

Epistola.

" **I, Dary, with þe dignite · þe dyademe of pers,**
Of aH kyngez kyng · þat Crouned was euer, 2704

To þe, my seruand, I say · als me was sent late,
How þou¹ lownys in þi lityllake · þou likens to my hert.
Bot parde, þi prouydens² · impossible it semys,

A hevy asse to heff · on hye to þe sternes, 2708 [Fol. 31.]

A thyng þat thryffyn is and thyke · & þarnes³ wengez,
And fawtes bath þe fethirhames · & þe flyght-lomes.
For-þi mynd neuer þe more · to mounte þe to pryde
For chaunce of no chevallry · þat þou chefyd hase. 2712
For vertew ne victory · avaunte noght þi-selfe ;
He þat enhaunses hym to hygh · þe lawer he declines.
I haue herd ȝit of þi hynlake · at harhaldes & at oþer,
O[f] þi noblay nowe anew · anence my awyn modre. 2716
Both to my bird & my barnes · qwat bounte þou schewys,

What curtasy & hyndlake · I ken aH-to-geder.

Bot surly all þe seson · þou þaim so ples,
þou fonnges me neuer to þi frend · fyne if þou likez. 2720

· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
þe more frendship þarfore · fall shall þe neuer;
For-þi put þaim to pyne · I pray þe nogh[t] wonnd, 2723
For my angre on þi arrogaunce · sall at þe last kyndyH;
þarfor do þou þi best · god forbyd þou⁴ spare." 2724*

¹ Read þi. ² MS. peruydens. ³ MS. ȝarnes.

⁴ MS. þan, altered to þou.

(LIV)
A letter.
"Alexander to
Darius."

The gods hate
vanity.

I apply this to
thee,

who so boastest.

Thou upbraidest
me for shewing
kindness.

[Fol. 47 b.]
I did it not to
please thee, but of
my own bounty.

Let this letter be
the last."

(LV)
Alexander writes
to his princes.

The letter.

"Alexander

Quen he¹ had lokid ouir þe lines · he laȝes at his wordis,
And ditis agayn to ser Dary · þis dete þat foloȝes :

¶ "I, Alexander, þe eldest · & all myne ane
Of kyng Ph[ilip] & his fere · þat frely lady, 2728

Honourd Olimpades · þat anely me fosterd,

To þe kyng of Persy · þis prologue I write :

Sire, vanite & vayne-glori · & vices of pride

þa ere þe gaudis, as I gesse · þat all gods hatis, 2732

And ilka dedly douth · þai driffe þam to punesch,

þat has driȝten of vndedlynnes · draȝen þaim to name.

þis similitude to þi-selfe · I say all-to-gedire,

þat a-suris so in þi surquityr · & sesis neuire-mare 2736

To bost ne to blasfeme · blyn will þou nouthire.

Bot for þi gold & þi gudis · a god þou þe makis,

þou vp-braydis me for þe beute · þat I þi blod schewid,

As to þi modire I mene · & to þi mery childir, 2740

þare mas þou þe to malicole · & meenes for litiȝ.

I wroȝt it noȝire for þi will · ne for þi¹ wale threte.

If I kid þam curtassy · it come fra my-selfe,

Haly of oure aweȝ hert · & of oure lynd thewis ; 2744

Ne we prid vs for na prouwis · predestayned we ere,

Oure gods gayn vs þare-to · þat gretly þou spises.

Latt now þis lettre be þe last · & loke to þi-selfe, 2747

For sekire & oñ my surement · I seke² ȝow agayn̄s."

þis brefe he bedis þam to bere · þat broȝt him þe toȝire,

And takis þam of his tresoure · & twynnes with þaim

faire. 2750

Quen þai to Persy ware past · a pistill he enfourmes,

Wrate a writh of his wiȝ · so sendis to his princes,

His seruandis & his seneschalls · out of sere rewmes,

And þus comandis he þam clene · þe kyng his stile.

¶ "I, Alexander, þat as aire · avaunced is in greece,

þe soñ of Ph[ilip] þe fers · as I first talȝ,

And als of Olimpades · myne honourable modire,

¹ Above the line.

² MS. se slk, blotted, and altered to seke in the margin.

When he lukyd ouer þe lynes · he smyllys at hys wordes,
And dytes ayayn to sir Dary · þe deteys þat folows :

“**I, A[lexander]**, þe eldest · & aH my one

Epistola.

Of kyng philip & hys fere · þat frelich lady, 2728

Honord Olymphades · þat only me fosterd,

To þe kyng owte of persye · þis prolog I writte :

Sir, vanyte & vaneglory · & vicens of pride

þes er þe gawdes, I ges · þat þees goddes hatez,

2732

And iche dedly do · þai dreffe þaim to ponysh,

þat hase dryghten of vndedlynnes · drawyn þaim onone.

þis similitude of þi-self · I say aH-to-geder,

þat assurys so þi surquidry · & seses neuer more 2736

To bost & to blasfeme¹ · blyn wyll þou nowþer.

Bot for þi gold & þi gudez · a god þou þe makys,

þou vpbardez² me for þe bewte · þat I þi blude schewyd,

As to þi moder I mene · & to þi mery childer, 2740

þou makys þe to malycole · & menys þe for lityH.

[Fol. 31 b.]

I wroght it nowder for þi wille · ne for þi wale thoght.

Yff I kyd þaim ony curtasy · it Come of my-selueñ,

Holy of owr awne hert · & of our hend thewys ; 2744

Na we pride vs for no prowez · predestinate vs here,

Our goddes gyffyn vs þar-to · þat grettly þou dispysys.

Latt nowe þis letter be last · & luke to þi-selueñ,

For sekerly withoute surement · I seche þe agayns.” 2748

þis brefe he biddes þaim bere · þat broght hym þe toþer,

Takys þam of hys tresour · & twynnys with þaim faire.

When þai to persye was past · a pistyll he enformes,
Wrote a writte of hys wille · & wafed to hys Princez,
Hys seruandes & hys senescals · oute of sere landes, 2753
And þus Comandes he þaim clene · þe kyng in hys style.

“**I, A[lexander]**, þat as heyr · avaunsyd am in grece,

þe son of philipp þe fers · as I first told, 2756

And also of Olympades · my honorable lady,

¹ Read blasfeme.

² Read vplardez.

to his princes,
peers,
earls,
knights, and lords. þus send I to my satraparis · my princes & my dukes,
My pers out of ¹ siphagoyne · salutis & grace,
Of þe sele of Surry · my seggis & myn erles, 2760
My kniȝtis out of Capados · & all my kid lordis,
þe ledis out of Landace · & all þe landis out-by.
I comandl ȝow on þe clere faithe · þat ȝe my croune aȝe,
þat belyue to Alysaundire · þat is myn awen cite, 2764
þat ilkane of ȝow send be your-selfe · of sere slayn bestis,
Of fresch & of fyne wroȝt · fellis a thousand,
Sum grayne to be neþire gloues · graythid to my kniȝtis,
Sum puredl pelloure depurid · to put in oure wedis, 2768
Lat kest þam apoñ camels · þat in þat kith lengis,
And aires with þaim to Eufraten · þis erand haues in
mynd."

[Fol. 48.]

Nostanda, a duke
of Darius, writes."Nostanda
to his lord.It grieves me to
write.Two of our chief
princes have
perished in battle.

I scarce escaped.

þan was a mañ, as me mynes · in þe morne-qwile,
Was of ser Daris a duke · þe derfe Emperoure, 2772

Ane þat Nostanda was named · & a noble prince,
þat certified his souerane · þir saȝes in a pistil:

¶ "Sire Dari, duke of ilk a douth · & driȝten þi-selfe,
þe grete glorijs god · graythid in þi² trone, 2776
Nostanday, to ȝour nobilnes · þat ay my nek bowis,
With seruage to ȝour senurie · my-selfe I comandl:

It semed noȝt ȝoure seruand · sire, vndistreyned
Vn-to ȝour mekill maieste · þis mater to write, 2780

Bot I am depely distressid · þis dede for to wirke,
And made þis myscheffe to myn · malegrefe my chekis.
For wete it wele ȝour worthines · þat of our wale³ princes

Twa of þe tethiest ere tint · & termyncl of lyue, 2784
þat lost was now þe last day · a litiȝ fra Tygre,
In batail apoñ bent fild · in-bland with þe grekis.

þare was I gird to þe grondl · & greuously woundid,
Vnnethe it cheuyd me þat chance⁴ · to chape to þe filȝt⁵;

And oþire many of oure meñ · miȝtfull kniȝtis, 2789

¹ MS. oft.² 'þi' blotted in MS.³ faes crossed through.⁴ MS. can chance; can struck out.⁵ MS. filȝt.

þus send I to my satrapars · salutez of grace,
 My peres oute of prynphagoyne · my princez & my dukez,
 Of þe seneour of surry · my seggez & my erlez, 2760
 My knytes oute of Capadoce · & all my kyd Lordez,
 The ledes oute of Landace · & all þe Landes vmbe.
 I command you on þe Clere fayth · þat ȝe my crowne awe,
 þat als belyfe to alexaunder · vnto my awne Cyte, 2764
 Ilk one send be þaim-self · of sere slayn bestes,
 Off fresh & of fyne slayn · fellys a thouusand,
 Some grayne to be grathyd · to my bernez byhofe,
 Some puryd pelour & depuryd · to put in our wedes, 2768
 And east þaim vpon camels · þat in þat kyth lenges,
 And karys with þaim to eufraten · þis erand haue in
 mynd."

þe[n] was a man, as me of menys · in þe morne-while,
 Was of sir Daryus a duke · þe derf emperoure, 2772
 One þat Nostandy was namyd · a noble Prince,
 þat certyfyed hys souerente · þees sawez in a pistill :

[Fol. 32.]

“ **Syre**¹ Dary, duke of iche douth² · drightyn þi-selueñ, *Epiſtola*.
 The grete glorijs god · grathyd in þi trone, 2776
 Nostandy, to your nobelnes · & ay my neke bowe,
 With seruage to your senyours · my-seluen I Comaund.
 It semyd not your seruand · [syre], vndistreynyd
 Vnto your mekyll mageste · þees materys to writte, 2780
 Bot I am depely distryssyd · þis dede for to wirke,
 And made þis mischeff to mene · mawgre³ my chekez.
 For wete it wele ȝour worthynes · þat of our wale princez
 Two of þe tithiest er tynt · & termyd of lyfe, 2784
 þat lost wer nowe þe last day · a lityll fro tygre,
 In batell on bent feld · in-bland with þe grekez.
 þar was I girde to þe ground · & greuously woundit,
 Vnneth me chefyd in þat chaunce · to chape to þe flyght;
 And oþer mony of owr men · mightfull knyghtes, 2788

¹ The e is above the line in MS.² MS. Syre duke of a Dary iche douth; with a above the line.³ MS. mawgra.

And erlis of all þour empire¹ · enterely deuydik,
 þoure lore & þour legaunce · lethirly forsaken,²
 Aires þaim to ser Alexander · & on-ane ȝeldis. 2792

Alexander
receives the men
who forsake you.”

And he þaim faire vndirfange · enfeffid þaim belyue,
 In palais, in prouince · in principall regnes.”

þen to Nostanda oñ next · þus notis he a lettir, 2795
 þat he suld semple him a sowme · & set þaim agaynes.

Anothire pistill lete he pas · to Porrus of ynde,
 To come & helpe with his here · & he³ him þus swaris :

“Porus, king of
India, to Darius.
[Fol. 48 b.]

¶ “I, Porrus, þat possessid am · þe partyse of ynde,
 And am þe coroñ be kynd · of clene aH þat Iles, 2800

Sire Dary, with þi dyademe · drest oñ þi trone,
 To þe³ þat salutis I send · þe sele of myn armes.

þou prayes vn-to my persoñ · my powere to semple,
 And ȝow enforce with my folke · ȝour faes to withstand;

And I am bouñ at ȝour bode · & buxsoñ was euire,
 To heze & to help ȝour hest · quen I my hele lastis.

I am ready to
serve you.

Bot now a langour me lettis · þat I laȝt haue,
 Slike a seknes for-sothe · is oñ my-selfe haldeñ, 2808

þat I ne may streyne me ne stere · for stondis so hard,
 Bot lyse in langwysches & lokis · queñ my lyfe⁴ endis.

And as warysche I my warke · þat I am in wonden,
 As me is wa for þi woȝe · & þi wrange bathe, 2812

I may noȝt ryde ȝow to reschow · my reuthe is þe mare.
 Bot I sall leue & be lechid · for-þi be liȝt-hertid;

And I be couird of my coth · care for na grekis, 2815
 Amay þe for na Messedoynes · ne meñ vndire heuen;

For I sall hele aH in hast · & hale to ȝoure kythis
 With ten legions at þe last · & aH of lele knyȝtis.”

I am sorry for
you.

Be þis Rodogars þe riche · þat renewid lady,
 þe dere dame of Dari · of þis dede heris, 2820

I shall soon
recover,

þat hire awen child with Alexander · amed eft to feȝt,
 And sorowis selcuthly sare · & sendis him a pistill ;

and will then
help you.”

Rodogars,
mother of
Darius, writes.

¹ MS. emperire.

² MS. saken forsaken; with saken struck out.

³ In the margin. ⁴ MS. lefe, corrected to lyfe.

And erls of our empire · enterely distroed,
þat oþer your legeance · lethirly forsakyn,
Karyn þaim to sir A[lexander] · & onone ȝeldeñ. 2792
And he þaim fair vnderfongez · & feffys þaim in Landes,
In palacys, in prouynce · & principall regnes."

Then to Nostady on next notez he a letter, Epistola.

þat he suld semble hym a sowme · & sett þam agayns.

A-noþer pistell lete he passe · to porrus of Inde, 2797

To Come & help with hys heer · & he hym þus aunswers :

"I, Porrus, þat possessyd am · þe partyes of Inde,

And am þe crowne by kend · clene of all þe yles, 2800

Sir Dary, with þi diademe · dressyd in þi trone.

To þe with salutes I send · þe sealle of my Armez.

You pray vnto my person · my power to assemble,

And you enforce with my folke · 3our foes to withdrawe

I am bowne at bi bode & buxme was euer. 280

To hye & to helpe at your hest · whils my hele Lastes.

Bott nowe a langor me lettes · bat I laght haue.

2808

bat I may strenge me ne stirre : for stoundes bat I haue.

Bett lyse & lukes lang : when my lyfe endes

And as ever I warysh of werk : hat I am woundit in

As me as we for hi wogh : & hi wrange both.

I may not rive you to rescaw : he reuth is he more

Bett I shall lase & be lighted : herfore be as light :

And he I couered of my easte : here for me swelte

And be I couered of my come kare for no grekys,
Because you for no meaundans a me may runnes with

For I will help all in heat & have to you health.

W^t h^t t^o l^o v^e iⁿ g^t h^u b^u t^u & w^u l^u f^u l^u l^u l^u l^u

With ten legions at þe fest & all of lele kny
þat þe bale and a bale and a bale

Be þat Rodogors þe ryche · þe feuerent Lady,
Thelde he me of Beorn · feliciteled. 2222

The dere dame of Dary · of þis dede herys, 2820
Wit hir to Child · and Alred · and the last to God

bat hir Awne Childe with A[lexander] · etlyd ȝitte

"To king Darius, ¶ "To kyng¹ dary² þe derfe · þe derrest of my childire,
my son, greeting. Rodogoras þe riche quene" · þis rauth scho him writis :

"Bald baratour on bent · borne of my bosom, 2825
Here send I þe, my swete · salutis & ioy.

þou has heuyd vp þi huge ost · as I haue herd teſt,
Samed all þi saudiours · & semblid þi pupiſt, 2828
And etils to ser Alexander · eft to assaiſt.

[Fol. 49.]

Though thou
shouldſt gather
all men againſt
Alexander, it
were in vain.

Wete þou wele it is noȝt worthe · ware þe be tyme ;
For had þou gedird all þe gomes · I gesse, of þe werd,
ȝit to with-ſtand him a stonde · þi strenthe ware to littiſt.
For godis prouidence apert · ay prestly him helpis, 2833
Sauys & sustenes himſelfe · & socurs him euire.

For-þi hoo with þi hautes · & þine vnhemed wittis,
A-vaile of þi vanite · & of þi vayne pride, 2836
Obey þe to þe baratour · þe best I coñ rede ;
Magnifie him with þi mouthe · & meke þi hert,

Submit to him.

It will be better
to do ſo."

For any hathill vndire heueñ · þat at he ne hade may,
Mare sekire it ware him to forsake · þen sewe any
forthire; 2840

In pese & in pacience · posſede at he miȝt,
[þan] Be excludit out of his erd · & euire-mare dueſt."

Darius weeps.

Quen he þis rawis had rede · he rewfully wepid,
His eldirs & his anceſtris · als he remembris ; 2844
þoȝt how pride þaim depriued : & here a pasſe ende.

Duodecimus passus Alexandri.

Alexander goes to
Susa.

þen aires him on ser Alexander · furth with his
princes,
To þe cite-ward of Susys · himſelfe he aproches.
þare-in ser Darius duellið · with his derfe ostis, 2848
So neȝe he come to þa cliffis · he kend ouire þe cite.

He bids his men
cut branches

With þat comaunds he heſt kniȝtis · to cutt doune
belyue

¹ MS. kynd, corrected to kyng.

² MS. 1 dary.

“To kyng Dary þe derf · þe derrest of hir childer,
 Rodogors þe riche whene” · þus rathe scho hym writtes :
 “Bald baratour on bent · berne of my-selueñ, 2825
 Here send I þe, my swete · salutes of Ioy.
 þou hase hefyd vpp þi hoge hoste · as I haue late herk,
 Sammyd all þi sougeours · & semblyd þi peple, 2828
 And ettlys þe sir Alexander · eftre to assayle.
 Bott wete þou wele it is not worth · & were ye be tyme ;
 For hed þou gedderyd all þe gomez · I gesse, in þe werld,
 To withstand hym a stoure · þi strenþ wer to lityH. 2832
 For goddes prouydence a-pert · ay prestly hym helpys,
 Saffys & socours hym-self · & sustayns hym euer.
 For-þi hoo with þi hatness · & þi vn-hemmyd wittes,
 Avale of þi vanyte · & of þi vayn pride, 2836
 Obey ye to þis baratour · þe best I can rede ;
 Magnyfye hym with þi mouth · & mekyn þi hert,
 For ony hatell vnder heuen · for power þai haue may, [Fol. 33.]
 More sekir þai wer to forsake · & sewe ony forþer ; 2840

In pease & in pacience · possede þat he myght,
 þen be exclud oute of hys erth · & neuer in ease dweH.”
 Sir Dary for þoo dytez · was deply diseassyd ; 2842 *
 When he þoo rawez had redde · rewfully he wepys,
 Hys alders & hys auncesters · als he remenbrys ; 2844
 Thoght how pride þaim depriffyd · & here a passe endes.

Duodecimus¹ Passus A[lexandri.]

Fast^t kayrez hym on sir A[lexander] · with hys athell
 princez,
 To þe cyte-ward of susys · hym-self he aproched.
 þar as sir Dary in dwellyd · with hys derfe hostes, 2848
 So negh he Come þe clyffe · he kend ouer þe cyte.
 With þat he Commandes hys knytes · to cutte downe
 be-lyffe 2850

¹ MS. Vndecimus.

of trees, and
fasten them to
their horses.

The Persians are
astonished.

LX

[Fol. 49 b.]

He challenges
Darius.

That night he
sees his god
Ammon in a
dream, who says,

"Send no
messenger,
but go thyself."

Alexander rises,

and determines
to go.

He makes one of
his princes go
with him.

The pair ride to
the flood of
Grantoun,
which is frozen.

Bowis of buskis & of braunches · of bolis & of lindes,
And bynde to þaire hors feete · of bobis of herbis, 2852
Bath to Meeris & to mulis · & all maner of bestis.
þe popiH out of Persy · þat slike a pake saze,
Beheld oñ he to þe hillis · & heterly was stroub[1]id;
þai ware so woundird of þat werke · & wetirly it
semed 2856

As all þe grond & þe greues · had glid þaim agayns.

So neȝe þe cite he soȝt · & sett vp his tentis,
þat thre days to þat thede · hiñ tharne & na mare.

Said : "let ane dryue to¹ Dary · & bede him dryffe sone,
Or put him to my powere · & plede we na langire."

þe same niȝt in his slepe · him soda[n]ly a-perid 2862
Amoñ, his aweñ god · in aung[e]ls wyse,
In a mery mantiH · of mervailous hewis,

Meuand as a Messedone² · in Marcure fourme ; 2865

Said : "vn-to Susys my soñ · na sandisman þou send,
Bot fange my fygour to þe fast · & fand furth þi-selfe,
Clethe þe with my conyschaunce · & for na care drede,
I hete þe haly my help · na harme sañ þou suffire."

þan slade he sliȝly a-way · & he fra slepe ryse,
A breme blasand blis · in his brist rysys. 2871

He knew his kniȝtis þat eas · & þai him clene redd,
þat he³ suld graythe him to ga³ · as him his god chargis.
þan callis to him þis conuirour · ane of his kid prince[s],

Emynelaus, þat his erlis · & his ost³ ledes, 2875

Hend & hardy of his hand · a huge man of strenthe,

And þare-to lede lelist to his lord · leuand of lyue.

He bad him bouñ him belyue · & oñ a blonk worth,

Anoþire foole with him fange · & founde with himselfe.

Strad vp him-selfe on a stede · in starand wedis, 2880

And on a cursoure þe kniȝt · with⁴ a collt foloȝes.

To þe grete flode of Granton · to-gedire þai ride,

þai fand it forsen þaim be-fore · a fote-thike yse. 2883

¹ MS. & to ; with & subpuncted. ² MS. Messedono.

³ In the margin. ⁴ MS. on with ; on being struck through.

þe bowes & þe bobbez & braunches · of bulesse & of lyndez,
And bynd vnto þair blonnkez fete · of buskez & erbes,
Both to merys & to mulez · & all maner of bestes.

The peple oute of persye · þat suche a pake segheñ, 2854
Byheld on high to þe hyllez · & hetterly wer stourbed ;
þai wer son wonddryett of þat werke · þat witterly þam
semyd

As aþ þe ground & þe gravez · had gane þaim ayayns.
So negh þe Cyte he þame soght · & sett vp hys tentes,
þat thre days to þat thede · he tharnyd & no more. 2859
Sayd : "latt on dryfe to sir Dary · latt drysse hym to feught,
Or put hym to my power · & plete we no lenger."

þe same nyght in hys slepe · to hym sodanly aperyd 2862
Amoyn, hys awne god · in angels wyse,

¶ Nota
somnium
Alexandri.

In A mery mantyll · of mervalous hewys,
Meuand as a massydon · in mercurius forme ;
And sayd : "vnto Susys · no Sondesman þou wafe, 2866
Bott fonge þi figour to þe fast · & fonde furth þi-selueñ,
Cleth þe with my Conysaunce · & for no care dred,
I hete þe holy my help · no harme sall þou hynte."

þe[n] slode he slyghtly away · when he fra slepe rysys, [Fol. 33 b.] 2871
A breme blasand blysse · in hys hert kyndels.

Be-knewe hys knyghtes of hys case · & þai hym clene redyñ,
þat he shuld grath hym to go · as hys god chargyd.

þen callys to hym þe conquerour · one of hys kyd princez,
Emenylaus, þat hys Erlez · & hys hoste ledes, 2875
Hende & hardy of hys hand · & hoge man of strenth,
And þarto lelyst to hys lord · of aþ ledes oute.

He bad hym bowne hym belyfe · & on a blonke worth,
Anoþer fole with hym fange · & found with hym-selfe. 2879
Strode hym-self vp on a stede · in a starand wede,
And on a cou[r]sour þe knyght · with a colt folowd.

To þe grete flode of gratun · to-geder þai ryddyñ, 2882
And fyndyn it frosyn þaim byfore · a fute-thyke ysyd.

þat is þe streme of Strama · with many steds clepid,
And ȝit þe pure propure name · in percynne tonge.
 Alexander crosses it alone. þań Alexander belyue · his wedes he changis, 2886
 þis renke with his Ronsees · he ridis ouire & leuys.
 “A! lat me lend with ȝow, lord” · þe lede¹ him besekis,
 “For drede þat angire or a-ventour · or any slike faß.”
 “Nay, houe þou here,” quod þe kyng · “vn-to my
 hame-come. 2890

He þat I saw in my slepe · saff be my sekire helpe.”
 With þat he braides oñ þe blonke · & broches him iñ
 þe syd,
 Bowis him to-ward þe burȝe · as briȝt as ane aungeȝ.
 ¶ þis reuere at I first rede · be rewle of his kynde,
 As wele in sesoñ of Somere · as in þe sad wintre, 2895
 And þat is neuer bot oñ niȝtis · so naytely it fresys,
 Tiȝ any powere to pas · or preke oñ with stedis.
 ȝit has þe flouȝ, as I fynd · a forelange obredē, 2898
 And euire-ilke mornyng² it meltis · for miȝt of þe soñ;
 With slike a reryd þan it ryndes³ · þe romance it witnes,
 þat qua so tuke it in þat tyme · tint ware for euire.
 Be þis enproched him oure prince · vn-to þe proude cite,
 Band his blonke at a barrere · with-out þe burȝe ȝatis.
 þe Persyns of his passag · was passyngly wondird, 2904
 And gesses him to be gode · for glori of his wedis.
 “Quat dones man ert þou?” quod Dary · & drafē him
 agayne.
 “Sire Alexander,” quod þis athiȝ · “has all þus me sent,
 Bedis buske þe to bateȝ · quat bade makis þou here?
 Outhire ȝare þe zapely þar-to · or tiȝ his ȝokke bowe.”
 “Qweȝire þu be he?” quod þe hathiȝ · “so hately þou
 spekis, 2910

þou melis noȝt as a minister · a messangere bowis;
 þou carpis euyn as a³ kyng · þat closid ware in pride.
 Bot I am dred neuire a dele · of all þi bald saȝes. 2913

¹ MS. bede.² MS. remes, corrected to ryndes.³ In the margin.

This river
always froze
at night,
even in summer,

and melted at
morn,
and then could
not be crossed.

LXI

The Persians
wonder.

Darius asks who
he is,

and thinks it
must be Alex-
ander himself,

Thys is þe streme of Struma · with mony stedes clepyd,
And ȝit pure propre name · in persyens tounge.

Then A[lexander] als belyfe · hys abytt chaungez, 2886

Thys renke with hys rounsey · he rydes ouer & lefys.

“ Na ! latt me lend with þe, lord ” · þe lede hym bysekys,

“ Lest anger or aventur · or ony suche falle.”

“ Nay hofe þou here,” quod þe athyll · “ vnto my agayn-
Come ; 2890

He þat I seght in my slepe · shall me sekir helpe.”

With þat he brades on hys blonnke · & brochez hym in þe
sydes,

Bowys hym on toward þe burgh · als bright as an angeH.

Thys reuer þat I first rede of · be rewle of hys kynde,

Als wele in seasun of somer · as in þe sad wynter, 2895

And þat is neuer bott of nyghtys · so nataly it fresys,

To ony power on to passe · or preke with a stede.

ȝit hase þe flode, as I fynd · a furelenth of brede, 2898

Nota
naturam
aque de
struma.

And euerilke mornyng it meltes · for myght of þe soñ ;

With suche a rerde þen it rynnys · þe Romayns it wittnes,

þat who tuke it in þat tyme · war termyd for euer. 2901

Be þis aprochyd hym þe Prince · vnto þe prouude Cite,

[Fol. 34.]

band hys blonnke at a barre · withoute þe brode ȝatez.

The persyens of hys passage · wer passandly wounderyd,

And gessyn hym all to be god · for glory of hys gere.

“ What domesman art þou ? ” quod Dary · & drofe hym
ayays. 2906

“ Sir A[lexander],” quod þis athell · “ hase all þus me send,

Byddes þe to batell buske · what bode mase þou here ?

Ouder ȝare þe ȝapely þarto · or to his ȝokke bowe.”

“ Wheder þou be he ? ” þe hathell sayd, · “ so hetterly þou
spekez, 2910

þou melles noght as a messenger · a mynster bowez ;

þou Carpys likar to A kyng · þat Closyd wer in pride.

Bot I am dred neuer a dele · of all þi derfe sawez, 2913

and asks him to supper.

[Fol. 50 b.]

Bot for þi souerayne sake · þat sent þe þus hedire,
 3it sall þou sit with my-selfe · & soupe or þou wynde."
 He raȝt him þan be þe arme · & reuerence¹ him makis,
 And to his palais a-pert · with princes him ledis,
 þare aires him in ser Alexander · & aȝt þus he thinkis,
 " þis ilke bar-bryn berne · grete beute me schewys, 2919
 þat here þus hyndly be þe hand · ledis to his Innes ;
 þis hame with help of my god · I haue saȝt he[r]-
 eftir."

LXII

Alexander goes to sup with Darius.

The hall was all made of gold.

The Persians think Alexander a mean-looking man.

When Alexander drinks, he secretes the gold cup;

this he does thrice.

Darius reproves him.

So silis he furth with þe sire · in-to a somere-hal, 2922
 þare sesonde was a soper · þe sotelest vndire heuen.
 Sire Darius drawis to þe dese · & oþir dere princes,
 Settis þis sire with him-selfe · lete serue þaim to-gedire.
 þat bild was aȝt of brynt gold · as þe buke tellis, 2926
 With þe bath, þe bordis & þe benkes · beteñ of þat ilke.
 þe wesseñ to vyse oñ · was verraly þe same,
 And aȝt þe sale of a² sute · set fuñ of stanes.
 þe popiñ of Persy · opon þis prince waitis, 2930
 þe litillaike of his like · lathely þat þai spyse ;
 Bot þe wisedome & þe worthenes · & of þe wale thewis
 þat in þat cors was enclosed · kend þai fuñ litiñ.
 Butlers fuñ besyly · broȝt vp þe wyne,
 In grete gobletis of gold · graythid fuñ of ȝymmes ;
 And Alexander belyue · as he³ had ay dronkeñ, 2936
 With þat he clekis vp þe coupe · & putis in his bosom.
 Anoþire boñ was him broȝt · & bathe he deuoydid,
 And ȝit he threw to þe thrid · & thrast in þare-eftir.
 Sone as þe⁴ clientis þat knew · at of þe coupe serued,
 þai knele doun before þe kyng · & him þe cas tald.
 þan has ser Dary dedeyne · & derfely he lokes, 2942
 Rysys him vp renysch · & reȝt in his sete,
 " Quat faris þou with," quod he, " frynde? · a foñ þe
 besemes ;
 Quy voydis þou my vessemes? · it is a vile schame."

¹ MS. reuerence. ² MS. same a ; with same struck through.

³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. as a þe.

3itt for þi souerand sake · þat send þe þus hyder, 2914
 þou shall sitt with my-self · & soupe or þou wende."

He raght hym by þe right harme · & reuerens hym makys,
 And to hys palays full pert · with princeez hym ledes,
 þar kayres hym on Sir A[lexander] · & all þus he thynkez,
 "þus ilke barberen berne · grete bewte me schewez, 2919
 þat here þus hyndly be hand · hase lede me to Innes;
 Thys home¹ with helpe of my goddez · I hafe sall her-
 after."

So sylez forth with þis Sire · into a somer-halle, 2922
 Thar sesund was a soper · þe sotellest vnder heueñ.

Sir Darius drawys to þe deyse · & oþer dere princez,
 Settes þis sire with hym-selfe · lete serue þaim to-geder.
 þat belde was all of brynt gold · as þe buke tellys, 2926
 With both þe burdez & þe benche · betyn of þe same.

The vessell to vyse on · veraly of þe same,
 And all þe sale of a sute · sett full of Stanes.

The peple oute of persey · apon þe prince waytyñ, 2930
 þe lityllayke of hys lyth · lothly þai spysyñ;
 Bot þe wysdome & þe worthines · of hys wale theweȝ;
 þat in þat cors was closyd · knew þai full lytyñ.

Botlers full besely · broght vp þe wynez, 2934

In grete goblettes of gold · grathyd fulle of gemmys; [Fol. 34 b.]

And A[lexander] als belyfe · as he hed onys drunkeyñ,
 With þat he clyght vp a cupe · & cromys in hys bosom.
 Anoþer boll was hym broght · & both he devoyded,² 2938
 And 3itt he threwe³ to þe thryde · & thristyn þar-after.

Sone as þe clyentez it knew · þat of þe cope serued,
 þai knele downe bifore þe kyng · & hym þe case taldyñ.
 þen hase sir Dary disdayne · & darfly he lukes, 2942
 Rerys hym vpp & remevys · in hys sete riche,
 "What farys with," quod he, "frende? · a fonne þou be-
 semys;

Whi woydes þou my veseall? · it is a vyle schame."

¹ MS. holme; but marked for correction.

² MS. dovoydede. ³ The h is above the line in MS.

Alexander says
it is the custom
of Macedonia to
do so.

"Sire, it is þe custum," quod þe kniȝt · "in oure kyngis
fest,

2946

þat, be it ane, be it oþire · þat þai of drinke,
þe gestis sall haue þe goblettis · & þaim gud þinke,
To wild & wende with a-way · & wirke quat þaim likes;
Bot sen þis vse is here vn-honourable · here I þam
leue;"

[Fol. 51.]

Braidis þaim furth withouten bade · þe butlers þaim
yeldis.

2951

Some of them
praise
Alexander.

"Now sothely," quod þan ilk a segge · softly to-gedire,
"þis maner at he melis of · is menskefull & noble."

One Anepo takes
note of him,

þan was þare ane proude pere · a prince at þe table,
Anepo, þat oñ Alexander · aH-way be-haldis,
þan mynes him anes in Messedone · he had þe man
sene,

2956

and remembers
that he has seen
him before.

Quen he was sent to his syre · to feche þaire trouage.

His vertuse & his vysage · his voise he remenbris,
His fourme & his fetoure¹ · his figoure a-vysis,

He studis & he stuynes · he stemes with-in,

2960

"Is þis noȝt Philip soñ þe firs · þe fedare of grece?"

He leaves his
seat,
and tells Darius.

With þat he sleȝly vp soȝt · & his sete leuys,

Droȝe hiȝt euyñ to ser Dary · þare he oñ dese bydis,
Said, "surely, ser, þis sandisman · þat sittis ȝow be-forne
Is Alexander him awen self · or aH myñ ame faillis."

Alexander
perceives his
danger,
seizes a torch,

Sone þis gouernour of grece · is of þis gaude ware,

He torkans with & vndire-tuke · he touched of him-selfe,
Herd a nyngkiling of his name · & naytis him to ryse,

Buskis him vp at a braide · & fra þe burde rysys.

2969

He tas a torche fia a tulke · þat by þe table standis,
Felly fangis it in² his fist · & to his fole wyndis,

Fyndis him faire him before · þare he him feste hade,

Raȝt him radly þe reyne · & oñ his rige worthis.

2973

mounts his
horse,

With þat he brochis his blonke · þat þe blode fames,
Sparis out spacyl · as sparke out of gledes.

¹ MS. fetuore.

² MS. l in ; the l being an imperfect h, due to his following.

"Sir, it is our costome," quod þe knyt · "in our kyngez
fest,"

2946

þut, be it one, be it oþer · þat þai of drynkyn,
The gestes sall haue þe goblettez · & þai gude thynke,
To wyld & wynd away · & werke what þaim likez ;

2949

Bot sen þe vse is here vn-honorable · here I þam lefe ;"

Brades þam forth with-owtyn bode · þe butler þaim
ȝeldes.

"Nowe, sir," quod euerilke segge · softly to oþer,
"þis maner þat he mellys of · is menskefull & noble."
Then was þar one, a prouude · prince at þe tabyll,

2954

Anepo, þat on Alexander · alway byholdes,
þen menys onys in massydon · he had þe man knawyñ,

When he was sent be hys sire · to sese þair truage.

Hys vertuez & hys visage · hys voyce he remenbris,

2958

Hys forme & hys facioñ · hys fygure he visys,
He stodes & he staddes with · & stempmys hym within,
"Es noght þis philyp son þe fers · fennder¹ of grece ?"

With þat he shyllghly vp slayde · & hys sete left,

2962

Droght hym euen to sir Dary · þar he on deyse bydes,
"þat surely sir, þis sondesmañ · þat sittes yow aforne
Is A[lexander] hym-self · or all my ame falys."

Sone as þis gouernour of grece · apon þis gaud² wates,

He torkys with & vndertuke · it tochyd of hym-self,

Harde a nyckyng of hys name · & natys hym to ryse,

[Fol. 35.]

Buskys hym vp at brade · & fro þe borde voydes.

He takys a torche fro a tulke · þat be þe burde standes,

Felly fange it in hys fyst · & to hys fole wendes,

2971

Fyndes hym faire hym bifore · þar as he hym fest had,

Raght hym radly þe reyne · & on hys rigge ascendes.

With þat he brochez hys blonneke · þat þe blode folows,

Sparrys oute sparly³ · as⁴ sparke doys on gledes.

2975

¹ MS. founder, altered to fennder. ² MS. gauyd.

³ Sic; for spacy. ⁴ MS. &.

¹ MS. enr enarmed; with enr struck through.

² The e above the line. ³ MS. 3 welde. ⁴ In the margin.

- By þe light þat he hed · lacchys on hys way,
And fonndez fast to flyght · with a fers wille.
The peple of þe palays · when þai hym passe sigh, 2978
þai russhyn vp in a reys · rygnyn into chaumbres,
Some arays þaim in rynggez · some in rawe brenys,
Some in stalwart stuffe · & some in stele plates 2980*With hard hattes on þair heddez · hyen to þair blonnkez,
Prikyn after þe prince · prestly ennarmed. 2982
Bot þen was nyght on þaim negh · þat noyed þaim sore.
Sone wer þai welt fro þaire way · þe wod was so thykke,
Some of bowez & of breres · blemyst þe face,
Some wer drefyn into dykez · some depe mires ; 2986
Bot A[lexander] at my ayme · þar augerly eschapys,
And ay trotes on þe troyde-gate · als hym þe torche vysys.
Sir Dary as a drery man · dwel land in hys trone,
With princez in hys palays · al þ pensey he sittes, 2990
The baldnes of þis baratour · he belyfe remenbris,
þat scapett so sone schatheles · fro all hys schateH dukez.
þen was ane ymage within · as I am enformed,
Off serexies þat some-while · þe Cyte hed to weld, 2994
Forgyd all of fyne gold · & feteld in hys sete,¹
And vnder þat souerent segge · y-sett war þair lawez.
And sodanly þat symylacre · as says me þe text,
Al to-paschys into peces · & into powder dryfez. 2998
þen was þe wale kyng woo · & wepan he sayd :
“ þis betokyns trublyng¹ of my teld · & tene to my [Fol. 35 v.]
realme.”
And A[lexander] þe while · asperly rydes
To þe grete flude of grantum · & it as glas fyndes. 3002
And be he soght to þe syde · ȝitt sounderd þe qwertnes,
Hys hors it honyshyd for euer · & he with hard
schapyd.
þen kayres he with Emenylaus · euen to hys princez,
And derfly of þat oþer day · of doghthy he assemblez,

¹ MS. fete.

He assembles
200,000 men,

and encourages
them.

[Fol. 52.]

Twa hundred thousand oñ a thron̄ · aH of threuen
kniȝtis, 3007

Cairis him vp to a cliffe · & comfurthis his hostis;
“ Sall neuir þe Persyns pake · be pere to þe grekis,
And if þai ma ware be many · mayes noȝt ȝour hertis;
Fuȝt many flees may fell · bot a fewe waspis.”
And aH þe company clene · comendid̄ his wittis. 3012

LXV

Terciusdecimus passus Alexandri.

Darius and his
men come to the
river.

His host is
innumerable.

He has 10,000
chariots,
armed with
scythe-blades.

Alexander mounts
Bucephalus.

B e þis ser Dary was diȝt · whit his dere erles,
Heuyd vp a huge ost · & hast him to ryde,
His ginge & aH his garysons · in glyssynand wedis, 3015
Gaes him oñ to granton̄ · & graithes þare his tentis.
His stoure was so stalworthe & store · & strange to
a-byde,

He had̄ of meñ out of mynde · many mayñ hundredth,
þat sike a siȝt & a sowme¹ · of seggis enarmed
Was neuer sene, I suppose · señ þe sege of troy. 3020
þe chiftayne had chariotis · chosen for þe nanes,
Ten thousand be tale · tried for þe were.
And þai ware sett aþire side · fuȝt of sythe-bladis,
Kene keruand as knyfes · & cursers þam drowe. 3024
þe next day be þe none · new note ryses,
Aithire freke with his folke · in þe fld metis,
And bald bernes oñ bent · banars vnfaldis,
Put pennons oñ pollis · payntid of siluir. 3028

Alexander as belyue · is armed vp clene,
Bounes him to his blonke · þe best vndire heuen,
þat was þe blonk Bucifat · as þe buke tellis,
A foole worth² fyfty of þe firste · þat in þe flode
drowned. 3032

He spynnes him out a grete space · fra he[s] peris aH,
Couers him fuȝt clenly · & closed iñ his gere.

¹ The me above the line.

² MS. with, altered to worth in the margin.

Twa c m in a thrume · all of trefe knytes, 3007

Cayrez hym vp to a Clyff · & comforthez hys hostez;
 "Sall neuer þe persiens pakke · be pere to þe grekez,
 And þof þai war mo be mony · mayse nott in hertes; 3010
 Full fele fleys may nott felle · bott a few wasspez."
 And all þe Company clene · Comendyd þan hys wittes.

[*Tertiusdecimus passus.*]

By þis sir Dary was dight · with hys derfe Erlez,
 Hefyd vp a hoge hoste · & hastyd hym to ryde, 3014
 Hys genge & hys garysoñ · in glasynand wedes,
 Gose hym to grantum · & grathez vp hys tentes.
 Hys stoure was stalwort & sture · & strang' to abyde,

He hed of men for to mynd · mony mayne hundredth,
 þat suche a sight & a some · of seggez enarmed
 Was neuer [sene], I supposye · sen þe seyge of troye. 3020
 The Chyftanys hed chariottes · chosyn for þe nonest,
 A Ten thouusand be tale · tried for þe were.
 And þoo wer sett on ather syde · full of sythe-blades,
 Kene keruand as knyffes · & coursours þaim drawys. 3024
 The next day be þe none · new note rysys,
 Ather freke with hys folke · in þe feld metyn,
 And bald bernez on bent · banerys vnfaldyn,
 Puttyn penons on pollez · payntyd with syluer. 3028
 A[lexander] als belyfe · es armyd vp Clene,
 Bownez hym on hys blonnke · þe best vnder heueñ,
 þat was þe bald bucyfah · as þe buke tellez,
 A fole worth fyfty of þat · at in þe flude drownyd. 3032

He spedes hym on a grete space · fro hys pers aþ,
 Couerys hym full clenly · & closys hym in hys gere.

[Fol. 36.]

- The Persians are frightened. þe powere out of Persy · queñ þay þe prince saȝe,
Frayed was of his fourme · so ferlſuȝt him semed. 3036
- The battle begins. ¶ Now ere þe batails boune · with braggins in trumpis,
þe breme bemen blaste · beres to þe welkeñ.
Alexander aȝþire first · oñ þaim all¹ he settis,
And aithire ward¹ at a waƿƿ · wiȝtly in loynes. 3040
[Fol. 52 b.] Archars & aȝ meñ · asperly fȝtis,
þare was Iusting o Ioy · Iopons a-tamed;
Siles doun oñ aithire side · selcuth kniȝtis,
Sum darid, sum dede · sum depe wondid. 3044
- There is hard fighting. So feñ² fȝt was of flanys · as I fynd wreteñ,
Of arrows & of all quat · þat aȝ þe aire blindid;
Hogere oñ to be-hald · þañ of³ haile-stanes,
And aȝ þe fild fuȝt of folke · fyue mile large. 3048
- A great flight of arrows. Als sone as þe soñ vp soȝt · þe slaȝtere begynnes,
And so to þe soñ-sett · slakid þai neuire.
Be þat þe barbryne blode · be-gañ to discende,
þe proudest of þe Persyns · past out⁴ of lyue. 3052
- The armies cover five miles of ground. Sone as ser Dary it deuysid · & seȝis his foke faile,
With þat he bedis þam⁵ þe bake · & bidis na langir;
þen queñ þai⁶ fange to ȝe fȝt · was furth in with euyñ,
And mirke out⁴ of mesure · na man þaim a-pered. 3056
- Darius flees. For-þi þe chariotis in þe chace · choppid þaim to deth,
þe cartis þat I carpid of · with þe kene sythis,
þare feñ as fele þam before · of fotemeñ & othire,
As risonis⁷ in a ranke fild · quen riders it spilleñ.⁸ 3060
- Darkness comes. Sire Dary dryue in þe derke · & his douth folows,
Gaes him on to grantun · vn-to þe grete burne,
Fand it frozen him before · as feñ for þe time,
Past him oñ with his pers · a pake out of nombre. 3064
- The scythe-chariots destroy the flying host. His folke fellis aȝ þe flode · a forelange o brede,
þe streme fra þe a strande · streȝt to þat othire.
- Darius goes to the frozen river, and crosses it. Sone fra him-self was at þe side · it sonders behind,

¹ In the margin. ² MS. felle felle. ³ MS. oerf.⁴ MS. oñt. ⁵ MS. þam þaim. ⁶ MS. þaim.⁷ Or risoms, or risoins. ⁸ MS. spilkeñ.

The power of perseē · when þai þe prince see,
 Was ferly frayd of hys forme · so ferdfull he semyd. 3036
 Nowe er þe batels bowne · with braggyng of trompettes,
 The breme beeme blast · beryd to þe welkyn.
 A[lexander] all-þar first · on þaim all settes,
 And ayther ward at a wappe · wigh[t]ly enioynez. 3040 *¶ Nota
bellum inter
Darium &
Alexan-
drum.*
 Archers & all men · asperly shotyn,
 þar was Iustyng of Ioy · Iopons attamyd ;
 Seghen downe on ather syde · semelych knytes,
 Some dasyd, some dede · some depe woundytt. 3044
 So feſt flyght was of flonys · as I fynd writtyn,
 Of arows & of alblastres · þat all þe Ayre blyndyd ;
 Huger to byhalde · þen þe hayle-stormes,
 And all þe feld full of folke · fyfe myle large. 3048
 Als sone as þe soñ hup soght · þe slaughter begynnys,
 And to sett was þe same · sesytt þai neuer.
 Be þat þe barbaryn blode · began to desend,¹
 The proudest of þe persyens · passyd owte of lyfe. 3052
 Sone as sir Dary devysyd · & sawe hys doghthy falle,
 With þat he biddes þam þe bake · & bydes no langer ;
 þen qwen þai fange to þe flyght · was nerehand eueñ, 3055
 And merke withowte mesur · na man myght þam folow.
 For-þi þe chariottes in þe chase · chopyd þaim to deth,
 The cartes þat I Carpyd of · with þe kene sythez,
 þai feſt all fey þaim byfore · with fotemeñ & oþer, 3059
 As ressynnys in a ranke feld · when men ouer rydes.
 Sir Dary dryfys in þe dirke · & hys doghthy folows,
 Goys hym on to grantum · vnto þe grete burne,
 Fañde it frosyn hym byfore · as fell for þe tyme, 3063
 Passys ouer with hys perys · a pak oute of nowmbrē.
 Hys floke fyllys at² þe flud · a furelonge of brede,
 The streme fra þat one strande · streghþ vnto þat oþer.
 Sone fra hym-self was at þe syde · it sounderytt byhynd,

¹ MS. defend.² Read al.

and many
Persians are
lost,

[Fol. 53.]

to the number of
300,000.

Darius goes to
Susa, and
laments.

"Now am I cast
down!"

He writes a letter
to Alexander.

"I, Darius, salute
Alexander."

Ye are wise.

Be not too proud.

Xerxes was
proud, and failed.

And aH at lent ware on-loft · loste þar þe swete. 3068

þus many deed þat day · as þe buke tellis,

Of pollis out of Persye · withouten þe grekis,

Thre hundredth Mille thra meñ · þat tharned¹ þaire lyues,

With þe fooles & þe folke · þat þe flode drouned. 3072

þis senioure out of Susys · to his cite wendis,

Fallis doun oñ his face · flat iñ þe sale,

"Wa is me!" quod he, "wriche · wa is me vnhappy!"

Siȝis selcuthely sare · & sadly he wepys, 3076

"I þat was straȝt to þe sternes² · am streken now to
grondl,

Now cratoñ, now caitefe · now am I kast vndire,

þat had of the Orient all ouire · homage vñqwile.

Wist any we quat him suld worth · þis werd wald he
leue, 3080

FuH sympiH in a seteqwile · seke to þe cloudes,

And þai at mast ere of miȝt · smyten aH to poudire."

With³ þat reufully he rase · & renkis out he sendis,
To Alexander belyue · & all slike a pistiH. 3084

¶ "I, drery kynge oñ my dese · Darius of Persy,
To Alexander þat Aire · þat all has to wild,
þe lege lord of my lyfe · to lose or to saue,
þus send I to my souerayne · salutis & ioy. 3088

So wyde is þe wisdom · þat wonne[s] in ȝour saule,

þat wele ȝe wate, of aH men · at I worthid here before,
Of aH þe notis þat ere now · & quat oñ next sewes.

For-þi ȝour werke ay be witt · ȝe wirke vñreproudl.

Sire, I knawlage me a creatour · & come of a woman,

Heues noȝt ȝour hert vp to hiȝe · take hede to ȝour end;
It limps noȝt aH-way þe last · to lickeñ with þe first,
Quat suld a kniȝt mare to kepe · bot conquire his
enmy ? 3096

Was noȝt Sexes him-selfe · þe souereynest in erth,

And cheued him of cheualry · chekis out of nombre?

ȝit for his wiH out of worde · was woñ in-to pride,

¹ MS. thrarned. ² MS. stremes. ³ MS. þat with ; þat struck out.

And all þat lent wer on-lofte · lost haue þe swete. 3068 [Fol. 36 b.]
 þus mony deyd þis day · as demys me writtes,
 Off polles oute of persye · withoute þe prouude grekys,
 Thre C Mille¹ of throo · þat tharnyd þair lyfez,
 With þe folez & þe folke · þat þe flude drynched. 3072
 þis seneour vnto susys · hys awne cyte wendes,
 Fallys downe on hys face · flatt in þe sale,
 “Wo is me !” quod þe wreche · “wo is me vnhappyñ !”
 Sighez selkouthly sore · & sadly he wepys, 3076
 “I þat was straught to þe sternes · am strykyn nowe to
 ground,
 Nowe a crathan & a knaffe · nowe am I kest vnder,
 þat had of the Orient all ouer · homage vmwhile.
 Wist ony wee qwat hym suld worth · þis werld wald he
 lefe, 3080
 Full symple in a sete-while · sekyn to þe clodes,
 And þai þat most er of myght · meltyn all to powder.”
 With þat he rewfally rose · & renkes oute he sendes,
 To A[lexander] als bylyfe · & all suche a PistyH. 3084
 “I, drery Kyng on my dese · Darius of Perys, Epistola.
 To A[lexander] þe heyr · þat all hase to weld,
 þe leyge lord of my lyfe · to lese or to safe,
 þus send I to my soueren · salutes of Ioy. 3088
 So wyde is þe wisdome · þat wonnys in your saule,
 þat wele ȝe wate of all þat was · & worth here byfore,
 Off all þe notes þat er nowe · & what on next sewys.
 For-ȝi ȝe wirke euer by witte · ye werke vnreprefyt. 3092
 Sir, I knalegh me a creatur · & Comyn of A womañ,
 Hefys nott your hert to hye · bott hedes to your ende ;
 It lympys nott allway þe last · be lykkynd to þe first,
 Quatt suld a knyght more Couett · þen conquer hys foes ?

Was not Seryxes hym-self · þe soueranest on ground, 3097
 And chefyd hym nott of cheualry · chekez oute of nombre ?
 ȝitt for hys wiȝt oute of warde · was wonne into pride,

¹ I. e. Three hundred thousand.

[Fol. 53 b.]

In þe lede here of Elanda · lithirly he feyned. 3100
 þinke þat allanely of god · þis ouirlaikē þou haues,

*Remember that
victory is from
God.*

*Restore my
relatives, and
take my wealth."*

For-þi haue mercy oñ þi meñ · þi meche we¹ beseke,

Als of ȝoure grete gudnes · to grant vs oure modire,

Oure bride, oure barnes out of bande · for besandis enoȝe,

For all þe feete² at oure fadirs · in þe fold³ hade, 3105

In Battre & in þis bild · þe burȝe of Elanda,

þe maistri & þe maieste · of Mede & of Persy,

With all þe Iolyte &⁴ Ioy · þat Iubiter vs lenes." 3108

*The letter is
taken to
Alexander,*

þe seggis at fra Susses · was sent with þe pistill

Aires to ser Alexander · onone hit⁵ him reches ;

And he dos oñ before his ost · openly to rede, 3111

*whose men
rejoice.*

And all his kniȝtis for þe carpe · ware kenely reioysed.

*Permeon advises
him to accept
Darius' offer.*

þen was ane Permeoñ, a pere · a prince of his oste,

Enclynnes him doun to þe kyng · said : " kid emperoure,

Resayue þis risches, I rede · þat ȝow þis renke bedis,

And lyuers him his ladis · & aȝ his lele childire." 3116

Alexander says,

þan Alexander belyue · þa hathels he callis,

þe berne at broȝt⁶ him þe brefe · said : " bowis to ȝour

lord,

" How can
Darius expect
anything of me ?

And say,⁷ me wondirs, I-wisse · if he it wete wald,

For any mede a-poñ mold · his meneyhe to lyuire ? 3120

If he be falleñ vndire fote · & his folke streyned,

And vencust of oure violence · quat vailis him his hestis ?

His person & his prouynce · he put it in my wiȝ, 3123

And ȝeld him vndire my ȝoke · þan ȝerne I na mare.

*Let him own
himself beaten."*

And if [he] grant him noȝt de-grayd · bot for þe gre

threpis,

Bid buske him eft to þe bent · vs bataill to ȝeld."

þus monest he þe messangers · þaire maistir to say,

Geuys þan giftis fulȝ gude · & lete þan ga swyth. 3128

*He bids the
corpses to be
buried.*

And þan comands he his kniȝtis · þe corses vp to

gedire,

¹ MS. de. ² MS. fadirs feete ; *with fadirs struck out.*

³ MS. fuld, *corrected to fold.* ⁴ MS. & oi ; oi *struck out.*

⁵ MS. it hit. ⁶ MS. borȝt. ⁷ *In the margin.*

Of all þe douth at was dede · & diȝt þam in graues.
 And at wondid was, I-wis · as þe writh tellis, 3131
 To serche þaire saluys & þar saris · with surgens noble.
 At þe grete flode of Granton · now graythis he his
 tentis,

[Fol. 54.]
 He offers to the
 gods.

He bids his
 men not to burn
 any building.

The Greeks find
 an old sepulchre,

that of Ninus,
 made of amethyst.

They next find
 a prison, with
 maimed men in
 it, who are set
 free.

They were
 maimed by
 Darius.

Darius writes to
 king Porus of
 India.

Honoured þare his ald¹ gods · & offirs þam nouches ;
 þare fand he palais vp piȝt · & many proud hames,
 Sum-quile of Sexes ware sett · þe sire of þo landis. 3136
 þa bildis he bedis þam to brin · sone of his bone rewis,
 And bad na bereñ be sa bald · a brand for to kyndiȝ.
 þare was a brade bent filȝ · was beried fuȝt of kniȝtis,
 Of ald peres out of Persy · prince & dukes. 3140
 þe Messedones in þe moldȝ · mynes to þe graues,
 Fand coupis all of clene goldȝ · & costious stanes,
 þe sepulture of a sire · þat of Surre was kyng.
 Him was þe name Ninus · was in a noke fondeñ, 3144
 Was of ane athiȝ amatist · & aȝt within² graueñ,
 Plantid fuȝt of palmetres · & many proud fowles,
 And slike a clerete it kest · þu[r]ȝe kynd of it-selfe,
 þai³ miȝt haue kendȝ without þe kist · þe corps aȝt
 to gedire. 3148

þare was a tenefuȝt toure · & tulkis in-closid ;
 Sum ware þe handis of heweñ · & sum wondid hoȝes,
 Sum þe eȝen, sum þe eres · & egirly cries
 On Alexander eftir help · & he þam all liuers. 3152
 He wepis oñ þam for wa · said, "wa is me, my
 childire !"

And ilkane of his talentis · he takis ten thousand.
 þus ware þai diȝt of ser Dary · for he dedeyne hade,
 þat þai⁴ ware comen doun of kyngis · & be no cause
 ellis. 3156

Be now þe douth of ser Daris · þe derfe messangere
 Fra Alexander agayñ · his answare him broȝt ;
 And he þan girdis out to grete · eft graythis him to fyȝt,

¹ MS. h ald. ² with is in the margin. ³ MS. þt.
⁴ MS. þat, corrected to þai.

Of al þe doghthy þat was dede · & dight þaim in grafys.
 And al þat woundytt was, I-wysse · as þe writte tellys,
 He gart seke þair sarys, & þaim salue · with suurgers¹ noble.
 At þe flude of grantum · nowe grathez he hys tentes, 3133

Honours hys olde goddes · & offers þaim ouchez ;
 þair fande he palays vp pight · & mony prouude homez, [Fol. 37 b.]
 Some-while of Serxes was set · þe syre of þair landez.
 þose beldes he byddes þaim bryn · & synе of hys bode rewys,
 And bad no berne be so bald · a brand for to kyndyH.
 þar was a brode bent feld · was ful of beryd kyngez,
 Off olde perys oute of pers · of Princez & Dukez. 3140
 The massydoyns in þe mold · mynyñ into þe grafez,
 Founde coupes al of clene gold · & costyous stonez,
 þe sepulturre of a syre · of Surry was crownyd.

Hym was þe name Ninus · was in a noke foundeñ, 3144
 Was of ane athyH amatyst · & al within grafen,
 Plantyd all with palmetres · & mony prouude fowlez,
 And suche a clarett² it kest · þorow kynde of hym-selueñ,
 Men myght haue kend withoute kyst · þe cors all-to-geder. 3148

þar was a tenefull toure · & tulkez inclosyd ;
 Some was þe harmes of heven · & some þe lygez wantyd,
 Some þe hoghez, some þe eres · & egerly crydeñ
 On A[lexander] after help · & he þaim al delyuerys.
 He wepys on þaim for woo · sayd : “woo is me, my childer !” 3153

And ichone of hys talentes · he takys ten thouusand.
 þus war þai dyght of Sir Dary · for he disdayne hed,
 þat þai war comyn of kyngez · & be no cause ellez. 3156

Be þen þe Doghthy of sir Darius · our derf messengers
 Fro A[lexander] ayayn · hys Answer hase brogthyñ ;
 And he þen gyrdes oute to grete · & grathez hym to fyght,

¹ Read surgens.

² Read clartee.

"Darius to Porus.

To þe honoryd here out of ynde · þus ordans a pistill.
“þat þe sceptoure & þe soile · sesid am of Persy,
To Porrus vndire my present · plesance & ioy.
First wrate I to ȝour worthines · ȝit write I þe same,
To help vs at þire hathill meñ · þat haue¹ wald my
regne,

Come and help
me.

[Fol. 54 b.]

For Alexander is
wroth as a lion.

And, be þe sure, þe same way · is to ȝour-self ettild.
For he þat werraist vs with · þe wildare of grece,
Is wravid & wrathfuþ of wiþ · & wode as a lyon, 3167

**It is better for me
to die than
to live in sorrow.**

And if I sande meñ & sammen · seggis out of nombre,
And cokke with þe conquirour · tiH I be cald drepid,
ȝit me is better oñ þe bent · in bataile be slayne,
þan se þe lose of my ledis · & ay leue iñ sorowe.
For-þi ȝoure lordschip as legeman · I lawly be-seke,
As I þat am in angwisch · myne askyng to fiH ; 3173
Ten schilling of my trew gold · a mañ þat is armed,
And fyue to a fote-man · faithely I hete.

I promise ten
shillings to a
well-armed
soldier, five to a
foot-soldier.

You shall have
the spoil."

Bucifalon þe bald stede · saH bathe be oure aweñ,
And þe armes of Alexander · & aH þe pilage."

¶ Now flees þar fra þe feit kynge · a fone of his kniȝtes,
To Alexander belieue · & ait þus him tald, 3181
How þat ser Dary with his dukis · eft drassis him to
fist,

Had prayd eftir powere · to Porrus of ynde.
þan ordans him þis honorable · with his ost flitis, 3184
Agayn þe Persyns king · him ordans to ride,
For þe name of añ Emperoure · ne wald he neuire fange,
Or þen þat souerayne ware slayne · or ȝild him his regne.²
Sone as þe kyng of þat kith · of his come herys, 3188
þañ was he ferly a-friȝt · & his folke bathe.

Darius is frightened.

Two of his own
knights lay a
plot to kill him.

Thankest þam twa of his kniȝtis · him causeles to spiȝt,
¹ þat haue in the margin. ² MS. rege, altered to regne.

To þe honourd heere oute of Inde · þus Ordyns he a pistyH.

"That þe septour & þe soyle · sesyd am of pers, 3161
To porrus vnder my pryst · plesaunce & Ioy.

First wrote I to your worthynes · ȝitt write I þe same,
To help vs Anest þees athell men · þat hery wald oure
realme, 3164

And, be ȝe sure, þe same way · is to your-selfe etteld.

And he þat werrys vs · is þe weldar of grece,

Es wrawyd & wrathfull of wiH · & wode as a lyon, 3167

As wawes of þe wild see · wheñ wynd þaim dis-
trobles ; 3167*

[Fol. 38.]

And þof I somme & samme · seggez oute of nombre, 3168

And cok with þis conquerour · tyll I be cold drepyd,

ȝitt is me better on þe bent · in bateH to fayle,

ȝen see þe losse of my ledes · & ay lefe in sorow.

For-þi your lordship as lege man · I lofely beseche, 3172

As I þat am in angres · my askyns fullfyH ;

Ten schelyng of my trew gold · a tulke þat is armyd,

And fyfe to A foteman · faythfully I hete. 3175

ȝitt shall I ordayne to your one · whar-euer our hoste liggez,

Nyne score of new gere · of norturyd maydens.

Bucyfall þe bald stede · sall als be your awne, 3178

With þe armez of Sir A[lexander] · & all þe oþer pelage."

Nowe fleen þai fro þis feH kyng · a some of hys knyghtes,

To A[lexander] als belyfe · als þus hym told,

How þat Sir Dary¹ with hys dukez · dressyd þaim to
fyght, 3182

Had send after power · to porrus of Inde.

ȝen ordyns hym þis honorable · & with hys hoste flyttes,

Ayayns þe persyen Prince · he purpose to ryde,

For þe name of emperor · wald he neuer fonnge, 3186

Or þat soueren wer slayn · & seysyd to hym þe realme.

Sone as þe kyng of þat kyth · of hys Come herys,

ȝen was he ferly affrayd · & hys folke both. 3189

And ȝen kest two of hys knyghtes · to causles hym spyH,

¹ he added here, but struck out.

þai trowid þan of Alexander · to adiH þaim a mede ;
 þire traitours oñ þis trechoure · trowthis has strakid,
 Lendis þaim on-loft to þe lorde · laȝt out swerdis. 3193
 "Quat sall I dreȝe," quod ser Dary · "my dere-worth
 childire ?

Darius asks why
they attack him,

and says that
Alexander will
avenge him.

[Fol. 55.]

They wound
him, and he falls.

First cald I ȝow my clyentis · þat now I caH lordis,
 Semes ȝow noȝt it suffice · my sorowe with-out, 3196
 þat as a bitand brand · me brettens with-in,
 And slaa ȝe me þus sudanly? · þe se[n]ioure of grecc,
 He¹ wiH me wreke on ȝoure werke · wers þan of theses!"
 þar² meuyd þaim³ na mercy · bot maynly him woundid,
 þat doun he hildis aH to-hewyn · þaire handis be-twene.
 þan dryfes furthe þa dones men · & halfe dede him leuys,
 Famand⁴ out of fresch blod · & here a fitt end. 3203

Quartusdecimus passus Alexandri.

Quen Alexander of þis athiH · þis auntir hadl herl,
 How he was diȝt of his douth · & to þe dede
 woundid,

When Alexander
hears that
Darius is
wounded,

he goes to Susa.

The Persians
welcome him ;
but some hide
themselves.

He goes to the
palace.

He streȝt him to struma · & ouire þe streme ridis,
 Soȝt him in Sussys · him-selfe with his ost.
 þe pepill out of Persy · quen þai oure prince see, 3208
 þan ȝode þai furthe & vn-ȝarkid · þe ȝatis of þe eite,
 Resayues him fuH rially · with reuerence & ioy,
 Said : "welcum be þou, werraour · þat aH þe erl loutis!"
 Sone as þir weried wiȝtis · was ware of hes come, 3212
 þat sloȝe so þaire souerayne · þat neuire sake hadd,
 þai heȝe þaim to holes & hyrnes · & hydis þaim belyue,
 þoȝt, or þai wist of his wiH · þai wald noȝt apere.
 þan gase he vp be degréce · the grecen maistir, 3216
 Passis in-to þe palais · a paradyce semed,
 Was oñ þe make of þat mote · noȝt⁵ mervalled a litil,

¹ MS. ȝe. ² MS. þai. ³ MS. þai him.

⁴ Famend, altered to Famand.

⁵ Here follows we, struck through.

þam afterward of A[lexander] · attelland a mede ;
 þees tratours on þat trichory · trouthez hañ stroken,
 Lenden þaim on-loft to þe lord · laghtyn oute swerdes. 3193
 "What sall I dre," quod sir Dary · "my dere worthy
 childer ?

First cald I yow my clyentes · þat now I calle Lordes,
 Semys you nott it shuld suffyce · my sorow now withoute,
 þat as a bytand brand · me bytes within, 3197
 And sla ȝe me þus sodonly ? · þe senyour of grece,
 He will me wreke on your werke · wers þen of theffes !"
 þar mevyd þaim no mercy · bott manly hym woundit, 3200 [Fol. 88 b.]
 þat downe he heldes aH to-hewyn · þair handes bytwene.
 þen dryfen forth þoo Domesmen · & halfdede hym lefes,
 Fomand oute of freche blode · & here a fyt endes. 3203

Quartusdecimus¹ Passus A[lexandri].

Q[u]hen A[lexander] of þis atheH · þis aunturs had herd,
 How he was dyght of hys doughty · & to þe deth
 woundit,
 He straught hym on to struma · ouer þe streme rydes,
 Soght on to susys · hym-self with hys hostez.
 þe peple oute of persye · when þai þis Prince see, 3208
 þen ȝode þai furth & vnȝarkyd · þe ȝates of þe Cyte,
 Resaved hym full ryally · with reuerence enogh,
 Sayd : "welcom be þou, weryour · þat aH þe world loutes !"
 Sone as þees warryd wightez · was war of hys come, 3212
 þat Sloghen so þair souerent · þat neuer þaim gilt made,
 þai hyen þaim to holez · & hyden þaim belyfe,
 þoght, or þai wist of hys wyH · þai wald not apere.
 þen goyse he vp be degrees · þe greken maister, 3216
 Passyd vnto þe palacys · þat paradyse semyd,
 Was in makke of þat mote · noght mervaylled a lytyH,

¹ MS. Duodecimus.

þat compast was of Cusys · þat kynge was of Persy.

The floor is
finely paved.

þe flore vndire þe fote · fynely was paued, 3220
Couerd alſt of cristaſt · & oþire clere stanes.

The walls are of
pure gold.

þit ware þe wawes of þe wanes · wroȝt, as I rede,
Polischid alſt of pure gold¹ · & of plate werkis.

And þat was streken fulſt of sternys · & of sere
gemmys, 3224

With briȝt blasynand bees · as bemes of þe soñ.

[Fol. 55 b.]

þe hathiſt hedis vp-oñ heȝe · & hogely he wondirs,

Alexander
wonders.

þat euire suld emperoure in erth · slike ane herde wild.
Quen he had ferlyd his fiſt · apoñ þat faire hame, 3228

He finds Darius
sore wounded.

þurȝe-out þe sale þan he soȝt · in-to þe selfe chambre,
þare quare þe lord in lay · with laythely woundis,
Girdid out as gutars · in grete giſt-stremes,

He pities him.

þit was þare lyfe in his like · litiſt if it semed, 3232
At ilk blast of his breth · þe blode fra him glidis,
Sire Alexander him avysis · & authly him thinke ;
þe pure pete of his payñ · persid his hert.

He embraces him,

þan nymes he fra his awyn neke · añ emperoures
mantis, 3236

and weeps over
him.

“ Be comforted ;
be king of Persia
once more.

And þat he² couirs ouire þe kyng · & clappis him in

armes,

With grym gretyng & gro · & gryſely terys ;
Bad : “ comfurth þe, ser conquirour · & of þi care ryse,
Don aȝayne þe dignite · þe diademe of Pers, 3240

Let no man
vaunt of his
success.

And alſt þe riȝtis of þi rewme · resayue as before.

Let me avenge
thy murder.”

My pure powarful gods · I prestly pauoure,
þine empire & þine erytage · enterely þe to ȝeld ; 3243
Suld neuir na gome be to glade · þofe he grete ware,
Of his neȝbour noy · enentis him-selfe,
Quen fortune foundis him fra · & him þe fete schewis,
And alſt þe welth him at-wendis · & þe werd changis.

Brynge furth þi banes, & with my brand · I saſt
dede venge.” 3248

þis saȝe sobband he said · & þe segge wakyns,

¹ MS. gold gold, but corrected. ² In the margin.

- þat Compast was of Susys · þat kyng was of pers.
 þe flore vnder fute · fynely was pafvyd, 3220
 Couered aH of cristaH · & oþer clere stonez.
 ȝitt wer þe wallez of þe wane · wroght, as I rede,
 Polyshyd all of pure gold · & of plate werkes.
 And þat was strengkyllyd full of sternez · & strykyñ with
 gemmys, 3224
 With bright blasenand beys · as bemys of þe sonne.
 þe hatheH hedes vp on hight · & hugely he wounderez,
 þat euer suld Emperour in erth · suche a place welde.
 Qwen he had farlyd hys fyll · on þees fair homez, 3228
 T[h]rogh-oute þe sale þan he soght · vnto þe self chaumbre, [Fol. 29.]
 þar as þe lord in lay · with lothlyche woundes,
 Gyrrdand oute as gutters · in grete gylle-stormez,
 ȝitt was þar lyfe in hys lyre · lytyll yf it semyd, 3232
 Att Iche blast of hys breth · þe blode fro hym ȝettes,
 Sir A[lexander] on hym avysys · & trewly hym thynkez ;
 þe pure pite of hys payn · persyd hys hert.
 þennymmez he fro hys awne neke · ane emperours
 manteH, 3236
 And þat he Couerys ouer þe kyng · & clepys hym in
 harmez,
 With greme gretyng & grone · & gryslyche terys ;
 Bad : “ comforþ þe, sir conquerour · & of þi care ryse,
 þu dose ayayn þi dignite · þe dyadem of pers, 3240
 And þe rightez of my realme · resayve als before.
 My pure powerfull goddes · prestly adoure,
 þine empyre & þi herytage · þe purely to ȝeld ;
 Suld neuer no gome be glad · þof he grett wer, 3244
 Off hys neghburs noye · anentes hym-seluen.
 When fortune fundes hym fro · & hym þe fete schewys,
 And all þe welthe¹ þat he weldes · & þe werld chaungez,
 Bryng fforth þi banes, & with a brand · þi bale shall I
 venge.” 3248
 þis sagh sobband he sayd · & so þe segge wakyns,

¹ MS. wethche.

Hendly halsys hym vmbe · & hys hande kyssys,
 þe brest & on þe bare neke · & brevys þees wordez :
 “ A ! Alexander, athyll soñ ” · and augerdly gronys, 3252
 “ þe depe distruction of þi dome · hase mony day ben
 knawen,

All þe welth of þis werld · waystes be þe last^t
 To caryon & corrupcioñ · clene all-to-geder.

The wyssyng^t of þe wale god · þat wist al before, 3256
 And fully fele al þe fare · þat falle shuld on erth ;
 On þis maner made he mañ · þorow hys myght first^t,
 Suld not be funde in hym fastnes · ne ferme be ne stabyn^t,
 Bot hofand here an hand-while · & hyngand on payse, 3260
 Now in leueñ, nowe on-loft^t · nowe in law vnder.

AH wordly þ[i]ng^t, I-wys · þorow wyñ of þat Lord^t, [Fol. 39 b.]
 Into þe con'tray clene · is at a clampe turnyd.
 For hed he wrought ay to wees · welth & none oþer, 3264
 So grete had ben vaneglorÿ · glotony & Pride,
 Suld nane haue gessyd þaim grace · of god, bott of þaim-
 selueñ ;

So from þe maker of man · myght mony haue erryd. 3267
 And had he shapyn Ay to shalkez · shendship^t & illys, 3267*
 So fele had ben þe frekes · folowand our kynd^t, 3268
 We had ben drawyn all bedene · into dispare clene,
 And on þe gudnes of god · noght a dele traistytt.
 For-þi he wald of hys will · al warkys to be chaunged,
 þat, when on athyñ was so wele · in happe & in heyle, 3272

þat he knew not hys creatour · be-cause of hys prude,
 Into þe Dyche of debonerte · drench must hym nede.
 þis was hys wille þat it shuld þus worth · wete þou no noþer,
 The gome þat hys god forgatt · for ony grace here, 3276
 Hys welth to wyte away · & wrychednes to apere,
 To ken þe catyff to know · who causyd hym on first.
 þe sampyñ of my Awne self^t · þou seys nowe betyd ;

So grete I grew of my gods · & gold in my cofirs, 3280
 þat kindly gods creatoure · I kend noȝt my-selfe,
 Bot for his feloȝe & his fere · faithfully me leued,

Pride blinded me. þus prosperite & pride · so purely me blyndid,
 I couthe noȝt se fra my sege · to þe soile vndire, 3284
 þat at me failed þan to fynd · fast at myn eȝen.

[Fol. 56 b.]

If a man be cast down,

he shall be exalted.

Let man acknowledge his creator.

Let not pride puff thee up.

Look to thine end.

My life is like a cob-web, soon blown away.

I, who yesterday ruled all the world, am now driven down to dust.

Bury me with the princes of Persia.

Be þe myrrour now of meknes · I may a myle knawe,
 If any hathill be so hard · with vnhappy woundid,
 So at he hopis him no helpe · of þe heȝe fadire, 3288
 þan liftis oure lord him on-loft · his langour he breggis,
 In-hanses him in hand-quile · & heues him to welthis
 So heȝe, þat he for vn-hele · seȝes noȝt his driȝten.

Lat þan him knew his creatour · in kindling of ioy, 3292
 þat he þat lawene has a lede · may lyft, if him thinke,
 And he þat bringis him on-loft · breten aȝt to poudire.
 þi saule, soȝ, in-to surquiterie · lat seke neuire þe hiȝhare,

For gre þe graunt¹ ere¹ of god · & noȝt² of þi grete strenthis. 3296

If aȝt þe limp as þe list · loke to þine ende,
 For die þe bose, queȝ aȝt is done · & ay þi day scortis.
 ¶ Me þink³ my lyfe as to þe length · is like to þis werke,
 þat þis coppis opon keȝ-wyse · knytt in þe woȝes, 3300
 With þe lest winde of þe werd · þat þe werd touches,
 þe note anentis ilk ane · & aȝt to noȝt worthis.

Lo ! so þe quele of qwistsumnes · my qualite has changid!
 I, þat was ȝustirday so ȝape · & ȝemed aȝt þe werld, 3304
 To day am dreuyȝ all to dust · to dolour & paynes,
 Has noȝt o maistri so meche · as miȝt of my-selfe.
 My dere soȝ, " quod Daryus · " it drawes nere þe tyme;
 My banes, on my benysoȝ · bery with þi hand, 3308
 With þe proued princes out of Pers⁴ · & with þe proude grekis,
 And þe maistirlings of Messedoyne · ȝe me to mold bring.

¹ Read is.² Added in the margin.³ MS. Me þink me.⁴ MS. Perers.

So grete I grew of my gudez · & gold in my coffers, 3280
 þat kendly goddes creature · I knew nott my-selueñ,
 Bott for hys felow & hys fere · faythfully me made,
 þus prosperite & pride¹ · propyrly me blyndyd,
 I kouth noght see fro my seyge · to þe sette vnder, 3284
 þat at me faylyd to fynd · fast at my eeyñ.
 Be þe myrrow[r] of mekenes · I may a myle knew,
 Yff ony hatheñ be so hard · with vnhabpe woundit,
 So þat he hopys hym no help · of þe hye fader, 3288
 þen lyftes þe kyng hym on-loft · hys langor abreggez,
 Enhaunses hym in hand-while · & hefys hym on-loft
 So he, þat ere² for vnsele · segh nott hys Dryghtyn. 3291
 Lete þen hym know hys creature · in kyndylling of Ioy,
 þat he laghtnes may lede · & lyft when hym thynkez,
 And þat brynges hym abowe · bryttynd all to powder.
 þi sawle, sir, into Surquydry · latt sech neuer þe
 heyere, 3295

[Leaf 40 is lost.]

¹ MS. proride.

² For ere, read he.

Let us fight no longer.

I command to you my mother and daughter.

[Fol. 57.]

Be kind to my men."

Darius dies and is buried.

Lat þan oure kyng-domes a-corde · & cock we na langir,
Bot ay perpetuall pes · oure partys betwene. 3312

Vn-to þoure mekiH maieste · my modire I comande,
Rodogarus þe rialH · & rewis on my bride;

My doȝtir Rosan þe riche · resayues to þour spouse,
It comys wele of hiȝe kyñ · kyngis to descend. 3316

Tak tent to þat at I teH · be tendire of my kniȝtis."
And with þis speke at he spake · þe sprete he ȝeldis.

þan was his body enbawmed · &, as he bede, grauen.
þis bald baratoure him bare · & as a barne gretis, 3320

So did þe pepiH out of Persy · bot for his pite mare
þan for þe dethe of Dary · be dowble of þe twa.

And Alexander belyue · as he was enterid,
He meues agayñ to þe mote · & oñ þe morne eftir, 3324

Vp to þe souerayne sege · with Septour he wyndis,
þat Cusus þe conquirour · of clere gold maked.

þe mody men of Messedone · þe maistirs of Persy
þan put þam in-to presens · as þe prose tellis; 3328

Sire Darius aweñ dyademe · þai did oñ his hede,
A coroñ, ane þe costious · þat euire kyng weryd,

On þe propurest of proiecte · þat euire prince bere.
þe massy werke was þe menest · made of þe noble, 3332

þe pride þar-of for to proue · it pyned any cristeñ;
It gaue so gloriis a gleme · of gold & of stanes,

þat as þe loge for þe liȝt · lemed as of heuen. 3335

þe sete þare him-selfe satte · in soyte with þe croune, matching
þat was lift a-poñ loft · oñ oþire litilH segis,
Seuyn cubet of clere gold · was countid þe hiȝt.

And vij degrece was þar grayd · for gate-vp of kingis,
And þai ware Ientilly Ioyned · in a Ioyly wyse. 3340

þe first añ athil Amatast · as I am infourmed,
And of a Smeth [s]maragdane · Smyten was þe topir; of Fn.

þe thrid of a Topas a-tyred · & trelest & grauen;
þe ferd degré a Granate · a gracious gemme; 3344

þe fyfte was of ane Adomant · aH-to-gedire makid;
þe sext of gletirand gold · gayle was forgid;

The crown shines gloriously.

The throne is of gold.

It has seven steps;

1. of amethyst.

2. of smaragdus.

3. of topaz.

4. of garnet.

[Fol. 57 b.]
5. of adamant.

6. of gold.

Interpolation # 4
Pr. Rhel 246 - 52
m.m 259.

7. of earth.

1. The amethyst
guards men
against
drunkenness.A king must
be of sober mind.2. The smaragdus
protects the
sight; a king
must see clearly.3. The topaz
reflects an
inverted image.A king must
remember how
all things are
subverted.4. The garnet is
the brightest of
gems;a king must be of
pure fame.5. The adamant
is very hard.
[Fol. 58.]

It attracts ships.

þe ouirmast, all of þe erth · with-out oþire werkis,
 Apoñ þis wyse ware þai grayd · & for grete cause. 3348 M?

þe first was of añ Amatist · þat all chaye demes ^{5 Fa} charge
 Riche, said þe romance · & ronkenes of wynes,
 Lattis na dronkynnes¹ þan dere · þat douth at it beris. nature
 þe same wyse moñ a wee · waite to him-selfe, 3352
 A kniȝt at couettis to clym · to kyngs astate,
 Him bus haue warnes him with · of wit & of mynde,
 þat he wirke noȝt oñ þe wethire halfe · for wathe apoñ
 erth. 3355

þe s[e]cunde was of Smaragdone · þat ay þe siȝt kepis ;
 Quat berne as beris it him oñ · it briȝtens his eȝen.
 So bus a kyng to consaile · haue a² clere hert,
 To se at syttis him to se · & sagely to wirke. 3359

þe thrid was a Topas, I trow · at to þe trone lengis ;
 þat is so clere of his kind · þe clause me recordis,
 þat qua-sum-euire in þat ilk · his ymage behaldis,
 þe face is to þe fold-ward · þe fete to þe firment.
 So comes it wele for a kyng · to knaw tiȝ his end, 3364
 How ay þe top to þe taa · is turned at þe last.
 Queñ fortune festis him · he fendis belieue, OF a

And all his dignite bedene · driues in-to poudire. 3367 forthwith
 þe ferd was a granate, I gesse · goules althire-fynest ; ⁶ eaþra g
 Is nane so redy, as I rede · of all þe riche stanes ;
 Slike color aȝe a kyng wele · in conyschance to bere,
 þat he schape to na schauadry · þat schend suld his fame.
 þe fift was all of adomant · as þe buke tellis ; 3372
 þat is he þat is so hard · þat hurt may nane tolē ;³ tool
 Is nothire stele ne na stane · so stife it may perce,
 And growis out of þe grete see · in graynes & in cragis.
 If any Naue⁴ to it neȝe · þat naylid is with iryñ, 3376
 þeñ cleuys it ay to þe clife · carryg & othyre ;

¹ MS. droncynnes, altered to dronkynnes. ² MS. ai.³ MS. thole tolē ; with thole struck out.⁴ MS. aue, altered to Naue in the margin.

What berne þat berys it hym on · it brightyns hys syght! [Fol. 41; *leaf 40 being lost.*] 3359

So buse a kyng to consayve · hafe a clere hert,
To se þat sittes hym to see · & sagely to wirche.

The thryd was a topas, I trowe · þat to þe trone longyd ;
þat is So clere of hys kynde · þe clause it recordes,
þat who-someuer in þat ilke · hys vysage behaldes,
þe face is to þe foldward · þe fete into þe welkyñ.

So comys it wele to a kyng · to knaw to hys ende, 3364
Howe ay þe topp to þe toes · is turnyd at þe last,
When fortoune fraystes frely hym in-fere · he fyndes hym
belyfe,

And all hys dignite bedene · dryfys into Powder. 3367
The fourte was a granate · þat glowys all þar fynest' ;
Is none so rede, as I rede · of all þe ryche stones ;
Suche colour agh't a kyng wele · in countenaunce to bere,
þat he shope to no cheualdre · þat shend shuld hys name.

The fyft was all of Adamant' · as þe buke tellys ; 3372
þat is he þat is so hard · þat hurt may no tule ;
Is noþer stele nor no stone · so styff may it perce,
And growys out of' þe grete see · in granes & in Craggez.

Yff ony navy to it negh · þat nalyd is with Irne, 3376
þen clefys it ay to þe clyff · carrak & oþer ;

o. c. 1520
Bot blode of body, sais þe buke · bees it neuire
percid,¹

Or þe natour of anothire thing · þat nedis noȝt to recken.

A king should be
steadfast.

þat same kynd suld a kyng · of his craft vse, 3380

So stable & so stedfast · to stand in his werkes,

þat for na prayere ne pres · ne plesaunce oñ erthe,

Out of þe rake of riȝtwysnes · reñ suld he neuire.

6. The gold is
the chief of
metals;

þe Sext was of gold · graciously heweñ, 3384

Of aH metals o moldk · þe maistir & þe syre;

a king should be
chief.

þe same cure is a kyng · be kind of his leggis,

To gy & gouerne² his gomes · þe grettest he is makid.

7. The earth
reminds a king
that he is of
earth.

þe seuynt vp to þe sege · was of þe selfe erth, 3388

þat is na mare for to mene · as me my mynd tellis,

Bot ilka kyng suld him knaw · cried of þe soile,

And to þe same sustenance · sodanly to worthe. 3391

þus sett oure syre in his sete · with septoure in hand,

In pelour & in paH · & proud meñ him by. *end of folio*

Alexander sends
out a letter.

þañ lete he lettres belyue · with ledis out to send,

þurȝe aH þe prouynce of pers³ · promicid þis werkis.

“ þe kyng with-outeñ compere · of kyngis aH othire,

Of all þe lordis now þe lord · þat lefis apoñ erth, 3397

“ Alexander to
the chiefs and
princes of Persia
sends greeting.

Sire Alexander, athiH soñ · of Amoñ his driȝteñ,

And als of Olimpades · anyly consayued,

To þe souerayns & þe Senescalls · þe sires & þe maistris,

And all þe pers out of persy · princes & dukis, 3401

þe Iustis & þe gentils · & Iugemeñ of lawe,

Bathe citizens & seriant · salutis of grace.

Syn it lokid has þe largenes · of þe lord of heuen, 3404

[Fol. 58 b.]

þat me þis diadem of Dary · demed is & graunted,

And to be⁴ here þus enhansiH · in his hiȝe trone,

þe shall be glad of my degré · & gretly reioyd,

And ordans aquare ouire aH · honourable princes, 3408

Since the diadem
of Darius is
granted me,
let all be
administered as
before.

Gouernours & gardens · of all þe grete burȝes,

As was in Darius days · to deme men þe riȝt,

¹ MS. lansed, altered to percid. ² MS. gounere.

³ MS. perers. ⁴ In the margin.

Withowte blode of body, says þe buke · beys it neuer
persyd,
Or þe nature of a-noþer thyng · þat nedes noght to rekyn.
The same kynd shuld a kyng^t · of hys craft vse, 3380
So stabyll & so stedfast^t · to stand in hys werkez,
þat for no prayer ne preese · ne plesaunce¹ on erth,
Oute of þe rakke of rightwyssnes · rynne shuld he neuer.
The sext degree was of gold · graciously hewyñ, 3384
Off all þe metallys of mold · þe maister & þe syre;
The same cure is a kyng · be kend of hys leigez,
To gye & goueryne hys gomes · þe grettess is he grathyd.
The Seuente vp to þe sege · was of þe self erth, 3388
þat is no more for to mene · as me þe writte tellys,
Bot euerilke kyng shuld hym knawe · create of þe soyle,
And to þe same substance · sodanly to worth. 3391

þus sett our Syre in hys sete · with septour in hand, [Fol. 41 b.]

In pelour & in palle · & prouude men hym vmbē.
þen lete he letterys belyfe · with ledes oute to send,
þorow all þe prouynce of pers · pronounsand þees wordez:
“ **The** kyng withowtyn compere · of kyngez aH oþer,
Of all lordes nowe lord · þat lefyn vppoñ erth, 3397
Sir A[lexander], athyll soñ · of amoñ hys drightlyñ,
And also of Olympades · only consaved,
To þe souerayns & senescallez, · þe syrez & þe maisterys,
And aH þe peres oute of pers · princez & dukez, 3401
þe iustice & þe gentyles · þe iuggez of þe lawe,
Both cyteȝeyns & sergeantez · salutes of grace.
Seth lukkyd hath þe largenes · of þe lord of heueñ, 3404
þat me þis Diademe of Dary · demyd is & grauntyd,
And to be here þus inhaunsyd · in hys hye trone,
þe shall be glad of my degree · & gretly reiossed,
And ordays ouer all & ay · honorable princez, 3408
Gouernours & gardens · of all my grete burghez,
As was in Darius days · to deme men þe right,

¹ MS. plesaunce.

And clene all þe clientis · to kepe þaire demayndes.

Ilk a pepill his possession¹ · in pes moȝt he broweke,

Let all armour be put away. Armoure & actons · y latt all þat be kepid,² 3413

Caires þam to castells · & in kinge houses,

And none so bald⁴, ere I bide · to bere þam na mare.

Let the highroad be free." And fra þis marche to Messedone · quils I am maistir here, 3416

þe passage in aithire part · sall playn be & opeñ,

þe coimers out of aithire coste · to caire vndistrobbed,

With message & Marchandise · & al manire of nedis."

¶ Now is his pistils aȝt past⁵ · & pese he comandis ; 3420

" Quilke of my fryndis ere þe folke · þat my faa sloze,

þat was þe drepars of Dary · now doo þam a-pere,

þat þai may weld for þis werke · wirschip to mede.

My mekill miȝtfull gods · I maynly ȝow swere, 3424

And oñ þe lay at I leue · & be my lufed modire,³

þe worthe wage þaim wayne · þat þai haue wele serued."

þan all þe pepiȝ out of Persy · pouret out to wepe ;

Bathe Besañ & Anabras · as þe buke tellis, 3428

þat ware þe banes of his body · baldly þam shawis ;

Said : " we to-hewid him [with] oure handis · hiȝe emperoure."

þai wend wele þaim to wyñ · a warysoñ for euire. 3431

þan bad he bernes þaim to bynd · & bringe þaim be-lyue
Vn-to þe gudmans graue · & hewe of þaire hedis.

" Allas, my lord," quod þa ledis · "& ȝe so late swore,

To ȝour worthi gods, ȝour wale dame · we suld no waa suffire ! " 3435

" Siris, as ȝe worthi ware, I-wisse · I wate wele I hiȝt,
And bot ȝour harmes were vnhid · I held noȝt myne athis.

For sen I wañ in-to þe world · my witt has bene aye,

Quen treid was a trechory · þe talkis to be hedid."

þan he did þaim to deth · as driȝten him praysed, 3440

¹ MS. posseciioñ, altered to possession.

² MS. kepis.

³ Here the Dublin MS. ends.

(75)

He next bids the slayers of Darius to come to him,

promising them their reward.

Besan and Anabras present themselves.

[Fol. 59.]
He commands them to be beheaded,

as that is the right reward of traitors.

And clene all our clientes · to kepe þair demaundes,
Iche peple þair possessioñ · in pease myght þai broke,
Armors & actons · lat alþ þat be kepyd, 3413
Cayrez þaim to castellys · & to kyngez housez,
And none so bold, or I byd · to bere þaim no more.
And fro þis marche to massydoyne · whil I am maister
here, 3416

The passage shall in ather parte · plane be & opyñ,
þe Comers oute of athir coste · to cayre vndistourblett,
With message & with merchaundysse · & all maner of nedes.”
Nowe er hys pistellys forth past · & pease he Commandez ;
“ Which of my frendes er þe folke · þat my foe slogh,
þat wer þe drepers of sir Dary · nowe doys þaim apere,
þat þai may weld for þair werk · worship & mede.
My mekyll myghtfull goddes · I maynly you swere, 3424
And on þe lay þat I lefe · & be my lofyd moder,

[*Here ends the fragment in the Dublin MS.*]

The land is at
peace.

76

Alexander again
mounts the gilt
throne,

and bids Roxana
come to him,

whom he weds,
and makes
empress.

The Persians call
him a god; at
which he is
alarmed.

[Fol. 59 b.]

He keeps an
eight-days' feast
in honour of
Roxana.

þe prouynce piȝt is in pes · & princes ere maked,
An¹ ald derling² of Darius · was duke made of pers,
Request of þe rials · ane of his riche vncles. 3443

Oure emperoure, quen þis was endid · erly on þe morne,
With all þa alyens him by · & ancient lordis,
He gase a-gayne to de-greee · vp to þe gilt trone,
Dobbed in his diadem · & diȝt as be-fore ; 3447
As Dary demed, or he deid · his doȝtir he comandes,
Mad Rosañ þe riche · radly to apere,

Hire hede vn-helid was on hiȝe · & hild aȝt in trissis,
Vm-by-clappid with a coronacle · of costious stanes ;
As þe manere of þat marche was · he wedd hire to wyfe,
And in þe sege with him-selfe · to sitt he hir makis,
Comands hire as a conquyres · of knyȝtis to be louted,
And all þe pepill out of Persy · was passandly ioyed.

þai gone agraytheñ vp þaire gods · on gilten segis, 3456
Sayed : “ þou ert duke of ilk dome · & driȝtin þi-selfe !”
þan was he fraid in his flesche · bad, “ feyne of ȝour
wordis !

I am a corruptible kyng · & of clay fourmed !”
þañ out onone to Aristotil · & to his awen modire 3460
Of all his weris & his welth · he wrate alto-gedire ;
And aȝt daies aȝt bedene · he dites in his pistiȝt,
For reuerence of Rosan · to reveȝt & halowe. 3463
Al be þe metire bot mene · þus mekiȝt haue I ioyned ;
Forthi, lordis, be ȝour leue · list ȝow to suffire.
Now will I tary for a time · & tempire my wittis ;
And he þat stize to þe sternes · stiȝtis vs in heuen !

Quintusdecimus passus Alexandri.

I will now tell
you more about
Alexander.

L ordis, wiȝt ȝe me lithe · & lestin a stonde, 3468
Now sall I kithe vs a carpe · of a kyng riche,
Of þe auntours of ser Alexander · þat aire was of gruce,
How all þe werd at his will · he wañ or he deid.

¹ MS. And.

² MS. derlingis.

All þe pepill out of Persy · ere put in my wiþ ;
All ware rebell in arest · now is þe rewme¹ ȝold, 3504

I am your
king.
Ye lightly leave
me.

And I your kyng as ȝe knew · with croune & with septour.
And now ȝe leue me þus liȝtly · bot for a litiȝt pyne,
To caire a-gayne to ȝour kithid² · I cañ noȝt þare-oñ.

Did not I comfort
you when Darius
threatened ?

Knaw ȝe noȝt how in ȝour care · I cu[m]furth ȝow anys,
Quene ȝe dout so þe dites · of Darus in his pistiȝt ?
Eft quen we ferd in-to fild · & with oure faes mett,
I was þe first ȝow before · þat þe fild entrid,

I have been in a
hundred perils.

Soȝt in-to Sussys · my-selfe for³ ȝoure hele, 3512
In þe habet of Amon · oure⁴ allirs driȝten,

I will never turn
my back,
though ye may
do so."

Put my person in plegg⁵ · & perils a hundredth,
And in-to tourment oñ-tald · me tuke for ȝour sake.
Bot wetis it wele with-out wene · I wene in my saule,
As I ȝit haue hediretoward · heried all my faes, 3517

So sall I gete hus ay þe gree · with my gud helpe,
And for na tene at may betide · turne sall I neuire,
If ȝe will lend in-to ȝour landis · loke at ȝour hertis !
Bot me to do slike a dede · driȝtin it schilde ! 3521
I sall neuire graithe me to grece · gase quen ȝow likis,
Or mare wirschip I haue woñ · for wathe vndire
heuen." 3523

His princes and
knights beg his
forgiveness,

and promise in
future to follow
him even to
death.

Quen he þis resoñ hadl reddl · þañ rewid his princes,
And of forge[f]nes of þaire gilt · his grace þai be-seke.
Kniȝtis callis⁵ him oñ kneys · said : " kid emperoure,
All oure life & oure lose · is lent in ȝour handis,
Oure-selfe & oure seruage · is surely ȝoure aweñ, 3528
Ai at ȝoure beding to be · oure bodi & oure gudis,
Quare-euer ȝe wend in aȝt þe werd · in watir or in erthe,
Ay mekely at ȝour mandment · ȝour maieste to folowe.
If we suld die aȝt-bedene · at añ day tyme, 3532
We sall neuer spise ȝow ne sporne · in speche ne in dede,
Ne neuire ȝour rialte renay · bot rede to sewe,

¹ MS. rewe, altered to rewme. ² Or kichid.

³ MS. oo, corrected to for. ⁴ MS. a oure ; with a expuncted.

⁵ Read fallis.

78

Quils any blast of oure breth · in our brest lengis." June and July
 þan ȝede he furth in-to ynde · & in þase Iles weres ; being ended,
 Queñ all þe iolite of giugne · & Iulus was endid, 3537

And messangers a-poñ þe marche · him metis belyue,

Fra kyng^t Porrus þe proude · þis pistill him broȝt.

¶ "I, Porrus, þut as principall . possessid aīn in ynde,
 To þis michare out of Messedone · þis mandment I write.

þou, Alexander, þou Ape · þou Amlaze out of grece,

þou litiȝ thefe, þou losangere · þou lurkare in cites,

Sen þou ert destayned to die · & dedely þi-selfe, 3544

þat¹ agayñ driȝtin of vnde[d]lynes · quat may þi dede
 vaile ? 3545

Madding marrid has þi mode · & þi mynd changid.

Sen god has sent þe with to see · & ȝit þi witt failes,

I hope þou wenes at we be like · to þire lethire Persyñs,

þat þou þi lordschip to loute · has now oñ late strayned.

And for þou fellid has in fȝt · a fȝt at was sympuȝt,²

Now muses þou to þi miserie · my maieste to bowe. 3551

If gomes be gouerners of gods · þan mai þi gesse worth ;

And if þe land here on lawe · be lickned to þe heuen,

þe ministracion of meñ · to me were to febiȝt.

All driȝtens & dewessis · ere dute of my name ;

Ane ser Denys, a duke · gane many wintire, 3556

He bed vs bataill oñ bent · & þe back turned.

And or þat Sexes him-selfe · sesid was in Persy,

At þe marche of Messedone · made vs trouage.

Bot for þe³ partise ere vn-prophetable · vs plese þaim
 na langir, 3560

Ai wald þe wise haue wale soile · mare þañ a wast lee.

Caire agayñ to þi kith · caiteffe, I bidd,

Return to thy
 country."

Here na lordschip þe limpis · quat list þe disyre."

¶ Sone as þis clause to oure kyng · [was] comyn &
 deliuere,⁴ 3564

Be-fore his bachelors oñ brade · he bedis it to rede.

¹ Read As; the usual idiom.

² MS. symplille.

³ In the margin.

⁴ Read deliuered.

79

Alexander's men
are afraid.

His talkis of þis titil · quen þai þe tenour herd,
þan ware þai sory of þa sawes · & selly frayed.
“Quat now, my worthe werrayouris ?” · þe wale kyng
sayd,

3568

Alexander com-
forts them.

“For Porrus pistill, I pray · ne for his proud wordis,
No for na manas he mas · mayes noȝt ȝoure hertis.
Did noȝt ser Dary to vs write · his pistill with pride,
And all þe berbrens bernes · in bestis þam affyed,
As lebards, lesards, & lenxis · lions & tigris?”

3573

He writes to
Porus.

[Fol. 61 b.]

With comfurth of his contenance · his knyȝtis he gladis,
And þan to Porrus apart · þis pistill he writis.

¶ “I, þat¹ þe kyng am of kyng[s] · & crouned of lordis,
þe eldist child of Amoñ · þat all has to wild,
And honourd Olimpades · with him ane geteñ,
To þe oddest aire out of ynde · þis answare I make.

3577

“Thou hast made
us bolder to
fight.”

I-wis, oure wittis with þi wordis · þou has wele scharpid,
And made vs bald with þi bost · þe bataill to ȝeld. 3581
Oure boundis ere barrayne & bare · & þine ful of welth;
þe kenir is oure corage · ȝoure kyng-dome to wyñ,
To put away oure pouerte · & pas to ȝoure hiȝtes.
And ga noȝt, as ȝe gude ware · agayñ ȝow to fist, 3585
Bot a berne ful of bost · a barbrene prince,
Wenand me & all þe werd · to waike to ȝow-selfe.”

Porus is wrath,
and assembles his
men;

Queñ Porrus with his preue men · þis pistill had redd,
þan was he wondirly wrathe · & wiȝtly asembles 3589
þe kniȝtis & þe captayns · of all þe coste by,
His champions, his chiftans · his cheualry to-gedire.

also his unicorns
and elephants,

He feris him a faire flote · was fed for þe nanes,
Of vnicornes, of olyfauntis · & wondirfulle bestis, 3593
As ilkane vsyd with in ynde · vmquile with to fiste,
And aires agayne Alexander · with armes him to mete.
þe powere of sir Porrus · was passandly many ;
A stour stiffe vndire stele · þe strangest of þe werde
Of sithid chariotis him sued · a selecuth nombre, 3598
At þe fewist, as I find · a fouretene thousand ;

and his scythed
chariots.

¹ MS. þat at.

With-outen bachelers oñ blonkis · & bowmen oñ fote,
 Foure hundred Olyfants in-fere · folowid him enarmi[d],
 With ilkane bunden on his bake · a bordeñ casteñ,
 And thretty talkis in ilk toure · tired iñ platis. 3603
 Oure mey-he¹ out of Messedone · quen þai so many saȝe,
 þan ware þai storbet of þat stoure · so was þe stythe
 Persyns.

He had 400
elephants,
each bearing a
castle.

[Fol. 62.]

AH þe athils of sir Alexander · was arȝed in þaire hertis
 To mache with sike a multitude · of men & of bestis.
 þan was þir chiflans chosen · cheualous kniȝtis 3608
 þat buskid ware on bathe halfe · þe batail to rewle.
 With þat þai tuke vp þe trumpis · be thretty at anes,
 A-grydis grymly to-gedir · þe grekes & barbres.

The Greeks are
dismayed.

Sire Alexander was armed · & askis his stede 3612 Alexander mounts
 þat was þe bald bocisaloñ · & oñ his bake worthes ;
 Mare þan a stanecast at a count · be-fore¹ his kniȝtis aH
 He standis vp in his stereps · in starand maylis.

Bucephalus.

þe men out of Medy · he mas, & of Pers, 3616
 To enverom alle þe vaward · of aH þe vile yndes,
 And he was graythid [with] a ging · of grekis kniȝtis
 And maistres out [of] Messedone · þis meyhe² to helpe.

þe pepiH out of Persye · ware petusly woundid 3620
 Of Olifauntis ouir aH · with horrible hurtis ;

The Persians are
wounded by the
elephants.

All at vnweried a-way · wynnes in þe stoundis
 Durst neuir his face to his faes · eft oñ fold bide.

Sire Alexander him a-visis · & ames in his wittis 3624

How he miȝt bring it a-boute · þire bestis to devoide ;

And mas to beete aH of bras · as bernes it ware,

Alexander makes
brazen men,
filled with fire-
brands.

And full of glorand gledis · þaim to þe gorge fillis ;

Ane instrument aH of ireñ · þare ymage to bere, 3628

Was compast oñ carte-wise · & cursoures þaim dreȝe.

þire Olifantis of ynde · quen þai þare-on waite,

The elephants
attack these,

þai wend þai ware wees · & wyndis þaim agayñ

To drepe þaim as þaire first did · disclosid þai þe
 chaviles, 3632

¹ MS. be before.

² Read meynhe.

- [Fol. 62 b.] And sone was snaypid on þe snowte · with þe snart hetis.
and take to flight. With þat þai fonge to þe fliȝt · be fifty at anes,
Of ilkañ athill ware þai aȝed · þat any armes werid.
Sone as ser Porrus of þe poynte · & o þe plite waytis,
þan was he tangid with tene · & turbled vnfaire. 3637
- The Persians and
Medes attack the
Indians. þan preses in þe Persyns · & of þe proud Medis
With arowis & with othire armes · agayn all þe yndis,
Tolls of þe tirantis · & termynd o lyue, 3640
Seȝes doun on aithire side · a sowme out of nounbre,
Thretti dais oñ a throm · þai threpid euire elike,
So lange at þe lest way · as lastid þe bataiȝ.
þare was þe Medis martird · & many of Perses 3644
Gorred & gais¹ þurȝe · & grysely woundid.
Oure mody kyng of Messedone · þe myschefe be-haldis,
Seis þaim faile so ethfully · & felly was greued.
- Alexander comes
to the rescue. Apoñ þe bald bucifeloñ · brant vp he sittis, 3648
Springis out a spere · sperid aȝ þe platis.
þe brest of þe bataiȝ · he baldly a-prochid,
Girdis doun of þe grettis · & þe gree wynnys.
- with his Greeks. His awen men of Messedone · maynly þai feȝt, 3652
So did his gomes out [of] grece · & gate a grete name.
Sone discendifd þare doun · þe duȝiest of ynde,
And Porrus prekis fra þe place · & þe playn voidis,
- Porus takes to
flight. His ledis at left ware o lyue · lendis him eftire. 3656
And Alexander in þat angle · aȝ þe niȝt logis,
Offirs all his old gods · his honour þam thankis,
As wele þe ynde as his² aweñ · he graue þaim aȝ.

Sextus Decimus [passus] Alexandri.

(81) [Fol. 63.] Alexander takes
the chief city of
India.

- þe secund³ day with a saute · a cite he takis, 3660
þe proddest ane at Porrus · possessour was⁴ euire.
He past in-to his palais · & in þe place findis
þat semed no synfull saule · þe selcuth to trowe.

¹ Read girt (struck)? cf. l. 3651. ² MS. he.
³ MS. sedū. ⁴ In the margin.

- First fand he þare of fyne gold · a foure hundreth postis, He finds 400
 With crafti coronals & clene · corouen of þe same. 3665 pillars of gold,
- Be-twene þe pelers was piȝt · with precious leuys,
 Gilden wynes with grapis · of gracious stanes. and golden vines,
 Sum were of cristaȝ clere · clustrid to-gedire ; 3668 with grapes of pearls
- Sum made ware¹ of Margarits · þe mast of þe werd ;
 Sum was smeth smaragdyns · & oþire smaȝ gemmes, and other gems.
- And new nychometis · nemellus endentid,
 þat ware as semely · queñ þai ware samen, 3672 .
 And all pargetis of plate · as pure as þe noble.
- þe Messedons in þam merkid · with þaire mekill brandis,
 And þe thinnest was a nynche thicke · quen þai ware The thinnest
 þurȝe persed ; 3675 plate of gold on
 And þo ware strenkild with stanes · as sterne o þe heuyñ,
 With charbokl[e]s oñ þe champ · & with chefe perles. the walls was an
 Smeteñ was smaragdans · in-to þe smeth werkis,
 And athill amytists als · in aungels licknes ; There were
 Of Euor & of Olifants · was ordand þe zatis, 3680 amethysts,
 With barrers of ane Ebyñ-tree · bonden with cheynes. and bars of ebony.
- þe Ebyñ, as þe buke sais · brin will neuir,
 And growis in þe Iles of ynde · as Isodry tellis.
- þe solers was of Sypirs · all of a soyte makid ; 3684 The chambers
 And Symolacres in þe sale · was sett vp-oñ trones were of cypress.
- AH of glittirand gold · as gomes it were,
 Discheualer with chaplets · of changand hewes ; There were
 And ilka tulke a tabernacle · tildid was ouire, 3688 images on
 And þat was grauen alȝ grayd · of gilden platis,
 Flamband all in filour · & fewlis en-blanchid, Also birds,
 Mekely merkid & made · of alȝ manere of kyndis ; marvellously
 And þa ware proudly depaynt · þe pennes & þe wingis, [Fol. 63 b.] painted,
 Of all colours to a-counte · as þai ere cled here ; 3693 with bills of gold,
 Of fethirhame & alȝ fare · as feetely enjoyned,
 As þai ware shapen o þe scheȝ · to schew to oure eȝeñ.
- Bet was all of brent gold · þe billis & þe chauyls, 3696
- And, queñ as Porrus coñ plese · in presens of lordis,

¹ MS. wade w ; but corrected.

which sang by
magic art.

þai made as mery melody · & musik þai sanng!
As in þe moneths of Mai · or mydsomere euyñ !
þare fand he vessale of value · to vyse out of nombre,
Also cups of gold, Gurds & Goblets · of gold althire-finest, 3701

with but few of
silver.

Coupis all of cristañ · & oþire clere gemmes ;
þai fande bot a fewe dele · forged of siluir.
þan rade he fra þa regions · & remewid his hostis ;
Alexander comes to the Caspian gates, To þe ȝatis of Caspy he come · & sett doun his tentis,
A lande, as þe buke tellis · a large & a noble, 3706
All sauand bot serpentis · & oþire sere bestis.

and writes to the
queen of the
Amazons.

To þe mode qwene of Amazoyne · þan makis him þis
pistil.

“ I, þat þe kyng am of kyngs · & kiddist of lordis,
Alexander, athil child · of Amon oure driȝtin, 3710
To Calistride þe conquirese · comfurth & ioye !

“ I suppose you
know we have
conquered Darius.

Oure weris & oure wirschips · & of oure wale notis,
How we¹ haue done ser Dary · & drepid his kniȝtis,
Couerd all his kyngdoms · & conquirid his landis,
I leue it to ȝour ladyschip · þis lange noȝt vnknaweñ.
With Porrus in þe playñ fild · proued haue my
strenthis, 3716

And oþire fele, þat ware to faynt · oure force to withstand.

Therefore pay me
tribute.”

For-þi ȝour landis, if ȝow list · to leuire fra oure handis,
Tas tite vn-to ȝour tresory · & trebute vs pays.” 3719

The queen replies:

þañ writis agayne þe wale quene · & on þis wyse spekis :
“ I, Calistride, þe conquirese · þat kepis all þis endis,
With þe mery mai[d]ons² of Amazoyne · þe miȝtist in
erthe, 3722

[Fol. 64.]

And oþire birdis eblant · þe biggist in erthe,
To þe modi kyng of Messedone · message of blisse.

“ Thou knowest
the future.

ȝoure saule sa full of sapient · sedis & floures,
þat all þe present is apert · puttis þou in mynde, 3726
And has of cases þat ere to come · a knawlage in dole.
For-þi oure soile or þou seke · vmsc þe be tymē,

¹ MS. h we.

² MS. maioſ.

- Quat tene & torfare may tide · & tent to þine endo.
 þare werraid neuir with vs na wee · þat wirschip^{All that war with us are disgraced.}
 achewid, 3730
- þat he ne was heried in hast · or had a heze schame.
 For ilka lered man of lyue · him so lethir haldis,
 If he þat for distruccioñ doun · in-to þe depe fallis.
 Bot oure werkis & of oure wonyngestede · if ȝe wald
 knawe, 3734
- I sal declare ȝow þe cas · clene by þire writtis.
 Oure inhabetting, ser, is in añ Ilee · & amed as a sercle, We live in an
 With rynand all aboute oure erd · añ endles wattre. island,
- And we ere of females at þe fewis · foure & xx Mille,^{ti}^{24,000 of us at least.}
 And twa hundredth þar-to · & all of tried ladis. 3739
- A preue planke is at a place · to pas & to entre,
 Oure bernes bildis noȝt vs by · bot ouir þe bourne
 wyndis.
- Bot ȝet be-ȝonde ilka ȝere · make we vs festis, 3742
 And thretti dais all be-dene · oure delitis hauntis.
- If any consaue þar a knaf · þan kepis him his modire
 Vij ȝere with-in oure-selfe · & sendis him his fadir.
 And be scho lyuir of a lasse · scho lengis in oure burȝe,
 And is oure thewis of oure thede · thryfandy
 enfourmed. 3747
- Quen we to feȝt with oure faes · fares out of wanes,
 A hundredth thousand I hope we be · oñ horses enarmed,
 þa leues in oure lede · oure lithis to defend. 3750
 We can raise an army of 100,000.
- Quen we repaire with þe palme · þan prayses vs oure feris.
 And, buske ȝe to oure bondsward · vs bataiȝ to ȝeld,
 ȝet sall we maynly oñ þe marche · mete ȝow in² armes. [Fol. 64 b.]
 To lithe vs aȝ if þou limpes · na louyng þou gettis,
 For þou wynnes noȝt bot wemen · þare-of na worde rysis. If you beat us,
 Bot & god graunt vs þe gree · grete glorie haue we þañ, you will win no
 For þe athelist emperoure we wañ · euen at oure wiȝt. glory;
 Be noȝt to sturten with þi sturte · to stryue vs a-gayñ, and otherwise,
 For many leres may þe limpe · slik as þou noȝt wenes!" you are disgraced."

¹ I. e. thousand.² In the margin.

Alexander laughs, Quen he hal lokid ouir þe lyne · he lazes at hire wordis,
and writes back. And to þat lady belyme¹ · þis lettre he writis. 3761

¶ “I, Alexander, þat am aire · of Amoñ him-selfe,
To þe maistres out of Amazoyne · many-fald ioyes !
Thre partys of þe proud werde · I playnly haue woñ,
Affrike & Asye · and Euroþ þat othire. 3765

“No man can
withstand us.

3it was neuire man a-poñ mold · oure miȝtis to withstand,
And fest with vs in² þe fild; · ȝow fallis þe same.

Bot be-cause we lufe ȝour comyng · we consall ȝow blyth
To pas out with ȝour paramours · & pere vs be-forne.
On Amoñ oure athill sire · an athe I ȝow make, 3770

Of vs to suffire na sare · to sauely to wende,
Bathe oure gold ȝow to gefe · & of oure gud kniȝtis,
To mary to ȝoure maidens · & make þam a-vaunced.”
Sone as þai wist of his wiþ · þai wiȝtly him sente 3774

Ten vncorsayd coltis · þe clennest of þe werd,
And as mony to amend · of milk-quyte stedis,
Of mony & of mekill quat · mayn giftis. 3777

They send him
presents.

Dame Calistride þe conqueris · comes with hire ladis,
Mas hire pes with oure prince · & pas to hire landis.

[Fol. 65.]
News comes that
Porus has raised
another army.

Alexander goes to
meet him.

¶ Decimus septimus passus Alexandri.

þen come a sande to þis sire · in þe same tyme,
þat kyng porrus þe proud · with pers out of ynde
Was in þe bonds of Batriane · & eft³ had assemblid
Anoþire ost of odmen · him eft oñ to ride. 3783
As hastely as he it herd · his ostis he flittis,
And athils harness oñ hors · a hundredth & fyfti
Was chosene⁴ to chiftans · & all of chefe⁵ dukes,
Ordand of oure emperoure · his ostis to lede. 3787

þus pas he furthe with his princes · ser Porrus to mete,
In August eftir Iuli · as þe boke tellis.

¹ Read belyue. ² In the margin. ³ MS. oft or ost.

⁴ MS. chosens. ⁵ MS. chede, altered to chefe.

AH ware þai swollen of þe swete · & sweltid oñ þe soñ ; Some of his men
die of heat.
Sum in þaire harnais for hete · was honest for euire.

þai went be waldis & be wastis · þar watirs ware nane,
And armed bud þam ah bee · for angwischis o bestis, They meet with
As colwers & for coltris · & crabbid snakis, 3794 snakes.

And opire warlažes wild · þat in þe wod duelled.

As ai stremand sternes · stared all þaire wedis,
Of gai glitirand gold · glesenyd þaire schildis.

þai droȝe furth be dissert · & drinkles þai spiȝt, 3798 They have no
Was nouthire waldis in þar walke · ne watir to fynde.

A kniȝt þat zephall was callid · fand in a cole schade
A litiȝ drysnyng of dewe · was droppid fra þe heuen,

þat it was in a holoȝe stane · & in his helme fillis,
And bringis it to oure bald kyng · to brigge with his hetis.

þan Alexander to þis athill · all þus he spekis, 3804

“ þis solayne sope if I sup · quethire sustene it may
þe membris of þe Messedones · & of þe many Persens,
Or I my-selfe soll be serued · & þai sitt with nyfils ? ”

“ Sire, ȝe soll first be refreschid ” · faythly he sayd.

“ Quat ? & ȝe perisch ? ” quod þe prince · “ & pas out o
lyue ? ” 3809

Queþir euir me list þan to lefe · with langour & sorowe ? ” [Fol. 65 b.]
And hilds it doun out of þe helme · befor his athils ah.
þañ slike a comfurth þam enclosed · for his kynd wordis,

As ah þe watir of þe werd · ware in þaire wambs hellid.

þan ferd þai furth tiȝt a fflode · & findis ah þe strandis
Full of Redis, as I rede · rugȝiere þan thornes. 3815 They come to
streams full of reeds.

His folke feȝt to it fast · & freschely þai drynke,

Bot was na¹ renke at to it rañ · at euire rase eftire.

It was so keruand & kene ! · þan was his kniȝtis stroubid

Mare for þe bale of þaire bestis · &² brist of þaim-selfe.

For with his florantis olifants · him folowed a thousand, The elephants
Of sithid chariotis & soo · & sextene hundreth, 3821 and camels lack
water.

With coȝrres³ & with clene floure · camels and mules,
And out of nounbre of nowte · at nedid to his ostis,

¹ MS. r na.

² Put for than.

³ Sic.

Thre C Mille¹ in thede · of thra meñ of armes.

All are in great distress.

Be now þai ware so neȝe tane · þat þai for nede supposid,
Sum of his aweñ vryñ · & sum oñ Ireñ lickid, 3826

þat it was sorowe any segge · þe siȝt to be-hald !

þan aires him on ser Alexander · with angwischis & payne,
Ay foloȝe furth by þe flumme · at I first tald,

And at þe aȝtand houre · I ame, of þe day, 3830

þan comes þaim to a castell · was closid in þe borne.

It was a mervalous mote · made aȝt of redis,

And foure forlange, I finde · þe flode was o brede.

A fewe within þe forslet · of folke þare a-perid, 3834

Waiteand out at wyndows · to wondire on his ostis.

They come to a castle in a river.

The men in it will not speak.

[Fol. 66.]

Sire Alexander bad his men · aske þaim of ynde,

And frayne quare þai find miȝt · any fresch watir ;

And þai þañ hent in þaire hedis · & hidd þam belyue.

And he felly with flane · flingis at þe wallis, 3839

3it for na speȝt at he spirid · spek wald þai neuire.

And þan comandis he his kniȝt[is] · kenely to swymme,

And þai aȝt bare, saue þe breke · with brandis iñ hand,

þan thringis in on a throw · thretty & seuyn. 3843

Als fast as þai þe forthing-dole · had of þe flode past,

þan girds þare vp fra þe ground · & grymly þaim woundis

Of Seeles & of see-Bules · a swyth grete nounbre,

Droȝe þam doun in-to þe depe · & drouned þam for euire.

þañ ȝede he þine with his erles² · & egirly him thristis ;

Lebards lendis þaim agaynes · leons & beres ; 3849

Dragons & dromondaris · & of þir derfe Tigirs

Fra morne to þe mirke niȝt · þaim maynly assailed.

þus raȝt he fra þis reuir · be many ruȝe waies 3852

To it was meten to þe mere · to myd-ouir-vndorne.

þan come he streke oñ a staunke · þe store me tellis,

Was neuir na hony in na hyue · vndire heuen swettir.

A foure furelange or fyue · it was of ful brede, 3856

Umby-thorned³ with a thike wod · thre mile a-boute,

Thirty-seven knights begin to swim,

but are drowned by seals.

The army is attacked by dragons and tigers.

(87)

They find a pool of sweet water.

¹ I.e. Three hundred thousand.

² MS. el erles, but corrected. ³ MS. Umby-thonred.

Was al of þe Rede ryse · as I redd first ;

And þat he cuttis doun clene · & kindils in fyris.

He gert tild vp his tentis · be þat terne syde, 3860 They pitch their tents.

þoȝt þare a longe quile to lie · & lachen his esee.

þe mone ouir þe montayns · meryly it schynes

Or he miȝt drinke any drope · & þen his dole néȝes.

þan comes þare-out creuesses · of manykins hewis, 3864

Scorpions þaim to scere · & scalid neddirs,

Scorpions and snakes appear,

And þai so large & so laith · & so lowd schrikis,

þat all þe soile of þa sidis · of þe sound ryngis.

[Fol. 66 b.]

Dragons dryfes doun o driȝt · fra þe derfe hillis, 3868

and crested dragons

With kene carefuȝt crie · and crestis on þaire hedis,

Grisely gapand & grim · with gilden brestis,

And flawmes feruent as fyre · floȝe fra þaire eȝen ;

with flaming eyes.

þai drewe toward oure douth · with dedly blastis. 3872

Sir Alexander & his ost · was arȝed vnfaire,

Alexander comforts his men.

Was þare na freke in þe fild · þat faithfully he leued

To be deuowrid & devoidid · & vencuste for euire.

þe kyng þan comfurthid his kniȝtis · all if he care þoled :

“ Mi bald baratours,” he bad · “ a-baste noȝt ȝoure hertis;

Seis ensampill at my-selfe · & seke ȝe na ferre,¹ 3878

Bot hedis haly to my hand · & harmes þar-eftire.”

A brand & a briȝt schild · bremely he hentis,

He seizes a sword and shield,

Feȝtis freschely & fast · with þa feȝt bestis,

Dasches dragons doun · geuys þaim depe woundis,

Slaes of þa serpentis · many sadd hundreth. 3883 and slays hundreds of serpents.

þan bildid of his bachelors · & braidis to þaire wapeñ ;

If þai ware mased & amayd · maynely þaim feȝt.

ȝit was þar twenti þat time · tangid to dede,

Twenty of his best knights perish.

And þat þe comliest kniȝtis · at þe kyng ledis ; 3887

Of athiȝt archars als · as þe buke tellis,

A-boute a thretty in þat thede · tharned þaire lyfes.

þus many deid of his douth · as þe boke² tellis,

And him limpis all þe loose · be þe lattire end. 3891

Now comes a company of Crabbe-fische · as calues gret, Great crabs appear.

¹ MS. ferre.

² MS. beke.

Meuand of þis marras · oure men to assaiH,
 With backis, as þe buke sais · biggir & hardere
 þan ony comon cogiH-stane · or cocatryse scales. 3895
 Queñ kniȝtis of oure conquirours · kest at þam lances,
 Was nane so wele-stelid poynt · at þam perse miȝte.
 Bot gomes with þaire greues in twa · in þe gledis spurned,
 And aH at left ware o lyue · in-to þe¹ loȝe entirs. 3899
 Be þai had fynesched þis fiȝt · was ferre in with euyñ,
 Fourre houres full farne · & þe fifte² neghes.
 And leons quyte as lylly · lent þam agayñ,
 Of bodis biggire þan bules · berand vnfaire. 3903
 Oure kniȝtis at þe first come³ · clenly þaim sloȝe,
 Alto-bretind þaim oñ bent · & broȝt þaim oñ flȝt.
 Wild berys in⁴ þe wast · fra þe wodd comes,
 With ilka tenefull tothe · as tyndis of⁵ harowis. 3907
 A cubete lenth, sais þe clause · cald was þe lest.
 þai seke out be sundres · sexti to-gedire,
 With wild meñ of þe wast · & women e-bland,
 With sex handis, & soo · sett out of kynd. 3911
 þai held in hettirly · & hurtis of his kniȝtis;
 And þai with brandis & bowis · bremely þaim woundis,
 Sloȝe of þa sauagyus · a sowme out of nombre,
 And many scopid into þe scoghe · without seath mare.
 Sire Alexander & his ost · angwisch enduris, 3916
 Was waik, as na wondre was · & wery for-foȝten.
 And þam he bedis at a braide · to beet vp þe stank,
 With-out his ost ouir all · horrible fires. 3919
 þan come a beste of a busche · with a blak heued,
 Mad & merkid as a Meere · þe mast of þe werd,
 Fere fersere þan an olifant · as we find writtenñ,
 Stayrand on to þe staunke⁶ · þe stour to asaiH. 3923
 þis breme best bare · as⁷ þe buke tellis,
 Before forne in þe fronte · thre fell tyndis,

¹ MS. to, with in and þe in the margin.² MS. fiȝte, altered to fifte. ³ Ms. cl come.⁴ In the margin. ⁵ MS. l of.⁶ Here follows to þe stank, struck out. ⁷ MS. as as.

[Fol. 67.]
 No lances could
 pierce them.

Lions next
 appear;

and then wild
 boars,

together with
 savages having
 six hands each.

Alexander lights
 fires all round the
 pool.

A black-headed
 beast appears,

[Fol. 67 b.]

Hedous horns & hoge · & hiȝt in þaire tonge	having three horns.
Adantrocay with aȝt meñ · as I am enfourmed. ¹	3927
Before scho drank of þis dam · his douth sho assaile,	
And oure kyng with his carpe · his kniȝtis he gladis.	
Aȝt & tuenti meñ of armes · onone scho delyuird,	The beast slays 28 men.
Bernes was diȝt þe deth · with dintis enoghe.	3931
þan mys out of þis marras · as any mayñ foxes ²	Then appear mice as large as foxes;
Come furth, & fedd þaim in-fere · of þe ded corses.	
Aȝt at was bitten of þa best · was at a brunt dede,	
Bot ȝit þai noyed bot a nykid · to nane þat was ermed.	
þan floȝe þar by þe firmament · of þa foule Backes,	also bats as large as doves,
Als store & as stalword · as þire sediȝ dowis	3937
With mekiȝ maȝten teeth · as it of meñ ware ;	
And at vn-armed ³ was · þai asperly wondid,	
Of sum þai nyppid fra þe nebb · þe nose be þe eȝen,	
Of sum þai ete of þaire eris · euuen by þe rotis,	3941 who bit the soldiers.
Sum þai luggid of þe lippis · þe lire fra þe chekis,	
Bot þar bitis, as þe buke sais · blemest na kniȝtis.	
þan come a flȝitir in of fowls · as fast as it dawid,	Next come birds of a red colour,
To vise on as vowtres · as vermeoñ hewid,	3945
þaire boukis & þar bathire fete · was of blak sable,	
And did bot plaid by þe pepiȝ · & fed þaim on fyschis.	but they only devour fishes.
Queñ he had voidid þis vermyñ · & vencust þat of ynde,	
Out of þis perlaous ⁴ place · he past with his ost	3949 Alexander comes to Bactria. [Fol. 68.]
In-to the boundis of Bactry · þar bildid he his tentis.	
þare reches was of redde gold · & many riche gemes ;	
And clene all þat contre · qwen þai his come wist,	
þai mett him full manerly · & mekely resayued	3953
With presentes of pirre · & many proude giftes,	
And thretti dayis in þat thede · he tholes & abidis.	
A sertane folke was in þat soile · þat Serres ere callid,	
And all þe lyndis in þat land · with leves ⁵ as wolle.	
And so þire Serres, at I said · þaim in þe Somere gedirs,	
And makis þaim wedis þar-of · to were for wintris blastis.	They meet with the Seres, whose trees have leaves bearing wool (silk).

¹ MS. in enfourmed. ² MS. faxes. ³ vn in the margin.

⁴ Sic; read peralous. ⁵ MS. levys, altered to leves.

(89) They find Porus.

þire baratours bawers · ere bremly reioyed 3960
Of þe conquest of þire cocatrices · & of þa kene bestis ;
And now he caire[s] fra þat kithe · & comes in a stounde
Quare Porrus with his powere · oñ a playñ lengis.

Sire Alexander & his ost · caires¹ þaim a-gayne² 3964
With brade³ baners & briȝt · & bragging of troumpis.
Apon þe bald bocifaloñ · before his meñ aH
He flingis out a forelange · his feris to assaile.

They attack his Indians.

þe Persens putt þaim in pres · & þe proude grekis ; 3968
þe Medis & þe Messedons · maynely þai feȝt,
þai swey doun as swiftly · þa swart men of ynde,
As euire did corne in a croft · be-fore a kene sithe.

Sir Porus challenges Alexander to single combat.

Quen sir Porrus saȝe his princes · in þe prese faile, 3972
þan aires he out be-for his ost · oñ Alexander callis :
“ It comes,” he said, “ to na kyng⁴ · ne kidd emperoure
To latt his pepill þus pas · & perisch in ydiH ;
It fallis mare faire him þe fiȝt · to fynesch him-selfe.
Forþi lat stediH aH oure stoure · & stedd þam esoundire,
þi semble o þe taa syde · & myne oñ þe tothire ; 3978
Lat vs twa termyn þe taite · be-twene vs alane.
If I be vencust in þe vaile · & voidid of my lyfe,
Lat aH my seggis & soile · be to þi-selfe ȝoldeñ ;
And if þou failis in þe fild · & I þe floure wynñ, 3982
Latt þañ þine erlis & þine erd · myne empire obeyi.”

[Fol. 68 b.]

Alexander was but a small man,

Thus porrus in his hiȝe pride · to oure kyng⁴ spekis,
For he was litiH & laghe · him laythly dispices.

only three cubits high.
Porus was at least six cubits in height.

For queñ he wañ to wax · þe wridd me recordis, 3986
Thre cubettis fra þe croune doun · his cors had a lenghte.
þe persoñ of ser Porrus · past him þat hiȝt twyse,
He feetis him forth in his force · & in his faire hiȝte.
Bot þe prowis & þe prouidens · & of þe pure thewis
þat lurkis with-in þis lede · full litiH he kenes. 3991
Now is þe partise in pes · & þai þe place dele ;
Aithire kyng⁴ with his cause · encontres oñ othire.

¹ MS. a cayres. ² MS. a gyñ gayne; corrected.

³ MS. brade brade; corrected.

Sire Porrus with a proude swerd · him oñ þe pañ strikis
 So snelle at he snatirs with · nere snaypid him for euire.
 þan kastis vp a kene erie · þe kniȝtis out of ynde, 3996
 For he was dased of þe dint · & half dede him semyd.
 Porrus, as a prince suld · persayued þar latis,
 Turnes him toward his tulkis · & titely rehetis.
 Sire Alexander him avises · & his aande takis, 4000 Alexander slays
 As bald barratour & breme · his brand vp he liftis,
 With bathe his handis in-to þe brayne · his basenet he
 cleuys, 4002
 And he fallis doun fey · & fynes in þat stound. 4002*
 þe pepill of ser Porrus · quen þai [him] pas saȝe, 4003 The Indians con-
 With al̄ manere of men · maynly þai fiȝt.
 "A ! wriches !" quod þe wale kyng · & wisely he spekis,
 "Eftir þe deth of ȝour duke · quat deynes ȝowe to stryue ? Alexander re-
 Wete ȝe wele," quod þe wee · "be werrayours laȝes,
 þat queñ þe gouernoure is gane · þañ is þe gomes wastid." proves them ;
 "Sire, it is better for to bate · & oñ þe bent faile, 4009
 þan se þis rewthe oñ ȝour¹ renkis · & reft be ȝour¹ gudis."
 "Sirs, blynes of ȝour bataile · & bowes to ȝoure landis ; but grants them
 ȝoure fermes & ȝoure fraunches · I frely ȝow grant ; their liberty for
 For ȝe haue cockid for ȝour kyng · ȝe sall no care suffire!"
 And þan callid him oñ knese · & kest doun þaire armes.
 þai come to þis conquirour · comend̄ him as driȝtin,
 þan sett he sales vp of² silke · & sacrifice makis. 4016
 Sire Porrus, as him wele feit · he proudly enteris, Porus is buried.
 And al̄ þe fey in þe fild̄ · & here a fitt ende.

Decimus octauus passus Alexandri.

þan aires he furth with his erlis · & entris añ Ile,
 Quare þir Exidraces as Ermets · inhabet in caues,
 A progenie of pore meñ · þat neuir pride hauntis,
 And ȝit þe gentill genosophis · þam in þe gest callis.
 Is þare na bost þaim ebland · ne bataills vsyd, 4023

¹ Read our.

² In the margin.

Nouthire cites in to sytt · cellis, nor na tounes, 4024

*They live in caves,
and go naked.*

Bot crepis in-to creuesse · & craggis oñ hillis,

And ay is naked [as] a nedih · as natour þain schapis.

þe kyng of þat contre · quen he þe come heres

Of þis prince & his parray · þis pistih he him sendis.

“ We, corruptible creatours · & cald as be-fore, 4029

To þe mode mañ of Messedone · aH þus-gate I write.

Sire, it is sayd to oure-selfe · with sere mens tongis,

How þou comes in-to oure kith-ward · to cumbre vs

with care, 4032

[Fol. 69 b.]

And þat Vs wondres, I-wis · for wyñ may ȝe nouthire¹

Nouthire gold ne na gude · at euer gode fourmed.²

*“ We have no
gems or jewels.*

Sen at we Ioy nouthire gemmes · ne Iuwels in cofirs,

Pelour, pirre, ne perle · ne na proude wedis, 4036

Ne sauand bot to sustene with · oure aweñ sary craftis,

Quat in þis time may ȝe take · if ȝe oure termes entre ?

If ȝe wiH seke in-to oure soile · & sett vs agayne,

Oure simpilnes & oure sobirte · forsake saH we neuire.”

Quen he had lokid ouire þe lefe · a lettre he in-dities,

þat he aproched aH with pes · & in na plite ellis.

Quen he was entrid þar erde · & sees þaim all nakid,

And woñ as it ware wildernes · in wastis & greues,

Darke in dennes vndire dounes · & in derne holis,

And bath þar bridis & þar barnes · with bestes oñ þe

fellis,³ 4046

*Alexander finds
them living
miserably in
caves,*

þan Alexander at þain askis · & all him a-wondres :

“ Haue ȝe na houses ne na hames · ne holis in to bery ?”

And þar þai schewid him in schurrys · to schellis & to

caues, 4049

Said, “ here we ilka day dueH · deuyse how ȝow likis.”

*He is sorry for
their poverty,*

Quen he þaire simpilnes sees · he sorozes in his hert,

Pleynes of þaire pouerte · & profurs þaim fuH faire,

“ Quat euire ȝe wiH in all þe werd · or I wend, askis,

*and offers them
whatever they
like to ask.*

And I sall gladly ȝow geue · with a gud wiH.” 4054

¹ Read neuir? ² MS. fourmned.

³ MS. fild fellis; corrected.

- “Sire, neuire to dee,” quod þai þaī · “bot euire dure They ask for
o lyue, immortality,
- þat we desire ȝow bedene · & þan do vs na mare.”
- “Be driȝtin, sirs, I am a duke · dedelike my-selfe, which he cannot
Forþi vnde[d]lynes to dele · I dowe be na ways.” 4058 give.
- “Now señ it worthis,” quod þa wees · “wriche, for to
die,
- Quarto hizis þou fra half to halfe · & all þis harme
wirkis?” 4060
- “Sire, be my croune,” quod þe kyng · “þe cause at I [Fol. 70.]
haue
- Is purly gods prouidens · predestayned it is before.
- þe se, wele seldom is þe see · with him-selfe turbild Alexander says,
Bot with þir walowand windis ; · my wiȝt ware to rifte, “The sea is raised
Bot a-noþir gast, & noȝt my gast · þar-of my gast lettis ;” so is my spirit
And wendis a-way with þat word · & wemles þaim leuys. stirred by a
þe secund day with vp soñ · he with his sowme neȝes,
Quare þire Imagis ere þat Arculious · had in añ Ile rerid. He finds statues
þe tane was aȝt athiȝt gold · of siluir þe tothire, 4069 set up by
Twelfe cubettis fra þe toppoun · & twa was þe brede.
He made his pepiȝt þaim to perse · to proue þaī with-in,
Quethire þai ware hologhe or hale · & hale he þaī fyndis,
Saȝe þaim thike þurȝe-out · & aithire thriȝt stoppis,
And fillis þaī florentis · a fyftene hundredȝ. 4074
- 92
þaī drafe he þine with his dukis · in a deyne entris, He comes to a
A wilson wast & wild · & wondirly colde, 4076 dark desert.
- As mirke as any mydniȝt · queñ þe mone failes,
þat vnnethes ken may a kniȝt · to se to his fere.
- Fifty days be desert · he foundis with his folke, 4079
- Tilȝ he come blesenand oñ a brym · was welland hate, He next finds a
And oñ þe ferre halfe of þe bourne · was wemen oñ hors, hot river,
þat freely faire ware of face · bot foule ware clethid.
Sum beris all of brent gold · brandis in þaire handis,
Sum bataiȝ-axes & with bowes · aȝt of briȝt siluir,
For brase is nane with þa bonds · ne no bige Ireñ;
Ne neuire na berne þaī ebland · as þe buke tellis. 4086

He cannot cross
the riyer for the
dragons.

[Fol. 70 b.]

He comes to a
dried lake.

He finds a
monstrous
animal,

which his knights
kill.

A great number of
elephants attack
them.

Alexander com-
forts his men.

[Fol. 71.]

þāñ wald his¹ pepiH & his princes · hauē past ouir þe
bourne,

And miȝt noȝt for þe morsure · & maynyng of bestis,
It was so borely & brade · & bred full of ydres, 4089

Of dragons & of othire deuyls · & doukand neddirs.

þan caires furth oure conuirour · with his kid ostis,
Lede þāñ be þe left side · of þe lande of ynde, 4092

Sone was he dreuyñ with his dukis · in-to a dryi meere,
Was full of gladen & of gale · & of grete redis.

þan snyȝes þar, out of² þat snyth hiȝ · as with a snayles
pas,

A burly best with a bake · as bedeH as a saȝe, 4096

Kene tethe as a knyfe · a cowdrife breste,

Of sembaunce as a see-bule · & sloȝe him twa kniȝtis.

Wald þar na brande in him bite · ne no bigge launce,

Bot alto-maukid hire with maces · & mellis of Ireñ.

A twenti dais ouire ten · with torfare þai ride ; 4101

To þe formast forest of ynde · oure folke³ all aprochid.

Euyñ at þe flode of Eumare · oure emperoure logis,

And at þe xj houre · I ame, as it ware, 4104

Of Olifants out of þe ways · añ endles nounbre

Come with a carefuH crie · oure kniȝtis to assaiH.

A-poñ þe bald Bucifaloñ · he bremely ascendis,

Bedis of his swiers ga swyth · & swyne with þaim take,

þai ware a-baiste all belyue · as þe buke tellis, 4109

þat durst na berne oñ þe bent · a-bide bot him-selfe.

“ Be noȝt a-baist, my bachelars ” · þe bald kyng sayd,

“ For with þe sweling of þe swyne · we salȝ þaim aȝt
voide.” 4112

And so þai did al bedene · & sum oure douth sloȝe,

Tuke out þe tuskis & þe tethe · & ternen of þe skinnes.

þat oþer dai be desert · þāñ destaned to ride,

Be þe wild ynde woddis · & wemeñ þai faund⁴ 4116

With bare hedes as a barne · & berdis to þe pappis,

¹ MS. repeats his.

² MS. if, altered to of.

³ In the margin.

(93)

(94)

And had na hattir þam to hele · bot hidis of bestis.
 His seggis sesid of þam sum · & to him-selfe broȝt,
 And he þān askid þām of ynde · & at þān enquires,
 Quat was þaire viaunce in þa vales · “ser, venysoñ,” þai
 said,

4121

They next find
bearded women,

“Slike as we haunt in þar holis · with hunting in tynes.”

þen ferd þai furth all in fere · & to fild comys,
 Euyñ to þe heued of Eumaure · as I first rekend. 4124

þare fand þai bernys & bridis · & aH bale-nakid,
 At was resild as a resch · & roghe as a¹ bere.

They find naked
people,

ȝit was þe custoñ of þar kinde · as þe clause tellis,
 Als wele to bide in þe bourne · as oñ þe brade lande.

Onone as þai oñ Alexander · & oñ his ost waites, 4129

who are amphibi-
ous.

þai flee as fast in-to flode · & to þe founce plangid.

þan ferd þai furthe be þe frithis · fiftene dais.

And sa þai willid in-to a wod · was fuH [of] wild
 bestis,

They come to a
wood of rhinoceroses.

Rynoceros, as I rede · þe romance þam callis ; 4133

And þai assembild oñ oure seggis · bot þai ware sone
 drepid.

þān sexti days with his seggis · he soȝt be disert,

Till he was woñ in-to a werd · aH of wast fildis, 4136 Next, to a vast
 Quare nouthire holtis was ne hilles · ne no hiȝe [h]eggis,
 Bot aH as planir & as playñ · as a playñ table.

plain.

Eueñ at þe elleuynthoure · or euynsange tyme, 4139

Quen he had tild vp his tentis · turbils þe welkeñ ; A great storm
 þe semblant sorowis of þe soile · & þe soñ wadis,
 þe werd wannes at a waþ · & þe wedire gloumes.

arises.

þan feH a fliȝt & a fire · betwene þe foure wyndis,
 Aquiloun & Affrike · & ewrus þe thrid, 4144 Four winds blow
 at once,

Vulturnus þe violent · þat voidis doun þe lenys, [Fol. 71 b.]

þe south & of aH sydis · sadly þai mete,

A breme blast² oñ þe bent · as þe buke tellis,

þat aH þaire tents it to-terid · & turned doun þe hallis ; which destroy
 þar pauylyoñs of pirre · þaire payntid clathis 4149 their tents.

¹ MS. inserts abr, struck through. ² MS. A breme a blast.

The army is
disheartened.

It alto-schatird, & to-sailed · þān in sondire.
 þān was kniȝtis of þe case · kenely affraid,
 And ilka segge be him-selfe · said¹ vn-to othire, 4152
 " þe writhe of þe wale god · I wate, oñ vs liȝtis,
 For oure founding ouire his forbod · so ferre to þe est."
 þan comforthis þaim þe conquirour · & carpis oñ þis
 wyse,
 Bad, " baise ȝow noȝt, my baratours · ne batis noȝt ȝour
 hertis," 4156

Alexander tells
them it is only
the equinoctial
gale.

It is na greme of oure gode · ne grefe at vs fallis,
 Bot þe entring of þe equinox · it euire elike-dele kyndils."
 Sone as þe wedire wex wele · & þe wynde pesid,
 As, be þe bale neuir so breme · it blynnes at þe last,
 þan ferd þai forth fra fild to fild · & freshly assemblis
 All at was sperpolid on þe spene · & spilt with þe blastis.
 ¶ þan fandis he furth, as I fynd · fyue & twenti days,
 Come to a velans vale · þare was a vile cheele, 4164
 Quare flaggis of þe feñ snawe · feñ fra þe heuen,
 þat was a-brade, sais þe buke · as battis ere of woñ.

(97)
They next come
to a cold valley,
where snow falls.

þan bett he many briȝt fire · & lest it blin nold,
 And made his folk with þaire feete · as flores it to trede;
 þe hete was þān a hoge helpe · & hettirly it voidis,
 And ȝit was perischist, or he past · a part of his kniȝtis.
 þān vmby-clappis þaim a cloude · & couirs añ ouire,
 As any pynaund pik · þe planetis it hidis, 4172
 And þat so thestir & so thik · a thre dais eftir,
 þai saȝe na leme of þe lyft · ne liȝt of þe soñ.

[Fol. 72.]
They light large
fires.

A thick cloud
surrounds them.

þan feñ þar fra þe firmament · as it ware feñ sparkis,
 Ropand doun o rede fire · þān any rayñ thikire; 4176
 þaire cabons & þar couertours · it kindils oñ a lowe,
 And añ þar pauillions of pall · it to poudire wastis.
 It tinds on tend lowe · trappour of stede,
 And many costious costis · consumes in-to askis, 4180
 Bages & baners · it blemyschid & swellis,
 And quare it neȝes oñ þe nakid · it noyis for euire.

Sparks of fire fall
like rain,

which burn up
trappings and
banners.

¹ In the margin.

þan knelis doun oure conquirour · & callis oñ his driȝtins, Alexander prays,
Giffe þam siluir & so · & ¹sens at þaim castis. 4184

Vnneth his ² prayer was past · quen purid aȝt þe cloudis,
And stint was all þe stikiȝ stormes · in a stand-quile. and the storm
þen rade he in aray · remowis his ostis, ceases.

To þe grete flode of Gangem · & graythid þar his tents. Alex. and Dind.,
His bernes blischis ouir þe bourne · & oñ þe banke saze p. 6.
Quare thre wees in a wraa · welk þaim allane. 4190 They come to the
Ganges.

Sire Alexander bad añ athil · aske þem of ynde,
Quase þai ware, quethin þai were · & of quat kind. Alex. and Dind.,
p. 7.

And þai him swiftly swarid · with a swete steuyñ,
“ We ere bald Bragmenys · þat neuir bale thoȝt.” Three men ap-
pear,

þan list þe lord oñ his lyfe · haue with þat ledis spoken, who say they are
Brahmans.

Miȝt he haue woñ ouir þe watir · for wounding of bestis,

As see-bule & serpentis · & soukand locerhes, 4197 [Fol. 72 b.]

Bathe eddirs & ascres · & atterand wormes.

þire Cocatricesse in creuessis · þar kindiles þai brede, The river is full
Scorpions many ³ score · scautand neddirs ; 4200 of crocodiles,
And all-way bot in angwisch ⁴ · as þe buk sais, scorpions, and
snakes, except in

And sauе þe Iolite of Iuly · þai Iowke in þa strandis. July and August.

Queñ he ³ persayued be na poynt · at he pas miȝt,

þan was he sary in þat sithe · & sadly he pleyned,

Callid to his carpentars · & of his kid wriȝtis, 4205

Bad make him boun at a braide · a barge aȝt of redis. Alexander has a
Quen it was done at his diuyse · & draȝen ouer with boat made, and
hidis,

Pared & parred at his pay · pickid & taloghid, 4208 Alex. and Dind.,
þañ bowes þarin a bachelere · to bragmeyn he wendis, p. 8.

To þe souereayñ sire of þe soile · & sesid him þis pistiȝt. sends a letter
across.

¶ “ I, þat kyng am of kyngis · & crouned of lordis,

Alexander þe aire · of Amone oure driȝtin, 4212 “ Alexander, son
of Ammon, greets king Dindimus.

And of þe quene Olimpades · þat I am of spongëñ,

To þe, ser Dindyñ, oñ þi dese · dities of Ioye.

Sen we chapid out of childhede · & cheued to eldire,

¹ Above the line.

² MS. Vnneth is his; with is underlined, and his above the line.

³ In the margin.

⁴ Read august.

Alex. and Dind., p. 9. *þat we cuthe any-gates gesse · betwyx gud & iH, 4216
 Syne was oure wiH ay with witt · to warisch oure saule,
 And kest out all vnclennes · & clene it deuoidid; ·
 For þe philisophour in his fourme · vs feetly declares,
 þat saze with-outen sapience · it seldoum aproues. 4220
 And it is wayued vs to wete · & warned now late,
 þat alI oure leuyng & oure lazes · ȝe wetirly dispice,
 And ȝour manars fra all othire mens · so mekiH ere
 deffirrid,*

[Fol. 73.]
 You differ from
 us greatly.

It cannot harm
 you to impart
 knowledge about
 yourselves.

*þat nouthire in see ne in soile · seke ȝe na helpe. 4224
 Bott deyned it ȝour doctryne · bedene vs to write,
 ȝoure customes & ȝoure conscience · & of ȝour clene
 thewis,*

Alex. and Dind., p. 10.

Take the case of
 a bright candle;
 its light is not
 lessened, though
 it lights others."

We miȝt sum connynge per cas · chach of ȝoure wordis,
 And ȝour lare of a leke · suld neuire þe les worth. 4228
 Slike similitude of science · is sett, as of kynde,
 As of a blesand brand · or of a briȝt candiH.
 For many liȝtis of a liȝt · is liȝtid othire-quile,
 And ȝit þe liȝt at þam liȝtis · is liȝtid as before." 4232
 Queñ he had waytid ouer þis wriddis · his mynd he
 remembris,

Dindimus sends
 an answer.
 "Dindimus to
 Alexander.
Alex. and Dind., p. 11.

We have dis-
 cerned your
 desire.

No king can
 dispense with
 wisdom.

And be þe same sandismañ · him send sike anothire.
 ¶ "I, ser Dindimus, a duke · þat neuire deere wroȝt,
 Blith berne on my benke · þe Bragmeyns maistir, 4236
 To þe modi kynge of Messedone · þis maundment I
 write.

Sire Alexander, þe athiH · at alI þe werd loutis,
 Sire, þe tenour of þi titiH · I trow, be na mare,
 Bot anly wisdom & witt · þou willis in þi saule. 4240
 Andbettir it is to þine a-bofe · þañ buschels of siluir,
 And mare passand of prisse · þañ all þi proude rewmes.
 Sen ȝe discretion disire · we depely ȝow pray;
 For a kyng with-outen cunmyng¹ · he can noȝt distreyne
 His subiectis, & to be² subi[e]ctis · as subiectis aȝe,
 Bot subiectis tiH his subiectis · his subiectis him makis.

¹ MS. cunmynge.

² In the margin.

þou prayes vs to þi¹ person · a pistil to² write 4247
 Of all oure lefyng⁴ & oure lazes · & oure land techis ;
 Quare-of þe proces to preue · vnpossible it were, [Fol. 73 b.]
 And if we did it to dome · it dose ȝow na gude. 4250
 For þi tent is aH on terrandry³ · & tourment of armes,
 In bost & in bobans · in bataills & stryuys,
 A craft till oure condicions · at a-cordis bot litilH ; Your customs
 For simpilnes & surquityr · a-sewis noȝt to-gedire. 4254 agree not with
 Bot leue ȝe noȝt we be to heȝe · ne hauten of wiH
 To steryn or to sturyn · or sterid to enuy ;
 A partie of oure propertes · & of oure pure thewis Alex. and Dind.,
 ȝit sall I send ȝow to say · sen ȝe me soȝt haue. 4258 p. 12.
 Yet think not I grudge telling you.

¶ Decimus Nonus passus Alexandri.

Sire, we þe Bragmeyns blode · birdis & othire, We are lowly
 A lowly lyfe in oure land · we lede, and a clene. Brahmans.
 All ydolatris in oure Ile · ere vttirly devoidid,
 & to na syñ vndire soñ · a-sent we vs neuire. 4262
 A H þat ouire mesure is to mekill · emell we declyne, We live a simple
 And nouthire couet we na corne · bot þat vs kind life.
 leues,
 þat is þe filling⁴ of fode · þat ilk flesch askis, 4265
 And þar-to suffirand oure-selfe · & sobire as a mayden.
 Hald we no hors for na harow · ne na horned stottis,
 Ne nauthire sondire we þe soile · ne na sede sawis, We plough not.
 Seke we neuire no sustinance · to saue with oure lyuys. We sow not.
 Set we na saynes in þe see · ne sese we na fischis, We fish not.
 Ne nouthire hunt we ne hauke · ne hent we na foules, We hunt not.
 Bot sike as growis oñ þe gronde · with-outen gomes [Fol. 74.]
 werke. 4272
 And þat we fede vs with in-fere · & fillis fuH oure tables,
 A dayntefull diete · þat damage vs neuire. We desire no
 dainties.

¹ In the margin. ² MS. inserts pis, struck through.

³ MS. terranrry, alt. to terrandry.

⁴ MS. filning, corr. to filling.

- Alex. and Dind.,** Haue we no cures of courte · ne na cointe¹ sewes,²
 p. 13.
 We never eat too much,
 and are always in health.
 We need no medicine.
 We die at a fixed age.
 We use no fire.
 We flee lusts.
 thou fightest against outward foes.
 [Fol. 74 b.]
- Haue we no cures of courte · ne na cointe¹ sewes,²
 Swanes ne na swete thing^t · to sweH oure wames. 4276
 All superfluyte of soule · & surfet vs wlattis,
 To pegge vs as a peny hoge · þat praysis noȝt oure laȝes.
 Forþi failis vs all infirmit[e]s · of ffeuyre & of ells,
 Ne for na febiH at we fele · na fysyke vs nedis. 4280
 Vs mistris neuire na medcyne · for malidy oñ erthe,
 Bot ay as fresche & as fere · a[s] fisch quen he plays.
 Oure lord has lemett vs elike · þe lenthe of oure days,
 For þar leues na lede in oure lande · langire þan othire.
 If he be sexti ȝere of sowme³ · þat a segge lastis, 4285
 His successoure has bot þe same · & þan þe saule ȝeldis.
 We chaufe vs at na Chymmneys · for chelis of wintir,
 Ne comes na clathis oñ oure corps · for na cald wyndis.
 We bede noȝt to blemysch oure blode · with bodely
 dissires. 4289
- Alex. and Dind.,** Perseuerance of pacience · & pes we reserue ;
 p. 14.
 We slay the foes within us ;
- þat is to say, alH þe syñ · at solp may þe saule, 4292
 As surfet, surquidry, & slawth · þe seuyñ alH bedene ;
 So þat oure werraours without · vs worthis noȝt at drede.
 For wele sonere is a cite · sesid, or a casteH, 4295
 þat segid is oñ bath sidis⁴ · [than] þat segid⁵ is with-out.
 And þou wirkis bot oñ þa witerward · & worthis þaim
 ouire,
 And suffirs so within þi flesche · þe faes of þe saule.
 And we sitt all-way so sure · be sand & be wattir,
 þat na supowet vndire soñ · seke we vs neuire, 4300
 Ne schroude to scheld with oure schap · bot þe schire
 banes,
 And with þe braunches of þe bowis · þat beris vs oure
 fodis.
- Haue we na deliteable drinke · of diuerse wynes,

¹ MS. comite ; but indistinct.² The former e in sewes is above the line.³ The me added above the line.⁴ MS. sidid, alt. to sidis. ⁵ MS. gegid, alt. to segid.

- Bot watir of a wale weſt · or of a wild bourne. 4304 We drink of a well.
 And þat sullepe sire · at sett aſt þe werde,
 In him we lely¹ beleue · & in na laȝe ellis.
 In all oure diȝans oñ daies · þat duke we comend, We praise God in all things.
 Wele wenand in anothire werd · to woñ ay o-lyue.
 And quat as pertenys to na profe · vs plese noȝt at lesteñ, Alex. and Dind.,
 Ne mekillis² mellis noȝt oure mouth · bot mesure oure p. 15.
 wordis. 4310
- Quen as we speke any spech · we speke ai þe treuth, We always speak the truth.
 And þan is still as a stane · & stirs it na ferryñ.
 Riches ne no rede gold · rose we þam nouthire, We are not covetous, nor
 Bot ay voide of enuy · & of vayne thoȝtis. 4314 envious.
 Is þar na berne vs eblande · biggir þan anothire,
 Of land ne of lor[d]schiþ · bot all elike simple.
 þe pouert of oure persoñs · for plente we hald, 4317
 þe quilke³ is part vs, aſt þe pake · be parcells euyñ.
 Is þar na brag in oure bondis · ne bering^t of armes, We forsake warfare.
 B[o]t ay perpetuall pes · piȝt iñ oure landis. 4320
 Ne nouthire Iugement ne Iayñ · ne Iustice of aire ;
 For dose na douth þar no dere · to dome to be callid.
 Ne custome in oure contre · contraris oure laȝes,
 Is þar na mercy ne methe · in oure marche vsyd ; 4324 We shew no mercy.
 And I sall quethe þe forqui · & quat is þe cause :
 þar dose na modirsoñ o-mys · na mercy to craue, None have to ask for mercy.
 For auyrice & errogaunce · & aſt we devoide, [Fol. 75.]
 And to na licherous lustes · leeue ve⁴ oure membris,
 A-vowtri ne na vayne glorie · ne na vice hauntis, 4329 Alex. and Dind.,
 Ne neuire to-pliȝt worth a perle · to-ponyscht be-fore. p. 16.
 We flee lusts.
 Fynd we na faute in na freke · þat vs emange duellis,
 For ay oñ reson & oñ riȝt · rewelle we oure-selfe. 4332
 Ne seȝes na segge of oure sede · sodanly of lyue,
 For þe aire within oure habitacle · is ai vñ-corumpid.
 Nouthire to toly ne to taunde · transmitte we na vebbis,
 To vermylionñ ne violett · ne variant littis. 4336

¹ MS. lily lely; with lily struck out. ² Read mekill.³ MS. quikke; wrongly. ⁴ Sic; for we.

Our wives wear
no finery of any
kind.

Oure paramours vs to plesē · ne pride þaim bewenes,
Nouthire ffurrers, filetts, ne frengs · ne frettis of perle.
Is þām na surcote of silke · ne serkis of raynes,
Ne kirtils of camlyñ · bot as þām kynd leues. 4340
Ne neȝe we neuire þaim oñ niȝt · to naite for na luste,

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 17.
We never use a
bath except the
dew.

Bot for to sustayne oure sede · & syñ ay to voide.
Make we na salues for na sares · ne na somir-bathis,
Bot with þe wale dewe · & with þe warme soñ. 4344
Howe durst any be so bald · to blemysche for schame
þe hand-werke of þat hiȝe gode · þat aȝt oure happe
haues ?

All are equal
amongst us.

List vs na lordschips lache · of ledis as oure-selfe,
For all oure libertes elike · ere lante vs & paysed ; 4348
And to sett him in-to seruitute · a syñ vs it thinke,
þat god has fourmed to be free · & to his face licknud.¹
Make we na vessaȝt of virre · ne of na clere siluir,
Ne store staned strenthis · ne na stithe hames, 4352
Manere mynstre, ne mote · ne marbryñ werkis,

We dwell in
caves.

Bot duells here in isolatis · in dennes & in cauys ;
Ne nouthire housing we haue · ay quils we here dueȝt,
Bot at is fetid of flesch · & of na fraunche piers ;
þat is þe carions kistis · þat couers þe saule, 4357

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 18.
We do not go to
sea.

A full faynt forcelett · & of feñ makid.
We ere na sailors on þe see · to sell ne to byi ;
Ne rede we neuire na retorik · ne rial to speke ;
Bot certis in aȝt simpilnes · sett we oure wordis, 4361
þat latis neuire lesing · in oure lippis spring².

We do not culti-
vate learning.

Ne foloȝe we na ficesyens · ne philisophour scolis,
As sophistri & slik thing · to sott with þe pepiȝt.
It is bot wiles & wrenkis · at þai with dele, 4365
And aȝt þare fete & þar fare · in ² falshede it endis.

We dislike play.

We only read
romances.

Lufe we no laike in oure lede · ne laȝand mirthis,
Bot queñ vs pleses to play · we passe & we rede 4368
Of þe actis of oure auncestours · & of þar athill thewis ;
And queñ we gamen suld & glade · we grete & we pleyñ.

¹ Or licknid ; with misformed n. ² Written above the line.

And othire sertis wee see¹ · þat solace oure hertiſ ;
 First, þe faire firmament · ficheſ ful of sterres, 4372 **Alex. and Dind.,**
 þe rede soñ, queñ he ryſes · & rynnys in his ſerclē,
 þat al þe land with hiſ leme · lewiſ & clerel· ;
 þe playne purperyñ ſee · ful of prode fiſchis, 4375
 For tide ne for tempeſt · it touchis noȝt oure kythis,
 Ne neuire ſondres oure ſoile · bot ſeſis at þe brinkis.

p. 19.
We obſerve the
ſun, and the
purple ſea, which
iſ not ſubject to
ſtorms.

¶ Vicesimus paſſus Alexandri.

A nothire mirthe iſ in May · þat vs maste ioyes,
 þe faire floryſcht filds · of floures & of herbyſ,
 Quare-of þe breth as of bawme · blauiſ in oure nooſe,
 þat ilk ſenſitife ſaule · maſt ſouorly delyte, 4381
 As in þe woddis for to walke · vndire wale ſchawis,
 Queñ all iſ lokiñ ouire with leuys · as it ware littiſ **We love the
woods,** [Fol. 76.]
 heuen.

þañ haue we liking^t to lith · þe late of þe foules, **and the ſongs of
birds.**
 þe swozing of þe ſwift wynde · & of þe ſwete wellis.
 þe kind of þire cuſtoms · we kepe euire-mare, 4386 **Alex. and Dind.,**
 þe quilk, I hope, ſer, þe to hald · vnhalesom it ware.
 If þou wiſt chalang^t þaim be chaunce · cheſe iſ þe likis,
 For here iſ written al þi wiſt · & we na writh ſerue.
 As þe tenour of ȝour titiſ iſ · oure techis haue we **These are our
cuſtoms.**

ſchawid, 4390
 Oure dedis & of oure diſciplyne · a dele of þaim aythir;
 And of þi lare a litif-quat · likis me to write,²
 For þe ſothe of oure ſolitude · wiſt ſerue þe ſtille aftir.
 Sire, ȝe haue laȝt now on late · withiñ a lite ȝeres 4394
 AH Europ & Asie · & Auffrik þe mare ;
 þat ſeizing^t burde ſufficient · þofe ſoȝt ȝe na ferre.
 Bot ay mekiſ wald haue mare · as many man ſpellis ;
 þe ſoñ, for ſake of ȝour ſyñ · ſeſys hiſ liȝt, 4398 **Thou preventest
the ſun from
ſhining.**
 Be-cause of ȝoure couatise · to clym to hiſ bounds.

¹ Written above the line.

² MS. lere write; with lere ſtrucken out.

And ȝe with wodnes of weris · aþ þe werde fretis,
And ȝit for-feȝtis ȝoure face · all fasting it semes. 4401

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 21.
Ye sacrifice your
children.

A-nothire laȝe is in ȝoure lande · at oure lord hatis,
As, slaa ȝoure soñnes in sacrifice · & othire synnys many,
To sawe emang þir simpil meñ · sedis of debate, 4404
And make a terant of a tulke · þat neuire tene thoȝt.

Ye cannot have
enough.

þe soile ne þe foure sees · suffice ȝowe nouthire,
Bot if ȝe miȝt keñ þe costis · of þe clere heuen. 4407

Your gods used to
work all evil.

ȝoure giltis growis of ȝour gods · or god geue þam sorowe,
For many modirsoñ þai marre · miȝt ellis haue bene safe.
A-vise ȝow now be Venus · quat vertous him foloȝes,
þe Iusule of Iupitir · & of his Iapis als, 4411

[Fol. 76 b.]

Dame Proserpyne, a prophetese · of ȝoure praysid laȝes ;
Latis þis be witnes of¹ my wordis · & waitis now þar
tetchis.

Venus was a-vowtrere · & many vice hauntid,
And Iupitir a Iettoure · þat Iapid many ladis²; 4415

Jupiter was
lecherous.
So was Proser-
pine.

Dame proserpine in preue place · playd as hire likid.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 22.

Loo, sary sottis slike a sowme · of synnars ȝe lufe !

ȝe lett meñ of þar libertes · at þam oure lord grauntid,
Thryngis þam in-to thraldom · & of thaire þede spoiles.

Ye are all unjust.

Vn-iust is ȝour Iugementis · so is ȝoure Iugis aþ; 4420
þe dedis of ȝour domesmen · ȝe for dere halde.

Is þare na renke in ȝoure rewme · þat othire rewitt kepis,
Bot “ þus me þinke ” & “ so me þinke ” · & threpis it is
lawe !

þus fra þe rote of riȝtwisnes · rauyst ere ȝe clene, 4424
And to þe way of wickidnes · be warlazes gidid.

Ye esteem
flatterers.

ȝe hald na wee of þe werd · of witt worthe a myte,
Bot he cañ practise & paynt · & polisch his wordis.

For all ȝoure wisdom, I-wis · is³ wrokeñ to ȝour tongis,
And aþ þe sauour of ȝoure sauls · is sattild in ȝour
mouthis. 4429

ȝoure grete garisons of gold · vngastly ȝe spende

¹ In the margin. ² MS. dadis ladis ; with dadis struck out.

³ In the margin.

In bigging^a of burgis · & bilding of toures ;
 And quen ȝe sitt in ȝoure sale · with syris & dukis,
 þan haue ȝee seggis ȝow to serue · sowmes enogh.
 ȝan as a Mare at a moghe · ȝoure mawis ȝe fih, 4434
 With bakin mete & with briddis · bolnes ȝoure paunches,
 Stuffis so ȝour stomake · with stullis & of wynes,
 þat vnethis haldis, be ȝe hoo · þe hide of ȝow hale !
 Quat dewis ȝow þan þire diatis · & aH þis dere fode,
 ȝoure sowping in vnsesoñ · ȝoure surfete of drinkis,
 Bot settis ȝow in-to sekenes · of sere-lepy kyndis, 4440 [Fol. 77.]
 And gers ȝow die or ȝoure day · many dreȝe wyntir ?
 þan ȝe couett & craue · castels & rewmes,
 And thristis eftir aH thingis · at in ȝoure thoȝt rynnes,
 Iaspres, Iuwels, & gemmes · & Lettand perle : 4444
 And all sall leue ȝow at þe laste · & in-to laire worth !
 And maydese ȝit, for aH your molle · þat modire ws¹ cried,
 þat fourmed þe flode & þe flynt · & þe faire lyndis.
 And, as I brefe it in þis buH · þe bragmeyns takens
 Surmontis aH ȝour sapientis · & oure assemy thewis.²
 And oþir werkis of wast · is wroȝt in ȝoure landis, 4450 Alex. and Dind.,
 As, graffis garnyscht of gold · & gilten tombis,
 Thurghis to thrawyn in · quen ȝe þraa worthe,
 We surpass you
 in all things.
 p. 23.
 Ye build fine
 tombs.
 Sum of siluir, sum of sipirs · sum of sere gemmes.
 þus make ȝe vessels in vayne · to ȝoure foule corses,
 To croñ in ȝoure cariouns · þat kind ȝow defendis,
 þat ilk slymand slugh · quen ȝe ere slide hyne, 4456
 And wiH noȝt suffire þe erth · to haue at him fallis.
 For iolite of Iupiter · ȝe ioyeñ vp templis,
 With Imagis of ȝoure ydolatry · aH within payntid ;
 Symolacris vp sett · of Seropis & othir, 4460
 And slees in-to þe sacrificis · many sere bestis.
 Quen ȝe haue tildid vp-oñ [top] · ȝour trouthles gods,
 Sum of gold, sum of glas · sum of gray marbiH,
 Sum of latoun & of lede · & sum of liȝt siluir, 4464
 And sum ere tiffid aH of tree · & sum of tyñ pured,

¹ Read ȝow. ² MS. twethewis, alt. to thewis.

and worship your
graven gods. þan fall ȝe flatt oñ þe fold · with fees þaim adoures,
Bath Amon & Appolyne · & asskis at þam welthys ;
Of any gud at ȝe geet · a gift ye þam offirre, 4468

[Fol. 77 b.] A quantite of all quat · of quike & of ellis ;
ȝe latt as þai miȝt all leth · at ony lede wald,
And þai may send ȝow bot vnsele · & noȝt oþir godis.
þus ȝe comende þaim on knees · as cocards suld, 4472
þat nouthire siȝt has ne saule · bot of segge werke ;

God hears not
men because of
sacrifices. ȝe haue na sauour, I suppose · how þat þe kyng of heuen
He has na hert vs to here · ne no hathiȝ ellis 4475
For calves ne for kidis blode · ne for na crispe wethris,
Bot an[1]y for oure orisons · & for na noþire giftis.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 24. God seȝis oure saȝes for his soñ · at in him-selfe duellis ;
For sekire god is þe soñ · þat all oure sede loues. 4479

We are like unto
God through
His Son.
All are sustained
by Him. And sothly, by þe same soñ · we ere him all like,
And alȝ he sustayned of þat soñ · þat any saule wildis.
Forþi vnhappy we ȝow hald · þat in ȝoure hertis leues
ȝoure kind with slike a conquirour · to comen or to euen.
And othire harlotry ȝe¹ hant · þat heris þe goste, 4484
Of fornicacion & filth · & many foule synnes,
Maumentry, & manslatir · mosardry & pride,
þat dose ȝow dompe to þe deviȝ · quen he² ere dede
hethen.

After death ye
will go to hell. And we³ þe contrari clene · kepis alȝ oure lyue, 4488
þat we may bowe to þat blis · þat neuir saȝt haue ende.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 25. ȝe gronde ȝow noȝt⁴ on⁵ a god · þat alȝ of glett fourmed,
þat note newid alȝ of noȝt · þat neuire sall haue ende,
Bot oþire many do ȝe menske · ere him na⁶ mare sibbe
þan was þe flesch of þe fysch⁷ · to þe faire me[m]bree.
Ilk lede þat liȝt is of ȝour lede · ȝe call þe litif werde,
And gesse wele as many gods · as growis in him membris;
Ilk a parcele of his persoñ a-propried · is a-pert driȝtin,
And euire-ilk lym, it awne lust eftir · as him list craues !

¹ MS. inserts to hald, struck through. ² Read ȝe.

³ MS. ȝe, but underlined, and corrected to we in the margin.

⁴ MS. repeats noȝt ; but the second noȝt is underlined.

⁵ MS. ai (?) ⁶ MS. no, alt. to na. ⁷ MS. fesch, alt. to fysch.

Ye have as many
false gods as
a body has limbs.

- For marcure was manslaȝt · a mammlere of wordis,
ȝe graith him to be gouenoure · & god of þe tonge.
And Arcules has aythire arme · in his awen warde,
For þe xij wondirfull werkis · he wroȝt with his handis.
Mars for his maisterris · & for his many weris, 4502
Him brefe ȝe for his¹ baratris · þe breste to defend.
Dame Iuno was a iettir · & ioyned ful of iree,
For-þi scho hedis to þe hert · & has it to ȝeme.
Bary² he was brayne-wode · for bebbing of wynes, 4506
For-þi [þe] swire & þe swallow · þat swiere he kepis.
Cupido has þe custodi · & cure of þe mawe,
For he³ was couatus & cursid · vnclene of him-selfe.
Serenon is sustenour · & sire of þe wambe, 4510
For hem was quartirs of qwete · vñqwlle out of nombre.
Dame venus þe a-v[er]ous⁴ · for vices opon niȝtis,
Is possessour & principale · of al þe preue menbris.
þus ilk canteȝ of ȝoure cors · ȝe caȝ þam driȝtins, 4514 Alex. and Dind.,
Deu[i]dis it in-to duesses · & oþire deuels many.
Of ilk gobet of þat glett · ȝe a god make,
And leues noȝt as mekill as a lyȝt · ȝour liches oñ to
stand.
ȝe haue na hoping⁵ in þat hathill · at oñ hiȝe sittis, 4518 Ye believe not in
How he ȝoure nase & ȝoure nebb · & al of noȝt cried,
Bot þinkis on þir othir thefis · & þam as thraȝ seruys,
And sacrifice to ilk a segge · a sere-lepy gifte.
To Mars in his mynstir · at maynteines þe weris, 4522 To Mars, ye offer
ȝe bringe him a wild bare · for his wale dedis.
þe carcas of a fatt kid · þat carayne is worthe,
þat bring⁶ ȝe to ser bacus · to bere vp his drinke. to Bacchus, a kid;
And Iupiter þat Ioglour · sum Iape bos haue⁵; 4526
A bullok or a fell bule · is broȝt to his temple.
And Iuno þe Lentilȝ · for ioy of his pride,
ȝe presand hire a pakoke · with pennes of aȝ Aungeȝ.

Mercury is god of
the tongue;

[Fol. 78.]
Hercules presides
over the arms;

Juno, over the
heart;
Alex. and Dind.,
p. 26.

Bacchus, over
the throat;

Cupid, over the
stomach;

Ceres, over the
womb.

¹ MS. ȝour his; with ȝour marked for erasure.

² Read Bacy, *i. e.* Bacchus; see l. 4525. ³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. a vious. ⁵ MS. hs haue, with hs struck out.

to Juno, a
peacock;

Minerua¹ was a maistres · of many kingis werkis, 4530
 A ratland niȝt ravyn · is him to rent ȝoldeñ.

[Fol. 78 b.] To Venus þe vowtriere · may noȝt ells a-vaile,
 Bot ilk moneth to mede · &² mi[1]ke-quite douse.

to Apollo, a white swan; Appollo with a quite swan · is paid him to tende ; 4534
 A manere of³ corne to mercure · þat we þi muld cañ.

to Ceres, bran. And Serenon is sone serued · þat sees to þe paunche ;
 Haue he a boll fuȝt of brañ · bedis he na mare.

Alex. and Dind., p. 28. And Ercules as emperoure · emyddis aȝt he⁴ stand/s⁵ ;
 And for he preuyd ay þe prise · iñ prowis of armes,
 He has a hatt oñ his hede · hiȝtild o floures, 4540
 Of palme & of peruyk · & othire proud blossoms.

The temple of Cupid is strewn with roses. þe kirke of cupido · is clenly a-rayed,
 þe stallis & iñ all stedis · strowid with Rose. 4543
 Lo, to so many mayned gods · ȝour menbris ȝe dele,
 And will noȝt knaw ȝour creatour · at ȝow of clay
 fourmed.

For your wor-
ship, ye shall be
punished. þire deme ȝe for ȝour driȝtins · þat drepis þe saule ;
 For þai may sende ȝow na sele · bot sla ȝow within.

Alex. and Dind., p. 29. As many of þat feleschip · as ȝe trow & adoures, 4548
 As many turmentis & tene · ȝow tidis in heȝt.

Whether they
hear you or not, A-vise ȝow now quat velany · & vices þai ȝow teche :
 Ane leris ȝow to be licherus · & leris ȝow to syñ ;

ye suffer. Ane, to be grindand gluttis · & glorand dronkin ; 4552
 And ane, to bragg & to bost · & bate with þe pepiȝ.

If ȝe be herd of ȝour happ⁶ · vn-happe þai ȝow keñ ;
 Forþi bot harlotry or harme · is at ȝe here craue ;

3our doctours ere ȝoure duesses · þaire ditis alegis, And if ȝe hede to ȝour hestis · ȝour hert is a-meued,
 So queþir þai here or els-quat · it hurtis ay þe saule.

How þat þai hampire in ȝour here · with many hard
payñ. 4559

þai cause aȝt vnkindnes · & corporal lustis,

¹ MS. Minuera. ² Read a. ³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. y he ; with y struck out. ⁵ MS. stondis, alt. to standis.

⁶ happ marked for erasure.

As surquity & sacrilag^t · & othire sere tecches ;
 Constrene ȝow in-to cauatise · to clame all þe werd,
 To rayme & to robry · to rayme meñ þaire godis, 4563
 Wailaway to wriches · & wa is ȝow in erthe ;
 Herefore ȝe hingē moñ in hell · queñ ȝe ere hethen
 passed ! "

[Fol. 79.]

Ye shall dwell
in torment.

þan was þe kyng of his carpe · crabbid vnfaire,
 For he was spetous of speche · & spised his driȝtins ;
 Queñ he had lokid on þe lyne · he lappid it to-gedire,¹
 And notid to him a-nothire new · þat now next fologhes.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 30.Alex. and Dind.,
p. 31.

Vicesimus primus passus Alexandri.

" **P**e kynge crouned^t of kyngis · o lordis all othire,
 Ser Alexander þe athelest · of Amoñs childire,
 And of þe quene Olimpades · þat I was of geteñ, 4572
 To þe best of bragmeyns · blissing & hele² !
 Sire, be þis sothe at ȝe say · of all seggis oute
 ȝe may be sett be ȝow-selfe · for syn doo ȝe neuire !
 Bot sothely slike a simpilnes · as me my saule demys,
 It comes bot of acoustoumes · & of na clene thewes.
 And owþir ȝe gesse at ȝe be gods · for ȝoure gud werkis,
 Or deynes with oure driȝtins · for³ þat we þam dere hald.
 ȝe say ȝe sawe neuire soile · ne na citis biggis ; 4580 Alex. and Dind.,
 How suld ȝe telle withouteñ toles · or any tild rere ? p. 32.
 Is þer noñ Instrumentis of Ireñ · in all þat Ile founden, Ye have no iron.
 Ne nakiñ metañ of to make · messelyne ne othire.
 For-quy as bestis on þe bent · ȝe growe on þe greuys,
 Refete ȝow with refuse · of rotis & of herbys ; 4585
 þe same wyse dose a wolfe · þat wantis of his pray ;
 Quen he has faute of his flesch · he fallis to þe soile ! A hungry wolf
 Lo, if me list in-to ȝoure land · with all my ledis entre,
 Quat wisdom at ȝour wrichidnes · or witt miȝt I lere ?
 þe, lede, is litiȝ to loue · þat leuys ay in sorowe, 4590
 Bot mekill mare he is menskid · þat in a mene duellis.

¹ MS. to godire. ² MS. helee. ³ MS. inserts we, underlined.

[Fol. 79 b.] Ware þai so wyse þat has waes · qua ware so¹ wide
prayed

As þa þat lepros ere & lame · þat neuire of leth knewe ?
Alex. and Dind., If I ȝoure parties aproche · & piȝt vp my tentis, 4594
p. 33.

If I it miȝt, as I ne may · for missyng of schipis,
þare suld my folk for defaute · be famyscht for euire,
And worthe in a wale quile · to wricchis as ȝour-selfe !

Your wives use no gay apparel, ȝe say ȝour womeñ has na wedis · þe werd with to plese,
Garlands ne no gay gere · to glyffe² iñ ȝour eȝen, 4599
Silke of Sipris, ne say · ne saffrond kellis ;

For-quy þare is nane to gete · now neuyñ I þe cause !
and no man committs adultery. Adultery oñ all wise als ȝe deuoyde,
Echchewis³ ay þat caffare · as castite wald ; 4603
If ȝe na wiȝt haue to þat werk · it wondres me littiȝt ;
How suld ȝe nayte euir þat note · þat neȝes neuir þe
fode ?

Ye are chaste perforce. Slik lust is lang oñ þe leuir · & likand spices,
Mast cherischid & enchesoñ · of chasteand metis ; 4607
And ȝe⁴ bot fede ȝow with frute · at flays noȝt ȝoure
hongir,

Alex. and Dind., For-þi neuire ailes ȝow þat apetite · þir artis with to
p. 34. dele.

Ye never study; Is þar na lare iñ ȝoure land · labour of scolis,
Fesike, ne no philosofy · ne no fourme ellis, 4611
Piromancie, ne poisei · ne practyse of lawe,

and never shew mercy.
Ye are as beasts. Ne neuire na mercy ȝow emeȝt · as mynes me ȝour pistiȝt ;
Aȝ þis condicions I call · bot comoñ of bestis,
þat has no sent in þaire saule · ne sauour in na gude.

After bale comes bliss. Bot we þat fourmed is & fast · & has a fre wiȝt 4616
Differris as iñ oure fraunches · fere fra ȝoure kynde.
It ware no possible poynt · to paise iñ my witt,
þat all miȝt ay be eftir ane · with-outen any chaunge.
For eftir baret or bale · blis vs aperis 4620
And eftir wele comys wa · for so þe werd askis.

¹ MS. inserts wyse h, underlined. ² A curl over the g.
³ MS. Ethchewis. ⁴ In the margin.

Ouir¹ wild is many ways wraiste · as þe wedire skiftis ; **Alex. and Dind.,**
For a clere cloudles day · mas a clene mynde ; **p. 35.**

Quen it is² briȝt all a-bowte · it blithis oure hertis. 4624 **[Fol. 80.]** **In fair weather,**
men are merry.

And be þar gold in oure gate · or any gud stanes,
We do bot foules it with oure fete · vs fayns it na more,
And quen it walows · & wannes aȝt oure thestres,

ȝet ere we toghid to & fra · be turnyng of eldris. 4628

For quilk a frek is bot a faȝt · þan is he first simple,
And quen he preues fra þat prike · þaȝt is he proud-lokid,
Metis oñ þe mediȝt merke · & þare his mynd stablis.

Mekill variaunce of vertus · enveronis oure saules, 4632

For we ere fetid fuȝt faire · & has oure fyue wittis.

Ane, oure siȝt with to see · & sauour at þe nasee,
And ane to tast & to touche · & þen oure twa eris.

Of all þe frutis oñ þe foldȝ · we fange at oure wiȝt, 4636

Bath venysoñ & volatile · & variand fisches.

If ȝe refreyne ȝow þar-fra · it falis bot of pride

Or ellis ȝow writhis with ȝour wele · for ȝe na welth
haue ! 4639

Be many opynion I prefē · þat pure is ȝoure tecches,
Mare fonden opon folȝy · þan fiechid oñ resoñ."

Sone as þe kyng of þe kith · þe clause had devysid,
He settis him doun full sobirly · & sendis him anothire.

¶ "I, sir Dyndyñ þe derrest · at duells in þis Ile,
þe best of þe bragmeyns · of bounte & of thewis, 4645

To Alexander, þat aire · þat erles aȝt þe werd,
þe souerayne sire of aȝt þe soile · salus & ioye.

Sire, we erd noȝt in elementis · as euirmare to dueȝt,
Bot as qua pas a pilgrymage · fra Parysch to rome ;
To othire hames vs hiȝe · quen we ere hethen voided,
And in þe cites of syñ · þaȝt sitt we na langire. 4651

Vse we nane Epcrise · ne ire, ne no theftis,
Ne nothire gesse we vs gods · ne gryȝt at oure driȝtiñ.
For many seerties we seet · þat sysed aȝt þe werde,
And wroȝt þe will of ilk we · to wale as him likid.

**Man changes
according to his
age.**

**We use our five
wits,
sight, savour,
taste, touch, and
hearing.**

**Alex. and Dind.,
p. 36.**
We catch fish.

**Your deeds are
folly."**

"Dindimus to
Alexander, greet-
ing.

**Alex. and Dind.,
p. 37.**

**We are as pil-
grims from Paris
to Rome.**

[Fol. 80 b.]

¹ Or Oñ.

² In the margin.

Alex. and Dind., And he þat wayues ay þe werst · & wirkis þe bettir,
 p. 38.
 He who avoids
evil is God's
friend.

þat¹ gome is gods gud frend · & god neuire þe hildire.
 And þis similitude þat oure sede · þou settis my pistiȝt,
 þe same ensampiȝt, as me semes · in-to ȝoure-self touches.
 For so þe qwele of qwestounes · ȝoure qualite encreses,
 þat noþir gesse ȝe gouernour · no god bot ȝour-selfe !

Ye say we are as
gods.

þe brixtill our² benignt · oure bonerte repreues, 4662
 And beris a-poñ vs blasfeme · þat neuire bale thoȝt.
 All be we suggets in oure-selfe · & simpliciȝt oure latis,
 Voide & vacand of vices · as virgyns it ware.
 Neuir-þe-les of a laȝe · hald we vs driȝtins. 4666

But ye are so
rather,
being rich,

It is ȝoure-selfe & noȝt oure-self · þat ai þe self hantis ;
 Abundance of Auoure · ȝow all has englaymed,
 For ȝe bot fage ay þe flesche · & felsen it wele.
 ȝe bide no besynes of bedis · bot to þe body clethe,
 Els ȝe may cast ȝow to be coyn · ȝe count for na ferrir.
 With soft serkis of silke · ȝoure sidis vñ-loke, 4672
 Doubletis of damaske · & sum of dere tars,
 With ilka fingire on ȝoure fist · fillid fuȝt of ryngis,
 Schard al of shire³ gold · as it a schryne were. 4675
 Quat profetis ȝow þis paraile · & all þis proud iettis ?

Gold feeds no one.

For nouthire saues it þe saule · ne ȝour-selfe fedis.
 Bot we, þat knawis wele & ken · þe kynd of þe noble,
 Quen we ere drinkeles & dry · we draw to þe bourne ;
 And be þar gold in oure gate · or any gud stanes, 4680
 We do bot foulis it with oure fete · vs faynes it na more.

We spurn it.

Alex. and Dind., For nouthire purgis it oure pliȝt · ne priues it oure
 p. 39.
 hungir,

Gold quenches
not thirst.

Ne nouþir salues it oure sares · ne sesis it oure thirst.
 For folowid it slike a fraunchis · at it⁴ vs fede wald,
 þe cursed laike o couatis · ware clene⁵ with it drenchid,
 ȝe vise ȝow þar-of vesel · for vanyte & pride ; 4686
 As gud ware crestyns of clathe · þe caryoñ to serue.

¹ MS. þate, with e expuncted. ² MS. ȝour, altered to our.

³ MS. schre, altered to schire.

⁴ In the margin.

⁵ MS. chene.

I se na godlaik in gold · bot grefe to þe saule,
For þe fastir it fallis oñ a freke · þe fastir he couettis."

The more gold a
man has, the
more he wants."

Sire Alexander aH at ese · avisis him oñ þis pistiH, 4690

And wayues¹ to him a-noþire wrigg · at oñ þis wyse Alex. and Dind.,
spellis. p. 40.

¶ "Hiȝe kyng with-out comparisoñ · of kyngis aH oþire,
Of all lordis þe lord · þat leues vndire heuen,

Sire Alexander, þe aire · of Amon oure driȝtiñ, 4694

"Alexander, son
of Ammon,
to Dindimus.

To þe, ser Dyndyn oñ þi dese · þis dities I write.

In slike a side of þe soile · ȝour-selfe is in-closid,

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 41.

May wele na wee, if he wald · wyñ to ȝour kithis.

No strangers can
come to you.

Forþi enhabete ȝe in angwysch · at ȝoure vnthankis;

And aH ȝoure lefing & ȝoure lare² · at ȝe so loude prayse,

It comis bot of a kyndnes · & of na clene thewys. 4700

And als ȝe fonde may na forþire · to hiȝen ȝoure name,

Bot pyned þar in a parroke · inparkid as bestis,

Ye are like wretch-
ed prisoners."

þus pere to þir presoñs · þat ay in payñ lengis,

And he þat seȝis to vs sage · ȝe bot a sott caH. 4704

Be þe³ grace of my god² · miȝt I ȝour grond entre,

I suld ȝow ken to be kniȝtis · & clethe ȝow with armes." Alex. and Dind.,
p. 42.

þan piȝt oure prince in þat place · a pelare⁴ of marble,

Alexander rears a
pillar of marble.

Quare-oñ a tulke with a toile · þis titiH vp he wrate,

Sum langage oñ latine · & lettres of ynde, 4709

Sum was graithid o grew · þat þus to-gedire spekis :

"I, Philip soñ þe fell kyng · þe fondere of grece,

Sire Alexander þe athill · þ[a]t aȝe aH þe barbres

Eftir þe day & þe dethe · of Dary & of Porrus, 4713

þus fere I folozed haue my faes ;" · & here a fitt end.

[End of
Alexander and
Dindimus.]

¶ Vicesimus secundus passus Alexandri.

Now gase he fra gangañ^{Ganges} · and aH his ging¹ eftir,
Fondis forth with his folke · & a fild entris,

[Fol. 81 b.]

¹ Or waynes.

² In the margin.

³ MS. Be þe be þe; with Be altered to Bet, and the second
be þe underlined; Bot be þe is probably intended.

⁴ A curl over the e.

- They come to a wood,
Vinfaldin with a faire wod · florisch¹ out ouire 4717
Of Appils & almands · & aH manere of frutis.
All þe chiere of þe champe · was chargid with floures,
Acrea, sais oure autour · þat angilH is hatteñ.
full of giants,
3it wont meñ in þa woddis · as þe buke tellis, 4721
Of Ioynntours as Ieants · in Iopons of hidis,
who eat fruit only. And þai ware fedd all of frute · & of na fode ellis,
Of grapis & of gernets · & othire gude spices,
Of sike as growis iñ þe grewis · I tald of before. 4725
þai ware as rughe as a resche · þe bake & þe sidis ;
Quen þai persayued of oure prince · & slik a pake Armed,
þan stode þai glorand on his gome · with grisely mawis.
And he mas heraud & heres · to hant for þe nanes,
And sett vp a scharp schoute · at aH þe schaw ryngis.
And þai for skere of þe skrike · in-to þe schaw fledd,
For þai hadd herd neuire of how · ne of mans noyse ;
And sex hundredth was slane · & sesid with oure kniȝtis,
And foure and threti, as I flode² · was in þe fild drepid,
And iiij³ score oñ þis side · & seuen at was armed 4735
Was with þe churles in þe chace · choppid to deth.
þus thre daies in þat thede · thurgh-out þai lengid,
And dietis þam with damysens · & oþir dere frute.
þañ ferd he furth to a flumme · & sett þare his tentis,
And newly eftir þe none · or nere þare-aboute, 4740
þare comes a bonde of a brenke · & breed þaim vnfaire ;
An uncouth beast appears,
A burly best & a bigg⁴ · was as³ a mañ shapeñ,
Vmquile he groned as a galt · with grysely latis,
Vmquile he noys as a nowte · as a nox queñ he lawes,
þarmand & ȝerand · a ȝoteñ him semed ; 4745
with bristles like a boar,
And was as bristils as a bare · aH þe body ouire ;
Dom as a dore-nayle · & defe was he bathe,
With laith leggis & lange · & twa laue⁴ eres ;
and a head like a horse. A heuy hede & a hoge · as it a hors ware, 4749

[Fol. 82.]

The Greeks eat damsons.

104

¹ MS. florischst.² MS. flode, in the margin, substituted for fynd.³ In the margin.⁴ Or lane.

And large was his odd lome · þe lenthe of a ȝerde.
 With þat comands oure kyng · his kniȝtis him to¹ take,
 And þai a-saillid him sone · bot he na segge dredis,
 For nouthire fondis he to flee · ne na fens made, 4753
 Bot stude & stared as a stott · & stirred he na forthire.
 þan callis to him þe conquirour · a comly maydeñ,
 Bad hire be broȝt be-fore þe best · & bare to be nakid.
 And he be-held oñ þat hend · & hissis as a neddire,
 He wald haue strangild hire streȝt · ne had stiffe men
 bene ; 4758

He wald haue schowid oñ þat schene · had noȝt men He is then caught,
 halden,

And to þe prince paelioñ · prestly him lede.
 Queñ he had ferlied his fīl · oñ his foule schapp̄,
 He gers þaim bynde him at a braid · & brent him to and burnt.
 poudire. 4762

Alexander sets
before him a
naked maid.

(105) þen rade he fra þat reuir · & remowid his ost
 In-till a brade bent fild · & bildid vp his tentis.
 þare fande he lindis oñ þat lande · þe² lenthe of a spere,
 And þai ware frett ful of frute · þe fairest of þe werde.
 It ware to tere any tong to tell · of þa trees kinde, 4767
 For þai wald sett with þe soñ · & with þe soñ rise. Alexander comes
 to the trees of the
 Sun and Moon,

Fra morewane to þe mydday · merely þai springi,
 And þan discende þai doun · as þe day passis.
 Lo, þis was a wondirfull werk · bot gods aweñ wiȝt,
 þat þai suld wax soo & wane · within a wale time.
 For, fra it droȝe to þe derke · ay tiȝt it dawid eftir,
 It was bot vacant & voide · as vanite it were. 4774 [Fol. 82 b.]

þe kyng in his cabañ · with his kniȝtis he ligis,
 Tutand out of his tents · & þe trees waitis.
 A badl a berne of a bobb · bring him a nappiȝt ;
 þañ bowis furth a bachelere · his bedinge to fīl ; 4778
 And he was sodanly sesid · & slane with a sprete.
 With þat enverrouns aȝt þe vale · a voice fra þe heuen,
 Said, "qua so fangis o þis frute · bees fey in a stounde!"

which wax and
wane in a day.

A man who
attempts to pluck
an apple is slain.

¹ In the margin.

² MS. a þe, but corrected.

The birds on the
trees are defended
by flames of fire.

(106) top. 256

Alexander climbs
a huge mountain.

position 5
Pr. fol. 424
m. m. 263

Dragons, drome-
daries, snakes,
&c., appear.

Many men are
stung to death.

They next come
to a valley, very
dark.

[Fol. 83.]

They are 9 days
in darkness.

3it bred þar briddis in þa braunches · at blith was & tame,
And if a man had þaim hent · or with his hand touchid,
þan floȝe þar flawmes out of fire · before & be-hind,
And quare it liȝt oñ his like · it lichid him for euire.

Now bowis furth þis baratour · & bidis na langire,
Up at a maȝte¹ mountane · he myns with his ost,
[And viij daies be-dene · þe driȝe was, & mare, 4788
Or he miȝt couire to þe copp̄ · fra þe caue vndire.

Queñ he was comeñ to þe crest · his kniȝtis wald haue
esid ;

And namely a new note · neghis oñ handl,
Of dragons & of dromondaris · & of diuerse neddirs,
Of liones & of leopards · & othire laith bestis. 4793
þare was hurling oñ hiȝe · as it iñ heȝt ware,
Quat of² wrestling of wormes · & wonding of kniȝtis.

As gotis out of³ guttars · in golanand wedres,
So voidis doun þe vemoñ · be vermyns schaftis. 4797

At oþir time of⁴ oure tulkis · was tangid to dede,
And slayñ with þa serpents · a sowme out of noimbre.
So hard þai hampird oure heere · & herid oure erles,
Vnneth it chansid þaim þe cheke · þe cheffire to worthe.
Quen he sckonfet & skerrid · all þa skathiȝ fendis,

þen metis he doun of þe mounte · in-to a mirk vale,
A drere⁵ dale & a depe · a dyñ & a thestir. 4804

Miȝ[t] þare na saule vndire soñ · see to a-nothire ;
þai ware vmbe-thonrid⁶ in þat thede · with slike a thike
cloude,

þat þai miȝt fele it with þaire fiste · as flabband webbis ;
With all þe bothom fuȝt of bournes · briȝt as þe siluire,
And bery-bobis oñ þe braes · brethand as mirre. 4809

þus drafte þai furth in derknes · a neȝen daies euen,
So langt þaim lackis at þe last · þe liȝt of þe soñ.

þañ come þai blesnand tiȝt a barme · of a brent lawe,⁷

¹ Written maȝtene; see l. 4883.

² MS. ost.

³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. of of.

⁵ MS. driȝe.

⁶ Or vmbe-thourid.

⁷ MS. lawe, substituted for schawe.

Neȝe throtild with þe thik aire · & thrange in þare andes.
 þai labourde¹ vp a-gayn þe lift · an̄ elleuen dais, 4814 They next climb
 & quen þai couert to þe crest · þen clerid þe welkyñ;
 þe schaftis of þe schire soñ · schirkind þe cloudis, and the sun shines
 And gods glorious gleme · glent þam e-maunge. 4817 out.
 þañ past þai doun fra þat pike · in-to a playn launde, They come to a
 Quare all þe gronde was of gols · & growen ful of Impis,
 A cubete lenth, sais þe clause · cald was þe maste,
 Quare-of þe feloure & þe frute · as fygis it sawourd.
 þare fand þai Revers,² as I rede · richest of þe werd, with excellent
 þof it ware Ioly Iurdañ · or Iacobs weſt; 4823 rivers.
 Was neuir no mede ne no milke · so mild vndire heuen,
 Ne cliffe of cristall so clere · at euire god fourmed.
 A hundreth daies & a halfe · he held be þa playnes,
 Tiſt he was comen tiſt a cliffe · at to þe cloudis semed, They come to a
 þat was so staire & so stepe · þe store me tellis, 4828 steep cliff,
 Miſt þar no wee bot with wyngis · wiñ to þe top̄.
 ȝit fand he cloueñ þurȝe þe clynt · twa crasid³ gatis, with two paths,
 Ane to þe noke of þe north · a-nothire to þe est. one north, and
 Sire Alexander him a-vises · &⁴ all him a-wondres, one east.
 And trowid it was wroȝt · of na lede werkis. 4833
 With þat stairis he forth þe stye · þat streȝt to þe est, They go eastward.
 And seueñ dais with his meñ · he soȝt be þa costis.
 And on þe aȝtent day · eftire þe prime,
 A Basilisk in a browe · breis þaim vñ-faire, 4837 They find a
 A straȝtill & a stithe worme · stinkand of elde, basilisk,
 And is so bittir & so breme · & biechid in him-selfe,
 þat with þe stinke & þe strenth · he stroyes noȝt allane,
 Bot quat he settis on his siȝt · he slaes in a stonde.
 He vemons in þe vaward · valiant kniȝtis, 4842
 Maistirs out of Messedone · of Mede & of Persee;
 þai seȝe doun sodanly · slane of þaire blonkis,
 To step̄ & to stand-dede · & in þe strete liggis. who slays many
 knights.

¹ MS. babourde.² Written in the margin, as a substitute for þiuers.³ MS. traside.⁴ In the margin.

With þat areris aH þe route · & radly þai said, 4846
 " þe writh of þe wale god¹ · vs of þe wai lettis."

Alexander finds
the basilisk asleep,

þe kyng to know of þat case · vp to þe cliffe wendis,
 Saze quare þe same serpent · slepit in a roke.

and sets a mirror
before him.

þaH mas he bonds in a braide · at sall na pepiH pas,
 In bole & in balaH · buskes he his fotes, 4851

A blasoH as a berne-dure · þat all þe body schildis,
 And ficheis in a fyne glas · oñ þe fere side.

Then the basilisk
slays himself.

þe se[h]rewe in þe schewere · his schadow be-haldis,
 And so þe slaȝtir of his siȝt · in-to him-selfe entris.

þaH cals oure kyng him his kniȝtis · & comandis him
 to bryH, 4856

And þai as sone as þai him saze · him for his sleȝt thankis.

Sone² as þis balefuH best · was broȝt out o lyfe,

þan ridis furth oure riche kyng · & remowis his ost.

And of þis way at he went · sone worthis him a nende,
 So at he flitt may na ferre · ne his folke³ nouthire. 4861

They come to
huge mountains,

þare was so hedous & so hoge · hillis þam beforH,

Clozes at was cloude · he clynterand torres,

Rochis & rogh stanes · rokkis vnfaire,

Scutis to þe scharpe schew · sckerres a hundredth. 4865

and return to the
plain.

[Fol. 84.]

þan ȝaris he him ȝapely · & a-ȝayne turnes,

And past in-to þe proud playH · I proued to ȝow first,

þat aH was brett-fuH of bowis · & blossoms so swete,

þat bawme ne braunche o aloes · bettir was neuire.

They next try the
path to the north.

Fra þens oure note⁴ men be northe · nymes þaim þe way,

And þat þaH fonde aH þe flote · fiftene dayis. 4871

And þai croke ouire crosse · to cache þaim anothire,

þat led þam to þe left hand · & þat a lange quile;

And þus þai dryfe furth þe driȝt · of daies foure score, end 4
begin 5

Till at þai come till a cliffe · as þe clause tellis, 4875

Ane egge þat was all ouire · of Adamand stanes,

With, hingand in þe rughe roches · rede gold cheynes.

They come to a
cliff covered with
diamonds.

þan was þare graythed of degreces · for gomes vp to wynde,

¹ In the margin. ² MS. Cone. ³ MS. fokke.

⁴ Here follows o, expuncted.

⁵ Perhaps þaim.

Twa thousand be tale · & fyue trew hundrethe. 4879 It has 2500 steps
And þai ware sett so in soute¹ · of safers fyne,
þat of þe noblay to neuen · it neyd any cristeñ.
þare logis þe leue kyng · late oñ añ eueñ,
Vndire þis maȝte mountayne · & oñ þe morne eftir,
þare setts he furth of sere gods · a selle nounbre, 4884 Alexander offers
þat he honours & his ost · & offirs ilk ane. to the gods.
Syne tas he with him titly · his twelue tried prince[s],
Gas him vp be degreces · to þe grete lawe, He then ascends
Trenes to þe topward · þat touched to þe cloudis, 4888 the steps.
þat he miȝt lend þar o-loft · & waite eftir wondirs.
Vp-oñ þe cop̄ of þe cliffe · a closure he fyndis, On the top is a
A palais, ane of² þe precioussest · & proudest in erth,
A bild, as þe buke sais · with twa brade ȝatis, 4892
And seuenty wyndows beside · of serelepis werkes.
þe ȝatis ware of ȝeteñ gold · ȝarkid of platis, with gates of gold;
þe windows on þe selfe wyse · as þe writ schews³; [Fol. 84 b.]
And þai ware coruen fuȝt clene · & clustrid with gemmes,
Stiȝt staffuȝt of stanes · stagis & othire. 4897
ȝit was a mynstir on þe mounte · of metall as þe nobiȝt, also a temple,
Vmbe-gildid with a gardeñ · of goldeñ vynes, and a garden of
Was chatrid fuȝt of chefe frute · of charboele stanes,
With-outen mesure emaunge · of margrite grete.⁴ 4901 golden vines.
þis hame at houes on þis hiȝt · was in þe hiȝe est,
Forthi ȝit hedirto it hat · þe hous of the soñ.
It was so precious a place · & proudly a-tired, This is the house
þare was na place it a pere · bot paradyse selfe. 4905 of the sun.

¶ Vicesimus tertius passus Alexandri.

þen aires furth ser Alexander · in-to þis athiȝt temple, Alexander enters
With Caulus & with cleopas · & othire kidd princes, the temple,
And fand a berne in a bedd · bawnard alane, and finds a man
Ane of þe graciousest gomes · þat euire god fourmed.
All lemed of his letere · þe loge as of heueñ, 4910 in a bed.

¹ Or sonte. ² In the margin. ³ Substituted for schis.
⁴ Substituted for stanes; see line above.

For it was gayly begane · with goldeñ webbis.
 A blewe bleaut o-bofe · brad him al ouire, 4912
 Was browde all with brent gold · fuſt of briȝt aungels.
 þe testre trased fuſt of trones · with trimballand wingis;
 þe silloure fuſt of Seraphens · & othire sere halows,
 With curtyns aſt of clene silke · & coddis of þe same,
 With cumly knottis & with koyntis · & knopis of perle.
 It ware to tere me to teH · þe tirement to-gedire, 4918
 Or a nany¹ clerke · þe cost to de-vise;

[Fol. 85.]

And he þat ristis in þat rowme · þe romance it tellis,
 Was ane of þe borliest bernes · þat euire body hade,
 With fell face as þe fire · & ferly faire schapeñ, 4922
 Balgh brade in þe brest · & on þe bely sklendire.
 His cheuelere as chauele² · for changing of eld,
 And as blaȝt was his berd · as any briȝt snaw.³ 4925
 Sone as oure prince with his peris · his persoñ avyses,
 He gesse him wele to be god · & of na gome kind.
 He knelis doun with his kniȝtis · on þe cald erthe,
 With haile him hailsis oñ heȝe · & oþir hend wordis.
 þe renke within þe redeH · þan raxsils his armes, 4930
 Rymed him fuſt renyschly · & rekind þir wordis:
 “Haile, Alexander!” quod þis athiȝ · “at⁴ aſt þe erth
 weldis,

The god salutes
him,and welcomes
him.Alexander is sur-
prised to find
himself known.

“Do you wish to

þou ert welcum, I-wis · & all þi wale princes.
 Sire, þou soll see with þi siȝt · slike signes, or þou passe,
 As neuire segge vndire soñ · saȝe bot þine ane. 4935
 And þou saſt here apoñ happis · or þou hethen founde,
 þat neuire hathill vndire heuen · herd bot þi-selfe.”
 “A! A! happy haly here mañ” · quod þis hathiȝ þañ,
 “How þat þou neuynes my name · & þou me neuire
 kend?” 4939
 “ȝis, sothly, ser,” saied þe segge · “þi-selfe & þi werkis,
 Or any drope of þi delume · drechet had þe erd.
 List þe noȝt loke on þe lindis · þat leuys euire mare,

¹ Sic in MS. ² Or chauele; indistinct.³ Substituted for swaw. ⁴ In the margin.

þat has þe surname of þe soñ · & of þe mone alls ;
þat is to mene, bot of þe mone · & miȝt has to speke,

hear the trees of
the Sun and Moon
tell your fate ? ”

And teH þe trewly aH þe text · quat tide saH here-eftir ? ”
“ ȝis, by my croune,” quod þe kyng · & kyndly was
ioyed,

4946

“ þis word I wald, be ȝour wiH · noȝt aH þe werd leuir ! ” “ Yes, gladly.”

“ Ser, waite at þou be wemles · for womañ touching,
þan may ȝe leuely oñ þam loke · & lesten ȝour wirdis.

[Fol. 85 b.]

For be ȝe pure of þat pliȝt · ȝe may þis place entre,
þat is þe sette of þat sire · þat sett aH þe werd.” 4951
“ Ser, I am clene of þat craft · I knew wele my-selfe,
Be þou oure gide to þe greuys · apoñ gods name.”

With þat bownes him þat berne · & fra his bed ryseS, The god rises
Cled aH in clene gold · kirtiH & mantiH,

from the bed,

A grym grisely gome · with grete gray lokis ; 4956
Al glitered þe ground · for glori of his wedis.

“ Sirs, ȝe þat will has to wend · ȝour wapens deuoidis, and bids Alex-
Nymes of ȝour nethirgloue · & nakens ȝoure leggis,
Pesan, pancere, & platis · aH to ȝoure preue clathis,
Iopoñ & iesserand · & radly me folows ! ” 4961
þe kyng at his comaundment · with his kniȝtis him
spoilis,

ander lay aside all
his arms.

Puttis of to þe selfe serke · senture & othire,
Takis with him ser telomew · añ of his princes, 4964 He, Alexander,
and two others,
set out.

And Antiet, añ athill duke · & eftir him wendis.

þai ferd furth all in fere · þir foure aH to-gedire ;
þe lede at was þar ladisman · þe lord & his kniȝtis
Went þurȝe a wale wode¹ · was wondire of to teH,
As it ware hiȝtild in þat hill · with handis of aungels.

The guide goes
through a wood,

For þare ware tacchid vp trees · þe triest of þe werd,
A hundredth fote to þe hede · þe hiȝt was & mare,

Lyke oleues out of lebany · & lores so grene, 4972 containing olives,
With sichomures² & sypresses · & sedrisse e-blande. sycamores, &c.

þar trekild doun of þa · teres of iemmes,
Boyland out of þe barke · bawme & mirre, 4975

¹ Here follows an s erased.

² MS. sichourmes.

[Fol. 86.]

They find a tree
bare of leaves,

upon which is a
strange bird.

The king wonders.

He is told it is a
phœnix.

Their guide tells
Alexander to ask
what his fate
will be.

The tree of the
Sun is like gold.

[Fol. 86 b.]

The Moon-tree is
like silver.

Of scence & of othirealue · as sechis out of wellis,
 þat rase neuire of Aromitike · sike rekils in erth.
 þai fande a ferly faire tre · quare-oñ na frute groued,
 Was voidl of aH hire verdure · & vacant of leues,
 A hundredth fote & a halfe · it had of leȝt large, 4980
 With-outen bark ouþir bast · fuH of bare pirnes.
 þar bade a brid oñ a boghe · a-bofe in þe topp,
 Was of a port of a paa · with sike a proude crest,
 With bathe þe chekis & þe chauyls · as a chykin brid,
 And all gilden¹ was hire gorg · with golden fethirs,
 All hire hames be-hind · was hewid as a purpure.
 And aH þe body & þe brest · & oñ þe bely vndire
 Was finely florisch & faire · with frekild pennys, 4988
 Of gold graynes & of goules · fuH of gray mascles.
 þan waitis oñ hire þe wale kyng · & wondire him thinke,
 Was in þe figure of hire fourme · noȝt ferlid a littiH.
 “Quat loke ȝe?” quod þe ladisman · “do lendis oñ²
 forthire, 4992

ȝone is a fereles foule · a Fenix we calle.”

þan³ bowe þa forthe aH ebland · & to þire treis comes,
 þe plants of þe proud soñ · & of þe pale mone.

“Behalds now,” quod þis hare mañ · “to þir haly bowis,
 And quat þou wiH of þaim to wete · wis in þi saghe.
 Appose þaim aH in preuate · bot make na playñ wordis,
 And þou may swythe haue a sware · at swike sall þe
 neuire.

þan may þou gesse in þi gast · it is a gude sprete 5000
 þat sends þe sike asouerance⁴ · & sees to þi thoȝtis.”

þire boles was, as þe boke sayes · borly & hiȝe,
 þe lind of þe liȝt soñ · louely clethid, 5003
 With feylour as of fine gold · þat ferly faire lemes,
 þat oþir loken ouire with leues · as it ware liȝt siluir.
 þan Alexander at þis athiH · askis a demande,
 “In quatkyn manir of lede · sall me þir treis sware?”

¹ MS. wing lidin gilden; with wing lidin struck through.

² In the margin. ³ MS. þam. ⁴ MS. asouerante.

" Sothly, ser, þe soñ-tree " · said þe segge þañ, 5008 The Sun-tree begins to speak in Indian, and ends in Greek.
 Entris in with yndoyes · & endis in greke ;
 And mast-quat ay þe mone-tree · þurze miȝt of hire
 kynde,

Quen it kithis vs any carpe · þe contrarie spekis ;
 For scho begynes aH in grew · & endis in ynde, 5012 The Moon-tree does the contrary.
 And þus be twinlepi tongis · teH þai oure wurdis."
 þan knelis doun þe¹ conquirour · vn-to þe cald erthe,
 And aithire bole eftir bole · blithly he kissis,
 And þoȝt if he suld with þe thra · of aH þe thedes wete,
 If he suld move agayñ to Messedoñ · quare his modire
 duellid. 5017 Alexander ask : if he will return home.

þañ schogs hire þe soñ-tree · & schoke hire schire leues,
 I. 6 [And with a sweȝand swoȝe · þis sware scho him ȝeldis : The Sun-tree tells him he will not.
 " Sire, þou ert lele of ilk lede · þe lorde & þe fadire ;
 Bot þi sire soile in na side · see saH þou neuire. 5021
 For þi modire nor ȝit Messedoñ · þou seȝis þaim na
 mare."

þañ list him lithe of his lyfe · & of his last ende :
 " So maideux," quod þe mone-tree · " þi meere bees na
 langir 5024 He then asks about his death. The Moon-tree tells him he will live a year and eight months.

Bot out þis anlepi ȝere · & aftir viij monethis ;
 þañ sall he duale þe with a drinke · at þou fuH dere
 traistis."

þañ makis he² mournyng & mane · & in his mynd
 thinkis, 5027

Qua suld þat trecherous trayne · of tresoñ him wirke.
 He said, " hende haly tree " · & halsid hire in armes,
 " Quat persoñ sall do me depresse · I pray þe me teH ? "
 " Sire, sothely," said þe soñ-tree · " if I² þe sothe neuened,
 Qua suld þe wite out of þe werd · & þe þi werdis dele,
 þan suld þou slaa þe same segge · & so my sawis faile ;
 And þat² may worthe be na wai · for ay my wordis
 standis." 5034 The Sun-tree refuses to tell.

þañ lokid oñ him his ladismañ · said, " lefe of þi wordis, [Fol. 87.]

¹ MS. þe k conquirour.

² In the margin.

For writhing of þir wale treeis · & willne þaim na mare.
Bot graythe þe, gome, on gods behalue · and a-gayn
turne, 5037

For ouire þe lemetis of þir lindis · may no lede founde."
Alexander weeps, þen bownes agayn þe bald kyng · baldly he wepis,
þat he so skitly suld skifte · & fra¹ his skars terme.
So did his princes, sais þe prose · for pete of him-selfe,
With ȝedire ȝoskingis & ȝerre · ȝett out to grete. 5042

and tells his com-
panions never to
say what they
have heard.
þan bedis þaim þe barotour · on bathe þaire ezen twa,
þat þai suld neuire þis note · to nane of his ost neuyn,
Quat þai beheld in þe hiȝt · & herd with þaire eres ;
And he þan styntis of his stoure · & steris his hert.
" If ȝe will gange," quod þis gide · " a-gayn to ȝoure
kniȝtis, 5047

Alexander
laments his fate.
Moves ȝow to þe nethire-ward · next I it hald."
þan passis he to þis proud place · & oure kynge leues,
And he gose doun be grece · a-gayn to his tentis.
þar logis he fra þe late niȝt · till efte þe² liȝt schewis,
With sare sighingis & sadd · for sake of his wirdis ;
Costreynes him with his contenance · to with his kniȝtis
play, 5053

(107)

Bot þat bot sprang of þe splene · þe sprite was vn-esid.
Sone as þe day-rawe³ rase · he risis vp belyue,
Riches him radly to ride · & remows his ost,
Driues on with his dukis · day eftir othire, 5057
Tiȝt he was meteñ to þe meere · quare he þe monte
entird,

He returns to the
plain, þat was þe proudl playn fild · I prouedl ȝow be-fore,
Quare all þe face of þe fildl · was of fyne goules.
and remains there
one day. þare piȝt he doun his pauylions · & with his princes
bidis, 5061

And þe driȝt of a day · he duellis in þa costis.
Betwene þa styres in a stoundl · þat strekis þurȝe þe
mountis

¹ Sic; perhaps read for. ² MS. his þe; with his struck out.
³ MS. day day rawe; but corrected.

He mas twa pylars¹ doun to pynche · all of playñ marble,
And tacchis vp of treid gold · a pelare in þe myddis,
With a prologue in þat plate · oñ aithire post writeñ.

"I, Alexander þe athiñ · eftire þe date² 5067
Of þe prince & Persye & Porrus · þire pilars en-haunsid.
Qua list þis lymit ouir-lende · lene to þe left hand,
For þe rake oñ þe riȝt hand · þat may na mañ passe."
þis titill was of twa tongis · tane out & gräuen, 5071 inscribed with 'a
Of Ebru & of yndoys · & of þire ald lettres,
Of latine & of othire lare · & leues out of grece,
Proudly prikid aȝt in prose ; · & here a pas endis.

¶ Vicesimus quartus passus Alexandri.

Now strekis he furth with his stour · & steris with
his tentis, 5075 He removes his
tents.

He leuys all þe march-gats · I neuend̄ ȝow before,
Andnymmes a-nothire oñ þe north · þe next to his kith,
þat to þe marche of Messedone · was him mast qweme.
Sone was he lent in a lande · a large & a noble,
Preciosa, þe precious · þe prose þus it callis ; *brasica* He comes to the
And clene aȝt contre · quen þai his come wist, 5081
With sike as provid in þa partis · presentis him faire,
Sum fellis of fischis · ferly to teȝt,
Was like as of leopards · & lions skynnes ;

Sum with lions oñ lyue · & lamprays sloȝis, 5085
þat sex cubettis clere · was of clene lenghe.

þar was a cite in³ þat side · asisid aȝt with gemmes, In a city in that
land
With-outen lyme or laire · a lady it kepid, 5088
A worthi wedow & a wlonk · with thre wale childire,
þat qwene Candace þe clere · was callid in þa bonds.
Now sall I sothely of hire soñs · say ȝow þe names ;
þe first wos Candoyle callid · a kniȝt althire-fairest ;
þe medilmast of þe meñ · was Marcipy hatteñ ; 5093
þe thrid Caraptus is cald · þat kepid aȝt hire landis.

¹ A curl over p. ² MS. datere. ³ MS. þ in ; with þ struck out.

Alexander writes
to Candace.

Sone as þe kyng of hire knew · a clause he hire writis,
Añ Image all of athill gold· of Amoñ hire sendis;
To mete him in þe montayns · þat mild he¹ be-sechis,
þat þai miȝt sacrif[is]e samme þar · to his sere driȝtins.
Sone as þis princes of pris · þis pistiȝ had deuysid,
þañ sendis scho to him sandis-men · with selid lettris,
With tribute & trouage · & many tried giftis, 5101
And þire þe wordis of hire write · at oñ þese wyse
spekis.

Candace sends
him presents,

and writes a
letter.

"I commend
myself to you.

Your worth is
widely known.

[Fol. 88 b.]

We do not care to
adore Apollo;

but I send you
presents,

¶ "To þe kiddest kyng · of kyngs aȝt othire, 5103
Sire Alexander þe athilest · of Amons strands,
I, Candace þe conquires · coround of Mede,
To ȝour honoure with obeyaunce · me ane I comaunde.
For it was purveid a-pert · of þe kyng of heuen,
Pre-desteyned of his prouydence · & of his pure miȝt,
þat ȝe suld pas in-to Pers · & prese it with armes. 5109
Itale, Egipt, & ynde · & aȝt þire Iles ouire,
ȝour wirschip & ȝour worthenes · [in] aȝt þe werd spongȝ,
ȝour curtassy, ȝour kniȝthede · & aȝt ȝoure clene thewis.
And þat with meñ of þe mold · noȝt melid· vs alone,
Bot driȝtins & duesses · ȝour dedis declaris. 5114
Forþi like it to ȝour lordschip · & lathis noȝt my sawis.
We at ere voide ay of vice · & vacant of syn̄,
Quat suld we moue in-to þe montts? · þat mysters bot
litiȝ, 5117

Outhire Appole to adoure · or any othire driȝtins.
Bot señ it syttis noȝt to oure simpilnes · ȝour saȝe to
with-stande,
Ne noȝir to mele ne to mote · ȝoure maieste a-gayñ,
ȝit sall I send ȝow fra my soile · a sertañ of giftis, 5121
For reuerence of ȝour rialte · & of ȝoure rosid werkis.
I drysse ȝow here a diademē · ȝoure druits to were,
þe gaiest gift vndire god · of gold & of stanes,
And to ȝow selfe of þe same · o serelepy hewis, 5125
A hundredth in a hale heere · hiȝtild with crestis,

¹ MS. ho; in the margin.

And twa hundret & teñ · be tale at þe leste,
 Of rekanthes of rede gold · railed of gemmes,
 With pellicans & pape-ioyes · polischt¹ & grauen, 5129 pelicans, and
 With cambs & with coronacles · all of clene perle, parrots, all of
 Thretti goblettis of gold · þe grattest in þe worde,
 Fyue hundredth all of euyñ elde · of Ethyops childire,
 Rynoseros,² a roghē best · with raggid tyndis. 5133 a rhinoceros,
 An aȝte to³ ȝour empire · I fra myn erd wayue,
 Berrers of ane Ebyñ-tree · & brilles a thousand⁴,
 Foure hundredth Olifants in fere · þis fardil to bere, 400 elephants,
 And thretti hundredth of my thede · þat threuen ere &
 tame. 5137

I presand ȝow, of panters · ful of proud mascles, and 400 panther-skins."

Foure hundredth fellis ȝit to fee · þat fynely ere tewid." She privily sends
 Of leopards & of lionesses · þis lady him sendis,
 A purtrayour in preuate · scho prays with þam to pas,
 And his personele proporcions · in perchemen hire bring.
 All was done as scho demed · & he⁴ hire dere thankis,
 And graithis hire giftis agayñ · þe gaiest vndire heuen.
 þe payntour presentis his aport · & shoo was proud þeñ,
 For scho had depely many day · desyrid him to see. [Fol. 89.]

108

þeñ wendis furth hire dere soñ · a litiȝ dais eftir, 5147 Candace's son, Candoil, goes from home.

þat was ser Candoile þe kene · þat was hire kidd aire,
 His wife & his womeñ · & with his wale feres,
 Out of þe cite þai soȝt · to solace þar hertis ; The king of Bebrik assaults him,

þe kyng of Bebrike þe bald · him oñ þe bent metis,
 With a company clene · of kniȝtis enarmed,
 Maynes many of his meñ · & him his make refis, 5153 and robs him or his wife,

For he þat lady had loued · many lange wintire.
 He gers a berne oñ a blonke · hire bremely to cast
 Before a bald bachelere⁵ · oñ a bigg stede ;
 Scho gaffe skirmand skrikis · at all þe skowis range,
 It miȝt a persid any hert · to here how scho wepid.

¹ MS. polischa, altered to polischt. ² MS. lynoseros.

³ MS. fra to; with fra struck out.

⁴ In the margin. ⁵ MS. bachele, altered to bachelere.

Candoil goes to
Alexander's tents,
to ask his help.

þan was ser Candoile in þat cas · kenely distourbid,¹
Aires oñ as bely[ue] · to Alexander tentis, 5160
Thoȝt he wald sewe to þat sire · & seke him of grace,
If he wald helpe with his heere · þat hend to reschowe.
Be he þe pauylioñ a-prochid · it past with-in euen,
And sone þe wacche-meñ with-out · quen þai him þare
sawe, 5164

Candoil is led to
Ptolemy, the
second in com-
mand.

þai tuke him, & to Telomew · titte þai him ledd,
þe mast praysed of þe pers · bot þe prince selfe.
“Quat dons mañ ert þou?” quod þe duke · “& quat
dos þou here, 5167

Candoil tells him
of his misfortune.

Quat is þe cause of þi come? · do kith vs þi name.”
“Sirs, Candaces soñ þe conquires · & Candoile I hiȝt ;”
And clene tald him [of his²] care · þe cause all-to-gedire.
þan triñes oñ ser Telomew · & fra his tent wyndis,
Comands ser Candoile to kepe · in a kniȝtis warde,
Cairys in-to a cabayne · quare þe kyng liggis,¹ 5173
Fand him slowmand oñ slepe · & sleely him rayses,

[Fol. 89 b.]

Ptolemy tells
Alexander.

And tellis him of þat tithandis · þe tale how itt standis,
How þar was comyñ slike a kniȝt · to craue him of help,
þe soñ of Candace þe quene · þe kepare of Mede ; 5177
And how þe Bebrik kyng · had him his wyfe refid.

Alexander tells
Ptolemy to per-
sonate him,

“þa, aire a-gayñ,” quod Alexander · “in-to þine aweñ
tent ;

and to call for
him by the name
of Antiochus,

Do oñ þi hede a dyademe · þe derrest at I haue,
A crouñ all of clene gold · & a kyngis mantis, 5181
A-sezee þe doun in my sege · as þou my-selfe ware;
Lat com a-boute þe my kniȝtis · & call ye my name,
with³ liȝt lions latis · as a lord suld;

Say þi-selfe is my-selfe · & þañ my-selfe cañ, 5185
As I ware Antioc þat athill · noñ aghe of me þou stand,
And I sall hiȝe to þi hest · as [I] þi hathiȝ ware.
Quen I com to þi call · & knele þe before,
þou sañ declare me þe cas · of Candals auntir, 5189

¹ MS. distrouubid. ² MS. tald him him care.

³ MS. w, followed by a blot and with; probably with with.

Befor his persoñ apert · ilk poynt as he touchid.

Be noȝt a-baist quen I bow · ne bede me¹ noȝt to ryse,

Bot lat þi semblance be sadd · quen þou þi saȝe ȝildis ;

And sai þaȝ, ‘Antioe, myn athiȝ’ · quen þou has aȝtald,^{and leave the rest to him.}

‘Latt se þi witt in þis werke’ · & wysely me rede.’

þaȝ² trines furth ser Telomew · & tyris him belyue ;

In emperouris apareȝ · his³ persoñ he clethis. 5196

And Alexander as belyue · in antioks name,

Alexander pretends to be Antiochus,

Quen he was⁴ callid, with a kniȝt · he coms in a stounde.

þan tellis to him ser Telomew · þe tale aȝ-to-gedire,

Be-fore ser Candale þe kene · his consaile him askis.

“ Ware⁵ it ȝour will,” quod þe wee · “ wale emperoure,^{and offers his advice.}

þan wald I fare with þis freke · his fere to reskowe,

And bid þe Bebrike · oñ bathe twa his eȝeȝ,

[Fol. 90.]

Withouten bade to þis briȝt · his brid to restore ; 5204

And say þat sire, oñ þi⁶ be-half · bot he hire sone ȝeld,

We saȝt his cite & him-selfe · synge in-to poudire !”

With þat inclynes þe kniȝt · & kyndly him loues,

Candoil is pleased.

Said, “antiok, of aȝ men · ay be þou Ioyed ; 5208

It semes þe, for þi sapience · to sit in a trone,

And to be cled as a kyng · with croune & with septir !”

þan aires him furth ser Alexander · as Antiok it ware,

Alexander, supposed to be Antiochus,

Cairis oñ with candoile · & caȝt him his leue,⁷ 5212

Soȝt furth þe same niȝt · & to þe cite wan,

Quare þe Bebrik kyng · with þe bird lengis.

goes against king Bebrik,

Sone þe wacchis oñ þe wallis · þam wiȝtly ascryes,

Qua þai ware, & of quethen · & quat was þar errande.

“It is ser Candoile,” quod þe kyng⁸ · “is comyn for and says he is come for Candoil’s wife.

his spouse ; 5217

And I am messangere made · þat mild to delyuire.

þe maistir out of Messedone · ȝow maynly enjoynes,

If ȝe ȝoure cite wiȝt saue · to sese him his brid.” 5220

þan was þe burgaige a-baiste · & brest vp þe ȝatis,

¹ ne bede me in the margin.

² MS. La þaȝ ; corrected.

³ MS. his his ; corrected.

⁴ MS. had was ; corrected.

⁵ MS. With ; altered to Ware.

⁶ In the margin.

⁷ MS. wyfe, altered to leue.

She is restored. Of þe palais of þe proud kyng · his paramour him tuke.
Sire Candoile to oure conquirour · carpis þire wordis,
And adoures him for his athiſt dede · & Antioch him calls.

Candoil asks the supposed Antiochus to go with him to Candace. “I pray þe, prince, with me pas · to my praysid modire,
þat þou may merote haue &¹ menske · & mede for þi
werkis.” 5226

[Fol. 90 b.] **þan** was oure kyng of þat carpe · kyndly reioyed,
For him had list oñ hire to loke · many lang^w wintir.
He said, “aire we to Alexander · & askis him his leue,

Alexander pretends to ask leave to go. And I saſt fayn with þe found · & felsyn þi wiſt.”
þan trines he to ser Telomew · at in² his trone sittis,
Laȝt his leue at þe lede · as he his lorde ware. 5232
þis kid he for a coyntise · & keſt ſlike a wile,
Lest he ware knawyñ for þe kyng · þe kniȝt for to
blinde.

Candoil and Alexander ascend a hideous hill. þan caires he furthe with Candoile · vp at a cliffe wyndis,
A hidous hiſt & a hiȝe · þat to þe heuen semed,
Was loken all in lange lindis · like to þe cedres, 5237
Growand full of gernetts · & gracious frutes.
þare fand þai bery-buskis · & braunches with grapis,
þat vnnethes bere miȝt a berin · a bole oñ his ſchuldire.

With hesils hild of hodere · cloud lang^w þa appills,
And aſt þe woddis ful of wolfes · & of wild apis. 5242
þai bow vp to a² banke · & þe burgh neȝes ;
And Candace þe conquires · quen scho þe cas heris,
How bathe hire barne & his brid · was broȝt hame sond,
þan was scho glad in hire gast · & gretly reioyſed.
In-to a chambre³ scho chese · & changid hire wedis ;

and attires herself richly. A Robe aſt of rede gold · & þan a riche mantis, 5248
A croune & a corecheffe · clustert with gemmes,
And [cam] doun of hire closere · with kniȝtis him to
mete.

A grete gate be degrēce · agayn þaim scho foundis ;
“Kys me, ser Candoile” · & clappis him in armes,

¹ Above the line. ² In the margin.

³ The h is above the line.

109

Candace hears they are coming,

- Said, "welcum be þou, wale soñ · & þou, my wale doȝtir ! She welcomes her son Candoil.
And I am glad of ȝoure gest · as gode geffe me ioye." 5255
- Sire Alexander hire a-vises · & aȝt his hert liȝtis, 5255
Him þoȝt hire like at a loke · his lady his modire.
Scho was so faire & so fresche · as faucon hire semed, Alexander is pleased with Candace.
Añ elfe out of añ-othire erde · or ellis añ Aungeñ.
Hire palais was fuȝt precious · þof it parades ware,
Plied ouir with pure gold · aȝt þe plate-rofes, 5260
And þat was ioyned fuȝt of gemes · & of ioly stanes, [Fol. 91.]
With breme blasenand bemes · briȝt as þe soñ.
þe kyng with dame Candace · þe castell he entres, Alexander enters a large hall,
Silis in with þat semely · in-to a somere-hall, 5264
A strenthe, was stiȝtild all of stagis · þe stithest of þe
werd,
Was nane so comly a close · vndire þe can[o]pe of heuen,
þe bild was aȝt of brent gold · þe beddis of þe same,
Piȝt fuȝt of pentests · & oþire proude stanes, 5268 full of precious stones and adorned with gems.
Of Onycles & orfrays · & orient perles,
And with þire precious piers · of paradise stremes,
Bathe þe benkis & þe bordis · bett of þe noble,
Smeten fuȝt of smaragdins · & oþir small gemmes, 5272
Of Acats & of Amatistis · & adamants fyne,
Calcidoynes & crisopaces · & oþir clere bees.
þe pilars ware of purfire · polischt & heweñ,
With gomes grouelings of gold · graythid for þe nanes, The pillars are of porphyry.
Fondand on aȝt foure · on fote & oñ handis, 5277
Buskid vndire þe baisens · to bere vp þe postis.
þare ran a reuire, as I rede · vndire þat riche hame,
Was neuir na cristañ so clere · as was þa clere strandis. A crystal river runs through the hall.
þe kyng & Candace þe quene · & Candeile hire aire,
þe same day in þe sale · was serued to-gedire. 5282
Scho sesis him on þe secunde day · [& sone] with him Next day Candace takes Alexander to her chamber.
laches,
Raȝt him by þe riȝt hand · & raikis to a chambre,
Was parraillid aȝt of plate-gold · pariet & oþire,
With stout starand stanes · þat stremed as þe soñ. 5286

Was þar na leuyand lede · ne lyfe bot þam ane.
 And þan scho laches him be-lyfe · & ledis him forthire,
 In-to a clochere with a kay · þe clennest of þe werde,
 Was sammed aH of sipris · & seder-tables. 5290

¶ Vicesimus quintus passus Alexandri.

[Fol. 91 b.]

This room turned
round by con-
cealed machinery.

It begins to move.

Candace calls him
by his true name.

Alexander turns
pale.

Candace shews
her portrait of
him.

When he sees this,
he trembles.

She tells him he

Pis selere was be sorsry · selcuthely foundid,
 Made for a mervalH · to meeue with engine ;
 Twenti tamed Olifants · turned it a-boute,
 Quirland aH oñ queles · quen þe quene entres. 5294
 Quen þai ware sett þar in sameñ · oñ silkin webbis,
 Sone begynnes it to gaa · & gretly he wondres.
 “ Ware slike a wondire in oure marche · of Messedone,”
 he said,

“ It ware a daynte to deme · for any duke oute ! ”

þañ answars him þis athiH quene · & Alexander him
callid, 5299

“ Mekill grettir it ware to ȝow of grece · & to¹ gomes
here.”

þan stemes he with þe stoute kyng · & stiggis with his
name ;

His chere out of chere hew · it changis in-to pale,
 þan has þat hende him by þe hand · & hent vp a laȝtir.
 In to A preue parlour · þai passe bathe to-gedire, 5304
 And þar in perchement depayntid · his persoñ scho
schedwid.

Said, “ se þi-selfe a sampiH · þat I þe sothe neuyn ! ”

As fast as he oñ þis figour · festid his siȝt,
AH falowis his face · & his flesche trimblis ; 5308

“ Qui fadis so þi faire hew ? ” · said þe faire lady

“ þe werreour of aH þe werd · & wastoure of ynde,
 þou þat has brettend oñ þe bent · þe barbrins folke,²
 þe pepiH out of Panty · þe Persens & þe Medis. 5312
 Loo, now, þe here withouten hiȝt · in-to my handis sesed,

¹ In the margin.

² MS. fokke.

Bot in a womans ward · for al þi wale dedis !

is in a woman's power now.

Ser, wete it wele ȝoure worthenes · þat for na wele here
Suld neuire no hathiȝ vndire heuen · [be] to hiȝe losed ;
For al þe welthe of þe werd · ware it a wee grantid,
It witis a-way at a wapp · as þe wynd turnes." 5318

þan chawfis him þat chiftane · & with him-selfe chidis,
All if he spared to spek · his sprete he rehetis.

[Fol. 92.]

As any terand for tene · he with his tethe gnaistes,
And hitterly on ilk side · his heued he declines. 5322

"Qui colkins þou, ser conquirour · & crabbis so þi saule,
Quat may þi vertu now a-vaile · & al þine vayn pride?"

"I swete," quod þe swete kyng · "þat I na swerd haue,
For I na wapeñ haue, I-wis · my writh with to venge!"

because he has no sword.

"Now, bald baratour oñ bent · if þou a brand hade,
Quat prowis miȝt þi persoñ · a-preue in þis stounde ?"

"For I vnwarly," quod þe kyng · "am to ȝoure wiȝt
taken, 5329

If he had one, he would kill her and then himself.

I suld þe slaa þare þou sittis · & þan my-selfe eftir !"

"Now, be my croun," quod þe quene · "as kniȝtly þou
swaris ;

Bot neuir-þe-lattir ȝit be liȝt · & lete of þi sorowe.

For þou has broȝt my soñ wife · of bebricans handis,
And I sall surely þe saue · vnsesid of þe berbreñs.

Candace assures him he is safe.

For ware it knaweñ of þi come · þai walld þi cors schind,
For opressing of þe gud prince · Porrus of Ynde. 5336

And Caratros my kid soñ · has couplid him to wyfe
þe doȝtir of þis dere kynge · þat þou to dethe broȝt."

With þat scho sesis þis sire · & to þe sale ledes,
Sendis eftir hire sons · & sobirly þam tretis 5340

She takes him back to her sons.

þis athiȝ of ser Alexander · as þai were al haldeñ,
At þai suld menske him & mirthe · & make him at esee.

"I knew it wele," quod Caratros · "my comly modire,
þat he my brothirs¹ brid · has out of bands leuird,

Caratros says he must kill Alexander,

& how þe kyng, be þat cause · has to þis kith sent ;

Bot my wyfe will ga wode for wa · bot I þis wee spiȝt.

or his wife will go mad.

¹ MS. brothird.

Ne ware he a messangere · & ȝit mare for ȝoure-selfe,
Sure suld him sowe for his sake · at him has sent hedire.

[Fol. 92 b.]

So salt his maistir, & I may · be my dire saule, 5349
For he þe fadire of my fere · has in þe feld drepid."

"A!" quod þis lade, "leue soñ · if we þis lede sloȝe,
Suld we vsnymme any name · oȝt bot of sorowe ?"

"ȝa, Cartros," quod Candoile · "þis kniȝt has me sauued,
And I sal¹ lede him on lyue · vn-to his lord tentis."

'Quat baitis þou me so, my brothire · with þi breme
wordis, 5355

List² ye we stryfe in þis stede · & strike aithire oþir?"

The brothers
quarrel.

"þat kepe I noȝt," quod Candoile · "ȝit for na cas
neuend,

Bot if þe langis to þat laike · lo me here redy !"

Candace tells
Alexander to
pacify them.

þan callis Candace þe kniȝt · in consaille him takis,
Sees hire sons wald him sla · & radly scho pleynes ;
'Lord Alexander, þine are · quare is þi wittis? 5361

I prai þe for þi prouidence · pesse now my childire."

He finds the
brothers fighting.

þan bows þis baratour · þire brethire to stere,

Fand caratros & candoile · at knyfes to-drawen,

Bad, "blyns, bernes of ȝoure brathe · & of ȝour breme
wordis ; 5365

ȝe fare bot with folite · quare ere ȝoure fyue wittis ?"

Alexander pacifies
Caratros,

þan carps he to ser Caratros · & kythis on þis wyse,
Ser, if þou lessen my life · na lowere þou wynnes.

For Alexander of his aweñ · has many athiȝt kniȝtis

þat ere mare sekire at a-say · þan slike seueñ houndreth.³
For if I ware fallen fey · him forced bot littiȝt. 5371

For ware I a tresour to þat tulk · trowe wele þi-selfe,

þat me so sodanly þat sire · had noȝt sent hedire,

With-outen wees me to warde · nay, wene þou þat neuir.

Bot if þe list oñ þat lede · loke with þine ezen, 5375

Sire Alexander þe athiȝt · þine aldfadire bane,

þe thare bot graunt me to geue · quat guds as I craue,

¹ In the margin. MS. Lift.

³ MS. henndreth, altered to houndreth.

saying that it is
not worth his
while to kill him.

And I saſt prestly þat prince · present in-to þi handis." [Fol. 93.]

þan ware þire brethire ful blithe · þus ware þai bath
pesed, 5379

And Candoile callis to þe king · & kindly him thankis, Candoil thanks Alexander.

" Had I ȝow ay with me here · happy ware I þan,
þan wald I wene with ȝour witt · to wast aſt my fais."

With þat scho kende him a croun · clustrid with gemmes, Candace gives him a crown covered with gems.
With Amatists & Adamands · & an athiſt mantiſt,

Sterind & stiȝt ful of stanes · sithin stelis to him cussis,

With othire preuates him plesis · bad pas oñ with hele.

Nowe aires furth oure conquirour · & candoile him gidis,

Driues furth all þe dai · till doun was þe soñ, 5388

And so þai come till a caue · was out of course hoge,

Be-twene twa hillis in a hope · & herberd all niȝt.

" Sire," quod candoile þe kene · & to þe kynge said,

" All spritis in þis spelonk · here speke þai to-gedire,

Here is þaire comoñ consaile ; " · & þis þe kyng heris,

Makis he gracis to his goddis · & þan þe grofe entres.

Quen he was doun in þe depe · he saȝe a dyȝ cloude

Full of starand sternes · and stiȝtild in þe myddest

A grete gryseley god · oñ a gay trone, 5397

þat liȝt lemand eȝen · as lanterns he had.

Oure mode kyng was so maied · myndles him semed :

" Haile, Alexander þe hende " · quod þat hiȝe driȝtin.

" Sire, qua ere ȝe ? " said oure ser · " Synches I hiȝt ;

And to my powere vndire-putt · is aſt þe playn werd.

For þi name a cite has þou sesid¹ · bot þou settis me na
temple." 5403

" Sire, if I miȝt merke to Messedone · a Maistir I þe
hiȝte ;

Saſt nane be like it in na lede ; " · " nay,² lange noȝt
þar-eftir !

þou saſt neuir loke on þat land · ga lawere & be-hald."

þañ kend him quare anothire cloude · was ful of briȝt
sternes, 5407

Candoil and Alexander come to a magic cave.

An oracle calls Alexander by name.

Alexander is told he shall never return to Macedon.

¹ MS. sesis.

² MS. nay nay.

[Fol. 93 b.]

And quare a-nothire grym god · was graythid on a sege.
 "Sire, quat ert þou," said þe segge · "ser Sirapis, I-wis;
 þe grond & þe begininge · of all þe godis oute."

Alexander asks
Serapis who is to
slay him.

"Now I be-seke þe, Serapis," · said oure kyng þan,
 Quat segge is sett me to slaa · þe sothe þou me teH."

"Sire, I haue neuend þe or now · þat, ware þat note
 knawen" 5413

Till any douth of quat dome · þen died I for sorowe.

Serapis will not
tell him.

þou has¹ a blisfuH burȝe · biggid to þi name,
 Quare many bernes sall debate · & bald emperouris,
 þare saH þi berynes be bildid · & þi body grauen." 5417
 þan come vp oure kidd kyng · and fra þe kniȝt partis,
 þus kaires he fro candele · bad, 'kepe wele him driȝtin.'

111

Alexander and his
men come to a
valley full of
snakes,

Moues him on to his meny · & on þe morne eftir
 þan dryues he furth with his dukis · in-to a deyne entris,
 A vale fuH of vermyn · & all of vile neddirs. 5422

all with crowns
on their heads.

And þai ware crokid & coynnt · with corouns on hede,
 As it smytten [ware] aH of smythis · of smaragdens fine.
 ȝit ware þai pasturde of pepir · as þe prose tellis, 5425
 Of gyloffre & of gingere · els ioyed þaim na fodis.

For all ouire couerd was þe coue · claggid with spices,
 þat makis þire wormes so wele · & wond in þaire kyndis,
 þat ilka twelmonth a turne · þai turnay to-gedire, 5429
 Ilkane mellis with his make · & so þare many dies.

þan pas þai thethen tiH a place · of perlius bestis,
 With clouen clees, sais þe clause · as kynd of þe hoggs.

þai ware thike & threuen² wele · thre foote o brede,
 Quare-with þai faȝt with in-fere · & fellid of his kniȝtis,
 þai ware so brefe at a blisch · borely & grym.

On ilka best a bares hede · fuH of breme tuskis, 5436
 þus ware þai fourmed aH be-fore · & farand be-hynde
 Like as it ware leopards · & lions with tailis.

The snakes kill
some of his men.

ȝit was þar gedird out of gripis · & griffons emange,
 þat felly flappid at þe faces · of þe feH erles, 5440

GriFFins also
appear.

¹ MS. inserts biggid, struck through.

² MS. theeuen, altered to threuen.

And euir ilka best was so bigge · of body & of wyng,
 þat he miȝt bere away a blonke · & a kniȝt armed.
 þe kyng was oñ his couredere · to comforth his dukis,
 Oñ þe bald bucephaloñ · eblande þaim he rydis,
 Prekis fra place in-to place · bad, “ plukis vþ ȝour
 hertis,” 5445

And cherisched his chiftans · with chelous wordis.
 He baldis of his bachelers · & his bowmen he cheris,
 To flay with flanes of þe fowlis · & þe feȝ bestis. 5448

And it was done at his dome · with-drewe þai na langir,
 Bath archere & alblastis · & all þaim a-sailed.
 þe bataile oñ bathe halfis · brymly begynnys, A great battle.
 Oure seggis & þe Synagyns · semblid vnfaire ;
 Gripis gripis of oure gomes · out of gilt sadils, 5453 The griffins tear
 Tuk þam in þaire talons · & titt fra þaire blonkis.
 Bot ȝit oure kyng with his kniȝtis · so kenely defendis,
 And with his ginge out of grece · þat he þe gree wynnes.
 Bot ȝit was herid of his here · twa hundredth & ouire,
 þus gafe vþ þe gaste · with gold oñ þai heles.
 þan ferd he furth tiȝ a flode · & þat a ferly hoge, 5459 The army comes
 Twenti forelang & ferre · it had of fuȝ breed, full of reeds,
 And aȝ þe strands of þe streme · stode fuȝ of stith
 reedis,

Quare-of he beds at a braid · him bargis to make.
 Quen it was hewyn at his hest · with heggis ouire-foldeñ, which they cross
 þan entirs in of his erles · & ouire þe ee passis. 5464 in barges.

And aȝ þat kith of oure kyng · quen þai his come wist,
 þai perid to him with presands · þe proudis of þat land.
 Sum spends oñ him of spon[ges]¹ · a sparles nounbre,
 Of mirre & of mekiȝ quat · milke-quite² 5468

Sum meñ muscles him mett · & with so mekiȝ schellis,
 þat sex pond miȝt of paise · haue ni of watre.
 Sum of seelis of þe see · sendis to him cotis,

¹ MS. þ spon, followed by a small blank space. The Latin text has spongias.

² The line is incomplete; add—‘& purpre.’ Latin text, albas et purpureas.

Alexander mounts
Bucephalus,

and encourages
his archers.

A great battle.

The griffins tear
men out of their
saddles.

The army comes
to a great river
full of reeds,

Alexander re-
ceives presents of
shells and seal-
skins.

[Fol. 94 b.] Sum bees at ware blode-rede · & borely wormes
As large as a mans lege · & lamprays of weȝt 5473
Twa hundredth pond ay a pece · & past it be fifty.

In that river were creatures like women,

who drew men down under water, and drowned them.

Two of them are caught.

including Gog and Magog.

Names of all the kings.

[Fol. 95.]

ȝit was þar wonand in þis watir · as women it semed,
þat ferly faire ware of face · with haare to þaire heelis.
Ouire-stride þar any strange mañ · or be þir strandis
sailed, 5477
þai droȝe þam doun in-to þe depe · & drowned þaim for
euire,
Or els þai tillid þaim to þe trees · as þe buke tellis,
And gert þaim laike with þaim so lange · till þaim þe
life wantis. 5480
Oure meñ tuke of þaim twa · was teñ foote of hiȝt,
Als blaȝt as any briȝt snaw · & as biche sons¹ tothed.

Vicesimus sextus passus Alexandri.

*Interpolation 7
P. F. I. 467
m. m. 267*
Alexander encloses two and twenty kings,
Pan aires furth ser Alexander · & with his arte closis
Of terands of þir tartaryns · twa & twenti kyngs.
He stekis þam vp with þar stoures · in a straite lawe,
And I saȝt neuen ȝow þar names · if ȝe þaim neuire herd.
Gogg & magogg þe grete · he with þir gomes pyndis,
Agekany & Anafrage · & Almade bathe, 5488
Sire Camour & ser Cacany · with aȝt þar kidd ostis,
And ane ser Clambert þe kene · was kyng of þer ostis;
Gamarody þe goblyn · a-nothire gryñ² sire,
Marthyney þe miȝtfuȝ · & Magen his fere,
Appedanere, Olaathere · & Alane þe grete, 5493
And ane ser naȝy onone · he in þe nabb speris.
He lockis in ane ser limy · with a laith mey[n]he,
And raryfey, a riche ray · he in þe roche stoppis,
Sire Filies, a fell kyng · with aȝt his fers kniȝtis, 5497
And ane ser Bedwyñ þe bald · with many briȝt helmes.
Arteneus ane athiȝt kemp · als-so he in-parkis,
And ane ser Tarbyñ, a tulke · with many toore
thousandis ; 5500

¹ Or sous.

² Read grym.

Sire Saltary, a-nothire sire · now is þe sowme reckend.

All þire he closis in þat cliffe] & cairis on forthire

To þe occyañ at þe erthes ende · & þar in an Ilee he
heres

A grete glauir & a glaam · of grekin tongis. 5504

þañ bad he kniȝtis þaim vnclethe · & to¹ þat kithe swyñ,
Bot all at come in-to þat cole · crabbis has þaim drenchid.

þañ sewis furth þat souerayñ · ay by þa salt strandis

Toward þe settynge of þe soñ · in sesoñ of wintir ;

Sexti dais with his sowme · sadly he ridis,

Raȝt oñ to þe reede See · & rerid þare his² tentis. 5510

þare was a miȝti montayne · at to þe mone semed,

He gessis it gaynir to god · þan to þe grounde vndire,

And slike a fonned fantasy · þan feſt in his hert,

How þat he liftid miȝt be fra þe lawe · vn-to þe liȝt
sternes. 5514

þan made he smythis to gaa smert · & smethe him a
chaiere

Of blake ireñ & of bigge · & bynde it with cheynes,

A sekire sege in to sitt · & sett him on-loft. 5517

And foure Griffons full gryñ · he in¹ þat graythe festes;

He makis to hinge ouir þaire hede · in hokis of ireñ

Flesch on ferrom þaim fra · at þai miȝt noȝt to reches,³

To make þaim freke to þe fliȝt · þat fode for to wyñ,

For þai ware fastand be-fore · halden for þe nanes.

Now is he woñ þurȝe þar wingis · vþ to þe wale cloudis; They bear him up
So hiȝe to heuen þai him hale · in a hand-quile, 5524 to the clouds,

Midil-erth bot as a mylnestane · na mare to him semed,

And aȝt þe watir of þe werd · bot as a wrethen neddire.

þe vertu of þe verray god · enviroounis⁴ him swythe,

And þañ þai feſt oñ a fild · as ferre fra his ost 5528 and descend in a
As any freke miȝt founde · in fiftene daies,

And he vnhurt with mikiȝt vnhome · he to his ost [Fol. 95 b.]
wynes.

¹ In the margin. ² MS. is his; with is struck out.

³ Read reche.

⁴ The first i above the line.

Alexander comes
to the ocean at the
world's end.

end. 15.

Alex's
Celestial Jo
of magnum?

(116)

*He wishes to dive
in the sea.**He has a glass
box made,
strengthened with
iron,**and supported on
chains.**He enters the box,
and is let down.**He sees strange
four-footed fishes.**He is drawn up
again.**Strange beasts
attack his men.*

[Fol. 96.]

A-nothire wondirfull witt · ȝit worthid in his hert,
 How he miȝt seke doun sounde · in-to þe see bothom,
 To see quat selcute is seet · in þe salt watir, 5533
 How many kindl of creatours · þat in þe cole duellis.
 þan gert he comes for to gang · & grayth him a tonñ
 Of grene glitterand glas · with gerrethis of ireñ,
 þat he miȝt sitt in him-selfe · & with his seȝt persee
 Ane & othire & aȝt þing · at outwith it lengid. 5538
 Sone was it blawen at a braide · & broȝt him be-forne,
 Aȝt boun as he baddl · & bunden with cheynes.
 þan of his bald bachelers · þe biggist out callis,
 And razt to þaim þire rekenthis · to rewle & to hald.
 He makis a conandl with his kniȝtis · & kend þaim þe
 time, 5543
 Howe lange him likid fra þe lande · to leng' in þe depe,
 In at a wicket he¹ went · & wynly it speris ;
 Princes pointid it with pik · & he þe plunge entres.
 þare saȝe he figours of fischis · & fourmes diuerse, 5547
 þat kend he neuir so many kindis · ne of so qwaynt
 hewis.
 Sum ferd all on foure feete · & farandl as bestis,
 Bot quen þai blischt on þis berne · þan bade þai na langir.
 And oþir sellis² he saȝe · at sai wald he neuir, 5551
 þat ware vnlikly to leue · to any man wittis.
 Sone so þe setnes was gane · þat him-selfe made,
 þai dreȝe him vp to þe drye · & he na dere sufird.
 þan raikis he by þe reede see · & rides ay þe sanndl,
 Ferly ferre with his³ folke · &⁴ fiechid his tentis, 5556
 þare fande he bestis on þe brym · with bemes as sawis,
 þat ware as bitand breme · as bladis of swerdis.
 þai sett in a sadd sowme · & sailid his kniȝtis,
 Porris doun of his princes · & persys þar schildis, 5560
 ȝit fellid his folke of þaim fey · foure score hundreth,
 And foure hundreth, & ferre · be fifti, þai drepid.

¹ In the margin. ² MS. seer sellis; with seer struck out.
³ MS. he, altered to his. ⁴ MS. repeats &.

118

þan dries he þethin with his dukis · in-to desert landis,
Is riȝt betwene þe reede see · & Arrabie costis, 5564

He comes to a
great desert.

A wilsom wast & a wild · & wons ful of neddirs,
And þai ware hedously hoge · & horned as Tupis.

þai turred doun of his talkis · & with þar tyndis sloȝe ;
Bot þe dreȝest deeble of þaim died · of his dukis handis.

þan past he to a-noþir place · & piȝt doun his tentis,
And fand a bataiȝt of bestis · as breme as þe first. 5570

He fights against
various strange
beasts.

þai ware of figour & of fourme · as fendis of heȝt,
With heuy hedis & hoge · as horses it were.

And þai ware tacchid ful of tethe · as tyndis ere of
harows,

Some are like
fiends.

And feȝ flammes as of fire · floȝe fra þaire mouthes.

A selly sowme of his seggis · was slane or he wist,

And he þaȝ hertis his here · biddis, "hewis oñ, my
childire ;" 5576

And ferly ferd of his folke · was in þe fild strangild.

Bot aȝ þe dreȝe of þa deuels · þai drenchid or þai past.

þan fondis he furth with his folke · in-to a fild entris,
And þar he logis with his lordis · & lengis for a quile.

He comes to a
plain.

For slike a feȝ infirmite · was in his hors bundeñ,

Bucifalon þe bald stede · þat he for bale dies. 5582 Bucephalus dies.

þe berne blischis oñ his blonke · & seȝes his breth faile,

Sighis selcuthly sare · & sadli he wepis,

For he had standen him in stede · in stouris ful hard,

Woñ him wirschip in were · fra many wathe saued.

þe kynge to þis carioñ · he castis his eȝen,

Alexander
laments over him,

Said, " fare wele, my faire foole · þou failid me neuire !

Saȝ now þi flesch here be freteñ · with fowlis & with
wormes, 5589

þat has so doȝtyly done ? · nay, driȝtin for-bede ! "

þaȝ bildaþ he þare a berynes · þis beste in-to ligg,

and builds him a
costly tomb.

Of schene schemerand gold · as it a schrine ware,

A tombe as a tabernacle · & tildis vp a cite 5593 [Fol. 96 b.]

In reuerence of þat riche stede · & eftir him it callis.

þan ridis he to a Reuere · a ruyde & a hoge,

He comes to a
great river;

ALEXANDER.

T

121

Detiraty þe depe · þe meñ þare it callis ;
 Fyue thousand Olifants in feree · þa frithmeñ him broȝt,
 A hundredth Mille¹ heuy chargis · ware heweñ for þe
 were.

122

and then to a
palace of Xerxes.

þan pas he to a proude place · a palas of ioye, 5599
 Of Sexis, at sum time · was senyour of Persy.
 þar fand he garettis aȝ of gold · & gildiñ chaumbres,
 And many a miracle in þe mote · þat miche ware to
 reken.

He finds white
birds,

þar fand þai bridis in þa bilds · borely & quite,
 Of feþir fresch as any fame · as ere þir fedilȝ dowfis,
 þat see wald of a sekemañ · or any sorow alid, 5605
 Queþir he suld warisch of þat waa · or of þe werd
 turne.

who can tell
whether a sick
man will recover.

For if þai blithly vp blenkid · & blischt oñ his face,
 þañ suld he couir of his² care · men knew by þe
 takens ;

And if þai chaungid opoñ chaunce · his chere to be-hold,
 With-outeñ doute he was dede · þañ durid he na langir.
 Now bowis furth þis baratour · & Babiloyñ he wynnys,
 Brettenes þe bald kyng · & bringis him of lyue, 5612
 Ane Nabizanda was named · & a noble kniȝt,

Was ane þe proudest of his pirs · & prince of his ward.
 He lengis in lithis & in lee · to his lyues ende,
 A seuen monethis in sonde · & sende out a pistilȝ 5616
 To his modire in-to Messedone · & to his maistir als
 Of his auntours, of his angwisch · & of his athiȝ werkis,
 And Aristotilȝ be-lyue · him anothire writis.

"To þe kyng of kyngis," quod þis clerke · "comande I
 myselfe. 5620

Sire, quen I waitid oñ ȝour werkis · I wex aȝ affraid
 Sum grayne of godhede, I gesse · was growen ȝow
 within ;

Aristotle's reply. For þou has said þat neuir did segge · ne saȝe bot þine
 ane ;

¹ I. e. thousand.² In the margin.

ȝit miȝt neuir, I loſe oure lorde · my lege, ȝow with-
ſtande;

Sire, bliſſid be al þi bachelers · at þe in¹ bales helpid!"
And now fyndes here a fitt · & folows a-nothire. 5626

Interpolation 8 Fīccīmūs sēptīmūs pāssus Alexāndri.

Fol. 5 1/2
n.m. 269 [O ure bold̄ kynḡ in Babiloun² · nowe bildis vp a trone, Alexander builds
a throne in Babylon.
þe postis with al þe apurtynance · as pure as þe noble,

þat was so wondirly wroȝt · of werkis diuerse,
þat ſlike a ſege vndire ſoñ · was neuire ſene eftir.

So grete garisons of gold · þe grekis in broȝt, 5631

þe Medis & þe Mēſēdons · many horsis chargid,

þat þai out of ynde & els-quare · with olifants lede;
It wald haue wlated any wee · þat welth to be-hald.

Twelfe cubettis fra þe cald erth · he castis it oñ hiȝt, It was 12 cubits
And xij degrēces al̄ of gold · for gate vþ of lordis ; high,
And twyſe ſex Semylacris · ſeſid he þar-vndire, 5637 with 12 images.

þat held oñ hiȝe with þaire handis · al̄ þir heuy werke.

And þar was grauyn in þos gomes · with grekis letteris,
And titild in þe tried names · of his twelfe princes.

With ilk a ſtatute þat þar ſtude · ſtoutely enarmed,

And euer-ilk a persoñ a prince · payntid was eftir.

Al̄ þe ſete of þe ſege · was ſmaragdyns fyne, 5643 The ſeat was of
Off tried topaces & trewe · tyrid was þe wawes, precious ſtones.

A tabernacle ouir þe trone · tildid vþ oñ³ loft,

And þan with ſtanes of ilka ſtate · waſ þe ſtoure cluſtrið.

A charbocle as a chaffe · was in þe chefe boſ,

þat brynt in bely-blind̄ niȝt · as briȝt as þe ſoñ,

With Imagis vndire in ilka nend · & Impid in þe names

Of al̄ þe prouynces & þe places · þat he was prince ouire.

And þai ware viſid al̄ in versis⁴ · in variant lettirs,

Sum in latens lare · sum langage of grece,

[Fol. 97 b.]

It had inscriptions
in various
languages,

¹ In the margin. ² MS. Baliloun.

³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. verser.

	Assisid aH of sex foote · & sett in betwene,	5653
	Ay thre paire oñ a plate · qware a poynt ristis.	
with the names of all the countries he had conquered;	Now sall I neuyñ ȝow þe names · note ȝe þe wordis; ¶ þe pepiH out of Panthi · is plant in first, Pruto, Picard, & Pers · & Pamphalie ¹ bathe,	5657
such as Portugal,	Portingale & Paiters · it paies me trouage,	
Arabia,	Arrabe & Artoyes · and Assie þe mare,	
Ethiopia,	Abbeoñ & Aufrike · & Acres anothire,	5661
England and India, and Ireland,	Effosym & Ethiops · þire ebrues folke ; Añ Ermony & Ewrope · enterely me serues,	
Greece and Gascony,	Ingland, Itaile, & Yndee · & Ireland costis, Meede & Mesopotayme · & Massedoyne eke ; Turke, Tuscan, & Troy · and Tartary ² clene,	5665
Russia and Cornwall,	Surre, SysyH, & Saarde · & Syres aH ouire ; Gyane, Garnad, & Grece · & Gascoyne I haue,	
Hungary and heathen Spain,	Baxe, Bayoñ, & Burdeux · & Bretayñ þe graunt, Capidos, & Calde · þe Canony pepiH,	5669
Tyre, Thessaly, and Palestine.	Russe, Romayñ & Ramys · a rent þai vs ȝeld.	
	Añ Calabree & Corwaile · oure coroun obienñ, Bathe naples & Norway · þire Nauernes aH, þe beeris ³ out of Hungry · & out of haythen Spayñ, Frigie, Flandres, & Fraunce · & Femony vs loutis, Ascalioun, & Arcagee · all of vs haldis ; Tiree, & Tasse, & Tessale · oure tributars ere, Poliponens, & Pentapot · & Palestyn þe riche.	5677

[Here ends the fragment in the Ashmole MS.]

¹ MS. Pamplalie. ² MS. Tartasy.

³ Sic; perhaps for heeris.

The remainder of the story may be briefly paraphrased as follows from the Historia de Prelis:— Printed Strassbourg 1489
of note on 285 Pn. F. 1.

Alexander next causes a golden crown to be made, adorned with precious stones, with an inscription.

A certain woman in Babylon is delivered of a monstrous child,

the upper half of which is born dead. A soothsayer tells Alexander that it signifies his approaching death.

At that time there was a man in Macedon named Antipater, who conspired with others to kill Alexander. He designed to do so by poison.

Antipater procures very strong poison, and sends it to his son Cassander. Cassander instructs his brother Roboas (whom Alexander loved, but had chidden for a slight fault) how to convey the poison to Alexander.

Alexander makes a great feast in Babylon. Roboas puts the poison in a cup, and hands it to Alexander, who drinks it, and cries out, "Help, help!" In falling, his sword pierces his liver; yet he rises again, and bids his guests continue the feast.

Alexander asks Cassander for a feather, to cause vomiting, and Cassander hands it to him, dipped in poison, which only increases the malady. Alexander passes a sleepless night, during which his lamp goes out. He crawls along on hands and knees to drown himself in the Euphrates. Roxana stops him, and replaces him in his bed, lamenting. Alexander sends for a notary to make his will.

The will instructs Aristotle to give a thousand talents of gold to the priests of Egypt. If Roxana gives birth to a boy, he is to be emperor; if to a girl, she is to be empress, married to some princely Macedonian, who is to be made emperor. Let Ptolemy have Egypt and marry Cleopatra; let Cleother have Ethiopia, Antiochus Syria, Arrideus Peloponnesus, Aristus India, Nicanor Seleucia, Ysmachas Hungary, Haulus Armenia, Lyochus Dalmatia and Sicily, Simon the notary Cappadocia and Pelagonia; lastly, let Cassander and Roboas have all as far as the river named Sol, and let their father Antipater have Cilicia.

When the will was made, there followed thunders and lightnings and great earthquakes, and all the world knew that his death was near. The Macedonians crowd round the palace, demanding to see him, and to know who is to be his successor. He names Perdiccas, to whom he commends Roxana and all his soldiers.

Then the Macedonians all begin to kiss him and to weep bitterly. Their lamentations are as low thunder, and even the sun is eclipsed.

A certain Macedonian, named Solentius, asks what they shall do when Alexander is gone. They all deplore the great calamity, and think that the great empire will fall to ruins. Alexander directs his crown to be sent to the temple of Apollo, gives instructions for the embalming of his body, directs Ptolemy to erect to his memory a golden sepulchre in Alexandria, and dies.

After his death, his princes dress the body in imperial state. He is conveyed to Alexandria, and buried in a costly tomb.

Alexander was of middle height, with a long neck, bright eyes, and ruddy cheeks. The days of his life were thirty-two years and seven months. He began to war at eighteen, and in seven years subdued all the barbarian nations. He was born on the eighth of the kalends of January, and died on the fourth of the kalends of April. He built twelve cities (which are enumerated).

Alexander's tomb was of gold. It was visited by philosophers, of whom the first said : "Alexander has made his treasure of gold." The second said : "Yesterday all the world was not enough for him ; to-day four ells of it suffice him." The third : "Yesterday he ruled the people, to-day the people rule him." The fourth : "Yesterday he could deliver many from death, to-day he could not deliver himself." The fifth : "Yesterday he led an army out of the city, to-day he is led by it to his burial." The sixth : "Yesterday he pressed the ground, to-day the ground presses on him." The seventh : "Yesterday all nations feared him, to-day they despise him." The last : "Yesterday he had both friends and enemies, to-day all men are alike to him."¹

¹ Compare the *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Herrtage (E. E. T. S.), p 516, no. xxxi.

The Story of Alexander.

[THE following epitome of the life of Alexander, in English prose, is copied from the Dublin MS., beginning on fol. 45, back.]

Alexander the grete, þe sone of philip̄ kyng¹ of macedon̄, which philip regned vij ȝere, and þe said alexander began to regne in the xvij ȝere of hys age.

Alexander begins to reign.

His address to his lords.

"Dread and obey God;

obey also him who takes most care for the public welfare;

and him who best endeavours to destroy your enemies."

4 And he said to hys peple in þis wise: " Fair lordez, I will in no wise be contrarye to your willes, ne to your dedes. But I schewe to you þat I hate frawdez & maleces, & as I haue loued you duryng my faders lyff,
 8 so will I do in tyme Cōmyng. And I bothe councell & pray you that ȝe drede god, obeye hym as souerayn of al, And chese hym for kyng; & be most obeyssiant to hym þat shall best purvay for þe gude astate of hys
 12 people, & þat shall be most debonar & mercifuþ to pure folkez þat beste¹ woll kepe iustice & þe right of þe feble ayenst the mighty; hym also that shaþ best dispoyse for þe publyke wele² & for no dilectacion of
 16 wordly³ plesaunce shaþ not be slowefuþ to kepe & defende you, and by whom ȝe shall be defendytt, & al eueþ & harmez by þe meane of hys goode dedes shall be destroyed; And he þat most hardly shall put hym
 20 in devour to distroy your enmys; for suche ought to be chosen kyng and none other."

¹ MS. þat beste þat best. ² MS. publyke like wele.

³ A correct form.

**His people
applaud him.**

**"We beseech
thee to reign
over us."**

**He thanks them
for their prayers
on his behalf.**

**Darius, king of
Persia, demands
tribute from him,
which he refuses.**

**The Brahmins
of India ask
Alexander not to
war against them.**

**He goes to visit
them.**

**He finds them to
be very poor.**

And whan hys people had herd hys reasons aboue-said, & knownen his grete discretion, witte, & vnderstandingyng, thei wer gretly amerveld, and answered to 24 hym þus: "We haue herd & vnderstand thy grete reasons, And haue resseyued & resseyue thy good CounceH, and theirfor we will & beseche the that þou regne vpon vs & haue þe lordship vpon vs. Duryng 28 þi lyf we hope þer is none that hase so wele deseruyd to be our kyng." And þus þai chese hym to be þair king, and Coroned hym, & yaff hym þair blesyngez, And prayd to god that he wold blesse & maynt[en]e¹ 32 hym. To whom he said: "I herd þe prayer that ȝe haue made for me, besechyng þat he wol stedfast þe loue of me in your hertes & coragez, And þat by no maner of the delectacion he suffre me do þat thynge 36 þat is ayen your profetez ne to my disworship."

And sone after he send letters to all hys princeez & good townez of all hys Royaume. And when [he] hed sent hys letters, one Dary, king of perce & of medy, 40 sent to alexandre for tribute like as he hed of hys fadre. And he sent hym word at þe henne þat layde þe gret egge was deyde. And after þis alexandre made grette conquestes, And conquerd Inde, he went to 44 a cuntree called Bragman; the which when þai wist of hys Comyng¹, þai sent mony wise men to hym, whiche salute hym & sayd: "Sir alexander, þou hast no cause to werre vpon us, ne to euill willyng; For we be² 48 both meke & poure, & we haue noþing bott sapience, the whiche if you will haue, pray god þat he wyll gyff hir the; for by batayH þou shalt neuer hafe hir." And when alexander herd hym say so, he made all hys 52 oste to tarye, & with few of hys knyghtez went within þe sayd cuntree, for to enquere further of þe trouth. And when he entred within þe same ground he found mony poore folkez, women & chyldre all naked, gad-

¹ MS. maynte. ² MS. be ben.

deryng herbis in þe feldez. And he asked of þaim mony questions, to whiche þai answerd wisely. And þan he bad þaim aske of hym some þing þat might 60 do þaim good & to all þair people, and he wold gyff He offers to grant them a boon.
 þaim it gladly. And þen þai said : "Sir, we aixe þe none other þing bot at þou wol gyff vs euerlastyng lyfe." Thenne alexander answerd & said : " howe 64 might a man make other mennes liues euerlastyng whan he may not lennthe hys awne life oneoure? And þat ȝe axie of me is in no mannez power þat leueth." They ask for everlasting life.
 Thenne þai said to hym : "Seth þou hase good know-
 68 legh therof, wher trayvelles þou þi-self to distroye all the worlde and gadre al ȝe wordly tresours, And wotte not when þou must lefe þaim?" Then Alex-
 and sayd to hym : "I do nott al þis at ȝe say as of 72 my-self. Butt god hath sent me thrugh all þe world for texalte² and magnifye hys lawe and distroy all þem þat beleue not in hym."

And some tyme Alexander wente disgysed visityng¹ 76 hys lordez & enquiryng of þair dedes. And on a tyme he Come in-to a towne of hys awne, And sawe two men of þe same towne bifore a iuge pletyng, of the which on said to þe Iuge : "Sir, I haue boght on house of 80 thys man; And, long after, I haue founde in it a tresour vnder þe erthe, which is nott myne. And I haue offerd to deliuer it to hym: And he hath refusyd it; wherfore, Sir, I beseche the he be compellyd to 84 take it, for else moche as he knoweth it is not myne; for I haue no right þerto." Thenne the Iuge com-
 maund hys aduersarie parte to answer to þe same. And þen he sayd : "sir Iuge, that same tresour was 88 neuer myne; but he hath edyfyed in þat place that was byfore comyn to al þoo that wold haue edyfyed ther-in. And þerfore I haue no right to take it."

¹ MS. and gadre alle (fol. 46 b) And to gedyr all.

² MS. to texalte : (texalte = to exalte).

He says he cannot give it.

They ask him why he toils so much to win what he cannot long keep.

He replies that he is doing God's will.

He visits a town, and sees two men pleading before a judge.

One says, "I have found a treasure in the house which I bought of this man; compel him to take it."

The other replies that the treasure was never his.

Both ask the
judge to take it
himself,

but he refuses.

He finds that one
of them has a son,
and the other a
daughter; and
says, they must
be married, and
so divide the
treasure.

Alexander is
astonished,
saying, that many
judges would have
done otherwise.

The judge makes
a reply,

at which Alex-
ander marvels
still more.

Alexander comes
to a city where all
the houses are of
equal height, and
before every
house-door there
is a grave.

And þen þai both required þe Iuge that he wold take it to hym-self^t; to qwom he answerd & sayd: “sithen 92 it is so that ye say that [ye] haue no right herto, ne he hath no right to whom þe herytage hath longed and yet bylongeth whar þe tresour was founden, how shuld I haue ony right þerto, that am bot a straunger in that 96 caas, And neuer afore herd speke þerof? And ye wold excuse yow þerof & yeue me þe charge of þe tresoure; which is euyH done.” Thenne he askyd of þaim þat hed founde þe tresour, whether thay had ony childreñ? 100 and þe tone answerd & sayd, he hed a soñ: and [he] asked þat other in like wyse, & he sayd, he hed a doghter. And þen þe Iuge comaundyd to make a maryage bitwene þaim two, And at þai shuld haue þe 104 tresour by þat meane. And when Alexander herd þis Iugement,¹ he hed gret mervayle therof, and sayd þus to þe Iuge: “I trowe þer is nott in all þe world so rightwise a Iuge as þou art.” And the Iuge, þat 108 knew hym nott, sayd & asked of hym whether ony Iuge in hys cuntree wold haue done otherwyse: “ye, certanly,” sayd alexander, “in many landez.” Thenne þe Iuge, hauyng grete mervayH þerof, asked of hym 112 whether it rayned and þe sone dyd shyne in tho landez; as he wold haue sayd, that it was mervayH þat god shuld send ony light or rayne or other goode thynges to them that do nott right & trew Iugement. 116 And therfore Alexander had gretter meruayH than byfore, And said, þer was bott few suche people vpon erth as þai were in þat land.

And as alexander went owt of þat land, he passyd 120 thurgh a cite in þe which all þe housez of þat Cyte were of one hight, & byfore þe dure of euery hous was a grete pitte or graue; in whiche cite þer was no Iuge, wheroft he had gret mervayll; and asked of þe inhabit- 124

¹ The latter syllable (*ment*) is written in the middle of the lower margin of the leaf. Fol. 47 begins with he hed.

antis therin wherof such thyngez shuld serue. The
 which answerd hym & sayd: “First, for þe outragez¹
 hight of housez, loue & Iustice can nott be long^a a towne
 128 emong þe people.” And þai sayd, þe pittez & grauez
 wer þair awne housez, to þe whiche þat þai shuld
 sone go to, and þer dwelle vnto þe day of Iugement.
 And as tochyng^b that thai hed no Iuge, þai sayd, þai
 132 made good^c Iustice of þem-self, wherfore þai nede no
 Iuge. Thenne Alexander departed from þaim^d right
 well pleasyd.

And afore hys deth, he wrote a letter vnto hys
 136 moder, desiring^e hir to make no sorow for hym. And
 sone aftir Alexander died & was putt in a coffre of gold,
 & buried in alexandria with grete reuerence by princez
 & oþer grete lordez that keped^f & fulfillyd hys testa-
 140 ment as he had ordeigned: thenne stert vp one of þe
 grettest^g lordez of þaim that kept^h hym, and sayd þus:
 “Thay þat neuer . . .

The inhabitants
explain to him
the meaning of
these things.

Alexander writes
to his mother,
dies, and is buried
in Alexandria
with great
honour.

[*The rest of the story is lost.*]

¹ So in MS.; read outrageouz. ² MS. þaim them.
³ MS. kepeth. ⁴ MS. kepth.

NOTES.

IN the following notes some attempt is made to elucidate a few passages in the text, especially where additional light is to be obtained from comparing it with the original Latin, or with the other English versions. In some cases phrases are explained, but the reader should, in general, turn to the Glossarial Index for help with respect to the more difficult words. The question of the various texts of the Alexander Romance is more fully treated of in the Preface. It is sufficient to mention here that the Latin text cited below is the "Historia de preliis," as printed (at Strassburg) in 1489. The English alliterative fragment cited as "A." is that edited by myself in 1867 as an Appendix to William of Palerne (E. E. T. S.) ; whilst that cited as "B." is the text called "Alexander and Dindimus," also edited by me in 1878. These two fragments are allied to very different parts of the present text. A part of A. resembles ll. 23—803* of our text, whilst B. resembles ll. 4019—4714.

Lines 1—22 are obviously original, and intended as a Prologue.

13. *Bot if*, unless. "It were a wonder else, unless they would in many a way (desire to hear wanton works) ; for, as their wits are within (them), so their will follows (those wits)."

15. *Ettillis*, I will endeavour, the present being used for the future. *Ettillis* is the first person ; and the suffix *-is* at once marks the dialect as Northumbrian ; for further remarks on this point, see the Preface.

17. *The buke*, i. e. the Latin text here followed.

18. "All the world over" is a phrase still in use.

21. *And ye will*, if ye will. *Renkis*, men, hearers ; the story is supposed to be recited or read aloud.

23. Here the Romance begins, and in order to shew clearly how the translator has treated his original, the whole of the first chapter of the Latin text is here given, answering to the Primus Passus of the translation, which ends at l. 213. It should be further compared with the corresponding passage of A., viz. ll. 452—573.

2 "[S]apientissimi Egipci, scientes mensuram terre vndasque maris et celestium ordinem cognoscentes, id est, stellarum cursum, motum etiam firmamenti, tradiderunt etiam vniuerso orbi per altitudinem et per noticiam artium magicarum. Dicunt enim de Anectanabo rege ipsorum quod fuerit ingeniosus in astrologia et mathematica eruditus. Quadam autem die dum nunciatum fuisset ei quod Artaxeres rex persarum cum valida manu hostium super eum veniret, non mouit militiam neque preparauit exercitum, sed intrauit cubiculum palacii sui ; et deprendens

concham eream plenam aqua pluiali tenensque in manu virgam eream, hic per magicam incantationem demones conuocabat, et per magicas incantationes intelligebat in ipsa concha classes nauium super eum potentissime venientes. Erant enim principes in custodiam militie positi Anecta[na]bi a confinibus persarum. Uenit quidam exors dicens, “Maxime Anectanabe, insurgit in te Artaxerxes rex persarum cum multitudine hostium et gentilium infinitis. Sunt enim Parthi, Medi, Perse, Syrii, Mesopotamii, Drapes, Phares, Argiri, Caldei, Bachiri, Confires, Hircani, atque Agiophii, et alie pluresque gentes de orientalibus partibus procedentes.” Cum hec audisset Anectanabus, spirans dixit: “Custodiam quam tibi condidi bene obserua, sed non tamen sicut princeps militie egisti, sed sicut homo timidus. Uirtus enim non hec valet in multitudine populi sed in fortitudine animorum; an nescis quod unus leo multos ceroos in fugam vertit?” Et hec dicens iterum intravit cubiculum solus, et fecit nauiculas ereas in concha cum aqua plena pluiali, tenensque in manu virgam palme et respiciens in ipsam incepit totis viribus incantare, et videbat qualiter egyptii sternebantur impetu classum Barbarorum. Statimque mutato habitu, radens sibi caput et barbam, et tulit aurum quantumcunque portare potuit, et quecunque erant sibi necessaria ad astrologiam et ad artes magicas exercendas, fugit prope pelusium de egypto. Denique veniens ethiopiam induit linea vestimenta egipcius quasi propheta, intravit macedoniam, sedensque manam (*sic*) grecis (*sic*) coram omnibus palam videntibus diuinabat. Egyptii vero ut viderunt quia Anectanabus non inueniebatur ad curtum, perrexerunt ad Serapim deum illorum maximum, et rogaue- runt eum ut vera responsa daret eis de anectanabo rege eorum. Serapis autem respondit: “Anectanabus rex vester abijt de egypto propter Arthaxersem regem persarum, qui vos suo imperio subiugabit. Post modicum vero tempus reuertetur ad vos reijciendo a se seruitum et vlciscetur de inimicis vestris subiugando illos vobis.” Et hec responsa recipientes statim fecerunt statuam regalem ex lapide nigro in honorem Anectanabi, et scripserunt ad pedes eius responsa ut in posterum memorie mandaretur. Anectanabus autem mansit macedonie incognitus.”

We must not omit to notice here that Gower, in his *Confessio Amantis*, bk. vi. (ed. Pauli, iii. 61), gives a long extract from the *Alexander Romance*, which he designates as being

“A great cronique emperiall,
Which euer into memoriall,
Among the men, how so it wende,
Shall dwelle to the worldes ende.”

See also the verse translation of “*Kyng Alisaunder*,” edited by Weber, and the *Life of Alexander* by Plutarch.

25, 26. Here we have mention of the two lower elements, earth (*mulde*) and water (*see*).

27. Here the third element of *air* is mentioned, beyond which was a “periphery” of fire, not noticed. The “*odde home*” above the air

refers to what Gower calls *orbis* or the fifth element, otherwise the firmament; see Conf. Amant. iii. 105, 107. In this *orbis* are contained the seven planets and the fixed stars. The "courses of the clear stars" in l. 28 refers to the orbits of the planets.

29. For *aghill tre* read *athill thre*. The reference is to the three "peripheries" into which the element of air was subdivided.

"This air in periferies *thre*

Devided is, of such degré," &c.; Gower, C. A. iii. 93.

Articus and *Antarticus* refer to the two poles of the heavens.

35. A clear reference to the opening words of the Latin text—"Sapientissimi Egiptii," &c.

36. "They taught all, that desired to learn it, (some) of that lore." *Lere* is here improperly used, the right word being *learn*. The converse error, of using *learn* in the sense of 'teach,' is common in provincial English.

41. "When he beheld the heaven, he was wise enough to reckon the destinies of men alive."

44. How Aristotle taught Alexander "the nature of philosophy" is told by Gower in his seventh book. On the "seven arts," see my Notes to P. Plowman, p. 243.

46. The three authors alluded to are doubtless Plato, Pythagoras, and Priscian; they are not mentioned in the Latin text, the translation being much amplified.

50. "To pass (i. e. to march) against him."

56. Compare A. 480—"Of rain-water ryght full · þe rink gon it dress." Lat. "concham plenam aqua pluuiali."

70. *Hare wod*, hoar wood, i. e. bare wood, one stripped of leaves, as in winter-time. So also "*hore okez*" and "*bare twyges*," Gawain and the Grene Knight, 743, 746; "a forest highe and *hore*," Le Morte Arthur, ed. Furnivall, l. 314.

71. *Anec*, for *Anectanabus*; this shortened form occurs frequently.

81. *Artaxenses*, Artaxerxes. As in all M.E. poems, the spelling of proper names is very inaccurate. So in l. 87, the MS. has *panthy*.

87. These names may be compared with those in the Latin text (above), and in A. 494—500. Hence *Syre* is Syria; *Sychim* (perhaps suggested by Sichem in the Bible) answers to none of the Latin names; *Capidos* no doubt means Cappadocians; *Faire* represents the Lat. *Phares*; *Butary*, the Lat. *Bachiri* (perhaps Bactrians). See note to A. 493.

97. *Kepe to þe marche*, guard the border-land; or, as A. has it, "Keep well thyne owne koste" (coast).

105. "But only in that case where they (i. e. men) are blended (i. e. compounded) with greatness of will" (i. e. of courage).

107. For *þe* (as in MS.) we should certainly read *þu*, thou (voc. case).

110. "Will cause to take to flight, and will terrify, many harts." See note to A. 515.

118. "Without more hindrance."

126. None of the texts help to explain this line.

128. This line curiously resembles that in Chaucer, C. T. 3209—"His astrolabie, longing for his art." See Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe.

129. *Quadrentis*, quadrants. We suggest this word as an improvement upon the corrupt reading *In adrentis* of the MS. The alliteration demands a word beginning with *qu*, and as the MS. has the rest of the word, the correctness of the suggestion can hardly be doubted.

130. *Mekil quat*, much of various kinds, many various things. See Morris, Outlines of English Accidence, p. 137, § 213.

145. *Openly deuynes*; Lat. "palam . . diuinabat." Frequent similar coincidences of expression leave little doubt as to the fact that the poet's translation was made (mainly) from the "Historia de preliis."

146. "Let him hear, whoso desired"; *here* being in the imperative mood. Phrases of a similar cast are not uncommon in Middle English.

150. *Tere* is a less common form of *tore*, difficult; see *tere*, *tor* in Stratmann, and the Glossary.

161. *Ser Sirraphis*, the Egyptian god Serapis. See l. 5409.

168. This is an instance of an ambiguous oracle, but the ambiguity only appears in the original Greek, as given in the note to A. 565. It could be read as meaning: "Your fugitive king will again return to Egypt, not as an old, but as a young man, and will destroy and subjugate our enemies," or otherwise, "and will subjugate our enemies, the Persians"—τὸν εχθροὺς ἡμῶν πέρσας νποτάξει. See ll. 184—189 below. It was fulfilled in the latter sense, when Alexander, the son of Anectanabus, arrived in Egypt before defeating the Persians; see ll. 1121—1136.

174. *Bees*, shall be; just as the A.S. *beón* is often used with a future sense.

179. "Since it is ordained to be so, and it cannot fail, nor (be) shewn to be in any other way, nor (are) we (likely) to avoid it, (there is nothing for us) but to give them up the girdle; it avails us not (to think) otherwise." Many of the sentences have similar abrupt transitions; it is easier to catch the sense than to define it precisely. The phrase "to give up the girdle" means to submit to the inevitable, to acknowledge oneself to be powerless, and is a translation of a French proverb given in Cotgrave, s. v. *ceinture*. In Howel's Familiar Letters, 5th ed. (1678), p. 463, we find: "The other Proverb was *Il a quitté sa ceinture* (*sic*), he hath given up his girdle, which intimated as much as if he had becom bankrupt, or had all his estate forfeited, It being the ancient Law of *France*, that when any upon som offence had that penalty of confiscation inflicted upon him, he us'd before the Tribunal of Justice to give up his *Girdle*, implying thereby, that the *girdle* held every thing that belong'd to a mans estate, as his budget of money and writings, the keys of his House, with his Sword, Dagger and Gloves, &c."

192. Here again we are referred to "the book"; and accordingly the Lat. text (sign. a 1, col. 2) has "ex lapide nigro."

199. For "at his fortēs," as in MS., read "at his feet," as in A. 570. Lat. "ad pedes eius;" same column.

210. *All his aue*, alone by himself; precisely equivalent to the mod. Sc. *his lane* (short for *his all aue*).

214. Here the Second Passus begins precisely where the second chapter of the Latin text does, but comprises four chapters of the latter; and, in general, each Passus contains several such chapters.

227. "Put his hand up to his hair, and bent it downward but a little." This was a form of salutation, much like that practised by the modern soldier. Lat. "extendensque manum suam salutauit eam;" a 1, back, col. 1.

228. Lat. "Aue regina Macedonie; dedignatus ei dicere domina."

246. "For there dwell, in that region that thou before didst speak of, the wisest men," &c.

257. "Whether the child be a male or a female." *Werdes*, destinies.

274. Lat. "protulit de sinu suo purificam tabulam eream et eburneam mixtam auro et argento, tres in se circulos continentem. Primus continebat in se intelligentias duodecim. In tercio vero sol et luna parebant. Post hec apparebat catheua eburnea et ex eo protulit septem splendidissima astra, horas explorantia et nativitates hominum, et septem lapides sculptos et duos lapides ad custodiam hominum constitutos;" a 1, back, col. 1. The "blesand table" was an astrolabe planisphere, with circles (1) of the 12 intelligences, (2) of the "dozen of beasts," i. e. 12 signs of the zodiac, (3) the circle of the sun and moon. Gower expressly calls it an astrolabe; C. A. iii. 64. And see Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, l. 287.

282. The seven stars are the seven planets, and the seven stones are the precious stones severally assigned to them; see them enumerated in the note to A. 628.

295. "What shall happen between us, viz. between me and Philip."

299. "Nevertheless, ere any long time, it shall happen as thou saidst."

308. *Or it be fere*, ere it be far, ere long.

309. *Is amed*, is destined to know thee carnally and afterwards to help thee in all adversities.

317. "But just so between the two, and too much of neither."

319. "With two tough horns, attached to his forehead." These horns characterised the god Ammon. Hence Alexander acquired the surname of Dulkarnein, or the two-horned, as being the supposed son of Ammon.

340. *Erne till exorȝise*, eager to exorcise. Here *erne* stands for ȝeorn, eager, as shewn by Mätzner, s. v. *eorne*, and cf. Alex. A. 1091. In the word *exorȝise*, the symbol ȝ stands (as occasionally in other

MSS.) for the letter *z*. *Ethis euer elike*, conjures continually. The verb *ethen* is only known to occur in two other passages, both in *Gawayne* and the *Grene Knyght*, ll. 379, 2467—

“Fyrst I eþe þe, haþel, how þat þou hattes.”

I. e. first I conjure thee (to tell me), noble one, what is thy name. And again—

“Perfore I eþe þe, haþel, to com to þy naunt.”

Dr. Morris translates it by ‘ask,’ and Mätzner thinks it may be allied to the word *ask*. Both have missed the obvious etymology. The M.E. *e* (when long) often corresponds to A.S. *é*, as being a modification of *ā*; as in *ehte*, possessions, from A.S. *éht*, a derivative of *ágan*, to own. So also here, *ethen* = A.S. *éðan**; to conjure by oath, from *áð*, oath. This sense explains all three passages.

368. “Then shall I cherish thee with such demeanour as if thou wert my child.” The translator has quite missed the point. Lat. “te quasi patrem pueri habebo ;” a 2, col. 1. In fragment A. 771, this is given correctly.

397. “For it (the child) and Philip her husband were related afar off,” i. e. were not sufficiently nearly related.

403. “Even to the value (lit. weight) of a pea.”

408. See note to fragment A. 808.

421. “Make his market with her.” Doubtless a proverbial phrase.

423. See notes to fragment A. 826, 837.

427. *The bounde*. Surely the translator must have read his text as having *cursus* (not *currus*) *solis*. *Bounde* would signify limit, orbit. This is verified by l. 442, where we have the very word “course.” So also in A. 853. Other versions have ἐκτύπωμα ήλιον (see Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibl. du Roi, xiii. 233, Append.) ; *solis effigies*, *solis forma* (id. 270) ; and *le char du soleil* (id. 296).

440. *Chefe soll*, shall achieve, or attain to be.

464. “Either meat has mended thee,” i. e. food has fattened thee.

477. Read *þe na* for *þe þe*. “No blame shall be to thee from me, nor from any man else.”

488. Here the translator again appeals to the Lat. text, which reads: “Anectanabus autem per artem magicam induit formam draconis, et per medium triclinium discubentium transiens fortiter sibilabat, vt coniuantes omnes pauore ac perturbatione maxima torquerentur ;” a 2, back, col. 1. Cf. Gower, C. A. iii. 74 ; also Alex. A. 981.

501. So also in Gower, C. A. iii. 76 ; and Alex. A. 999.

525. See the French version of this passage, as given in Alex. A., p. 209.

532. For *doute*, a better reading would be *doutis*, i. e. fears.

539. “On account of the pain I go nearly mad, and I suffer such woe that I would rather be dead (lit. it were dearer to me to be dead) than thus remain alive.”

580. *Schoutid*; Mr. Stevenson prints *schouted*, but the Lat. text

shews that the right reading is *schontid*, i. e. shunted, moved; Lat. “*vidi elementa mutari* ;” a 2, back, col. 2.

581. “And nevertheless, on any account, let him be kept awhile and nourished as particularly as if he were my own.”

583. “Yet will noble people make remembrance of him, and record it hereafter, that I had in my time such a divine son.”

588. The poet here departs from his original, which says, on the contrary, that Philip’s elder son was not to be his heir; Lat. “*in filii quem ex altera vxore habui succedat [Alexander] locum* ;” a 2, back, col. 2.

597. As the Latin text is appealed to, the description of Alexander is here given. “*Coma capitis sicut leonis aspersa videbatur. Oculi eius sicut stelle micantes sed colore dispari radiabant, vnum niger, alter vero glaucus apprens. Dentes siquidem eius erant acuti, impetus illius feruidus vt leonis.*”

608. “If, as the original shews, he was wall-eyed.” Here “wall-eyed” seems to be used in the sense of having eyes of different colours.

642. “He escapes him with great difficulty, unless he can skip away more quickly.”

668. *Sa party is*, is so different from mine.

676. “It shall not annoy thee to the value of an egg, viz. none of his thoughts” (shall annoy you).

678. Here begins the Dublin fragment; see p. 23.

684. For *sterne* read *merke*, as in the Dublin MS., on account of the alliteration. The reader, having both texts before him, can readily supply for himself improvements of this character.

686. “Only follow me.” Here *noȝt bot* is the familiar North of England *nobbut*, i. e. not but, only.

692. “Many winters being done,” as in Dublin MS., i. e. many winters ago.

703. Lat. “*Vide stellam Herculis qualiter conturbatur. Mercurius vero gaudet. Iouem siquidem video coruscantem* ;” a 3, col. 1.

708. I. e. death at the hands of my own son. Cf. l. 722.

722. Here two leaves are lost in the Ashmole MS., as shewn by the Dublin MS., which supplies the missing 122 lines. As we are here dependent upon one MS. only, the corresponding portion of the Latin text is here given (a 3, col. 1, &c.):

“Alexander dixit, ‘Ergo filius tuus sum?’ Anectanabus respondit, ‘Reuera ego genui te.’ Et hec dicens expirauit. Alexander autem filiali pietate motus eleuansque corpus eius super humeros suos portauit ipsum in palacium suum. Cumque videret illum Olimpia dixit Alexandro, ‘Fili Alexander, quid est hoc?’ Cui ille respondit, ‘Corpus Anectanabi est.’ Olimpia dixit, ‘Anectanabus pater tuus fuit.’ Respondit ille, ‘Quemadmodum stulticia fecit tua, ita est.’ Et iussit illud sepeliri.

**Qualiter quidam princeps de Capadocia adduxit equum buci-
fallum ad Philippum regem Macedonum.**

[I]n ipsis denique temporibus princeps Capadocie adduxit vnum equum indomitum, magnum corpore et pulcrum nimis, ligatumque ex omni parte catherinis ferreis. Comedebat enim ille equus Bucifallus homines, propter aspectus horribilitatem, siue a signo quod thaurinum caput quod maius habebat vstum, seu quod in fronte eius quedam mine corniculorum procedebant. Cum igitur vidisset Philippus rex ipsius equi puleritudinem, dixit ministris suis: Confidite cancellos ferreos vt latrones qui mori debent ex lege trucidentur ab eo.

Qualiter reuelatum fuit Philippo quod ille post eum regnare debebat qui dictum equum Bucifallum equitabit, et de Alexandro sedente in curru et de verbis habitis cum rege Arridorum.

[I]n ipsis denique diebus responsum habuit rex Philippus per somnium quod post mortem suam ille regnare deberet qui hunc ferocem equum equitaret. Alexander itaque cum esset annorum duodecim factus fortis, audax, sapiens et discretus. Didicerat enim plene omnium liberalium artium disciplinas Aristotilis et castoriem. Quadam vero die cum pertransiret per locum vbi stabat ille equus indomitus, vt videret inter cancellos ferreos, et ante eum manus et alia membra hominum dispersa iacentia, miratus est valde; misit illico manum suam per cancellos. Equus autem extendens collum suum cepit lambere manum illius, et prostrauit se in terram pedibus complicatis, ergensque caput cepit fortiter aspicere Alexandrum. Intelligens autem Alexander voluntatem equi aperuit cancellos, et ingressus cepit dorsum equi suauiter manu tangere. Statimque incepit ille mansuescere nimis. Et sicut videtur canis coram domino suo, sic equus coram Alexandro parebat. Denique Alexander ascendit illum et equitans cepit exire. Cumque ergo vidisset eum Philippus, dixit ei: ‘Fili Alexander, omnia responsa deorum impleta sunt in te, quia post mortem meam regna mea tuo imperio gubernabuntur.’ Cui Alexander ait: ‘Pater, si fieri potest, dirige me vt in curru sedeam regali.’ Respondit ei Philippus: ‘Gratianter hec facio. Tolle tibi centum equites et septuaginta milia solidorum aureorum, et vade potenti militia circumfulsus.’ Et factum est. Exiens igitur Alexander vna cum Ephesio philosopho amico et duodecim pueris quos elegerat et iugo suo docuerat, detulitque ornamenta preciosa et solidos. Precepitque militibus suis vt equis curam imponerent diligentem. Ueniente itaque Alexandro in Peloponensem, occurrit ei Nicolaus, rex eiusdem prouincie, cum exercitu suo, vt pugnam cum eo committeret. Et appropinquans dixit ei: ‘Quis es tu, dic mihi.’ Cui Alexander respondit: ‘Ego sum Alexander Philippi Macedonis.’ Nicolaus rex ait: ‘Quem me speras esse?’ Alexander respondit: ‘Tu es rex Arridorum. Non tamen eleuetur cor tuum in superbia, quia regalem honorem tibi attribui. Solentque alta petere profundum, Paruitas vero vsque ad sidera sublimari.’”

Compare also Alex. A. 1110—1201.

751*. “Bears a brand on his shoulders like a bull’s head, and out of his top there stick up as it were tines of horns.” Thus the English version adopts *both* reasons for the name of Bucephalus (i. e. Bull-head),

where the Latin text merely offers alternative explanations. The reason assigned in the Greek text is: ἐπειδὴ ἐν τῷ μηρῷ αὐτοῦ ἔκκαμψα βοὸς κεφαλὴν ἔξεφυνεν (Notices des Manuscrits, xiii. 246). See note to Alex. A. 1114, p. 248.

766*. *At*, from. As to the seven arts, see note to l. 44 above.

769*. *Warlocked*, fettered. In the Prompt. Parv. we find *warlok*, a fetter-lock. The verb is also found in the form *warroken*, as in P. Plowman, B. iv. 20.

778*. Here a line has probably been lost, as shewn by the sudden change of subject. In the preceding line, *hys* refers to Alexander; but here *He* refers to Bucephalus. In Alex. A. 1164, the words *þe horss it awaytes* partly fill up the gap.

803*. Here ends all agreement with fragment A. of the romance. Here also begins the imperfect edition of Julius Valerius, as edited by Mai in 1817.

809*. “Neither men nor any excellent armour shall be lacking to thee; and hold on (go forth) with a well-equipped (lit. hale) army, where thou shalt be obeyed.” For the form *held*, see *helden* in Stratmann. And see l. 820, p. 39.

813*. It is remarkable that the Latin text has *Ephesio*, for the English form *Eufestyus* is somewhat nearer the mark; probably our author found in his copy the form *Ephestio*. The person alluded to is certainly Hephaestion of Pella, celebrated in history as Alexander’s friend; even in the romance the Greek text has Ἡφαιστίων (Notices des Manuscrits, xiii. 248).

828*. Julius Valerius says that Nicolaus was king of Acarnania (ed. Mai, p. 3).

729. *Sa ma aydeus*; *So madeus*. These are corruptions of the hybrid phrase *So m'aide deus*, so may God aid me, the first word being English, the rest French.

738. “As angry as a wasp” is given in Heywood’s Proverbs; see Skelton, Elymour Rummyng, 330, and Dyce’s note.

743. The Ashmole MS. is right here; it means, “as a speck of my spittle is sprinkled on thy face.” See l. 745.

748. *Cure*, i. e. cur, hound; Lat. “Tolle quod te decet habere, catule, et erubesce;” a 3, back, col. 2.

757. *Seis*, shalt see; cf. note to l. 174.

758. “And I will either gain for myself thy kingdom, or reach up the girdle.” To *reach up the girdle* is the same as *give up the girdle*; see note to l. 179. Omit the second *me* in the Dublin MS.

773. Lat. “Itaque tubis bellicis clangentes vterque hostiliter sunt commoti, et acriter pugnare cuperunt;” a 4, col. 1.

798. In the Dublin MS. the insertion of *þar* before *wod* seems necessary; “they wrested in pieces their wood,” i. e. the shafts of their spears. It deserves to be especially noted here, as a proof of our author’s poetical powers, that the whole of the fine passage comprised in ll. 777—806 is expanded out of the four words *et acriter pugnare cuperunt!*

804. *Starand stanes*, shining stones. This seems to shew that the helmets of chieftains, at any rate in romances, were adorned with gems.

817. The Ashmole MS. is the better here; Lat. “*Imposuerunt siquidem milites Alexandro et equo coronam;*” a 4, col. 1.

821. “*Inuenit autem Philippum in conuilio nuptiali sedentem;*” ib.

826. This line is hardly correctly translated. Lat. “*Prime mee victorie palmain recepi coronatam. Attamen quando matris nuptias celebrabo, sociando eam regi alteri in vxorem, te nullatenus inuitabo; cum ipse nuptias facias, ad quas nullo indicio sum vocatus;*” ib.

834. *Lesias*; Lat. “*Lisias;*” Julius Valerius has “*Lysias,*” p. 8; but Plutarch has “*Attalus.*”

838. *Wardrere*, warder, i. e. staff or truncheon; Lat. “*baculo.*”

847. *Snapirs*, trips up. Though Stratmann gives but two examples of this word, it is not very scarce. Jamieson cites from Kelly, p. 26, the Scotch proverb—“A horse with four feet may *snapper* by a time,” i. e. sometimes. “*I snapper*, as a horse dothe that trypeth; my horse dyd nat stumble, he dyd but *snapper* a lytell;” Palsgrave. And see Dyce’s index to Skelton.

872. *At grete*, to weep. The use of *at* for *to*, as in Scandinavian, is a clear instance of Northern dialect.

879. *Anes with*, becomes one with, is reunited to. *Woydis*, leaves.

885. *Litill kyngis*; Lat. “*reguli;*” a 4, back, col. 1. This accounts for the reference to the original “clause.”

890. *Sais*, tell; imperative plural. Lat. “*Postquam enim Philippi filius adoleuit, gallina que oua aurea generabat consumpta est sterilitate;*” ib. An allusion to the fable of the goose with the golden eggs.

907. *Ermony* is the usual M.E. form of Armenia; Lat. “*Armenia.*”

911. This line is omitted in the Dublin MS., as shewn by the dots. On the other hand, l. 933* is omitted in the Ashmole MS.

916. Lat. “*Pausania (sic) filius Cereuste;*” ib.

935. *Hopid*, supposed; see Notes to P. Plowman, p. 371.

946. *Sygnes*, standards; Lat. “*signa et vexilla;*” a 4, back, col. 2.

949. Lat. “*Fili Alexander, vbi est fatum quod a diis accepisti, vt victor et non victus existeres?*” (ib.)

969. *Bane*, murderer; Lat. “*interfectorem;*” ib. Cf. Icel. *bani*, a slayer. So also in l. 3248.

985, 986. Lat. “*Uiri Macedones, Traces, Thessalonicenses, et Greci, intuemini Alexandrum;*” a 5, col. 1.

1010. *Here-wedis* is probably a compound word; lit. ‘army-weeds,’ i. e. armour. So also, perhaps, *topp-haris*, hairs of our head, in l. 1009.

1018. “*Quia iuvenes solent mortem recipere in iuuentute sua nimium confitentes. Senes autem agunt cuncta consilio titubantes;*” ib.

1028. *Calodone*; Lat. “*Calcedoniam;*” a 5, col. 2.

1033. *Namely*; read *maynly*, as in the Dublin MS.

1042. *Besandis*, besants; used to translate Lat. *talenta*.

1044. “*Alexander vero, recepto a Romanis tributo, et a cunctis*

Italiā habitantibus vsque ad mare Occidentis, quorum regio vocatur Europa, reliquit eos in pace ;” ib.

1053. “In qua paucos rebelles inuenit ;” ib.

1057. “Venit ad Pharanradem (*sic*) insulam ad deum Hamonem consulendum ;” a 5, col. 2. Valerius has “Pharam.” In North’s Plutarch, ed. 1631, p. 686, it is “the Ile of Pharos, the which at that time was a little aboue the mouth of the riuier of Nilus, called Canobia, howbeit it is now ioyned vnto firme land, being forced by mans hand.”

1063. The Lat. text (ib.) has simply “ceruus,” without further description. Read *with tyndis*; it means “a hart with a huge head, the hoarest on earth, (which head) was to look upon like a harrow, covered all over with tines.” The allusion is to the immense number of tines on the horns of this very aged hart; they were as numerous as the tines (prongs) of a harrow. The age of a hart was known by the number of tines; see the Book of St. Albans.

1077. “In locum qui dicitur Taphostri ;” ib. Valerius calls it Taposiris, which he explains as ‘tomb of Osiris ;’ from Gk. *τάφος*, a tomb. The form *Caphoresey* seems to have come out of *Taphosiri*, first changed to *Taphorisi*, and then misread as *Caphorisi*.

1097. Note that l. 1098 is purposely omitted in the numbering; see footnote 1, p. 56.

1106. “Post bibitam potionem mortem gustabis amaram. In iuuentute enim finies tuos (*sic*). Noli tamen horam aut tempus inquirere, quia nullatenus tibi reuelabo. Dicetur enim tibi a diis orientalibus fatum tuum ;” a 5, back, col. 1. As to this matter, see ll. 5024, 5406, 5413.

1116. *Ascoiloym*, Ascalon; not mentioned in the Latin text.

1120. *Alexsander*, an error for *Alexandria*.

1121. *Egist*, an obvious error for *Egyp*, Egypt. The translator has inserted this line, quite forgetting that Alexander is already supposed to be there.

1126. This black monument is the one already mentioned, in l. 192.

1142. *Sydneyne*, Sidon; not in the Lat. text.

1147. “What with one thing, and what with another.”

1149. “Erat fortis ciuitas, tam maris circumdatione, tam edificiorum constructione, tam et ipsius loci fortitudine naturali quod nullatenus ciuitatem poterat cum impetu obtinere ;” a 5, back, col. 2.

1154. *Populande*, poppling. To *popple* is to bubble (Halliwell), or to purl, ripple (Jamieson). *Hurle* is shewn by the alliteration to be an error for *purle* or *perle* (as in Dublin MS.). The sense, however, is not ‘pearl,’ but ‘ripple’ or ‘wave’; it is the Scotch *pirl*, a ripple (Jamieson). Thus the sense is—‘the pure rippling wave (or bubbling ripple) encompasses it around ;’ a poetical rendering of *maris circumdatio*.

1171. Lat. “ad pontificem Iudeorum nomine Iadelum ;” ib. Josephus mentions this letter, and calls the high priest Jaddua; Antiquities of the Jews, bk. xi. c. 8. §§ 3, 4.

1178. “For the (sake of) any riches, advises him rather,” &c.

1191. The right reading is to be got by comparing the MSS., viz. "I sall seche Iewise on the Iewes enioyne or I die," I shall enjoin such punishment on the Jews ere I die. *Iewres* is certainly an error for *Iewies* = *Iewise* or *Iuwise*, not an uncommon word for judgment, punishment, used by Chaucer. It is merely the O.F. form of the Lat. *iudicium*. Lat. "Talem faciam vindictam de Iudeis vt discernant quorum precepta debeant obseruare;" a 5, back, col. 2.

1193. Here begins the famous episode known as 'the foray of Gadirs,' which is sometimes expanded almost into a separate romance. This foray is the subject of the first part of 'The Buik of the most noble and vailzeand Conquerour Alexander the Great,' printed at Edinburgh for the Bannatyne Club in 1834, being a reprint from an earlier edition by Arbuthnot in 1580.¹ It is concerned with the exploits of Meleager and others in trying to obtain cattle for the support of the army at Tyre. In the present romance, this episode terminates at l. 1336. *Gadirs* is in the Latin text *Gadii*; and, since Plutarch describes Alexander as making war at this time against the Arabians of Antilibanus, I suppose the place meant is Kedesh in Galilee, which belonged to the Tyrians, and is at no great distance from Tyre; see *Kedesh* in Smith's Dict. of the Bible.

1207. The Lat. has "predamque ducerent infinitam;" a 6, col. 1.

1212. Lat. "Theosellus dux armentorum;" ib.

1225. *Arystes*; not mentioned in the Lat. text till further on (l. 1277), where the Lat. has *Arrideus*.

1229. Lat. "Gaulus vero ipsius ducis armentorum verticem amputauit;" ib.

1242. *Beritinus*; Lat. *Bitirius*. "Dum igitur hec omnia essent Bitirio cognita, de ciuitate Gadii exiuit cum equitibus triginta milibus ad prelum preparatis. Tanta siquidem erat copia pugnatorum quod ex nimio clamore terre [read terra] tremere videbatur;" ib.

1270. *Malstrid*; so written, but (by the common use of *t* for *c*) it stands for *malscrid*, as noted by Stratmann, s.v. *malskren*. It means bewildered; see *Maskede* in Halliwell.

1282. This line, in the Dublin MS., is written in large letters merely because it is the first line on the page. Ll. 1281—1341, with all their graphic details, are expanded out of a few lines of the Lat. text, which merely has the following passage. "Alexander autem relinquens Tyrum venit in Iosaphat vbi Bytirium et totum eius exercitum confudit. Reuersus autem Tyrum inuenit edificium quod in mari construxerat funditus dissipatum. Balaam enim cum omnibus habitantibus Tirum, post recessum Alexandri egressus, edificium illud viriliter expugnauit. Quod videntes Macedones iterum turbati sunt;" ib.

1350. *Feebles to mete*; probably *feebles* is for *fetles*, vessels (Stratmann). Then *fetles to mete* would mean 'vesselsful by measure,' which is equivalent to 'floods enough' in the Dublin MS.

¹ See an epitome of it in Weber's Metrical Romances, vol. i. p. lxxiii.

1360. *Foulire*, for *foule hire*, i. e. tread her (the city) under foot; Lat. “ipsamque pedibus conculcabis;” a 6, col. 2. “*Fouler*, to tread, stampe, or trample on;” Cotgrave.

1366. “Where the building that he built was first reared.”

1370. *Ane eld*, put for *a neld*, or *ane neld*, a needle; so also *a nedyll* in the Dublin MS. The Lat. has: “Construxit itaque in mare ingens edificium classum quod erat centum anchoris alligatum. Erat siquidem tante celsitudinis quod muris et turribus Tyrorum Alexander eminebat;” ib.

1385—1420. This spirited passage, evidently written with keen enjoyment of the scene, is not in the original.

1421—4. This somewhat varies from the original, which has: “Descessis itaque anchoris edificium parebat ad latera muri ciuitatis;” ib.

1437. “Alii scalis, alii manibus adherentes;” ib.

1447. “In quibus quanta mala sustinuerunt Syrii vsque hodie memoratur;” a 6, col. 2, and a 6, back.

1457. A large portion of the Seventh Passus, down to l. 1687, agrees rather closely with the account in Josephus, Antiq. of the Jews, b. xi. c. 8, which should be compared with the text.

1460. “Had refused him an errand,” Ashmole; “had denied him by saying nay,” Dublin.

1462. “In all his greatest need, had he not failed that man.”

1466. “On as many halidoms as open and shut.” The sense of *halidom*, in this case, is a small box for containing relics. Hence the phrase “to swear on the halidom”; Rob. of Brunne, Handlyng Synne, 5629. See the glossaries to Layamon and the Ormulum.

1469. *Iaudes*, Jaddua; see note to l. 1171.

1504. “Deinde ipsum ira domini conculcabit;” a 6, back, col. 1. Hence *ire*, not *ayre*, is right.

1513—1572. This splendid passage, abounding in fancy and invention, is not in the Latin text.

1536. “And powdered (sprinkled over) with jewellery, which was purer than (any) other.” Cf. Rich. the Redeles, i. 46.

1575. *By sum skill*, for some reason. Lat. “peruenit ad locum qui *scopolus* nuncupatur, vnde templum et ipsa ciuitas conspicitur;” ib. *Scopolus* represents the Gk. *σκόπελος*, a look-out place. Josephus (tr. by Whiston) says: “a place called *Sapha*, which name, translated into Greek, signifies *a prospect*, for you have thence a prospect both of Jerusalem and of the temple;” Antiq. xi. 8. 5.

1583. “Doctors both of dialectics and of decrees.”

1592. Lat. “super caput ei[u]s habentem syndonem mundam et desuper laminam auream fabricatam, in qua nomen Dei *tetragramaton* scriptum erat;” ib. Josephus likewise mentions this head-plate. The *tetragrammaton*, or word of four letters, is YHVH, or *Yahveh*, the exact origin of which is still disputed; see Gesenius, Heb. Dict. 9th ed. p. 323.

1605. Lat. “Uiuat viuat altissimus Alexander venit. Uiuat viuat altissimus imperator Alexander,” &c.; a 6, back, col. 2.

1614. Lat. "Uidentes hec reges Syrie plurimum obstupefacti murmurabant ;" ib.

1617. *Permeon*; Lat. (ib.) "Parmonen ;" in Josephus, Parmenio.

1630. *Anell*; read *angell*, i. e. angle, corner. *Aysy*, Asia.

1631. Lat. "illud siquidem in somnio me negligere nullatenus incitabat, sed confidenter transire ;" a 6, back, col. 2.

1633*. Not in the Ashmole MS. For *he*, read *I*, twice; for *hoppyd* read *hopis*, 1st pers. pres. indicative. Lat. "Ideoque animaduerto ipsum esse quem per somnium intuebar ;" ib.

1650. *Lythis of*, listens to ; the reading *lightez* is corrupt. In the Dublin text it would be better to put commas after *&* and *wald*; it means, "and, as the law appointed, he offers," &c.

1655. See Daniel vii. 6; viii. 3—8, 20—22; xi. 3. The text expressly meant is no doubt Dan. viii. 21.

1679. "Then we should be bound, all the heap of us, to speed thee (*otherwise*, to pray for thee) for ever."

1681. *Men of Medi*, i. e. the Jews dwelling in Media. Lat. "vt Iudei in Media et Babylonia constituti suis legibus potirentur ;" a 7, col. 1.

1687. Here ends the parallel passage in Josephus.

1691. The Lat. text (ib.) calls him Adromaticus.

1710. The words "he thought him so feeble" are in a parenthesis; the "three things" are in the accusative case.

1712. Lat. "Direxit ei pilam ludricam et zocham que fit de virgis que a capite curuatur, et caneram auream ;" ib. See note to l. 1900.

1720. Part of the story here following agrees tolerably closely with the account in Julius Valerius, ed. Mai, ch. xlvi, &c.

1725. *In fang with*; Lat. "vna cum ;" a 7, col. 2.

1731. *Puruayd þe pletours*, provided for thyself pleaders. *Pleaders* is here used as a term of reproach; Jamieson gives *pledē*, a quarrel, broil. Hence it means brawlers; Lat. "latrunculos ;" ib.

1738. *Fere*, far, by a long way.

1744. "Therefore it is better to unbend [as in Dublin MS., for see 1974] and desist from thy violence, and feign all with fairness, and rejoice as far you may." Perhaps for *feyne* (or for *fayne*) we should read *fange*, i. e. receive, accept.

1753. *Sorowe* is certainly an error for *schrewe*, i. e. shrew-mouse. "Ane erd-growyn schrewe" is a close translation of the Lat. "mus prosiiliens de scissura ;" ib.

1756—8. Not in the original.

1759. Lat. "Egressus enim de terra Cethim et per spacioa loca Perside tradis, saltus et ludos exercis [read exercens] vt mus in domibus vbi catule vel muscipule non sunt ;" ib.

1766. "I shall set an assault (i. e. make an attack) on thee."

1767*. "For if thou overshoot thy shot, thou spoilest thine arrows." A hyphen should be inserted between *ouer* and *sheet*, *oversheet* (over-

shoot) being all one word. For the distinction between *shot* (shot) and *shete*, to shoot, see Stratmann, s. v. *schot*, *scheoten*.

1774. *Forthe*, afford; the simple verb whence M.E. *aforthen* (now spelt *afford*) is derived.

1792. *Atell*; for *athell* (the usual spelling). See l. 1831.

1809. "The great stores of gold shall gather up our hearts," i. e. rouse our courage.

1813. This harsh command is made more intelligible by noting that it was meant in retaliation for the threat of Darius to *crucify* Alexander; for, in l. 1789, where the E. version has *pyne þe to dede*, the Latin has "vt principem latronum *crucifigant*"; ib. Cf. l. 1821. Julius Valerius tells the story very well; ed. Mai, pp. 55, 56.

1816. "Alas! what fault lies in us?"

1832—5. The Lat. text is more clearly worded. "Sedentibus illis dixerunt Alexandro, Rex, si vestre placet maiestati, imperate vt equites mille nobiscum veniant, quia Darium in manibus eorum trademus. Quibus Alexander respondit, Letetur animus vester in hoc quod sedetis, quia pro traditione vestri regis non dabitur vnum miles;" a 7, back, col. 1.

1837. *Crest*; i. e. the crest on the seal; see l. 1845.

1846. "If we see with a sooth," i. e. truly; Lat. "si bene volumus inspicere veritatem;" a 7, back, col. 2.

1850. *þe rime*, the rim; not *þi reme*, thy realm (as in Dublin MS.). Lat. "cum omnes in rota fortune volubili militemus;" ib.

1858. "Therefore a wise man, though he be in prosperity."

1859. *Set*, sets. This is a Midland and Southern form, short for *setteth*; the right Northern form is *settis*.

1864. "Cum minimus sepiissime extollatur, et altissimus vsque ad puluerem deprimatur;" ib.

1874. "Sed cum dii sint immortales, mortalium habere consortium penitus vilipendunt;" ib. He argues that, if Darius were really godlike, he would not have any transactions with a mortal like himself.

1881. "Nor any praise, except that you happened to overcome a little thief" (Lat. *latrunculum*).

1882. "But if it befal me, that am a child, to be the stronger" (lit. chiefer).

1893. Lat. "et quam nos dixisti habere paupertatem repellere;" b 1, col. 1.

1900. "Per zocham que a capite curua existit, contemplamur quod omnes reges et terrarum principes coram nostra presentia curnabuntur. Per cancram auream, quod caput hominis induit et congitat, nos victores et non victos arbitramur;" ib.

1911. Lat. "Primo et Anthiocho satrapibus gaudium;" ib. J. Valerius calls them *Hystaspes* and *Spynther*; p. 61.

1915. *Fra*, from the time that. *For*, i. e. since, is better.

1924. Lat. "vt illo pueriliter flagellato induam purpura et dirigam eum matri sue Olimpie derogatum;" b 1, col. 2.

1929. Lat. "sed cum pueris puerilia exercere ;" ib.
1949. "Before our worship departs ;" or, "For our worship is gone."
1951. *Be þat*, by that time.
1953. Lat. "super fluminum qui Siragma dicitur ;" ib. J. Valerius gives no name to the river.
1970. "For very great (lit. well wide) would be thy weal," &c.
Read *þi wele*, as in Dublin MS.
1972. *Mayntene*, hold, keep. Perhaps *þi-selfe* is in the dative, and means 'for thyself.'
1974. See note to l. 1744.
1976. *Nyf*, were it not for ; understand *wer*. Note the reading *yf ne wer* in the Dublin MS. Lat. "Cum absque nostra dominatione terra posset quasi vidua nuncupari ;" b 1, back, col. 1. Perhaps *vidua* merely means 'empty, desert,' rather than 'a widow.'
1984. Lat. "hec grana papaueris que in mantica destinamus ;" ib.
1988. "If thou failest to count them ;" Lat. "quod si facere non valebis ;" ib. See *trukien* in Stratmann.
1991. "For this seed that I send thee shall ever be uncounted ;"
Lat. "innumerabilis est nostrorum copia pugnatorum ;" ib. For *neuir* read *euir*, as in the Dublin MS.
1997. *Tastis* is the right reading, as shewn by the alliteration.
Lat. "mittens manum in mantica tulit de ipso semine, mittensque illud in os suum cepit mandere dicens : Uideo quod homines illius multi sunt, sed sicut hoc semen molles reperiuntur ;" ib., and col. 2.
2004. *Wald worth*, would become, i. e. set out. *For* in the Dublin MS. is a mistake for *worth*.
2021. "An host (which is) a trouble thus to enumerate," i. e. too great to count ; Lat. "maxima copia pugnatorum ;" b 1, back, col. 2.
2025. "Shall be subdued, all the pack, unto these peppercorns" (Ashmole) ; "So subdued by all the pack of these little grains" (Dublin).
2037. Lat. "Amonta princeps militie ;" ib.
2051. Lat. "passus fuit sol eclipsim nolens tantam sanguinis effusionem contemplari ;" b 2, col. 1.
2060. Lat. "tergauersus de manibus inimicorum vix cum paucis euasit ;" ib.
2067. *In his loue*, in the palm of his hand ; Lat. "in manu ;" ib.
2097. "His heart was none the fuller of pride, even by the value of a haw ;" lit. "was never, the higher by a haw, his heart full of pride."
2103. *Cecile* is the usual M.E. form of *Sicily* ; but the Lat. has *Cilicia*, which is clearly intended. So also in l. 2487. It is due to changing *Silice* into *Sicile*.
2106. *Yssanna* ; Lat. text (ib.) *Sauinia*, which is not called an island. In fact, the M.E. *ile* merely means 'province' ; see l. 2116, where it is used of Phrygia.
2109. *The tor of Tare*, the tor of Taurus. *Tor* is still used in Devonshire in the sense of hill-top. In passing from Cilicia, Alexander

crossed the Taurus range of mountains. Lat. "Ascendit . . . in montem Thaurum ;" b 2, col. 2.

2112. Here the poet must have had a different reading or have used a different text, since the Lat. has only "in qua [ciuitate] sunt nouem milia ;" ib. I have no doubt this allusion is due to a passage in Julius Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 69, where, immediately after a mention of the "culmen Tauri montis" (see l. 2109), we have an account of Alexander coming to a "Pierian" city, sacred to the muses; "ibidem musæ etiam Pierides consecratæ videbantur, unaque omnigenū figmenta viventium Orphei musicam demirantia."

2117. Lat. "ingressus templum solis ibidem victimas immolauit ;" ib.

2118. *Flum*, river; Lat. "flumen." *Fyue*; the Lat. says *fifteen*.

2120. Lat. "Beati qui laudes Homeri adepti estis. Quidam vero ex circumstantibus nomine Doccomictus respondens ait: Rex Alexander, vberiores laudes de te scribere queo quam fecit Homerus de hiis qui ciuitatem destruxerunt Troianam ;" ib. In l. 2123, *And* has the force of 'than.'

2124. Lat. "Magister, cupio sapientis esse discipulus magis quam vilis laudes habere ;" ib. The translator has quite missed the point; it means, "I would rather be the disciple of a wise man (like Homer) than receive the praises of an inferior man (like you)."

2131. *Abandra*; Lat. "Abdyron ;" ib. Abdera is meant; see J. Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 74.

2150, 2151. *Wyothy*; Lat. "Brochia ;" b 2, back, col. 1. *Caldipol*; Lat. "Caldeopolis."

2152. But the Lat. calls it "flumen senis ;" ib. In J. Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 75, it is called lake Mæotis.

2165. "Then all the strong steeds stand us in stead not to the value of a straw."

2170. *Luctus*; Lat. "Lutrus ;" ib. Locris is meant; see J. Valerius, p. 77.

2174. *Tergarontes*; Lat. "Tragacintes ;" ib. In J. Valerius, p. 77, it is called Agragantu.

2179. *Zacora*; Lat. "Zochora ;" b 2, back, col. 2. For *summe* read *nunne*, as in the Dublin MS.; the Lat. calls her "sacerdos femina virgo."

2210. Insert *to fonde*, i. e. to advance, as in Dublin MS.

2215. *Sechus*; Lat. "Zochus ;" ib. The allusion is to Zethus, brother of Amphion.

2221—30. Not in the original. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 79.

2234. *Sicistrus*; Lat. "Sistorus ;" b 3, col. 1.

2237. *Hismon*; Lat. "Ysuinea ;" ib.

2252. *Cletomacus*; Lat. "Dithomatus ;" ib. But Clytomachus in J. Valerius, p. 83, where the story is told at length.

2258. Lat. "Ille qui Thebanam construet ciuitatem tres victorias consequetur ;" ib. Thebes was rebuilt by Cassander, B.C. 316.

2285. *Beddells*, beadles; Lat. “precones;” b 3, col. 2.
2286. Lat. “Sine ciuitate vocor;” ib.
2288. &; error for *at*, that. *To-name*, nickname.
2298. *Strasageras*; Lat. “Straxagonas;” ib. In J. Valerius, “Stasagoras”; p. 86.
2299. *Duse him in*, enters; referring to Alexander.
2303. “He that ruled the city;” i. e. Strasagoras.
2308. “Non es digna sacerdotio fungi. Alexander ingressus est ad te, et bene vaticinata es ei; mihi autem dixisti quod vniuersum perderem principatum;” b 3, back, col. 1.
2312. “Venit Athenas; audiens autem que Athenienses dicebant, scripsit,” &c.; ib. The English is obscure, but is cleared up by referring to J. Valerius, p. 88, where it appears that the *prince* (l. 2311) is Strasagoras, who “goes to Athens, and complains of (Alexander) the noble one. And they (the Athenians) said harm would come to him (Alexander) unless he yielded up the city to Strasagoras.”
2332. *Afle*, an error for *Afric*; Lat. “Affrice;” ib.
2348. *Eschilus*; Lat. (b 3, back, col. 2) “Eusulus,” as if *Æschylus* were meant; but J. Valerius (p. 90) correctly has *Æschines*.
2352. *Domystyne*, Demosthenes; Lat. “Demosteni;” ib.
2361. *Sexes*, Xerxes; but the Lat. has “Sennes;” ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 93.
2384. “Culpa enim Straxagonis interuenit; quoniam sicut audiimus Alexandrum etiam sapientia circumfulsum, quod sine culpa Straxagonem minime eieciisset;” b. 4, col. 1.
2397. *Payse*, weight; “pensantem libras centum quinquaginta;” ib.
2412. Omit &, which interrupts the sense.
2419. The English is obscure. “Non cogitauimus ciuitatem vestram cum exercitu introire, sed tantum cum principibus quos habemus. Proposuimus siquidem vos ab omni suspicione criminis liberare. Uos autem de nobis contrarium cogitastis, prout vestra manifestat conscientia;” b 4, col. 2.
2425. “Sed, vt scitis, mali semper cogitant mala et committunt;” ib. The next line is not in the Latin.
2430. *Gradid*, degraded; “depositum;” ib.
2431. “Scripsimus vobis vt decem philosophos mitteretis;” ib.
2436. “Because ye held to the counsels of the sage Demosthenes.”
2440. *Lacedoyne*, Lacedæmonia. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 111.
- 2451—2460. Expanded out of a few words: “Ascenderunt etiam naues sibique ad littus maris obuiam exierunt;” b 4, back, col. 1.
2466. “Et nolite manus extendere ad altissima que tangere non potestis;” ib.
2469. Lat. “vt gratis de vestro nauigio exeatis priusquam ignis vos turpiter compellat prosilire;” ib.
2480. Compare note to l. 2466 above.
2487. *Sycile*, Sicily; but Cilicia is meant; see note to l. 2103.
2494. “Whereas I threatened him as being a robber (fit only) to

despoil small nations." Lat. "Ego autem putabam illum esse latrunculum qui tanquam predo regiones debiles preliaret ;" b 5, col. 1.

2505. "For his fame, notwithstanding all his littleness of stature, is celebrated throughout the world."

2506. Lat. "magnitudo nostra deficiat ;" ib.

2508. *Leues*, leaves, grants ; answering to Lat. "concedere ;" ib.

2512. *Oriathire* ; the Lat. has "Macher ;" ib. But J. Valerius (p. 115) has *Oxyathrus*.

2513. "Magnificasti Alexandrum, dicens quod ille exardescit ingredi Persidiam quam nos Elladam occupare ;" ib. Here *Elladam* clearly stands for *Hellada*, i. e. Hellas or Greece, and such is meant by *Elanda* in l. 2514. "We are to give up Greece, and he is to enter Persia."

2519. "Debeo ab illo, an ille a me exemplum colligere ?" b 5, col. 2.

2528, 2529. *Itaile* ; Lat. "Itali ;" ib. *Appolomados* ; Lat. "Appollimati." *Panthis*, for *Parthis* ; Lat. "Parthi."

2533. "A wolf will worry many flocks of sheep." Compare the saying of Anectanabus in l. 109, which gives point to l. 2522 above. In the text, *a wee* is taken as being an inferior reading to *þe we*, i. e. the man, which in that case is Alexander. This clearly gives the most point to the story, and was probably the original form of the narrative ; and, if so, the gathering together of the Persians (ll. 2527—32) should also refer to the same occasion ; cf. l. 889. Still, it must be admitted that, as the story now stands, the right reading must be *a wee*, i. e. a certain man, viz. another of the courtiers of Darius. This requires the insertion of marks of quotation after *drede* (l. 2532), and then l. 2533 should be read—"þa, bot a wolfe," *quod a wee* · "will were [i. e. worry] many flokkis," &c. The side-note should be altered accordingly. The Lat. text and J. Valerius agree with this latter view.

2540. *Mocian* ; Lat. "Oceanus ;" b 5, back, col. 1. In Plutarch, the river is the Cydnus, according to the usual account. So also in J. Valerius, p. 117 ; cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 145.

2554. *Philip* ; called by Plutarch "the Acharnian."

2559. *Permeon*, Parmenio ; see the epitome of the story in the note to J. Valerius, p. 119. The Lat. calls him "Parmerius ;" ib. Parmenio was put to death by Alexander, but not on this occasion. In fact, he is alive again in l. 3113. This error is noticed in Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 146.

2575. *Fysch-hale*, fish-whole, as sound as a fish. Hazlitt's Proverbs, p. 71, has "as sound as a roach" and "as sound as a trout." *Fysh-hole* occurs again in the Chevalere Assigne, l. 353. And see l. 4282 below, p. 232.

2586. *Adriac* ; Lat. "Adriacus ;" b 5, back, col. 2.

2588. *Vneachid hertis*, lost their courage ; Lat. "timuerunt ;" b 6, col. 1.

2592. *Him to tell* ; an error for *thaim to sewe*, to follow them, as in the Dublin MS. Lat. "deinde omnis exercitus sequeretur ;" ib.

2593. *Writhis*, better *wrethis*, grows angry ; "iratus est ;" ib.

2598. *Sylus*, or *Nilus*; Lat. “in Nilo incorperantur” (*sic*); ib. This is a singular specimen of medieval geography.

2603. *The floure*, i. e. the floral crown of victory.

2631. So also in J. Valerius, note to p. 119; and in Kyng Alysaunder, ed. Weber, p. 160.

2646. “Nonne cognoscebas me esse Alexandrum adiutorem et seruum vestrum?” b 6, col. 2.

2670. *Degrayd*, subdue; Lat. “superare;” b 6, back, col. 1. But a line or two should have been added after this line, stating that a new battle took place, in which Darius was soon worsted.

2673. *Batran*; Lat. (accus.) “Bacerem;” ib.

2707. “Sed impossibile est inertem et ponderosum asinum ad sidera sublimari, cum alis et volatiuis careat instrumentis;” c 1, col. 1. Hence *As* = ass.

2725. *Lazes*, laughs; Lat. “subridens;” ib.

2733. *Dedly*, mortal. “Sicque mortales puniunt cum sibi nomen immortalitatis assumunt;” ib. Hence l. 2734 means—“who have assumed the name of Lord of Immortality.”

2759. *Siphagoyne*; Lat. “Deplogione” in the gen. case; c. 1, col. 2. *Surry*, Syria. *Capados*, Cappadocia. *Landace*, Laodicea.

2767. Lat. “et nostris militibus tam indumenta quam calciamenta preparentur;” ib.

2773. *Nostanda*; Lat. “Nostodi;” ib.

2795. *He*, i. e. Darius; as the Latin shews; c. 1, back, col. 1.

2810. *Lyse*, I lie, abide; *lokis*, I look, expect, wait.

2811. “And, as I hope to recover (lit. may recover) of my sickness that I am now involved in, so am I sorry,” &c.

2819. *Rodogars*; Lat. “Rodoga;” ib. Her name was Sysigambis. J. Valerius calls her Rogodune; p. 131.

2839. *Hade*; read *hauē*. “For, as for any noble under heaven, it were safer for him to give up that which he cannot have than to pursue (his object) further.”

2851. An early example of the “Birnam wood” story. Cf. Kyng Alysaunder, ed. Weber, p. 168.

2875. *Emynelaus*; Lat. “Eumulus;” c 2, col. 1.

2882. *Granton*; Lat. “Grancus;” ib. Evidently the Granicus, though the battle there fought belongs to an early period in Alexander’s career.

2884. *Strama*; Lat. “qui Stagnia lingua Persica nuncupatur;” ib.

2900. Lat. “cursu tam rapido fluit,” &c.; c 2, col. 2.

2906. *What done man*, what sort of man, lit. man of what make or sort; Lat. (ib.) “quis es tu?” On this curious expression see my note to P. Plowman, B. xviii. 298 (p. 419); and cf. Alex. and Dindimus, ll. 222, 999. For the story, cf. Kyng Alysaunder, ed. Weber, p. 171.

2955. *Anepo*; Lat. “Anapolis;” c 2, back, col. 1. In Weber’s edition, he is called Pertage; l. 4230. Cf. ll. 883—888.

2988. For to read *on*, as in D. *On the trode-gate*, along the trodden

road, along the pathway ; Lat. "recto tramite incedebat ;" c 2, back, col. 2.

3003. Lat. "Sed antequam exiret, dissolutus est fluuius, et equum eius absorbuit, et ipse cum difficultate maxima exiliuit ;" ib.

3011. "Multitudo muscarum nullam inferet lesionem vespium paucitatem ;" c 3, col. 1. Cf. ll. 109, 2533.

3032. *The firste*, the former one ; see l. 3004.

3060. Lat. "sicut messis in campo ;" c 3, col. 2. See *rizome* in Halliwell.

3078. "Nunc fugitiuus et subiectus factus sum ;" ib.

3080. "Si cognitum esset homini misero quid accidere sibi debeat in futuro, illud in presenti cogitaret. In puncto enim vnius diei venit quod homines vsque ad nubes exaltat fortuna, et sublimes vsque ad tenebras demergit in profundum ;" c 3, col. 2, and back, col. 1. Perhaps some lines have been lost in the English version.

3100. Lat. "omnes suas victorias in Ellada consummauit." *Ellada* (E. *Elanda*) appears to refer to Hellas, i. e. Greece, as above ; see note to l. 2513.

3113. *Permeon*, Parmenio ; see note to l. 2559.

3123. *He put it*, i. e. let him put it.

3148. *Kist*, chest, i. e. tomb. The sense intended is that the amethyst was so transparent that the body could be as clearly seen as if it had been tombless. "Et tam lucidus erat ametistus vt etiam a foris integrum corpus hominis appareret ;" c 4, col. 1.

3164. *At*, against ; Lat. "contra illos qui," &c. ; c. 4, col. 2.

3174. Cf. the parallel passage in Valerius, p. 121.

3190. The two traitors are, by Valerius, called Besas (usually written Bessus) and Ariobarzanes ; p. 122. See l. 3428 below.

3219. *Cusys*, put for *Curys*, i. e. Cyrus (as in the Lat. text).

3242. "Iuro enim tibi per potentissimos deos meos quod veraciter tibi totum imperium renuncio ;" c 5, col. 1.

3248. *Thi banes*, thy murderers ; "interfectores tuos ;" ib. See l. 969.

3267*. This line is essential to the sense.

3274. "In humilitatis foneam demergatur ;" c. 5, col. 2.

3293. "Et quem deprimit exaltare potest ; et quem exaltat hominem potest sternere in profundum ;" ib.

3296. For *ere* (are) read *is* ; "for victory is granted thee by God."

3299. Lat. "aranearum artificio comparatur ;" ib.

3301. For the second *werd* read *werk* (as in l. 3299) or *web*. "With the least wind in the world that touches the work (or web), each (bit of the) work is destroyed and all comes to nothing." Note is profit, advantage, &c.

3315. *Rosan*, Roxana, whom Alexander married ; but it is doubtful if she was the daughter of Darius. See Mai's note to J. Valerius, p. 125.

3324. *Mote*, meeting, assembly ; "ad regale palacium Darii ;" c 5, back, col. 1.

3326. *Cusus*, i. e. Cyrus; as before. See l. 3219.

3342. "Secundus ex smaragdo;" c 5, back, col. 2.

3349. "Amatistus enim reprimit fortitudinem et fumositatem vini;" ib.

3355. Lat. "vt nequaquam incidat ratione impericie in sinistrum;" ib.

3365—7. "Ne prout thopasius ostendit caput eius, hoc est dignitas ipsius ex altitudine vsque ad puluerem deprimatur;" ib.

3376, 3377. These two curious lines are not in the Latin text; but the same statement occurs in Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvii. p. 270. In the Bestiary by Philip de Thaun, ed. Wright, p. 125, we are told that the adamant could be broken by means of the blood of *goats*, and this is what is meant in l. 3378, where the Lat. has "nec . . . potest collidi nisi sanguine fuerit hircino perfusus;" c 6, col. 1.

3386. *A kyng* is here a dative case; "the same diligence is for a king," i. e. is needful for a king to have.

3390. *Cried*, created; Lat. "procreatum;" ib.

3427. "Omnis populus Persarum fleuit amarissime;" c 6, col. 2.

3428. Lat. "Byffex et Anarbasontes;" ib. Cf. note to l. 3190.

3437. "And, unless your crimes had been discovered, I should not have kept my oaths." The story is told at much greater length in *Kyng Alisaunder*, ed. Weber, p. 192.

3443. Perhaps a line is lost before this, as the sense is imperfect. "Eodem siquidem tempore quidam senex cui nomen erat Duricius auunculus Darii imperatoris, qui plurimum a Persis amabatur, hic ad petitionem totius populi ab Alexandro dux in Perside est constitutus;" c 6, back, col. 1.

3458. *Feyne*, put for *fyne*, cease; "nolite me colere;" col. 2.

3467. Here ends the *first part* of the romance; the second part is concerned chiefly with the war against Porus and the description of the wonders of India. See ll. 3472, 3473. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. p. 135. Ll. 3464—3479 are not in the Latin text.

3494. "Alexander autem iste nihil optat nisi vt vniuersum mundum debellando sibi subiiciat. Prelia enim et contentiones nutriunt corpus suum;" ib.

3517. *Heried*, harried, beaten; "sicut hucusque vici;" d 1, col. 1.

3521. *Me*, for me. *Driȝtin*, &c., the Lord forbid it!

3534. *Bot rede*, but (we are) ready to follow.

3540. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. c. 4.

3547. "Cum tuipe oculos habeas et non videas;" d 1, col. 2.

3550. For the second *fȝt* read *folk*, i. e. people; "cum mollibus siquidem pugnasti;" ib.

3556. *Denys*, the French form of *Dionysius*; Lat. "Dionisius Bachus, qui Liber pater dictus est;" ib. Hence Porus refers to Dionysus or Bacchus; and this explains the context, especially l. 3555, which means "all gods and goddesses are afraid of my name;" Lat. "non solum homines verum etiam Dii nomini nostro famulentur." This also

explains *ministration*, i. e. lowly service, in l. 3554. See J. Valerius, p. 139.

3558. "Ante siquidem quam Xerxes regnaret in Persida, Indis censem Macedones erogabant. Sed quoniam inutilis erat eorum terra regique displicens, deginati sunt illam Indi;" ib. In l. 3559, *At* = that, i. e. know that.

3560. *Vs*; "it pleases us (to regard) them no longer."

3604. *Oure mey[n]he*, our company; see l. 3619.

3622. "All that, in the times (of fighting), get away unharmed never durst afterwards abide on the field, (each with) his face to his foes."

3633. "Statimque ex calore nimio vrebantur;" d 2, col. 1.

3642. "Itaque per continuos viginti dies pugna durauit;" ib.

3658. "Offers to all his old gods, and thanks them for his honour; as well the Indians as his own men, he buries them all." For *graue* read *graues*.

3665. "Quadringentas columnas aureas cum capitellis aureis preparatas;" ib.

3670. Lat. "alii de smaragdis, et alii onichimata quod naturaliter videretur ibi esse. Parietes vero ipsius palatii erant de laminis aureis cooperati," &c.; d 1, coll. 1 and 2.

3676. "Erantque ipsi parietes ornati ex margaritis, vunionibus, carbunculis, sinaragdis, et amatistis;" d 1, col. 2.

3682, 3683. Not in the Latin text; yet the translator alludes to his original here.

3688. "And a shrine was built over each man."

3707. "Sed in ea multa genera serpentium consistebant;" ib.

3711. Lat. "Talifrida;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 202.

3725. "Audiuimus quod animus tuus sapientia floreat et coruscet, et preterita recolis, presentiaque disponis, habens noticiam futurorum;" d 2, back, col. 1.

3738. "Et sumus numero ducentarum quatuordecim milia feminarum;" ib.

3746. "Si autem femina fuerit, nostris moribus enutritur;" col. 2.

3751. "Cum autem cum victoria redimus, a nostris vnanimiter adoramur. Itaque si contra nos veneris, viriliter proposuimus preliari. Quod si tu nos viceris, nullam laudem penitus consequeris," &c.; ib.

3759. "Quia multa tibi possent aduersa contingere que nullatenus meditaueris;" ib.

3768. "Sed quia conuersationem vestram diligimus, in consilium vobis damus," &c.; d 3, col. 1.

3771. For the second *to*, we should perhaps read *but*.

3775. Lat. "polleros decem indomitos;" ib.

3777. The line is too short; read *many mayn giftis*.

3778. *Conquiris*, put for *conqueres*, conqueress.

3780. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. c. 11, p. 145.

3782. *Batriane*; Lat. "Bactricen"; i. e. Bactria (ib.). Written

"Bactriacen" in the Lat. text given in Cockayne's *Narrationes*, 1861, p. 53, l. 1; which text may also be profitably consulted.

3790. *On*; read *of*, i. e. "by the sun."

3794. Lat. "vbi multitudo serpentiam et ferarum erat;" ib.

3800. *Zephall*; Lat. *Zephir* (col. 2); or, in Cockayne's Latin text, *Severus*. A similar story is told by Plutarch. See 2 Sam. xxiii. 16.

3807. "An ego solus nutriar sine illis?" (ib.)

3820. "Habebat enim elephantes mille Alexander, qui aurum eius portabant, et quadringentas quadrigas omnes falcatas, et mille ducentas bigas, equites trecenta milia, camelos, mulos, dromedarios, innumerabilem multitudinem qui annonam et alia necessaria exercitui deserebant;" ib. It may be observed that the translator, in the latter part, begins to curtail the story, omitting some unimportant details. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 211.

3834. "Et in ipso castro homines apparebant;" d 3, back, col. 1.

3844. "Et cum iam quartam partem fluminis transnatassent, insurgentes ipsius fluminis yppotami eos continuo deuorauerunt;" col. 2. See Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 214.

3849. "Occurrebant eis leones, pardi, et vrsi, rinocerontes, tigres, dracones, et eos fortiter impugnabant;" ib.

3852. "Mirantes autem ipsum fluuum circa horam vndeicimam inuenierunt stagnum melliflum et suave;" ib.

3858. "Que silua . . . ex prenominatis calamis est iuncta;" ib. It would thus appear that *ryse* means 'rushes', with reference to *redis* in ll. 3815, 3832, where the Latin text also has *calamis*.

3862. "Cumque luna inciperet luceare, subito incepérunt in ipsum stagnum scorpiones mire magnitudinis aduenire; deinde dracones et serpentes ceperunt ex diuersis coloribus festinare, totaque ipsa terra ex eorum sibilis resonabat," &c.; ib.

3884. "Then (some) of his soldiers were emboldened." Lat. "milites eius confortati sunt;" d 4, col. 1.

3888. Lat. "viginti milites et triginta serui a draconibus perierunt;" ib.

3891. "And to him, finally, falls all the praise."

3894. Lat. "habentes dorsa duriora cocodrillis;" ib.

3898. "Uerum multos ex eis interfecerunt. Alii intrauerunt stagnum;" ib. The English is obscure; but cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, l. 5380:

"Ac natheles in her honden
Hy henten grete fire-bronden :
And thorugh that fyre, and goddes mighth
Hy hem sloughen dounerighth."

3902. Lat. "venerunt super eos leones albi;" ib.

3906. *Berys*, (properly) bears; but read *barys*, boars; Lat. "porci;" ib.

3907. Lat. "quorum dentes vno cubito longi erant; et illis homines agrestes . . . vna cum porcis super homines similiter currebant;" col. 2.

3918. "And then he bids them quickly to light, close upon the pool, outside his army everywhere, horrible fires."

3921. *Meere*, mare; "similis equo;" ib.

3926. "Nominabantur autem, secundum Indicam linguam, *Onocentaurus*; et antequam de ipsa aqua biberet, fecit impetum super illos;" ib. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 224, where the same strange animals are called *dentyrans*. But the name should certainly have been printed *dentyran*, short for *denti-tyran*, Lat. *dentityrannus*. In fact, Cockayne has "dentem tyrannum;" p. 56, l. 18. This is the Lat. form of *Odontotyrannus*, the name given to the creature in J. Valerius, p. 167. The E. version has *Adanttrocay*, evidently founded (partially) on the same name; for which *Onocentaurus* has been substituted by confusion in the Lat. text. It is probable, however, that the form *Odontotyrannus* is also a corruption (as it gives no good sense); and I suspect that the original word was *Odontokeratias*, i. e. 'with horns like teeth.' The form in the E. version seems to point to this name. In Mandeville's Travels, ed. Halliwell, p. 290, a picture of the animal is given; he is there called *Odenthos*.

3932. Lat. "mures maiores talpis," ib.; Cockayne has "mures . . . *uulpibus* similes;" p. 56.

3936. "Ceperunt enim volare vespertilioes vt columbe, quorum dentes erant vt dentes hominum;" ib. J. Valerius (p. 168) has: "Ad hæc alites quibus apud nos vocabulum vespertilio est, sed quæ illic super columbae magnitudinem," &c.

3939. "And they sharply wounded that which was unarmed," i. e. the unprotected faces of the soldiers.

3943. *Blekest*, killed; in a stronger sense than mod. E. *blemished*. The Lat. has "vulnerantes," from the employment of which word the poet infers that no one was actually killed.

3944. "Venerunt aues magne, colorem rubicundum habentes, pedes vero et rostra nigra, neque nocuerunt eis;" ib. Cockayne has "aues *uulturibus* similes;" p. 56. Hence *vowtres* are vultures. *Boukes* (bodies) is an error for *bekkes* (beaks).

3947. *Did bot plaid by*, did no more than played with.

3950. Lat. "venerunt in partibus latrimariis" (*sic*); d 4, back, col. 1.

3957. "Et arbores folia vt lana habentes, que gentes ipse colligebant et ex ea vestimenta faciebant;" ib. An interesting notice of silk. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 268; Cockayne's text, p. 53, l. 2.

3987. "Confidebat igitur Porus in altitudine corporis sui, que in quinque cubitorum altitudine videbatur;" d 4, back, col. 2.

3995. "So sharply that he totters with it, and (he) nearly felled him for ever."

3996. "Milites vero Pori altis vocibus vociferauerunt, audiens itaque Porus clamorem quem suus exercitus faciebat, faciem suam versus eos voluit;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 148.

4010. For *your* read *our*; it refers to the Indians.

4015. Lat. "ceperunt Alexandrum tanquam deum glorificare;" ib.

4019. Here begins the "Fragment B" of the Alexander Romance, edited by me for the E. E. T. S. under the title of Alexander and Dindimus. The Latin original of several passages is printed in the same book, to which the reader is particularly referred. See also the notes to the same, at p. 45. It is needless to repeat here explanations which have been already given. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxix.

4026. "As naked as a needle;" a proverbial phrase. See P. Plowman, C. xv. 105, xx. 56; and the Notes to P. Plowman, p. 290.

4044. Insert *in* before *wildernes*. The scribe has obviously omitted it by error.

4060. "Why dost thou hasten from place to place?"

4064. *Rifte*; evidently an error for *riste* = *reste*, rest. "It would be my desire to rest, but another spirit, and not my spirit, prevents my spirit from so doing." Lat. "Uellem siquidem in pace consistere," &c.; d 5, col. 2.

4067. Here there is a break in "Fragment B"; see Alex. and Dind. p. 5.

4068. Lat. "vbi erant statue quas Hercules exerat;" ib.

4074. Insert *with* after *fillis*; "and fills them with florins, to the number of 1500." The story is that this enormous quantity of gold was required (or at any rate, assigned) merely to fill up the holes which had been made through the statuary. This is shewn by the parallel passage in J. Valerius, p. 214, which is much more clearly expressed.

4096. "Exiuit . . bestia similis ippotauro habens pectus vt cocodrilli, dorsum vt serra, dentes vero ipsius vt gladii acuti videbantur. In accessu uero ipsius tarda erat vt testudo;" d 5, back, col. 1. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 236.

4103. *Eumare*; Lat. "Thamar." Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 236.

4108. The Latin is clearer. It tells us that the squealing of swine (called *swelyng* in l. 4112) was efficacious in frightening the elephants. Hence Alexander directs his men to take swine with them, and beat them till they should squeal. Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 237.

4121. *Viaunce*, viand, food; as if from Lat. *uiuentia*.

4126. Lat. "habentes corpora pilosa sicut bestie;" d 6, col. 1. Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 239.

4130. Lat. "se in ipsum fluum dimiserunt;" ib. Cockayne has "marini fluminis se immerserunt uorticibus;" p. 58.

4140. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 169.

4158. Lat. "propter autumnale equinoctium hoc contingit;" ib.

4162. Lat. "omnia que ventus disperserat collegerunt;" ib.

4166. Lat. "cadebantque niues magne vt lana;" d 6, col. 2. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 169.

4168. For *And* read *He*; "and, lest it should not cease, he made his men tread it down, like floors, with their feet."

4182. "And, where it approaches the unprotected skin, it harms it for ever."

4188. See the references, in the margin, to the parallel passages in

Alexander and Dindimus. The side-notes, in many places, closely correspond.

4221. See the note to Alex. and Dindimus, p. 47 (l. 221).

4228. "And your learning shall be none the less, even to the value of a leek," i. e. in the least degree.

4233. *He*, i. e. Dindimus. *Him* (l. 4234), Alexander.

4246. The fourth *subiectis* should be *subiect*. "For an unwise king cannot rule his subjects, and (make them) to be subjects as subjects should be, but his subjects make him subject to his subjects."

4263. "We decline, amongst us, all that is too much above measure."

4264. "Except that which Nature leaves us."

4293. *The sewyn*, i. e. the seven deadly sins.

4318. "Which is parted, among all the pack of us, by equal portions." In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 15) read "quia communiter omnia supportamus," not *quam*; e 1, col. 1.

4321. *Justice of aire*, judge on circuit; "justice in eyre" is a common law-phrase.

4326. For *nulla*, in the Lat. text (Alex. and Dindimus, p. 15) read *nulla mala*; the word *mala* was accidentally omitted.

4376. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 19) for *moueter* read *mouetur*.

4387. "The which I suppose, sir, it would be unwholesome for thee to observe." In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 20) for *vident* read *videtur*.

4389. *And we*, &c.; "and we deserve no wrath." Cf. the E. version in Alex. and Dind. l. 512.

4397. "Much would have more;" a proverb.

4408. *Or* should probably be *our*; "may our God give them sorrow!" It is a form of curse.

4410. *Him*; a curious error. Read *hir*, her.

4416. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 21), last line but one, read *Proserpina*. The letter *p* was unfortunately shifted.

4417. Insert a comma after *sottis*; it is in the vocative case.

4446. *Maydese*, may God aid us! "And yet, as may God aid us, for all your toil (?), that mother created you;" [read *ȝow* for *ws*].

4449. *Assemey*; perhaps an error for *seemly*, seemly. The alliteration demands the letter *s*.

4460. *Seropis*, Serapis. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 23, last line but two) for *solem* read *solam*.

4470. "Ye act (lit. let) as though they might cure all that any man would like (to have cured)." *Leth* is the same as *lethien*, to mitigate, relieve, assuage, comfort, cure. The sb. *leth* occurs in l. 4593.

4473. "Which (gods) have neither sight nor soul, but (are) the work of man."

4478. *For his son*, for the sake of His Son. This is a curious specimen of anachronism; the Brahmans are here made Christians. In

l. 4486, they are made to denounce ‘maumetry’, i. e. the idolatry supposed to be practised by Mahometans.

4487. “That thrusts you plump down to the devil, when ye are dead (and gone) hence.”

4492. “But ye pay respect to many others that are no more akin to Him than is the flesh of fish to the fair member (of men),” i. e. to a man’s limb.

4494. See note to l. 645 of Alex. and Dindimus, p. 52.

4510, 4511. *Serenon*, a form due to *Cererem*, acc. of *Ceres*; see the Latin. *Hem* is for *him*, i. e. Ceres (supposed masculine). “For formerly quarters of whete without number (were owing) to him;” i. e. Ceres first sowed wheat. See notes to Alex. and Dind. p. 54, l. 692.

4517. “And leave not so much as a limb for your bodies to stand on.”

4528. “For joy of his (the peacock’s) pride.”

4531. For *him* read *hir*; “is yielded to her as tribute.”

4534. See notes to Alex. and Dind. p. 54, l. 719.

4583. “Nor any sort of metal to make (tools) with, neither *meslin* nor other metal.”

4589. *Lere at*, learn from.

4592. “Were they that have pains so wise, who would be so widely praised as lepers?”

4619. “That all might continue in one condition.”

4621. *So*, &c.; “so the world requires.” A common phrase; see P. Plowman, B. prol. 19; Alex. and Dind. l. 407.

4622. *Ouir wild*; an error for *our will*; Lat. “humana voluntas;” e 2, back, col. 2.

4626. “We do but trample on it.” See l. 4681.

4639. “Or else ye are angry with your good fortune.”

4640. Probably *pure* is an adverb, signifying purely, wholly. If so, omit the comma after *teches*.

4649. “From Paris to Rome.” A singular illustration.

4653. “Nor (are) angry with our Lord.” Understand *ar*.

4654. *Seerties*, varieties; Lat. “varietates;” e 3, col. 1. For *we seet* read *he set*, he appointed; Lat. “constituit.”

4657. “That man is God’s friend, and (yet) is none the more a god.” Lat. “non Deus, sed Dei amicus appellatur;” ib.

4658. Read *in* before *my*. “This similitude, that thou appliest to our race in my letter.” Also by “my letter” we must understand “the letter sent to me.”

4664. *All be we*, although we be. At the end of l. 4665, substitute a comma for the full-stop.

4666. “Nevertheless (as *ye* say) we consider ourselves to be gods by a (recognised) law(?); but it is *you*, not *we*, that continually practise the same,” viz. that attempt to be as gods.

4682. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 38, last line, p. 39, first line) for *bibiberit* read *biberit*.

4685. "The cursed game of avarice would be altogether drowned (i. e. put an end to) by it."

4714. Here ends Fragment B. of the Romance.

4720. *Acrea*; Lat. "Adzea;" e 3, back, col. 1. *Angill*, angle, nook.

4734. For *fode*, read *fynd*; see the footnote. "As I find (in the book)."

4741. Lat. "venit super eos quidam homo agrestis corpore magno et pilosus vt porcus et vox illius tanquam porci, et non loquebatur sed semper tanquam stridebat;" e 3, back, col. 2. The description in the English text is much amplified.

4765. *Lindis*, lindens; hence, trees in general. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 171; also Alex. and Dind. p. 5.

4777. *A bad*, he bade. *A nappill*, an apple.

4791—4802. The Lat. merely has: "Subito peruenit draconum serpentium et leonum multitudo, qui eos maxima angustia angustiauerunt. Tandem ab eorum periculis euaserunt;" e 4, coll. 1 and 2.

4808. *Bothom*, bottom of the valley. *Bournes*, streams.

4810. *A nezen daies*, a (period of) nine days; Lat. "Completis . . . octo diebus;" e 4, col. 2. Cf. l. 4814.

4812. Lat. "peruenerunt ad radicem vnius montis;" ib.

4819. *Gols*, gules, i. e. red; cf. l. 5060. Lat. "inuenerunt planiciem maximam, cuius terra erat valde rubicunda. Erantque in ipsa planicie arbores infinite que vltra mensuram cubiti non crescebant, quarum fructus et folia suauissima vt ficus;" ib.

4830. "Erantque ipsi montes excissi vt paries, ita vt nullus posset ascensum facere ad cacumen;" ib.

4850. Lat. "constituit terminos quos nullus [trans]ire presumebat. Et fecit fieri clippeum magnum et longum cubitis septem et latum cubitis quatuor; et ab exteriori parte in superficie clippei fecit speculum maximum fieri. Fecitque sibi subtalares lineos. Cepit contra basiliscum opposito sibi clippeo incedere," &c.; e 4, back, col. 1. The English version is too much abridged.

4867. The plain is described before; l. 4818.

4875. "Et . . . peruenit ad quendam montem adamantium in cuius ripa auree cathene dependebant;" e 4, back, col. 2.

4885. "That he and his host honour, and offers to each."

4908. "Inuenerunt hominem iacentem in lecto aureo pallio textiliorum ornato;" e 5, col. 1. Lines 4912—4919 are not in the Latin text.

4925. Lat. "cuius caput et barba tanquam purissima lana videbatur;" ib.

4936. "And thou shalt hear, perhaps, ere thou go hence."

4941. For *þi delume* read *þe deluuie*, the deluge; Lat. "Priusquam vnda diluuii operiret terram;" ib. And probably *drechet* should be *drenchet*. The form *diluuiie* (deluge) occurs in P. Plowman, B. x. 411.

4942. "Does it not please thee to look on the trees that live for evermore?" As to the Trees of the Sun and Moon, cf. J. Valerius,

p. 172; Kyng Alisaunder, p. 277. See also Yule's edition of Marco Polo; Mandeville's Travels, p. 298; Cockayne's text, p. 60.

4947. "This word I would desire (to hear), if it be your will; all the world is not dearer to me (than this desire)."

4964. Lat. "vna cum Ptholomeo et Anthiocho et Perdica incedebat;" ib.

4972. "Erantque ipse arbores alte pedibus centum et lauris erant similes et oliue ex quibus thus et balsamus largissime effluebant;" ib.

4982. The Lat. description of the Phœnix is as follows. "Et ausi gerebat in capite cristam similem pauoni, et fauces cristatas, et circa collum circulum aureum fulgentem. Postrema vero parte purpurea erat. Extra caudam vero roseis pennis in quibus ceruleus color erat;" e 5, col. 2.

4996. "Sursum aspicite et de quoquaque scire volueritis in corde vestro reuoluets. Sed palam nolite aliquid enarrare;" ib.

5017. "Si cum triumpho Macedoniam remearet;" ib.

5036. *For writhing*, for fear of making angry, for fear of offending.

5083. Lat. "encenia plurima sibi contulerunt, videlicet, pelles ex piscibus habentes figuram pardii et leonis, et pelles morenarum que per longum septem cubitis tendebantur;" e 5, back, col. 2.

Hence *slozis* (5085) means 'sloughs' or skins.

5088. Lat. "sine calce constructa;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 44, p. 177. The name of *Candace* is doubtless borrowed from Acts viii. 27. Cf Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 305.

5092. Called in the Latin Candeolus, Marsipius, and Carracorinus. In J. Valerius, the eldest son is called Candaules; in Weber, Candulake.

5113. *With*, by. Before *melid* understand *is*. "And that is not only told us by men of this world."

5123. "Dirigo Amoni deo tuo bipedes centum, aues spirciones ducentas, cathenas aureas insertas lapidibus preciosiosis in quibus erant decem dependentes plena auibus supradictis; et ceneras aureas triginta, uestes hebenos mille quingentos, rinoceros octuaginta, pantheras tria milia, pelles pardii et leonis quingentos;" e 6, col. 1. The translator makes the description in l. 5127 refer to the *rekanthes* (i. e. chains) in l. 5128, and translates the whole in a very free way. He seems to have consulted J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 47, which has: "Habebis ergo tibi ex nobis amicitiae argumentum centum laterculos auri grandissimos, Æthyopas impubes quinque (cf. l. 5132), psittacos sex, phrygasque sex, præterque haec Hammoni deo nostro coronam smaragdis ac margaritis etiam toreumatis pretiosiorem. His et loculos resertissimos cuiusque generis margaritarum atque gemmarum ad decem numerum, eburneosque alios loculos octaginta una misi . . . elephantes trecentos quinquaginta," &c.

5151. Lat. "rex Ebraicorum;" ib. But J. Valerius has "a quodam Bebryciorum tyranno;" p. 181. See Weber, p. 307.

5158. "It might have pierced any heart."

5163. "By the time that he approached the tent."

5205. "And say to that sire, on thy behalf," &c. *On thi behalf* = in thy name, i. e. in the name of the (pretended) Alexander.

5239. "Uidebant etiam vites habentes vuarum botros maximos, quos vnu homi portare non potuisset, et nuces ferentes maximos fructus vt pepones;" e 6, back, col. 1. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 265.

5268. *Pentests*. There is no such word in the Lat. text, nor in J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 57.

5299. "Respondit regina, bene dicis, Alexander. Plus enim apud Grecos quam apud Indos digna fuissent;" f 1, col. 1. Hence, in l. 5300, & stands for 'than'.

5319. "Audiens hec Alexander stridere dentibus et caput eius reuoluere cepit omni parte;" ib.

5323. "Ut quid inter temetipsum irasceris et turbaris?" (ib.)

5333. *Bebricans handis*, the hands of the Bebrian; cf. l. 5151.

5337. Lat. "Karothesus" (col. 2); but before, Carracorinus; see note to l. 5092.

5377. "It is only needful for thee to grant (assent) to give me what goods I ask for."

5401. "Quis est tu, domine? At ille respondit, Ego sum Thinthisus, regnum mundi tenens et mundum subiugans, qui vniuersos mundanos tue supposui maiestati. Fabricasti nomini tuo ciuitatem [i. e. Alexandria], et nomini meo non construxisti templum;" f 1, back, col. 2. J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 67, calls this deity Sesonchosis.

5413. "I have told thee ere now;" see l. 1103. Lat. "Si esset homini nota causa mortis, dolore intollerabili moueretur;" ib. The E. text is corrupt; in l. 5414, *I* should of course be *he*. "Were that evidence known to any man, of what (were his) doom, then *he* would die for sorrow." Serapis, being immortal, could not die at all.

5417. "Ibi fabricabitur sepulcrum tuum;" ib.

5419. "Prayed that the Lord would well preserve him."

5425. "Ipsi vero serpentes viuebant de lasere et pipere que vallis ipsa gignebat;" ib.

5433. The side-note, by an oversight, is wrong. Alexander's men are not killed by the snakes, but by the beasts having claws three feet wide.

5442. A picture of this griffin is given on the title-page of Halliwell's edition of Mandeville's Travels; see ch. xxvi. of that book, p. 269.

5458. For *thai* read *thair*. "With gold on their heels," i. e. knights of rank, who wore gold spurs.

5467. Lat. "obtulerunt ei munera, scilicet spongias albas et purpureas mire magnitudinis et conchas maximas, per singulas duos vel tres sextarios continentates. Necnon et tunicas de vitelis (*sic*) maximis confectas, et vermes quos de ipso fluuioatrahebant, quorum grossitudo erat maior coxa hominis, et eorum gustus erat dulcis vt piscis . . . et morenas . . . Pondus autem de vnaquaque morena erat ducentarum quinquaginta librarum;" f 2, coll. 1 and 2.

5475. Here we have the story of the sirens or mermaids.

5482. Lat. "dentes habebant vt canes;" col. 2.

5483. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 265.

5487. Lat. "Gog et Magog, Agatan, Magehon, Alegthor, Appelmai, Limith, Iunii, Rothe, Redem, Cemarre, Cabellea, Camarciant, Cathomi, Amarde, Getimadi, Anafag, Candorem, Rinocephali, Thirbei, Alonis, Accimei, Philonis, Satramei et Soltani;" ib.

5504. Lat. "homines lingua Greca loquentes;" f 2, back, col. 1.

5512. Lat. "vt fere celo propinquius esset;" ib.

5520. "Flesh a little way off from them that they could not reach to."

5530. Lat. "cum angustia maxima ad exercitum peruenit;" col. 2.

5531. I give the Latin of this remarkable passage. "Post hec ascendit in cor Alexandri vt maris profunda quereret et omnium piscium genera scrutaretur. Statimque iussit vitrarios ante se venire, et precepit eis vt facerent dolium ex vitro clarissimo et splendidissimo vt possent a foris omnia clarissime conspici. Factumque est ita. Deinde iussit eum catherinis ferreis religari et a fortissimis militibus teneri. At ille intrans ipsum dolium clausa porta ex pice composita descendit in profundum maris. Uiditque ibi diuersas figuras piscium et diuersos colores habentes imagines bestiarum terre, et per terram in profundo maris tanquam bestie pedibus ambulantes et comedebant fructus arborum que in profundo maris nascebantur. Ipse autem belue veniebant vsque ad eum, postea fugiebant. Uiditque alia mirabilia que nemini voluit enarrare eo quod hominibus incredibilia viderentur. Tempus vero mansionis sue in aquis quod militibus suis predixit Alexander completum erat, et traxerunt eum milites ad superiora;" ib.

5557. "Inuenerunt animalia que habebant in capite ossa serrata et acuta vt gladius;" f 2, back, col. 2, and f 3, col. 1.

5566. *Tupis*, tups, rams; Lat. "arietes;" f 3, col. 1.

5594. Lat. "quam in eius memoriam nominauit Bucifallam;" col. 2.

5596. *Detiraty*; Lat. "flumen qui (*sic*) dicitur Tyrum. Et obuauerunt sibi homines illius terre ferentes ei elephantum quinque milia et currus falcatos centum milia;" ib.

5613. *Nabizanda*; Lat. "Nabuzardon;" ib.

5615. Lat. "vsque ad diem obitus sui ibidem per septem menses, in pace mortuus;" ib.

5619. The letter of Alexander to Aristotle is given by J. Valerius, bk. iii. capp. xxiii—xlivi, and contains an account of the wonders which Alexander had seen in his expedition, many of which have already been narrated in the present version. An Anglo-Saxon version of Alexander's letter was edited by Mr. Cockayne in 1861 in his "Narratiunculae Anglice Conscriptæ."

5641. *Statute*, an error for *statue*; the Lat. text has *statua*.

5644. "Parietes vero ex topasio et per vniuersos gradus erant preciosi lapides cuiusque generis inserti. Erat etiam in summitate ipsius lapidis rubicundus qui tam in nocte quam in die lucebat. Et in ipso

throno erant imagines vndeque constitue, in quibus erant versus scripti
Grecis literis et Latinis nomina omnia prouinciarum que seruiebant
Alexandro ; ” f 3, back, coll. 1 and 2.

5656. This list of names is not in the Latin text. *Panthi* is Parthia. Many of the names seem to be inserted at random, and the list includes places scattered over almost every part of Europe and Asia; compare the list of places conquered by king Arthur, as given in the alliterative *Morte Arthure*, p. 2.

5677. The fragment ends here. The rest of the story, as given on pp. 276—278, is abridged from the Latin text, leaf f 3, back, &c.

NOTES ON THE “STORY OF ALEXANDER.”

- P. 280, l. 42. See p. 42, l. 893 of the Poem.
- „ , l. 45. See ll. 4019—4066 of the Poem ; and cf. l. 4194.
- P. 281, l. 62. See Alexander and Dindimus, p. 3, l. 69.
- „ , l. 72. See the same, p. 4, l. 88.
- „ , l. 75. This story is neither in the Romance here printed, nor in Alexander and Dindimus. The same remark applies to the next story, beginning at l. 120.
- P. 283, l. 135. See p. 274, l. 5617.
- „ , l. 140. “One of the grettest lordez” may refer to Ptolemy of Egypt ; but the story referred to is insufficiently indicated.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX, AND INDEX OF NAMES.

FORMS enclosed in marks of parenthesis, as for instance (Abaytez), given under Abates, occur in the Dublin MS. As a rule, words should be looked for under the form in which they occur in the Ashmole MS. Thus *abaytez* in the Dublin MS., l. 2161, should be sought as if spelt *abatis*, the spelling in the Ashmole MS. in that line. It is then easily found under Abates.

Lines marked with an asterisk, such as 789* (under *Aboute*), occur only in the Dublin MS. See the starred lines, 723* to 844* on pp. 25 to 33; also a few additional lines so marked further on, which can cause no difficulty.

Besides the abbreviations *s.*, *adj.*, *adv.*, for *substantive*, *adjective*, *adverb*, &c., the following are used in a special sense:—*v.*, a verb in the infinitive mood; *ger.*, a gerund; *pr. s.*, present tense, 3rd person singular; *pt. s.*, past tense, 3rd person singular; *pr. pl.*, present tense, 3rd person plural; *pt. pl.*, past tense, 3rd person plural. Other persons are denoted by the figures 1 or 2. Note also *imp. s.*, imperative singular, 2nd person; *imp. pl.*, imperative plural, 3rd person; *pp.*, past participle.

A large number of references are given, but they are not exhaustive. All forms of words are recorded, with but few unimportant exceptions.

- | | |
|---|--|
| A, art. a , 13, 22, 39, 47, &c. So, probably, in l. 131. | Abbeon, a country, 5660. |
| A, adj. one, 57, 1131, 3066. | Abet (Habet), <i>s.</i> habit, dress, 2303; |
| A, interj. ah! 242, 964, 3252; (Aa, in Dublin MS.), 964. | Abite (Habett), garment, dress, 1487, 1531. See Abite, Abytt. |
| A, pron. he, 4777; (A), 1492. | A-bide (Abyde), <i>v.</i> endure, 2137; |
| A, v. have, 5158. | Abidis (Abydez), <i>pr. s.</i> awaits, 1576. See A-byde. |
| Aande , <i>s.</i> breath, 4000. Icel. <i>andi</i> , önd. See Ande. | Abite (Habett), <i>s.</i> habit, dress, 1624. See Abet, Abytt. |
| A-baist , <i>pp.</i> abashed, afraid, 2593, 5191; (Abaysed), 1492; Abaiste, dismayed, 4109; Abayste, cast down, 402. | Able, <i>adj.</i> powerful, 941. |
| Abandra (Bandara), <i>a city</i> , 2131. See Abrandra. | Abletus, <i>for</i> Abbetus, <i>pl.</i> habits, robes, 1928. See Abet. |
| A-baste , <i>imp. pl.</i> 2 <i>p.</i> abase, 3877. (<i>Error for Abase.</i>) | A-bleyd, <i>pp.</i> with sorrowful looks, sad, 402. “To look <i>blae</i> , to look blank, having the appearance of disappointment;” Jamieson. |
| Abates (Debates, <i>wrongly</i>), <i>pr. s.</i> lessens, 2506; Abatis (Abaytez), <i>pr. pl.</i> fail, sink, 2161. | Abofe (Abowne), <i>adv.</i> above, 1398; (Aboue), 1374; (Abowue), to the top, uppermost, 727. MS. D. can be read either as <i>abouue</i> or <i>abowne</i> ; perhaps the latter is better. See <i>Above</i> in Murray’s New Dict. |
| A-bayste , <i>pp.</i> afraid, cast down, 402; (Abaysed), 1492. See A-baist. | |

- A-bofe (Abowne), *prep.* over, 1587.
 A-bofe, *s.* a being above, exaltation, 4241.
 A-bore, *pp.* born, 590.
 Aboue (Abofe), *adv.* above, 1416.
 See Abofe.
 Aboundance, *s.* abundance, 4668.
 A-boute, *adv.* about, around, 108, 505, 556, 945; (Abowt), all round, 1152; (About), everywhere, 1763.
 Aboute, *prep.* around, round, 595, 2209; About, 505; (Abouute), 789.* See Per.
 A-bowe (Bowe), *pr. s.* submit, 2418.
 A-brade (On brade), *adv.* abroad, widely, 774.
 A-brade, abroad, cast or strewn abroad; *but prob. an error for*
 As brade, as large (see note), 4166.
 Abrandra (Bandra), *a city*, 2148.
 See Abandra.
 (Abreggez); see Breggis.
 Absens, absence, 637.
 A-byde, *ger.* to resist, 3017. See
 Abide, Bide.
 (Abytt), *s.* habit, dress, 2886. See
 Abet, Abite.
 Acats, *pl.* agates, 5273.
 Achelles, Achilles, 2125.
 A-cheues (Achevys), *pr. s.* achieves, wins, 1052; (Achefe), *pr. s. subj.* may happen, 822*; A-cheued (Achevet), *pt. s.* finished his journey, got away, 1036; Achewid, *pt. s.* achieved, 3730; A-cheued (Chefyd), *pp.* achieved, 2712; Achevyd (Acheuett), 1237.
 A-corde, *s.* agreement, 620.
 A-corde, *v.* agree, 3311; A-cordis (Acordes), *pr. pl.* agree, 1023.
 A-count, *ger.* to account of, 1934;
 A-counte, *ger.* to reckon, compute, 3693; A-counte (Acount), *ger.* to count, 1993; A-count, *v.* count, 1987; A-conte, *v.* count, 673.
 A-coupe (Accoup), *v.* accuse, blame, 2433. O.F. *acouper*, to blame.
 Acrea, *Lat.* Adzea, 4720.
 Acres, Acres, 5660.
 Actis, *pl.* acts, 4369.
 Actons, *pl.* tunics, leather jackets, 3413. Orig. a jacket of quilted cotton, worn under the coat of mail. O.F. *auqueton*, from Span. *alcoton*, lit. 'the cotton.'
 Acustomnes, *pl.* customary behaviour, customs, 4577.
 Adamand, *s.* adamant, diamond, 4876; Adamands, *pl.* 5384; Adamants, 5273. See Adamant.
 Adanttrocay, 3927. See the note.
 Adill, *ger.* to earn (for themselves), 3191. Icel. *öðla*, refl. *öðla-sk*, to earn for oneself; from *öðal*, property. See Addle in Murray.
 Admitts (Admittes), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* admit, receive, 2358.
 Adomant, *s.* adamant, diamond, 3345; (Adamant), 3372. See Adamant.
 Adoure, *ger.* to adore, 2176, 5118; (Adour), *v.* adore, 1059; Adoures, *pr. s.* does honour to, honours, 5224; (Adours), reverences, 2680; Adoures, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* adore, 4466, 4548; Adoured (Adouret), *pt. pl.* 1619; Adhoured, 1931; (Adoure), *imp. s.* adore, 3242.
 A-dred (Dred), *pp.* afraid, 1355; (A-drede), 2489.
 Adriac (Andriake), *prop. name.* 2586.
 Aduersites, *pl.* adversities, 309.
 A-ferd, *pp.* afraid, 492.
 Affie (Affye), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* trust in, 1725. See Affyed.
 Affinite, affinity, kindred, 923; followers, 1235.
 Affirmed (Enformed), *pp.* declared, 1897.
 Afraid, *pp.* afraid, 4151, 5621; (Affrayd), 3189. See Afray.
 Affrike, Africa, 3765; (Aufrike), 1047; (Aufrik), 1050; the South wind, 4144.
 Affyed, *pt. pl.* trusted, relied; þam affyed, put their trust in, 3572. See Affie.
 Afle, *error for* Asie, Asia, 2332. (Dublin MS. has Asy.)
 Aforne; see Beforen.
 Afray, *v.* frigliten, affright, 448; A-fraid (Afrayd), *pp.* 851; A-frayd, 675; (Affrayed), 1795. See Affraid.
 A-friȝt, *pp.* affrighted, 395, 675, 3189.
 (After), *adv.* after, afterwards, 1435; (Aftir), 736.* See Eftire.

- (Aftir), *prep.* after, 763*; Efter (After), 976; Eftire (Aftir), 695.
- Agayn, *adv.* again, 188, 332, 383; Agayne, 1336; Agayn (Ayayn), back, 1183, 1785; Agayn, back, 185, 889.
- Agayn, against; Agayn-stande, *v.* resist, 636.
- Agayn, *prep.* against, 50, 82, 3545; towards, 4814; (Ayayns), against, 1322; (Agayns), to meet, 1123; A-gayne, to meet (them), 3964; (Agayns), against, 2423; (Ayayns), against, towards, 795, 1969, 2382; Agaynes, against, contrary to, 473; (Agayns), against, 1501, 1878, 1973; towards, to meet, 170, 953; Agayns (Ayayns), *prep.* against, 2208, 2748; to meet, 2857.
- (Agayn-come), *s.* return, 2890.
- (Agaynard); see Agynward.
- Age, *s.* age, 315, 1002, 1108, 1109, 1474.
- Agekany, *Lat.* Agatan, 5488.
- Aghe, *s.* awe, 5186.
- Aghille, *adj.*; *error for Athille*, 29. See Athill.
- (Aght), *pt. s.* ought, 3370.
- A-glopeden (Aglopned), *pp.* terrified, alarmed, 874. The prefix *a-* is intensive (A.S. *á-*). Icel. *glúpna*, to be downcast.
- Agraythen, *v.* to array, deck, set out, 3456. Icel. *greiða*, to arrange.
- A-greuyd, *pp.* aggrieved, angered, 1954.
- A-grydis, *pr. pl.* dash, clash, 3611. Cf. *gride*, *v.* as used by Milton, P. L. vi. 329; M. E. *girden*, to strike.
- Agynward (Agaynard), in return, 1933.
- Ai, *adv.* ever, always, 239, 242, 1875, 3529; (Ay), 1225, 1401, 1773, 2114, 2250. See Ay, Aye.
- Ailis (Ayles), *pr. s.* ails, 849; Ailes (Aylez), 2158; incites, 4609; Ailed, *pt. s.* (who) was ill (of), 5605.
- Aquare, *adv.* everywhere, 3408.
- Aire, *s.* air, 27, 542, 4334; Of the aire (ayre), (made) of the air, 1487; Airis, *pl.* atmospheres, 29.
- Aire, *s.* heir, 233, 3470, 3579; (Heyr), 2755, 3086; (Hayr), 1606; (Ayre), 977; Ayr, 2006.
- Aire, *s.* eyre, circuit, 4321.
- Aires, *pr. s.* goes, journies, 2680, 3595; (Ayres), 1277, 1907, 1994; (Ayrez), 1050, 1072, 2239; (Ayers), 912, 2034; Airis, goes, 53, 135, 407; (Ayres), 695, 873, 1597; (Ayers), 795, 1121; (Ayrez), 2248; Aires, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 2637; *pr. pl.* go, 3110; Airid, *pt. s.* went, 843; Aire, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* go thou, 5179; Aires, *imp. pl.* go, 989, 2770; Airis, 1185; Airand (Ayrand), *pres. pt.* coming, 942. O.F. *eirer*, to journey, Low Lat. *iterare*; from L. *iter*, a journey. See Ayres.
- Aibir, *adj.* each, either, 2614; Aithire, 2620, 5066; (Ather), 770, 785, 1520, 3417; (Aþir), 802.
- Aixe, *for Axe*, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* ask, p. 281, l. 61; Axie, 2 *pr. pl.* p. 281, l. 66.
- (Ak), *conj.* but, 875. A.S. *ac*.
- Akis, *pr. s.* aches, 538.
- Al, *adv.* all, 943; wholly, 640, 790, 798, 799; Al to, wholly too, much too, 1010, 1738. See All.
- Al, *conj.* although, 3464.
- A-lande, *adv.* on land, hence downwards to a place of rest, 393. See the context.
- Alane, *adj.* alone, 132.
- Alane, *Lat.* Allonis, 5493.
- Albastis, *for Alblastis* (Alblastrez), *pl.* cross-bows, 2225.
- Alblaster (Awblester), cross-bow, or cross-bow-bolt, 1400; (Alblastres), *pl.* cross-bow-bolts, 3046.
- Alblastis, *pl.* cross-bow-men, 5450.
- Ald (Old), *adj.* old, 2263; (Olde), 2117; (Alde), 2176; Alde (Ald), 1020.
- Aldfadire, *gen.* of thy father-in-law (?), lit. old father's, 5376. A.S. *eald-fæder*, a grandfather, ancestor.
- (Aldours); see Eldirs.
- Alegis, *pr. pl.* allege, 4558.
- Alexander, *passim*, spelt Alexsandre, 17, 620; *gen.* 904.
- Alexander (Alexander), Alexandria

- (the town), 1120. See Alysaundre.
- Algat, *adv.* by all means, i.e. especially, 128.
- Alkin; Alkin rewmys (Alkyn realmes), realms of every kind, 2363; Alkens (Alken), of every kind, 1400.
- All, *adj.* all, 68, 76, 82, &c. See Al, All-þir, Allire.
- All, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 121, 532, 875, 1302; All him-selfe, quite by himself, 111, 335; All his ane, alone by himself, 210, 1377; All him ane, 407; All þus, just thus, 2907. See Al.
- All, *conj.* although, 933, 2646, 4664; notwithstanding that, 2647; All if, although, 3876, 5320.
- Allane, *adj.* alone, 4840; (Alon), 1828.
- Allanely, *adv.* only, solely, 3101. Compounded of *all* and *anely*, i.e. only.
- Allas (Alas), *interj.* alas, 1816, 3434.
- All-bedene, all at once, 3532. See Bedene.
- Allire (Aller), *gen. pl.* of them all, 1255; Allirs, of all, 620; Oure allirs, of us all, 3513. See All.
- All-quat, *s.* everything, something of every kind, 4469.
- Alls, *adv.* also, 4943. See Als.
- All-þir, *put for Alþir, gen. pl.* of all; (All-þar), 1855; All-þir hiest (eldest), highest of all, especially, most particularly, 1765; All-þir-mast (All þe most), most of all, greatest of all, 2637; All-þire-first, first of all, 3039. From A.S. *ealra*, *gen. pl.* of *eal*, all, with inserted *th*. See All, Althire.
- All-to-gedire, *adv.* altogether, 476; (All-to-gedyr), 1703; (All-to-geder), 715, 1204, 3255; (All-to-geder), 782.*
- All-to-hewyn, *pp.* cut all to pieces, 3201.
- All-way, *adv.* always, 404; ever, 4299; (Alway), continually, 2492; All-ways (Always), 2517.
- Almade, *Lat.* Amarde, 5488.
- Almonds, *pl.* almonds, 4718.
- Almast (Almost), *adv.* almost, 1459.
- Aloes, *pl.* aloes, 4869.
- Alosed, *pp.* renowned, 2341; *miswritten* A-lose (Lowsed), 1960. O.F. *loser*, to praise; from *los*, sb. praise, due to L. *laus*.
- Als, *conj. and adv.* as, 430, 439, 2353; also, 1840, 2677, 5617; (Als), as, 693, 2152; Als, as, when, 2844; as it were, 751*, 752*; where that, 769*; Als (Also), so, 1270; as (I hope), 724*; Als belyue, as soon as may be, 2183; Als beliue (belyfe), as quickly as possible, immediately, 2671.
- Also, also, 31; Als-so, also, 5499.
- Althire-fairest, fairest of all, 5092. See All-þir.
- Althire-finest, finest of all, 3701; Althire-fynest, 3368.
- Alþire-graythist, readiest of all, *but an error for Alþire-gretist*, greatest of all, 162.
- Alþir-heist (All-þar heldest), *adj.* the highest (chief) of all, 1855; Althire-higest (All þe heldest), *adv.* chief of all, especially, 2509.
- Alþire-mast, *adv.* greatest of all, excessive, 486.
- Althire-thickest (All þe thikest), *adj.* *superl.* thickest of all, 1323.
- Alto-bretind, *put for Al to-bretind, pt. pl.* utterly broke in pieces, 3905. See Bretens.
- Alto-bruntes(-brountes), *pr.s.* wholly destroys, 1214. Bruntes *is an error for Brutens, pr. s. of Brutenen, or Brutnen*, to dash, break in pieces. See *brutnen* in Mätzner; and see Alto-bretind.
- Altogedre, *adv.* altogether, 174; Alto-gedire (All-togedre), 903.
- Alto-maukid, *misprint for Alto-mankid = Al to-mankid, pt. pl.* maimed to pieces, mangled, 4100. See *Mank* in Jamieson. Cf. Lat. *mancus*.
- Alto-schatird, *pt. s. (for Al to-schatird)*, utterly shattered in pieces, utterly scattered, 4150.
- Alyens, *pl.* aliens, strangers, 3445; (Aliens), 989; Alyens, *gen. pl.* strangers', 947.

- Alysaundire (Alexaunder), Alexandria, 2764. See Alexsander.
- Am, 1 *pr. s.* am, 574, 842*, &c.
- (Amaced), *pp.* amazed, 1814.
- Amatist, amethyst, 3145, 3349; Amatast, 3341; Amatists, *pl.* 5384; Amatistis, *pl.* 5273; Amytists, 3679.
- Amay þe, *imp. s.* dismay thee, be dismayed, 2816; A-maied, *pp.* dismayed, 1814; Amayd, *pp.* 1253, 3885. O.F. *esmayer*, to dismay.
- Amazoyne, the land of the Amazons, 3708, 3722.
- Ame, 1 *pr. s.* I think, judge, suppose, 3830, 4104; Ames, *pr. s.* aims, thinks, 3624; addresses, 2563; (Amez), directs his way, 1047; pitches, sets, 2586; Ames (Aymes, *MS.* aynes), *pr. s.* aims, endeavours, 843; Ames, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* supposest (but a false reading), 2649; Amed, *pt. s.* intended, 2821; *refl.* intended to go, 219; Amed (Ameyd), *pt. pl.* purposed, intended, 2395; Amed, *pp.* determined, 309; reckoned, considered, 3736. F. *aimer*.
- Ame, *s.* aim, guess, suspicion, 2965; aim, endeavour, 2484; At myn ame (ayme), as I suppose, 2987.
- Amend, *ger.* to amend (the gift), to add (thereto), 3776; Amendid (Mendyd), *pp.* recovered, 2127.
- (Amenyst), *pp.* diminished, 2629.
- A-meued, *pp.* moved, 4556; (A-meved), 1253.
- Amlaze (Amlaugh), *s.* an imbecile, weak person, 1705, 3542. Icel. *amlóði*.
- Amon, Ammon, 345, 404, 420, 3398; Amone, 4212; Amon (Amone), 1059; (Amoyn), 2863; Amon (Amonez), *gen.* Ammon's, 1072.
- Amonest (Amonesh), 1 *pr. s.* admonish, charge, 1493. E. *admonish*.
- Amonta, *proper name*, 2059, 2078; Amont, 2037.
- Amoued (Ameyved), *pp.* moved, disturbed, 1796; (Amoved), moved, exhorted, bidden, 1493.
- Amphion, *proper name*, 2216.
- Amytists; see Amatist.
- An, one, 3532; a space of, 4814; (Ane), an, 800. See Ane.
- Anabras, Auarbasontes, 3428.
- Anafrage, *Lat.* Anafag, 5488.
- An-ane (Anone), *adv.* anon, at once, 1377. See Anone.
- Ancestris (Auncesters), *pl.* ancestors, 2844.
- Ancient, *adj.* old, 3445.
- And, *conj.* and (*usually expressed by &*), 6, 12, 15, &c.; if, 21, 354, 2164, 2339, 2653; than, 540, 2840, 3819, 5300. *An* = than, is given in Halliwell as in use in the *North* and *East*. Hence, in l. 540, the reading *and* is to be retained. Cf. Icel. *en*, *enn*, than. See *And* in Murray, p. 317, col. 2.
- Ande (Aynde), *s.* breath, 749; Andes, *pl.* breathings, 4813. See Aande.
- Ané, *adj.* one, 40, 189, 307, 586, &c.; an, 191, 697, 767*; alone, 391; some one, 465; Eftir ane, after one pattern, all alike, 4619; Ane óper, another, 1240; þine ane, thyself alone, 732, 5623; Him ane, himself alone, 53, 169; þour ane, each one of you, 3176. See All, An.
- Anec, *short for* Anectanabus, king of Egypt, 40, 71, 79, 95, 168, 191, 210, 219, 242, 290, 306, 352, 398, 537, 670, 701, 717, 1126, 1134.
- Anectanabus, king of Egypt, 533, 693; Anecanabus, 486; Anectabus, 1131. See Anec.
- Anelepy, *adj.* a single, 109. See Anlepi.
- Anell (Angle), *put for* Angle, nook, corner, region, 1630. See Angle.
- Anely (Only), *adv.* only, merely, 995, 2464, 2729; alone, 1020. See Anly.
- A-nente (Anense), *prep.* about, concerning, 735 [Anense = Anentes; and hence Anens-t, with added t]; A-nentes (Anence), touching, regarding, 2716. See Enentis.
- Anentes, *pr. s.* becomes annihilated, 3302. O.F. *anienter*, to bring to naught. See *aniente* in Murray.
- Anepo, *proper name*, 2955.

- Anes, *adv.* once, 478, 1191; At anes (At onys), at once, 929. See Anys.
- Anes, *pr. s.* unites, 879.
- (Anest). *prep.* as regards, 3164. *Put for Anenst.* See Anente.
- Angire (Angre), *s.* anger, 857, 1908, 2724; (Anger), trouble, sorrow, 2889; Angirs, *pl.* angers, passions, 750; (Angers), miseries, 2160. See Angres.
- Angirs, (Angers), *pr. s.* becomes angry, 837.
- Angle, *s.* corner, place, province, region, 3657; Angill, 4720; Anglis (Anglez), *pl.* angles, corners, 2332; Anglies (Anglez), nooks, 1917.
- (Angres), *pl.* sorrows, troubles, 3173. See Angire.
- Angrile (Angirly), *adv.* angrily, 733; Angrily (Angerly), 2185; (Angrely), 832.*
- Angwisch, *s.* anguish, pain, 3173; hardship, suffering, 2160, 5618; woe, 3916; Angwische, 1011; Angwischis, *pl.* sorrows, 3828; annoyances, 3793.
- Ankers; see Aunkirs.
- Anlepi, *adj.* one, single, 5025. A.S. *ánlépig.* See Anelepy.
- Anly, *adv.* only, simply, 4240. See Anely.
- (Anone), *adv.* anon, 2294. See Anane.
- Anoþer (Ane oþer), another, 822; Anoþer, 585; Anothre (Ane oþer), 2237; Anoþire, 297, 501, 795, &c.
- Anoyed (Noyet), *pp.* annoyed, vexed, 737.
- Anoynitis, *pr. s.* anoints, 413.
- Answare (Answer), *s.* answer, 3158; (Answer), 2180. See Aunswer.
- Answardingis, *pl.* answers, 2180.
- Answords, *pr. s.* answers, 234, 290, 362; (Answers), 2183, 2263; Answard (Answerd), *pt. pl.* answered, 1000.
- Antagoyne (Antigon), Antigonus, 1912.
- Antarticus, the Antarctic or south pole, 31.
- Anters, *pl.* adventures, 656. See Aunter.
- Antiok, Antiochus, 5208; Antioc,
- 5186, 5193; Antiet [*or Antiee*], 4965; Antioks, *gen.* 5197.
- Any, any, 84, 134, 261; (Ony), 1200; Any mare (more), any more, 1011.
- Any-gates, *adv.* in any way, 4216.
- Anyly (Only), *adv.* only, singularly, 3399. See Anely, Anly.
- Anys, *adv.* once, 3508; (Onys), 1467, 2654; At anys (anes, onys), at once, 1609, 2326, 2345. See Anes, *adv.*
- Apareld (Aparaerld), *pp.* apparelled, 1497; Aparaild (Apparelt), 2300.
- Aparell, *s.* apparel, 5196.
- Apart, apart; *or for Apert*, openly, 3575.
- Ape, *s.* ape, 1705, 3542; Apis, *pl.* 5242.
- A-pere, *v.* appear, 361; Apere, 3215, 3422; be present, 2579; Aperis, *pr. s.* appears, 451, 1084; (Apères), 1487; A-perid (Aperyd), *pt. s.* appeared, 2862; (Appered), 1084, 1626. See below, and see Apperys.
- A-pered, *pt. s.* appeared (to them), 3056. *Perhaps for Apeired* == harmed.
- Apert, *adj.* open, evident, obvious, 2833, 4496; manifest, 3726; Aperte, well-known, 261.
- Apert, *adv.* openly, plainly, 1896, 2295, 5190.
- Apetite, *s.* appetite, 4609.
- Apon, *prep.* upon, 31, 251; (Vpon), 778, 930, 1130; on, 773; (Vppon), on, 1641; in, 1670, 2247.
- Aporth, *s.* outward appearance, personal bearing, deportment, 598, 5145.
- Apparaill (Apperale), *ger.* to apparel, prepare, 1919.
- (Apparement), *s.* apparel, 820.*
- Appedenere, *Lat.* Appelmai, 5493.
- (Apperys), 2 *pr. s.* appearest like, 1842. See Apere.
- Appils (Appills), *pl.* apples, 4718, 5241.
- Apollo, Apollo, 4534; Appole, 5118. See Appolyne.
- Appolomados, 2529. See note.
- Appolyne, Apollo, 4467; Appoline (Apolyn), 2254; (Appolyn), 2176; (Appolyne), 2183. See Apollo.

- Apose, *imp. s. 2 p. question*, 4998.
 A-prefe, *v. approve, be approved*, 598. See Apreue.
 A-prefe, *s. approbation, approval*, 648.
 A-preue, *v. exhibit, prove, make good (lit. approve)*, 5328; A-preued (Preved), *pt. pl. acquired (for themselves)*, 1206; A-preuyd, *pp. gained, attained*, 614. See Aprefe, Aproues.
 Aproche, *ger. to approach*, 1595; *pr. s. subj.* 74; Aprochid, *pt. s. approached, came*, 4102.
 A-proprid, *pp. considered by itself*, 4496.
 Aproues, *pr. s. proves good*, 4220.
 Apurtynance, appurtenance, 5628.
 Aquiloun, the wind Aquilo, north wind, 4144.
 Arabie (Araby), Arabia, 2034.
 Aray, *s. order, manner*, 425; (Arayes), *pl. ranks*, 1320.
 Aray, *pr. s. 2 p. subj. array*, 1494; Arais (Arayes), *pr. s. arrays*, 1513; Araies (Arays), *pr. pl.* 2980; Arayd, *pp. dressed*, 1633; (Ar-raed), arrayed, 1382; Arayed, arrayed, 93; (Arayede), 883.
 Arcagee, Arcadia (?), 5675.
 Archere, *s. archer*, 5450; Archars (Archers), *pl.* 1390, 3041; Archars (Arches, for Archers), 2455.
 Arcules, Hercules, 4500; Arculious, 4068.
 Ardromacius (Andromacius), *proper name*, 1691.
 Are, *s. favour; þin are, with thy favour*, 5361. A.S. *ár.*
 Are, *adv. ere, before*, 246, 1140. A.S. *ðér.*
 Areris, *pr. s. retreats, draws backward*, 4846.
 Arrest, *s. arrest, seizure*, 3504.
 Arrestes (Aristes), *proper name*, 1277. See Arystes.
 (Arestotell), Aristotle, 766.* See Aristotil.
 (Arghes), *imp. pl. be afraid, fear*, 989. See Arȝes.
 Arise (Rise), *v. arise*, 1880.
 Aristotil, Aristotle, 3460; Aristotill, 44, 5619; Arystotill, 623, 637.
 Arly, *adv. early*, 350, 351.
 Arme, *s. arm*, 494, 503, 805; Armes, *pl.* 345, 384, 420.
 Armed, *pp. armed*, 49, 83, 1213; (Armyd), 2034, 2102; (Enarmed), 757, 954.
 Armee, *s. army*, 2363.
 Armes, *pl. arms*, 90, 803*, 996; (Armez), 764, 908, 1594; Armys, 9, 16, 444; (Armes), 2363; Armes (Armez), coat-armour, *hence, array, special dress*, 1624.
 Armoure, *s. (Armors, pl.) armour*, 3413; (Armour), 996.
 Aromatike (Aromatyke), *adj. aromatic*, 1566.
 Aromitike, aromatics, 4977.
 Arows, *pl. arrows*, 2455; (Arowes), 1390; Arowis (Arowez), 2211; (Arows), 2224.
 Arrabe, Arabia, 5659; Arrabie, *gen. Arabia's*, 5564.
 Arrabiens, *pl. Arabians*, 92.
 (Art), *2 pr. s. art*, 843.* See Ert.
 Artaxenses, Artaxerxes, 49, 81, 169.
 Arte, *s. art, science*, 128, 333, 681, 5483; Artis, *pl. arts*, 44, 376, 522; ways, 4609; (Artez), 766.*
 Arteneus, Lat. Accimei, 5499.
 Articus, Arctic pole, north pole, 29.
 Artoyes, Artois, 5659.
 Arystes (Arestes), *proper name*, 1225. See Arestes.
 Arystotill, Aristotle, 623, 637. See Aristotil.
 Arȝes, *pr. s. impers. it terrifies me, I am afraid*, 537; Arȝed, *pp. terrified, afraid*, 3606, 3873. A.S. *eargian*, to be inert. See Arghes.
 As, *conj. as*, 11, 14, 17, 18, 24, &c.; *as if*, 193, 225, 368, 421, 504, 506, 558, &c.; *like*, 1063, 1152, 1159, 3796; *As . . . as, as . . . so*, 2811, 2812.
 As, *as rel. pron. that, which*, 1783.
 As (Asse), *s. ass*, 2708.
 Asaile (Assaylle), *ger. to assail*, 1296; Asaille, 3923; Asailes (Assaylez), *pr. s. assails*, 2038; (Assalez), 1029. See Assaile.
 A-saile (A-sawte), *s. assault, attack*, 924. See Asaute.

- Asald, *s. ass*, little ass, 1928. See below. O. Northumb. *asal, asald*, Matt. xviii. 6; xxi. 2.
- Asaleny (Aslyn), *s. little ass*, 1705. See above.
- A-saute, *s. assault, attack*, 2550; (*Asawte*), 924. See Asaile.
- A-say, *s. trial*, 5370.
- Ascalioum, Ascalon, 5675. See As-coiloym.
- Ascendis (Ascendez), *pr. s. ascends, climbs up*, 1377; (*Assendes*), mounts, 767; Ascendis (Ascenden), *pr. pl.* 1434; (*Ascenden*), 1398; (*Ascendyn*), 1030; Ascendid, *pt. pl.* 1030, 1398.
- A-schapid, *pp. escaped*, 2987.
- Ascoiloym (Ascolon), Ascalon, 1116. See Ascalioum.
- Ascres, *pl. newts, lizards*, 4198. M.E. *ask, arsk*; see Mätzner.
- Ascryes, *pr. pl. cry out to, challenge, demand of (them)*, 5215. Cf. O.F. *escrier*; see *ascrien* in Mätzner.
- A-semblis, *pr. s. assembles*, 2219; (*Assembles*), gathers, 762; (*Assemblez*), 923; Asembles (*Assemblez*), 1470; A-sembild (*Assembled*), *pt. s. assembled, encountered*, 783; A-sembles (*Assembles*), *imp. pl. gather together*, 2527. See Assemblis.
- A-sent, *pr. pl. 1 p. assent*, 4262; Asentis (*Assent*), *pr. pl.* 1510.
- A-sewis, *pr. pl. agree, suit*, 4254.
- A-sezee, *imp. s. sit*, 5182. O.F. *asseoir*, from Lat. *assidere*.
- Asie (Asy), Asia, 1917, 2114. See Aysy.
- Asisid, *pp. constructed*, 5087. Lat. *text, constructa*. O.F. *assis*, pp. of *asseoir*, 'to set, settle'; Cot. See Assisid.
- Askis, *pr. s. asks*, 670; (*Askez*), 1672, 1701; asks for, 3612; requires, 1500, 4265, 4621 (see note to this line); Askis (Asken), *pr. pl. seek*, 727; ask, 888; Askid (Askyd), *pt. pl. asked*, 2254; (*Asked*), 888; Aske, *imp. s. ask thou*, 1670, 1685.
- Askis, *pl. ashes*, 4180.
- Askyng (Askyns = askyngs, *pl.*), *s.* request, 3173; (*Asking*), enquiry (*a false reading*), 732.
- (Aslakes), *pr. s. ceases*, 857. Lit. 'grows slack.'
- Asouerance, *s. assurance*, 5001.
- Asperly, *adv. fiercely*, 2039, 3041; quickly, eagerly, 2672; sharply, roughly, severely, 1088, 3939; fiercely, swiftly, 3001.
- Assaile (Asayle), *ger. to assault*, 1380; Assaill (Assaylle), *to assail*, 1162. See Asaile.
- Asselis, *pr. s. seals up*, 424.
- Assemblis, *pr. pl. collect, re-unite*, 4161; (*Assembled*, *pt. pl.*), encounter, 1387; Assembild on, *pt. pl. gathered against, attacked*, 4134. See Asemlis.
- Assemby, 4449. Probably a false reading; the alliteration requires a word beginning with *s*, and *cure* gives no sense. For *oure assemby* read *zoure semly* (i.e. your seemly).
- Assie, Asia, 5659.
- Assisid, *pp. made of a certain size, sized*, 5653. See Asisid.
- Asskis, *pr. pl. 2 p. beseech*, 4467. See Askis.
- Astate, *s. estate, dignity, rank, condition*, 723, 3353, p. 279, l. 11.
- Astralabus, *pl. astrolabes*, 128. (MS. Astralalus.)
- Asuris (Assurys), 2 *pr. s. trustest, art secure*, 2736; Asurid (Assuryd), *pt. s. refl. assured himself, felt confident*, 2568.
- A-swage (Swage), *v. be assuaged*, 750.
- Asy. See Afle, Asie.
- Asye, Asia, 3765. See Asie, Assie.
- At, *prep. at*, 71, 132, 178, 5364; *of*, 1618; *of, from*, 766*, 1670, 2715, 4467; *by*, 757*; *to, suitably with*, 4208; *against*, 3164; *At hand*, 81. See Att.
- At, *pron. which, that*, 927; *who*, 1045, 1171; *that which*, 636; *whom*, 1059, 1216; *that*, 10, 56, 68; *conj. that*, 100, 266, 1480. Most common as a relative pronoun, as in 152, 161, &c. Used like mod. E. *that*. See pat.
- At, *to (as sign of gerund)*, 872, 4294.

- At, 3559; *read Al*, i. e. all.
 At ilee; see At-ilee.
A-tamed (Attamyd), *pp.* pierced, 3042. See Gloss. to Piers Plowman.
At anes (At anez), at once, 784.
Atell, *for Athell*, *adj.* noble, 1088, 1792, 2030. Only in the Dublin MS. See Athel.
Atenes (Athens), Athens, 2343; **Ateynes**, 2446; **Atenenys** (Athenez), 2391. See Athenes.
Ateynes, *pr. s. refl.* attains, reaches, 2315.
At-flee, *v.* flee away, pass away (from you), be dismissed, 988. It is better to take *atflee* as one word. A.S. *atfleón*. See *atfleon* in Mätzner.
Athe, *s.* oath, 3770; **Athis**, *pl.* 3437.
Athel, *adj.* noble, 242; **Athill**, 17, 168, 306, 404, 620, 849, 1994, 3145; (**Athell**), 810, 996, 1577, 1597; (**Atell**), 1831; **Athil**, excellent, 3341; **Athil** (**Atheli**), 701, 909, 1134; **Athill** (**Atheli**), *adj.* as *sb.* noble one, 681, 837, 964; noble king, 3204; **Athils** (**Hatels**), *pl.* nobles, 1433; (**Athelles**), 1474; (**Athellys**), 1445; (**Athells**), 2225. A.S. *æfel*. See Atell.
Athelest, *adj. superl.* noblest, 40, 4571; **Athelist**, 3757; **Athilest**, 5104.
(**Athelfullest**), *adj.* noblest, 1606.
Athenes (Athens), Athens, 2419; (**Athenys**), 2322; **Athenas**, 2312. See Atenes.
(Ather); see Aíþer.
Aþire (**Ather**), *adj.* either, each, 3023. See Aíþer.
Atired (**Attyred**), *pt. s.* attired, decked, 1525; (**Atyred**), *pt. pl.* 2427; **A-tired**, *pp.* 4904; (**Attyred**), 1628; (**Atired**), 1294, 1633. See Atyres.
(Att), *prep.* at, 964.
(Att), *conj.* so that, 1527.
(Attachyd), *pp.* attached, 2580.
Attamyd; see Atamed.
(Attellys), *pr. s. refl.* advances, 2315; (**Attelyt**), 1 *pt. s.* intended, 1819; (**Attelland**), *pres. pt.* devising, expecting, 3191. See
- Etlit. Icel. *ætta*, to think, intend.
Atter, *s.* poison, 1390. A.S. *ætor*.
Atterand, *pres. pt.* poisoning, i. e. poisonous, 4198. See above.
(Athill), *miswritten for Attell*, 1 *pr. s.* direct, 2322. See Attellys.
Attrid (**Atterd**), *adj.* poisoned, 2455. See Atter.
At-wendis, *pr. s.* leaves, escapes, goes away from, 3247. Cf. A.S. *ætwindan*, to flee away, escape.
At-wynde, *pr. s. subj.* may depart, 1949. A.S. *ætwindan*.
Atyres, *pr. s.* attires, 1294; **Atyred**, *pp.* adorned, made, 3343. See Atired.
Aufrike, Africa, 5660; **Auffrik**, 4395. (*For Au- = Av-*, see under Av-.)
Augard (**Awgerd**), *adj.* proud, or excellent, 2343. This word is the same as *ogart*, proud, in Halliwell, and allied to *overgart*, excessive, in Stratmann. I suppose the orig. sense to be merely 'extreme'; it stands probably for *of-gart*, where *gart* is the pp. of *gar*, to make. Cf. Swed. *afgjord*, pp. of *afgöra*, to settle; Dan. *afgjort*, pp. of *afgjøre*, to finish; Norw. *avgjord*. See Augard.
(Aughfulest), most terrible, 1062.
Augird (**Awgerly**), *adv.* exceedingly, 772. See Augard, Augirly.
Augirly, *adv.* extremely, excessively, 661; (**Awgardly**), 717; (**Awgerdry**), 972; (**Augerly**), entirely, wholly, 2987; **Augrily** (**Augerdly**), extremely, 3252; (**Augerdry**), proudly, 1726; severely, greatly, 1277; fiercely, 1401; **Augrely** (**Awgerdry**), extremely, 1342. See above.
August, August, 3789.
Auncestours, *pl.* ancestors, 4369.
Auncient, *adj.* ancient, 1002; **Auncient**, old, 2391.
Aungell, *s.* angel, 4529, 5258; (**Angell**), 1487, 1872, 2893; **Aungels** (**Angels**), *pl.* angels, 1556; figures of angels, 4913; *gen.* **Aung[e]ls** (**Angels**), angel's, 2863.
Aunkirs (**Ankers**), *pl.* anchors, 1372.

- (Aunswer), *s.* answer, 751. See Aunsware.
- Aunter, *s.* adventure, 3204; peril, 538; (Awentur), mischance, 1109; Auntir, adventure, 5189; Aunter, (*pl.* Aunters), adventure, case, 693; Auntirs (Aunters), *pl.* adventures, 1278; Auntours, 3470, 5618; (Aunturs), 3204. See Anters.
- Authere (Owder), *conj.* either, 1180.
- Authly, *adv.* (?) 3234. It seems to mean 'sadly'; cf. Icel. *auðr*, void, desolate.
- Autour, author, 4720.
- Auutere, *s.* altar, 1572.
- A-vaies, *pr. s.* informs, 1508; Avaied, *pp.* informed, made aware, 116; If þou avaied worthe, if thou art (well) informed, if you take heed, 103. O.F. *aveier*, *avoier*, to set on the road, guide, inform; Godefroy, p. 537.
- A-vaille, 2 *pr. s. subj.* prevail (to be), 1880.
- A-vaille (Avale), *imp. s.* lower, diminish, 2836. O.F. *avaler*.
- A-vanced (Auancyd), *pp.* advanced, exalted, 2096; Auancet, *pp.* advanced, chief, 2391; A-vansid, *pp.* advanced, exalted, 389; (Auancet), *pp.* advanced in years, 1002; (Auancett), *pp.* advanced, honoured, 2200; A-vaunced, *pp.* advanced, rendered prosperous, 3773; (Avaunsyd), exalted, 2755.
- Auaunt, shortened form of Auenaunt, courteous, 2387. O.F. *avenant*, spelt *advenant* in Cotgrave. See the context; and see *Aveaunt* in Halliwell.
- (Avaunte), *imp. s.* vaunt, 2713.
- A-ventour (Aventur), *s.* mishap, 2889.
- A-verous, *adj.* avaricious, 4512.
- A-vise (Avyse), *imp. s.* consider, 1767; *imp. pl.* 4410; A-visis (Awysez), *pr. s.* reads over, 2066; Advises him, considers with himself, 4000; Him a-visis, 3624. See Avyses.
- Auoure, *s.* property, wealth, 4668. O.F. *avoir*.
- A-vow (A-wowe), *s.* vow, 2605.
- A-vowtrere, *s.* adulterer, 4414.
- A-vowtri, *s.* adultery, 4329.
- Avyn, *adj.* own, 188. See Awen.
- Auyrice, *s.* avarice, 4327.
- Avyses, *pr. s.* perceives, 4926; Avysis, beholds, 3234; (Visys), *pr. s.* notices, takes notice of, 2959; (Avysed), *pt. s.* perceived, 753*; Avysid him, looked, 116. See Avise.
- A-wai, *adv.* away, 865; Away, 508.
- Awe, *pt. s.* behaved, 868. (Properly *pr. s.*) A.S. *āh*. See Awght.
- Awen, *adj.* own, 364, 420, 623, 708, 3659; (Awne), 873, 3178.
- Awen (Awne), *adj.* one, 2569. (A curious spelling; confused with awen = own.)
- Awgerd, Awgerdly, &c.; see Aug-(Awght), eight, 764.* See Aȝt.
- (Awght), *pt. s.* behaved, 868. A.S. *āhte*, *pt. t.* of *āh*. See Awe, Aȝe.
- Awne, *adj.* own, 4497; also in 739*, 759*, 777*, 800*, 814.* See Awen.
- (Awnterez), *pl.* adventures, 1011. See Aunter.
- A-wondres, *pr. s.* surprises, 4832; *refl.* is amazed, 4047; Awondird, *pp.* astonished, 302.
- Awyn, *adj.* own, 79, 168, 210, 219; (Awne), 3236. See Awen.
- Ax, *s.* axe, 1400.
- Ay, *adv.* ever, 265, 298, 972, 994, &c.; Ay elike, always alike, 536, 2046. See Ai, Aye.
- (Ayaynez), *prep.* against, 829.*
- Aydeus (*for* Aide deus), God aid (me), 729. Adapted from O.F. *aide deus*.
- (Aydom), *adj.* 2307. See Ayndain.
- Aye, *adv.* continually, 3438. See Ay.
- Aykeywordly, (Aukwardly), *adv.* indirectly, ambiguously, 2183.
- Ayndain, *adj.* 2307. The Dublin MS. has *aydom*. These forms point to a reading *aydand*, i. e. aiding, assisting, hence favourable, which seems to be the sense required. See the note. Cf. F. *aidant*, helping; *Dieu aidant*, if God help me; Cotgrave.

- Ayre, *s.* heir, 588. See Aire.
 (Ayres), *pr. s.* goes, 832*; (Ayrez), 2114; (Ayres hym), goes, 749; (Ayres), *imp. pl.* go ye, 889. See Aires.
- Aysy (Asy), Asia, 1630. See Asie.
- Aythire, *pron.* either, each, 4500; (Ather), 2043; Aythir, 4391; (Ather), either, 1583.
- (Ay-whare), *adv.* everywhere, 781.*
- Aȝayne (Ayayn), *adv.* again, back again, 1393, 3240.
- Aȝe, *s.* awe, terror, danger, 2987; (Aw), awe, 1459; Artaxenses aȝe, fear of Artaxerxes, 169.
- Aȝe, *pr. s.* ought (lit. owes), 3370; ought (to be), 4245; (Aght, *pt. s.*), 3370; (Awght, *pt. s.*), it becomes (him), 1820; (Aught, *pt. s.*), it becomes, 1928. A.S. áh.
- Aȝe (Awe), *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* owe, 2763; *pr. s.* owns, rules over, 4712. A.S. áh.
- Aȝed, *pp.* terrified, lit. awed, 3635. See Aȝe, *sb.*
- Aȝefullest, *adj. superl.* awefullest, most terrible, 16.
- Aȝt (Awght), *pt. s. impers.* ought (for him to do), 717; owed, 918; Aȝt, possessed, 2125; (Aught), 2 *pt. pl.* did possess, 2292; Aȝte, *pt. s.* owned, possessed, 18. A.S. áhte. See Awght.
- Aȝt, *num.* eight, 3462, 3930.
- Aȝtand, *ord.* eighth, 3830; Aȝtent, 4836.
- Aȝte, *s.* possession, valuable property, hence, present, 5134. Lowl. Sc. aucht; A.S. éht.
- Bab, *s.* babe; The bab with to play = for the babe to play with, 2500; Babbis, *pl.* babes, 1772.
- Babilon, Babylon, 1683; (Babylonye), 2597; Babiloun, 5627; Babiloyn, 5611.
- (Babyst), *error for Bayst*, 2146. See Baise.
- Bac (Bake), *s.* back, 932; Backis, *pl.* 3894.
- Bachelere, *s.* young knight, 4209, 4778; (Bachelors, *pl.*), 1594; Bachelors, *pl.* bachelors, young knights, novices in arms, 155, 974, 1003, 1797, 2088; Bachelars, 4111.
- Backes, *pl.* bats, 3936. "Bakke, *vespertilio*"; Prompt. Parv.
- Baetry, Bactria, 3950.
- Bacus, *s.* Bacchus, 4525.
- Bad, *pt. s.* bade, 2294, 3138, 3458; (Bade), 1667; Badd, 5540; Bad, *pt. pl.* 2195; (Byde), *pt. pl.* 2285.
- Baddis (Baddez), *pl.* cats, 1763. Cf. Sc. *badrans*, a cat; the game called *cat* is also called *bad* (see Halliwell).
- Bade, *pt. s.* abode, 4982; remained, waited, 811*; *pt. pl.* waited, abode, 5550.
- Bade (Bode), *s.* delay, tarrying, 2908, 2951, 5204.
- (Badly), *adv.* badly, 1782. A corrupt reading; see Badrich.
- Badriche, *s.* foolish one (?), 1782. It seems to be a vocative case. Cf. A.S. *bædling*, an effeminate person; *badling*, a worthless person (Halliwell).
- Bages, *pl.* badges, 4181.
- Baggis, *pl.* bags, 123.
- Baies (Bays), *pr. s.* bays, barks, 1805.
- Bailyfs (Bailzais), *pl.* bailiffs, 2294.
- Baise, *imp. pl.* abase (yourselves), be dismayed, 4156; Baiste (Babyst), *pt. s.* humbled, 2146; Baist (Bassyd), *pp.* abashed, cast down, 2567; (Basyt), humbled, 2447. See Bayst.
- Baisens, *pl.* basins, 5278.
- Baistell (Bastell), *s.* building, fort, tower, 1161, 1306, 1339, 1398, 1422; Baistall, 1333. O.F. *bastille*, from *bastir*, to build.
- Baisting, *s.* boasting, 2016.
- Baitis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost bait, dost provoke, 5355.
- Bak, *s.* back, 928; Bake, 124, 218, 711, 732*, 3054, 3602; Bakis (Bakkez), *pl.* backs, 2601.
- Bakin, *pp.* baked, 4435.
- Bakward (Bakeward), *adv.* backward, 1408.
- Balaan, *proper name*, 1293, 1430, 1442; Balaa[n], 1301, 1312.
- Balan, *s.* (perhaps) a kind of hempen

- cloth, 4851. Lat. text—‘*subtalares lineos*.’ Cf. O.F. *ballin*, a kind of hempen cloth (Godefroy); Bret. *ballin*, *pallin*, a linen quilt, a winnowing-cloth. See *Bole*. “*Baullin*, pièce de toile grossière que l'on étend sur le sol quand on vente le blé;” Godefroy.
- Bald**, *adj.* bold, 157, 289, 761*, 915, 1138, 1263, 1394, 1442; a bold man, 1228.
- Baldest**, *adj. superl.* boldest, 764.
- Baldire** (*Balder*), *adv.* more boldly, 1825.
- Baldis**, *pr. s.* encourages, 5447; (*Beldez*), 1018. Cf. A.S. *byldan*.
- Baldly**, *adv.* boldly, 969.
- Baldnes**, *s.* boldness, 2991.
- Bale**, *s.* bale, calamity, 396; sorrow, harm, injury, 1146, 1974; ill, evil, 4194, 4620; sorrow, 2053; illness, 5582; misfortune, 2444; evil fate, 3248; *Bales*, *pl.* dangers, 5625.
- Bale**, *s.* fire, blaze, 2231. A.S. *bæl*.
- Bale-fyre**, *s.* pyre, fire for burning a man, funeral pile, 562, 2658. See above.
- Balefull**, *adj.* destructive, 4858.
- Balefully**, *adv.* sorrowfully, 155.
- Bale-nakid**, *adj.* belly-naked, naked down to the belly, *hence*, entirely naked, 4125. See *Belly-naked* in Halliwell.
- Balgh**, *adj.* swelling out, full in shape, 4923. Cf. A.S. *belgan*: and see examples in Mätzner, s. v. *balʒ*.
- Ball** (*Bale*), *s.* ball, 1898, 1929; (*Balle*), 1712.
- Banars** (*Banerys*), *pl.* banners, 3027; (*Baners*), 774. See *Baners*.
- (Band)**, *pt. s.* bound, tied, 1371, 2903.
- Band**, *s.* bond, 786*; **Bande** (*Bandes*, *pl.*), imprisonment, 3104; **Bands**, *pl.* bonds, 5344; (*Bandez*), 769.*
- Bane**, *s.* slayer, 5376; murderer, 969; **Banes**, *pl.* murderers, 3248, 3429. Icel. *bani*.
- Baners**, *pl.* banners, 781, 4181; (*miswritten Barners*), 1563. See *Banir*, *Banars*.
- Banes**, *pl.* bones, 773*, 3308.
- Banir**, banner, 2088.
- Bank**, *s.* bank, 5243; (*Bank*), low hill, 2441.
- Banned**, *pt. s.* cursed, 157.
- Barante** (*Baraynte*), *s.* barrenness, 894. See *Barayn*.
- Baratour**, *s.* bold fighter, hero, warrior, 2476, 2825, 2991, 3320, 4786; **Baratour**, 5043; **Barratour**, 4001; **Baratours**, *pl.* fighters, 830*, 1138, 2593, 3502, 3877; **Baratorus** (*Baratours*), 2159; (*Barotours*), 1799. O.F. *barateour*, from *barat*, confusion, strife.
- Baratris**, *pl.* conflicts, 4503. *Error for Baratis*, *pl. of Barat*, confusion, strife. See *Baret*.
- Barayn** (*Baren*), *adj.* barren, 1199.
- Barbare** (*Barberon*), *adj.* barbarous, barbarian, 991; **Barbarine** (*Barberon*), 2418; **Barbres**, *pl.* barbarians, 3499, 3611; (*Barbers*), 2488; (*Barbrys*), 2650; (*Barbrems*), 2606; **Barbers** (*Barbres*), 2534. See *Barbrym*.
- Barbis** (*Barbes*), *pl.* barbs of arrows, 2455.
- Bar-bryn** (*Barberen*), *adj.* barbarian, 2919; **Barbryne** (*Barbaryn*), 3051; **Barbrene**, 3586; **Barbyne** (*Barbren*), 2626; **Barbrins**, *gen. pl.* barbarians', 5311. See *Barbare*.
- Bare**, *s.* boar, 4523, 4746; **Bares**, *gen.* 5436; **Bare**, *gen.* 610.
- Bare**, *pt. s.* bore, pushed along, 711; (*Bare*), bare, 974; *pt. pl.* bore, 1408; (*Borne*), carried, 1570.
- Bare**, *adj.* bare, 1339, 2246, 3842. (*Bare*), *s.* bar (of justice), 758.*
- Barely**, *adv.* nearly, 894.
- Baret**, *s.* strife, debate, hardship, 4620; trouble, 527; (*Barettes*), attacks, 2137. O.F. *barat*, *baret*, confusion.
- Barge**, *s.* barge, raft, 4206; **Bargis**, 66, 5462; (*Bargez*), 1305, 2457.
- Barke**, *s.* bark (of a tree), 4975.
- Barme**, *s.* brim, edge, verge, 4812. Icel. *barmr*, brim, edge.
- Barmeken**, barbican, the outermost defence of a fortified town or castle, 1301. Lowland Sc. *barmkin*. See *Barme*.
- Barne**, *s.* bairn, child, 396, 517, 585, 597, 1559, 1712, 1927, 3320, 4117;

- young man, 811*; Barnes, *pl.* children, 2717, 4046; (Bernes), 1473; (Barnez), 1018.
- (Baron), *s.* baron, 761*; Barons, *pl.* 155, 974, 1003, 2159. See Beron.
- Baronage, baronage, assembly of barons, 984.
- Barotour, Barratour; see Baratour.
- Barayne, *adj.* barren, 3582. See Barayn.
- (Barre), *s.* enclosure formed by bars, 783*; (Barrez), *pl.* bars, 1081.
- Barrere (Barre), *s.* barrier, 2903; Barrers, *pl.* barriers, 3681; (Barres), 2229.
- Barris, *pr. s.* bars; Barris (Barres) to, bars to, fastens up, 1312; Barris, *pr. pl.* (Barred, *pt. pl.*) bar, fasten, 2133; Barred, *pp.* 1080.
- (Barslett), *s.* a kind of hound, 786.* Barslett in band = hound in a leash. See *Barsletys* and *Bercelettus* in Halliwell.
- Bary, *error for* Bacy, Bacchus, 4506.
- Basenet, basnet, helmet, 4002; Basinettis (Basynettes), *pl.* 2457; cf. 787.
- Basilisk, *s.* basilisk, 4837.
- Bast, the inner bark of a tree, 4981; Als bare as a bast (baste), as bare as a tree with only its inner bark left, 1339 (cf. l. 4981).
- (Basyng), *s.* abasement, attempt to put down, 2016. *Short for* Abasyng.
- Batailid (Bateld), *pp.* embattled, 1152.
- Bataill, *s.* (1) battle, 296, 3643; (Batell), 999, 1879, 1891, 2047; (Batele), 1808; Bataile, battle, war, 650; Batall, 2374; Bataills, *pl.* 4023; (2) Bataill (Batell), battalion, body of troops, 768, 783; Batails, *pl.* battalions, 93, 3037. See Batell.
- Bataill-axes, *pl.* battle-axes, 4084.
- Batary, *prop. name*, 93.
- Bate, *ger.* to debate, to fight, contend, 4009, 4553.
- Bate (Bates, *pl.*), debate, conflict, 2615.
- Bate, *s.* stick, piece of wood, lit. bat, 1340. See Battis.
- Batell, *s.* battle, 2908, 830*; Batill, 137. See Bataill.
- Bath, *adj.* both, 4046; (Both), 1983, 2678; Bathe, 88, 177, 5203; (Bath), 769, 1422, 1584; þe bath, both of them, 2927; Bathe, *adv.* also, 492.
- Bathe, *ger.* to bathe (Bathyd, *pp.*), 2542.
- Bathire, *adj.* both, 3946. Icel. báðir, both.
- Batill; see Bataill, Batell.
- Batis (Botez), *pl.* boats, 1305.
- Batis, *imp. pl.* abate, lower, 4156.
- Batriame, Bactria, 3782; Batran, 2673; Battri (Battrye), 3106.
- Battis, *pl.* lumps, large pieces, 4166. Cf. brick-bat. See Bate.
- Bawdkyns (Bawdkens), *pl.* rich cloths, expensive pieces of cloth, 1514. O.F. *baudequin*, Ital. *baldacchino*, from Ital. *Baldacco*, Bagdad.
- Bawers, *pl.* archers; Baratours bawers, warrior-archers, 3960. Lit. 'bowers,' bow-men.
- Bawnie, *s.* balm, balsam, 4380, 4869, 4975.
- Bawnand, *pres. part.* 4908. The sense is clearly 'abiding' or 'dwelling'; prob. for *bownand*, as if from M.E. *bounen*, to get ready; but used in the sense of the orig. Icel. verb *búa*, to dwell, abide.
- Baxe, a country, 5668.
- Bayne, *adj.* prompt, ready, 323. Icel. *beinn*.
- Bayon, Bayonne, 5668.
- Bayst, *pt. s.* cast down, made abashed, 466. See Baise.
- Be, *v. to be*, 5, 118, 159, 1476, &c.; *ger.* 179, 180, 204; Sall be, shall be, 178; Be, *pr. s. subj.* 249, 322; may be, 308; whether it be, 257; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 844*; *pr. pl. subj.* 106, 2076; *imp. s.* be thou, 242; Be þis = if this be, 2549. See Bee.
- Be, *prep.* by, 58, 206, 240, 443, 617, 2084; by aid of, 714; beside, close to, 3940; with respect to, 4410; through, 3792. See Bi.
- Be, *conj.* by the time that, 3900, 5163.

- Be now, by now, by this time, 3825.
 Be þis (þat), by this (that) time, 1313.
 Be tyme, betimes, 1746.
 Bebbing, *s.* bibbing, drinking, 4506.
 Be-bled (To-bled), *pp.* covered with blood, 1274.
 Bebricans, the Bebrian's, 5333.
 Bebrik, *adj.* Bebrian, 5178, 5214.
 Bebrike, Bebricia, 5151.
 Be-cause, *conj.* because, 230. See Because.
 Becomen, *pp.* gone, 166.
 Bed, *s.* bed, 381; (Bede), 1506; Beddis, *pl.* 5267; (Beddes), 1763.
 Beddels (Bedels), *pl.* heralds, lit. beadles, 2285, 2294.
 Bede, *v.* bid, 2860; Bedis, *pr. s.* bids, commands, 3565; Beds, 5462; Bedis (Biddez), 1473, 1668, 1906; Bedis (Byddes), *pr. s.* bids, 1492, 3137; (Biddes), 2749; Bedis, *pr. s.* offers, 3115; Bedis þam þe bake, offers them his back, takes to flight, 3054; Bede, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* offer, 4289; Bedis (Bydes), *pr. pl.* bid, advise, 2658; Bed, 1 *pt. s.* (Byd, 1 *pr. s.*) bade, 2479; Bede, *pt. s.* bade, 811*, 3319; Bed, *pt. s.* offered, 3557; (Badde), offered, 1664; Bed hem (bidden þaim) þe bake, took (taken) to flight, 1944; Beden, *pp.* bidden, 71.
 Bedell, *adj.* sharp, 4096. Evidently a variant of M.E. *bitel*, biting, sharp, Ormulum, 10074; Layamon, vol. ii. p. 395; vol. iii. p. 73.
 Bedene, *adv.* forthwith, at once, quickly, 474, 1905, 2100, 2656, 3367, 4056, 4113, 4225; continually, 4788; All bedene, all at once, 3743. See All-bedene.
 Beding, *s.* bidding, 3529; Bedinge, 4778.
 Bedis, *pr. s.* requires, asks, 4537; (Bedes), prays, 1482; Bede (Bid), 1 *pr. pl.* pray, ask, 1683.
 Bedis, *pl.* prayers, 4670.
 Bedsted, *s.* place for a bed, 373.
 Bedwyn, *name*, 5498.
 Bee, *v.* be, 3793; (Be), *ger.* to be, 2092; Bees, *pr. s.* used as future, will be, shall be, 174, 1899, 1991, 4781; (Beys), 892; will be, can be, 3378; Bees (Be), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* be ye, 2604; (Beys), 874, 2435; used for the sing., 1355. And see Be.
 Beeris, *error for Heeris (as shewn by the alliteration)*, *pl.* armies, hosts, 5673.
 Bees, *pl.* ornaments, jewels, chains (of gold), 1548, 2337, 5274; (Beys), 3225. A.S. *béah*. In l. 5472, *bees* signifies ornaments of gold; and as gold is, in poetry, said to be *red*, the author has been led by alliteration to describe the *bees* as blood-red.
 Beet, *ger.* to kindle, 3918. A.S. *bétan*.
 Beete, *ger.* beat out, forge, 3626.
 Befall, *v.* happen, 251, 433; (Befalle), 1641.
 Before, *prep.* before, 1146, 2295, 2303; Befor, 272, 1900, 3973; *adv.* before, beforehand, 76, 736*, 798*, 1240; Be-for (Before), *conj.* before, 2290; Here-before (beforene), ere now, 721.
 Be-forne, *prep.* before, 361, 3769, Beforn, 4862; Beforne (Before), 1321, 1598; (Aforne), 2964.
 Be-forne, *adv.* before, 2262, 2274; in front, 1561.
 Begane, *pp.* adorned, 4911. A.S. *be-gán*, *pp.* of *be-gán*, to go round.
 Begin (Begyn), *v.* begin, 2272; (Began), *pt. pl.* 2044. See Begyn.
 Be-glouird, *pt. s.* deceived, beguiled, lit. flattered, 417. See *glaveren* in Stratmann.
 Begyle, *ger.* to beguile, 415; Begylid, *pt. s.* 390.
 Begyn, *ger.* to begin, 324; Begynnes (Begynnez), *pr. s.* 1026; Begynnys, *pr. s.* 5451; *pr. pl.* 2044.
 Be-hald, *ger.* to behold, 1063; (Behold), 2270; Behaldis, *pr. s.* (Beheld, *pt. s.*), looks, 1589; Behaldes (Bihaldyn), beholds, 2058; Behaldis, *pr. s.* beholds, 266; Behald, 2 *pr. pl.* 269; Beheld, *pt. s.* 42, 223, 264; Behald (Byhald), *imp. s.* 702, 740; Behaldis, *imp. pl.* 4996.
 Behalue, *s.* behalf, 5037.

- Be-heryd (Heret), *pp.* bepraised, 1616. A.S. *herian*.
- Behind (Byhynde), *adv.* behind, 1433; Be-hynde, 5437; Be-hynd (Byhynde), back, 1596.
- Be-houys, *pr. s.* it behoves, must needs, 172.
- Be-hynde; see Behind.
- Be-kend, *pp.* proclaimed, made known; Was þe croune be-kend, was proclaimed as the crown, i.e. as the chief, 3479. Or *croune* may be taken as dative; i.e. he was entrusted with the crown. *Bekenne* is properly to commit to, entrust to.
- Bekirs (Bekers), *pr. s.* fights, 1297; Bekire (Bekeryng), *pr. pl.* skirmish, 1394. E. *bicker*.
- Be-knew, *pt. s.* acknowledged (to), 671; (Be-knewe), made known, 2872.
- (Beld), *pp.* built, 2256.
- (Beldez); see Baldis.
- Bele, *s.* belly, 394. See Bely.
- Belechiste, belly-chest, belly, 423.
- Belue (Belyfe), *adv.* soon, 2209; Belyue (Belue), 1511; Belife, 256, 731*; Als belue, as soon as possible, at once, 800*; (Als belyue), 2183; (Als belyfe), 3181. See Belyne, Bilyue.
- Bellis (Bellys), *pl.* bells, 1563.
- Bely, *s.* belly, 4923. See Bele.
- Bely-blind, lit. belly-blind, extremely dark, 5648. See Bale-nakid.
- Belyme, *error for* Belyue, *adv.* quickly, 3761. See Belyue.
- Be-lyue, *adv.* quickly, soon, forthwith, 493, 670, 777, 2793; (Belyfe), 956, 1810, 2285; (Byliue), 1792; (Belue), 1452; Belyfe, 190, 382, 621; (Belyue), 1051; (Belue), 909; Belyf (Belyue), 1425; Als belyfe, as soon as possible, 710, 2404; (All belyue), very soon, 2404; As belyue, as quickly as possible, 3029, 5160.
- Bemes, *pl.* beams of light, 1543; (Bemys), sun-beams, 3225; Bemys, 62.
- Bemes, *pl.* beams, i.e. projecting horns (*but prob. an error for*
- Banes, bones, Lat. *text, ossa*), 5557. See the note.
- Bemys (Bemes), *pl.* trumpets, 1387, 2616; Bemen (Beeme), *gen. pl.* of trumpets, 3038. A.S. *býme*, *béme*, a trumpet.
- (Ben), *1 pr. pl.* are, 1992.
- Ben, *for* Baned, i.e. boned, 1702. MS. D. has baned *correctly*.
- Benche; see Benke.
- Bend (Bynde), *ger.* to bend, soften, cause to give way, 2243; Bendis (Benden), *pr. pl.* bend, 2225; Bende, *pt. s.* bent down to, 1620; Bend up, *ger.* to wind up or draw up (their crossbows and bows), 2211.
- (Bene), *v.* to be, 1465; (Bene), *pr. pl.* are, 1008, 2155; Bene, *pp.* been, 233, 489, 596; (Ben), 1004, 1123.
- Bene (Beyne), *s.* (the value of a) bean, 2567.
- Benere (Bener), *adj. comp.* fitter, better, easier, 1715. See Bayne.
- Benignite, benignity, goodness, 4662.
- Benke, *s.* bench, seat, 625, 4236; Benkis, *pl.* 5271; Benkes (Benche), 2927.
- Bent, *s.* field, plain, grassy field, 830*, 1328, 2053, 2825, 3027, 3126, 3170, 3502, 3557, 5151.
- Bent-fild (Feld), open field, field of battle (lit. field of bent-grass), 2786, 3139, 4764.
- Benyson, *s.* benison, blessing, 1692, 3308.
- Berand, *pres. part.* making a noise, roaring, 3903. See Bere, *s.*
- Berbrens, *pl.* barbarians, 5334; *gen.* 3572.
- Berd, beard, 320; Berdis, *pl.* 4117. See Bered.
- Berdles, *adj.* beardless, 2556.
- Bere, *v.* bear, carry, 124; bear (a child), 439; bear, 835, 1906; wear, 1715; Beres, *pr. s.* carries, 732*; (Beres), bears, 1219; Beris, bears, 312; thrusts, 788; carries about, 3351; (Berez), thrusts, 932; Beris, 2 *pr. pl.* bear, 2120; Beris, *pr. pl. 2 p.*: Beris a-pon vs, bring upon us, accuse us of, 4663; Bere, *pt. s.* bore, 751*.

- Bere, *s.* noise, din, 489, 496. See *bere* in Mätzner.
- Bere, *s.* bear, 4126; Beres, *pl.* 3849.
- Bered, beard, 122. See Berd.
- Beren (Berne), *s.* man, 3138. See Berin, Berne.
- Beres, *pr. s.* resounds (Beryd, *pt. s.*), 3038. See Bere, *s.*, Berand.
- Beried (Beryd), *pp.* full of graves, lit. buried, 3139.
- Berin, *s.* man, 5240. See Berne.
- Bering, *s.* bearing, 4319.
- Beritinus, *proper name*, 1242; (Bertinus), 1263.
- Berne, *s.* man, hero, 107, 157, 402, 446, 547, 585, 761*, 872, 999, 4110; (Bern), 787*, 1328, 1349, 2172; Bernes, *pl.* men, warriors, 66, 489, 747*, 781, 1146, 1214, 1220, 2517, 3432, 3572; husbands, 3741; (Bernez), 1037; Bernns (Bernes), 2214; (Bernes), 984; Bernys, 93, 296, 4125; (Bernes), 1307. A.S. *beorn*. See Beren, Berin.
- Berne-dure, *s.* barn-door; As a b., as great as a barn-door, 4852.
- Bernys (Bernez), *pl.* barns, 1763.
- Beron, baron, 1594; (Barouns), *pl.* 1594. See Baron.
- Berrers, *pl.* caskets (?), lit. bearers, things to carry things in (?), 5135. Lat. text, *loculos*, of which it is probably a translation.
- Bery, *s.* berry, 1349, 1357.
- Bery, *ger.* to hide, 4048; *imp. pl.* bury, 3308.
- Bery-bobis, *pl.* bunches of berries, 4809. See Bobb.
- Bery-buskis, *pl.* bushes bearing berries, 5239.
- Berynes, *s.* sepulchre, tomb, 5417, 5591. See the Troy-Book (E. E. T. S.).
- Berys, *pl.* bears, 3906. (But see the note.)
- Besan, Byffex, 3428.
- Besandis, *pl.* besants, i. e. coins of Byzantium, 124; (Besaundes), 3104; (Besandez), 1042; Besands (Besaundez), 1664, 1891; (Besaundes), 1906.
- Be-seche (Beseke), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* be- seech, 1097; Be-sechis (Besekes), *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* 1012. See Beseke.
- Beseke, 1 *pr. s.* 311, beseech, 801*; (Beseche), 3172; Besekis (Besekes), *pr. s.* beseeches, 1075; Beseke (Besekyn), 1 *pr. pl.* beseech, 1947, 2699; *pr. pl.* 2352. See Beseche.
- Besely, *adv.* quickly, 1944.
- Besemes (Besemys), *pr. s.* besems, befits, suits, 2944; Be-semys, 439.
- Besezis, *pr. s. refl.* considers, 751. A.S. *beséon*, to look about.
- Beside (Besyde), *prep.* beside, 1158. See Besyde.
- Besom, brush, 320. Du. *bezem*, A.S. *besma*.
- Be-soȝt, *pt. s.* besought, 303, 515. See Beseke, Beseche.
- Best, *adj.* best, 35, 807*; Beste, 401.
- Best, *adv.* best, 160, 289, 373, 439.
- Bestaill, *s.* cattle, 1199. O.F. *bestaille*.
- Beste, *s.* beast, 3920, 5591; Best, 762*, 4096, 4742, 5133, 5436; Bestis, *pl.* beasts, 280, 3493, 3572, 3593, 4118; animals, 5431; creatures, 3793; Bestes, beasts, 2765; Bestis (Bestes), 1207, 1532, 1540, 2853.
- (Beste), *error for* Boste, *s.* boasting, 2447. See the other MS.
- (Bestound), *for* Be stound, by the time, at this time, 1468.
- Besy, *adj.* busy, 595.
- Be-syde, *prep.* beside, 236, 1144; (Bysyde), against, with respect to, 875; Besyd (Besyde), beside, 2131. See Beside.
- Besyde (Bysyde), *adv.* near, 1694.
- Besy, *adv.* busily, 2991; (Besely), 2934.
- Besynes, *s.* business, busy employment (about), 4670.
- Bet, *adv.* better, rather, 3494.
- Bet, *pp.* beaten, made, 3696; (Betyn), beaten, 2088.
- Be-takens (Betokyns), *pr. s.* betokens, foretells, 3000; Be-takend, *pt. s.* betokened, 613.
- Bete, *ger.* to beat down, 2246; Beten (Betyn), *pp.* beaten, made, 2927. See Betis, Bett.
- Be-tid, *pt. s.* betided, befel, hap-

- penced, 214, 524 ; (Betyd), 2366 ; Betid (Betyd), *pp.* happened, come to pass, 3279.
- Be-time (Be-tyme), *adv.* betimes, in time, 1768, 1978.
- Betis (Betes), *pr. s.* beats, 1223 ; (Betyn), beat, 1153. See Bete.
- Betokyns ; see Be-takens.
- Bett, *pt. s.* kindled, 4167. A.S. *bētan*.
- Bett, *pp.* beaten, 1927 ; beaten (out), 5271. See Bete.
- Better, *adj.* 1102 ; *adv.* 106, 642.
- Be-twene, *prep.* between, 295, 317, 353, 660 ; (Bytwene), 797.
- Betwene, *adv.* between whiles, 1414 ; at times, 1299 ; (Bytwene), between, 1370.
- Betwyx, *prep.* betwixt, 4216.
- Beute (Bewte), *s.* beauty. In ll. 2739, 2919 it occurs in the unauthorised sense of 'kindness' ; but it is probably an error for *bonte*, i. e. bounty, goodness, kindness.
- Bewenes, *error for Beweues, pr. pl.* cover (themselves with no proud clothing), put on (no proud clothing), 4337. See *biveven* in Mätzner, and *biveved* in Halliwell.
- Bewte, *s.* beauty, 224. See Beute.
- Bezonde, *adv.* beyond, i. e. on the other side of the stream, 3742.
- Bi, *prep.* by, 79 ; along, 1538. See Be.
- Bi-cause of, because of, 3273. See Because.
- Bicchid, *pp.* as *adj.* evil, 4839. See *bicched bones* in Chaucer.
- Biche, *s.* bitch, 5482.
- Bid, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* pray, 1782 ; Biddis (Biddez), *pr. s.* prays, asks, 2191.
- Bide, *ger.* to bide, wait, remain, stay, 137 ; (Byde), *v.* 2172 ; *ger.* 1689 ; (Abyde), *v.* 2180, 2195 ; Bidis (Bydes), *pr. s.* waits, 3054 ; endures, 527.
- Bide (Byd), 1 *pr. s.* bid, command, 3415 ; Bidd, 3562 ; Bidd (Bidde), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* I bid, require, 2337 ; Biddis, *pr. s.* bids, 5576 ; (Byddes), 1717, 2211.
- Big, *adj.* strong, 1295 ; Bigg, big, great, 4742, 5156 ; (Big), bold, 1808 ; Bigge, strong, stout, 5516 ; Big (Bigg), 915 ; Bige, big, strong, 4085.
- Bigg, *ger.* to build, 2256 ; Biggis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* build, 4580 ; Biggid, *pp.* built, 5415 ; (Bigged), 2215 ; (Bigget), 1366. Icel. *byggja*.
- Bigger, *adj.* stronger, 2340 ; Biggire, bigger, 3903.
- Biggest, *adj.* strongest, 2159.
- Bigging, *s.* building, 4431 ; Bigging-is (Biggenges), buildings, towns, 2697. See Bigg.
- Bigly, *adv.* strongly, 1371 ; stoutly, 1138 ; largely, 423.
- Bignes, *s.* greatness, 105 ; arrogance, 1018.
- Bild, *s.* building, 1366, 4892, 5267 ; (Beld), building, 1297 ; town, 3106 ; (Belde), building, 1307, 2926 ; town, fort, 1080 ; (Beylde), 1338 ; Bilds, *pl.* buildings, 5603 ; Bildis (Beldes), 3137.
- Bilds, *pr. s.* builds, 5591 ; Bildis, *pr. s.* (Beldit, *pt. s.*), builds, pitches (tents), 2441 ; Bildis, *pr. pl.* build, hence dwell, 3741 ; Bi[ll]-did (Bild), *pt. s.* built, 1366 ; Bildid, *pt. s.* set up, 2673 ; Bildid, *pt. pl.* built, pitched, 3950 ; Bildid, *pp.* built, 5417 ; Bild, *pp.* 1161.
- Bildid, *pt. pl.* became emboldened, took courage, 3884. (*Of = some of.*) A.S. *byldan*.
- Bilding, *s.* building, 4431.
- Bilding (Beldyng), *s.* emboldening, encouragement, 1797. See Bildid.
- Bill, *s.* bill, writing, 1827.
- Billis, *pl.* bills, beaks, 3696.
- Bilyue (Belyue), *adv.* soon, 2271.
- Bird, *s.* lady, 5214 ; Birdis, *pl.* women, ladies, 595, 3723, 4259. (Bird) ; see Bride.
- Bire (Bir), rush, force, 711. Lowl. Sc. *birr, beir*, force. Cf. Icel. *byrr*, a favouring wind.
- Birth, *s.* birth, 256, 289 ; child, 439, 526.
- Bischop, *s.* bishop, 1458, 1473, 1489 ; (Bishop), 1506, 1570, 1644, 1692 ; (Bischopp), 1598, 1664.
- Bise (Byse), *adj.* bice, blue colour, 1532. Often described as purple ;

- see *bis* in Mätzner. O.F. *bisse*, Lat. *byssus*, Gk. *βύσσος*.
- Bitis**, *pr. s.* bites, 224, 2070; (*Bitez*), 1805; Bitand, *pres. pt.* biting, sharp, 610, 788, 3197, 5558; Bitten, *pp.* 3934.
- Bitterly**, *adv.* keenly, 1301; bitterly, 963.
- Blaa**, *adj.* livid, 559. Icel. *blár*, Dan. *blaæ*.
- Blade**, *s.* blade of a razor, 122; Bladis, *pl.* blades, 5558.
- Blak**, *adj.* black, 112, 606, 3920; Blake, 192, 562; (*Blak*), 1127.
- Blakenid**, *pp.* blackened, 556.
- Blamed**, 2 *pt. pl.* (*Blame*, 2 *pr. pl.*), blamed, 2429.
- Blan**, *pt. s.* ceased, 381, 1228. A.S. *blinnan*, *pt. t. blann*. See Blin.
- Blasand**, *pres. part.* blazing, bright, ardent, 2871; (*Blesand*), 1563; (*Blysnand*), 1524, 2229.
- Blase**, *s.* blaze; On blase, in a blaze, 559; (On a blasse), 2231.
- Blasenand**, *pres. part.* blazing, shining, 5262. See Blasand, Blasynand.
- Blasfeme**, *ger.* to blaspheme, 2737.
- Blasfeme**, *s.* blasphemy, 4663.
- Blason**, *s.* large shield, 4852; Blasons, *pl.* shields of arms, 787.
- Blaste** (*Blast*), *s.* blast, noise, 3038; blowing, drawing, 3233; Blastis, *pl.* blasts, 3959, 4162.
- Blasynand** (*Blasenand*), *pres. pt.* blazing, shining, 3225. See Blasenand.
- Blawis**, *pr. s.* blows, 4380; Blawen, *pp.* 5539; (*Blayn*), *pp.* 1757.
- Blaȝt**, *adj.* bleached, white, 4925, 5482; (*Blaught*), 1559. Lowl. Sc. *blaucht*; cf. A.S. *bléced*, bleached, pp.
- Ble**, *s.* countenance, mien, 466; *Blee*, 394. A.S. *bléo*.
- Bleaut**, *s.* coverlet of linen, 4912. O.F. *blialt*, *bliaut*, F. *blaude*, a rich vestment. Hence E. *blouse*.
- (*Bleez*), *pl.* appearance, 1548; see Ble. But doubtless an error for bees, as in MS. A.
- Blemysche**, *ger.* to blemish, pollute, 4345; Blemysch, to harm, 4289; Blemyschid, *pt. s.* blemished, damaged, spoilt, 4181; Blemysched (Blemyst), *pt. pl.* b'emi-shed, harmed, tore, 2985; Blemest, *pt. pl.* blemished, (but here) killed, 3943; see note.
- Blend**, *pp.* blended, compounded, 105.
- Bienkid**, *pt. pl.* glanced, looked, peered, 5607. E. *blink*.
- Blesand**, *pres. pt.* blazing, 604, 4230; shining, bright, 274. See Blasand.
- Blesenand**, *pres. part.* blazing, 562; Blesynand (*Blysnand*), flashing, 802; Blesnand, gazing, staring, 4812; Blesenand, 4080. See *blusnen* in Mätzner; so also the M.E. *bluschen* means (1) to shine, (2) to gaze.
- Blew**, *pt. pl.* (they) blew, 2616; Blewe (Blew), 1387.
- Blewe** (Blew), *s.* blue, 1524.
- Blid** (*Baldit*), *error for Bild*, *pp.* emboldened, encouraged, 1891. See Bildid, of which *Bild* is a shorter form.
- Blin**, *v.* cease, 4167. See Blan, Blyn.
- Blinde**, *ger.* to blind, deceive, 5234; Blindid (*Blyndyd*), *pt. s.* became dark, 3046.
- Blis**, *s.* bliss, 244, 1489; (*Blysse*), mirth, joy, 1834, 2871.
- Blisch**, *s.* glance; At a blisch, at a glance, in a moment, 606, 5435. See *blusch* in Mätzner; cf. E. 'at the first blush.'
- Blische** (*Bliss*), *ger.* to look, 2053; Blischis, *pr. s.* looks, gazes, 5583; Blisches (*Blyshys*), looks, 1338; (*Blyssez*), looks, 984; Blischis (*Blisshes*) vp, looks up, 872; Blischis, *pr. pl.* look, 4189; Blischt, *pt. pl.* looked, glanced, 5550, 5607. See *bluschen* in Mätzner.
- Blisfulle**, *adj.* happy, fair, 5415.
- Blissid**, blessed, 5625.
- Blissing**, *s.* blessing, 4573.
- Blithe**, *adj.* blithe, 517; (*Blyth*), 1834.
- Blithis**, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4624.
- Blithly**, *adv.* blithely, 5607.
- Blode**, *s.* blood, 640, 991; kindred, 585, 590; (*Blod*), 2053; Blod

- (Blode), 1966; Blod (Blude), kindred, 2739. See Blude.
- Blonk, *s. horse*, 749*, 758*. (Blonke), 1222, 2172; Blonke (Blonk), 767, 928; (Blonkke), 2974; (Blonkez), *pl. horses*, 791, 821*; (Blonnes), 1247; Blonkis (Blonkes), 886, 2057. Orig. a *white horse*.
- Blobirs (Blothers), *pr. s.* gurgles, rattles, 970. Cf. *bloberond*, bubbling, gurgling, in the Troy-Book, l. 9462; and see *blotter* in Halliwell.
- Blude (Blode), *s. blood*, 2048; race, 2418. See Blode.
- Blyckenand, *part. pres.* glittering, 604. See *blyknen*, to glitter, in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Blyn, *v. cease*, 2737; Blynnes, *pr. s.* 4160; Blynes, *imp. pl.* desist, leave off, 4011; Blyns, cease, 5365. See Blin, Blan.
- Blyndid, *pt. pl.* blinded, 3283.
- (Blysse), *s. prosperity*, 1827. See Blis.
- Blyssis, *pr. s.* looks, 789*. See Blisch.
- Blyth, *adv.* blithely, gladly, 3768.
- Blythly, *adv.* gladly, 789*, 3502.
- Bobance, *s. arrogance, vanity, presumption, boasting*, 2500; Bobans, 4252; (*Bobas, for Bobans*), 2016. “*Bobance, insolencie, surquedrie, proud or presumptuous boasting*;” Cotgrave.
- Bobb, *s. bunch, cluster*, 4777; Bobis, *pl.* 2852; (*Bobbez*), 2851. Lowl. Sc. *bob*, a bunch. Cf. ‘*a bob of grapys*;’ Cath. Anglicum.
- Bocifalon, Bucephalus, 3613; Bocifilas (*Bucifolon*), 767.
- Bode; see Bade.
- Bode, *s. command, message*, 534, 2805, 3137. A.S. *bod*.
- Bodely, *adj.* bodily, 4289.
- Bodword, *s. message*, 48, 1458 (*Bodworde*), 1489. See Bode.
- Body, *s. body*, 1127, 1548; Bodí, 224; (*Body*), 870, 894, 1482; Bode, 192; Bode (*Body*), body, person, 2444; Bodis, *pl.* 3903; (*Bodes*), 2476.
- Boghe, *s. bough*, 4982.
- Boke, *s. book*, 597, 625; (*Buk*), 1207.
- Bole, *s. trunk (of a tree)*, 5015; Boles, *pl. trunks (of trees)*, 5002; Bolis (*Bulesse*), *pl. boles, trunks*, 2851. *Bulesse* in Dub. can hardly mean ‘bulbaces.’ Cf. Icel. *bolr*, *bulr*, trunk.
- Bole, *s. coarse linen*, 4851. “*Baule*, pièce de toile grossière;” Godefroy. See Balan.
- (Boles), *gen. bull's*, 751*.
- Boll, *s. bowl, cup*, 55, 112, 2933, 4537; a cluster, 5240; a boss, 5647. Cf. *Bolls*, ornamental knobs; Halliwell. In l. 5240, perhaps we should read *bob*; see Bobb.
- Bolne, *v. swell*, 394; Bolnes, *2 pr. pl. swell, fill out*, 4435. Icel. *bölgna*.
- Bolstirs (Bolsters), *pl. cushions*, 1569.
- Bonde, *s. peasant, hence, uncouth man*, 4741. Lat. *homo agrestis*. Icel. *bóndi*.
- Bonden, *pp. bound*, 396, 3681; (*Bondyn*), 745*.
- Bondis, *pl. bounds, territories*, 4320. Bonds, limits (Lat. *terminos*), 4850; bounds, 3782; territories, regions, 4085, 5090.
- Bondsward; To our bondsward, i.e. to our bounds-ward, towards our bounds, 3752. See Bondis.
- Bone, *s. boon, prayer, request*, 547, 1492, 1672.
- Bone, *s. command (lit. petition)*, 3137. (But read *bode*, as in D.)
- Bonerte, *s. goodness*, 4662. Short for Debonerte.
- Borde (Burde), *s. board, table*, 842; (*Borde*), 1340; Borde, 1857; Bordis, *pl. tables*, 5271; (*Burdez*), 2927; boards (of the tablets), 640. See Damme-borde.
- Borden, *adj. wooden*, 3602.
- Bordren, *error for Broden (Brouden)*, *pp. ornamented*, 787. A.S. *brogdén*, *pp. of bregdan*, to braid, &c.
- Borely, *adj. burly, great, large*, 4089, 5435, 5472, 5603; Borly, 5002. See Burly.
- Boris, *pr. s. becomes dim, is surrounded by a burr or haze*, 556. A haze round the sun or moon is called a *burr* in the Whitby dialect and in East Anglia.

- Borliest, *adj. superl.* burliest, biggest, 4921. And see Borely.
- Borne, *pp.* born, 517, 590, 597.
- Borne, *s.* burn, stream, 3831.
- Borowid (Borrowed), *pp.* borrowed, 1849.
- Bos, *pr. s.* behoves; Bos haue, behoves to have, must needs have, 4526; Vs bos (buse) haue, it behoves us to have, 2503; Bos (Bus), it behoves, 2340; Bose, 1927; is necessary for, 3298; (Bus), it is necessary, 2309. See Bus, Bud.
- Bosom, *s.* bosom, 274.
- Bost, *ger.* to boast, 2737.
- Bost, *s.* boasting, 2447, 3581, 4023.
- Bot, *conj.* but, 53, 101, 146, 147, 159, 161, 2913, 3321; (Bott), 686, 793; unless, 2313, 3437, 4427; Bott, but, 844*, 4225; (Bott), 686, 846; (Bod), 1623; Bot, only, 106, 139, 447, 5054, 5525; Bot if, unless, 13, 642, 1786; Bot and, but if, 3756; Bot out, except the whole of, save wholly, 5025.
- (Bote), *pt. s.* bit, 2070.
- Bote, *s.* use, advantage, 137; remedy, 160. A.S. *bót*.
- Botez; see Batis.
- Both; see Bath.
- Bothom, *s.* bottom, 5532; (Bothom), 1306; (Bothuni), 712; Bothom, bottom (of the valley), 4808.
- Botis, *pr. s. impers.* it profits, 208. See Bote, *s.*
- Bott, *prep.* but, except, 2080; (Bot), 1328.
- Boukis, *pl.* bodies (but see the note to l. 3944), 3946.
- Boun (Bowne), *v. reflex.* get himself ready, 2878; Bounes, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3030; (Bownez on), advances, 768; Bounes him (Bownes hym), *pr. s.* makes him ready, 1506; (Bownez hym on), 3030; Bound, *pt. pl.* made themselves ready, hence, journeyed, went, 1116. Formed from Boune, *pp.* and *adj.* See Bownes.
- Bounde, *s.* orbit, circuit, 427 (see the note); Boundis, boundaries, lands, 3582.
- Boune, *pp.* (*properly* ready to go), gone, 218; *adj.* ready, 323, 534, 3037; (Bowne), 870, 999; Boun, 4206, 5540; Boun (Bowne), 2805. Icel. *búinn*, pp. of *búa*, to make ready.
- Bounte, bounty, goodness, 2717.
- Bourde, *s.* jest, 462.
- Bourne, *s.* stream, burn, brook, 3741, 4081, 4304; (Burne), 2587, 2597; Bournes, *pl.* burns, water-courses, 3487. See Burne.
- Bowe (Bow), *v.* bow, submit, 991; *ger.* to bend, 3551; Bow, *v.* pass, go, 2195; Bowes, *pr. s.* bows down, 423; turns, 1333; proceeds, 534; Bowis, *pr. s.* bends, comes, 4778; Bows, *pr. s.* goes, applies himself, 5363; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. s.* bows, 1672; (Bowys), bows down, 1692; (Bowez), bows down, is subservient, 2911; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. s.* directs himself, 2893; stoops, 1598; Bowes þarin, enters in, 4209; Bowis (Bownes), *pr. s.* goes, hastens, 1312, 1553 (but here we might rather read *bownis*); Bowis (Bowe), 1 *pr. s.* bow, 2777; Bowe, *pr. pl.* bend, turn, 2597; Bow, go, mount, 5243; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. pl.* yield, submit, 2476; (Bowed), *pt. s.* bowed to, 1620; Bowid, *pt. pl.* bowed, 196; Bow, *pr. s. subj.* if he return, 296; Bowe, *pr. pl.* submit to, 2606; (Bowed) (Boȝet), *pp.* bowed, bent, 1900; Bow, *imp. s.* bend, 547; Bowis (Bowys), *imp. pl.* return, 3118; (Bowes), depart, 2469; Bowes, return, 4011.
- Bowes, *pl.* bows, 4084; Bowis (Bowes), 1413, 2210.
- Bowis, *pl.* boughs, 4302, 4868, 4996; (Bowes), 2851.
- Bowlis (Bulez), *pl.* game of bowls, 1929.
- Bowmen, *pl.* archers, 3600, 5447.
- Bowne, *adj.* ready, 1380. See Boune.
- Bownes, *pr. s. refl.* prepares him, gets ready, 4954; goes, 1305; (Bownes þaim up), make their way up, 699. See Boune.

- Boyland, *pres. part.* oozing, welling, 4975.
- Bozes him vp, *pr. s. refl.* turns, goes up, 699.
- Brad, *pt. s.* spread, 4912. A.S. *bréðan*. See Braidis, Bredid.
- Brade, *adj.* broad, 496, 768, 732*, 783*, 1653, 1717, 3965, 4089; (Brade), 1340, 1514; Brad, 2118; (Brod), 2133; (Brade), 1408; (Brade), 802, 1297; On brade, abroad, in public, 1800; aloud, 3565; On brad, aloud, 2294. See Brode.
- (Brades vppe), *pr. s.* opens, 783*; (Brade), *pt. s.* drew, 2639. A.S. *bregdan*, Icel. *bregða*. See Braidis.
- Bradnes, *s.* broadness, breadth, 1374.
- Braes, *pl.* steep banks, 4809.
- Brag, *s.* bragging, 4319.
- Bragg, *ger.* to brag, 4553.
- Bragging, *s.* braying, noise, 3965; Braggins (Braggyng), brayings, loud sounds, 3037.
- Bragmenys, *pl.* Brahmans, 4194; Bragmeyns, *gen. pl.* 4236, 4448.
- Bragmeyn, the land of the Brahmins, 4209.
- Braide (Brayde), *s.* instant, moment; In a braide (brayde), in a short time, at once, 381, 1956, 4850; At a braide, in a moment, as soon as possible, 1220, 1956, 2231, 3918, 4206, 5539; At a braid, 5462; Braidis, *pl.* attacks, sudden assaults, 2137. Icel. *bragð*. See Brayde.
- Braidis, *pr. s.* draws, 2639; (Brades), snatches, 2951; leaps, 928; leaps quickly, jumps, 2892; Braide (Bradyn), hurry, 2229; Braidis, *pr. pl.* seize; Braidis to, take to, 3884; (Braden to), seize, 1413; Brait (Brade), *pt. s.* drew, 802. See Brades vppe, Braydis.
- Braidis, *pr. s.* spreads, extends, 1514; (Bradez), *pr. pl.* unfurl, display, 774. See Brad, Bredid.
- Brak, *pt. s.* broke, 510; Brake, 2 *pt. pl.* ye brake, 1357.
- Bran, *s.* bran, 4537.
- Brand, *s.* brand, fire-brand, 3138, 4230; sword, 446, 802, 3197, 3248; (Brande), 842, 870; (Brannde), 1426; Brande, sword, 427, 1223; Brandis (Brandes), *pl.* brands, burning logs, 2236; swords, 3674, 3842.
- Brant, *adj.* straight, erect, 3648. Cf. Swed. *brant*, steep. See Brent.
- Bras, *s.* brass, 55, 276; (Brace), 1387; Brase, 4085.
- Brasen, *adj.* brazen, 112.
- Brased, *pt. s.* pricked (?), 1317; but doubtless an error for broched, as in MS. D.
- Brast, *pt. s.* burst, 510, 1416; Braste, 872.
- Brathe, *s.* anger, 1744, 5365; (Breth), 1956; Brath (Breth), violence, fury, 1220. Cf. Icel. *bráðr*, sudden, rash.
- Brathly, *adv.* severely, 1214; vigorously, 2211. Icel. *bráðr*, sudden.
- Braunches, *pl.* branches, 2851, 4782, 5239.
- Brayne, brain, 4002; (Brane), 2645; Braynes, *pl.* 1419.
- (Brayne-pan), *s.* cap, hat, head-piece, 2499; (Brayn-pan), 1713.
- Brayne-wode, mad in the brain, 4506.
- Bre, *ger.* to frighten; To bre hire o bourde, to frighten her in jest, 462; Breis, *pr. s.* terrifies, 4837; Breed, *pt. s.* terrified, 4741. A.S. *brégan*, to terrify; from *bróga*, terror. ‘*Bree*, to frighten, North’; Halliwell.
- Bred, *in phr.* Bred-full, i. e. brim-full, 4089. Swed. *brädd*, brim; *bräddfull*, brimful. See Bretfull.
- Brede, *pr. pl.* breed, 4199; Bred, *pt. pl.* bred, 4782; Thyn bred, *pp.* thinly grown, 320.
- Brede, *s.* breadth, 3856, 4070, 5433; (Brede), 1502, 2118; O brede, in breadth, 3065, 3833. A.S. *bráðu*.

- Bredid, *pp.* scattered abroad, dispersed, lit. made broad, 2447. See Brad, Braidis.
- Breed, *pt. s.*; see Bre.
- Breede, *s.* breadth, 5460. See Brede.
- Brefe, *s.* letter, 1717, 1906, 2749; (*Breue*), 1956; (*Breve*), 3118. “*Bref*, a briefe, note, short writing;” Cotgrave. See Breue.
- Brefe, *adj.* speedy, quick in action, 5435. Cf. ‘*brief* in hand’ in Shak. K. John, iv. 3. 158, which Schmidt explains by ‘must be speedily dispatched.’ Jamieson gives ‘*brief*, keen,’ as in use in Upper Clydesdale.
- Brefe, *v.* describe, 256; briefly state, 4448; *ger.* to record, 208; Brefe, *pr. pl. 2 p.* appoint, 4503. Icel. *brefa*, to give a brief account of; from Lat. *breuiare*. See Breue.
- Breggis (Abreggez), *pr. s.* abridges, shortens, 3289. *Shortfor* Abreggis.
- Breis, *pr. s.* frightens, 4837. See Bre.
- Breke, *1 pr. s.* disclose my opinion, 2601; Brekis, *pr. s.* breaks, 787; (*Brekys*), 1230. *Break*, to disclose or open one’s mind, occurs in Shakespeare; cf. *breaking*, disclosure, Antony, v. 1. 14.
- Breke, *s.* breeks, breeches, 3842. A.S. *bréc*, pl. of *brōc*.
- Breme, *adj.* glorious, bright, 5262; fierce, 610, 787*, 2146, 4001; furious, 3038, 4147, 4839; sharp, 5558. A.S. *brēme*, illustrious; and see Mätzner.
- Bremely, *adv.* fiercely, 767, 1398, 3880; (*Bremly*), 2619; Bremely, sternly, 969; severely, 3913; angrily, 1413, 1805; quickly, 1827, 5155; Bremly, extremely, 3960.
- Brene, *ger.* to burn, 606; Brenes, *pr. s.* 1037; Brent, *pt. s.* burnt, 4762; Brent, *pp.* burnished, 3696, 4913; Brend (Brent), burnished, 1713. See Brin.
- Breneid, *adj.* cuirassed, armed with a ‘birnie’ or breastplate, 66. See Brenys.
- Brenke, *s.* brink, bank of a river, 4741; edge of a dike, 699. See Brinkis.
- Brent, *adj.* steep, 4812. See Brant.
- Brenys, *pl.* ‘birnies,’ coats of mail, 1247, 2980; (*Brenes*), 2214; (*Brynnes*), 2622; (*used for the sing.*) Brenys (*Brenes*), a cuirass, coat of mail, 915; Breneis (*Brenes*), coat of mail, 1295. Icel. *brynya*, A.S. *byrne*.
- Brerys (Breres), *pl.* briars, 2985.
- Brest, *s.* breast, 224, 932, 970, 841*; (*Briste*), 1599; Brestis (*Brestes*), 2162. See Brist.
- Breste, *s.* breast, 4097. (Prob. an error for *beste*, beast.) See Cowdrife.
- Brestes, *pr. s.* bursts, 728*; Brest, *pt. pl.* burst, 5221; Brest, *pp.* broken, 2645. See Brosten.
- Bretage (Britage), *s.* battlement, parapet, 1416. “*Bretesche, Bretesque*, a port, or portall of defence in the rampire or wall of a towre;” Cotgrave. “*Bretage*, a parapet;” Halliwell. See Britage.
- Bretagid (Britagett), *pp.* fortified with wooden towers, 1152. See above.
- Bretayn, Britain, 5668.
- Bretens, *pr. s.* breaks, batters, 1307; Brettens, cuts in pieces, 3197; Brettenes, beats down, 5612; Bretned (Brityned), *pt. pl.* cut to pieces, 1263; Bretind, *pt. pl.* 3905 (See Alto-); Breten, *pr. s. subj.* may break in pieces, 3294; Bretend, *pp.* defeated, 5311; Bretind (Bryttynyd), beaten down, destroyed, 2479; Bretened (Brytynett), *pp.* killed, 1328. Cf. A.S. *brytnian*, to dispense, distribute; *bryttian*, to dispense, allied to Icel. *brytja*, to chop. See Bretted.
- Bret-full, *adj.* brimful, 1548; Brettful, 4868. See Bred.
- Breth, *s.* breath, 970, 1274, 3233, 5583.
- Brethand, *pres. part.* breathing, smelling, 4809. Cf. A.S. *brēðan*, an odour.
- Brethire, *pl.* brothers, 2512, 5363.
- Bretted (Brytynd), *pp.* broken to pieces, 2256; (*Brytynd*), destroyed, 2697. Icel. *brytja*, to chop, from *brjóta*, to break;

- Swed. *bryta*, to break. See Bre-tens.
- Breue, *s.* brief, letter, 1181. See Brefe.
- Breue, *ger.* to describe, 1374; Breues, *pr. s.* speaks, 984; (Bre-vys), utters, 3251; Breuys, *pr. s.* utters, 462; (Breues), 1797; Breue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* mean, indicate, 1898; Breuyd, *pp.* recorded as being, noted, 1172; Breued, *pp.* described, 35; assigned, 749*; Breueyd (Breuet), recorded, 764; Breue, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* tell, 2285. See Brefe.
- Brid, *s.* bird, 411, 503, 4982; Brid-dis, *pl.* 252, 4435, 4782; Bridis, 5603; (Birdes), 1532.
- Brid, *s.* bride, 5204; (Birde), bride, 854; spouse, 3104; Brides, *pl.* wives, 4046; Bridis, women, 4125. (Bridyll), brid'e, 789*.
- Brig (Brigg), bridge, 2587.
- Brigge, *ger.* to abate, mitigate, lit. abridge, 3803. *Short for Abrigge.*
- (Brightfull), *error for Bretfull*, 1548. See Bretfull.
- Brilles, *pl.* beryls, 5135. Cf. F. *briller*, to shine, which is derived from a sb. *brille**, a beryl (Littré).
- Brin, *ger.* to burn, 3137; *v.* 3682; (Bryn), 2658. See Brene, Bryn.
- Bring, *v.* bring, 1199; *ger.* to carry, 1715; (Bring), *v.* 2101; Bringes (Brynges), *pr. s.* brings, 927; Bringis (Bringes), 1653.
- Brinkis, *pl.* brinks, shores, 4377. See Brenke.
- Brist, *s.* breast, 2871. See Brest.
- Brist, *s.* want, need, 3819. Swed. *brist*, want, need, failure; A.S. *byrst*, loss, defect. In this line & = than; the sense is, 'more for the harm of their beasts than their own need.' See burst in Mätzner.
- (Bristes), *pr. s.* bursts, 872. See Brestes.
- Bristils, *adj.* bristly, 4746. A false form; read And had bristils.
- (Brigate), *s.* fortification, parapet, 1301. See Bretage.
- (Britens), *pr. s.* destroys, 1037. See Breteus.
- Brixsill, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* reproach, upbraid, blame, 4662. Icel. *brigzli*, *s.* shame, blame; *brigzla*, to upbraid.
- Briȝt, *adj.* bright, 276, 427, 559, 604; fair, 466; *as s.* bright one, 5204; (Bright), 1524, 1715; (Bryght), 2337.
- Briȝtens (Bryghtyns), *pr. s.* brightens, renders clear, 3557.
- Broches (Brochez), *pr. s.* spurs, 2892; Brochis (Brochez), 2974; (Brochys), pricks, 1317; (Brochen), *pr. pl.* pierce, 787. F. *brocher*.
- Brode, *adj.* broad, 1898; (Brode), 1553. See Brade.
- Brode, *s.* child, lit. brood, 1929. (Broke); see Broweke.
- Broken (Brokyn), *pp.* broken, 1223, 1349.
- Brolle, *s.* child, brat, 1928. See Gloss. to P. Plowman.
- Bront, *s.* brunt, 783.
- Brosten (To-bristen, *pr. pl.*), *pp.* broken, 789. See Brestes.
- Brothire, *s.* brother, 5355; Brothirs, *gen.* 5344.
- Browden, *pp.* braided, woven, twisted, 1524; Browde, 4913. A.S. *brogden*, *pp.* of *bregdan*, to braid.
- Browe, *s.* brae, steep bank, 4837.
- Broweke (Broke), *v.* possess, use, enjoy, 3412. A bad spelling; read *browke*.
- Broȝt, *pt. s.* brought, 974; (Broght), 3118; Broȝt (Broght), *pp.* 48, 727, 1228; (Bryghtyn), 3158.
- Brunt, *s.* sudden blow; At a brunt, on a sudden, 3934. See Bront.
- Brusche (Broush), *s.* conflict, sudden rush, swift movement, 783; (Brush), 2133.
- Bruschis (Brushes), *pr. s.* hastens, hurries, 1222, 1426; Brusches (Brushys), flings himself, 963.
- Brym, *s.* shore, 5557. A.S. *brymme*.
- Brym, *s.* river, 4080. A.S. *brim*, wave, surf, sea.
- Brym, *adj.* fierce, 496. See Breme.
- Brymly, *adv.* fiercely, 1222, 1333, 5451. See Bremely.
- Bryn, *ger.* to burn, 4856; Bryn, *pt. s.* burnt, shone, 5648; (Brynt),

- pt. pl.* burnt, 2474; Brynnand, *pres. part.* burning, shining, 2639; Brynt, *pp.* burnished, 276, 2926; Brynd (Brynt), burnt, 2697. See Brin, Brene. (Bryn), *s.* burn, mark made by a brand, 751*.
- Bryng furth, *v.* bring forth, 526; Bryngis (Bringez), *pr. pl.* bring, 1207.
- (Bryssyt), *pp.* bruised, broken, harmed, 2645; Bryssid (Bresyd), bruised, hence broken in, much experienced, 1003. See brusen in Mätzner.
- (Brytynd), *pp.* broken to pieces, 3294; destroyed, 2697. See Bretens.
- Bucifalon, Bucephalus, 5582; (Bucifelon), 1316; (Bucyfall), 3178; Bucifelon, 3648; Bucifal, 3031.
- Bud, *pt. s. impers.* it behoved, 3793; Bud, *pt. s. subj.* would behove, 3274. See Bus.
- Buke, *s.* book, 17, 35, 192, 203, 881, 916; (Boke), book, i. e. Romance, 1371, 1570.
- Bule, *s.* bull, 4527; Bules, *pl.* 3903; Se-bules, sea-bulls, 3846.
- Bulle, *s.* writing, record, 4448.
- Bullok, *s.* bullock, 4527.
- Bunden, *pp.* bound, 3602, 5540; firmly settled, 5581.
- Burde, *s.* sport, play, 2500.
- Burde, *s.* board, plank, 1340; (Borde), table, 2969.
- Burde, *pt. s.* behoved, 510, 1966; (Burd), ought, 776*; Burde, *pt. s. subj.* should prove to be, 4396. Icel. *byrja*.
- Burdeaux, Bourdeaux, 5668.
- Burgaige, *s.* burgesses, people of the borough, 5221. See *bourgage* in Cotgrave.
- Burgh, *s.* city, 1559, 5243; Burgis, *pl.* boroughs, 4431; Burghes (Burges), towns, 1078.
- Burly, *adj.* burly, great, 4096, 4742; (Borely), 2632. See Borely.
- Burne, *s.* burn, brook, 3062. See Bourne.
- Burneschid, *adj.* burnished, 55.
- Burnet (Burnett), brown stuff, 1569. "Brunette, fine black cloth;"
- Cotgrave. Orig. a *brown* cloth; F. *brun*.
- Burze, *s.* town, borough, city, 218, 3746, 5415; Burȝ, 147; (Burgh), 928, 1037; (Burght), 1380, 2148; Bu[ȝ]e (Burgh), 2256, 2673; Burzes (Burghies), 2337; (Burgh-ez), 1446.
- Burȝe-walles (Burgh-walles), *pl.* town-walls, 2246; Burȝe-wallis (-walle, *sing.*), 1297.
- Bus, *pr. s. impers.* it behoves, 3354; (Buse), 3358; Buse, 1808. See Bos, Bud. *Short for Behofis.*
- Busche, *s.* bush, 3920.
- Buschels, *pl.* bushels, 4241.
- Busifolen, Bucephalus, 749*. See Bucifalon.
- Buske, *ger.* prepare, 373; *v.* get ready, deck, 1511; (Buske), *v.* go, 2195; Buske þe, *v.* prepare thyself, 2908; Buske hym, *v.* prepare himself, 3126; Buskis (Buskes), *pr. s.* puts, 1506; (Buskes hym), gets ready, 811*; arrays himself, 1295; Buskis (Buskez), goes, 1306; Buskis (Buskes), *pr. pl.* prepare, make ready, 774; (Buskys), *pr. pl.* *refl.* prepare themselves for, get themselves ready for, 2452; Buske, 2 *pr. pl. subj.* if (ye) come, if (ye) advance, 3752; Busked (Buskett), *pt. s.* prepared, 2676; Buskid, *pp.* made ready, 3609; (Busked), arrayed, 2214. Icel. *búa-sk*, to prepare oneself.
- (Buske), *s.* bush, stick, 1340; Buskis, *pl.* bushes, 2851.
- Buskest, *adj. superl.* readiest (?), 1247. (But prob. an error for Busket, *pp.* arrayed; see Buske). Cf. Lowl. Sc. *buskie*, fond of dress.
- But, *prep.* without, 1678, 3378; (Bout), 1340; Butt, 2380.
- Butlers (Botlers), *pl.* butlers, 2934.
- Buwne (Bowne), *ger.* to go, lit. get ready, set out, 1511. See Boun.
- Buxsom, *adj.* obedient, consenting, 323; (Buxme), obedient, 2805; (Buxum), 786*.
- Buzes (Bownes), *pr. s.* turns, lit. bows, bends, 1181. See Bowe.

- Buzes (Bowez), *pl.* boughs, 2985.
See Bowis.
- By, *prep.* by, 54, 250, 253; near, beside, 482, 681, 769*; (Be), by reason of, for, 921. See Be.
- (Byd), *v.* offer, 1891.
- (Byde), *ger.* to dwell, 966; Bydis (Bydes), *pr. s.* abides, sits, 2963; Bydis (Abydez), *pr. pl.* wait for, 1116.
- Bydene, *adv.* forthwith, 2699. See Bedene.
- (Bydome), *error for* Beden, *pt. pl.* bade, advised, 2656.
- (Byforne), *prep.* before, 770*.
- (Byggyd), *pt. s.* set up, 2673; *pp.* built, 1161.
- (Byheld), *pt. s.* saw, 780*, 1600.
- Byi, *ger.* to buy, 4359.
- (Byliue), *adv.* soon, 857. See Beliue.
- Bynde, *v.* bind, 4762, 5516; (Bynd), *ger.* 2852; Bynd, *ger.* 3432.
- Bytand, *pres. pt. as adj.* sharp, biting, 122, 446.
- Caban, *s.* cabin, tent, 4775; Cabayne, 5173; Cabons, *pl.* 4177.
- Cablis (Cablys), *pl.* cables, ropes, 2599.
- Cacany, *Lat.* Cathomi, 5489.
- Cache, *v.* take, assume, 2417; *ger.* to gain, 4872; Cachis (Cachez), *pr. s.* goes, marches, 1049; (Caches), gathers together, 2134; Cache, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* catch; Cache vp þine hert, regain thy courage, 470; Caches (Kachez), *imp. pl.* take, 2564.
- (Cafe), *s.* cave, hollow, 730*.
- Caffare, *error for* Chaffare (*as shewn by the alliteration*), *s.* chaffer, traffic, intercourse, 4603.
- Caggis (Cachez), *pr. s.* draws, fastens, 1521. See numerous examples in Mätzner of *caggen*, to bind, fasten.
- Caire (Care), *ger.* to go, 1688, 1832; Caire, *ger.* to go, to cross, 2588; Caire, *v.* return, 3507; Caire (Cayre), *v.* return, travel back, 3418; Caire, 1 *pr. s.* go, 2280; come, 1878; Cairis (Cares), *pr. s.* goes, walks, 859; Cairys, goes, 5173; Caires (Carys), goes, 953; (Carez), 1038; Caires, comes, 3964; returns, 3962; Cairis, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3008; Caires (Cairen), *pr. pl.* go, 887; Cairis (Caires), go, 900; Caire, *pt. pl.* went, 2402; Caire, *imp. s.* turn, return, 3562; Caire (Carez), go thou, 1501; Caires (Cayrez), let them retreat, 3414; Caires, *imper. pl. 2 p.* go ye, 889. Cf. Icel. *keyra*, to prick on, urge, drive. See Kaire, Cares.
- Caitefe (Catef), *adj.* caitiff, vile, 1775.
- Caitefe, *s.* caitiff, wretch, 3078; Caiteffe, 3562. See Caytefe.
- Cait[if]este (Catyfest), *adj.* most caitiff, vilest, 1707.
- Calabree, Calabria, 5671.
- Calcidoynes, *pl.* chalcedonies, 5274.
- Cald, *adj.* cold, 1599, 4928; (Cold), 3169.
- Calde, Chaldea, 5669; Caldec, 90.
- Caldipol (Cadypolez), *a city*, 2151.
- Calistride (Lat. Talifrida), queen of the Amazons, 3711, 3721, 3778.
- Calke, *v.* calculate, 673.
- Call, *v.* call, name, 618; (Calle), call, 1479, 1848; Call, *ger.* 229; (Calle), *ger.* to call upon, 2244; Callis, *pr. s.* calls, 431, 1077; (Calles), 948; Calls, 5224; Cals, 4856; Callis, 2 *pr. s.* 1871; Cald, *pt. s. 1 p.* called, 3195; Callid, *pt. s. 559*; Callyd, *pt. pl.* 2138; Callid (Callyd), *pp.* called, 1046, 1903; summoned, 5198; Caled (Callyd), called, 823; Cald, *pp.* called, said to be, 1820; reckoned, 3908.
- Calodone (Calydon), Chalcedon, 1028; (Calidon), 1038.
- Calodoyns (Calodons), *pl.* men of Chalcedon, 1032.
- Calues, *pl.* calves, 3892; *gen.* of calves, 4476.
- Cambs, *pl.* combs, 5130.
- Camels, *pl.* camels, 2769.
- Camlyn, *s.* camlet, the name of a stuff, 4340.
- Camour, *Lat.* Cemarre, 5489.
- Can, *pr. s. 1 p.*; Can noȝt þare-on, cannot agree to that, 3507; can bear, endure, 832; know, 260,

- 685; Can, *pr. pl.* can, 248, 250.
See Kan.
- Candace, *prop. name*, 5090, 5105, 5177, 5245, 5263, 5281.
- Candill, candle, 4230.
- Candilstickis (Candelstyke), *pl.* candlesticks, 1571.
- Candoyle, Candaules, 5092; Candoiile, 5148, 5159; Candele, 5419.
- Canony, *a country*, 5669.
- Can[o]pe, *s.* canopy, 5266.
- Cantelle, *s.* portion, 4514. *Cantle* in Shakespeare.
- Capadose, Cappadocia, 742*; Capados (Capadoce), 2761; Capidos, 90, 5669.
- Cape, *s.* cope, vault, 1537, 1755, 1871; (Cope), 2368.
- Capho Resey (Chaiphō rosey), *a place-name*, 1077. See note.
- Captayns, *pl.* captains, 3590.
- Capyll, horse, 754*.
- Caraput, *prop. name*, 5094.
- Caratros, *prop. name*, 5337, 5343, 5364, &c.
- Carayne, *s.* carrion, 4524. See Carion.
- Carcas, carcase, 4524.
- Care, *s.* anxiety, 149, 166, 349, 1104, 3508, 4013; trouble, 5608; sorrow, 3239.
- Care (Kare), *imp. s.* be anxious, care, 2815.
- Carefull, *adj.* mournful, 3869; (Carefull), sorrowful, 1815.
- Careles, *adj.* free from anxiety, 405.
- Cares hym, *pr. s.* betakes himself, turns, goes, 730*; Carez, goes, 768*. See Caire.
- Carid (Cared), *pp.* cared, 1461.
- Carion, *s.* carcase, 5587; Carions, *gen.* body's, 4357; Cariouns, *pl.* carcases, 4455. See Caryon, Carayne.
- Carpe, *s.* speech, talk, 3500, 3929, 4566, 5011; relation, 3112; meaning, 1794; story, tale, 3469; Carpe (Carpynge), *s.* speech, saying, message, 2346; speech, 748; story, 1455; decision, 1023.
- Carpe, *v.* talk, say, 592; Carpe, *ger. 8*; Carpis, 2 *pr. s.* speakest, 100; (Carpys), 2911; Carpis (Carpez), *pr. s.* speaks, 860; miswritten
- Crasis (Carpes), 833, 2490; *pr. pl.* speak, 1604; Carps, *pr. s.* says, 5367; Carpid, 1 *pt. s.* spoke, told, 3058; 2 *pt. s.* spakest, 234; *pt. s.* spoke, 230; Carped, *pp.* 108. Cf. Icel. *karpa*, to boast.
- Carpentaris (Carpenters), *pl.* carpenters, 1117; Carpenteras, 4205.
- Carryg (Carrak), *s.* carrack, Carrick, barge, 3376; Carrygis, *pl.* 63. "Carraque, the huge ship termed a Carricke;" Cotgrave.
- Cartes, *pl.* carts, cars, 3058.
- Carte-wise, chariot-wise, 3629.
- Cartros, Caratros, 5353. See Caratros.
- (Carye), *put for Cayre, ger. to go, cross*, 2588. See Caire.
- Caryn þaim, *pr. pl.* return, 3110. See Caire.
- Caryon, *s.* carcase, body, 4687. See Carion.
- Cas, *s.* case, 282; event, 940; chance, 292, 405, 719; (Case), circumstance, 2350, 2641; way, means, 1362; luck, 2163; (Cause), chance, 1104; Case, circumstance, 671, 848, 1464; misfortune, 401; Cases, *pl.* things, circumstances, 3727.
- Caspy, Caspian Sea, 3705.
- Cast, *s.* throwing, casting, 1302; Castis (Castez), *pl.* plans, 1764. See Kast.
- Cast, *ger. to cast, 5155; v. refl. endeavour, 4671*; Castis, *pr. s.* casts, 5587; (Castes), *plans*, 1361; (Kest), throws, 1537; Castes, casts, 1997; Castis, *pr. pl.* cast, 163. See Kast, Kest.
- Castans (Castanez), *gen.* of a chestnut; Of castans hewes, of the colour of a chestnut, 1086; (Castans), *gen. sing.* of the chestnut, of chestnut colour, 1537. See Kastand.
- Castell, *s.* castle, 1152, 2266, 3602, 5263; Castels, *pl.* 4442; Castells (Castellys), 3414.
- (Castell-ȝarde), castle-yard, 768*.
- Castite, *error for Chastite, s. chastity, 4603.*
- (Castor), *prop. name*, 766*.
- Cauatise, covetousness, 4562.

- Cauels, *pl.* fragments, 799. Icel. *kafli*, a piece, bit.
- Caues, *pl.* caves, 4020, 4049; Cauys, 4354.
- Caulus, *proper name*, 1229, 4907.
- Cause, cause, 577, 848, 921; cause, plea, side (in the dispute), 3993.
- Caused (Causyd), *pt. s.* made, 3278.
- Causles, *adj. as adv.* without a cause or reason, unreasonably, 3190;
- Causeles (Causles), 1817.
- Cayrayne (Caryon), *s.* carrion, 3255. See Carayne.
- Caytefe (Catyff), *s.* wretch, 3278; Caytefes (Catyffeze), *pl.* wretches, 1754. See Caitefe.
- Cazt, *pt. s.* took, 5212. See Kazt.
- Cecile (Cesyll), Sicily, 2103.
- Cedres, *pl.* cedars, 5237.
- Cellis, *pl.* cells, 4024.
- Cerastis, *prop. name*, 916.
- Certayn, *adv.* certainly, 326; Certayne, 1101; For certayn, 183.
- Certifi, *v.* certify, 250; Certified (Certyfyed), *pt. s.* informed, 2774.
- Certis, *adv.* certainly, 4360.
- Ceyle; see Sele.
- Chace, *s.* chase, 3057, 4736.
- Chache, *v.* catch, seize hold of (one), 1804; Chach, catch, derive, 4227; Chacches (Chakez), *pr. s.* brings together, 1281; Chache (Cache), *imp. s.* receive, 748.
- Chaffe, or Chasse, 468. It seems to mean 'great heat,' or 'a chafing-dish,' from F. *chauffer*, to heat, chafe. Or *chasse* may mean a jewel case of red gold. See Chasse.
- Chaiere, *s.* chair, 5515; Chaiare, 493.
- Chalang, *v.* challenge, claim, 4388; (Chalynge), claim, 1848.
- Chalk-quite (Chalke-white), white as chalk, 1584; Chalke-quyte, 468; miswritten Shalk-quyte (Chalke-white), 1562.
- (Chaltird), *pp.* 746*. Sense unknown; the sense required is 'tightly bound,' with reference to the horse's jowl.
- Chambre, chamber, 53, 111, 151, 358; (Chamer), 944; (Chaumbre), 1762; (Chawimbre), 1113, 1181; Chambres (Chaumbres), *pl.* chambers, 2979.
- Chambirlayn (Chamerlayn, *MS.* chamernlayn), chamberlain, 1584.
- Champe, *s.* field, meadow, plain, 4719; space in which the gems were set, 3677.
- Chance, *s.* chance, accident, 144; (Chaunce), chance, 2788; Chanche misfortune, 403.
- Chance (Chaunce), *pr. s. subj.* (if) it befall, 1882; Chansid, *pt. s.* happened, 4801.
- Changis, *pr. s.* changes, 120, 382; (Chaungez), 1851; Changis (Changes), 2 *pr. s.* changest, 831; Changid, *pt. s.* changed, 377, 466; (Chaungett), 1119; Changand, *pres. part.* changing, 3271, 3687.
- Chiape, *ger.* to escape, 2788; Chapid, 1 *pt. pl.* escaped, passed, 4215.
- Chaplayne (Chapelain), chaplain, 1584.
- Chaplets, *pl.* chaplets, garlands, 3687.
- Charboele, carbuncle, 4900; Charbocles, *pl.* carbuncles, 5647; Charbokles, 3677.
- (Chare), *s.* chariot, 822*.
- Charge, *s.* amount, lit. weight, 403; Chargis, *pl.* loads, 5598; Charges (Charge), commands, 2660.
- Charge, 1 *pr. s.* charge, command, 1918; Charge[s], (Chargez), *pr. s.* charges, enjoins, 1194; Chargid, *pt. pl.* loaded, 5632; Chargid, *pp.* covered, 4719; Charge, *imp. s.* care for, mourn, 866.
- (Chariott), *s.* chariot, 802*; Chariotis, *pl.* chariots, 3021, 3057.
- Charme, *s.* charm, incantation, 343.
- Chasse, *s.* 5647. One sense of F. *chasse* is 'a shrine for a relick' (Cotgrave); Lat. *capsa*. Here 'as a *chasse*' may mean 'as big as a box,' or 'as big (or as red) as a jewel-case.' See Chaffe.
- Chasteand, *pres. pt.* correcting (*but here apparently used in the sense of provoking*), 4607. O.F. *chastier*, to chastise, correct, amend.
- Chater, *v.* chatter, gabble, mutter, 115; (Chaterand), *pres. pt.* talking, 824*.

- Chatrid, *pp.* filled, filled quite full (?), 4900. A doubtful word; cf. *chokkefull* in *Morte Arthure*, 1552.
- Chanele, 4924. Indistinct in the MS. Perhaps we should read *chanele*, which we might explain as 'hoary,' or 'whitened with age.' Cf. O.F. *chanes*, white hair, *chanuer*, to turn white, said of the hair; from Lat. *canus*, hoary.
- Chaufe, *pr. pl. 1 p.* warm, chafe, 4287; Chawfis, *pr. s.* chafes, 3519.
- Chaufing (Chawfyng), *s.* heat, 2545.
- Chaumbres, *pl.* chambers, 5601.
- Chaunce, *s.* chance, good fortune, 4388; Opon chaunce, perchance, 5609.
- (Chaungez), *pr. s.* changes, 1854; Chaungid, *pt. pl.* changed, i.e. turned sad in look, 5609.
- Chaunses (Chauncez), *impers. pr. s.* befalls, happens to, 1036.
- Chauyls, *pl.* jaws, 3696, 4984; Chaviles, 3632; (Chauvez), 746*. A.S. *ceaflas*, jaws.
- Chawfis; see Chaufe.
- Chaye, *s.* (*perhaps*) company, assembly, 3349. Roquefort gives O.F. *chaye*, company, assembly. The sense may thus be: 'an amethyst, which all the company consider rich (so says the romance), and, as for rankness of wines, it lets no drunkenness hurt them, viz. the men who bear it.' As to the virtues of the amethyst, see the note.
- Cheele, *s.* chill, cold, 4164. See Chele.
- Chefe, *adj.* chief, 115, 440, 493; excellent, 343; large, 3677.
- Chefe, *s.* chief, chieftain, 440.
- Chefe, *adv.* chiefly, 363.
- Chefe, *v.* happen, befall, 403; (Chefyd), *pp.* achieved, 2712. See Gloss. to *Troy-Book*.
- Chefely, *adv.* especially, 2660.
- (Chefest), *adj.* chiefest, largest, 1985.
- Cheffire, *adj. comp.* chiefer, superior, 4801.
- Cheke, *s.* check, resistance, defence, 4801; Chekis (Chekez), *pl.* checks, victories, 3098.
- Chekis, *pl.* cheeks, 3942, 4984; (Chekez), 2782; (Chekys), cheeks, face, 1747.
- Chele, *s.* chill, 2545; Chelis, *pl. 4287.* See Cheele.
- Chealous, *adj.* zealous (?), 5446.
- Chere, *s.* face, countenance, 468, 743, 5302, 5609; appearance, 375; favour, 368; (Chere), look, 1815.
- Chere, *adj.* dear, loving, hence bright (?), 5302. A curious use of the word, as if confused with *cheerful*. *Clere* would make better sense.
- Cheris, *pr. s.* cheers, 5447.
- Cherische, *v.* cherish, 368; Cherishest (*for* Cherischet), *pt. s.* cherished, comforted, 5446; Cherest, *pt. pl.* cherished, 594; Chereschest, *for* Chereschet (Cheryst), *pp.* cherished, made much of, 2562.
- Chesboll (Chessebollez, *pl.*), poppy, 1985. "Hec papauer, chesbolle;" Wright's Vocab. col. 644, l. 15.
- Chese, *v.* choose, 337; (Chose), 1773; (Chese), *ger.* 1178; Chese, 1 *pr. s.* 1020; Chese, *pt. s.* chose, 493; Chese him, chose for himself, 1194; (Chesez hym), chooses for himself, 1194; Chese, *imp. s.* choose, 363, 807*, 4388; Chese (Chesse), *imp. pl.* 1922.
- Chese, *pt. s.* went, chose (to go), 5247. A badly selected word; merely introduced for the alliteration. See above.
- Chesses, *pl.* seed-pods of a poppy, called *cheeses* from the shape, 1985. See Chesboll.
- Cheualous, *adj.* chivalrous, brave, 3608; Cheualus, 655.
- Cheualry, *s.* chivalry, 3098; (Chevalry), deeds of chivalry, 2712.
- Cheuelere, *s.* hair, 4924. F. *chevelure*.
- Cheuer, *adj.* chiefer, superior, 1882.
- Cheuys, *pr. s.* achieves to be, 655; Cheues, *pr. pl.* prosper, 2379; Chevyd hym, *pt. s.* there happened to him, 739*; Cheuyd (Chefyd), happened, happened successfully, 2788; Cheued (Chefyd), *pt. s. refl.* achieved, accomplished, 3098; 1 *pt. pl.* arrived, attained, 4215.

- F. *chevir*, to compass, &c.; Cot-grave.
- Chevalry, cavalry, 816*.
- Cheynes, *pl.* chains, 1081, 3681, 4877, 5516; (*Chynes*), 1565, 2587.
- Chidis, *pr. s.* chides, 5319.
- Chiere, *s.* face, surface, 4719. O.F. *chiere* is given by Godefroy as a spelling of O.F. *chere*, face. See Chere.
- Chiftayne, *s.* chieftain, captain, 3021; Chiftan, 440, 655; Chiftane, 1194. Chiftan (*Cheftan*), 1036; Chiftans, *pl.* captains, 5446; Chiftanes, 807*, 824*.
- Child, *s.* child, 594, 697, 835; knight, 825 (*in MS. D., where A. has knyȝt*); With child, 393; Child, *gen.* child's, 824*; Childir, *pl.* children, 1017; Childire, 256, 3116, 5576; Childer, 723*; young men, 815*; Childire (*Childer*), *gen. pl.* children's, 1773; (*Chelder*), *pl.* children, 2678.
- Childhede, *s.* childhood, 4215.
- Chill (*Chyll*), *s.* chill, i.e. frost, ice, 2541. See Chele.
- Choll, *s.* cheek, jowl, 746*. E. *jowl*; from A.S. *ceaf*, jaw, cheek, whence M.E. *chaul*, *choll*.
- Choppid, *pt. pl.* chopped, cut, 3057; *pp.* hewn, cut, 4736.
- Chosely, *adv.* choicely, 594.
- Chosen (*Chosyn*), *pp.* chosen, 1562, 1985; *Chosyn*, *pp.* chosen, choice, 802*; Chosene, 3786.
- Chohest, *adj. superl.* choicest, 337.
- Chur'les, *pl.* churls, savages, 4736.
- Chykin, *s.* chicken; Chykin-brid, *s.* young bird, 4984.
- Chymmneys, *pl.* fire-places, 4287.
- Chynez, *pl.* chains, 746*, 788*. See Cheynes.
- (Cipriss), cypress, 790.
- Cite, *s.* city, 407, 1118, 1148; (*Cyte*), 1513; (*Cety*), 1510; (*Site*), 1144; Citis (*Citez*), *pl.* 2104, 2115; (*Setez*), 1694.
- Cite-ward; To þe cite-ward, i.e. toward the city, 2487.
- Cithe, *s.* country, 209. (*The c is hard, as k.*) See Kithe.
- Citizens (*Cyteleyns*), *pl.* citizens, 3403; (*Citesyns*), 2199.
- Claggid, *pp.* clogged, sticky, 5427. Lowl. Sc. *clug*, to clog.
- Clambert, *name*, 5490.
- Clame, *ger.* to claim, 4562.
- Clame (*Clam*), *pt. s.* clomb, 2108.
- Clamp (*Clampe*), *s.* pinch, i.e. moment, 3263.
- Clappis (*Clepys*), *pr. s.* clasps, clips, i.e. embraces, 3237; Clappis, 384, 5252.
- Clarions, *pl.* clarions, 2617; Clarons (*Clarions*), 775.
- Clathe, *s.* cloth, 4687; Clæþe, 141; Clathe (*Clath*), clothing, garment, 1086; Clathis, *pl.* cloths, 236, 4149; garments, 4960; Clathis (*Clathiez*), clothes, garments, 1498.
- Clatirs, *pr. s.* mutters, 412; Clatird, *pt. s.* muttered, 342; *pt. pl.* rattled, 555.
- Clause, clause, passage (of the text), 278, 885; story, 1613, 3361; short letter, message, 1794, 1955, 5095.
- Clayme (*Clame*), *v.* claim, 1848.
- Clede, *pt. s.* clad, 121; Cled (*Clad*), 2735; Cled, *pp.* 3693, 4955, 5210.
- Clees, *pl.* claws, 5432. A.S. *clés*.
- Cleke, *s.* snatch, clutch, 2163.
- Clekis, *pr. s.* draws, plucks, 282; snatches, 2937; (*Clekez*), seizes, 842. See Clyght. Lowl. Sc. *cleik*.
- Clene, *adj.* pure, 3822, 4700; good, 259; clear, 1479; fair, 495; bright, 1378; new, 978.
- Clene, *adv.* cleanly, 55, 1497; wholly, thoroughly, entirely, altogether, 19, 174, 209, 357, 671, 799, 900, 1023, &c.
- Clenly, *adv.* neatly, 1837; wholly, 555, 3904.
- Clennest, *adj. superl.* cleanest, purest, brightest, 5289; purest bred, 3775.
- Cleopas, Cleophas, 4907.
- Cleopatras, Cleopatra, 823, 835.
- Clepis, *pr. s.* calls, 534; (*Clepys*), 1507, 2184, 3117; Clepid (*Clepyd*), *pp.* 2884. A.S. *cleopian*.
- (Clepys); see Clappis.
- Clere, *adj.* clear, bright, 28, 259, 282, 1378, 3361; pure, 1571, 1892; fine, 1043; fair, 5090; illustrious, 2692.
- Cleres, *pr. s.* becomes clear, becomes

- bright, 4374 ; Clerid, *pt. s.* grew clear, 4815.
- Clestrest, *adj. superl.* finest, 2372.
- Clerete (Clarite), *s.* brightness, 2052 ; (Clarett, *error for Clarete or Clartee*), radiance, 3147. O.F. *clarte*.
- Clergi, *s.* learning, skill, 54 ; Clergy (Clerge), clergy, 1509.
- Clerily, *adv.* clearly, 442.
- Clerire (Clerar), *adj. comp.* clearer, 2541.
- Clerke, learned man, scholar, 39, 121, 231, 370, 398, 514, 1353 ; poet, 2121 ; Clerkis, *pl.* 624, (Clerkez), 1549.
- Clethe, *v.* clothe, 4706 ; Cleth, *ger.* 820* ; Clethe (Cloth), *ger.* 1775 ; Clethis, *pr. s.* clothes, 140 ; Clethe, 2 *pr. pl.* put on clothes, 4670 ; Clethe (Cleth), *imp. s.* clothe, 2868 ; Clethid, *pp.* clothed, 4082, 5003 ; (Clethyd), 1624.
- Cletomacus (Clytomacus), Clytomaschus, 2252, 2273.
- Cleuys, *pr. s.* cleaves, sunders, 4002. Cleuys (Clefys), *pr. s.* cleaves, sticks, 3377.
- Clientis, *pl.* clients, subjects, 3411 ; attendants, 1549 ; (Clyentez), servants, 2940.
- Cliffe, *s.* rock, cliff, 4825 ; (Clyff), 775, 3008 ; Clife (Clyff), 3377 ; Cliffis, *pl.* (Clyffe, *s.*), 2849.
- Clippis (Cleyps), *s.* eclipse, 2052. "The clippys of the sun and moyn, ecyppsis;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Clochere, *s.* room, apartment, 5289. Cf. E. *closet*. See Closere.
- (Clodes), *pl.* clouds, 3081.
- Close, *ger.* to enclose, 2206 ; Closis, *pr. s.* encloses, 5483, 5502 ; Closed, *pt. s.* enclosed (himself), 3034 ; Closid, *pp.* enclosed, 3831 ; (Closyd), wrapped up, 2912 ; (Closed), enclosed, 1378.
- Close, *s.* enclosure, fort, 5266.
- Closere, *s.* enclosure, chamber, 5250. See Clochere.
- Closettis, *pl.* closets, secret chambers, 153.
- Closure, *s.* enclosure, 4890.
- (Clothez), *pl.* cloths, 1515. See Clathe.
- Cloud, 5241. The sense is incom-
- plete ; probably parts of one or two lines are omitted.
- Cloude, *s.* stone, rock ; or *adj.* rocky, 4863. A.S. *clud*, stone, rock ; *cludig*, rocky. (Or it may be short for *clouded*, covered with clouds.)
- Cloudis, *pl.* clouds, 555 ; (Clowdez), 2108.
- Clouen, *pp.* cloven, 4830, 5432.
- Clozes, *pl.* cloughs, ravines, but used in the sense of cliffs, 4863. So in Morte Arthure, 941.
- Cluster (Clostre), *s.* cluster, heap, 1438.
- Clustird, *pp.* clustered, 978 ; Clustert, 5249 ; Clustrid, 3668, 5383 ; thickly set, 2396.
- Clyentis, *pl.* vassals, retainers, 3195. See Clientis.
- (Clyfetz), *pl.* cloven bits, splinters, 799.
- (Clyght), *pt. s.* snatched, 2937. Pt. t. of *cleke* ; see Clekis.
- Clym, *ger.* to climb, ascend, 3353, 4399 ; Clyme, *v.* 1440.
- Clyne (Incline), *v.* incline, bend, 1901.
- Clynt, *s.* rock, crag, cliff, 4830. Icel. *klettr*, a crag ; Swed. *klint*, top of a mountain ; Dan. *klint*, a cliff.
- Clynterand, pres. part. forming crags, craggy, 4863. See above.
- Cocards, *pl.* foolish people, 4472. *Coquard*, "a proud gull, peart goose, quaint fop, saucy doult ;" Cotgrave.
- Cocatrices, *pl.* cockatrices, 3961 ; Cocatricesse, 4199 ; Cocatryse, gen. sing. cockatrice's, 3895.
- Cocken, *pr. pl.* strive, contend, fight like cocks, 2042 ; Cock, 1 *pr. pl.* dispute, 3311 ; Cockid, *pp.* contended, fought, 4013. A word borrowed from the sport of cock-fighting. See Cokke.
- Coddis, *pl.* pillows, 4916. "A cod, ceruical, puluinär ;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Cofyre, coffer, chest, 807* ; Cofirs, *pl.* 4035 ; (Coffers), 3280.
- Cogill-stane, *s.* cobble-stone, round stone, 3895. O.Du. *kogel*, a globe, sphere, bullet ; Hexham.

- Cointe, *adj.* quaint, curious, 4275.
O.F. *cointe*.
- Cokke (Cok), 1 *pr. s.* contend, fight, 3169. See Cocken.
- Cole, *adj.* cool, 2541, 3800.
- Cole, *s.* cold water, 5506; cold sea, 5534. Merely the above adj. used as a sb. See two more examples in Mätzner. We still say, ‘the cool of the evening.’
- Cole, *s.* coal, 606; Colis (Colez), *pl.* coals, 2247.
- (Colettes), *pl.* acolytes, 1549. “*Collytte, accolitus;*” Prompt. Parv. See Way’s note.
- Colkins, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dōst gasp (?), dōst gulp (?), 5323. Cf. I. 5320. Cf. O.Du. *kolcken*, ‘to swallowe or to gulfe in,’ Hexham; Dan. *kulke*, to gulp.
- Collt (Colt), *s.* colt, 2881. See Coltis.
- Color (Colour), colour, 3370; (Colour), 1086.
- Coltis, *pl.* colts, 3775. See Collt.
- Coltris, *pl.* 3794. Prob. an error for *coktris* = *cokatris*, i.e. cockatrices. See Cocatrices.
- Colwers, *pl.* adders, snakes, 3794. F. *couleuvre*, O.F. *coluevre*, an adder; Lat. *colubra*.
- Comande, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* commend, 3313, 5620; Comaunde, 5106; Comand (Comaund), 2778. See Comandid.
- Comandis, *pr. s.* commands, 1117; (Commandes), 1381; (Commandes), 2283; Comandes, 3448; Comands (Commandez), 1810; (Comand, *pt. s.*), 1475; Comaudis (Commandez), 2213; Comand, *pt. s.* commanded, 821*; (Command), 1177; Comande, 1064; Comandid, *pp.* commanded, 73; Comands (Comand), *imp. pl.* 1832.
- Comandment (Commaundement), commandment, 1192.
- (Comber), *pr. s. subj.* vex, 1480; Combrid, *pt. s. subj.* would embarrass, 1755. E. *cumber*.
- Come, *s.* coming, arrival, 54, 456, 1458, 1576, 3188, 3212, 3904, 3952; (Commyng), 1040.
- Come, *ger.* to come, 1256, 1362, Com (MS. Con), to come, happen, 292; (Come), *v.* 982; Comes, *pr. s.* comes 78, 940; Coms, 4741; Comes (Comez), 1501; (Commes), 2273; Comys, *pr. s.* comes, suits, 3316; Commes, comes, 768*; Comes, it is becoming, 3974; Comys, *pr. pl.* come, 946; (Comes), 815; Comyn (Come), 983; Come, *pt. s.* came, 144, 503, 696, 882, 5418; it became, befitted, 627; Come, *pt. pl.* came, 815, 885, 905; Come, *pr. s. subj.* may come, 1104; Comen, *pp.* come, 1313; (Commyn), 2002; Come, 578; Comyn, 85, 3564; Comen (Common), 1613; Comen, *pp.* come, descended (from), 2650; Comen doun of, descended from, 3156; Comand, *pres. pt.* coming, 63, 176.
- Comandid, *pt. s.* commended, 659; Comend, *pt. pl.* praised, 4015. See Comande.
- Comending (Commendyng), *s.* commendation, 2346.
- Comensure (Commensour), 2392. Prob. an error for *commentour*, i.e. commentator. Godefroy gives *commeteor*, a commentator.
- Comers, *pl.* comers, men who come, 3418.
- Comforth, *s.* comfort, pleasure, 8; Comfurth (Comforth), 859.
- Comforthis, *pr. s.* comforts, 4155; Comfurthis (Comforthez), 3008; Comfurthid, *pt. s.* comforted, strengthened, 3876; Comfuith (Comforth), *imp. s.* comfort, 3239.
- Comliest, *adj. superl.* comeliest, 3887.
- Comly, *adj.* comely, 354, 470, 1086, 1621, 1822; (Comle), 1281.
- Comly, *adv.* in a comely manner, 456; fittingly, 878.
- Comon, *adj.* common, 3895, 5393.
- Comonly, *adv.* publicly, 108.
- Comparrison (Comparison), *s.* comparison, 1721.
- Compas, *s.* compass, circumference, 278.
- Compas, *v.* contrive, 415; Compas, *pr. s.* compasses, contrives, 1361; Compast, *pp.* fashioned, contrived, 3629; constructed, 3219.
- Compere, *s.* peer, equal, 3396.
- Comyn, *adj.* common, *p.* 281, *I.* 89.
- Comyng (Commyng), *s.* coming, 953.

- Con (Can), *1 pr. s. can*, 2837; *as auxiliary verb*, *did*, 115, 673, 2376; Con plese, pleased, 3697.
- Conand, *s. agreement*, 5543. "A conande, *condicio, pactum*;" Cath. Angl.
- Concepcion, *s. conception*, 388.
- Conscience (Conscience), *s. conscience*, 2422, 2577.
- Condicion, condition, stipulation, 2652.
- Coniurisons, *pl. incantations*, 58, 342. O.F. *conjuroison* (Godefroy).
- Connynge, *s. knowledge*, 4227; (Connynge), 1021.
- Connynge, *adj. skilful*, 2369.
- Conquire, *v. conquer*, 3096; Conquired, *pt. pl.* 209; Conquirid, *pp. 10*, 174.
- Conquires, conqueress, female conqueror, 5105, 5169; Conquyres, 3454; Conquirese, 3711, 3721; Conquiris, 3778.
- Conquirour, *s. conqueror*, 1501; Conquerour, 815; Conquiroure, 1480.
- Consaile (Counsell), *s. counsel*, 832; thought, purpose, 254; Consail, council, 1955; Consaille, counsel, 5359.
- Consaile, *ger. to take counsel*, 618; Consals (Councellys), *pr. pl. advise*, 1509; Consall, *1 pr. pl. (we) counsel*, 3768.
- Consayue (Consau), *v. conceive*, 835; Consau, *pr. s. subj. conceive*, 3744; Consayued (Consaued), *pt. s. conceived, contained*, 1837; Consayued, *pp. conceived*, 349, 578; Consauyd, 429; Consayued (Consau), *conceived, understood*, 2437.
- Constreynes (Constraynes), *pr. s. constrains*, 2496; Constrene, *pr. pl. compel*, 4562.
- Constru (Constrew), *pr. s. 1 p. infer*, 1901; Construed, *pp. construed, made out*, 2437.
- Consumed, *pp. consumed*, 894.
- Contenance, countenance, 484; demeanour, 2496.
- Contrarie, *s. contrary*, 5011; Contrari (Contrary), 2422; Contrare (Contray), 3263.
- Contraries (Contrarys) *pr. s. is con-*
- trary to, contravenes, 2205; Contraris, 4323.
- Contre, *s. country*, 39; (Cuntree), 1122; Contries, *pl. 108*; Contres (Cuntres), 1056.
- Conyschance, *s. cognisance*, 3370; (Conyshaunce), badge, 1128; Conyschaunce (Conysaunce), appearance, 2868; Conyschantis, *pl. tokens, cognisances, badges, emblems of rank*, 193.
- Cop, *s. top*, 4890; Coppe, 4789.
- Coppis, *pl. spiders*, 3300. Hence E. *cob-web*, i.e. *cop-web*.
- Corage, *s. heart*, 2243; courage, 2369; Coragez, *pl. hearts, courageous thoughts*, p. 280, l. 35.
- Corageous (Coragiouse), *adj. courageous*, 1892.
- Corde (Acord), *v. consent, agree*, 2350; Cordis (Cordes), *pr. s. accords, agrees*, 878; Cordid (Cordytt), *pt. s. agreed*, 2652.
- Cordis (Cordez), *pl. cords*, 1521, 2224.
- Corecheffe, *s. kerchief*, 5249.
- Corne, *s. corn*, 3971; Cornes, *pl. grains, seeds*, 1998, 2070; (Cornez), 2025.
- Coronacle, *s. coronal, circlet, coronet, head-dress*, 3451; Coronacles, *pl. 5130*.
- Coronals, *pl. capitals (of pillars)*, 3665.
- Corone, crown, 193; Coron, 1128; (Crowne), crown, chief, 2800; Coroune (Croune), 2283; Corouns, *pl. crowns*, 5423.
- Coroned, *pt. pl. crowned*, p. 280, l. 31; Coround, *pp. 5105*.
- Coronest, *adj. superl. most worthy of a crown, chiefest, worthiest*, 624; Corounnest (Coroundest), 1910.
- Corporall, *adj. bodily*, 4560.
- Corrupecion, *s. corruption*, 3255.
- Cors, *s. body*, 349, 730*, 1775, 2542, 2933; Corps (Cors), corpse, 3148; Cors, *s. body, (living) frame*, 3987; Corses, *pl. corpses, bodies*, 3129, 3933, 4454.
- Coruen, *pp. carved*, 129, 3665; (said of mullions), 4896; Coruyn, 426.
- Coruns (Corownez), *pl. crowns*, 1043. See Corone.

- Coruptible, *adj.* corruptible, 3459 ; (Corruptible), mortal, 1878.
- Corwaile, Cornwall, 5671.
- Corynthe (Corinthy), Corinth, 2266.
- Coste, *s.* coast, region, country, province, 1610, 3418, 3590 ; (Cost), 1028 ; Cost (Coste), region, 1843 ; side, 2641 ; Costis, *pl.* coasts, regions, 4407, 5564 ; (Costez), 1204 ; Costes (Costez), sides, 1522.
- Costious, *adj.* costly, precious, 3142, 3451, 4180 ; *put for* Costiousest, most costly, 3330.
- Costis, *pl.* ornaments, costly things, 4180.
- Costreyne, *pr. s.* constrains, forces, 5053. See Constreyne.
- (Cosyn, *for* Chosyn), chosen, 816*.
- Cote, cottage, 1804.
- Coth (Cothe), disease, 2815. A.S. *cēðu*.
- Cotis, *pl.* coats, 5471.
- Couaitise, *s.* covetousness, 4399.
- Couatus, *adj.* covetous, 4509.
- Couatyng (Covetyng), *s.* coveting, desire, 1016.
- Coue, *s.* hollow, cove, 5427.
- Couent, meeting, assembly, 1576. "A couent, *conuentus* ;" Cath. Angl.
- Couer, *v.* recover, regain, 520, 5608 ; *ger.* 2163 ; Couers, *pr. s. refl.* covers himself, arms himself, 3034 ; Couert (*for* Couerit), *pt. pl.* gained their way, attained, 4815 ; Couerd, *pp.* won, lit. recovered, 3714 ; Couerid (Coueryd), *pp.* won, 1038 ; Couerd, covered, 5427. See Couir.
- Couertours, *pl.* coverings, tent-covers, 4177. "Couerture, a covering, apparel, a coverlet ;" Cotgrave.
- Couett (Couett), *v.* covet, 1754 ; Couet (Couett), *1 pr. s.* 690 ; Couettis, *pr. s.* covets, 3353 ; (Coutes), 2207 ; Couettis, *pr. pl.* desire, 8 ; Couett, *pr. pl. 2 p.* covet, 4442 ; Couet (Couett), *pt. s.* desired, 2542.
- Couir (Couer), *ger.* to recover, gain, get, 1755 ; Couire, 794 ; Couir, *v.* attain, 1362 ; Couirs (Couers), *pr. s.* covers, 1902 ; (Couerys), 3237 ; Couird (Couered), *pp.* recovered, 2815. See Couer.
- Count, *s.* computation ; At a count (*or* At a-count), by computation, 3614.
- Countid, *pt. s. 1 p.* accounted, esteemed, 2501 ; *pp.* computed, 3338.
- Coupe (Cupe, Cope), *s.* cup, 2937, 2940 ; Coupis, *pl.* 3142, 3702.
- Couple (Cowpyll), *ger.* to couple, 828 ; Couplid, *pp.* 5337.
- Couresere, *s.* courser, 5443 ; Courseris (Coursours), *pl.* 2163.
- Courte, *s.* court, 78, 4275 ; Courete, 213.
- Couthe, *pt. s. 1 p.* knew, 354 ; (Couth), 685 ; Couthe, *pt. s.* was able, could, 337 ; Couth, knew, 43 ; Couthe (Kowth), *pt. s.* knew, 2555 ; (Couth), knew how, 835* ; Couthe, *pt. pl.* knew, 25 ; Couth, *pt. pl.* knew, 160 ; (Couth), could, 1439.
- Cowdrife, *adj.* sluggish (Lat. *tarda*), 4097. Lowl. Sc. *caldrite, cauldrite*, cold, slow.
- Coynt, *adj.* curiously arrayed, gaily dressed, 4671 ; Coynte, strange, 412 ; Coynnt, curious, 5423. See Cointe.
- Coyntise, *s.* trick, wile, 5233. Godefroy gives 'ruse' as one sense of O.F. *cointise*.
- Cozres (*sic*), *pl.* 3822. Evidently a corrupt reading ; probably for *cofres*, i. e. coffers, boxes, which gives good sense.
- Crabbe-fische, crabfishes, 3892.
- Crabbis, *pl.* crabs, 5506.
- Crabbis, *pr. s. 2 p.* vexest, 5323 ; Crabbid, *pt. s.* made crabbed, angered, vexed, 4566 ; Crabbid, *pp.* as *adj.* angry, venomous, 3794.
- Craft, *s.* craft, art, 33, 650 ; skill, 3380 ; work, dealing, 4953 ; Craftis, *pl.* crafts, skilful arts, 125, 414 ; feats, 9 ; employments, 4037.
- Crafti, *adj.* skilful, 3665.
- Craggis, *pl.* crags, 4025 ; Cragis (Craggez), 3375.
- Crasid, *pp.* broken, rough, 4830. (MS. *trasid*, wrongly.) See *crasen* in Mätzner.

- Craton (Crathan), *s.* a poor creature (?), 3078. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *crat*, puny, feeble; also, as a *sb.*, a weakling. Godefroy gives O.F. *craton*, of which the sense is unknown.
- Craue, *ger.* to crave, 4326; (*Crauen*), to ask, 887; Craue, 2 *pr. pl.* 4442; Craues, *pr. s.* craves, desires, 4497. The last line means—‘and every limb craves, as (it) pleases it, according to its own desire.’
- Create, *pp.* created, 3390.
- Creatour, creature, mortal, 3093; (*Creature*), creature, 1475, 3281; (*Creatur*), 1707; Creatours, *pl.* 5534.
- Creatoure, creator, 259.
- (Credylytt), *pp.* cradled, 1707.
- Crepis, *pr. pl.* creep, 4025.
- Crest, *s.* crest (of the hill), 4790; crest, 1837; Crestis, *pl.* 3869, 5126.
- Crestyns, *pl.* panniers, vessels for carrying food, &c., 4687. O.F. *crestin*, the same as *cretin*, a sort of pannier; Godefroy.
- Creuesses, *pl.* crayfishes, 3864. “*Escrevisse*, a crevice, or crayfish;” Cotgrave.
- Creuessim, *pl.* crevices, 4199; Creuesse, 4025. “A creuesse, *fissura, rima*;” Cath. Angl.
- Crie (Cry), cry, proclamation, 981, 1815, 2154; (*Crye*), 1604.
- Crie (Crye), *v.* cry, proclaim, 2294; *ger.* 1475; Crie (Cry), *ger.* 2252; Cries, *pr. pl.* cry, 2138; Cried, *pt. s.* 491; *pt. pl.* called out, 959.
- Cried, *pt. s.* created, 4446, 4519; *pp.* 1707, 3390 (*where D. has Create*). O.F. *crier*, to create (Roquefort); Span. *criar*.
- Crisopaces, *pl.* chrysoprases, 5274.
- Crispe, *adj.* curly, i. e. woolly, 4476.
- Cristall, *s.* crystal, 2541, 3221, 5280.
- Cristen, *s.* Christian, 3333.
- Croft, *s.* croft, small field, 3971.
- Croke, *pr. pl.* cross, go sideways, turn aside, 4872.
- Crokid, *adj.* crooked, 5423.
- Crom, *ger.* to cram, push, 4455; (*Cromys*), *pr. s.* crams, thrusts, 2937.
- Chronaclis (Cronacles), *pl.* chronicles, 940.
- Crosse; Ouire crosse, cross ways, diagonally, 4872.
- Crossis (Crosez), *pr. s.* crosses, 1049; Crosse (Crossyn), *pr. pl.* cross, go across, 2459.
- Croune, *s.* crown, 978; (*Crowne*), 817; (*Corone*), 1016; Croune, crown of the head, 121, 231, 639.
- Crouned (Crownyd), *pp.* crowned, 2280.
- Cruell, *adj.* cruel, 2650.
- Cubete, *s.* cubit; Cubete lenth, cubit’s length, 3908; Cubettis, *pl.* 3987, 5635; Cubet, *pl.* 3338; Cubetis (Cubettes), 2118.
- Cumbre, *ger.* to oppress, lit. to cumber, 4032; (*Combred*, for Combre), *v.* trouble, vex, 1471.
- Cu[m]furth, 1 *pt. s.* comforted, 3508.
- Cumly, *adj.* comely, 4917. See Comly.
- Cunnyng, *s.* knowledge, 4244. See Connynge.
- (Cuntre), country, 742*; (*Cuntree*), 827*. See Contre.
- Cupido, Cupid, 4508, 4542.
- Cure, *s.* care, anxiety, 3386 (*kyng is in the dat. case*); Cures, *pl.* cares, 4275.
- Curre, *s.* cur, dog, 1804; Cure, 748.
- Curses, *s. pl.* courses, 28.
- Cursid, *pp.* cursed, 4509.
- Cursoure (Coursour), courser, horse, 2881; Cursoures, *pl.* 3629; Cursours (Coursours), 2621; Cursers, 3024.
- (Curtasly), *adv.* courteously, 835*.
- Curtassy, courtesy, 5112; (*Curtasy*), 2718, 2743; Curtasssy, 9.
- Curtast (Curtasest), *adj. superl.* most courteous, 2388. Read *curtastest*, as in D.
- Curte, *s.* court, 149; (*Courte*), 887, 900, 981.
- Curten, curtain, 860; Curtyns, *pl.* 4916; (*Cortyns*), 860; Curteyns (*Curtaynez*), 1521.
- Cussis, *pl.* kisses, 5385.
- Custum (Costome), *s.* custom, 2946.
- Cusus (*for Curus*), Cyrus, 3326; Cusys (Susys), *error for Curys*, i. e. Cyrus, 3219.

- Cuthe (Couth), *pt. s.* knew how, could, 1364; Cuthe, 1 *pt. pl.* could, 4216; Cuthe (Couth), *pt. pl.* 1412, 1701.
- Cutt (Cutte), *ger.* to cut, 2850; Cutis (Cuttes), *pr. s.* 2599; Cuttis, 3859.
- Cyte, *s.* city, 335; (Cyte), 1362, 2110, 2189; Cytes, *pl.* 72.
- Daies, *pl.* days, 3462, 5529; Dais, 4814; (Dayes), 1172; (Days), 1024; Daies, *gen. pl.* 4810; On dais, for some days, 1363.
- Dale, *s.* dale, valley, 782; Dales, *pl.* 1337.
- Daliance, dalliance, pleasure, 1877.
- Dam (Dame), *gen. dam's,* 1769. See Dame.
- Dam, *s.* dam of a reservoir, the reservoir itself, 3928.
- Dainac; see Damaske.
- Damage, *pr. s.* hurts, 4274.
- Damaging (Damagynge), *s.* injury, 1188.
- Damaske, Damascus, *or* damask, 4673; Damac (Damask), Damascus, 1141.
- Dame, *s.* dame, lady, 322, 459, 3778, 5263; wife, 2678. See Dam.
- Dainme-borde (Dame-borde), *s.* dam-board, sluice-gate, 1857.
- Dampnes, *pr. s.* condemns, 2661; (Dampned), *pp.* condemned, 757*.
- Damysens, *pl.* damsons, 4738.
- Dangell, *or* Daugell, 126. Sense unknown; the reading is probably corrupt.
- Dangird (Dangert), *pp.* legally bound, bound under penalty, 1176.
- Daniell, Daniel, 1655.
- Darid, *pp.* dazed (MS. D. has dasyd), 3044. See *darien* in Mätzner.
- Darius, 882, 895, 902, 1176, 1188, 1777, &c.; Dari, 2009; (Dary), 1958; Dary, 2005, 2066, 2140, 2144; Darie (Dary), 2607; Darye (Dary), 2663; Darys, 2035, 2058; Daris (Daryus), 2772.
- Darke, *v.* lie hid, 4045. See William of Palerne, 17, 1834, 2851, for the phrase 'to darke in a den.'
- Dartis (Dartez), *pl.* darts, 1299, 1396.
- Dart-wondid. dart-wounded, wounded with a dart, 225.
- Dasches, *pr. s.* dashes, 3882.
- Dased, *pp.* dazed, 3997; (Dasyd), 3044.
- Dauncid, *pt. pl.* danced, pranced, 2618.
- (Dawes), *pl.* days; (On dawes), in your days, 1766. See Day.
- Dawid, *pt. s.* dawned, 3944, 4773. A.S. *dagian.*
- Dawyng, *s.* dawning, 431. See above.
- Day, *s.* day, 47, 158, 288; life, time, 518, 763*; Daye (Day), 1802; Day, death-day, 1100; Days (Dayes), *gen. sing.* of the day; A litill days, a little of the day, soon, 858; Dayis, *pl.* days, 3955; Days, days (of life), 1112.
- Daynte, *s.* novelty, wonderful thing, 5298; dignity, 229. See Deynes.
- Dayntefull, *adj.* dainty, delicate, 4274.
- Day-raw, *s.* dawn, 392; Day-rawe, 5055. So in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Debate, *s.* strife, 4404.
- Debate, *v.* debate, 5416; Debatis (Debates), *pr. s.* fights, 1217.
- (Debates), error for Abates, 2506.
- Debonar, *adj.* courteous, p. 279, l. 12.
- Debonerte, *s.* humility, 3274.
- Declare, *v.* declare, 254, 442; Declaris, *pr. s.* declares, 514; (Declares), 1793.
- Declines, *pr. s.* hangs down, 5322; (Declynes), bows, 2289; Declynes (Declines), sinks, 2714; Declyne, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* set aside, 4263; Declined, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* crushed, brought down, 2334.
- Decre, *s.* decree, decretal, 1583.
- Ded (Deth), *s.* death, 1112. See Dede.
- Dede, *s.* deed, 313; action, 3545; Dedis (Dedes), *pl.* deeds, 1095, 1863, 2058. See Deyd.
- Dede, *adj.* dead, 540, 718, 935, 1166, 1233, 2100, 3130, 3934. See Dee, Deyde.
- Dede, *s.* death, 532, 1789, 2661, 3886, 4798; (Deth), 3205. See Ded, Deth.

- Dedely, *adj.* mortal, 1877 ; Dede-like, 4057. See Dedly.
- Dedeyne (Disdayne), *s.* disdain, 3155 ; anger, 2942 ; (Dysdane), disdain, 2424 ; (Dysdene), 1711.
- Dedly, *adj.* mortal, 2733 ; (Dedlich), 1879. See Dedely.
- Dedly, *adv.* mortally, 1396.
- Dee, *ger.* to die, 4055 ; (Dey), *v.* 720 ; Dee, 1 *pr. s.* 400 ; Deed, *pt. pl.* 3069. See Deis.
- Deele, *s.* deal, part, 5568.
- Deere, *s.* harm, injury, 4235. See Dere.
- Defaute, *s.* default, lack of food, want, 2153, 4596.
- Defe, *adj.* deaf, 4747.
- Defence (*pl.* Defencez), *s.* defence, 1151.
- Defend (Defende), *ger.* to oppose, 2139 ; Defend, *v.* defend, 349 ; Defendis, *pr. s.* forbids (to keep), 4455 ; (Defenden), *pr. pl.* defend, 1298 ; Defend (Defenden, *pr. pl.*), *wt. pl.* (*with of*), kept off, 1406 ; (Defendyng), *pres. pt.* defending, 1031.
- Defendoure, *s.* defender, 429.
- Defirred, *pp.* made to differ, 4223.
- Degradyd (Degrad), *ger.* to overcome (Lat. *superare*), 2670 ; De-grayd (Degradyd), *pp.* degraded, put down, overcome, 3125.
- Degre, *s.* degree, rank, 485 ; (Degree), rank, 3407. See below.
- Degre, *s.* step, 3344 ; Degrece (*for Degrees*), *pl.* steps, stairs, 1183, 3339, 5251 ; (Degrees), 3216 ; To degrece, to the steps, 3446 ; Degreces (*a double plural*), steps, 4878, 4887, 5636.
- Deis (Dyes), *pr. s.* dies, 1459 ; Deid, *pt. s.* 3448, 3471 ; Deid, *pp.* dead, 3476. See Dee, Dede, *adj.*
- Delauyly (Delavy), *adv.* abundantly, 1351. Cf. E. *lavish*. Godefroy gives : "deslaveement, à la manière d'un grand lavage."
- Dele, *s.* part, portion, 432, 1368, 3475, 4391 ; (MS. adele), 521 ; A fewe dele, a small portion, 3703 ; Grete dele, great deal, 544 ; Iik dele, each bit of it, 3493 ; Neuire a dele (Neuer a dele), never a bit,
- 2913 ; Neuer a dele, not at all, 1355. See Deele.
- Dele, *ger.* to deal, to give, to impart, 736, 3475, 4058 ; (Dele), 1015 ; Dele, *v.* deal, 5032 ; Dele, 2 *pr. pl.* distribute, 4544 ; Dele, *pr. pl.* mark out, divide, apportion, 3992 ; Delt (Deltyn), 1 *pt. pl.* dealt, 2091.
- Delingis, *pl.* dealings, 451.
- Delite, *s.* delight, 265 ; Delitis, *pl.* pleasures, nuptial joys, 3743.
- Deliteable, *adj.* pleasant, 4303.
- Deliuere, *for* Deliuered, *pp.* delivered, 3564.
- Delume, *miswritten for* Deluuie, *s.* deluge, 4942. See the note.
- Delyte, *pr. pl.* please, 4381.
- Delyuire, *ger.* to deliver, 5218 ; Delyuire (Delyver), *v.* deliver, give ; hence Let delyuire him, let be delivered to him, 997 ; Delyuird, *pt. s.* speedily destroyed, 3930 ; Delyuerd, *pp.* delivered, 548.
- Demaunde (Demande), *s.* demand, request, 1096 ; Demayndes (Demaudes), *pl.* demands, 3411.
- Deme, *v.* judge, esteem, 2122 ; decree, 1260 ; *ger.* to be considered, 5298 ; Deme, 1 *pr. s.* deem, consider, 1849 ; Demes, *pr. s.* represses (Lat. *reprimit*), 3349 ; (Demys), condemns, 2661 ; Me demys, judges for me, 4576 ; Deme, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* account, 4546 ; (Demys), *pr. pl.* assure, 3069 ; Demys, *pr. pl.* tell (us), 1231 ; Deme, *pr. pl. subj.* 2 *p.* decide, 400 ; Demed, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* decreed, ordered, 2663 ; *pt. s.* judged, 593 ; Demed, *pp.* decreed, doomed, 836 ; (Demyd), doomed, 2164 ; condemned, 757* ; appointed, 98, 313 ; (Deme), *imp. s.* judge, 735*.
- Demerlayke, *s.* magic, jugglery, 414. See *dweomerlak* in Mätzner.
- Demyd, *pt. s.* dimmed, 561.
- Den, *s.* a den, 1769 ; Dennes, *pl.* dens, 4045, 4354.
- Denys, Dionysius, *but put for* Dionysus, i. e. Bacchus, 3556.
- Departid, *pp.* parted, divided, 1941.
- Depaynt, *pp.* painted, coloured, 3692 ; Depayntid, painted, 5305.

- Depe, *adj.* deep, 225, 265, 336, 700, 1866.
- Depe, *s.* deep, sea, 64; (*Depe*), 1308.
- Depely, *adv.* deeply, passionately, 919; greatly, 1673; heavily, 1698; (*Deply*), deeply, 1186, 1363, 1396.
- Depest (*Dyppest*), *adj.* *superl.* deepest, 712.
- Depresse, *v.* cast down; Do me depresso, cause me to be slain, 5030.
- (Deprives), *pr. s.* deprives, 2311; Deprined (*Depriffyd*), *pp.* deprived, 2845; Depryued (*Depriued*), 895; (*Deprevett*), 1469.
- Depurid (*Depuryd*), *pp.* thoroughly cleansed, 2768.
- Dere, *adj.* dear, 1024, 1545; beloved, 479; precious, costly, 1655, 4438; pleasing, 1638; *as sb.* dear one, 265; For dere halde, hold dear, 4421.
- Dere, *adv.* dearly, 2122, 5143.
- Dere, *adj. comp.* dearer, liefer, 540.
- Dere, *s.* harm, 4322, 5554. See Deere.
- Dere, *v.* harm, 3351; Deris (*Deres*), *pr. s.* injures, 2041. A.S. *derian*.
- Derely (*Derly*), *adv.* dearly, earnestly, 2352; (*Derely*), heartily, 2699.
- Dere-worth, *adj.* precious, dear, 3194; (*Darworth*), worthy, noble, 2679.
- Derfe, *adj.* bold, 1958, 2667, 3850; (*Derf*), 3157; Derfe, presumptuous, 1811; strong, 2140; noble, 2772; steep, huge, 1211; rugged, 3868; severe, 2091, 2424; Derf, mighty, 2489; (*Derf*), strong, bold, 2607; (*Derfe*), firm, bold, 1024. A.S. *deorf*.
- Derfely (*Darfly*), *adv.* boldly, angrily, 2942; Derfly, boldly, 3006; (*Derfly*), 2489; Derfley, strongly, 1406.
- Derke, *s.* dark, night, darkness, 4773; (*Dirk*), 687; (*Dyrke*), 1505.
- Derknes (MS. *Dreknes*), darkness, 561.
- Derling, *s.* favourite, 3442.
- Derne, *adj.* secret, 4045. A.S. *derne*.
- Derrest, *adj. superl.* dearest, 1909, 2823; most worthy, 4644; most valuable, 5180.
- Dese, *s.* daïs, throne, high seat, 47, 479, 902, 1720, 1841, 2009, 2066, 3085, 4214; (*Deyse*), 2924.
- Desert, *s.* desert, 406.
- Desiris, *pr. s.* desires, 922; (*Desired*), *pt. s.* desired, 922; Desyrid, *pp.* 5146.
- (Deserset), *pp.* dispersed, 1941.
- Despetously (*Dyspytussly*), *adv.* shamefully, 746.
- Destaned, *pt. s. impers.*; þam destaned, it was destined for them, 4115; Destaned, *pp.* destined, 313, 518; (*Destinate*), 692, 763*, 836; Destand (*Destinate*), 809; Destayned (*Destanet*), fated, 1100.
- Destany, destiny, 706.
- (Destinate); see Destaned.
- Det (*Dett*), *s.* a debt, 1849; Dett (*Dette*), due, 895; Dettis (*Dett*), *pl.* dues, 887.
- Dete (*Deteys*, *pl.*), *s.* writing, letter, tale (lit. ditty), 2726.
- Deth, *s.* death, 512, 744, 836, 966; (*Dede*), 2196; (*Deyde*), 922; Dethe (*Deth*), 957; (*Dede*), 720, 1263. See Dede, Ded.
- Detiraty, *Lat.* *Tyrum*, 5596.
- Deu[i]dis, 2 *pr. s.* dividest, 4515.
- Devill, *s.* devil, 4487; Deuels, *pl.* devils, 4515, 5578.
- Deuire (*Deuer*), *s.* duty, 867; (*Diuour*), 2383. F. *devoir*.
- De-vise, *ger.* to tell, 4919; (*Devised*), *pp.* explained, 1905.
- Devoide, *ger.* to destroy, to get rid of, 3625; to escape, 2061; Deuoide (*Voyde*), *v.* escape, avoid, 2424; (*Deuodes*), *pr. s.* escapes, 2061; Devoide, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* eschew, 4327; Deuoyde, 2 *p.* are free from, avoid, 4602; Deuoydid (*Deuoyded*), *pt. s.* hid away, 2938; Deuoidid, *pt. pl.* 1 *p.* emptied out, got rid of, 4218; Devoided, *pp.* avoided, put away, 4261; Devoidid, destroyed, 3875; Deuoidis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* lay aside, 4959.
- Devour, *s.* duty, p. 279, l. 20.
- Deuowrid, *pp.* devoured, 3875.
- Denydid, *pp.* divided, scattered, sundered, 2790.
- Deuyllis, *gen.* devil's, 414; Deuyls, *pl.* devils, 342; fierce animals, monsters, 4090.

- Deuynes, *pr. s.* divines, 145 ; (De-vynez), considers, 1363.
- Deuys, *s.* device, shape, 359 ; (De-vyse), design, will, 830.
- Deuyse, *imp. s.* think, 4050 ; DeuySID, *pt. s.* perceived, 3053 ; made out, 5099 ; Devysid, *pp.* looked at, considered, 4642 ; (DeuySID), devised, pourtrayed, 280 ; (Devysed), spoken, said, 2511. See below.
- Deuysid (Devye(d) hath), *pt. s.* made out, read, 2691. (A bad use of the word ; *deuyse* is rather to write or indite.)
- Dewe, *s.* dew, 3801, 4344.
- Dewe (Dew), *s.* due, right, 1176
- Dewessis, *pl.* goddesses, 3555. A curious fem. form of F. *dieu*.
- Dewis, *pr. pl.* avail, 4438. (A bad spelling of *dowis* ; see Dowe.) Cf. Dewt below.
- (Dewly), *adv.* duly, 763*.
- Dewt, *error for* Dowt (= doute), fear, 2618. Cf. Dewis above.
- (Deyd), *s.* deed, 1071. See Dede.
- (Deyde), *adj.* dead, 933*. See Dede.
- Deyne (Dene), *s.* disdain, 1863.
- Deyne, *s.* dell, valley, 4075, 5421. A.S. *denu*.
- Deyne (Digne), *adj.* worthy, 882, 1958.
- Deynes, *pr. s. impers.* it deigns (me), i.e. (I) deign, 830 ; Deynes, *pr. s.* is it worth ; Quat deynes ȝow, lit. what is it worth your while, why is it worth your while, 4006 ; Deyne, *pr. s. subj.* may deign, 3475 ; Deyned, *pt. s.* was thought worthy, 4225 ; Deyned, *pt. s. refl.* deigned ; Deyned him na daynte, no dignity allowed him, his dignity did not allow him, 229.
- Deynes, *pr. pl. 2 p.* are disdainful, are filled with disdain, scorn (at), 4579. Misused for *dedeynes*
- Dialiticus (Dialeticus), dialectics, 1583.
- Diademe, *s.* diadem, 3240.
- Diates, *pl.* diets, feasts, 4438. See Diete.
- Did, *pt. s.* did, 414 ; put, 3440 ; Didd, did, acted (so to her), 346 ; Did on, put on, 487 ; Did, *pt. pl.* did, 593 ; put, 3329.
- Die, *v. die*, 3298 ; *ger.* 2003 ; (Dye), 2164 ; Die (Dye), 1 *pr. s.* 1191 ; Dies, *pr. s.* 5430 ; (Dyes), 1908 ; Died, *pt. s.* died, 1908 ; Dies (Dyez), *imp. pl.* die, 1033. See Dye.
- Diete, *s.* diet, 4274. See Diates.
- Dientes, *pr. pl.* feed, 4738.
- Differris, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* differ, 4617.
- Digne, *adj.* worthy, 1720.
- Dignite, *s.* dignity, 3240 ; Dignites (Dignitez), honours, 1905.
- Dike (Diche), *s.* ditch, 3274 ; (Dyke), 700, 712 ; Dikis (Dykez), *pl.* dikes, ditches, 2986. See Dyke.
- Dilectacion, *s.* delight, *p.* 279, l. 15 ; Delectacion, *p.* 280, l. 36.
- Dindimus, 4235 ; Dindyn, 4214.
- Dingis(Dynges), *pr. s.* dashes, strikes, 2041.
- Dint, *s.* blow, 3997 ; Dintes, *pl.* 3933 ; Dintis (Dyntes), 2091.
- Dire, *adj.* dear (?), 5349. (A bad spelling ; read *dere*.)
- Discende, *ger.* to descend, to fall, 3051 ; *pr. pl.* descend, 4770 ; Discendid, *pt. pl.* descended, fell, 3654.
- Discheualer, *adj.* having ruffled hair, with loose hair, 3687. (Insert a comma after this word.)
- Disc[i]ple, *s.* disciple, 2124.
- Disciplyne, *s.* disciple, 4391.
- Disclosid, *pt. pl.* opened, 3632.
- Discrecion, discretion, 4243.
- (Diseassyd), *pp.* disturbed, 2842*.
- Diseese (Disease), disease, 2549.
- Dishonoure (Dishonor), dishonour, 1866.
- Disire, *pr. pl. 2 p.* desire, 4243 ; Disire (Desirre), 1 *pr. s.* 1673 ; Disired (Desirred), *pt. s.* 919.
- Disolatis, *pl.* desolate places, 4354.
- Dispersion, *pr. s.* reviles, insults, 746.
- Dispice (Dispysē), *v.* despise, 2504 ; Dispices, *pr. s.* 3985 ; Dispisis (Dispysys), 746 ; (Dispysēz), 1709 ; Dispice, 2 *pr. pl.* 4222 ; Dispiced, *pt. s.* 1709.
- Dispite, *s.* contempt, scorn, 1711, 2497 ; (Dispyte), 1863.
- Dispoyle, *ger.* to despoil, rob, 2494.
- Dispoyse, *v.* dispose, *p.* 279, l. 15.

- Dissert, *s.* desert, 336, 3485, 3798 ; (Deserte), 2585.
- Dissires, *pl.* desires, 4289.
- Disspaire (Dispare), *s.* despair, 3269.
- Distourbid, *pp.* disturbed, 5159.
- Distressid (Distrayssyd), *pp.* distressed, 2781.
- Distreyne, *v.* control, rule, govern, 4244. (See the note.)
- (Distrobles), *pr. s.* disturbs, 3167*.
- Distroy, *v.* destroy, 1454, 1639, 1658; *ger.* 912; Distruye, *v.* 187; (Destroy), *ger.* 1027; Distruy (Destroye), *ger.* to destroy, 2216; (Destroyde), *pt. s.* 1941; (Destroyd), *pp.* 2088.
- Distruccion, *s.* destruction, 3253; 3733 (for *he þat* read *þat he*).
- Disworship, *s.* dishonour, p. 280, l. 37.
- Disyre, *v.* desire, wish for, 3563.
- Dite, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* indite, 1841; Ditis (Dytes), *pr. s.* indites, dictates, 2726; Ditis (Ditez), indites, 1909; Dites, commands, 3462; (Ditez), indites, 2005.
- Dites, *pl.* endittings, declarations, 3509; sayings, 4558; Ditis, words, 1823; sayings, 1954; (Detes), writings, 1908; Dities, *pl.* greetings, 4214; sayings, words, 4695; (Dytes), sayings, 2411; (Ditez), 2009; (Dytes), letters, 2066. See Ditez.
- Diuinod, *pp.* explained, 1905.
- Diuinour (Deuinour), *s.* diviner, interpreter of dreams, 1355; wise man, 2393; diviner, sorcerer, 406, 431; Diuinours (Deuynours), sages, 1545; (Dyuynours), augurs, 2349.
- Diuyse, *s.* order, 4207.
- Dizans, *pl.* (*put for* Dizans), sayings, 4307. F. *disant*, pres. pt. of *dire*. Cf. l. 4309, which speaks of *listening* to them.
- Diztes (Dytes), *pr. s.* appoints, 2662; Diztis, *refl.* prepares himself, 922; Dizt, *pt. s.* got ready, 2005; (Dight), *pt. s. refl.* prepared himself, 922; Dizt (Dight), *pt. pl. refl.* prepared themselves, 2472; buried, 3130; Dizt, *pp.* dight, destined, 744; clothed, 232, 322, 3447; (Dight), prepared, ready, 3013; ordained, 1504; Dizt (Dyght), *pp.* arrayed, treated, 3155; handled, treated, 3205.
- Do, *ger.* to do, 98, 736, 1260; *v.* 1071; Doo, 2 *pr. pl.* 4575; Do, *imp. s.* 2 *p.*; Do on, don, put on, 5180; Do kith, do tell, 5168; Do, *imp. pl.* do; Do lendis, do go on, 4992; Doo (Doys), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* cause, 3422; (To do), i. e. to be done, 735*.
- (Do), *s.* deed, 2733.
- Dobbed, *pt. s.* dubbed, i. e. arrayed, 3447.
- (Dochre), 1647. Prob. an error for *dochee*, i. e. duchy. Or it may be meant for *duchery*, like E. *dukery*, with the same sense.
- Doctoneus, *proper name*, 2122.
- Doctour, doctor, 232, 432; Doctours, *pl.* 1545, 1583; teachers, 4558.
- Doctryne, doctrine, 4225; Doctrine (Doctryne), 1655.
- (Doughty), *adj. pl. as sb.* doughty men, 2627, 3006, 3061, 3130, 3157.
- (Dokes), *pl.* dukes, 1326.
- Dole, *s.* a portion, part, 736, 3727; Forthing-dole, fourth part, 3844; (Dele), part, 2687.
- Dole, *s.* dool, grief, sorrow, trouble, 1877, 2472, 3863. F. *deuil*.
- Dolour, *s.* pain, 3305; Doloure, dolour, 935.
- Dom, *adj.* dumb, 4747.
- Dome, *s.* doom, judgment, sentence, fate, 521, 720, 1095, 2164, 3253, 3457, 5414; condemnation, 2602; trial, 2196; To dome, in accordance with judgment, justly, 4250; Domes, *pl.* sentences, decrees, 593; fates, fatal circumstances, 706, 736.
- (Domesman), *error for* Dones man; see Dones.
- Domesmen, *pl.* magistrates, 4421; executioners, 3202.
- Domestyne, Demasthenes, 2352, 2393, 2436; Domestiane (Domestyn), 2411.
- Dompe, *v.* dive down, descend swiftly, fall, 4487. See *dumpen* in Mätzner.
- Don, *imp. s.* don, put on, 3240. Short for do on.

- Done, *pp.* caused, made, done, 346, 1186; put, 3476; destroyed, 3713; (*Done*), ended, 692.
- (*Done*), *adv.* down, 2088. See *Doune*.
- Dones, *in phr.* Quat dones man, i. e. a man of what make, what sort of man, 2906, 5167. (See note, p. 304.)
- Dones men; þa dones men, those men of that kind, such men, 3202; þe donesmen, 1811. (But prob. in both cases an error for *domesmen* (as in D.), i. e. judges, great men, nobles.) See *Dones*, and see *Domesmen*.
- Dore-nayle, *s.* door-nail, Dom as a dore-nayle, dumb as a door-nail, 4747. Cf. 'deaf as a door-nail,' a proverb.
- Dos, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost, 5167; (*Dose*), 2 *pr. s.* *as fut.* shalt do (*read dose on* = *shalt put on*), 3240; *Dose*, *pr. s.* does, 226, 406; (*Doys*), 793; *Dose him* (*Doys hym*), goes, departs, 2678; *Dose him*, *pr. s.* goes, gets him (out), 2181; *Dose*, *pr. s.* *as fut.* will do, 4250; *Dos* (*Doys*) on, makes one (of his men), 3111; *Does him furthe* (*hym furth*), advances, 1024; *Dose*, *pr. pl.* do, 528; *Dose þam in*, go in, 902. See *Duse*.
- Doubletis, *pl.* doublets, 4673.
- Douce, *fem. adj.* sweet one, 830.
- Doufe, *s.* dove, 4533. See *Dowfis*.
- Doughty, *adj.* *as sb.* valiant men, 3205. In D. 2349, it is better to read *douth*, as in A.
- Doukand, *pres. part.* ducking, diving, 4090.
- Doune, *adv.* down, 332, 452, 547; (*Doune*), 791; (*Doun*), 853; *Doun* (*Doune*), 1183; (*Done*), 2088.
- Dounes, *pl.* downs, hills, 3486, 4045.
- Doute, *s.* doubt, 5610; terror, fear, 2015; (*Dowte*), 1166.
- Doute, *ger.* to fear, 1965; (*for Doutes*), *pr. s.* fears, 532; (*Dout*), 2 *pr. pl.* fear, 1801; *Dout*, 2 *pt. pl.* feared, 3509.
- Douth, *s.* manhood; also, collectively, a band of young men, a band, host, army, soldiery, 1647, 2100, 2349, 2627, 2663, 2733, 2775, 3006, 3061, 3130, 3157, 3205, 3351, 3890, 3928, 4113. A.S. *duguð*, manhood, army; cf. G. *Tugend*.
- (Dow), 2015. A false reading; read *ne doute*, as in A.
- Dowble, *adj.* double; Be dowble, by double, twofold, 3322.
- Dowe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* avail, am able (to do), 4058. A.S. *dugan*.
- Dowfis, *s.* doves, 5604. See *Doufe*.
- Dowis, *pl.* doves, 3937. See note.
- (Downe), *adv.* down, 730*, 2057.
- (Dowte), *s.* doubt, 2196.
- Doykis (Dukez), *pl.* dukes, 791.
- (Doyngsez), *pl.* doings, 1823.
- Doȝtir, *s.* daughter, 3315, 5253; (*Doghter*), 823, 2633.
- Doȝtly, *adv.* doughtily, 5590.
- Drabland, *part. pres.* trailing, 232. M.E. *drabelen*, to dirty, Prompt. Parv.; Sc. *drabble*, to dirty; hence prov. E. *drabble*, to draggle in the mire (Halliwell).
- Drafe, *pt. s.* drove, went quickly, rushed, 336, 487, 561, 712; came, 2035; (*Draue*), 1141; (*Drof*), 2585; *Drafe* (*Drofe*), went (to meet him), 2906; (*Drafe hym*), *pt. s.* went, gat him (out), 2181; (*Drafe*), 1 *pt. pl.* drove, dealt (blows), 2091.
- Dragon, *s.* dragon, 378, 451; *Dragons*, *pl.* dragons, 3868, 4792; *Dragons*, *gen. sing.* dragon's, 359.
- Dragon-hame, *s.* dragon-covering, 487. A.S. *hama*, a covering.
- (Drawe), *ger.* to draw, 818*; *Drawis* (*Drawes*), *pr. s.* draws, pulls, 1308; (*Drawys*), comes, 2924; *Drawis* (*Drawes*), *pr. pl.* draw, 706; *Drawe*, *imp. s.* draw, go, 1769; *Drawen* (*Drawyn*), *pp.* drawn, 3269. See *Draȝes*.
- Draȝes (*Drawez*), *pr. s.* draws, drags, 1857; *Draȝen*, drawn, hence covered, 4207; (*Drawen*), drawn, acquired, tried to get, 2734. See *Drawe*.
- Draȝt, *s.* drawing, picture, 280; *Draȝte* (*Draught*), draught, 1106; drawing (of a bow), 1067.
- Drechet, *pp.* vexed, spoilt, 4942; Drechid, destroyed, 1106. A.S. *dreccan*, *dreccean*, to vex.

- Dred (Drede), *s.* dread, fear, 2140; Drede, 2015.
- Dred, 1 *pr. s.* dread, fear, 400; Dredis, *pr. s.* 532, 669; Dred, *pp.* afraid, 2489, 2913; Dred, *imp. s.* dread thou, 98; Drede, *imp. s.* fear, 322.
- Dredfull, *adj.* dreadful, 359.
- Dredles, *adv.* without dread, i. e. doubtless, 1472; (Dredles), 1965.
- Dreis, *pr. s.* endures, 531. Sc. *dree*. See Dreze.
- Dreme, *s.* dream, 474.
- Dreme, *v.* dream, 346; Dremyd, *pt. s. refl.* 432.
- Drench, *v.* be drowned, 3274; Drenches, *pr. s.* drowns, 1308; Drenchis (Drenchez), 1857; Drenchyd, *pt. s. subj.* should drown, 2590; Drenchid, *pp.* drowned, 5506.
- (Drenchett), *error for Drechett, pp. destroyed*, 1106. See Drechet.
- Drenke (Drynez, *pl.*), *s.* drink, potion, 2564.
- Drepars (Drepers), *pl.* murderers, slayers, 3422.
- Drepe, *ger.* to kill, slay, 867, 1777, 3632; Drepis, 1 *pr. pl.* 4291; *pr. pl.* 4546; Drepid (Drepyd), *pt. s.* slew, killed, 1067; Drepid, *pt. pl.* 5562; Drepid, *pp.* killed, 3169, 3713, 4134, 4734, 5350; (Drepyd), 744, 961, 1233. A.S. *drepian*, Icel. *drepa*.
- Drere, *adj.* dreary, 4804. (But the MS. reading *dreze* should have been retained; see Dreze, *adj.*)
- Drerely, *adv.* drearily, sadly, 976; Drerily, sorrowfully, 2699.
- Drery, *adj.* dreary, sorrowful, sad, 2472, 2989, 3085.
- Dressis (Dressyd, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* directs, sends, 1711; (Dresse), 2 *pr. s. subj.* appoint, 801*; Drest (Dressyd), *pp.* dressed, adorned, 2801. See Drassis, Drysse.
- Dreuyn, *pp.* driven, 1647, 3305; (Dréven), passed, 1337; (Dryven), gone forward, 687.
- Drewe (Drew), *pt. s.* drew near, 1337; Drewe vp, 336.
- Dreze (Dre), *v.* suffer, endure, 3194. Sc. *dree*. See Dreis.
- Dreze, *adj.* tedious, weary, long,
- 4441; severe, 2091. See below.
- Dreze, *adj.* tedious, wearisome, 4804. This is the reading of the MS., and should have been retained; see the footnote. See *drez* in Mätzner.
- Dreze, *s.* annoyance (lit. tediousness), 5578. See *dreze* in Mätzner.
- Dreze, *pt. pl.* drew, 3629, 5554. See Drawe.
- Drekest, *adj. superl.* chief, greatest, most considerable, 5568. Lit. 'most tedious'; see Dreze, *adj.*
- Drežt (Drožt), *s.* length, extent, 1112. Spelt *dreight* in the Troy-book, l. 10,633. See Drižt.
- Drifes, *pr. s.* drives, 225; Driffe (Dreff), *pr. pl. refl.* drive themselves, endeavour 2733. See Driue, Dryfe.
- Drifte, *s.* drift, 1756.
- Drinke, *s.* drink, 1106.
- Drinkles, *adj.* drinkless, without drink, 3798; Drinkeles, 4679.
- Drassis, *pr. s.* prepares, arrays, disposes, 3182; Drised (Dressyd), *pp.* dressed, robed, 1935. See Drysse.
- Driue (Dryve), *ger.* drive, scour, 1198; Driues (Dryves), *pr. pl.* 1396; Driuand (Dryvand), *pr. pt.* driving, hurrying, 882. See Drifes.
- Driže, *s.* interval, space of time, 4788. See Drižt, Drežt.
- Drižt, *s.* duration, length, interval, 4874, 5062. See Drežt, Driže.
- Drižt, *s.* host; O *drižt*, in a host, 3868. A.S. *dryht, driht*.
- Drižten, *s.* a lord, the Lord, 809; Drižtin, 3457, 5400; Drižten (Drighten), 1260; (Dryghten), 1472; Drižten (Dryghten), 2734; (Dryghtyn), 3291; Drižtyn, 518; Drižtens, *pl.* lords, 3555; Drižtins, 4546; gods, 4183, 5118; Drižtens (Drightenez), *gen.* Lord's, 1504. A.S. *dryhten*.
- Dromondaris, *pl.* dromedaries, 3850, 4792.
- Dromonds, *pl.* swift vessels, 64. Low Lat. *dromondus*, from Gk. *δρόμων*, a swift ship.

- Dronken, *pp.* drunken, drunk, 2936; Dronkin, 4552.
- Dronkynnes, *s.* drunkenness, 3351.
- Drope, *s.* drop, 3863, 4941. See the note to l. 4941.
- Dropis (Dropes), *pr. s.* drops, lets drop, i. e. discloses, 1363; Dropid, *pp.* dropped, 3801.
- Droues (Drafes), *pl.* droves, flocks, 1211; (Drawes), 1233.
- Droune, *v.* be drowned, 3274; Drowned, *pt. s.* was drowned, 3032; Droune, *pr. pl. subj.* be drowned, 2590.
- Drowe, *pt. pl.* drew, 3024. See Droze, Drawe.
- (Drowpys), *pr. s.* droops, falls, 734*.
- Droze, *pt. s.* drew, drew nigh, 4773; (Drogh), drew, 1067; (Droght, error for Drogh), 2963; Droze, *pt. pl.* drew, 3847, 5478; went, 3798. See Drawe, Drowe.
- Druits, *pl.* friends, 5123. O.F. *drut, dru*, a friend; see Godefroy, s. v. *dru*; also Lex Salica, ed. Hessels and Kern, s. v. *druchte*.
- Drye, *s.* dry land, 5554.
- Dryfe (Dryve), *ger.* to drive, 1777; Dryffe, *v.* drive, hasten, 2860; Dryfes (Dryffes), *pr. s.* drives, 1231; Dryfes, *pr. pl.* 64; (Dryfen), drive, rush, 3202; Dryfuys (= Dryfvys), *pr. pl.* they drive, 791. See Drifes, Driue.
- Dryi, *adj.* dry, 4093.
- (Drynced), *pt. s.* drowned, 3072. See Drench.
- Drynke, *pr. pl.* drink, 3816.
- Drysnynge, *s.* drizzling, few drops, 3801. From A.S. *drosen*, dregs (Leo).
- (Drysse), *v.* prepare, 2860; Drysse, 1 *pr. s.* I direct, send, 5123. See Dressis, Drissis.
- Dryue (Dryfe), *v.* drive, go, 2860; Dryues (Dryvez), with vp, *pr. s.* drives, sends, 718; Dryue[s], drives on, 3061.
- Duale, *v.* poison, put to a mortal sleep, 5026. Cf. dwale in P. Plowman.
- Duchepers (Docesperes), *pl.* peers (lit. douce-peres), 791. O.F. *doze pers*, the twelve peers (of France),
- Duccses, *pl.* 1965. An obvious error for Duesses, q. v.
- Duelle (Dwelle), *ger.* to dwell, 830; Duell (Dwell), *v.* remain (so), 2842; Duellis, *pr. s.* dwells, remains, 2989; Duell, 1 *pr. pl.* 4050, 4355; Duells, 4354; Duellis, *pr. pl.* dwell, 5534; Duellid (Dwellyd), *pt. s.* dwelt, 913, 2848; Duellid (Dwellyd), *pt. pl.* 1045; Duelled, 3795.
- Duesses, *pl.* goddesses, 4515, 4558, 5114; miswritten Duccses, 1965. O.F. *dieuesse*, goddess; Roquefort.
- Duke, *s.* duke, leader, general, 1211, 1231, 1442; (Duk), 1879; Dukis, *pl.* 64, 480; (Dokez), 1141; Duykis, 47.
- Duly (Dewly), *adv.* duly, 836, 895.
- Durand (Endurand), during; Durand his lyfe, while his life endures, 1188. See Dure.
- Dure, *v.* endure, last, 540, 4055; Dures, *pr. s.* 1687; Durid, *pt. s.* 5610; Dured, *pt. s.* endured, lasted, lived through, 158.
- Dure, *s.* door, p. 282, l. 122.
- (Durely), *adv.* with difficulty, hence (perhaps) mournfully, 976. (Apparently only used for the alliteration; cf. *dure*, difficult, in Halliwell.)
- Durst, 1 *pr. s. subj.* if I durst, 1673; (Durst), 2 *pt. s.* durst, 1966.
- Dusan, *adj.* dozen, twelve, 280.
- Duse him (Dose hym), *pr. s.* goes, lit. does him, 2299. See Dos.
- Dust (Duste), dust, 782.
- Dute, *adj.* afraid, 3555. From O.F. *duter, douter*, to fear.
- Duykis, *pl.* dukes, 47. See Duke.
- Duziest, *adj. superl.* doughtiest, 3654.
- Dwaȝe (Drawgh), *s.* a feeble person, puny creature, 1752. Jamieson gives Scot. *dwaub*, a feeble person, *dwaible*, flexible, weak, *dwaiffil*, pliable. The spelling *drawgh* probably stands for *dwawgh*.
- Dwerȝe, *s.* dwarf, 1752. A.S. *dweorg*.
- Dwinyng (MS. A. *dwinng*, MS. D. *dwynng*), a diminutive person, 1752. From A.S. *dwinan*, to dwindle.

- Dyademe, *s.* diadem, 3329; (*Dia-deme*), 2801.
- Dyanaas (*Dubl. MS.* Dienas, *for Dianas*), *gen.* Diana's, 2299.
- (Dyd), *pt. pl.*; (*Dyd þaim*), went, 902.
- Dye, *ger.* to die, 1100, 1874, 2155; (*Dy*), 692; *Dyi* (*Dye*), *v.* 1260; *Dye*, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* die, 990; *Dyi* (*Dye*), 1638. See Die.
- Dyke bothum, bottom of the ditch or dyke, 712. See Dike.
- Dym, *adj.* dim, 5395.
- Dyned (*Demmyd*), *pt. s.* grew dim, 782.
- Dymly, *adv.* dimly, faintly, 718.
- Dyn, *s.* din, noise, 2618; (*Dyne*), 935.
- Dyndyn, *Dindimus*, 4644.
- Dyntis, *pl.* blows, 451.
- (Dytez), *pl.* enditings, words, 2842*. See Dites.
- Dyuerset, *adj.* diverse, 85.
- Eblane, *prep.* amongst, 160, 3723 (where it follows its case), 4023, 4086; *Eblande*, 4315, 5444. *Dan. iblandt*, *prep.* among.
- E-blande, *adv.* among, 4973; *Eblane*, amongst (them), together, also, 3910, 4994. See above.
- Ebru, Hebrew, 5072; *Ebrues*, Hebrews, 5661.
- Ebyn, *s.* ebony-wood, 3682.
- Ebyn-tree, *s.* ebony-tree, 3681, 5135.
- Echchewis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* eschew, 4603. [*MS. Ethchewis.*]
- Eddirs, *pl.* snakes, adders, 4198.
- Edyfyed, *pp.* built (a house), *p.* 281, l. 88.
- Ee, *s.* water, stream, 5464. A.S. *éa*. (*Eey*), *s.* eye, 2491. See E³e.
- Effecte, *s.* work, 357.
- Effosym, Ephesus, 5661.
- Eft, *adv.* again, 140, 185, 511, 1359, 2821, 3126, 3159, 3510, 3783; *Efte*, in return, 2141, 5051.
- Efter, *prep.* after, 2, 95, 518; for (i.e. sends for), 352; (*After*), for, 3152, 3183; according to, in the likeness of, 191; *Eftir*, *prep.* according to the likeness (of a prince), 5642.
- Efter, *adv.* afterwards, 205, 309, 478, 4773; *Eftire*, 360, 614; (*Aftir*), 1551.
- Eftirsons, *adv.* again, 408. See below.
- Eftsones (*Eftsons*), *adv.* again, immediately, 2281; *Eftsones*, afterward, 1083.
- Egg, *s.* egg, 507, 509; (*Egge*), 893. (*Egen*), (*for Ege*), fear, care, 731. Read *ege*, as in *MS. A.* The final *n* is wrong.
- Egge, *s.* edge of a hill, backbone of hills, 4876. *Wenlock Edge* (*Salop*) is a long ridge; and so elsewhere.
- Eggis, *pl.* (*for Heggis*), hedges, 4137.
- Eging (*Eggyng*), *s.* egging, instigation, 2409.
- Egipt, Egypt, 23, 71, 135, 173, 233, 239; *Egipte* (*Egipt*), 1132; *Egist* (*Egipt*), 1121.
- Egirly, *adv.* sharply, 551, 580; eagerly, 3151; fiercely, 3848; (*Egerly*), 703, 1205.
- Elacion, elation, 1729.
- Elanda, *prop. name, put for Hellada*, i. e. Greece, 2514 (see note, p. 303); 3100, 3106 (see note, p. 305). In l. 3106, perhaps Elam is meant.
- Eld, needle; *Ane eld* = a neld, i.e. a needle, 1370. *MS. D. has nedyll*.
- Elde, *s.* age, 622, 657, 764*, 5132; old age, great age, 184, 4838; Eld, age, 646; (*Elde*), 1001.
- Elder (*Helder*), *adv.* rather, 1016. *Properly spelt* *helder*; cf. *Icel. heldr*, rather.
- Eldest, *for Heldest*, most especially, 1765. See above.
- Eldire, *adj. comp.* older, 616; (*Alder*), 1619; (*Elder*), elder, 1474.
- Eldire, *s.* greater age, 4215.
- Eldirs, *pl.* forefathers, 3491; (*Elders*), ancestors, 2465; (*Aldours*), 2483; (*Alders*), elders, 2844; Elders, parents, 838*; *Eldris*, *pl.* parents, elders, guardians, 4628.
- Eldist, *adj. superl.* eldest, 3577; (*Eldest*), chief, 2006.
- Element, *s.* element, 60; Elementes, *pl.* elements, 542, 580; *El[e]mentis* (*Elementes*), 784.
- Elfe, *s.* elf, spirit, 5258.

- Elike, *adv.* alike, 536, 1225, 1258, 1422, 4283; continually, 560; Elike (Elik), 1401; Ay elike, ever the same, 1288; Euer elike, continually, 340.
- Elike-dele, in like measure, similarly, 4158.
- Elis, *adv.* else, 107. See Ellis.
- Elkend, *pt. pl.* adored, propitiated, 164. Cf. A.S. *bleccan*, to adore, flatter, soothe.
- Elleuen, *num.* eleven, 4814; Elleuyn, 646.
- Elleuynt, *adj.* eleventh, 4139.
- Ellis, *adv.* else, otherwise, 181, 290, 395, 477, 570, 685; (Elles), 841, (Ellez), 1814; (Ellys), 1761. See Elis, Els.
- Ellyn (Elne), ell, 800.
- Els, *adv.* else, otherwise, 13, 5426; (Ellys), besides, 1685; Ells, anything else, 4279; Els, *conj.* except, 4671. See Ellis.
- Els-square, *adv.* elsewhere, 5633.
- Els-quat, *adv.* otherwise, 4557.
- Emang, *prep.* amongst, 47, 104, 565, 1163, 3489; Emange, 628, 4331; Emaunge, 4817.
- Emaunge, *adv.* among, in the midst, 4901.
- Emell, *prep.* amongst, 4613; (governing us understood), 4263. Dan. *imellem*, between.
- Emperoure (Emperour), emperor, 975, 1125, 1516, 1607, 1720, &c.; Empereure (Emperour), 882; Emperoris, *gen.* emperor's, 5196; Emperours, *pl.* 189.
- Empire, *s.* rule, empire, 1001, 3983.
- Emyddis, *prep.* amidst, 4538.
- Emynelaus, *proper name*, Eumulus, 2875; Emynelows, 3005.
- Enarmed, *pp.* fully armed, 652, 1397, 1787, 2020, 2137, 3019, 3601, 3749, 5152, 5641. (Enarmed), 2685, 2982; (Enarmed), 954.
- Enbawmed, *pp.* embalmed, 3319.
- En-blanchid, *pp.* whitened, made white, 3690.
- Enbrouden (Enbrowden), *pp.* embroidered, 1569. See Brouden.
- Enchafis, *pr. s.* inflames, 2545.
- Enchant, *v.* make enchantments, 115; Enchantis, *pr. s.* 412.
- Enchantmentis, *pl.* enchantments, 377.
- Encheson, *s.* occasion, cause, 4607. O.F. *encheson*, *encheison*, occasion.
- Enclosed, *pt. s.* surrounded, came round, 3812.
- Enclynes, *pr. s.* inclines, bows, 3114; (Inclines), *pr. pl.* bow down, 1603; *refl.* bows (himself), 495.
- En[c]ounbre (Combre), *v.* vex, trouble, harass, 2550. See Encumbre.
- Encontres, *pr. s.* encounters, 3993.
- Encressis (Encresses), *pr. s.* increases, grows, 891; Encreses, 2492.
- Encumbre (Combre), *v.* destroy, overcome, 1881; Encumbrid, *pt. s. subj.* should trouble, should vex, 1480; Encumbrid (Encombred), *pp.* destroyed, 1817. See Encounbre.
- Ende, *s.* end, 880; death, 1103; End, (one) end, 173; death, 739*; Endis (Ende), *pl.* ends, parts, 1733; districts, 3721; Ends, *pl.* ends, limits; Of clene all þus ends, of all those limits (or boundaries) entirely, 3479.
- Endentid, *pp.* indented, engraved, 3671.
- (Endered), *for* Hendered, 1 *pt. s.* hindered, opposed, 2497.
- Endis, *pt. s.* ends, puts an end to, 1220; Endid (Endytt), *pp.* ended, 1486; Endid, *pt. s.* finished, killed, made an end of, 453.
- Enditis (Inditez), *pr. s.* indites, 1955; (Inditid, *pt. s.*), 1836; Endited (Indited), *pt. s.* indited, 1823.
- Endles, *adj.* endless, 60, 1916.
- Endurand; see Durand.
- Enduris, *pr. s.* endures, 527; *pr. pl.* 1483; (Indurett), *pt. pl.* 1483; Endured, *pp.* 7.
- Enentes (Anentes), *prep.* anent, about, concerning, 3245.
- Enerid (Enhered), *pt. s.* inherited, possessed, 1132. See Enherit.
- Enfamyschist (Enfamyshyd), *pp.* famished, 2153.

- Enfeoffid, *pt. s.* enfeoffed, gave (them) lordships, 2793.
- Enforce, 2 *pr. pl.* enforce, bid, 2804 ; Enforced (Euforsed), *pp.* strengthened, 1155.
- Enfourme, *s. put for* Enfourmer, informer, teacher, 626. (See the context.)
- Enfourmes (Enformes), *pr.* prepares, 2751 ; Enformed, *pt. s.* indited, 2413 ; Enfourmed, *pp.* instructed (in), informed (of), 3747 ; informed, 306 ; (Enformed), 904, 1897.
- Engine, *s. engine*, machinery, 5292 ; Engynes, *pl.* engines, 1302, 1415 ; (Engynez), 2218.
- Englayment, *pp.* ensnared, 4668. Lit. caught as with birdlime ; see *engleimen* in Mätzner.
- Engrauen, *pp.* engraven, 279.
- Enhabetis, *pr. pl.* inhabit, dwell, 245 ; Enhabet, *pt. pl.* 23 ; *pp.* 3493.
- Enhansis (Enhaunses), *pr. s.* enhances, exalts, 2714 ; En-haunsid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* enhanced, raised, 5068 ; Enhansid (Enhaunsed), *pp.* advanced, increased, 2513 ; (Inhaunsyd), 3406 ; Enhansed (Enhaunsyd), exalted, 2498.
- Enherestis (Inheretes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost inherit, 1870. See below.
- Enherit, *v.* inherit, 588. See Enerid.
- Enioyne, *v.* enjoin, lay a command, 1191 ; Enioyne (Enjoyne), *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* bid, 2664 ; Enjoyned, *pp.* compounded, put together, 3694 ; enjoined, 1493.
- Enlympyd ; *error for* Limpid.
- (Enmite), *error for* Enmy, enemy, 2681.
- Enmy, *s. enemy*, 819, 2681, 3096 ; Enmys, *pl.* 60, 453, 1916, 4291 ; Enmes, 206 ; (Enmys), 1251, 2096.
- Enmyte, enmity, 1729, 2560.
- Enoze, *adj. pl.* enough, sufficient, abundant (this *pl. adj.* always follows its substantive), 2135 ; (Enogh), 1663 ; Enoghe, 3931 ; Enogh, 38 ; (Enowe), 1350, 819*.
- Enoze, *adv.* enough, sufficiently, 41 ; (Enogh), 1324, 782*.
- Empire (Empyre), *s. empire*, 2292, 2327 ; (Empire), 1899.
- Enproched (Aproched), *pt. s.* approached, 2902.
- Enquere (Enquire), *ger.* to ask, 2420 ; Enquire (Inquire), *imp. s.* ask, 1110 ; Enquirid, *pt. s.* enquired, 239.
- Ensampill, *s. example*, 3878 ; parable, 4659 ; Ensample (Ensaumple), example, 1802 ; Ensample (Ensampyll), example, instance, 730 ; (Sampyll), ensample, 3279.
- Ensence, incense, 163.
- Ensurid, *pp.* promised, 2633.
- Enterely, *adv.* entirely, wholly, 2790, 3243, 5662 ; Enterly, 2584 ; Enterely (Entirely), 1899 ; (Enterly), 2327, 2465.
- Enteris, *pr. s.* inters, buries, 4017 ; Enterid, *pp.* interred, buried, 3323.
- Enteris, *pl.* approaches, entries, ways of approach, 71.
- Enterment, interment, 738*.
- Entre, *ger.* to enter, 2419 ; *v.* 2514 ; Entire (Entre), *ger.* 1760 ; (Enter), *v.* 1359 ; Enter, 511 ; Entris, *pr. s.* enters, 381, 4075, 5009, 5421 ; Entres, 450 ; Entirs, 53 ; (Entrees), 1039 ; Entirs him (Entrez hym), *pr. s.* enters, 1125 ; Entird, *pt. s.* entered, 490 ; Entred, 1433 ; Entrid (Entred), *pp.* 1916 ; Entird, 206.
- Entring, *s. entering*, beginning, 4158.
- Entyre (In tere), *adj.* entire, in detail, 1261.
- Envemonde (Enuenmonyd), *pp.* envenomed, 1390.
- Enverom, *ger.* to surround, 3617 ; Envirounis, *pr. s.* environs, 5527 ; Enveronis, environs, surrounds, 4632 ; Enverrouns, resounds through, pervades, 4780.
- Enuy, *s. envy*, 4256 ; (Enuye), 1729. (Enys), *adv.* once, 1191 (*but a misreading*).
- Eprocise, hypocrisy, 4652.
- Equinox, *s. equinox*, 4158.
- Er, *pr. pl.* are, 1013 ; (Er), 949, 797*. See Ere.
- Erand, *s. message*, 1467, 2770. See Errande.
- Ercules, Hercules, 703, 2184, 4538.

- Erd, *s.* earth, 551, 580, 3493; country, land, region, 239, 246, 453, 3983; Erd, *s.* dwelling-place, 3737; land, native land, native country, 2842; Erde, earth, 271; region, land, 1046, 2348, 5258; native country, 135, 206, 4043; (Erth), land, 912, 975. A.S. *eard*.
- Erd, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* dwell, 4648; Erdid (Erdyd), *pp.* dwelt, 2681.
- Erd-growyn (Erth-growen), *adj.* earth-grown, 1753.
- Erdis (Erdes), *pr. s.* buries, 975. See Erþed.
- Erdly (Erthlich), *adj.* earthly, 1612.
- Ere, *pr. pl.* are, 1, 12, 14, 104, 105, 437, 542, 789, &c. See Er.
- (Ereles), *pl.* earls, 1121. See Erle.
- Eris, *pl.* ears, 3941, 4635; Eres, 3151, 4748.
- Erle (Erell), *s.* earl, 1612; Erlis, *pl.* 153; Erles, 64; (Ereles), 1001, 1166; (Erelez), 907, 1578.
- Erles, *pr. s.* governs, lit. is the earl of, 4646. A coined word; from the *sb.* above.
- Erly, *adv.* early, 3444.
- Ermed, *pp.* armed, 3935.
- Ermets, *pl.* hermits, 4020.
- Ermony, Armenia, 907, 912, 942, 5662; Ermonye, 2560; (Ermony), 1046.
- Erne, *adj.* eager, anxious, 340. Put for *ȝern*; see two other examples in Mätzner, *s. v. eorne*.
- Ernest; On ernest, in earnest, 1359.
- Ernestly, *adv.* earnestly, 2348.
- Errande, errand, 5216. See Erand.
- Errogauce, arrogance, 4327.
- Erroure (Error), *s.* wrong, 1699.
- Erryd, *pp.* erred, wandered, 3267.
- Erst, *adv.* first of all, 1531.
- Ert, 2 *pr. s.* art, 102, 834*, 1738.
- Erthe, *s.* earth, 158, 1190; country, land, 1046; Erth, earth, 509, 784; land, country, territory, 23, 173, 233, 942, 2560; Erthes, *gen. s.* earth's, 5503.
- Erþed, *pp.* buried, laid in the earth, 588. See Erdis.
- Ertid (Ertyd), *pt. s.* urged, 2409. O.F. *arter*, Span. *artar*, to compel, from Lat. *arctare*. See *arten* in Mätzner.
- Erytage (Herytage), *s.* heritage, 3243.
- Es, *pr. s.* is, 663, 1008, 1713. (Eschapys), *pr. s.* escapes, 2987.
- Eschilus (Esclus), Æschylus, 2348, 2409.
- Ese (Ease), *s.* ease, 1829; Esee, 3861, 5342. See Esse.
- Esid, *pp.* eased, rested, 4790.
- E-soundir, *adv.* asunder, 510; Esoundire, 3977; Esondre (In-sonder), 760. See Esundire.
- Esse (Ease), ease, peace; At esse, in peace, 1047. See Ese.
- Est, *s.* east, 20, 445, 4902.
- Esundire, *adv.* asunder, 338. See Esoundir.
- Esyee (Easy), *adj.* easy, peaceful, 2477.
- Esyngis (Esynges), *pl.* easings, eavings, eaves, edges of the roofs, 1522.
- Ete, *pt. pl.* ate, 3941.
- Ethfully, *adv.* easily, 3647. A.S. éað, easy.
- Ethis, *pr. s.* conjures, 340. See the note.
- Ethyope, Ethiopia, 140.
- Ethyops, Ethiopia's, 5132; Ethiops, Ethiopians, 5661.
- Ettill (Atthill), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* direct, 2322; Ettillis, attempt, intend, 15; Etille (Attelyd, 1 *pt. s.*), 1 *pr. s.* purpose, aim, intend, 2419; Etils (Ettlys), 2 *pr. s.* attemptest, intendest, 2829; Etils (Etellez), *pr. s. refl.* attempts, 1157; Etlyd, *pt. s.* intended, sought, 2821; Ettild (Ettled), 2 *pt. pl.* attempted (as regards), 2484; Ettild (Etteld), *pp.* designed, proposed, purposed, intended, 3165; Ettid (Attelytt, 1 *pt. s.*), *pp.* attempted, 1819. Icel. ætla.
- Ebyn, *pp.* eaten, 774*.
- (Euell), *adj.* evil, 1759.
- (Euell), *adv.* evilly, ill, 1066.
- Euen, *s.* evening, 697.
- Euen, *adj.* straight, smooth, 2598; as *sb.* fellow, antagonist, 2281. See Euyn.
- Euen, *adv.* exactly, 1357, 4810; even, 731*; (Euen), evenly, 1127; (Euen onon), just immediately,

- 940; Even-furth, straightway, directly, 53.
- Euen, *ger.* to make equal, 4483; Euens, 2 *pr. s.* art equal, 1870.
- Euer, *adv.* ever, 16, 158.
- Euer-elite, continually, 340, 781*; Euerelike, 972; (Euerelike), always alike, 2046; (Euerilyke), ever the same, 1288. See Elike, Eueryllyke.
- (Euerilke), each, every, 1497, 1802; (Euerylke), 999.
- Euer-mare, *adv.* evermore, 205.
- Eueryllyke, *adv.* continually, 727*. See Euer-elite.
- Eufestyus, *prop. name*, 813*.
- Eufrates, Euphrates, 2598; Eufra-ten, 2586, 2770.
- Euill, *s.* evil, harm, 1699.
- Euire, *adv.* ever, 329, 1165; (Euer), 1067.
- Euire in ane (Euer onon), continually, 2184.
- Euire-ilk, *adj.* each, 4497.
- Eumare, the river 'Thamar,' 4103; Eumaure, 4124.
- Euor, *s.* ivory, 3680; Euour, 275.
- Europe, Europe, 1046, 2327; Europ, 3765, 4395.
- Euyll, *adj.* evil, 703.
- Euyn, *adj.* even, equal, 5132. See Euen.
- Euyn, *adv.* exactly, fully, even, just, 18, 140, 542, 551, 646, 1045; (Euen), alike, 1381; Euyn on (Euen ouer), *adv.* even on, fully throughout (the host), 1793.
- Euyn, *s.* evening, eve, 350, 3055, 3699; Euyns, *gen. as adv.* in the evening, 375.
- Euynsange, evensong; Euynsange-tyme, the hour of evensong, 4139.
- Ewrus, *s.* Eurus, the east wind, 4144.
- Excludit (Exclud), *pp.* shut out, 2842.
- Exidraces, *pl.* a nation of Gymnosophists, 4020.
- Exorȝise, *ger.* to exorcise, practise charms, 340. (Here ȝ stands for z.)
- Eȝe (Egen), *s.* fear, heed, care, 731. A.S. ege.
- Eȝe, *s.* eye, 222, 1589; Eȝen, *pl.* eyes, 344, 498, 603, 3151, 3940; (Eghen), 688, 1133, 2242; (Eugh-en, *for* Eghen), 1782; (Eeyn), 3285. See Eey.
- Fa, *adj.* few, 106.
- Faa, *s.* foe, 54; (Foe), 3421; Faas, *pl.* 452; (Foes), 2700. See Faes, Fais.
- Fable, *s. fable*, 1886.
- Face, *s. face*, 600, 965; Face to face, 357.
- Facultes (Facultez), *pl.* possessions, 1847.
- Fadere (Fader), father, 2323; (Fa-dre), 1491; (Fader), 701, 910, 961; Fadire, 600; (Fadir), 741, 1652; (Fadre), 824, 874; Fadirs, *pl.* fathers, 3; (Faders), 1675.
- Fadis, *pr. s.* fades, 5309; (Fades), 1007.
- Faes, *pl.* foes, 2061, 2096; (Foes), 1238, 2364, 2804. See Faa, Fais.
- Fage, *pr. pl. 2 p.* flatter, soothe, 4669. See fagen in Mätzner.
- Faile, *v.* fail, 102, 341; (Faille), 1643; Failes, *pr. s.* fails, 1274, 1325; (Failez), 1443; (Falys), is wrong, 2965; Us failis, (Vs falez), fails us, 1006; Failed, *pt. s.* it failed; Fayled me, it failed me, I failed, 3285; Failid, *pt. s. 2 p.* failedst, 5588; Failis, *pr. pl.* fail, are absent from, 4279; fail, 844.
- Faile, *s.* failing, error, 1886. *Read fable, as in Dublin MS.*
- Faire, *adj.* fair, 601, 1725, 1847; good, 454; (Fair), 1541, 2116.
- Faire, *adv.* fairly, well, exactly, 195, 424, 535, 878, 899, 1041; kindly, 1695, 1700; completely, 2230; courteously, 2750; (Fair), kindly, 1897, 2478; (Faire), quickly, 2250.
- Faire (Fare), *s.* welfare, 2019.
- Faire, *prop. name*, 91.
- Fairere (Feirare, *in MS. feirhare*), *as s.* greater part, 1238.
- Fairnes, *s.* courtesy, 1745.
- Fais, *pl.* foes, 136, 186, 217, 810, 1945, 5382; (Faes), 1034. See Faa, Faes.
- Faithly, *adv.* truly, certainly, verily, 3874; (Faythfully), 3175, 3282; (Fathfully), 2279.

- (Faldes), *pr. s.* folds, bends, 779* ;
Falden, *pp.* folded, 2401.
- Falle, *v.* befall, happen to, happen, 1109 ; Fall, 172, 295, 1641, 2722 ;
(Falle), 1897, 3257 ; Fall (Fale),
ger. to fall, 849 ; Fallis, *pr. s.*
falls, 78, 509, 568 ; (Falles), 846 ;
(Fallez), 1135 ; (Falles hym),
falls before him, 779* ; Fallis,
pr. s. betakes him, 4587 ; be-
falls, 405 ; happens (to), 3767 ;
Falis, befalls, 4638 ; Fallys hym,
falls away from him, 2482 ; Fal-
lis, *pr. s.* suits, 4457 ; (Falles),
befits, 975, 1927 ; Fallis me, suits
me, 829 ; (*with to*), befits, 864 ;
belongs, is fit for, 1549 ; (Falles),
belongs, 896 ; Fallis, *pr. pl.* fall,
815, 1822, 2055 ; Fall on, attack,
2132 ; Fall þe, *pr. s. subj.* if it
befall thee, 2279 ; (Fall þou), if
thou succeed, 2279 ; Fall (Fallez),
pr. s. subj. may befall, may con-
cern, 1192 ; Fall (Fallys), befall,
2600 ; Fall (Falle), happen, 1785 ;
Fallyn (Fallen), *pp.* fallen, 1756 ;
(Fallyn), 2323 ; Falne (Fallyn),
856. And see Falne.
- Falne (Fallyn), *pp.* fallen, (but mis-
used in the sense of 'felled'),
2087.
- Falowis, *pr. s.* turns pale or yellow,
5308.
- Fals, *adj.* false, 1697 ; (*art*) false,
mistaken, 715 ; (False), false,
2186.
- Fals, *adv.* falsely, 298.
- Falshede, *s.* falsehood, 4366.
- Fame, *s.* foam, 5604.
- Famen (Faymen), *pl.* foemen, 2208.
- Fames, *pr. s.* foams, 2974 ; Famand
(Fomand), *pres. part.* foaming,
3203.
- Famyd (Famed), *pp.* famed, 2387.
- Famyschist (Famyshyd), *pp.* fam-
ished, 1167 ; Famyscht, 4596.
- Fand, *pt. s.* found, 536, 2110, 2300,
3063, 3664, 5364 ; Fande (Fand),
1053.
- Fand (Fond), *ger.* to try, prove ;
To fand with my wittez, to try
my wits against, 2336 ; Fande,
(Found), *ger.* to go, 1196 ; Fan-
dis, *pr. s.* is trying, 681 ; tries,
- exercises, 376 ; (Foundez), goes,
advances, 2671, 2594 ; takes, 2977 ;
Fand (Fonde), *imp. s.* advance, go,
2867. A.S. *fundian*. See Fondé.
- Fang (Fange), *s.* hold ; In fang, in
the embrace, in the hold, in the
protection, 1725. Cf. Icel. *i fang*,
in the grip or hold.
- Fange, *v.* take, 2879 ; Fange
(Fonnge), *v.* receive, accept, 3186 ;
(Fang), catch, get, 2168 ; Fange,
ger. to take, 110 ; Fang (Fange),
to receive, 1692 ; (Fanngé), to
receive, 1257 ; Fangis, *pr. s.*
takes, 411, 508, 4781 ; (Fangez),
takes, 819* ; Fanges hym, *pr. s.*
receives for himself, 760* ; Fangis,
pr. s. (Fange, *pt. s.*), seizes, 2971 ;
(Fonges), takes, 766 ; (Fangez),
collects, 1332 ; Fanges (Fonges),
takes, 877 ; (Fanges), gathers,
2059 ; Fangis (Fangez), catches,
2197 ; Fangis (Fonnges), 2 *pr. s.*
catchest, obtainest, 2720 ; Fange,
pr. pl. 1 *p.* take, 4636 ; *pr. pl.* catch,
take, 2642, 3055 ; Fangis, 2028 ;
Fang (Fangen), 899 ; Fangid,
pt. s. took, 819 ; gained, 500 ;
(Fonge), took, 2217 ; Fangid
(Fonge), 2 *pt. pl.* received, 2478 ;
Fangid (Fonged), *pp.* taken, 2629 ;
Fange (Fonge), *imp. s.* take, 2867 ;
Fange (*with to*), hold to, keep to,
1990 ; Fang þe, *imp. s.* take to
thyself, 805* ; Fange vp (Fongez
vp), *imp. pl.* pluck ye up, 988.
A.S. *fón*.
- Fanons, *pl.* maniples of the priests,
1581. "Fanon, *fanula, mani-*
pulus;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Fant, *s.* infant, 4629 ; (Faunt), son,
1788 ; child, 1477.
- Fantasy, *s.* fancy, 5513.
- Far, *adv.* afar, 831*.
- Farand ; see Fare, *v.*
- Fardill, *s.* burthen, 5136. O.F.
fardel.
- Fare, *s.* journey, march, 2250 ; equip-
ment, 3694 ; doings, acts, manner
of action, behaviour, 300, 1990,
2242, 4366 ; business, welfare, 172,
433, 672 ; affair, 925 ; condition,
state, 2554 ; circumstance, 513,
569, 3257.

- Fare, *v.* fare, prosper, 1788; go, 5202; Faris, *pr. s.* fares, goes, 847; Fares, 2116; Faris vp, gets up, 545; Faris (Farys) with, 2 *pr. s.* behavest, 2944; Fares, *pr. pl. 1 p.* go, 3748; Fare, *pr. pl. 2 p.* act, 5366; Farne, *pp.* gone, 216; past, 3901; departed, 2323; (Faren), gone, 1004; Farand, *pres. part.* going, walking, 5549; *as adj.* seeming, 5437; good, excellent, 2. A.S. *faran*.
- Farkis (Ferkys), *pr. s.* goes, 766; Farkis furth, goes forth, 545. See *ferken* in Mätzner, p. 102. See *Ferkis*.
- Fast, *adj.* fast, constant, firm, 4616; close, 1369; enduring, 3259.
- Fast, *adv.* fast, 505; steadfastly, 1034; earnestly, searchingly, 2570; close, closely, 433, 672; hard by, 3285; soon, 2575, 5307; quickly, soon, 380, 891; As fast as, as soon as, 3944; Faste, close, 626.
- Fast, *ger.* to fast, 1477; Fastand, *pres. part.* fasting, 5522.
- Fast, fastened, 747*.
- Faster, *adv. comp.* faster, 847, 943; Fastir, more quickly, 1805; more, 4689.
- (Fastnes), *s.* stability, 3259.
- Fattest, *adj. sup.* fattest, 759*.
- Faucon, falchion, 448.
- Faucon, *s.* falcon, 5257.
- Faund, *pt. pl.* found, 4116.
- (Faunys), *pr. s.* fawns, 785*.
- Faute, *s.* lack, deficiency, 4587.
- Fautis (Fawtes), 2 *pr. s.* lackest, wantest, 2710; Fautis, *pr. s. impers.* lacks, 2482; Faunted (Fautyd), *pp.* been in fault, erred, done wrong, 2659.
- Fax, *s.* hair, 601. A.S. *feax*.
- Fay, *adj.* dead, 591; (Fey), dying, 792. Icel. *feigr*. See Fey.
- Faylis, *pr. pl.* fail, 3492; Fayle, *pr. s. subj.* may give way, 1372; (Faylett), *pt. s. subj.* 1372; Faylid, *pp.* proved wanting to, 1462.
- Fayn, *adv.* gladly, 1, 5230.
- Fayn, *ger.* to gladden, 2; Fayne, *v.* be glad, rejoice, 1745; Faynes, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4681; Fayns, *pr. s. impers.* pleases, delights, 4626.
- Fayne, *adj.* glad, 2264.
- Faynt, *adj.* faint, weak, feeble, 2359, 3717, 4358; (Faynte), 1275, 1738.
- Fayntir (Faynter), *adj. comp.* weaker, 2085.
- (Fayr when vs likez), let us go on when it pleases us, 740*. See *Fare*.
- Fayre (Faire), *adj.* fair, 2019.
- Fayre, *adv.* fairly, honourably, 164. (Fayrnes), fairness, beauty, 753*.
- Faythly, *adv.* faithfully, 3808.
- Fazt, *pt. s.* fought, 643; *pt. pl.* 5434.
- Febill, *s.* weakness, 4280.
- Feble, *adj.* feeble, weak, 1710, 1275; mean, poor, 1516; Febill (Feble), 1013.
- Feeche, *ger.* to fetch, 884; Feches (Faches), *pr. s.* fetches, 806.
- Fedare, *s.* feeder, provider, 2961.
- Fede, *ger.* to feed, 1775; Fed, *pp.* fed, 1, 575, 3592; Fedd, 3495; (Fed), 2173; Fede, *imp. pl. 1 p.* let us feed, 591.
- Fedill, *adj. (perhaps)* fatted, well-fed, in good case, 5604. This is a guess; cf. "Altilis, fedels" in Wright's Glossaries, ed. Wülcker, col. 190. If the word be of French origin, it may mean 'faithful,' from O.F. *fedel*, Lat. *fidelis*.
- Fee, *s.* reward, 2284; Fees, *pl.* offerings, 4466; Fees (Feys), fiefs, 1847; To fee, i.e. as a tribute, 5139.
- Feete, *pl.* feet, 844, 4168; (Fete), 2852; (Fote, *sing.*), 1360; Feet, 199.
- Feeete (Feeetz), *prob. for* Feetes, *pl.* (cf. the Dublin MS.), feasts, deeds, works, acts, 3105.
- Feeitis, *pr. s.* acts; Feeitis him forth, acts beyond him, surpasses him in feats, 3989. See *feted* = acted, behaved, in Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knight, 1282. From *feet*, sb. See *Fetid*.
- Feebles, *s.* a vessel, small vat, 1350. See *fetles* in Stratmann.
- Feeftly, *adv.* well, excellently, 4219; Feefely, 3694.

- (Feffys), *pr. s.* enfeoffs, 2793.
 (Feght), *s.* contest, fight, 910, 2270.
 (Feghtyn), *pr. pl.* fight, 2042.
 (Feghys), *pr. s.* fastens, 1369. A.S.
fegan; see *fezen* in Mätzner.
 Felaw (Felow), fellow, comrade, 864.
 See Feloze.
 (Feld), *s.* field (of battle), 1004.
 Feld, *pt. s.* felt, perceived, 3257.
 See Fele.
 Fele, *adj.* many, numerous, 448, 471,
 803*, 1005, 1037, 1155, 1215, 2001,
 2055, 2071, 3059, 3717. A.S. *fela*.
 Fele (Feyle), *pr. pl.* 2 *p. subj.* feel,
 2357; (Fele), *for* Feld, *pt. s.* felt,
 perceived, 3257. See Feld.
 Fele, *s.* feeling, perception, *hence*
 power over oneself, 850.
 Feleschip, *s.* company, 4548.
 Felire, *adj. comp.* more in number,
 2084. See Fele.
 Fell, *adj.* furious, 3180; fell, fierce,
 613, 906, 3881; (Fell), 1220, 2075;
 (Fele), 825, 861, 2197; (Feyle),
 2279; Fell, destructive, 1756,
 5581; terrible, 1697; sharp, cruel,
 bitter, severe, 91, 1795, 3925, 4165.
 Fell, *pt. s.* fell, 56, 550, 1133; hap-
 pened, 501, 2085, 3063; Him fell,
 it was fitting for him, 4017; Fell
 (Felle), *pt. pl.* were born, 2081;
 Fell, *pt. pl.* (which) fell, 567.
 Felle, *v.* fell, kill, 3011; Fellis
 (Felles), *pr. s.* fells, 1215; Fellis
 (Felles), *pr. pl.* they fell, 792;
 Fellid, *pt. s.* felled, 5561; Fellid,
pt. pl. felled, killed, 1406, 5434;
 Fellyd, 2055; Fellid, *pp.* over-
 come, 3550; (Fell), *imp. s.* fell,
 1360.
 Fellis, *pl.* skins, 5083, 5139; (Fellys),
 2766.
 Fellis, *pl.* fells, hills, 4046; (Fellys),
 1211.
 Fellis (Fyllys), *pr. s.* fills, 3065.
 Felly, *adv.* savagely, fiercely, boldly,
 1053, 2971, 5440; (*miswritten*
 Fellyd), terribly, 1795; furiously,
 3839; bitterly, 3647; (Felly),
 fiercely, 906; keenly, 1341.
 Felons, stern warriors (not in a bad
 sense), 819*.
 Feloure, *s.* foliage, 4821. "Fueil-
 lure, leaviness, also leaves;" Cot-
 grave. See the note; and see
 Feylour.
 Felowis, *pr. pl.* follow, 1555.
 Feloze (Felow), *s.* companion, equal,
 3282. See Felaw.
 Felsen (Filson), *ger.* to aid, assist,
 829; Felsyn, *v.* perform, fulfil,
 5230; Felsen, 2 *pr. pl.* aid, foster,
 4669. The same word as *filstneu*,
 in Ormulum, 6170; from A.S.
fylstan, to aid.
 (Femand), *pr. pt.* foaming, gushing,
 1133.
 Femony, a country, 5674.
 Fen, *s.* clay, 4358.
 Fendere (Fender), defender, 1839.
 Fendid, *pt. pl.* defended; Fendid
 of, repulsed, 1031.
 Fendis, *pl.* fiends, 4802, 5571.
 Fendis, *pr. s.* shifts, makes a shift,
 3366. (Doubtful. The right read-
 ing is probably *fynis*, i. e. comes
 to an end, corrupted to *fynedes*
 in Dubl. MS. See Feyne, Feyned.
 Fenix, *s.* phœnix, 4993.)
 (Fennder), *s.* defender, 2961.
 Fens, *s.* defence, 4753.
 Fenyschid (Fenyshyd), *pp.* finished,
 ended, 2144; Fenyst (Fynyshytt),
 1107; (Fenyshit), put an end to,
 1766*.
 Fer, *adv.* far, by far, 3922. See Fere.
 Ferd, *pt. s.* went, 813*; Ferd (Fared),
 journeyed, 1057; (Faryd), went,
 2118; Ferd, 1 *pt. pl.* fared, 3510;
 went, 1943; *pt. pl.* went, 4966;
 went about, 5549; (Faired), went,
 stepped, 2049. See Fare.
 Ferd, *s.* host, 5577. A.S. *fyrd*.
 Ferd, *adj.* fourth, 3344; (Fourte),
 3368.
 Ferd, *pp.* afraid, 395, 569, 851, 1443;
 Ferde, 846; (Ferd), 2447.
 Ferd, *s.* fear, terror, 136, 2590.
 Ferdfull, *adj.* frightful, terrible, 3036,
 750*.
 Ferschhip (D. frendshipys), terror,
 988.
 Fere, *s.* fellow, comrade, companion,
 3282, 4078; consort, husband, 397;
 wife, 434, 497, 2728, 5202, 5350;
 Feres, *pl.* companions, 5149; Feris,
 637, 643, 2409, 3751, 3967. A.S.
geféra.

- Fere, *adj.* far, 136, 217, long hence, 308; far, i.e. outer, 4853.
- Fere, *adv.* far, by far, 1738. See Fer.
- Fere, *s.* fear, dread, 1167, 1276; danger, 2155.
- Fere, *adj.* healthy, 4282. Icel. *færr*.
- Fere, company; In fere, together, 4123, 5136.
- Feree; see In-feree.
- Fereles, *adj.* fearless, 4993.
- (Ferer), *adv.* farther, 847.
- FERID, *pp.* terrified, 101.
- Feris; see Fere, *s.* (p. 368).
- Feris, *pr. s.* assembles, provides (for himself), 3592. This verb is perhaps formed from *fere*, sb., a companion. It answers rather (perhaps) to A.S. *geférān*, to go, also to obtain, allied to *geféra*, a 'fere,' than to A.S. *geferian*, to convey. Both are from *faran*, to go.
- Ferkis (Ferkez), *pr. s.* sallies, 926. See *ferken* in Mätzner, p. 102. See Farkis.
- Ferlied, *pp.* wondered, 4761; Ferlid, astonished, amazed, 4991; Ferlyd (Farlyd), wondered, 3228.
- Ferly, *adj.* strange, wondrous, 601, 5083; large, 5577. A.S. *færlic*, sudden.
- Ferly, *adv.* wonderfully, 4922; strangely, 513; extremely, very, exceedingly, 380, 457, 3189; (Ferly), 3036.
- Ferly, *s.* wonder, 395, 501, 925.
- Ferlyd; see Ferlied.
- Ferme, *adj.* firm, 3259; (Ferme), strong, 1057.
- Fermes, *pl.* farms, rents, 4012; (Fermez), 1847.
- Fernes (Fernesse), *s.* distance; O fernes (On fernesse), in the distance, 1424.
- Ferre, *adj.* far, distant, 210, 1057, 3900.
- Ferre (Fere), *adv.* far; To ferre, too far, by too much, 2085.
- Ferre, *adj.* comp. farther, more advanced, 633; more, 5460.
- Ferre, *adv.* farther, 3492, 3878, 4396; (Ferrer), 1455.
- Ferrir, *adv.* comp. further, 4671; Ferrire, 208; Ferryre, 98; (Ferre), 2600.
- Ferrom, *adv.* afar; On ferrom, far off, 5520. Cf. A.S. *feorran*, adv.
- Ferryn, *adv.* farther, 4312.
- Fers, *adj.* fierce, proud, strong, 216, 657, 884, 899, 2007; (Fers), 743*; (Ferce), 1167, 2087, 2357; (Ferse), 836*, 1839. See Firs.
- Fersere, *adj.* comp. fiercer, 3922; (Forcer, *for* Fercer), 2031.
- Fersly, *adv.* fiercely, 1031, 1406; Fersly (Fersly), 2208; (Fersly), 1053.
- Feruent, *adj.* hot, 3871.
- Fesike, *s.* physic, 4611.
- Fesisiāne (Fysycyan), physician, 2554.
- (Fessid), *prob. for* Feffid, *pp. as adj.* enfeoffed, 2320. See below.
- Fest, *pp. as adj.* established, set, 2320. See above. (Perhaps for *feft*, i.e. enfeoffed.)
- Feste, *s.* feast, 480; Fest, 821, 856, 2946; (Feste), 825, 1828; company, 492; Festis, *pl.* feasts, 3742.
- Festes, *pr. s.* fastens, 5518; Festis, *pr. s.* holds him fast (?), 3366 (but prob. an error for *fraystes*, as in Dub. MS.); Fest, *pr. pl.* fasten, set, 2230; Fest, 1 *pr. s. subj.* (if I) fasten, (if I) set, 2470; Festid, *pt. s.* fastened, 5307; Fest, *pt. pl.* fastened, plighted, 1259; Feste (Fest), *pp.* fastened, 2972.
- Festid, *pp.* feasted, 1.
- Festing (Festynng), *s.* fastening, 2590; (Festyng), support, lit. fastening, firm hold, 2482.
- Fete, *pl.* feet, 133, 505, 779*, 850, 1135, 1348, 2482, 3946; feet, i.e. heels (in departing), 3246. Cf. the phrase 'to shew a fair pair of heels.'
- Fete, *s.* action, movement, lit. feat, 30; feat, doings, 4366; (Fetez), *pl.* feats, 817*.
- Fetelakis (Fete-lakez), *pl.* fetlocks, 2049.
- Feþir, *s.* plumage, 5604; Fethirs, *pl.* feathers, 4985.
- Fethirhame, *s.* clothing or covering of feathers, 3694; Fethire-hames, *pl.* plumage, 380, 2710. A.S. *feðerhama*.

- Fetid, *pp.* fashioned, made, 4356, 4633. O.F. *faitier*, to arrange (Godefroy); from O.F. *suit*, sb. See *Feetis*.
- Fetoure, *s.* feature, fashion, make, 2959; Fetour, feature, 600.
- (Fett), *ger.* to fetch, 884.
- Fettild, *pp.* prepared, 626; (Feteld), fitted, 2995.
- Feuivre (Feuer), *s.* fever, 2546; Feuyre, 4279. *Written ffeuyre;* the ff is merely the (sole) way of writing the capital letter.
- Fewe, *adj.* few, 251, 501, 654, 2061.
- Fewis, *for* Fewist, *adj. superl.* fewest, 3738. See Fewist.
- Fewist; At be fewist, at least, 3599.
- Fewlis, *pl.* birds, 3690.
- Fewtire (Fewtre), *s.* rest for a lance, 2621. O.F. *fautre, feutre*, in Godefroy.
- Fey, *adj.* dying, fated to die, ready to die, 1215, 2055, 2087, 4002*; (Faye), 1034; Fey, dead, 2153, 2323, 4018, 4781, 5371, 5561. Icel. *feigr.* See Fay.
- Feyle, *adj.* many, 2055; (Fele), 2460, 3268.
- Feylour, *s.* foliage, 5004. See Felour.
- Feyne, *v.* feign, 1745; Feynys (Fenys) *pr. s.* 2 *p.* feignest, assumest, 2242; Feyned (Fenyd), *pp.* feigned, pretended, 715, 2197.
- Feyne, *error for* Fyne, *imp. s.*; Fyne of = cease from, 3458. See below.
- Feyned, *pt. s.* *error for* Fynynd (as in Dubl. MS.), ended, died, 3100. The same error recurs in l. 3458.
- Feynes, 2 *pr. s.* dost faint, art disengaged, 101. O.F. *faindre, 'hésiter, manquer de courage'*; Godefroy.
- Fest, *ger.* to fight, 217, 910; *v.* 3767; (Feght), *v.* 2208; Feztis (Feghtez), *pr. s.* 1401, 2039; Feztis (Foghten, *pt. pl.*), *pr. pl.* fight, 1262, 1441; (Fighten), 2228; Feztand, *pres. pt. as adj.* fighting, 91; (Feght-and), 2080; (Feghtyng), 1315; (Fightand), 2535.
- ffeuyre. See Feuyre.
- ffurrers. See Furrers.
- Ficesyens, *pl.* physicians, 4363.
- Fiches, *pr. s.* fixes, 1369, 4853 (see the note); Ficcid, *pt. s.* fixed up, 5556; *pp.* fixed, 4641; Fichid, *pp.* stuck, 4372. O.F. *ficher*.
- Fifte, *ord.* fifth, 3901; Fift, 3372.
- Fight, *s.* fighting, 817*.
- Fight, *s.* fight, 2051. An error for *sight*: note the alliteration.
- Figour, *s.* figure, form, 360.
- Fild, *s.* field, also field of battle, 450, 454; (Feld), 926, 961, 1238; (Felde), 770, 819; Filde, 500, 2061; Fildis, *pl.* 4136.
- Filetts, *pl.* fillets, 4338.
- Filies, *Lat.* Philonis, 5497.
- Filispshire (Philosofre), philosopher, 2347.
- Fill, *ger.* to fulfil, grant, 3173; (Fylle), to fulfil, 2660; Fillis, *pr. s.* fills, 56; fulfils, 547; (Fillez), fills, 1661.
- Fill, *s.* fill, 4761; (Fyll), 3228.
- Filling, *s.* the being full, 4265.
- Filour, *s.* thread-work, filagree-work, 3690. F. *filure*, a spinning.
- Findis (Fyndez), *pr. s.* finds, 1125, 2034.
- Finely, *adv.* well, 5139.
- Fineschid, *pp.* finished, 3900.
- Fingire, finger, 4674.
- Fire, *s.* fire, 558, 4167; (Fyre), 2230; A fire, on fire, 2470.
- Fire (Fyre), *ger.* to set on fire, 2217; Fired (Fyryd), *pp.* set on fire, 2478.
- Firment, *s.* firmament, 3363; Firmament, 30.
- Firmes (Fermes), *pr. s.* fastens, makes firm, 1369.
- Firs (Fers), *adj.* fierce, 770, 2961. See Fers.
- First, *adj.* first, 657; (Frist), 893, 1429; Firste, 375.
- First (Frist), *adv.* first, 1366, 2423; first of all, 1712.
- Fisch, *s.* fish, 4282; Fischis, *pl.* 4270, 5083.
- Fist, *s.* fist, hand, 4674; (Fistez), *pl.* 799.
- Fitt, *s.* fit, division, canto, passus, 4018, 4714, 5626; (Fytt), 3203; Fittis, *pl.* 3473. Cf. A.S. *fittan*, to sing.
- Fist (Fight), *ger.* to fight, 759;

- Fiztis (Feghtez), *pr. s.* 1225, 1301; Fiztis (Feght), *imp. pl. 2 p.* fight ye, 1034.
- Fizt, *s.* fight, 1004; fighting, 3495; battle, 418, 3550. For the second *fizt* in l. 3550, read *folk*; see the note.
- Flabband, *pres. part.* flapping, 4807. See Flappid.
- Flaggis, *pl.* flakes, 4165. Lowl. Sc. *flag*.
- Flames, *pr. s.* burns, flames, 558; Flammand, *pr. pt.* flaming, inflaming, 1133; Flamband, *pres. part.* flaming, glowing, 3690.
- Flammes, *pl.* flames, 5574. See Flawmes.
- Flandres, Flanders, 5674.
- Flane, *pl.* arrows, 3839; Flanes, 2210; Flanis, 5448; Flanys, 3045. A.S. *flán*, pl. arrows; *flan-es* is a double plural. See Flayne, Flonys.
- Flange (Flonge), *pt. s.* flung, 1348.
- Flappid, *pt. pl.* flapped, 5440.
- (Flasshed), *pt. s.* flashed, rushed suddenly, 1133.
- Flat (Flatt), *adv.* flat, 1135.
- Flaw, *s.* flake, mass of snow, 1756. See Flaggis.
- Flawmes, *pl.* flames, 3871, 4784. See Flammes.
- Flay, *ger.* scare away, 5448; *v.* terrify, 110; Flays, *pr. s.* appeases, lit. drives or frightens away, 4608. "To flay, *terrere*;" Cath. Anglicum.
- (Flayne), *pl.* arrows, 1767*. See Flane.
- Flee, *v.* flee, 988; Flees (Fleen), *pr. pl.* flee, go, 3180; Fled, *pt. s.* fled, 136.
- Flees (Fleys), *s. pl.* flies, 3011.
- Flekirs, *pr. s.* flutters, 505. A.S. *flicerian*.
- Fleme, *v.* banish, 300. A.S. *flyman*.
- Flesche, flesh, 569; (Fleche), 1006.
- Fleschely, *adv.* carnally, 308.
- Flete, *s.* train, host, 803*. Cf. E. *fleet*. See Flote.
- Flett (Flete), hall, 821. A.S. *flet*, a floor, a house, a hall.
- Flezters, *pr. s.* flutters, 505. See Flekirs, Flijtir.
- Flinges, *pr. s.* hurls, shoots, 3839; rushes, darts, 3967; (Flyngez), rushes, 1218. See Flonge.
- Flisch (Flechett, *pt. s. subj.*), *pr. s. subj.* may bend, may give way, 1372. F. *fléchir*.
- Flitt, *v.* remove, advance, 4861; Flittis, *pr. s.* removes, 3784; (Flittes), 2173, 2439; Flites (Flyttes), 3184. Cf. Icel. *flytja*.
- Flijand, *pres. pt.* flying, 380.
- Flijt, *s.* flight, 110, 508, 5521; (Flyjt), 1236; *miswritten* Filjt (Flyght), 2788; sudden blast, 4143; On filjt, to flight, 3905.
- Flijtir, *s.* flight, 3944.
- Flijt-loomes (Flyght-lomes), *pl.* implements of flight, means of flight, 2710. A.S. *lóma*.
- Flode, *s.* flood, sea, 558, 2460; river, 2119, 3814; water, 56; flood (of tears), 1133; (Flodez), *pl.* floods, 1350. See Fludis.
- Flode, *error for* Fynd (see note), 1 *pr. s.* find, 4734.
- Flode-ȝatis (Flode-ȝates), *pl.* flood-gates, 1856.
- Flokkis (Flokkez), *pl.* flocks, 2533.
- Flonge owt, *pt. s.* rushed out, 831*. See Flinges.
- (Flonys), *pl.* arrows, 3045. See Flane.
- Florantis, *pl.* florins, 3820. (The Lat. has *qui aurum eius portabant*, which seems to have suggested this translation.) The right form is rather *florencis*. Mätzner (s. v. *florin*) gives examples of the *pl. florences* and *floranse*. Hence "with his florantis" means "with his florins," i. e. to carry his florins or money. See Florantis.
- Flore, *s.* floor, 3220; (Floure), 1348; Flores, *pl.* floors, flat surface, 4168.
- Florentis, *pl.* (*read with florentis*), florins, 4074; Florens, 819*. See Florantis, and cf. 3820.
- Florischt, *pp.* overgrown, 4717; Floryscht, flowered, adorned, 4379.
- Flosches (Flosshez), *pl.* pools, 2049. See *Flosche* in Halliwell; cf. prov. E. *floss*, as in 'The Mill on the Floss.'
- Flote, *s.* (lit. fleet), armament, host,

- 3592; company, 1210, 1758, 1943, 2001, 2264, 4871; Flote (Flete), company, 1196, 1581; band of men, 770. Icel. *flat*, a raft, a fleet. See Flete.
- Floum, *s.* river, 2898. See Flum.
- Floure, *s.* flower, 1007; profit, 2603; victory, 500, 819, 3982; flour, 3822; Floures (Flourez), *pl.* flowers, 1539.
- (Flowe), *pr. pl.* flow, 1350.
- Floze, *pt. s.* flew, 503, 508; *pt. pl.* flew, 3936, 4784, 5574; Flozen, *pt. pl.* fled, 1392.
- Flozes (Flowes), *pr. s.* flows, 2053.
- Fludis (Flodez), *pl.* floods, waters, 1155. See Flode.
- Flum (Flume), *s.* river, 2118; Flumme, 3829, 4739; Flummes (Flomes), *pl.* rivers, 2595. O.F. *flum*. See Floum.
- Flynt, flint, rock, 4447.
- Fode, *s.* food, meat, 2, 1174, 3497, 4605, 4723; Fodis, *pl.* food, kinds of food, 4302, 5426.
- Fode, *s.* child, i.e. one who is fed, 270. (Not uncommon.)
- Fodeles, *adj.* foodless, without food, 2155.
- (Foes), *pl.* foes, 810. See Faa.
- Foke, *s.* folk, 3053. See Folk.
- Folawand, *pres. pt.* following, 803*; (Folowand), 1248.
- Fold, *s.* earth, the earth, 3, 30, 251, 312, 429, 792, 1135, 2502, 4636; land, 3105; ground, 2087; (Falde), 1641; On fold, on the battle-ground, 3623.
- Fold-ward, earthward, 3363.
- Fole, *s.* foal, horse, 133, 808, 1218, 1236, 743*, 753*; Foles, *pl.* 805*; (Folez), 2049, 2155. A.S. *fola*. See Foole.
- Fole, *s.* fool, 1766*, 1990.
- Folewis (Folowez), *pr. s.* follows, 1860.
- (Folez), *pl.* follies, 1766*.
- Folite, *s.* folly, foolishness, 5366.
- Folk, people, 1; Folke, 91, 375, 454, 591, 1174, 2084, 5561; written Fokke, 5311; Foke, 3053.
- Folowe, *v.* follow, 640; Foloze (Folow), *ger.* to follow, 829; Folowis, *pr. s.* follows, 14; Folo-
- ghes, 4569; Foloweth, 736*; Folozes (Folows), 2250; Folowis, follows (*perhaps an error for* Flowis, flows), 1350; Foloze, *pr. pl.* (they) follow, 3829; Folozes (Folows), 2080; Folowis (Folows), 1783; Folow (Flowen), *pr. pl.* follow, go (*but an error for* flow or flowen, fled), 1697; Folowid (Foloud), *pp.* followed, 1675; Folowand, *pres. pt.* following, 1758, 3473; Folozand (Folow-and), 3268.
- Foly, *s.* folly, 736*, 2470, 4641.
- Fon (Fonne), *s.* fool, 2944. So in Chaucer.
- Fonde, *v.* advance, 3492, 4701; Fonde, *ger.* to go, 2210; Fondis, *pr. s.* attempts, endeavours, 4753; Fondis, *pr. s.* goes forward, advances, 2502, 4716; (Fonndez), 2129; Fondis, goes, 5579; (Fondes), goes, 2311; (Fonndez), goes, 1856; Fonde, *pr. pl.* explore, 4871; Fondand, *pres. pt.* going, 5277. A.S. *fandian*. See Fonndis, Founde.
- Fonden (Founden), *pp.* found, 3144; Fondyn, 2171.
- Fonden, *pp.* founded, 4641. Miswritten for *fonded*; the *pp.* *fonden* can only mean ‘found.’ See above.
- Fondere, founder, 4711.
- Fone, *adj.* few, 3180. Stratmann suggests that the form should be *foue*; but we also find *fon*; and *u* (= *v*) is never a *final* letter.
- Fonges, 2 *pr. s.* receivest, 3101; (Fongez), *pr. s.* takes, 819; Fonge, *pt. pl.* took, 3634. A.S. *fón*.
- Fonndis, *pr. s.* advances, 2439; (Fonndez), 2114. See Fonde.
- Fonned, *adj.* fond, foolish, 5513. See Fon.
- Foole, *s.* foal, horse, 5588; (Fole), 2879, 3032; Fooles (Folez), *pl.* horses, 3072. See Fole.
- For, *prep.* on account of, because of, 169, 1164, 1801; as, as being, 35; from, 285; in spite of, 4196; as a defence against, to prevent, 747*, 3959.

- For, *conj.* because, 2136, 2478, 2651, 4013; *forasmuch as*, 3550; for, 138, 173; in order that, so that, 141.
- For to, to (*with gerund*), 147, 160, 217, 313, &c.
- For-bede, *imp. s.* forbid, 5590.
- Forbod, *s.* prohibition, 4154.
- Force, force, strength, 1006, 1443, 1738, 3989; (*Forse*), 850; Na force, it is no matter, 471.
- Forcelett, *s.* fortress, defence, 4358. See *Forslet*.
- Forces (*Forceez*), *pr. s.* matters, 2001; Forced, *pt. s. subj.*; Him forced, it would signify to him, 5371; Forced (*Forsyd*), *pp.* compelled, 2659.
- Fore, *pt. s.* fared, 457. See *Fare*, *v.*
- Forelange, *s.* furlong, 2898, 3065, 3967; *Forelang*, *as pl.* 5460. See *Forlange*.
- Forfet, *pp.* forfeited, done amiss, 471.
- For-fetils, *pr. s.* appears lean (?), 4401. Apparently from the verb *fetill*, to fettle, prepare, set in order, with the prefix *for-*, giving it a sinister sense; hence *forfettle*, to disorder, to mar, which is here used in the intransitive sense, ‘to seem marred’ or ‘to seem disordered,’ to be out of condition.
- For-fosten, *pp.* exhausted with fighting, 3917; (*For-fouughтен*), 1271.
- Forgais, *pr. s.* forgoes, gives up, 188.
- For-gatt, *pt. s.* forgot, 3276.
- For-geue (*Forgyfe*), *1 pr. s.* forgive, 2434.
- Forge[f]nes, *s.* forgiveness, 3525.
- Forgid, *pp.* fabricated, made, 3346; Forged, 3703; (*Forgett*), 1542, 1590; (*Forgyd*), 2995.
- For-helid (*Foreheld*), *pp.* covered over, 1063. A.S. *helan*.
- Forlange, *pl.* furlongs, 3833. See *Forelange*, *Furelange*.
- Formast, *adj. superl.* furthest, extremest, lit. foremost, 4102.
- Formed, *pt. s.* made, 1611.
- Forne, in front, 3925.
- Fornicacion, fornication, 4485.
- Forrayouris, *pl.* foragers, scouts, 2171.
- For-quy, why, wherefore, 4584; Forqui, 4325.
- Forsake, *ger.* to give up, 2840; Forsaken, *pp.* 824.
- Forsen (*Frosyn*), *pp.* frozen, 2883.
- Forslet, *s.* stronghold, fortalice, 3834. See *Forcelett*.
- For-sothe, *adv.* of a truth, forsooth, verily, 665, 2808; Forsothe, 498; Forsoth, 1070.
- For-sworn (*Forsworne*), *pp.* forsworn, 1465.
- Forthe (*Forth*), *adv.* forth, 827; Forth, 371; (*Forth*), 749, 732*.
- Forthe (*Forth*), *v.* afford, 1774. A.S. *forȝian*.
- Forthi, *conj.* therefore, 3465; Forþi, 241, 1012, 4279; on that account, 4609; wherefore, 1767.
- Forthing-dole, *s.* fourth part, quarter, 3844. Lit. ‘farthing-deal.’
- For-thinkis (*For-thynkez*), *pr. s. impers.*; Him for-thinkis, it repents him, 1464.
- Forthire, *adv.* further, 523; (*Forther*), 1907, 1989; (*Ferþer*), 2314; Forthere (*Ferther*), 1693.
- Forthire (*Furthers*, *error for Furthere*), *v.* further, help, assist, 2700; (*Forther*), *ger.* to help, 1948.
- Fortoun (*Forton*), fortune, 1851, 1856.
- For-top, forehead, 319.
- For-trauailid (*For-traveld*), *pp.* worn with travail, 1009.
- (*For-tyred*), *pp.* tired out, 1009.
- Forward (*Forwardez*, *pl.*), *s.* agreement, 1259.
- Forward (*Forthward*), forward, 847.
- Forwith (*Forewith*), *prep.* until, 1675; before, 861, 2242; in presence of, 15.
- Fosterd, *pt. s.* brought up, 2729; Fostard, *pp.* nourished, 3495.
- Fostring, *s.* fostering, bringing up, 575.
- Fote, foot, 1236; A fote (On fote), a single foot, one foot, 2423; (*Fute*), 3220; (*Fote*), 844; On fote, on foot, 2250; Fotes, *pl.* feet, 4851; miswritten *Fortes*, 199. The curious plural *fotes* (= feet), occurs also in *Sir Gawain* and the *Grene Knight*.

- Foteman, *s.* foot-soldier, 3175; Fote-men, infantry, 3059.
- Fote-thike (Fute-thyke), of a foot thick, 2883.
- Foule, *s.* fowl, bird, 4993; Foules, 4271. See Fowell.
- Foule, *adj.* unclean, 3936.
- Foule, *adv.* foully, 746; in an ugly manner, dirtily, 4082.
- Foules, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* trample, tread on, 4626; Foulis, 4681.
- Foulire (*for* Foule hire), tread her, i. e. the town, 1360. See below.
- Foun, *pp.* found, 159; (Fundē), 3259.
- Founce, *s.* bottom, 4130. O.F. *fons* (Burguy); from Lat. *fundus*. See Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Founde, *v. go*, 5529; advance, 5038; Found, go, 5230; (Found), go, 2879; Foundis, *pr. s.* marches, advances, proceeds, 450, 2423; (Fundes), departs, 3246; Foundes (Fondytt, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* goes forward, 1145; Founde, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst go, 4936; Foundid (Foundez, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* went, took, 1236; Foundid, *pp.* gone, 169. See Fondē.
- Foundid, *pp.* founded, built, 5291; (Fondyn, *wrongly*), 1649.
- Founding, *s.* going, advance, 4154.
- Foure, *num.* four, 633, 2133, 764*; On alle foure, on all fours, 5277.
- Fourme, *s.* manner, way, 172, 4219; form, shape, 312, 359, 613; (Forme), 987, 1708; disposition, 1276.
- Fourmed, *pt. s.* formed, prepared, 2413; (Formede), made, 1739; Fourmed, *pp.* formed, made, 3, 275, 576, 3459, 4616.
- (Fourte), *ord.* fourth, 3368.
- (Fourth), *adv.* forth, 887.
- Fowell (Foule), *s.* bird, 2264 (alluding to a common proverb, "as fain as fowl of the day"); Fowlis, *pl.* birds, 5448, 5589; Fowles, 3146; Fowls, 3944. See Foule.
- (Fowly), *adv.* foully, evilly, greatly, 934.
- Foxes, *pl.* foxes, 3932.
- Fozten (Foughten), *pt. pl.* fought, 2460; (Feghten), 2375; (Feyten), 2090.
- Fra, *prep.* from, 56, 136, 139, 173, 296, 332, &c.; (Fro), 3245; from the time, 2323; Fra þat, from the time when, 2019, 2373; Fra now, from this time, 1094.
- Fraid, *pp.* afraid, 3458. See Frayed.
- Fraist (Fraysted), *pp.* enquired about, 2019. Icel. *freista*, to make trial of. See Fraystes.
- Franche (Fraunches), *s.* freedom, franchise, 917. See Fraunches.
- (Frances), *pr. s.* enquires, asks, 832*; 2 *pr. s.* askest, 2305. See Frayne.
- Frantites (Francides), the name of a country, 1057.
- Fraunche, *adj.* without flaw, excellent, 4356. Cf. E. *free-stone*.
- Fraunches, *s.* franchise, freedom, 4617; (Franchez), 2486; Fraunchis, *s.* benefit, good quality, 4684; Fraunches, *as pl.* liberties, 4012.
- Foward, *prep.* from the direction of, away from, 1335, 1759; (Forward), 1289.
- Frayed, *pp.* frightened, 3567; (Frayd), 3036. See Fraid.
- Frayne, *v.* enquire, ask, 3837; Frayn (Frayne), *ger.* to ask for, enquire, 2655; Fraynes, *pr. s.* asks, 267, 433, 457; (Frances), 2067; (Franez), 1700; Frayns, 672; Frayned, *pt. s.* enquired, 2305. A.S. *frignan*, Icel. *fregna*.
- (Fraystes), *pr. s.* tempts, tries, puts to trial, 3366. See Fraist.
- Fre, *adj.* free, 4616; noble, 497.
- Freke, *s.* man, 270, 298, 360, 672, 675, 851, 2186, 2642, 813*; Frek, 101; (Freke), 1477, 2659; (Frekes), *pl.* 1992, 3268. A.S. *freca*.
- Freke, *adj.* eager, 5521. A.S. *frec*.
- Frekild, *adj.* freckled, spotted, 4988.
- Frekly, *adv.* quickly, soon, greatly, 1795. (Ill used.)
- Frelettis, *pl.* frailties, 3268.
- Frely, *adj.* noble, 270; (Frelich), 2728.
- Frely, *adv.* freely, liberally, 4012, 785*; courteously, 1695; well, 429; very, 4082.
- (Frend), friend, 814*; Frendis, *pl.* 619.
- Frendly, *adv.* friendly, 1695.
- Frengs, *pl.* fringes, 4338.

- Fresche (Fressh), *adj.* new, 891; (Fresh), fresh, 1350; (Freshe), 1007; Fresch, bright, 5604; Fresch (Fresh), *adj.* fresh, 1174, 2766; (Frehssse), fresh, 1235; vigorous, 792, where the Dublin MS. has *fers*.
- Freschely, *adv.* eagerly, 3816; Freschly (Freshly), vigorously, 2132; (Fresly), quickly, 923; Freschely (Freshly), boldly, 1031; Freschly, boldly, or quickly, 906.
- Fresons, *pl.* Frisians, i. e. men in cloth of Frieze, men roughly clad, 1758. F. *frison*, a Frisian; also a cloth of Friesland (Littré).
- Fresys, *pr. s.* freezes, 2896.
- Fretis, 2 *pr. pl.* fret, vex, irritate, 4400; Freten, *pp.* devoured, 5589.
- Frett, *pp.* adorned, decked, covered, 4766; Fret (Frett), 1542. A.S. *frætwian*.
- Frettis, *pl.* ornaments, 4338. A.S. *frætwe*.
- Frezt (Frȝt), *pp.* frightened, 1441.
- Frigie, Phrygia, 5674; (Frige), 2116.
- (Frist), *adv.* first, 805*, 1067; (On þe first), among the first, 2347 (where MS. A. has *on first*).
- Frithis, *pl.* friths, forests, woods, 4131.
- Frithmen, *pl.* woodmen, men of the wood, 5597.
- Fro, *prep.* from, 2691; (Fro), 742*, 842, 1056; *conj.* from the time that, 725*. See Fra.
- (From), *prep.* from, 831*.
- Frosen, *pp.* frozen, 3063.
- Frusch (Frush), *s.* charge, rush, onset, 1215. See the Troy-book.
- Frute, *s.* fruit, 4608; offspring, 575; Frutis, *pl.* fruits, 4636; Frutes, 5238; (Frute, *s.*), 2426.
- Frynde (Frend), friend, 864; (Frende), 2944; Frynd (Frend), 2720; Fryndis (Frendes), *pl.* 3421; Frynde (Frendes), *pl.* 1258.
- Fude (Fode), *s.* food, 2168. See Fode.
- (Fulffyll), *imp. s.* fulfil, 3173.
- Full, *adj.* full, 56, 65, 66, 112, 358, &c. In l. 1275, the phr. 'full of themselves' seems to mean full of their troubles, full of anxieties. In l. 2168, we have *at the full* = fully.
- Full, *adv.* very, 55, 129, 143, 171, 176, 234, &c.; (Ful hey), very high, 779. (Fully), *adv.* full, 1530.
- Fulth, *s.* plenty, abundance, fullness, 2171.
- Fundirs (Fonders), *pr. s.* founders, trips up, 846.
- Furelange, *pl.* furlongs, 3856. See Forlange.
- (Furelenth), *s.* furrow's length, furlong, 2898.
- Furrers, *pl.* furs, 4338. O.F. *fourrure*, fur.
- furth, *adv.* forth, 53, 120, 286, 335; far on, 375; forward, 636, 3829; Furthe, forth, away, 333, 408, 621; Furth in with euyn, forth into the even, far advanced in the evening, 3055.
- (Furthers), *imp. pl.* assist, 2700.
- Fute, *s.* foot, 545. See Fote.
- Fuyll (Ful), *adv.* full, very, 2197. See Full.
- Fyaunce (Fiance), confidence, 1641.
- Fyfe, five, 633.
- Fyfte, fifth, 3345.
- Fyftene, fifteen, 1078.
- Fyfti, *adj.* fifty, 3785.
- Fygis, *pl.* figs, 4821.
- Fygour (Figour), *s.* figure, 2867; appearance, 312; Figoure, 613.
- Fyld (Feld), *s.* field, 1943.
- (Fyll), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* may fill, 2168*.
- Fynde, *ger.*; To fynde, to be found, 3799; Fynd, 1 *pr. s.* I find, 24, 272, 300, 308, 643; Fyndis (Fyndes), *pr. s.* finds, 821, 1315, 1656; (Fyndez), 962, 1078, (Fyndes hym), *pr. s.* finds himself, finds out his true value, comes to himself, 3366.
- Fyne, *adj.* fine, 1542, 1590; good, 814*; fine, clear, transparent, 4853.
- Fyne, *adv.* finely, 2766.
- Fynely, *adv.* finely, 3220.
- Fynes, *pr. s.* finishes, ends, dies, 4002*; ends, 740*, 5626; Fyne, *imp. s.* cease, 1990; (Fynyd), *pt. s.* ended, died, 3100; Fyne,

- imp. s.* cease, leave off trying, 2720.
- Fynesch, *ger.* to finish, to put an end to, 3976 (it means—it suits him better to finish the fight himself); Fynyst (Fynyshit), *pt. s.* finished, ended, died, 808; (Fyneshit), *pp.* accomplished, 797*; Fynyst (Fynyshyt), finished, 687.
- Fynest, *adj. superl.* finest, 3368.
- Fynger, finger, 1089; Fyngirs, *pl.* 673.
- (Fyre), fire, 750*; Fyris, *pl.* 3859; see Bale-fyre.
- Fyrmament, firmament, 567.
- Fyrs, *adj.* fierce, 418. See Fers.
- Fysche-hale (Fyssh-hole), *adj.* as sound as a fish, 2575. Cf. "As sound as a trout," and "as sound as a roach"; see the note, p. 303.
- Fyschis, *pl.* fishes, 3947.
- Fysyke, *s.* physic, 4280.
- Fytt, *s.* fit, canto, 740*. See Fitt.
- Fyue (Fyfe), *num. five*, 1196, 1372, 3175.
- Fyzt, *s.* fight, 450.
- Gaa, *ger.* to go, 5515; (Go), depart, 1826; to move about, 5296; Ga, *ger.* to go, 966; (Go), 2873; Gaa, *v.* proceed, 636; Ga (Go), *v. go*, 1717; Ga (Gay), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* I go, 1671; Ga, 2 *pr. pl.* go, 459; Ga, *imp. s.* 5406; Gaes (Gose), *pr. s.* *refl.* goes, 3016; Gais him (Gase), goes, 1451; Gais him vp, goes up, 535.
- Gadirs (Gaders), name of a place, 1200, 1243, 1335.
- Gafe, *pt. pl.* gave, 1070; (Gaue), 742; Gaffe, uttered, 5157.
- Gai, *adj.* gay, 3797.
- Gaiest, *adj. superl.* gayest, 5124.
- Gailis (Galays), *pl.* galleys, 2474. See Galays.
- Gais; see Gaa.
- Gais, *an error (probably) for Girt, pp. struck*, 3645. Cf. *thurgh-girt* in Chaucer.
- Galawis (Galouse), *pl.* gallows, 1813.
- Galays, *pl.* galleys, 2456; Gales, 65. See Gailis.
- Gale, *s.* gale, a kind of plant, 4094.
- "Gayle, *mirtus*;" Cath. Anglicum, q. v.
- Gales (Galez), *pr. s.* speaks, 2257; (Galet), *pp.* announced (lit. sung, said), 798*. Icel. *gala*.
- Galt, *s.* boar-pig, 4743. See Galte in Cath. Anglicum.
- Gamarody, *name*, 5491.
- Gamen (Gamme), *s.* sport, amusement, 2280, 2604; Gammen (Gamen), 2272; (Gamez), *pl.* 2259; (Gammez), 1773.
- Gamen, *v.* play, sport, 4370.
- Gan, *pt. pl.* did, 201.
- Gane, *pp.* gone, 5553; dead, 4008; Gane many winter, many years ago, 692, 3556.
- Gang, *ger.* to go, 5535; Gange, 1257; *v.* 5047.
- Gangem, Ganges, 4188; Gangan, 4715.
- Gapand, *pres. part.* gaping, 3870.
- Gardens, *pl.* guardians, 3409.
- Garettis, *pl.* watch-towers (lit. garrets), 5601; Garettis (Garrates), 1417.
- Garisons, *pl.* stores, treasures, 4430, 5631; (Garison), 1809. O.F. *garison*. See Garsons.
- Garland, *s.* garland of victory, 818; Garlands, *pl.* 4599.
- Garment, *s.* garment, 1588.
- Garnad, Granada, 5667.
- Garnyscht, *pp.* garnished, 4451; Garnest (Garneshed), adorned, 1533.
- Garsons (Garisons), *pl.* rewards, 1662; Garsons, tributes, sums, 1074. See Garisons.
- Garysons, *s. pl.* (Garyson, *sing.*), garrisons, 3015. See Garisons.
- Gas; see Gase, Gaa.
- Gasa (Gaza), Gaza, 1451, 1453.
- Gascoyne, Gascony, 5667.
- Gase, *pr. s.* goes, 631; Gase him, goes, 332, 1183; Gase (Goy), 1285; (Goyse), 3216; Gas (Gays), 1648; Gase, *imp. pl.* go ye, 3522.
- Gast, *s.* spirit, 4065; life, 726*.
- Gat, 1 *pt. s.* begat, 724*; Gatt, *pt. s.* 1190; Gate, *pt. pl.* got, 3653.
- Gate, *s.* way, road, passage, 3339, 4625, 812*; Gate vp, ascent, 5636; Gatis, *pl.* roads, 143; paths,

- tracks, 4830; (Gatez), streets, 1519; His gate, on its own way, in its own direction, 1310.
- Gaude (Gaud), *s.* trick, 2966; Gaudis (Gawdes), *pl.* gauds, ornaments, vanities, 2732.
- (Gau), *pt. s.* gave, 726*; Gau (Gafe), 1778.
- (Gay), *adj.* gay, 790*; Gay, *adv.* gaily, 1533.
- Gayly, *adv.* gaily, 4911; Gaile, beautifully, 3346.
- Gaynes, *pr. s.* avails, 181; Gayn, *pr. pl.* advance, promote, 2746. Icel. *gagna*, to help, be of use.
- Gaynest, *adj. superl.* nearest, shortest (way), 3484; At the gaynest (ganest), by the nearest way, 1137, 1318. See below.
- Gaynir, *adj. comp.* nearer, 5512. Icel. *gegn*, near, convenient.
- Gedire (Gedir), *v.* gather, 2531; (Geder), 1809; Gedire (Geder), *ger.* 2101; (Gedder), *ger.* 3129; Gedirs, *pr. s.* gathers, 1334; Gedirs him, gathers for himself, 911; Gedirs, *pr. pl.* gather, 3958; (Gerdyn, for Gedrym), 2054; Gedird, *pt. s.* gathered, 3480; Gedird, *pp.* 338, 5439; (Gederit), 1739; (Gedderyd), 2830.
- Geere (Gere), *s.* stuff, gear, provision, 3177.
- Geet, *pr. pl. 2 p.* get, 4468.
- Gefe, *ger.* to give, 3772; (Gefe), *v.* 1980; (Gyfe), *v.* 1826; Geffe, *pr. s. imp.* may give, 5254; Gefe, *imp. pl. 1 p.* let us give (up), 181; Gefes, *imp. pl.* give, 1035. See Geue.
- Gemetry, geometry, 339; Gemetri, 43; *written* Gremetry, 410.
- Gemmés, *pl.* gems, 3670; (Gemmys), 978, 1535, 2396; Gemmys, 3224; Gemes, 3951.
- General, *adj. as s.* a general meeting, 1507.
- Genosophis, *pl.* gymnosophists, 4022.
- Gentill, *adj.* gentle, 4022; (Gentyll), 705; Gentils, gentry, 3402.
- Gentilli, *adv.* skilfully, completely, thoroughly, 43.
- Gentill-man (Gentell-man), *s.* gentleman, 2664.
- Gere, *s.* gear, dress, 4599; equipment, 824*, 3034; implements, 131; warlike preparation, 2129; trappings for a horse, accoutrements (used of a bridle), 790*; (Gere), dress, 2905; Geris, *pl.* toys, playthings, 1773.
- Gernets, *pl.* pomegranates, 4724; Gernetts, 5238.
- Gerrethis, *pl.* girths, bands, 5536.
- Gers, *pr. s.* makes, 1219, 4441, 4762; causes, 5155; Gert, *pt. s.* made, 5535; caused, 3860; *pt. pl.* made, 5480; Gert make, caused to be made, 191. Icel. *gjöra*.
- Gesse, *v.* suppose, 5000; discern, 4216; Gesse, 1 *pr. s.* suppose, imagine, 990, 5632; (Ges), 2732; Ges (Gesse), 577, 2507; Gessis, *pr. s.* supposes, 5512; Geses (Gessed, *pt. s.*), 2071; Gessis (Gessys), *pr. s. refl.* expects, 2670; Gesse, *pr. pl. 2 p.* suppose, 4495, 4578; Gesses (Gessyn), *pr. pl.* suppose, 2905; Ges-sid (Gessyd), *pp.* guessed, supposed, 3266.
- Gesse, *s.* guess, thought, supposition, 3552.
- Gest, *s.* guest, 5254; Gestis, *pl.* 485, 497; bedfellows, 460; (Gestes), guests, 2948.
- Gest, *s.* story, 4022.
- Gett, *v.* get, 188, 1440; *ger.* to win, 794; Geten, *pp.* begotten, 473, 3578; (Gettyn), 756, 973; won, 1453; Getis, *imp. pl.* get, obtain, 2468.
- Gett, *s.* child, one who is begotten, 391, 435, 473, 577.
- Geue, *ger.* to give, 5377; Genes (Gyfez), *pr. s.* 1662; Geuys (Gyf-fez), 1074; Geuyn (Geven), *pt. pl.* gave, 2327; Geuyn (Gefyn), *pp.* given, 1883; Geuyn vp, *pp.* given up, 813. See Gefe.
- Gide, *s.* guide, 4953, 5047.
- Gidis, *pr. s.* guides, 5387; Gidid, *pp.* guided, 4425.
- Gife, *conj. if*, 565.
- Giffe, *v.* to give (*but an error for* Giffis, gives), 4184.
- Giftis, *pl.* gifts, 3777; (Gyftes), 3128; (Gyftez), 1660, 2027.

- Gilden, *adj.* golden, 3667, 4985; Gildin, 5601.
- Gile, *s.* guile, treachery, 2574.
- Gilid, *pt. s.* beguiled, 417.
- Gill-stremes, *pl.* cascades, 3231. (*Wrongly gylle-stormez in the Dublin MS.*) Icel. *gil*, a ravine.
- Gilt, *s.* guilt, fault, offence, 2384, 2434, 3525; (Gilt), 3213.
- Gilt, *adj.* gilt, gilded, 1873; (Gilt), 790*.
- Gilt (Giltyd), *pt. s.* offended, 2430; Giltid, *pp.* sinned, 472.
- Gilten, *adj.* gilded, 3456, 4451.
- Gilty (Gylty), *adj.* guilty, 2574.
- Ging, *s.* gang, following, host, company, 3484, 4715; (Genge), 3015; (Gyn), 1213, 2038; Ging, 3618, 5456; (Geng), 2674; Gingis (Gyng), *pl.* followers, retinue, 1648; companies (of you), 2435. In ll. 1213, 2038, the Dublin MS. has *gyn* = device, plan (wrongly).
- Gingere, ginger, 5426.
- Girdill, girdle, 181; (Girdyll), 758. See the note to l. 179, p. 288.
- Girdis, *pr. s.* strikes, pierces, 1219; (Girdes), 1213; Girdes (Grydes), throws, flings, 2278; Girdis out (Gyrdes oute), bursts out, 3159; Girdis, *pr. pl.* beat, 2474; strike, 796; Girds, strike, spring, leap, 3845; Girdis (Gyrdyn), throw, 2227; Girdis (Girdes), *pr. pl.* strike, 1417; Girdis vp (Girdes vp), rush up, climb up, 1435; Girdid, *pt. pl.* burst, rushed, 3231; Gird, *pp.* beaten, 1865; Gird (Girde), struck, 2787; Girdand, *pres. part.* dashing, rushing, 1243. See *gurden* in Mätzner, p. 332.
- Girdis, *pr. s. refl.* surrounds himself, 2038. The Dublin MS. has *girdez in*, strikes in, attacks.
- Giugne, *s.* June, 3537.
- Glaam, *s.* clamour, loud talking, 5504. Icel. *glam*, noise.
- Glace (Glas), *s.* ice, 3002.
- Glad, *adj.* glad, 1257; Glade (Glad), *adj.* glad, rejoicing, 3244.
- Glade, *v.* rejoice, 4370; Gladis, *pr. s.* gladdens, cheers, encourages, 485, 3929; (Gladdes), 966; (Glad), 1 *pr. s. subj.* may please, 724*.
- Gladen, *s.* gladdon, a kind of flag or iris, esp. the stinking iris (*Iris faetidissima*), 4094.
- Gladen, *s.* a lucky moment, 131. "A gladen he waytis," he watches for a lucky moment. This is clearly the sense. The Icel. *glaðr* means (1) glad, (2) bright, said of sky or weather. Hence Icel. *glaðna*, to brighten up, said of the weather, from which verb the word here used is derived. Similarly, we have prov. E. (Northern) *gladden*, explained as (1) a glade [E. D. S. Gloss. 1] or (2) a void space free from encumbrances [E. D. S. Gloss. 17], i. e. a clear space, with reference to *space instead of time*.
- Gladnes (Gladnesse), *s.* gladness, 1971.
- Glas, *s.* glass, 4463, 5536. (Glasynand); see Glyssynand.
- Glauir, *s.* glaver, chattering, noise of tongues, 5504. See Mätzner.
- Gledis, *pl.* burning coals, glowing or live coals, 226, 3627, 3898; (Gledes), 2474; Gledes, 2975. A.S. *gléd*.
- Gleme, *s.* gleam, 2044, 4817.
- Glent, *pt. s.* glinted, shone, 4817.
- Glesenyd, *pt. pl.* glistened, 3797; Glesenand, *pres. pt.* 603.
- Gletirand, *pres. pt.* glittering, 3346.
- Glett, *s.* mud, slime, 4516; clay, 4490. See Mätzner.
- Glide, *v.* pass, come, 358; Glidis, *pr. s.* glides, flows, 3233; (Glydes), glides, 1310; Glidis (Glad, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* glides, 2451; Glid, *pp.* glided, 2857; Glidand (Glydand), *pr. pt.* gliding, 1079.
- Glitered, *pt. s.* glittered, 4957; Glitirand, *pres. part.* 3797; Glitterand, 3686; Glitterand, 5536.
- Glode, *s.* way, path, track, road, 1334. A.S. *gelád*.
- Glorand, *pres. pt.* staring, gazing fixedly, glaring, 4552, 4728; gleaming, 3627. Icel. *glóra*, to stare, glare like a cat's eyes.
- Glori, *s.* glory, 1730; (Glory), 1983; Glorie (Glory), 1883, 1971.

- Gloriosest (Gloriest), *adj. superl.*
most glorious, 1611.
- Glorius, *adj. glorious*, 2776.
- Glotomy, *s. gluttony*, 3265.
- Gloue (Glofe), *s. glove*, 1984;
Gloves, *pl. gloves*, 2767; *see*
Nethire.
- Gloumes, *pr. s. becomes gloomy*, is
overcast, 4142. Cf. E. *glum*.
- (Glowys), *pr. s. glows*, 3368.
- Gluttis, *pl. gluttons*, 4552. So in
P. Plowman's Crede. O.F. *glout*;
Roquefort.
- Glyffe, *ger. to dazzle, glare, look
bright*, 4599. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *gliff*,
a glimpse.
- Glyssynand (Glasynand), *pres. part.
glistening, glittering*, 3015.
- Gnaistes, *pr. s. gnashes*, 5321.
- (Go), 1 *pr. s. go*, 2280. See Gaa.
- Gobet, *s. gobbet, morsel*, 4516;
(Gobett), piece, 1310.
- Goblets, *pl. goblets*, 3701; Gob-
lettis, 5131; Gobletis (Goblettes),
2935; Goblettis (Goblettez), 2948.
- Goblyn, *s. goblin*, 5491.
- Gode (God), *s. God*, 329, 1073,
2905; Godis (Goddes), *gen. God's*,
876; Gods (Godez), 1591; Godis,
pl. gods, 307, 5410; Goddis, 271,
5394.
- (Gode), *adj. good*, 804*.
- Godesses, *pl. goddesses*, 1874.
- Godhede, *s. godhead*, 5622.
- Godlaik, *s. goodness, virtue*, 4688.
- Godness (Gudnes), *s. goodness*, 3270.
- Gods (Gudez), *pl. goods, wealth*,
3280.
- Gogg, Gog, 5487.
- Golanand, *pres. pt. blowing*; hence,
rainy, tempestuous, 4796. Cf.
Icel. *gola, gula*, a fair breeze, *gol*,
a breeze; E. *gale*.
- Gold, *s. gold*, 276, 436, 607; gold
(spurs), 5458 (see the note);
(Goldes), *pl. gold coins*, 1847.
- Golden, *adj. golden*, 201; (Gold),
1533; Golde, 425.
- Gols, *s. red, gules, a red colour* (see
the note), 4819.
- Gome, *s. man*, 391, 417, 435, 516,
742, 818, 966, 1467, 1691, 2259,
2384, 3276; (Grome), 1190, 1936;
- Gomes, *pl. men*, 1417, 2054, 3387,
- 3552; (living) men, 3686; statues
of men, 5276; (Gomez), 1657, 1739,
2531; Gomes, *pl. gen. of men*, 4272.
- Gone, *pr. pl. go*, 3456.
- Gorge, *s. throat*, 3627; Gorg, neck,
4985.
- Gorred, *pp. gored*, 3645.
- Gose, *pr. s. goes*, 5050.
- Goste, *s. spirit, soul*, 4484. See
Gast.
- Gostid, spiritual, endowed with
spirits, 1874.
- Gotis, *pl. streams*, 4796. A *gote* is
properly a mill-stream; cf. "goyts
of mills, where the stream passes
out;" E. D. S. Gloss. B. 17.
- Gouerne (Goueryne), *v. govern, rule*,
3387 (*where the Ashmole MS. has
gounere*); (Gouern), 1973.
- Gouernoure (Gouernour), *s. gover-
nor*, 1623, 1936; (Gubernare), 852;
Gouerners, *pl. rulers*, 3552.
- Goules, gules, red, 4989, 5060; of a
red colour, 3368.
- (Goyts), *pr. s. goes*, 2111.
- Grace, *s. favour, grace*, 307, 358,
994; success, glory, 2534; Gracis,
pl. prayers, lit. thanks, 5394.
- (Graceux), gracious, 798*.
- Gracious, *adj. beautiful*, 3667;
(Graciouse), gracious, 1748, 1844;
(Gracieux), favouring, 1964.
- Graciousest, *adj. superl. most hand-
some*, 4909.
- Gradid (Gradit), *pp. degraded*, 2430.
- Graffis, *pl. graves*, 4451.
- Graithe, *v. prepare (myself) to go,
direct (myself)*, 3522; Graithes
(Grathez), *pr. s. prepares*, 3016;
Graithes him, arms himself, 911;
(Grathez hym), prepares himself,
3159; Graith, *pr. pl. 2 p. appoint*,
4499; Graithed (Grathed), *pt. pl.
prepared*, 1933; Graithid (Grath-
ed), *pp. arrayed*, 1844; Graithis,
imp. pl. yield, prepare, 1904. Icel.
greiða. See Grathez.
- Graithely (Grathly), *adv. readily,
worthily*, 756; Graithly, readily,
201. Icel. *greiðr*.
- Graithist (Grehest), *adj. superl. best
prepared, hence, richest*, 1865. Icel.
greiðr.
- Gramere, grammar, 631.

- Granate, *s.* garnet, 3344, 3368.
 Grane, *v.* groan, 1219; Granys (Granes), *pr. s.* 717; (Gronys), 3252.
 (Grane), *s.* groan, 726*.
 Grant (Graunt), *ger.* to grant, to ransom, 3103; (Graunte), *v.* grant, 1671, 1676; Grantis, *pr. s.* grants, 362; Grant (Graunt), *pr. s.* subj. grant, allow, 3125; 2 *pr. pl.* grant, 1826; Grantid, *pp.* granted, 5317. See Graunt.
 Granton (Grantum), the river Grani-cus, 3002, 3016, 3062, 3133; (Gratun), 2882.
 Grape, *s.* grape, 2426; (Grope), 1347; Grapis, 3667, 4724, 5239.
 (Grase), *s.* grass, 2426.
 (Grathet on), *pr. s.* puts on, dons, 790*; (Grathes hym), gets ready, 812*; Grathis (Grathen), *pr. pl.* get ready, 2456; Graþed, *pp.* prepared, ready, 131; Graþid (Grathed), arrayed, 1588; (Grathyd), made, 3387; (Grathed), armed, 1213. See Graithe.
 Grattest, *adj. superl.* greatest, 5131.
 Graue, *v.* engrave, 201; *ger.* to bury, 1330; Graue, *for* Graues, *pr. s.* buries, 3659; Grauen, *pp.* buried, 3319, 5417; engraved, graven, 436, 1591, 3343; Grauen (Grafen), engraved, 3145.
 Grauys, *pl.* graves (*s.* Graue), 2101; Graues (Grafys), 3130.
 Graunt, *pr. s. 1 p.* grant, 516, 1684, 804*; Grauntis (Grauntez), *pr. s.* 2295; Graunt (*for* Graunted), *pp.* granted, 3296. See Grant.
 Graunt, *adj.* great, 1737, 5668; Graunt mercy, many thanks, gra-mercy, 370, 458.
 Graunt, *s.* permission, 990.
 (Graunt), *s.* grant, grace, 2387. (Corrupt.)
 Gray, gray, 1330, 2044.
 Grayd, *adv.* excellently, 3689. Cf. Scot. *graíd*, made ready, short for *graithid*; also *grayd* for *grathyd* in lines 3339, 3348.
 Grayne, *s.* grain, small portion, 5622; (Grane), grain, seed, 2426; Graynes (Granes), *pl.* seeds, 1984, 2071; granules (?), 3375; grains, spots, 4989; Grayns (Granes), seeds, 2024.
 Grayne, *s.* arm (of the sea), branch (of the sea), 2451. Icel. *grein*. See Grain in Jamieson.
 Grayne, meaning uncertain, 2767; perhaps it means (skins) dyed in grain. (Grayue means a greave, but this hardly helps us.) In fact, we find *greyn* used in the sense of 'stuff dyed in grain' in the Babees Book, p. 178—“wheþur he were saten, sendell, vellewet, scarlet, or *greyn*.” Or it may actually mean ‘tanned leather’; for Hexham gives a Middle Du. verb *granen*, to tan leather, and *graner*, a tanner; whilst Jamieson gives *grainer*, the knife used by tanners and skinners for stripping the hair from the skins.
 Graythe (Grath), *v.* prepare, get ready, 2873; Grayth, 5535; Graythe (Grath), *pr. s. 1 p.* direct, 1984; Graythis (Grathez), *pr. s.* gets ready, 3133; Graythes (Grathes), prepares, 2129; Graythis (Grathes) him, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 1453; Graythid, *pt. s.* prepared, 3480; Graythed, *pp.* prepared, 4878; Graythid, formed, constituted, 1874; Graythid (Grathyd), adorned, set, 2935; prepared, 2767; shortened to Grayd, prepared, 3339, 3348; Graythe, *imp. s. 2 p.* get ready, 5037. Icel. *greiða*. See Graithe.
 Graythe, *s.* machine, gear, contrivance, 5518. From the verb.
 Graythist, *in comp.* Alþire-graythist, i.e. most excellent (or benevolent) of all, 162. See Graithely.
 Grayuyn, *pp.* engraved, 425. See Graue.
 Gre, *s.* degree, hence victory, 3296 (for *ere read is* in this line); (Gree), 3125; prize, 818. See Gree.
 Greece, Greece, 852, 994, 1435, 1657, &c.; written Grace, 1753.
 Grece, *s.* stairs, 535, 5050; Grecis, 332. Grece = grees, *pl.* of *gree*, a step. Grecis = *gree-s-es*, a double plural.

- Grecen (Greken), *gen. pl.* of the Greeks, 3216.
- Gredely, *adv.* greedily, eagerly, 1435.
- Gree, *s.* victory, superiority, 3518, 3651, 3756, 5456; (*Gre*), 994, 1883, 2278. O.F. *gre*, from Lat. *gradus*. See *Gre*.
- Grefe, *s.* grief, 1285; harm, 4157; Gref (*Grefe*), grief, trouble, 2435.
- (Grefully), *adv.* extremely, 973. Put for *gref-fully*, i.e. grievously.
- Grege (Grig), *s.* grig, cricket, 1753.
- Greke, the Greek language, 5009.
- Grekin, Grecian, 5504, 5639.
- Grekis (*Grekez*), *pl.* Greeks, 986, 1179, 1279, &c.
- Greme, *s.* anger, 4157. Icel. *gremi*. (*Greml*), *adj.* terrible, 726*.
- Grene, *adj.* green, 5536.
- Grese, *s.* grass, herbs, 338.
- Grete, *s.* a kind of stone, 1330. Properly 'gravel' (A.S. *gréot*); but see examples in Mätzner, *s. v.* *greet*, of its use for sepulchral purposes.
- Grete, *adj.* great, 26, 65, 358, 852, 1809; great with child, 459; (*Grett*), 1873; great (one), 1347; Gret (*Grete*), 1254; (*Gret*), 1352.
- Grete, *ger.* to weep, 872, 5042; *v.* 3159; Gretis, *pr. s.* 3320; (*Gretes*), 1285; (*Grettez*), 973; Grete, *pr. pl. 1 p.* weep, 4370; Gretis, *pr. pl. 155*. A.S. *grátan*.
- (Grehest), *adj. superl.* most excellent, 1591. (But read *grettest*, as in the Ashmole MS.)
- Gretis, *pr. s.* greets, 79, 535; (*Gretes*), 1488; *pr. pl. 1603*; Grete (*Gret*), 1 *pt. s.* saluted, 1623.
- Gretly, *adv.* greatly, 472; (*Grettly*), 2746.
- Gretter, *adj. comp.* greater, 5300; Grettir, 1334; (*Gretter*), 1267.
- Grettest, *adj. superl.* greatest, 271; (*Grehest, wrongly*), 1591; (*Grest*), 1904, 1911; Grettist, 307.
- Grettis, *pl.* great (men), 3651.
- Gretyng, *s.* weeping, 3238.
- Greues, *pr. pl.* pain, 2012.
- Greues, *pl.* greaves, 3898.
- Greues, *pl.* groves, 4044; Greuys, 4584, 4953; Greues (*Gravez*), 2857.
- Greuously, *adv.* grievously, 973, 2787; Greuosly, 796.
- Greuys, *pr. s.* grieves, 472; Greued (*Grefyd*), *pt. s.* grieved, harmed, 2544; Greued, *pp.* grieved, vexed, troubled, 874; Greuyd (*Greveyde*), 1342; (*Greved*), 1467; Greues (*Grefez*), *imp. pl.* grieve, 2434.
- Grew, *pt. s. 1 p.* grew, became, 3280.
- Grew, Greek, 4710, 5012.
- Grew, *s.* (*for Gree*), degree, bit, 3270. (*The Dublin MS. has dele.*) It can hardly be the Gk. γρῦ.
- Grewis, *pl.* groves, 4725. See Greues.
- Gridis, *pl.* outcries, 544. Such seems to be the sense; but the preservation of this O.F. form *gridis* is remarkable, as the usual O.F. form is always *cri*; only Italian has the form *grido*, a cry, shriek, outcry. The Span. has *grita*, but *grida* occurs in O. Spanish. See Diez, *s. v.* *gridare*.
- Griffons, *pl.* griffins, 5439, 5518.
- Grindand, *pres. pt.* grinding, 4552.
- Gripis, *pr. pl.* seize, 5453.
- Gripis, *pl.* vultures, 5439; Gripis gripis of our gomes, vultures seize upon our men, 5453.
- Grippis, *pl.* pangs, 544.
- Grisely, *adj.* grisly, horrible, 4728; *adv.* frightfully, 3870.
- Gro, *s.* shuddering, horror, 3238. (*But perhaps read grone, as in Dublin MS.*) Cf. Dan. *gru*, horror.
- Groched, *pp.* begrudging, 1467.
- Grofe, *s.* cave, 5394. *Grove* is the regular word for 'mine' among the Derbyshire miners; E. D. S. Gloss. B. 10.
- (Grome), *s.* man, 2101.
- Grond, *s.* ground, land, 3077, 4705; origin, 5410; (*Ground*), ground, 2787, 2857; Gronde, ground, 188; (*Grund*), land, 1973; (*Grunde*), ground, 1215. See Ground.
- Gronde, *pr. pl. 2 p.* ground, found (upon), base (upon), rely (upon), 4490. See Grond.
- (Grone), *s.* groaning, 3238.
- Groned, *pt. s.* groaned, grunted, 4743.

- Grouelings, *adv.* in a grovelling posture, bending forward, 5276.
- Ground, *s.* real reason, source, 476; ground, earth, 162, 1964; Grounde (Grund), ground, 2278.
- Growis, *pr. s.* grows, 3683; *pr. pl.* (*or s.*), grow, 2426; Groued, *pt. s.* grew, 4978; Growen, *pp.* grown, 5622; mature, 1347; Growand, *pres. part.* growing, 5238.
- Grub (Grob), *s.* grub, 1753.
- Grune, *pp.* ground, pounded, 338. Short for *grunden*.
- Grym, *adj.* grim, terrible, threatening, 26, 65, 5408, 5435; large, 1079; (Grymme), 1085; Grym (Greme), *adj.* bitter, sad, 3238.
- Grym, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* grow angry, or rather *adj.* angry (*are* being understood), 4653. The M. E. verb is *gremen*.
- Grymly, *adv.* terribly, 603; fiercely, 796.
- Gryn, *adj.* (*for* Grym), grim, 5491.
- Grype (Gripe), *s.* bunch of grapes, cluster, lit. handful, 1347. So the O.F. *grappe* means 'a cluster,' not a single grape.
- Grysely, *adj.* terrible, 5397; horrible, 4743; (Gryslyche), terrible, 3238.
- Grysely, *adv.* horribly, grisly, severely, 3645; (Grysly), terribly, 796.
- Gud, *adj.* good, 459; (Gude), 1074; (God), 731; precious, 1662; Gude, 390, 3128; sufficient, 3585 (in which line read *vs* for *zow*).
- Gud (Gude), *adv.* well; And þaim gud þinke, if it seem well to them, 2948.
- Gude (Goode), *s.* property, 1778. See Gudis.
- Gudis (Godez), *pl.* goods, wealth, property, possessions, 1852; (Goddez), 1865; Gudis (Gudez), *pl.* goods, wealth, 2738; Gudes (Gudez), possessions, 2683. See Guds.
- Gudly, *adv.* fairly, well, 485, 516.
- Gudman (Godman), master, lord, 2407; sir, 436; Gudmans, *gen. s.* hero's, 3433.
- Gudnes, *s.* goodness, mercy, 1747, 3103; (Goodnesse), 1676.
- Guds, *pl.* goods, property, 5377. See Gudis.
- Gun, *pt. s.* began, did, 394. See Gan.
- Gunnes (Gunnez), *pl.* guns, engines for casting stones, 2227.
- Gurds, *pl.* gourds, 3701.
- Guttars, *pl.* gutters, 4796; Gutars (Gutters), small streams, 3231.
- Gy (Gye), *ger.* to rule, direct, 3387.
- Gyane, Guienne, 5667.
- Gydid, *pp.* guided, governed, 197.
- Gyes (Gydez), *pr. s.* guides, 1642.
- Gyfes, *imp. pl.* give, 1904.
- Gyloffre, *s.* cloves, 5426.
- (Gyn), *s.* device, 812*, 1213, 2038. But in all three places it is obviously an error for *gyng*, a troop. See Ging.
- (Gynge), *s.* gang, company, 2129. See Ging.
- (Gyrddand), *pres. pt.* bursting, 3231.
- Gyse, manner, fashion, 631.
- Haare, *s.* hair, 5476.
- Habet, *s.* habit, dress, 3513.
- Habitacle, *s.* habitation, 4334.
- (Hable), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst strengthen, lit. make able, 1768.
- Hade (*error for Haue as in Dublin MS.*), have, get, obtain, 2839.
- Hafe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* have, 461; (Haue), *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* 1004; Hade, 1 *pt. s.* had, 584; 2 *pt. s.* hadst, 5327; Had (Hade), 2 *pt. s. subj.* had, 1739; Hade, *pt. s.* 592; Had, 71, 190; Hadd, 346, 3204; Had (Hadon), *pt. pl.* had, i. e. made way, 803; Hadd, had, 571; (Haddyn), 1447.
- Haile, *interj.* hail! 228, 235, 4929, 4932; (Hale), 1066.
- Haile-stanes, *pl.* hailstones, 3047.
- (Haille), *s.* health; Euill haille, ill success, 1759.
- Hailsis, *pr. s.* greets, salutes, 4929.
- Icel. *heilsa*. See Haylsid.
- Haire (Heir), *adj.* hoary, bare, 776. Icel. *hárr*, hoary, white. The reference is to the hoary appearance of old bare trees in winter. The epithet 'hoary,' better spelt *hare* [for *haire* and *heer* properly

mean 'hair'], is the stock epithet of trees and forests in alliterative poetry, so that the sense is certain. Cf. 'hore okez' in Gawain and the Grene Knight, 743. Jamieson gives examples of 'ane hare wode,' a hoary wood, from Wyntown, viii. 26, 228, and 'ane hare wode' from Douglas's Virgil; but wrongly supposes the etymology to be from A.S. *hár*, hair. It is from A.S. *hár*, hoary. See also Hare (below), and note to l. 70.

Hald, *v.* hold, keep, 1093; perform, 366; (*Held*), hold, keep, observe, 1075; **Hald**, *ger.* to hold, 5542; to keep, 1596; **Halden** (*Hald*), *v.* to hold it, 2296; **Hald**, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* hold, account, 1102; hold (it as right), recommend, 5048; consider, 4579; (*Halde*), esteem, 1862; **Haldis**, *pr. s.* holds, 57; esteems, 3722; beholds (lit. holds), 1527; (*Haldez*), 948; **Haldis** (*Haldes*), *pr. s.* holds, 917; **Haldis on** (*Heldes on*), proceeds, 820; (*Haldes*), holds, 780*; **Hald**, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* keep, 4267; (*Halden*), *pr. pl.* hold (their way), go, 1123; **Halden**, *pp.* kept (so), 5522; seized, 2808; held back, 4759; bound, 5341; beholding, bound, 1679; held, 441; **Halden** (*Haldyn*), *pp.* esteemed, 2389; (*Halden*), held as, 1913; (*Haldyn*), *pp.* considered, hence, named, 2540; esteemed, 2150.

Hald, *s.* hold, grip, 1440.

Haldit (*Heldit*), *pp.* inclined, given way, 2141. Icel. *halla*, to incline, swerve, lean over; Dan. *helde*, to tilt over.

Hale, *adj.* whole, 441, 5126; sound, 102; complete, 632; solid, 4072; safe and sound, 820; whole, unburst, 4437; sound, good, 810*. Icel. *heill*.

Hale, *v.* uplift (lit. hale, drag), 724; draw quickly, come, 2817; *pr. pl.* hale, drag, 5524; **Halis**, *pr. s.* rushes, 962; (*Hales*), hales, hauls, 854; **Halis** (*Halez*), *pr. pl.* hale, drag, 2224.

Half, *s.* side, region; **Fra half to halfe**, from realm to realm, 4060; **Halfe**, side, 731; **Halfis**, *pl.* sides, 5451.

Halfe, *adj.* half, 1368.

Halfe-dede (*Halfe-deyde*), *adj.* half-dead, 962.

Halidoms (*Halydoms*), *pl.* holy relics, 1466. Icel. *helgidómr*, Du. *heiligdom*.

Hall, hall, 490; **Halle**, 2922; (*Halle*), 854.

Hallis, *pl.* (*for Halis*), tents, 4148.

"**Hale**, a tent, pavilion;" see Halliwell.

Halowe, *ger.* to consecrate, keep as a holy day, 3463.

Halows, *pl.* holy ones, saints, 4915.

Hals (*Halse*), neck, 2654. A.S. *heals*.

Halsis (*Halsys*), *pr. s.* embraces, 2576; (*Halsys vmbe*), *pr. s.* embraces, 3250; **Halsid**, *pt. s.* embraced, 5029.

Haly, *adj.* holy, sacred, 584, 1457, 1600, 1636, 4939, 4996; (*Holy*), 1637.

Haly, *adv.* wholly, 257, 1946; (*Holy*), 1780, 2744.

Hame, *s.* home, 148, 461, 820; abode, dwelling, 4902, 5279; (*Home*), 2921; **Hames**, *pl.* homes, 4048, 4352, 4650; (*Homez*), houses, 3135.

Hame-come, *s.* home-coming, return, 2890.

Hames, *pl.* plumage, lit. coverings, 4986. A.S. *hama*.

Hampire, *pr. pl.* torment, vex (lit. hamper), 4559 (Lat. text *cruciant*); **Hampird**, *pt. pl.* hampered, harassed, 4800.

(**Hanchyd**), *pp.* eaten, gnawed; Som hanchyd of the heued, some with the head gnawed off, 774*. "Hancher, to graspe, or snatch at with the teeth;" Cotgrave.

Hand, *s.* hand, 57, 114, 198; On hand, close at hand, 4791; At hand, near, 81; **Hande**, hand, 448, 980; To hande (To hand), to close combat, 1256; **Vndire hand** (*Vnder hand*), for manual skill, 2237; **Handis**, *pl.* hands, 5568, &c.

- Hand-ball (Hand-balle), *s.* ball to play with, 1895.
- Handille, *ger.* to handle, 2480.
- Hand-quile, *s.* short space of time, 5524; Hand-quyle, 632; (Hand-while), 3260, 3290. So in P. Plowman.
- Hand-tame, *adj.* hand-tame, so tame as to come to the hand, 504.
- Hand-werke, *s.* handiwork, 4346.
- Hangid (Hanged), *pp.* hanged, 2657.
- Hant, *ger.* to assemble, come together (lit. to haunt, frequent a place), 4729; Hantis, 2 *pr. pl.* practise; þe self hantis, practise the same, endeavour after that very thing, 4667; Hant, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* practise, 4484. O.F. *hanter*, to frequent, practise.
- Happe, *s.* fortune, 4346; Hap (Happe), good fortune, 3272; Happis, *pl.* haps; Apon happis, perhaps, haply, 4937.
- Happend (Happynd), *pp.* chanced, 2364.
- Hard, *adj.* hard, stiff, 2981; severe, 512, 527.
- Hard, *adv.* hardly, severely, 3287, 728*; hardly, 839.
- Hard, *s.* difficulty, 3004.
- Hardere, *adj. comp.* harder, 3894.
- (Hardly), *adv.* boldly, 777*.
- Hardy, *adj.* hard, 84; bold, strong, 2876. In l. 84 we should rather read *hard for to rekyn*.
- Hardynes, hardness, 615, 658.
- Hare, *s.* hair, 227, 854; Haris, hairs, 320; (Horez), 1009.
- Hare, *adj.* hoary, gray-headed, 4996; hoary, hoar, bare, 70. See the note to l. 70, and remarks on Haire (above).
- Hareest, *adj. superl.* most hoary, whitest, 1062.
- Harlotry, *s.* evil-doing, wickedness, lechery, 4484, 4555.
- Harme, *s.* harm, 285, 638, 2220; Harmes, *pl.* injuries, crimes, wicked deeds, 3437.
- Harmes, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* do harm, do execution, 3879.
- (Harmezi), *for* Armez, arms (of the body), 3237, 772*.
- Harnais, *s.* harness, armour, 3791.
- Harnas (Harnes), *imper. s.* let him harness, 998; Harnest, *pp.* armed, 3785. See above.
- (Harnepanne), 1902; see Hernepan.
- Harow, *s.* harrow, 4267; (Harrow), 1063; Harows, *pl.* 5573; Harowis, 3907.
- Has, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* hast, 348, 460, 463; Hase, 2712; Hase, *pr. s.* has, 2380; Has, 81; Hase, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* have, 2201; Has, *pr. pl.* have, 10, 471. See Hafe, Haue.
- (Haslokst), *adj. superl.* 1864. Certainly a corrupt reading; see the Ashmole MS. As it stands, it is a bad spelling of *hastlokest* = *hastilokest*, superl. of *hasty*, quick, rash.
- Hast, *s.* haste, 2817; In haste, 379.
- Hastely, *adv.* hastily, soon, speedily, 3784; Hastily (Hastely), 1457.
- Hastis, *pr. pl. refl.* hasten, 1116; Hast (Hastyd), *pt. s.* 3014.
- Hat, *pt. s.* was called, or *pr. s.* is called, 4903; Hatt, *pr. pl.* are called, 2199; (Haten), *pp.* named, 836*. See Hatten.
- Hate, *adj.* hot, 4080.
- Hate, *s.* hate, hatred, 921, 1979.
- (Hated), *error for* Heded, beheaded, 2582.
- (Hatellayke), *put for* Hathellayke, i.e. nobleness, 2505. See Hathill. But it is a false reading; read *lytillaik*.
- Hately, *adv.* hotly, 2910.
- Hathill, *adj.* noble, 447, 741, Hathille (Athell), noble, good, brave, 3164; Hatill (Athelles), *adj.* 1945. The spelling *athell* is the correct one; from A.S. *æðele*, noble. See below.
- Hathill, *s.* noble one, noble person, prince, lord, 84, 285, 1102, 2120, 4518; (Athell), 734, 777; Hathill (Athyll), prince, 3272; Hathils, *pl.* nobles, warriors, 584; (Hatels), 1002; (Athellys), 2086; (Hatellys), 1920. See above. In l. 747 it is misspelt Hatill.
- Hatirly (Hetterly), *adv.* severely, 2544; Haterly, passionately, 264. See *heter* in Stratmann. See Hatter.

- Hatis (Hatez), *pr. pl.* hate, 2732.
 (Hatness), *s.* hotness, rage, 2835.
 Hatt (Hat), *s.* hat, 1714, 1895; (Hatte), 1900; Hattis (Hattes), *pl.* hats, 2981.
 Hatten, *pp.* called, named, 40, 914, 1913, 2037, 2319, 2540, 4720, 5093; (Haten), 2106, 2297. A.S. *háten*. See Hat.
 Hatter, *adj.* cruel, 702; savage, 490. See *heter* and *hatel* in Stratmann; and see Hatirly.
 Hatterly (Heterly), *adv.* fiercely, 803. See above.
 Hattir, *s.* clothing, 4118. See *hatre* in Stratmann.
 Haue, *ger.* to have, possess, 747, 919, 1669; Haue, *v.* 355, 575; Haue, *pr. s. 1 p.* 258, 585; Have, 98; Haues, 2 *pr. s.* hast, 1728, 3101; Hauys, 428; Hauys (Hase), *pr. s.* has, 1807; (Haue), 2 *pr. pl.* have, 734*; Haue, *pr. pl.* 272; Haue, *pr. s. subj.* if he have, 4537; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 470, 951; Haue, *imp. s.* 97, 731, 2240. See Hafe.
 (Haven), *s.* haven, 1160.
 Hauen-lest, *adj.* neediest, least possessed of wealth, 1864. A false superlative form of the adj. *hauen-les* = A.S. *hafenléas*, poor. Shropshire *avenless*, shiftless.
 Hauke, 1 *pr. pl.* hawk, 4271.
 Hauntis, 1 *pr. pl.* practice, 4329; enjoy, 3743; track to their home, pursue to their home, 4122; Hauntis, *pr. pl.* practise, use, show, 4021, Hauntid, *pt. s.* practised, used, 16, 4414.
 Hauten, *adj.* haughty, 4255. F. *hautain*.
 Hautes, *s.* haughtiness, 2835. O.F. *hautesse*, haughtiness; see Cotgrave.
 Hawe, *s.* haw, the value of a haw, a whit, 2097.
 Haylsid (Haylsed), *pt. s. 1 p.* worshipped, 1622. See Hailsis.
 Haythen, *adj.* heathen, 5673.
 He, *adj.* high, 70, 4863; On he, upwards, 2855.
 He, *pron.* he, 19, 41, 42, &c. (He); see Heze.
- He, he (*where the Dublin MS. wrongly has Ere, formerly*), 3291.
 He, *for ze, ye*, 4487.
 (Hed), *pt. s.* had, 812, 2976; 750*, 765*, 776*.
 Hede, *s.* head, 438, 445, 494, 2552; chief, 2647; king, 148; (Hed), 702; (Heued), 2283; On hede, *adv.* headlong, 962; To hede, with respect to its head, 1375; Hedis, *pl.* heads, 3433; (Heddez), 2981.
 Hede, *s.* heed, 3094.
 Hedid, *pp.* beheaded, 2582, 3439; (Hedit), 2086; Heded, 2377.
 Hedire, *adv.* hither, 5373; (Hyder), 2914; (Heder), 1923.
 Hedire-to (Hyder), hitherto, 2364.
 Hediretoward, *adv.* hitherto, 3517.
 Hediward (Hyderward), *adv.* hitherward, 740.
 Hedis (Hedes), *pr. s.* takes heed, observes, looks, 3226; pays attention, 678; (Hedys), heeds, observes, 2627; (Hedes), 1527; Hedis, *imp. pl.* pay heed, 3879; (Hedes), take heed, 3094.
 Hedous, *adj.* hideous, dreadful, 3926, 4862.
 Hedously, *adv.* hideously, 5566; (Hydusly), 1150.
 Heede (Heyd), *ger.* to watch, heed, 2220.
 Heelis, *pl.* heels, 5476.
 Heere, *s.* army, 4800, 5162; host, number, collection, 5126. A.S. *here*.
 Heere (*for Wode, as in the Dublin MS.*), 776. See Haire.
 Heff, *ger.* to heave, raise, exalt, 2708.
 Heggis, *pl.* hedges, sticks, 5463.
 (Hegh), *adj.* high, tall, 744*; (On hegh), on high, 1589; Heghe, high, 445.
 (Heght), *pt. s.* hight, was called, 914.
 (Heght), *s.* height; On heght, on high, 678.
 Held, *ger.* incline, bow down, 726; (Heldes), *pr. s.* inclines, bows down, 726; sinks, 933*; Heldis, *pr. pl.* bow, 983; Heldid, *pt. s.* inclined, 227; (heldit), *pt. pl.* 983.

- See note to l. 227. A.S. *heldan*, *hyldan*.
 (Heldes), *pr. s.* holds (*for beholds*), 1589; Held, *pt. s.* held, had hold, 1346; Held, *pt. pl.* held; Held in, pressed in, 3912; (Heldyn), kept, 1616; Held, 2 *pt. pl.* (Halden, 2 *pr. pl.*), kept, 2436; Held, 1 *pt. s.* *subj.* should (not) have kept, 3437; (Held on), *imp. s.* hold on, continue, advance, 810*.
 (Heldest), *adv.* most; (All the heldest), most of all, 2509; (Allþar heldest), 1855. See Heldire.
 (Heldest), eldest, 2319.
 Heldire, *adv. comp.* sooner, 2714; (Helder), sooner, rather, 1016, 1633*, 1805, 2097, 2589. See Elder. Icel. *heldr*.
 Heldyd, *pp.* inclined (?), 829*. See Held; but the reading is probably corrupt. Perhaps read *held*, i. e. held. But we should rather read—Had rasyd vp a rude hoste, and rode hym ayaynez.
 Hele, *s.* health, safety, 3512, 4573, 5386; (Heale), 741; (Heyle), 2503, 2665; (Heylh), 2552; Hele (heylle), recovery, 2576; health, 2806 (in which line *I* should be omitted, as in Dublin MS.).
 Hele, *v.* be healed, 2817.
 Hele, *ger.* to cover, 4118.
 Heles, *pl.* heels, 5458; Helis (Heles), 1758.
 Helle, hell, 5571; Hell, 562.
 Hellid, *pp.* poured, 3813. Icel. *hella*.
 Helme, helmet, 1715, 3802, 3811; Helmes, *pl.* 804, 5498.
 Helpe, *v.* help, 404; Help, *ger.* 309, 1256, 1314, 2220; Help, *pr. s.* *subj.* help, 1472; Helpid, *pt. pl.* helped, 5625; Help, *imp. s.* help, 950.
 Helpe (Help), *s.* help, 1636; Help (Helpe), 1946.
 Helpere (Helpar), *s.* helper, assistant, 2647.
 Hemmes, *pl.* (*sing.* Hem) hems, 1538.
 Hemp, *adj.* made of hemp, 2224. (Hem-selfe), themselves, 2268.
 Hen (Henne), *s.* hen, 893. | Hend (Hand), *pl.* hands, 1440; (Hendez), 774*.
 Hend, *adj.* courteous, gentle, 669; (Hende), 2876; Hende, 5029, 5400; Hend, *adj. as sb.* gentle one, lady, 264, 291, 4757, 5162. A.S. *gehende*.
 Hende, *adv.* courteously, 212.
 Hendlaike (Hynlake), *s.* courtesy, 2715.
 Hendly, *adv.* gently, 494; excellently, 883; tamely, 780*.
 Hent, *v.* catch, 520; (Hynt), seize (for himself), get, 810; Hentis, *pr. s.* seizes, grasps, 780; (Hentez), 1402; (Hentes), 936; Hentes, 3880; Hent, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* catch, take, 4271; Hent (Hynt), *pt. s.* caught, 2544; Hent (Hyntes, *pr. s.*), seized, 1066; Hent, *pt. pl.* drew, 3838; Hent, *pp.* taken, caught, 4783; Hent, *imp. s.* take, receive, 747.
 Hepe, *s.* heap, crowd, number, people, company, 1679, 1780, 1946, 2086; Hepis, *pl.* heaps, 552; (Hepes), 1418; (Hepys), 2247; On hepis, into heaps, 1308.
 (Her), *adv.* here, 740*
 (Her-aftir), hereafter, 714.
 Heraud, *s.* herald, 1596, 4729; Heraudis (Harraldes), 883; (Harraldes), 2715.
 Herberd, *pt. pl.* harboured, sheltered, 5390.
 Herbis, *pl.* herbs, 336, 408; (Erbes), 2852; Herbys, 4379.
 Herde (Place), *s.* home, place, 3227. For Erde.
 Here, *adv.* here, 366, 830; (Her), 951, 1864.
 Here, *ger.* to hear, 67, 982, 1164; Here, *v. 1.* 212, 416; Here, 1 *pr. s.* hear, 2498; Heres, *pr. s.* 2315, 5503; Here, *pr. s. subj.* he may hear, 146; (Here), *imp. s.* hear, 740; Here, let him hear, 146; Herd, *pt. s.* heard, 51, *refl.* 669; (Harde), 2968; Herd, *pt. pl.* heard, 1616; (Harde), 1122; Herd, *pp.* heard, 1492; Herd of ȝour happ, heard (by your gods) concerning your fortune (Lat. *si exaudierint te dii tui*), 4554. See Heris.

- Here**, *s.* army, host, 5457; (*Heir*), 1256; (*Heer*), 2798; (*Heyre*), 820; (*Here*), 810*; *Heres*, *pl.* armies, hosts, 4729. A.S. *here*.
- Here** (*Heere*), chief, lord, 3160; *Heris* (*Herez*), *pl.* 1920. Icel. *herra*.
- Here man**, *better* *Here-man*, lord, master, 4938. Compounded of *here*, lord, and *man*. So Icel. *herramaðr*, lord, knight, lordly man. See above.
- Here**, *s.* hair, 4559. The Lat. text has—quæ te velut mortuum cruciant et tormentant. The Eng. seems to mean—‘pull you by the hair.’ Or read *herte*, i. e. heart.
- Hered**, *pp.* praised, adored, 1637; (*Heret*), praised, 1616. A.S. *herian*. See *Herid*.
- Her-after** (*Her-after*), *adv.* hereafter, 1111, 2921; *Here-efire*, 583.
- Here-afterward**, hereafter, 732.
- Here-fore**, *conj.* therefore, for this reason, 4565.
- Here-wedis** (*Here-wedes*), *pl.* armour, lit. battle-garments, 1010.
- Herid**, *pp.* praised, 2200. See *Hered*.
- Heris**, *pr. s.* harries, greatly harms, 4484; *Herid*, *pt. pl.* harried, ravaged, worried, 4800; *Herid*, *pp.* harried, despoiled, killed, 5457; *Heried*, vexed, 3517; defeated, 3731. A.S. *hergian*. See *Hery*.
- Heris**, *pr. s.* hears, 925, 5244; (*Herys*), 952, 2667; *Heris*, *imp. pl. 2 p.* hear, 3502. See *Here*.
- Heris** (*Herez*), *pl.* lords, 1920. See *Here*.
- Herken**, *ger.* to listen to, 6; to hear, 2304; *v.* listen, 212; *Herken*, *imp. s. 2 p.* hearken thou, 740.
- Hernepan**, *s.* cap, head-piece, 1713, 2499; (*Herne - payn*), 1895; (*Harnepanne*), 1902; *Hernepanne*, helmet, 1771. Lit. ‘brainpan.’
- Hernes**, *pl.* brains, 839, 2545. O. Icel. *hjarni*.
- (*Heron*), upon it, 832.
- Herre** (*Hyer*), *adj.* higher, superior, 2364.
- (*Hersouns*), *pr. s.* glorifies, 1600; *Hersid*, extolled, 2200; *Hersude* (*Hersud*), extolled, 2498; (*Her-sound*), 810*. Cf. Icel. *hersir*, a lord, chief.
- Hert**, heart, 2, 225; courage, 470, 658; *Hertis* (*Hertes*), *pl.* hearts, courage, 988, 1809, 2054, 2161.
- Hert**, *s.* hart, 1062, 1069; *Hertis*, *pl.* 110.
- Hertis**, *pr. s.* heartens, encourages, 5576.
- Hertly**, *adv.* heartily, 1659, 2576, 728*.
- Hery** (*Herye*), *ger.* to harry, 2509; (*Hery*), 3164. See *Heris*.
- Herys**, *pr. s.* hears, 3188. See *Here*.
- Hes**, *pron. his*, 1232; (*Hys*), 3212.
- Hesils**, *pl.* hasel-trees, 5241. Icel. *hesli*. (The line is obscure.)
- Hest**, *s.* promise, 366; *Heste* (*Hest*), command, 2141; *Hestes* (*Hestez*), *pl.* promises, 1075; *Hestis*, *pl.* (*Heste*, *s.*), commands, 2350; *Hestis* (*Heestes*), hests, commands, 3122.
- Hete**, *s.* heat, 3791; (*Het*), 1518; *Hetis*, *pl.* heat, 3803; heat, burnings, 3633.
- Hete**, *v.* promise, 1075, 2686; *1 pr. s.* 2869, 3175; *Hetes* (*Highten*), *pr. pl.* promise, 2398. A.S. *hátan*, Icel. *heita*.
- Heterly**, *adv.* vehemently, 669, 678; (*Hetterly*), keenly, greatly, 2855; (*Heterly*), *adv.* extremely, 1659; *Hetterly* (*Heterly*), *adv.* earnestly, 1075; (*Hetterly*), sharply, fiercely, 2910; *Hettirly*, 3912; extremely, 4169. See *Hetire*, *Hatirly*.
- Hethen**, *adv.* hence, 4487, 4565, 4650, 4936. Icel. *hēðan*.
- Hethenward**, hence, 734.
- Hething** (*Hethyng*), *s.* scorn, 1714; *Hethyng* (*Hethinge*), 1869. Icel. *hæðing*.
- Hetire**, *adj.* cruel, 520; *Hetter*, bold, fierce, 615. A.S. *hetol*, full of hate. See *Hatter*.
- Heued**, *s.* head, 2457, 3920, 5322; (*Heued*), 751*, 774*, 812; chief, 1433.
- (*Heued*), *for* *Heueded*, *pp.* beheaded, 2377.
- Heuen**, *s.* heaven, 56, 84.
- Heues**, *pr. s.* lifts, 1589; (*Hefys*),

- raises, 3290; Heued (Hefyd), *pp.*
raised, 2827; levied, raised, 2608;
Heues (Hefes), *imp. pl.* lift, 3094.
See Heuys.
- Heuy, *adj.* heavy, 1010, 5572;
(Hevy), stupid, dull, 2708.
- Heuyd, *s.* head, 426. See Heued.
- Heuydman (MS. Heuysdman), chief
man, 441.
- Heuyn, heaven, 42, 250, 553, 568;
(Heuen), 713; Heuyns (Heuens),
pl. heavens, 1528.
- Heuys (vp), *pr. s.* heaves, lifts,
raises up, 677; Heuyd, *pt. s.*
heaved, i.e. raised, 3014. See
Heues.
- Hewe, *v.* hew, cut, 3433; Hewis
(Hewes), *pr. s.* hews, 1224; Hewis,
pr. pl. hew, 803; Hewen, *pp.* hewn,
cut, 1127, 5598; (Hewyn), 3384;
(Heven), 3150; Hewyn, 5463;
Hewis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* hew, 5576.
- Hewe, *s.* hue, 467; Hew, 5309;
Hewes, *pl.* 1086, 3687; Hewis,
3864, 5125; Hewys, 605.
- Hewid, *pp.* hued, coloured, 3945,
4986.
- (Hey), *adj.* high, 779, 933*.
- (Heyle), *s.* prosperity, 3272. See
Hele.
- (Heyre), *s.* heir, 838*.
- Hezare, *adv.* higher, 2097.
- Heze, *adj.* high, great, 3731; (Hye),
883, 3288; (He), 3291; On heze,
aloud, 4929; To heze (To hygh),
too high, 2714.
- Heze (Hegh), *adv.* loudly, 948.
- Heze, *ger.* to enhance, further (lit.
exalt), 2806.
- Heze (Hyen), *pr. pl. refl.* hasten,
hie, 3214.
- Hid, *pt. s.* hid, 146.
- Hide, *s.* skin, 4437; Hidis, *pl.* 4118,
4207.
- Hidirto, *adv.* hitherto, 4903.
- Hidous, *adj.* hideous, 5236.
- Hie, *v.* honour, exalt, 329.
- Hied, *pt. pl.* (Hyen, *pr. pl.*), hastened, 2981.
- Hiest, highest, most, 1765.
- Hieze, *adj.* high, great, 329.
- (Hight), *pp.* named, considered,
2200.
- Hight, *s.* height. p. 282, l. 122.
- Hild, *pt. s.* concealed, 146; *pp.*
covered (only), 3450; covered,
5241; Hildid, *put for* Hild,
covered, 1010 (*where the Dublin*
MS. has hold). Icel. *hylja*.
- Hildire, *adv. comp.* rather, more,
4657. See note; and see Heldire.
- Hildis, *pr. s.* leans; Hildis him vp,
leans up, raises himself a little,
3250; Hildis (Heldes), *pt. s.* falls,
3201; Hilds, *pr. s.* pours, 3811;
Hildid (Heldit), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* bowed
down to, 1622. A.S. *hyldan*.
- Hill (Hille), hill, 1093; Hilles, *pl.*
4137; Hillis, 1211, 4862; (Hillez),
776.
- Hilla! *interj.* halloo! 1066.
- Him, *dat. and acc.* to him, him, 48,
50, &c.; for himself, 113. *Put*
for þam, them, 409.
- Him-self (Hym-self), *pron.* him,
2834; Him-selfe, himself, 500;
Him-self, 83; Him-seluen, him-
self, 46, 1120; Him-seluyn, 411.
- Hindire, 1 *pr. s.* oppose, 2497.
- Hinge, *v.* hang, be hung; Hinge-
mon, must hang, 4565; *ger.* to
hang, 5519; Hingis, *pr. s.* hangs,
27; Hingand, *pres. part.* hanging,
3260, 4877.
- Hirdis (Herdez), *pl.* herds, keepers
of the flocks, 1224.
- Hire, *pron.* her (said of a fortifica-
tion), 1308; her, 222, 236; *dat.*
for her, 305.
- Hire, *pron. poss.* her, 224, 264.
- Hire-selfe, herself, 266, 347.
- His, his, 45, 47, 49, &c.
- Hismon (Hisman), *name*, 2237.
- Hissis, *pr. s.* hisses, 4757.
- Hit, *v.* hit, attain, 445; hit, 1065;
Hittis, *pr. s.* hits, 839; *pt. s.* hit,
put, 512; (Hitte), hit, 839.
- Hit (It), *pron.* it, 1374.
- Hitterly, *adv.* vehemently, 5322.
See Heterly.
- Hize, *adj.* high, great, 61, 596, 726;
(Hye), noble, 1920; high, 812;
(Hegh), 1002, 1123; On hize, on
high, 678.
- Hize, *ger.* to exalt, 1679; Hizen,
4701.
- Hize, *v.* hasten, 5187; Hizis, *pr. s.*
2 *p.* hastenest, 4060; Hizis him

- (Hyes hym), *pr. s.* hastens, 777; Hize, *pr. pl.* 1 *p. refl.* hie, hasten, go, 4650.
- Hize, *adv.* highly, 5316; (Heyly), 2200.
- Hizely, *adv.* highly, 658.
- Hizere, *adj. comp.* higher, 810; (Hyer), 1368; (Hegher), 1375.
- Hizere (Hyer), *adv. comp.* higher, 724; Hizhare (Heyere), 5295.
- Hizt, *s. height*, 3988, 5481; (Hight), 700; Hizte, 3989; On hizt, on high, 57, 1518; Hizt (Hert, wrongly), *s. height, majesty*, 2706; Hiztes, *pl. heights, glories*, 3584.
- Hizt, *s. hope*; Withouten hizt, without hope, hopelessly, 5313. Or it may mean—without expectation, unexpectedly. A.S. *hyht*, hope, expectation.
- Hizt, 1 *pr. s.* am called, 5167; am named, 5401; Hizt (Hyght), 1 *pr. s.* am called, 2286; (Hight), 1 *pt. s.* was called, 2187; Hizt, *pt. s.* was called, 2170; Hizt, *pp. called*, 3926.
- Hizte, *pr. s.* 1 *p. promise*, 5404; Hizt, 1 *pt. s.* promised, 3436; Hizt (Hyght), *pt. s.* 2651; Hizt (Hight), *pt. pl. promised*, 2196; Hizt (Hyght), *pp.* 2565.
- Hiztild, *pt. s.* ornamented, decked (for himself), 1541 (MS. D. has *heghtlet*, set, put); Hiztild, *pp. ornamented, decked*, 4540, 5126; decked, prepared, set in order, 4969. See Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, B. 1290. Cf. *Hiztly* in Gloss. to Sir Gawayne.
- (Hocour), *s. mockery, derision*, 1714. A.S. *hócor*.
- Hodere, *s.* 5241. The line is plainly imperfect. See the note, which gives the original Latin.
- Hoge, *adj.* huge, large, 490, 568, 924, 3926, 4749, 5389; (Hoge), 744*, 821, 1062, 1541, 2827.
- Hoge, *s. hog*, 4278; Hoggs, *pl.* 5342.
- Hogely, *adv.* earnestly, attentively, 269; (Hugely), extremely, 3226.
- Hogere, *adj.* huger, greater, 3047.
- (Hoghez), *pl. houghs, hams*, 3151.
- Hokis, *pl. hooks*, 5519.
- (Hole), *s. hole*, 777*; Holes, *pl. holes, hiding-places*, 3214; Holis, *pl. holes, caves*, 4045, 4122.
- Hologhe, *adj.* hollow, 4072; Holoze, 3802; Holuze, 3486; Holewe (Holys, *for Holow*), 1900.
- Holtis, *pl. holts, woods*, 4137; (Holtez), 776.
- Home, *s. home*, 27.
- Homore, Homer, 2121.
- (Honest), *adj.* seemly, splendid, 1496.
- Honest, *pp. brought to shame, destroyed*, 3791. From the stem (*honiss-*) of the pres. part. of O.F. *honir*, to disgrace. See Hunyshist.
- Honge, *pp. hung*, 779.
- Hongir, *s. hunger*, 4608.
- Honoryd (Honourd), *pp. honoured*, 3160.
- Honour, *s. honour*, 2125, 2248; Honouris, *pl. praises*, 2121.
- Honourable, 223, 310. See Honourable.
- Honoure, *v. honour*, 1059; Honours, *pr. s.* 1073; Honourd, *pt. s.* (Honours, *pr. s.*), 2117; Honourd, *pp. honoured*, 995; Honoured (Honored), *pp. as adj.* 2008.
- Honorable (Honorable), *adj. honourable*, 1840; Honourable, 223, 310.
- Hony, *s. honey*, 3855.
- Hoo, 2 *pr. pl. desist*; Be þe hoo, by the time that ye desist, 4457; *imp. s. stop, cease*, 2835.
- Hope, 1 *pr. s. suppose*, 3548, 3749; Hopis (Hopys), 2 *pr. s. expectest*, 1765; Hopis, *pr. s. expects*, 3288; hopes, 1640; Hopid (Hopyd), *pt. s. expected*, 679; (Hoppyd), 1633*; Hopid, *pt. pl. (Hopen, pr. pl.) supposed*, 596, 935; Hope, *imp. pl. imagine*, 2648.
- Hope, *s. hope*, 1859.
- Hope, *s. dingle, sheltered spot*, 5390. See Grein's note on A.S. *hóp*.
- Hoping, *s. hope*, 4518.
- Horned, *pp. as adj. having horns*, 4267, 5566.
- Hornes, *pl. horns*, 319, 752*.

- Hors, *s.* horse, 777; (Horse), 744*; Horsis, *pl.* horses, 2156, 2399, 5632; Hors (Horsez), *pl.* 883; Horsis (Horse, *pl.*), 1250; Hors, *gen. pl.* horses', 2852. A.S. *hors*, *pl. hors*.
- (Horse-fleshez), horseflesh, 2161.
- Hoste, *s.* host, army, 2036, 829*; (Host), 1793; Hostis, *pl.* hosts, armies, army, 3008, 3704; (Hostez), 1694.
- Hote, *adj.* hot, severe, 702.
- Hottre, *s.* contempt, derision, 1714; *miswritten for* Hoccre = Hocer. A.S. *hócor*. Chaucer has *hoker*. The Dublin MS. has *hocour*.
- Houen (Heuen), *pp.* lifted, heaved, 1864. See Houyn.
- Houes, *pr. s.* dwells, remains, 4902; (Hewen), *pr. pl.* await, 2530; Houys, *pr. pl.* (Hoved, *pt. pl.*), tarry, hover, 2212; Houande (Hofand), *pres. part.* hovering, tarrying, 3260; Houe (Hofe), *imp. s.* tarry, wait, 734, 2890. Cf. E. *hover*.
- Houndreth, *num.* hundred, 5370.
- Houre, *s.* hour, 572, 3830.
- Hous, *s.* house, 4903.
- Housing, *s.* shelter, covering, 4355.
- Houyn, *pp.* raised (lit. heaved), exalted, 2708. See Houen.
- How, how, 7, 117; Howe, how, 4345; How þat, how (is it) that, 459.
- How, *interj.* ho! used as *sb.* a shout, outcry, whoop, 4732.
- Howis, *pl.* hills, 3486. Icel. *haugr*. (Howre-selfe), ourselves, 1855.
- Hoȝes, *pl.* houghs, hocks, hams, 3150. A.S. *hóh*.
- Huge, *adj.* huge, great, 821, 1062, 1150; (Hoge), 1282, 2876.
- Hugir (Hoger), *adj. comp.* huger, 1368.
- Hum (*wrongly for* Him), him, 1717.
- Hunde, hound, 321, 494.
- Hundrethe, *num. adj.* hundred, 94; (Hundreth), 1043; Hundreth, 66, 1316, 1426, 1562; Hundret, 5127.
- Hunger, *s.* hunger, 1168.
- Hungry, Hungary, 5673.
- Hunyschist, *error for* Hunyschit (Honyshyd), *pt. s.* shamed, dis-
- graced, hence, killed, 3004. O.F. *honnir, honir*. See Honest.
- (Hup), up, 3049.
- Hurkils, *pr. s.* crouches down, nestles, 504. See Glossary to Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Hurle (*in Ashmole MS. wrongly for* perle, which is in Dublin MS.), sound, rush, noise (of the sea), 1154. See Hurling.
- Hurled (Hurlett), *pt. pl.* hurled, 2224.
- Hurling, *s.* roaring, 4794. F. *hurler*, to howl, yell; Cotgrave.
- Hurte, *s.* hurt, 285.
- Hurtis (Hurtez), *pr. s.* hurts, 1224.
- Hurtles, *adj.* unhurt, safe, un-wounded (lit. hurt-less), 102.
- Hus (*for Us*), *dat.* for us, 3518.
- Hydis, *pr. s.* hides, 504; Hydis (Hyden), *pr. pl.* 3214; Hyddyn, *pt. pl.* hid, 3105.
- (Hye), *ger.* to hasten, 2806; (Hyes), *pr. s.* hies, 962; (Hyed), *pt. pl.* hastened, 1205; Hy, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* hie thee, 734.
- (Hye), *adj.* high, 700, 1491, 1636; illustrious, 841*.
- (Hyest), highest, 726.
- Hym, *pron.* him, 682, 725*.
- Hym-selfe, himself, 1058.
- Hynd (Hend), *adj.* courteous, 2744; (Hynde), obedient, 820. See Hend.
- Hyndelaike, *s.* courtesy, 615; (Hyndelaike), 2718. See Hendlaike.
- Hyndely (Hendly), *adv.* courteously, 3250; Hyndly, 2920.
- Hyne, *adv.* hence, 4456; (Hyne), 799*. Du. *heen*.
- Hyne (Hynes), *pl.* men, servants, 2220. E. *hind*.
- (Hyneward), hence, 734. See Hyne.
- (Hynget), *pp.* hung, 779.
- (Hynten), *pr. pl.* seize, 780. See Hent.
- Hyre, *pers. pron.* her, 412.
- Hyrnes, *pl.* corners, lurking-places, 3214. A.S. *hyrne*.
- (Hys), his, 679, 680, 695, 696.
- Hyue, *s.* hive, 3855.
- I, *pron.* I, 15, 21, 24, 76, &c.
- Iacobs, Jacob's, 4823.

- Iape, *s.* jest, *hence* pleasant offering, 4526; Iapis, *pl.* tricks, arts, 43, 339; pranks, 4411.
- Iapid, *pt. s.* seduced, 4415.
- Iaspre, jasper, 4444.
- Iaudas, *name*, 1488; (Iaudes), 1652; Iaudis (Iawdez), 1171; Iaudes, 1469.
- Iayll, *s.* jail, 4321.
- (Iche), each, 1647.
- Leants, *pl.* giants, 4722.
- Iemmes, *pl.* gems; *but clearly mis-written for gummes*, i.e. resinous gums, 4974. See the note.
- Lentill-man (Gentilman), gentleman, 2249, 2400.
- Lentilly, *adv.* excellently (Lat. *mirifico opere*), 3340.
- Ierusalem, 1171, 1454, 1470, 1488, 1652.
- Lesserand, *s.* coat of mail, 4961; Lesserantes (Lesserauntez), *pl.* coats of mail, 2450. See *Iaseran* in Cotgrave.
- Iettand, *pres. pt.* making a great show, 4444.
- Iettis, *pl.* proud gestures, 4676.
- Iettoure, *s.* bragger, 4415; Iettir, flaunter, 4504.
- Iewis (Iewes), *pl.* Jews, 1191, 1587, 1601, 1620, 1652; Iewes, 1171.
- (Iewres), *an error for Iewise*, judgment, doom, 1191. O.F. *juise*. *The right reading is—I shall seche Iewise on the Iewes enioyne or I dye.*
- Iewry, Judæa, 1546.
- If, *conj. if*; But if, unless, 13; If, though, 231, 258.
- Ile (Yle), *s.* isle, 2106, 2116; district, 1057; Ile (Ylez, *pl.*), district, 1039; Illee, 3736, 5503; Iles (*Yles*), *pl.* islands, 3536, 3683; Iles (*Yles*), *pl.* regions, provinces, 2800. See *Yles*.
- Ilk, *adj.* each, 1334, 3603; (Ilke), 731, 777; (Iche), 1379; same, 350, 418; Ilke, same, 861, 2927.
- Ilka, each, every, 521, 999; (Ilke), 1080; (Iche), 3412; Ilka (Ilke), each man, 1258; Ilke a, every, 432. *For ilk a.*
- Ilkane, each one, every one, 1593, 5430; (Ilk one), 2765; (Ichone), 2548, 3154; (Ilkon), 2115; Ilkan, 3635.
- Ill, *adv.* ill, unpropitiously, 2308.
- Ille, *s.* ill, 4216; (Ille), 1699; (Illys), *pl.* evils, 3267*.
- Imagis, *pl.* images, idols, 4068, 4459. See *Ymage*.
- Impid, *pp.* set; Impid in, set with, marked with, 5649.
- Impis, *pl.* shoots, 4819. See the note.
- In, *prep.* in, 23, 24, &c.; (Into), in, 1852.
- In with = in-with, *prep.* within, 3900.
- In-bland with, *prep.* together with, in medley with, 2786. See *Ebland*.
- Inchantement, enchantment, 337.
- Incheson, *s.* occasion, cause, reason, 343.
- Inclosid (Enclosyt), *pp.* enclosed, 1837.
- Inclynes, *pr. s.* inclines, bows, 5207.
- In-dities, *pr. s.* indites, 4041.
- Indityngs (Dityng), *pl.* inditings, 1801.
- (In-fere), *adv.* together, 3366; In-fere, 1259, 1276, 3602, 3933, 4273, 5434.
- In-feree, *for* In-fere, *adv.* together, 5597. See above.
- Infirmitie, *s.* infirmity, sickness, 5581; Infirnits (*for* Infirmites), *pl.* infirmities, 4279.
- Infourmed, *pp.* informed, 3341; (Informed), 1915; Infourmede (Enformed), 1531.
- Ingland, England, 5663.
- Inbabet, *pr. pl.* inhabit, dwell, 4020.
- Inhabetting, *s.* habitation, dwelling, 3736.
- In-hanses (Enhaunses), *pr. s.* enhances, i.e. advances, promotes, 3290.
- Inioynes, *pr. s.* commands, orders, instructs, 3040; (Inioneyd), *pp.* enjoined, 2400.
- In-myddis, *prep.* in the midst of, amid, 1586.
- Innes, *pl.* as sing. inn, dwelling, residence, 2920.
- Inowe (Enowe), *adj. pl.* enough, 2291. See *Enoze*.

- In-parkis, *pr. s.* encloses, 5499 ; Inparkid, *pp.* 4702.
- Inpossible, *adj.* impossible, 2707.
- (Insew), *v.* sew in, 1925.
- In-sondire (In-sonder), asunder, 798.
- Instrumentis (Instrumentes), *pl.* instruments, 1564 ; Instrumentis, 145.
- In-till, *prep.* into, 4764.
- Into, *prep.* into, 151, 153 ; to, 724 ; in, 797* ; (Vnto), unto, 1503.
- Ioglour, *s.* juggler, 4526 ; Iogloure, 410.
- Iogis, *pl.* judges, 1546.
- Iogis, *pr. s.* jogs, i. e. stirs up, 1507.
- Iolite, *s.* agreeableness, delight, 3537 ; pleasant season, 4202 ; honour, revels in honour of, 4458 ; Iolyte, happiness, 3108 ; Iolite (Iolyte), mirth, 1469.
- Ioly, *adj.* beautiful, 4823, 5261.
- Iolyile, *adv.* jollily, joyously, 705.
- Iopone, *s.* short coat or doublet worn under the armour, 4961 ; Iopons, *pl.* 3042, 4722 ; (Iompsons), 2450. “*Iupon*, a short cassock ;” Cotgrave. Dimin. of O.F. *gipe*, later *juppe*, a frock, &c.
- Iosaphat (Iosaphatt), the vale of Jehoshaphat, 1197, 1284.
- Journais (Jornays), *pr. s.* journeys, travels, 2249.
- Journay (Jornay), journey, 1197.
- Ious, *s.* juice, 339. See Iuse.
- Iowell, jewel, 2400.
- Iowke, *pr. pl.* sleep, lie torpid, 4202. A term applied to hawks. “*Se jucher*, to roost, or perch ;” Cotgrave. See *Iouken* in Gloss. to P. Plowman.
- Ioy, *s.* joy, 486, 704, 1469 ; Ioye (Ioy), 1914 ; jest, 2188 ; O Ioy, of joy, i. e. joyful to behold, excellent, 3042.
- Ioyen, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* (*for Ioyn*), (ye) join, build together, 4458.
- Ioyes, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4378 ; rejoices, 1659 ; (Ioys), 2128 ; Ioys, 456 ; Ioy, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* delight in, possess, enjoy, 4035 ; Ioyed, *pp.* rejoiced, gladdened, full of joy, 242, 3455, 4947, 5426 ; Ioyd (Ioyned, *error for Ioyed*), 2235. (Ioyfully), joyfully, 705.
- Ioyles, *adj.* joyless, 1284, 2249.
- Ioyly, *adj.* joyful, joygiving, delightful, 3340. (But prob. an error for *Ioly* = jolly, good.)
- Ioynes (Iniones), *pr. s.* enjoins, 1197 ; Ioynes him, *pr. s.* marches, approaches, 1284, 1454 ; loyned, *pp.* constructed, 5261 ; framed, 4504 ; constructed, joined together (Lat. *constructi*), 3340 ; composed, put together, 3464 ; (Ioned), joined, 2450.
- Ioyntly (Iontly), *adv.* together, 1470.
- Ioynttours, *pl.* joints, limbs, 4722.
- Ire, *s.* anger, rage, 733, 737, 805, 1504, 2185, 2424 ; Iree, 4504. In l. 1504 *the Dublin MS. has ayre*.
- Ireland, 5663.
- Iren, *s.* iron, 3628, 3826, 4085, 5516, 5519 ; Irym (Irne), 3376.
- Is, *pr. s.* is, 4, 67, &c. ; Is, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) are, 4312 ; *pr. pl.* are, 178, 5361 ; (Er), 2478.
- (Is), *for His*, his, 697, 903, 2052.
- Isodry, Isidore, 3683.
- It, *pron. it*, 13, 36, 56, &c. ; It-selfe, 277.
- Itaile, Italy, 5663 ; (Ytalle), 2528 ; Itale, 5110 ; Italee (Ytale), 1039.
- Ithis, *pl.* waves, 63. A.S. *ýð*. See Ythes.
- Iubiter, Jupiter, 705, 3108. See Jupiter.
- Iugemen (Iuggez), *pl.* judges, 3402.
- Iugid (Iugged), *pp.* judged, 2664.
- Iulus, *s.* July, 3537 ; July, 4202 ; Iuli, 3789.
- Iuno, Juno, 4504.
- Iupiter, Jupiter, 4411, 4415.
- Iurdan, Jordan, 4823.
- Iuse, *s.* juice, 410. See Ious.
- Iustice, *s.* justice, judge, 4321 ; Iustis (Iustice), *pl.* justices, 1601, 3402 ; (Iustes), 1546.
- Iusting, *s.* jousting, 3042.
- Iusule, *s.* lechery (?), 4411. The alliteration shows it is not *Insule*, as in Stevenson's edition. It is perhaps for F. *jeu seul* ; but it is difficult to guess at the true etymology.
- Iuwels, *pl.* jewels, 4035, 4444.
- I-wis, *adv.* certainly, truly, clearly,

- verily, 11, 203, 3262, 3580, 4933 ; (Iwys), 2203 ; (I-wisse), 2018 ; I-wisse, 3119, 3436 ; I-wys, 348.
- Kaire me (Caire me), *v.* turn myself, go, 828 ; Kaires, *pr. s.* returns, 5419 ; (Cairez), turns, 1056 ; Kairis, *pl.* go, 153. See Caire.
- Kall (Calle), *s.* call, 983.
- Kan, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* can, 100, 577. See Can.
- (Karyn), *pr. pl. refl.* go, 2792 ; (Karys), *imp. pl.* go, 2770. See Kaire.
- (Kast), *s.* contrivance, 2484 ; Kastis (Castyng), *pl.* casts, throwings, 1395. See Cast.
- Kast, *v.* contrive, 415 ; Kast out, cast aside, 184 ; Kastis (Castes), *pr. s.* overthrows, 2281 ; (Kyst, *pt. s.*), intends, 1688 ; Kast, *pr. pl.* throw, hurl, 1395 ; Kast vnder, *pp.* overthrown, 138 ; Kast (Castyn), cast, 2247 ; Kast (Kest), thrown down, 1421. See Cast.
- Kastand (= Kastanid), *pp. as adj.* made like the chestnut, i. e. of a chestnut colour (Castans in the Dublin MS.), 1537. See Castans.
- Kay, *s.* key, 5289. See Keys.
- (Kayres), *pr. s.* returns, 3005 ; *refl.* goes, 2637 ; Kayres hym, goes, 2680. See Kaire.
- Kazt (Kacht, *in MS.* Katht), *pt. s.* seized, caught hold of, 2070. See Caſt.
- (Keches), *pr. s.* takes (leave), 1693.
- (Ked) excellent, 1229. See Kid.
- Kellis, *pl.* cauls, hair-nets, 4600. "Kelle, *reticulum*;" Prompt. Parv.
- Kell-wyse ; Opon kellwyse, in the manner of a caul, 3300. See above.
- Kempe, *s.* soldier, hero, warrior, 5499 ; (Kemp), 2216. A.S. *cempa*.
- Ken, (1) *v.* inform, 2353 ; teach, 4706 ; (Kenne), show, teach, 1192 ; Ken, *ger.* teach, 1982, 3278 ; make known, 2023 ; Ken, *pr. pl.* disclose, manifest, 4554 ; Kend, *pt. s.* told, instructed, 5543 ; showed, 5407 ; showed, gave, 5383 ; Kend, *pp.* informed, taught, 650. See below.
- Ken (2), *ger.* to know, 690 ; *v.* know how, 4078 ; Ken, 1 *pr. s.* know, 577, 843*, 2718 ; perceive, 278 ; Kennes, *pr. s.* knows, 3991 ; Ken, 1 *pr. pl.* know, 4678 ; Kend, 1 *pt. s.* recognised, 3281 ; *pt. s.* knew, 696, 5548 ; discerned, 2849 ; Kend, *pt. pl.* knew, 2933 ; 2 *pt. s.* knewest, 4939 ; Kend, *pp.* known, discerned, 3148.
- Kendly, *adv.* kindly, greatly, 2394. Better read *kenly*, as in the Dublin MS.
- Kene, *adj.* keen, 427, 3971 ; shrill, 1604, 1815, 2345 ; sharp, 1804, 3818 ; eager, 1892 ; brave, bold, 90, 176, 748 ; *adv.* quickly, 746.
- Kenely, *adv.* sharply, 639 ; carefully, 1361 ; strictly, 821* ; quickly, 1353 ; sorely, 4151 ; eagerly, 412 ; loudly, 2154 ; bravely, boldly, 58, 384, 1064 ; (Kenly), *adv.* keenly, greatly, 2394.
- Kenere, *adj. comp.* keener, 544 ; Kenir, bolder, 3583.
- (Kengez), *gen. s.* king's, 1040.
- Kepare, *s.* keeper governor, 5177.
- Kepe, *v.* keep, protect, 285, 405 ; be kept (*after latt*), 581 ; Kepe, *ger.* to keep, i. e. for men to keep, 5172 ; to keep, 1292 ; to observe, 1192 ; to guard, 72, 1480 ; to heed, care for, 3096 ; to look, pay heed, 821* ; Kepe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* care for, heed, 3557 ; care, 2417 ; Kepis, *pr. s.* preserves, 3356 ; Kepe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* heed, observe, 4386 ; Kepis (Kepys), 2 *p.* care, heed, 1455 ; (Kepe), *pr. pl.* defend, 1395 ; Kepid, *pt. s.* governed, kept, held, ruled, 5088 ; *pt. pl.* kept, 594 ; Kepid (Kepyd), *pp.* kept, 3413 ; Kepe, *imp. s.* keep thou, 97 ; Kepis ȝou, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* take heed to yourself, 2564.
- Kerue[s], *pr. s.* cuts, 1056 ; Keru-and, *pres. pt.* cutting, 63, 3024 ; biting, bitter, 3818. A.S. *ceor-fan*.
- Kest, *v.* cast up, reckon, 673 ; *pt. s.* cast, 2052, 3147 ; imagined, 5233 ;

- cast, contrived, took up with, 921 ; *refl.* cast himself, flung himself, 794 ; Kest vp, *pt. s.* cast up, lifted up, 484 ; *pt. pl.* cast, 1604, 2154 ; devised, 3190 ; Kest in fewire, laid their lances in rest, 2621.
- Keys (Kees), *pl.* keys, 2147. See Kay.
- Kid, *pp.* renowned, famous, 514, 4091, 4205 ; (Kyd), 959, 2151, 2207, 2761, 3114 ; proved, 1824 ; Kidd, renowned, illustrious, 3974, 5418. Lit. ‘made known.’ See below ; and see Ked, Kyd.
- Kid, *pt. s.* showed ; (Kyd), 1 *pt. s.* showed, 2743 ; Kide him, made himself known, 213. A.S. *cýðan*.
- Kid, *s.* kid, 4524 ; Kidis, *gen. pl.* of kids, 4476.
- Kiddest, *adj. superl.* most famous, most renowned, 33, 1934, 5103 ; (Kyddest), 2367 ; Kiddist, 3709 ; Kidest (Kyddest), 1885.
- Killid (Kyllyd), *pp.* killed, 2377.
- Kind, *s.* nature, 4264, 4386 ; (Kend), character, 3386.
- Kindiles, *pl.* young ones, broods, 4199. See Kyndlyn in Prompt. Parv. ; and see Kyndild.
- Kindille (Kyndyll), *v.* kindle, be set on fire, 2724 ; Kindill (Kyndle), *pr. s. subj.* be kindled, 1979 ; Kindils, *pr. s.* kindles, 3859 ; is kindled, 149 ; Kindlis (Kyndeles), *pr. pl.* are kindled, 1730.
- Kindling (Kyndylling), *s.* kindling, ardour, 3292.
- Kindly (Kendly), *adv.* by nature, naturally, 3281.
- King, *s.* king, 50, 184, 456 ; Kinge (Kyngez), *gen. pl.* kings', 3414.
- Kingis, *error for* Kinnes ; Of many kyngis werkes, of works of many a kind, 4530.
- Kinlid, *error for* Knilid (Dublin MS. has knellyd), *pt. pl.* clanged, resounded, 775. “*Knyllinge of a belle, tintillacio;*” Prompt. Parv.
- Kirke, church, 1549 ; temple, 4542.
- Kirnels (Kernels), *pl.* battlements, 1421. O.F. *crenel*.
- Kirnels, *pl.* kernels, 2070.
- Kirtill, *s.* kirtle, 4956 ; Kirtils, *pl.* 4340.
- Kisses, *pr. s.* kisses, 384 ; Kist (Kyssitt), *pt. s.* 878.
- Kist, *s.* coffin, 3148 ; chest, coffer, 1043 ; Kistis, *pl.* coverings ; used in the sing. sense, cover, covering, 4357 ; (Kystez), 1043.
- Kithe, *s.* country, 184, 3962 ; (Kyth), 1871 ; Kith, 144, 2011, 3562 ; (Kyth), 2769 ; Kithis, *pl.* countries, 4697 ; Kithes (Kythez), 889 ; Kitthis (Kythez), 1204 ; (Kithes), 2011. A.S. *cýðe*, native land. See Cithe.
- Kithe, *v.* make known, proclaim, 3469 ; Kith, tell, 5168 ; Kithis, *pr. s.* tells, 5011. A.S. *cýðan*.
- Kithid, *s.* kindred, 3507. (Prob. an error for kithe.) See Kithe.
- Kith-ward ; In-to oure kith-ward, towards our country, into our country, 4032.
- Knafe (Knaffe), knave, male, 835 ; Knafe, man-child, 3744 ; (Knaffe), knave, wretch, 3078 ; Knaue, boy, 592 ; (Knaffe), boy, 2501.
- Knaw, *v.* know, 100 ; (carnally), 308 ; *ger.* 1455 ; Knawe, 679 ; Knaw, 1 *pr. s.* 1878 ; Knawe, 183 ; Knawis, *pr. s. 2 p.* knowest, 875, 2523 ; (Knawys), 869 ; Knawes, 1962 ; Knawis (Knawys), *pr. s.* knows, 848 ; Knaw, 2 *pr. pl.* 627 ; (Knawe), 2205 ; Knaw, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayest know, 2014 ; Knawen, *pp.* known, 204 ; Knawyn, 5234 ; renowned, 33 ; (Knawyn), known, 719. See Knew.
- Knawlage, *s.* knowledge, 3727.
- Knawlage, *pr. s. 1 p.* acknowledge, 3093.
- Kneis (Kneys), *pl.* knees, 983 ; (Knees), 1603 ; Kneys, 78 ; Knes, 1822 ; Knese, 4014 ; (Knes), 815.
- Knelis, *pr. s.* kneels, 4183 ; Knele, *pr. pl.* 2941 ; Kneland, *pres. part.* kneeling, 1599.
- Knew, *pt. s.* knew, 28, 63 ; Knewe, 211. See Knaw.
- Knew, *pt. s.* made known, 2872. A wrong sense ; due to miswriting he knew for be-knew, as in the Dublin MS.
- Knilid ; see Kinlid.
- Kniȝt (Knyȝt), *s.* knight, 1617, 1229 ;

- Kniȝtis (Knyghez), *pl.* 981, 1002, &c. See Knyȝt.
- Kniȝthede (Knyghthode), knighthood, 1824; (Knyghthod), 2205. See Knyȝt-hede.
- Kniȝtly (Knyghtly), *adj.* knight-like, bold, 2448.
- Knok, *v.* knock, 639; Knockis (Knokez), *pr. s.* 1599.
- Knopis, *pl.* knobs, buttons, 4917.
- Knottis, *pl.* knots, 4917.
- Know (Knaw), *v.* to know, 1104. See Knaw.
- Knyfes, *pl.* knives, daggers, 3024, 5364.
- Knytt, *pr. pl.* knit, 3300.
- Knyȝt, *s.* knight, 100; (Knyght), 729*, 835*; Knyȝtis, *pl.* knights, men, 117, &c. See Knyȝt.
- Knyȝt-hede, knighthood, 659; Knyȝthode, 9. See Kniȝthede.
- Knyȝtly, *adv.* knightly, 484.
- Kokell, *adj.* shaky, unsteadfast, 2588. Cf. *coggle*, to be shaky, Halliwell; *cocklety*, unsteady; *id.* Jamieson cites *cockle-headed* from Sir W. Scott's Rob Roy: "he's crack-brained and *cockle-headed* about his nipperty-tipperty poetry nonsense." See Rob Roy, ch. xxi.
- Koynitis, *pl.* adornments, quaint ornaments, 4917. See Cointe.
- Kutt, *pp.* cut, 1421.
- Kyd, *pp.* shown, 719; renowned, famous, 52, 742*, 767*, 1987. See Kid.
- Kyn, *s.* kin, kindred, 3316.
- Kynd, *s.* kind, nature, 28, 3380, 3911, 5432; race, 3268; (Kend), nature, race, lineage, 2800; (Kynde), nature, 3147; Kynde, nature, 578, 2894; race, 696; manner, 650; Kyndis, *pl.* natures, 5428.
- Kynd, *for* Kyndled, *pp.* kindled, 2247. The Dublin MS. has kyndlett.
- Kyndild, *pt. s.* came forth, was born, 669. See Kindiles. "Kynled, or kyndelyd, in forthe-bryngynge of yonge beestys, *Fetatus*;" Prompt. Parv.
- Kyndill, *ger.* to kindle, 3139; Kindils, *pr. s.* kindles, excites, 166; (Kyndels), *pr. s.* takes fire, is kindled, 2871; Kyndild (Kyndlett), *pp.* kindled, 2231; (Kyndlett), 2247.
- Kyndliske, *s.* kindness, 2718.
- Kyndly, *adv.* heartily, 4946.
- Kyndmen, *pl.* well-disposed men, hence, bold men, 2459. Dublin MS. has *kene men*.
- Kyndnes, *s.* natural inclination, 4700; kindness, 1982.
- Kyng, *s.* king, 39, 73, 78, 97, &c.; Kynge, 193, 202, 215; Kyng, gen. king's, 618, 627; Kyngis, gen. king's, 5181; (Kyngez), 823; Kyngis, *pl.* kings, 388; (Kengez), 885.
- Kyngdome, *s.* kingdom, 138. (Kynne); Some kynne gamez, games of some kind, 2259.
- Kyssis, *pr. s.* kisses, 456, 495, 3250; Kys, *imp. s.* kiss, 5252.
- Kythe (Kyth), *v.* manifest, show, 2433; show, 690; Kythis, *pr. s.* makes known, declares, 5367; Kyth (Kythen), *pr. pl.* show, manifest, 1021.
- Kythe, *s.* country, 219; (Kyth), 827*, 843*; Kythe (Kyth), region, 1049; Kythis, *pl.* countries, lands, 136, 4376; (Kythes), 1777, 1990; (Kythez), 2817.
- Labourde, *pt. pl.* laboured, toiled, 4814.
- Lacedoyne, Lacedæmonia, 2440; Lacedone (Lacidon), 2471; (Lacydon), 2443.
- Lachen, *v.* take, 3861; Lache, *v.* grasp at, 4347; (Lache), seize hold of, 1439; Lache, *ger.* to take, 2149; Laches, *pr. s.* takes, 5283; wins, 1055; (Lacchys), 2976; (Laught), *pt. s.* seized, 1055; Laches, *imp. pl.* catch ye, 1923; Laches (Lachys), *imp. pl.* catch, gain, 2604.
- (Lachyne), *s.* taking, capture, 1835.
- Lackis, *pr. s.* fails, is deficient, 4811.
- (Lad), *pt. s.* led, 793*.
- Laddis (Laddez), *pl.* lads, low fellows, 1734; (Laddes), camp-followers, 2591, 772*.

- Ladisman, *s.* leader, guide, 4967 ; (Lodesman), 2341. From A.S. *lād*, a leading.
- Lady, *s.* lady, 223, 302, 370, 517 ; Lade, 5351 ; Ladi, *gen.* lady's, 379 ; Ladys, *pl.* ladies, 156 ; Ladis, 213, 595, 3739 ; (Lades), 1602, 3116 ; Ladis (Ladys), *gen. s.* lady's, 2415.
- Ladyschip, *s.* ladyship, 3715.
- Laftyn, *pt. pl.* left, 886 ; Laft, *pp.* left, 824 ; (Left), 1331.
- Laghe, *adj.* low, short of stature, 3985.
- Laghtnes, *s.* lowness (?), humility (?), 3293. Probably corrupt ; the line gives no sense ; see the Ashmole MS. *Laucht* = low, occurs in Barbour, xii. 19 (MS. E.).
- Laghtyn ; see Laȝt.
- Laide, *pt. s.* laid, 494 ; (Lade), 893 ; Laide, *pp.* 382.
- Laike, *s.* game, sport, jest, play, 644, 4367, 5358 ; sin, vice, lit. game, 4685 ; Laikis (Lakez), *pl.* games, 1761. Icel. *leikr*. See Layke.
- Laike, *v.* sport, 5480 ; (Layke), *ger.* to amuse, disport (thyself with), 1770.
- Laingire (Langer), *adv. comp.* longer, 2195.
- Laire, *s.* earth, clay, soil, loam, 4445, 5088. Icel. *leir*. See Halliwell, and see note to l. 5088.
- Laite, *v.* (Lates, *imp. pl.*), seek, find out, 2341 ; *ger.* to seek, 152. Icel. *leita*. See Layte.
- Laith, *adj.* hateful, harmful, 5495 ; ugly, 4748 ; noxious, 4793 ; hideous, 3866.
- Lake, fault, defect, blame, 1816.
- Lamprays, *pl.* lampreys, 5085, 5473.
- Lance (Launce), *s.* lance, 1223 ; Lances (Launcez), *pl.* 1399 ; (Lancez), 788.
- Land, *s.* land, country, people, 109, 118, 168 ; Lande (Land), 757, 1760 ; Landis, *pl.* 10, 73, 210, 217 ; (Landez), 900.
- Landace, Laodicea, 2762.
- Lang (Lange), *adv.* long, 1145 ; Lange, 299, 461, 645.
- Lang, *v.* belong, 1682 ; Langis, *pr. s.* longs, 385 ; Lange, *pr. s. subj.* may remain, remains, 3715 ; If þe langis, if it belongs to thee, if thou dost long, 5358 ; Lange, *imp. s.* long, 5405. (In l. 3715 the reading *lenge* would be better, as that is the spelling usual with that sense ; see *langen* and *lengen* in Stratmann).
- Langage, language, 240.
- Lang on, *prep.* along of, dependent on, 4606.
- Lange, *adj.* long, 602 ; (Lang), 757, 920, 1325 ; (Long), 1399.
- Lange, *adv.* ; see Lang.
- Langing, *s.* longing, 6.
- Langir, *adv.* longer, 3311, 3560 ; (Langer), 1411 ; Langer, 801 ; Langire (Langer), 734 ; (Langre), *adv.* longer, 811* ; Na langire (No lenger), no longer, 1344.
- Langour, *s.* languor, pining sickness, 3810 ; (Langor), 2807 ; ill fortune, 3289 ; Langor, pining, 7.
- Langwysches, *pl.* languishings, attacks of weakness, 2810.
- Lante, *pp.* lent, 4348.
- Lanterns, *pl.* lanterns, 5398.
- Lape, *s.* lap, 507.
- Lappid, *pt. s.* folded, 4568.
- Lare, *s.* lore, doctrine, teaching, learning, 36, 287, 633, 644, 1674, 4228 ; language, 5652 ; story, 523. See Lore.
- Large, *adj.* large, 602.
- Largely (Largly), *adv.* bounteously, 1351.
- Largenes, largeness, extent, 68 ; grace, 3404.
- Laschis (Lashes), *pr. s.* lashes, draws swiftly, 1325 ; darts, 553 ; Lasch (Lashe), *pr. pl.* strike, 1392 ; Laschid, *pt. pl.* lashed, drew, 801. See *lash* in Jamieson.
- Lasse, *s.* girl, 3746.
- Last, *adj.* last, 592 ; latest, i. e. very recent, 2785. At þe last, at last, 1007.
- Last, *error for Lest (as in the Dublin MS.)*, least, 2818.
- Lastis, *pr. s.* lasts, lives, 989 ; (Lastes), 1678 ; (Lastez), 1220 ; Lastis (Lastes), *pr. s.* lasts (*where I should be omitted, as it is in the*

- Dublin MS.), 2806 ; Lastid, *pt. s.* lasted, 3643 ; (Lastyd), 2047.
- (Lat), *s. bar* (lit. lath), 770* ; (Lates), *pl.* 756*. A.S. *lætta*.
- Lat, *v. let*, permit, allow, 355 ; (Latte), 1674 ; (Latt), *ger. to let*, 1677 ; Lattis, *pr. s. lets*, 3351 ; Latis (Lettes), 2665 ; Lat lightly (Letes lyghtly), consider lightly of it, think little of it, 2557 ; Latt, 2 *pr. pl. act*, go on, 4470 ; Lattis, *pr. pl. let*, i.e. suppose (themselves to be), 11 ; Lat. *imp. s. 2 p. let*, permit, 588, 2711 ; Lat thou (Lett þou), let thou, 724 ; Lat (Latt), let, 2888 ; Latt, let, 581 ; (Lat), 865, 1014 ; Lat, 102, 355 ; Lat ane (Lett be), let (it) alone, let (it) be, 2688 ; God lat, God grant, 364 ; Lat, let him, 997 ; Latis, *imp. pl. let*, 4413 ; Lattes (Lettes), *imp. pl. let*, bid, 2579.
- Late, *adj. late*, 1736, 5051 ; On late, lately, 3549, 4394 ; Opon late (On late), lately, 2381.
- Late, *adv. lately*, 2705, 3434, 4221.
- Late, *s. lightning*, 553. See *laite* in Gloss. to the Troy-Book. Icel. *leiptr*.
- Late, *s. aspect, manner*, 491 ; voice, song, 4384 ; Latis, *pl. gestures, port*, 152, 4743, 5184 ; outward habits, 4664 ; behaviour (of the onlookers), 3998. Icel. *læti*.
- Latens, Latin, lit. of the Latins, 5652.
- Lathely, *adj. loathly, hideous*, 491. See *Laythely*.
- Lathely (Lothly), *adv. loathingly*, 2931.
- Lathire, *adj. comp. loather, more loath*, 1258.
- Lathis, *imp. pl. loathe, abhor*, 5115. (Lathys), *pr. s. invites*, 1828. A.S. *laðian*.
- Latine, *adj. Latin*, 4709, 5073.
- Latoun, *s. latten*, a mixed metal, 4464.
- Lattire, *adj. comp. latter*, 3891. See *Neuer*.
- Laue, *adj. drooping*, 4748. Cf. Icel. *lafa*, to droop, dangle as a flap. " *Lave-eared, long-eared* ;" Halliwell.
- (Laughlyn), *pt. pl. drew*, 801. See *Lache, Laȝt*.
- Launce, *s. lance*, 1325. See *Lance*.
- Launde, *s. plain, open space, lawn*, 4818.
- Law, *adv. low*, 2289 ; (Lawe), 2362 ; Lawe, lowly, humbly, 196, 495, 1012, 1620.
- Lawe, *adj. low*, 1868 ; On lawe, low down, below, 199, 728 ; (In law), 3261, 3553. See *Low*.
- Lawe, *s. law*, 1546, 1582, 1682, 3402 ; (Law), 1568 ; Lawis (Lawez), *pl. laws*, 2996.
- Lawe, *s. mountain, hill*, 4812, 4887, 5485, 5514 ; (Low), 1090.
- Lawene, *pp. brought low, humiliated*, 3293.
- (Lawer), *adv. comp. lower*, 2714 ; Lawere, 5406.
- Lawes, *pr. s. lows, bellows*, 4744.
- Lawest, *adj. superl. lowest, worst*, 2092.
- Lawid, *pt. s. glowed*, 226. Icel. *loga*.
- Lawly, *adv. lowly, humbly*, 3172.
- Lawnes (Lownys), *s. lowness, littleness*, 2706.
- Lay, *s. faith, religious belief*, 3425.
- Lay, *pt. s. lay*, 3230. See also *Lies*.
- Layd, *pt. s. laid, stretched*, 778* ; *pp. laid*, 507.
- Layne, *s. play*, 385. See *Laike*.
- Lays, *pl. lays*, 6.
- Layte, *v. seek*, 372. See *Laite*.
- Laythely (Lothlyche), *adj. loathly, dreadful*, 3230. See *Lathely*.
- Laythly, *adv. with loathing*, 1709, 3985.
- Laȝand, *pres. part. laughing, merry*, 4367 ; Lazes, *pr. s.* 2725, 3760.
- Laze, *s. law*, 4306 ; custom, 4402 ; Of a laze, by a law, with good reason, 4666 ; Lazes, *pl. laws*, 4007, 4222 ; observances, 4412.
- Laȝt, *pt. s. took*, 77 ; Laȝt leue, took leue, 331 ; Laȝt his leue, 5232 ; Laȝt (Laghtyn), *pt. pl. drew*, 3193 ; Laȝt, *pp. seized, conquered, taken*, 4394 ; Laȝt (Laght), caught, 2807 ; derived, 2522 ; (Laughten), taken, 2028.
- Laȝter, laughter, 96 ; Laȝtir, 5303 ; (Laughter), 2197.

- Lebany, Lebanon, 4972.
 Lebards, *pl.* leopards, 3573, 3849.
 Leche, *s.* leech, physician, 2573.
 (Leches), *pr. s.* heals, 1331 ; Lechid, *pp.* healed, cured, 2814.
 Leddirs (Ledders), *pl.* ladders, 1439.
 Lede, *s.* man, 96, 226, 240, 438, 664, 757, 834, 858, 1090, 1292, &c. ; (Led), 2241 ; Of na lede werkis, of the works of no man, of no human contrivance, 4833 ; Ledis, *pl.* men, 7, 77, 141, 199, 4347 ; (Ledes), 2067, 2253, 2413, 2762, 3171 ; Lede, *put for* Ledes, men, 42, 1392. In l. 461, we may take *lede* = woman, but it would be better to read *lady*. In l. 3293, *lede* = man (but in the Dublin MS. it is a verb). In l. 4494, the repetition of *lede* is due to some corruption ; perhaps the second *lede* should be *land*, i. e. country. In l. 4590, dele the commas before and after *lede*.
 Lede, *s.* nation, people, country, 240, 1503, 3100, 3750, 4494 (where it may be an error for *land*), 844*.
 Lede, *s.* lead (metal), 4464.
 Lede, *s.* language, 5007. *Short for* ledens.
 Lede, *ger.* to lead, 3787, 816* ; *v.* 939 ; (Lede), guide, 3293 ; Ledis, *pr. s.* leads, 1645, 3887 ; (Ledes), 877, 1202, 2079 ; Ledes, conducts, 2875 ; Lede, *pr. pl.* bring, 5633 ; Led (Lede), *pt. s.* led, 697 ; carried, 2976 ; Lede (Ledy), *pt. pl.* led, 1124 ; *pp.* taken, 621 ; Ledis (Ledes), *imp. pl.* lead, 1923.
 Lederly ; see Lethirly.
 Lee, *s.* lea, field, 3561.
 Lee, *s.* shelter, escape, 2060. See Jamieson. Cr an error for *lyfe*, as in the Dublin MS.
 Lee, *s.* delight, 5615. "Lee, joy, pleasure, delight" ; Halliwell.
 Legee ; see Lege.
 Leeve, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* leave, 4328.
 Lefe (Leue), *v.* live, 1607 ; Lef (Leue), 1609. See a'so Leeue.
 Lefe, *v.* to leave ; hence Lefys, *pr. s.* leaves, 330 ; Left, *pt. s.* left, 393 ; remained, 800 ; Lefe, *imp. s.* leave off, 5035 ; Left, *pp. left*, 814, 1269, 2253 ; (Laft), 728.
 Lefe, *s.* leave, 1826, 2079 ; (Lefe), 1816.
 Lefe, *s.* leaf, page, 4041 ; leaf (of a book), 1656 ; (Leffe), 1932.
 Lefe, *v.* believe, 287.
 Lefe, *adj.* dear, 653 ; (Leyue), 893.
 Lefe (Leue), *adv.* lief, gladly, 1082.
 Lefe, *ger.* to live, 3810 ; (Leue), *v.* live, 1605, 1607, 1609 ; (Lefys), *pr. s.* 989 ; Lefis (Lefyn), *pr. pl.* live, dwell, 3397.
 Lefyng, *s.* living, mode of life, 4248 ; Lefing, 4699.
 Legaunce (Legeance), allegiance, 2791.
 Lege, *adj.* liege, 1607, 1948 ; (Leyge), 3087 ; (Leege), 987.
 Lege, *s.* liege lord, 5624 ; Leggis (Leigez), *pl.* lieges, subjects, 3386.
 Lege, *s.* leg, 5473 ; Leggis, *pl.* 4748, 4959 ; (Leggez), 772*.
 Legeman (Lege man), liege man, 3172 ; Lege men (Legemen), *pl.* liege men, 1918.
 Leke, leek ; Of a leke, to the extent of the value of a leek, 4228. See the note.
 Lekyn ; see Lycken.
 Lele, *adj.* leal, true, 3116 ; loyal, 1948 ; trusty, 2818.
 Lele, *adv.* truly, 5020.
 Lelist (Lelyst), *adj.* most loyal, 2877.
 Lely, *adv.* leally, faithfully, 880, 1682 ; loyally, 4306.
 Leme, *s.* light, ray, flame, 226, 4174, 4374. A.S. *léoma*.
 Lemes, *pr. s.* glows, 5004 ; Lemed, *pt. s.* 4910 ; Lemed, *pt. s.* flashed, shone, 3335 (omit the first *as* in this line) ; Lemand, *pres. part.* glowing, shining, 553, 5398.
 Lemetis, *pl.* limits, bounds, 5038.
 Lemett, *pp.* limited, fixed, 4283.
 Lemmans, *pl.* lovers, 7.
 Lend, *v.* go, journey, march, 2192, 2888, 3520, 4889 ; ascend, 221 ; Lende, go, 3498 ; Lend, *ger.* to go, cross, 2591 ; Lendis, *pr. s.* comes, goes, 393, 858 ; (Lendez), arrives, 1693 ; Lendes, 1482 ; advances, 2149 ; Lendis, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 2440 ; Lendis him vp, goes

- up, 573 ; Lendis, *pr. pl.* go, 3656 ; Lendis þaim, come, 3849 ; Lendis (Lenden) þaim, *pr. pl.* land themselves, arrive, 3193 ; Lendid, *pt. s.* arrived, 379 ; Lend, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* go thou, 1980 ; Lendis, *imp. pl.* go, advance, 4992. See Lent. (Lendes), *pl.* loins, 965.
- Lenes, *pr. s.* leans forward, 1708 ; Lened, *pt. s.* leaned, 262 ; (Lenytt), 1708 ; Lene, *imp. s.* 3 *p.* let him lean, incline, 5069.
- Lenes (Lennys), *pr. s.* lends, grants, 3108.
- Leng, *ger.* to tarry, 5544 ; Lenge, *v.* live, linger, 1104 ; remain, abide, sojourn, stay, dwell, 273, 372, 2192 ; (Lenge), 1682 ; Lengis, *pr. s.* dwells, 1482 ; tarries, 1029 ; (Lengez), 1082 ; (Lenges), 2128 ; remains, 1293, 3535 ; Le[n]gis (Lenges), *pr. s.* abides, 2442 ; Lenges, tarries, 418 ; remains, 3746 ; Lengys (Lengez), continues, remains, 1144 ; Lengis (Lenges), *pr. pl.* are found, 2769 ; Lengid, *pt. s.* dwelt, 5538 ; (Lenged), 1293 ; *pp.* tarried, stayed, 461 ; Lenge (Leng), *pr. s. subj.* linger, 2162.
- Lengthe (Lenth), *s.* length, 800 ; A lenghte, in length, 3987 ; Lenghe (for Lengthe), length, 5086. See Lenthe.
- Lennthe, *v.* lengthen, p. 281, l. 65.
- Lent, *pt. pl.* 1 *p.* went, lit. arrived, 1942 ; *pt. pl.* came, 3902 ; Lent, *pp.* arrived, 5079 ; Is lent, is put, 3527 (perhaps from inf. *lene*) ; Lent ware (wer), had remained, 3068.
- Lenthe, *s.* length, 4750 ; Lenth, 68, 3908. See Lengthe.
- Lenxis, *pl.* lynxes, 3573.
- Length, *s.* length, 3299. See Lenthe.
- Leon, *s.* lion, 109 ; Leons, *pl.* lions, 3849, 3902.
- Lepards, *pl.* leopards, 5084, 5140, 5438 ; Leopards, 4793.
- Lepis (Lepys), *pl.* leaps, dances, 1761 ; (Lepys), 791*.
- Lepros, *adj.* leprous, 4593.
- Lere, *v.* learn, 36, 4589 (see note to this line) ; *ger.* 621 ; Leres, *pr. s.* learns, 629 ; Leris, *pr. s.* teaches, 4551 ; Lerid, *pt. pl.* taught, 36 ; Lerid, *pp.* learned, instructed, 653 ; Lered, learned, 3732 ; (Leryd), learnt, 765*. Properly 'to teach' ; but frequently misused.
- Lere, *s.* face, 379. A.S. *hléor*.
- Leres, *pl.* lessons, 3759. See Lare.
- Les, *adj.* less, 1055, 4228.
- Les, *adv. comp.* less, 472.
- Les (*for* Lest), lest, 732. The Dublin MS. has *lest*.
- Lesards, *pl.* lizards (probably crocodiles), 3573.
- (Lese) ; see Lose.
- Lesias (Lesyas), Lysias, 834 ; (Lysyas), 866.
- Lesing, *s.* leasing, lying, 4362 ; legend, fiction, 4. The use of this word in l. 4 is very remarkable, as it usually has a bad sense.
- Lesis (Lossez), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* shalt lose, 2306.
- (Lesse), *adj.* less, 1596.
- Lessen, *pr. s.* 2 *p. subj.* lessen, take away, 5368.
- Lest, *adj.* least, 3301, 3643, 3908 ; Leste, 5127.
- (Lest), *adv.* least, 2546.
- Lest, *conj.* lest, 2141, 4167 ; (Lest), 1372, 1981.
- Lesten, *ger.* to listen, 523 ; At lesten, to listen to, 4309 ; Lestyn, *ger.* 8 ; Lestin, *v.* listen to, 3468 ; Lesten, *v.* hearken to, 4949.
- (Let), *ger.* to let, 750 ; Letes, *pr. s. refl.* behaves, accounts himself, 1726 ; Lete, *pt. s.* let, 750, 1828 ; made, 491 ; behaved, 612 ; Lete, *pt. pl.* let, 5 ; Lett, *pp.* permitted, 2192 ; Lete, *imp. s.* cease, let go, 5332 ; Lett, 3 *p.* let, 1497 ; Lettis (Llettes), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* let ye, 988 ; Lettis (Lett), let, 1800. A.S. *létan*.
- Let (Lett), *v.* hinder, let, 1781 ; Lettis (Llettes), *pr. s.* hinders, 2807, 4065, 4847 ; Lett, 2 *pr. pl.* 4418 ; (Let), *pt. pl.* delayed, 801.
- Letere, *s.* bed (lit. litter), couch, 4910.
- Leth, *v.* listen to, 4470. A bad spelling of *lithe* ; see Lithe, Lythe.

- Cf. the Lat. text—‘facias vt ex-audiant preces tuas.’
- Leth, *s.* alleviation, healing, cure, 4593. See *Lith* in Glos. to Havelok.
- Lethire, *adj.* evil, wretched, 3548; (*Lethir*), cowardly, 2445; wicked, 2362; *Lethir*, vile, 3732; *Leþer* (*Lether*), wicked, 840. A.S. *lyðre*.
- Lethirly, *adv.* shamefully, 2791; (*Lederly*), badly, ill, 2376; *Lethirely* (*Letherly*), wickedly, 1465. See *Lithirly*.
- Lett, *s.* hindrance, 118.
- Letter, *s.* letters, reading, 624, 644; *Lettir* (*Lettre*), letter, 1463, 1719, 1806; *Lettirs*, *pl.* letters, 201; (*Lettres*), 1170, 1868, 1995, 2010; *Lettris*, 5100; *Letteris*, 5639.
- Letterure (*Lettre*), *s.* story, 2170.
- Lettird, *adj.* lettered, learned, 199; *Lettrid* (*Lettred*), 2241.
- Leue, *v.* leave, 1193, 3498; leave off, 1744; (*Lefe*), 2149, 3080; Leue (*Leven*), *ger.* 1258; Leue (*Lefe*), 1 *pr. s.* leave, 2950; Leues, *pr. s.* 1047, 4340; 4264 (to which line see the note); Leues (*Lefys*), 2486; he (*God*) grants, 2508; (*Leuys*), 1283; Leuys (*Lefys*), 2887; Leues, *pr. pl.* leave, 886; remain behind, 3750; Leuys (*Lefes*), leave, 3202.
- Leue, *s.* leave, 331, 766, 899, 1012, 2028; Be *ȝoure* (*yonr*) leue, by *ȝour* leave, 1680, 1681, 3465; departure, 1693.
- Leue (*Lefe*), *v.* live, 2814, 3171; Leve, *ger.* 933; Leues, *pr. s.* lives, 1722, 4284; (*Leues*), 880; Leueth, *p.* 281, *l.* 66; (*Leued*), *pt. s.* 920; Leuand, *pres. part.* living; Leuand of lyue, living in life, living alive (tautological), 2877.
- Leue, *ger.* to believe in, 5552; Leue, 1 *pr. s.* believe, 1781, 2688, 3715; Leuys (*Leues*), 2 *pr. s.* 1760; Leues, 2 *pr. pl.* believe, expect, 4482; (*Leue*), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayest believe, 1986; (*Leuyn*), *pr. pl. subj.* may believe, 2688 (misused for the singular); Leued, 1 *pt. s.* believed (myself), 3282; Leued, *pt. s.* expected, 3874.
- Leue, *adj.* dear, 4, 287, 573, 697, 4882; Leue (*Leyfe*), *adj. as sb.* sir, lit. dear one, 2688.
- Leuefull, *adj.* lawful, permissible, 1674.
- Leuell, *s.* level, 3261.
- Leuely, *adv.* dearly, with welcome, 4949. See *Leue*, *adj.*
- Leuer, *adv.* rather, 1465.
- Leues, *pl.* leaves (of a book), 5073; leaves, 3957, 5005. See *Lefe*, and *Leuys*.
- Leuir, *adj.* rather, 4947.
- Leuir, *s.* liver, 4606.
- Leuire, *ger.* to deliver, 3718; Leuird, *pp.* delivered, 5344.
- Leuyng, *s.* living, manner of living, 4222.
- Leuys, *pr. s.* leaves, 77, 135; Leuyd, *pt. s.* left, 148.
- Leuys, *pl.* leaves, 3666, 4145. See *Leues*.
- Leuys, *pr. pl.* live, 4942; Leuyand, *pres. pt.* 5287. See *Leue*.
- Lewis, *pr. s.* becomes warm, 4374.
- Leyge. See *Lege*.
- Leze, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* lie, tell falsely, 314.
- Leȝt, *s.* 4980. Evidently a misspelling; and probably an error for *lēȝt* = length, a spelling which occurs in l. 3299. Of *leȝt* large = of length large, i. e. of a large length, of a great height. Compare the parallel phrase “of a longe lengthe,” i. e. of great length, in P. Plowman, B. xiv. 241.
- Libertes, *pl.* liberties, 4348, 4418.
- Liche, body, 141; Liches, *pl.* 4517. A.S. *lic*.
- Licherous, *adj.* lecherous, 4328; Licherus, 4551.
- Lichid, *pt. s.* (for *Lechid*), healed; It lichid him for euire, it healed him once for all (viz. by killing the man), 4785.
- Licken, *ger.* to liken, compare, 3095; 1 *pr. s.* 438; Lickyns (*Likens*), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* likenest, comparest, 2706; Lickenand, *pres. pt.* likening, hence alike, 666; Lickned, *pp.* likened, 3553; (*Lykkynd*), 3095; Licknud, made like, 4350. Lickid, *pt. pl.* licked, 3826.

- Licknes, *s.* likeness, 3679; (*Liknes*), 1709. See Liknes.
- Licoure (Liquor), *s.* liquor, juice, 1351; Licor (*Licour*), draught, 2569.
- Liddis, *pl.* lids, eye-lids, 965.
- Lies, *pr. s.* lodges, 1145; (*Lay*), *pt. s.* lodged, 1145. See also Lay, Ly.
- Life, *s.* life, 1918; (*Lyfe*), 2162; Lifis, *pl.* lives, 5.
- Lift, *s.* air, sky, 4814; Lifte, 674.
- Liftis, *pr. s.* lifts, raises, 3289; (*Lyftes*), 965; Lift (*Liften*), 1 *pt.* *pl.* lifted (up), rose (up), 1942; Lift, *pt. pl.* 196; Liftid, *pp.* lifted, 5514; Lift (*Lyft*), 728.
- (*Lig*), *v.* lie, 756*: Ligge, 345; Ligg, *ger.* to lie, 5591; Ligg, *v.* lay (*misused*), 2101; His buke on to lig, for his book to lie on, 1570; Liggis, *pr. s.* lies, 5173; (*Liggez*), stays, rests, 3176; (*Ligges*), 730*; Ligis, lies, reposes, 4775; Liggis, *pr. pl.* lie, 4845; (*Liggez*), 772*. See Lies.
- Light; see Liȝt.
- (Lighter), *adv.* more easily, 1055.
- (Lightyd), *pp.* relieved, cured, 2814. See also Liȝtis.
- Like, *adj.* like, 240, 599, 654, 666; (*Leke*), 2445.
- Like, *s.* body, 2931, 3232, 4785. See Liche.
- Likis, *pr. s.* (it) pleases, 22, 292, 523, 3522; (*Likez*), 987; Likis (*Liked*), likes, 2013; (*Likez*), 2 *pr. s.* likest, 1765; Like, *pr. s. subj.* may it please, 5115; Likid, *pt. s.* liked, 146; pleased, 373; Likid, *impers. pt. s.* it would please, 5544; (*Liked*), might please, 2172; would please, 1948; Likand, *pres. pt.* pleasing, 4606.
- Likkys, *pr. s.* licks, 778*.
- Liknes, *s.* likeness, shape, 382. See Licknes.
- Limpe, *v.* happen (to), 3759; Limp (*Lympe*), befall, happen, 2162; Limpis, *impers. pres. s.* happens, 3891; Limps (*Lympys*), happens, suits, 3095; Limpis, belongs, 3563; Limpes, 2 *pr. s.* chancest, 3754 (rather read if þe limpes, if it happens to thee); Limp, *pr. s. subj.* may happen (to thee), 3297; Limpid (*Enlympyd*), *pt. s.* happened, succeeded, 1881; (*Limpyd*), was secured (for him), 2060; Vs limpdyd (*Limpyd*), *pt. s. impers.*, it befell us, 209.
- Limy, *name*, 5495.
- Lind, *s.* lime-tree, *used for tree*, 5003; Lindis, *pl.* trees, 5038, 5237; lime-trees, 2851, 4765, 4942.
- Line (*Lines*), *s.* line, 1932; (*Lyne*), line of writing, 2047. See also Lyne.
- Lionesses, *pl.* lionesses, 5140. See also Lyon.
- Lippis, *pl.* lips, 3942.
- Lire, *s.* flesh, 3942. A.S. *lira*.
- List, *pr. s. impers.* pleases, 3297, 3810; it pleases (me), 3472; pleases (it), 3563; List vs, it pleases us, 4347; List, does it (not) please, 4942; (*Lyst*), it pleases, 2149; Liste (*List*), *pr. s. subj.* may please (thee), 1761; List, 2 *pr. pl.* (MS. lift), are (ye) pleased, do (ye) desire, 5356; List ȝow, may it please you, 3465; List, *pt. s.* it pleased, 5023.
- Lite, few, 2079, 2128, 4394; (*Lyte*), 2253; (*Lityll*), 2306. See Lyte.
- Lite, *s.* a little, 1942.
- Lithe, *v.* listen, hear, 5023; listen to, 3468; *ger.* to listen to, 4384. Icel. *hlýða*. See Lythe.
- Lithe, *ger.* to soften, render pliant, hence, to subdue, 3754. A.S. *geliðian*.
- Lithirly (*Lythirly*), *adv.* wickedly, evilly, 3100. See Lethire.
- Lithis, *pl.* limbs, 3750. A.S. *liȝs*. See Lyth.
- Lithis, *pl.* pleasures, 5615. Allied to Lithé, *v.*
- Litill, *adj.* little, 113, 331, 503, 507; few, 2128, 5147; (*Lityll*), 866, 965; (*Litell*), 1754. See Littill, Lytill.
- Litillaike, *s.* littleness, smallness of stature, 2505; (*Litilayke*), 1709; (*Lityllaike*), littleness, 2931; (*Lityllake*), pitifulness, 2706.
- Litill-quat, somewhat, 4392.

- Littid, *pt. pl.* delayed, 801. Bad spelling for *lettid*.
- Littill, *adj.* little, 130, 227, 1981; *as s.* a little, 139, 541; *adv.* 1054. See Litill.
- Littis, *pl.* dyes, colours, 4336. Icel. *lita*.
- Liuers (Delyuerys), *pr. s.* delivers, 3152.
- List, *adj.* bright, 553; white, 4464; royal, 5184; (Light), cheery, cheerful, 2604, 5332.
- List, *s.* light, 3335; (Light), 1781, 2976; Listis, *pl.* lights, 4231.
- Lister, *adj. comp.* lighter, i.e. delivered, 572.
- List-hertid, *adj.* light-hearted, 2814.
- Listis, *pr. s.* lights, alights, 4153; (Lightes), 1560; List, *pr. pl.* 886; List, *pr. pl. subj.* alight, light, fall, 732; List, *pt. s.* alighted, 4785; Lightyd, *pt. pl.* 886; descended, was born, 599; came down, 2362; List, *pp.* alighted, 2404; List, *pp.* born, 4494 (cf. l. 599).
- Listis, *pr. s.* feels light, is glad, 5255.
- Listis, *pr. s.* lights, kindles, 4232; Listid, lighted, 4231.
- Listly, *adv.* quickly, 77; without a cause, 3506; (Lightly), easily, 1932.
- Listlyere, *adv.* lightlier, more easily, 1055.
- Lo, lo! 399, 713, 985. See Loo.
- Locerhes; written Locerhes in the MS., but prob. an error for Leches, *pl.* leeches, 4197.
- Lockis, *pr. s.* locks, fastens, 5495.
- Lockis, *pl.* locks (of hair), 602.
- Lofe, *pr. s. 1 p.* praise, 259, 5624; (Lofe), 2577; Lofed, *pt. s.* praised, 658. Icel. *lofa*.
- Lofe, *s.* praise, fame, 664. Icel. *lof*.
- Lofe, *s.* love, 226.
- (Lofely), *adv.* lovingly, 3172. See Lufly.
- Lofes, *pr. s.* loves, 880. See Lufe.
- Loft, *in phr.* On loft, aloft, on high, 196, 221, 385, 426; Fra þe loft, from above, 393; Apon loft (Vpon lofte), aloft, 778; Of loft (On-lofte), aloft, 1392.
- Loge, *s.* lodge, defence, hold, 1292; lodge, 886, 1158; lodging, 372; apartment, 4910; lodge, i.e. palace, 3335 (omit the former *as* in this line); abode, 791*.
- Logis, *pr. s.* lodges, 1082; (Loges), 3657, 4882, 5580. See Loygid.
- Lokars (Lokers), *pl.* keepers, 2591.
- Loke, *ger.* look for, 372; *v. look*, 273; Lokis (Lukes), 1 *pr. s.* (I) look, expect, 2810; Lokis, *pr. s.* looks, 603, 674, 677, 1129; looks to, 1331; (Lokys), 2241; (Lukes), 965; Lokes (Lukes), *pr. s.* looks, 2942; (Lokez), 840*; seems, 750*.
- Loke, *s.* look, 5256.
- Loken, *pt. s.* covered, 5005, 5237;
- Lokin, roofed, 4383. A.S. *locen*, pp. of *lúcan*.
- Lokid (Lukkyd), *pp.* decided, decreed, 3404.
- Lokis, *pl.* locks, 4956.
- Lome, *s.* tool; Odd lome, privy member, 4750. A.S. *lóma*.
- Longe, *adj.* long; At longe, at last, 3498.
- (Longen), *pr. pl.* belong, 1549.
- Loo, lo! 4417; (Lo), 705, 1821. See Lo.
- Loose, *s.* loss, 3891.
- Looue (Lofe), palm of the hand, 2569. Icel. *lóft*. See Loue.
- Loran, *s.* bit, 793*. O.F. *lorain* (Roquefort).
- Lord, lord, master, 152, 1656, 1828; (Lorde), sir, 1012; Lorde (Lord), Lord, 848; Lordis, gen. lords, 5; Lord (Lordez), gen. lord's, 2604; Lordis, *pl.* lords', 196; (Lordez), 814, 1602.
- Lording (Lordyng), lord, 2573.
- Lordschip, *s.* dominion, 1687, 2306; lordship, 1503; Lordschips, *pl.* titles of honour, 4347.
- Lore, *s.* instruction, command, 2791. See Lare.
- Lorell (Losell), mean fellow, rascal, 1760. *Lor-el* and *los-el* are mere variants, meaning 'lost' or abandoned wretch.
- Lores, *pl.* laurel-trees, 4972.
- Lorne, *pp.* lost, 5. A.S. *loren*, pp. of *léosan*.

- Lose (Lese), *v.* to lose, 3087; Loste (Lost), *pt. pl.* lost, 3068; Lost, *pp.* 118, 152, 840, 2785.
- Lose (Losse), *s.* loss, 3171; Los (Losse), 866.
- Lose, *s.* praise, fame, 1881, 2604, 3527; (Loysse), 2505. O.F. *los*.
- Losed, *pp.* praised, 5316; (Losyt), renowned, 2505.
- Losell; see Lorell.
- Losengere (Losynger), *s.* liar, 1923; Losangere, 3543; Losengers (Losyngers), *pl.* 1734.
- (Loth), *adj.* loath, 1258.
- Lothlyche; see Laythely.
- Loude, *adv.* loudly, 491, 612, 1609.
- (Louidy), *adv.* loudly, 1709.
- Loue, *v.* love, 369; (Loued), *pt. s.* loved, 813*; Loues, *pr. pl.* desire, 2318; Loued (Lofed), *pp.* beloved, 2562.
- Loue, *s.* love, 1687.
- Loue, *ger.* to praise, to be praised, 4590; 1 *pr. s.* praise, 458; Loues, *pr. s.* praises, 5207; Loued, *pp.* praised, 2505. Icel. *lofa*.
- Loue, *s.* palm of his hand, 2067. Icel. *lofi*. See Looue.
- Louely, *adj.* dear, 2289; (Lofely), 3579.
- Louely, *adv.* beautifully, 426; kindly, 369; (Louely), lovingly, 880.
- (Loughly), *adv.* lowly, 1012.
- Loute, *ger.* to render obedient, 3494; to bow down to, 3549; Loute, *v.* do obeisance, 369; (Lowte), submit to, 993; Loutis, *pr. s.* bows to, 4238; (Loutez), bows to, 785*; Loutis (Loutes), bows down to, 3211; *pr. pl.* obey, 5674; Louted, *pp.* reverenced, bowed down to, 3454. A.S. *hlutan*.
- Louyng, *s.* praise, 3754.
- Low; On low, a-low, low, 788*.
- Low, *s.* a mountain; see Lawe.
- Lowde, *adj.* loud, 96; (Lowd), 1392.
- Lowe, *s.* flame, 4177, 4179. A.S. *log*.
- Lowere, *s.* reward, guerdon, recompence, 5368. O.F. *louier*, *loier* (*Roquefort*); *loyer*, 'reward, guerdon'; Cotgrave.
- Lownys; see Lawnes.
- (Lowsed), *pp.* praised, 1960. See Losed.
- Lowsys, *pr. s.* loosens, 788*.
- Lowtes, *pr. s.* bends, 788*.
- Loygid (Loget), *pp.* lodged, 1952.
- Loȝe, *pt. s.* laughed, 96.
- Loȝe, *s.* lake, 3899. A.S. *lagu*; Icel. *lögr*.
- Luctus, *name of a place*, 2170.
- Lufe, *v.* love, 664; Lufe, 1 *pr. s.* love, 289; 1 *pr. pl.* 3768; Lufed (Lofyd), *pp.* as *adj.* beloved, 3425.
- Lufe, *s.* love, 6; (Loue), 920.
- Lufe, *error for* I lofe, I praise, 2577. See the Dublin MS.
- Lufly, *adv.* lovingly, 1693. See Lofely.
- Luggid, *pt. pl.* pulled, dragged, 3942.
- Luke, *v.* look, see, 68, 221; Lukis, *pr. s.* 1527.
- (Lukkyd); see Lokid.
- Lurkare, *s.* lurker, skulker, 3543.
- Lurkis, *pr. pl.* lurk, 3991.
- Lust, *s.* pleasure, 4497; Lustes, *pl.* 4328.
- Ly, *v.* lie, 770*.
- Lycken (Lekyn), *v.* liken, 1740.
- Lyes, *pr. s.* lies, is, 920.
- Lyfe, life, 34, 42; (Lyue), 1188; O lyfe, alive, 663; On lyfe, 540; (On-lyue), 1269; Lyfes (Lyue), gen. life's, 880; (Lyfez), *pl.* lives, 1826.
- Lyfe, *s.* person, living person, 599, 5287. So in P. Plowman and Gower.
- Lyfe-days, days of my life, 369.
- Lyft, *s.* sky, 4174. See Lift.
- Lyft, *v.* lift, exalt, 3293; (Lift), 1090; (Lyftes), *pr. s.* 731*. See Liftis.
- Lyftyng, *s.* lifting, raising; As a hand lyftyng, like what can be lifted in the hand, i. e. as large as could just be raised by hand, 567.
- (Lygez), *pl.* legs, 3150.
- (Lykkynd); see Licken.
- Lilly, *sb.* lily, 3902.
- Lym, *s.* limb, 666, 4497; (Lymez), *pl.* 1918; (Lymmes), *s.* 772*.
- Lyme, *s.* lime, 5088.
- Lymit, *s.* limit, 5069.
- Lymp, *v.* happen, 299; Lympid

- (Limpyd), *pt. s. subj.* should happen, 2220.
 (Limpys); see Limpe.
 Lyn, *adj.* linen, 141.
 Lyndis, *pl.* lindens, trees, 3957, 4447. See Lind.
 Lyne, *s.* line, 1656; (Line), 1821; story, 2060; line (of the book), 1439; Lynes, *pl.* lines of the writing, 2573.
 Lyon, *s.* lion, 612; Lyons, *gen.* 426, 602; Lyon, *gen.* 438. See also Lionesses.
 (Lyre), *s.* face, look, 3232. A.S. *hléor.*
 Lyse, 1 *pr. s.* (I) lie, 2810; (Lyes), *pr. s.* lies, 1816.
 Lyte, *adj.* little; To lyte, too little, very little, 1754.
 (Lyth), *s.* limb, form, 2931. A.S. *līs.* See Lithis.
 Lythe, *ger.* to listen to, 4; Lythis (Lightez), *pr. s.* listens, 1650.
 Lythirly; see Lithirly.
 Lytill, *adj.* little, 478.
 Lyue, *s.* life, 2123; Lyues, *gen.* life's, 5615; On lyue, alive, 5085; Of lyue, alive, 3732; out of life, 4333; Broght of lyue (liue), brought out of life, killed, 1442; Lyues (Lyfez), *pl.* lives, 3071; Lyuys, 1595, 2476.
 Lyuir, *adj.* delivered, 3746.
 Lyuire (Delyver), *ger.* to deliver, 3120; Lyuers (Leuerys), *imp. pl.* deliver, 3116.
 Ma (*for Me*), me, 729. See note.
 Maa (Make), *v.* make, perform, 1761.
 Maa (Mo), more, besides, 1273.
 Macchis (Mache), *pl.* mates, 831.
 Maces, *pl.* clubs, 4100.
 Mache, *ger.* to match themselves, 3607; Macches, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* match; Macches 3ow, match yourselves, 1033.
 Mad, *pt. s.* made, caused, 3449; Made, 235, 469; Mad, *pp.* made, 3921; Made, 318, 1130.
 Madame, madame, 229, 874.
 Madding, *s.* madness, 1743, 3546.
 (Made); *an error for Nad*, had not, 1462. See the footnote.
 (Madeus), 729; see Maideux.
- Magen, *Lat.* Magehon, 5492.
 (Mageste), *s.* majesty, 1491. See Maieste.
 Magged, *pp.* mangled, 1268. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *magil*, *maggyle*, to mangle, to hash.
 Magnifie (Magnyfye), *imp. s.* magnify, 2838.
 Magogg, Magog, 5487.
 Mai, *pr. s.* may, 3552.
 Mai, May, 3699.
 Maideux; So maideux, i. e. so m'aide deux, so may God aid me, 5024. The words *m'aide deux* are Anglo-French. Cf. note to l. 729.
 Mai[d]ons, *pl.* maidens, 3722.
 Maied, *pp.* dismayed, 5399. Short for *esmaied*. See Mayes.
 Maieste, majesty, 2275; (Mageste), 1947, 1969.
 Mailes (Malys), *pl.* coats of mail, 803, 2454, 2624; Maillis (Males), 1219.
 Maire (Mair), mayor, 1557.
 Maister, master, 235, 268, 310, &c.; tutor, 5617; Maistre (Maister), 2238, 2251; (Maistir mair), Mr. mayor, 1557; Maistris, *pl.* masters, lords, 3400; (Maisters), 1545, 1920; Maistirs, lords, 985; (Maiteres), 767*.
 Maister, *adj.* chief, 2037, 5404.
 Maister-like, *adv.* with dignity, 228.
 Maisterlingis, *pl.* princes, 481; Maisterlings, 3310.
 Maistres, *s.* mistress, queen, 3763, 4530.
 (Maistrett), *pp.* conquered, 1270.
 Maistri, *s.* mastery, rule, dominion, 3306; Maistrie (Maistre), 1969; Maisterris, *pl.* masteries, conquests, 4502; Maistryse, *pl.* powerful charms, feats of astrology, 333.
 Makare (Maker), *s.* Maker, Creator, 3267.
 Make, *ger.* to make, 205, 333, 868; *v.* 356, 583; to be made, 191; Makis (Mase), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* makest, 2908; (Makys), dost, 834*; Makis, *pr. s.* 544, 641, 704; Makis (Mase), *pr. s.* disposes, 2210 (better insert *to fonde*, as in the Dublin MS.); Makis, *pr. pl.*

- make, 1266; (*Made*), *pt. pl.* made, 1266; *Maked*, *pt. s.* made, 3326; *Makid*, *pp.* made, 3345, 4358; *Maked*, 3441; *Make*, *pr. s. subj.* 890; let him make, 999.
- Make*, *s.* mate, wife, 574, 5153; fellow, 5430. A.S. *gemaca*.
- Make* (*Makke*), *s.* make, form, construction, 3218.
- Maleces*, *pl.* works of malice, p. 279, l. 7.
- Malegrefe* (*Mawgre*), *prep.* in spite of, 2782; *Malegreue* (*Mawgre*), 1747.
- Malicoly*, *adj.* melancholy, 2382; *Malicole* (*Malycole*), melancholy, sad, 2741.
- Malicoly*, *s.* ill-humour, anger, 1981. *Malidy*, malady, 4281; (*Maledy*), 2127.
- Malstrid*, *pp.* bewildered, 1270. Written for *malscrid*; see *Malskrid* in Will. of Palerne, *malskren* in Stratmann, and *malscrung* in Wright's Vocabularies.
- Mammere*, *s.* ready speaker, fluent utterer, 4498. From M.E. *mamen*, to chatter.
- Man*, *s.* man, 185, 211, &c.
- Man* (*May*), *pr. pl. subj.* may, 1681.
- Manars*, *pl.* manners, 4223. See *Maner*.
- Manas*, *s.* menace, 3570.
- Mandment*, *s.* mandate, commandment, 3531, 3541.
- Mane*, many, 104.
- Mane*, *s.* moan, lament, 5027; (*Mone*), 1266.
- Maner*, *s.* custom, 2953; manner, sort, 684, 1130; *Manere*, kind, sort, 1498, 4353, 4535; *Maners*, *pl.* manners, 2515.
- Manerly*, *adv.* courteously, 3953.
- Mangery*, feast, 831. See *P. Plowman*.
- Mankit*. See *Alto-maukid* (*sic*).
- Manly*, *adv.* boldly, 762.
- (*Manly*), *adv.*; an error for *Maynly*, i.e. severely, 3200. (The Ashmole MS. has the right reading.)
- (*Manours*), *pr. s.* governs, 837*.
- Manslatir*, *s.* manslaughter, 4486.
- Manslaȝt*, *s.* manslayer, 4498.
- Mantill*, mantle, 3236, 4956, 5181; (*Mantyll*), 2864.
- Many*, *adj.* many, 13, 86, 94, 124; (*Mony*), 692; Many day (*Mony day*), long ago, many a day, 919, 1186. See *Mane*.
- Many-fald*, *adj.* manifold, 3763.
- Manykins*; Of manykins hewis, of hues of many a kind, 3864. (*Manysflesche*), man's flesh, 748*.
- Marble* (*Marbyll*), *s.* marble, 1330.
- Marbryn*, *adj.* of marble, 4353.
- Marchandise* (*Merchaundyse*), *s.* merchandise, 3419.
- Marchands* (*Marchaundez*), *pl.* merchants, 1557.
- Marche*, *s.* border, frontier, region, boundary, country, 97, 245, 762, 913, 1625, 2012, 3452, 3538, 837*; *Marchis* (*Marches*), *pl.* marches, borders, 2696; *Marches*, 1241, 1972, 2037. See *Merche*.
- Marchesmen* (*Marche-men*), men of that march or region, 2540.
- March-gats*, *pl.* lines of march, 5076.
- Marcipy*, *Marsipius*, 5093.
- Marcure*, *Mercury*, 4498; (*Mercury*), 704; *Marcure* (*Mercurius*), *gen.* *Mercury's*, 2865.
- Mare*, *adj.* more, greater, 118, 130, 182, 1743, 1746, 2584, 2813, 4395.
- Mare*, *s.* mare, 4434.
- Margarits*, *pl.* pearls, 3669. See *Margrite*.
- Margon*, *s.* muttering, 628. It seems to refer to the muttering of a crowd of boys engaged in learning a task. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *murgeon*, a murmur, the act of grumbling, q. v. in Jamieson. Stevenson explains it by 'sullenness.'
- Margrite*, *s.* pearl, 4901.
- Market*, *s.* market; To make his market, to do his business, 421.
- Marras*, *s.* morass, marsh, 3893, 3932.
- Marres*, *pr. s.* wounds, 2040; *Marris*, *pr. pl.* injure, 1420; *Marre*, hurt, spoil, 4409; (*Merred*), *pt. pl.* 1420; *Marrid*, *pt. s.* spoilt, 3546.
- Mars*, *Mars*, 4502.
- Marthyney*, *name*, 5492.
- Martrid* (*Martyred*), *pp.* murdered, 1268; *Martird*, slain, 3644.
- Mary*, *ger.* marry, 3773.

- Mas (Makes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* makest, 831 ; (Makys), 2741 ; Mas, makes, causes, 2587, 3501, 3570, 3616, 4739 ; (Makes), 1330, 2277, 2674 ; (Makez), 1518, 1956.
- Maseles, *pl.* spots, 4989, 5138. The F. heraldic term *macle* (from Lat. *macula*) is in E. heraldry spelt *mascle*. See *macle* in Cotgrave.
- Mased, *pp.* confused, amazed, confounded, 3885 ; (Masyd), bewildered, 1270.
- Massy, *adj.* huge, heavy, 3332.
- (Massydon), Macedonia, 837*.
- Mast, *adj.* most, greatest, 1462, 3082, 3669, 3921 ; (Most), 2687 ; (Moste), 1115 ; Maste, 4820.
- Mast, *adv. superl.* most, 5078 ; Maste, 1725, 2072 ; (Most), 2416.
- Mast, *s.* mast, *put for pl.* masts, 69.
- Mastif, mastiff, 321.
- Mast-quat, for the most part, 5010.
- Matches (Maches), *pr. s.* provides a match for, 2277.
- Mater (Materys, *pl.*), matter, 2780.
- Matid (Mated), *pp.* exhausted, 1270.
- Maumentry, idolatry, 4486.
- Maundment, *s.* commandment, *but here* commendation or message, 4237.
- Mawe, *s.* maw, stomach, 4508 ; Mawis, stomachs, 4434 ; open gullets, 4728.
- May, 1 *pr. s.* may, 464 ; (if I) may, 327 ; 2 *pr. s.* canst, 366, 1090, 1986 ; *pr. s.* may, 179, 520, 636 ; 2 *pr. pl.* can, 684 ; *pr. pl.* 592.
- Mayden, *s.* maiden, 4266 ; Maydens, *pl.* 3177.
- Maydese, *for* m'aide Deus, so may God aid me, an oath, 4446. See note ; and see Maideux.
- Mayes, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* be ye dismayed, 3010 ; dismay, 3570. *Short for* Smayis, *imp. pl.* of smay. Cf. O.F. *s'esmayer*, to be astonished ; Cot. See Maied.
- Maylis, *pl.* mail-armour, coats of mail, 3615 ; Mayles (Males), 2226.
- Mayn, *adj.* chief, choice, 3777 ; strong, complete, 3018 ; large, 3932.
- Maynes, *pr. s.* maims, wounds, 5153 ;
- Mayned, *pp. as adj.* maimed, 1273 ; hence, wretched, miserable, 4544.
- Maynly, *adv.* exceedingly, extremely, 399, 934, 1341 ; strongly, severely, 3200 ; vehemently, 3434 ; (Manly), boldly, 1033, 1173, 1951 ; fiercely, vigorously, 2042 ; strongly, 1217, 1379 ; greatly, 2235 ; Maynely, strongly, 3969 ; fiercely, 3885.
- Maynyng, *s.* maiming, injury caused (by), 4088. See Maynes.
- Mayntenance (Mayntenaunce), maintenance, 1179.
- Mayntene, *v.* defend, 1972 ; Mayntaines, *pr. s.* keeps up, 4522 ; Maynten, *pr. pl.* maintain, keep, defend (his body), 1265.
- Mazte, *adj.* mighty, great, 4787 (see footnote), 4883 ; Mazten, 3938.
- Me, *dat.* for me, 3170 ; to me, 214 ; *acc. me*, 208 ; myself, 3093.
- Meane, *s.* mean, means, way, method, p. 282, l. 105.
- Meche, *adj.* great, 3306.
- Meche, *error for* Methe, *s.* moderation, 3102. See Meth.
- Medcyne, *s.* medicine, 4281 ; (Medycine), 2555.
- Mede, *s.* meed, reward, 1092, 3191, 4534, 5226 ; ransom, 3120 ; Worship to mede, honour for their reward, 3423 ; Medis, *pl.* (Mede, *s.*), rewards, 2428.
- Mede, *s.* mead, 4824.
- Mede, Media, 88, 4843, 5105 ; (Medy), 2528, 3107 ; Medi, 1681.
- Medill, *adj.* middle, 315.
- Medilmast, *adj. superl.* middlemost, 5093.
- Medis, *pl.* Medes, 3644, 3969, 5312, 5632.
- Medy, Media, 2583, 3616.
- Meenes (Menys þe), 2 *pr. s.* bemoanest, lamentest, 2741. A.S. *mēnan*.
- Meere, *s.* mare, 3921 ; Meeris (Merys), *pl.* 2853.
- Meere, *s.* boundary, 5058 ; limit allotted period, 5024.
- Meere, *s.* mere, lake, 4093.
- Meeve, *ger.* to move, 5292.

- Megire (Meger), *adj. as s.* meagreness, famine, 1164.
- Meke, *adj.* meek, humble, 1747.
- Meke, *ger.* to humble (himself), 1746; Meke (Mekyn), *imp. s.* humble, render meek, 2838.
- Mekely, *adv.* meekly, 816, 1947, 2098.
- Mekely (*for* Mekilly), *adv.* largely, 3691. (Or an error for *metely*, *meetly*).
- Mekill, *adj.* great, 396, 927, 3313; great, 437; Mekil, great, 69; (Mykle), great, 1947; Mekil quat, many things of various kinds, 130 (see the note), 5468.
- Mekill, *s.* much (see the note), 4397.
- Mekill, *adv.* much, 268, 464, 513, 659; (Mykyl), 897.
- Mekills, *error for* Mekill, *adj.* much, 4310.
- Mekly (Mekely), *adv.* meekly, 1686.
- Meknes (Mekenes), *s.* meekness, 3286.
- Mele, *ger.* to speak, tell, 147, 5120; Melis (Melles), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* speakest, 2911; Melis (Mellys), *pr. s.* speaks, 2078, 2953; Melid, *pp.* spoken, told, 5113. A.S. *máelan*.
- Meliager, 1195, 1201, 1217, 1237, &c.
- Mell (Melle), *ger.* to meddle, 735; to contend, fight with, 1743; (Mell), intermeddle, 1989; Mellis, *pr. s.* cohabits, 5430. O.F. *mesler*.
- Mellis, *pr. s.* tells, speaks, 4310; (Mellys), 2 *pr. s.* tellest, 729. (Badly spelt; read *melis*, *melys*; but see further examples *s.v.* Mele).
- Mellis, *pl.* mallets, 4100.
- (Meltyn), *v.* melt, 3082; Meltis, *pr. s.* 2899.
- Me[m]bree, *s.* member (of the body, limb, 4493; Membris, *pl.* 4328, 4495.
- Memory, *s.* remembrance, 1118.
- Men, *pl.* men, people, 49, 88, 90, 147, &c.
- Menbris (*for* Membris), *pl.* limbs, members, 3806, 4513, 4544; (Membrys), 2552; (Menbres), 771*.
- Mendid, *pp.* mended, improved, made more fat, 464.
- Mene, *ger.* to mean, signify, 437, 3389; to signify, to say, 4944; Mene, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* mean, 2740; Me[ne], 315.
- Mene, *adj.* mean, poor; Al be þe metire bot mene = although the metre be but mean, 3464.
- Mene qwile (Meyne qwyle), mean while, 905; (Meynne tyme), 1163.
- Mene, *s.* mean, moderate state, the golden mean, 4591.
- Menere (Meyner), *adj. comp.* meaner, lesser, 1267.
- Menes (Meane), *pr. pl. refl.* bemoan themselves, lament, 2154; Menyd, *pt. pl. refl.* complained, bemoaned themselves, 3489. A.S. *máenan*.
- Menest, *adj. superl.* meanest, 3332. (This sense is inappropriate; prob. an error for *metest* = fittest; or for *mainest* = chiefest.)
- Meneyhe (Meynȝey), *s.* household, 3120; (Meynȝe), multitude, 1586; Meneȝe (Meynȝe), followers, army, 2629; company, 1597. O.F. *maisnee*.
- (Meng), 1 *pr. s.* call to mind, 2505. See P. Plowman.
- Menske, *s.* honour, respect, 1237, 1746, 4492 (see the note), 5226; miswritten Menseke, 1746.
- Menske, *v.* honour, 5342; Menskid, *pp.* 4591.
- Menskefull, *adj.* honourable, 2953.
- (Menskfully), *adv.* honourably, 737*.
- Meny, *s.* company, 5420; (Menȝe), 2219; train, 823*. See Meneyhe.
- Menys, *pr. s.* means, 253; (Menys), *pr. pl.* tell, relate, 1615; Menyd, *pt. s.* meant, 2292.
- Merche, *s.* marches, borders, 4324. See Marchis.
- Mercure, Mercury, 4535.
- Mercy, mercy, 816.
- Mere, *s.* mere, lake, 3853.
- Merely, *adv.* merrily, pleasantly, 4769.
- Meri, *adj.* merry, 1179; (Mery), 2235.
- Meriest, *adj. superl.* merriest, joyfullest, 2438.
- Meris (Mers), *pl.* marches, frontiers, boundaries, 1209. See Meere.

Merke, *s.* mark, 4631; note, 2113; boundary, 1108; (*Merke*), 684.
 Merke, *s.* mirkness, darkness, 374.
 Merke, *v.* reach, attain, 5404; Merkid, *pt. pl.* marked, i. e. cut down deeply, penetrated, 3674; Merkid, *pp.* marked, 318, 3923; (*Markyd*), 2636; (*Merkyd*), made, 1130.
 Merote, *s.* merit, desert, 5226.
 Merris, *pl.* boundaries, 211. *Put for Meris, which see.*
 Merryd, *pp.* marred, harmed, 325.
 Meruailed þam (*Amervale þaimē*), *pt. pl.* were astonished, 1615; Merualid þam (*Mervalett*), 897; Mervalled (*Mervaylled*), *pp.* astonished, 3218.
 Meruail, *s.* a marvel, 549; (*Mervell*), 1245; Meruale, 1061; Meruale, 318; (*Mervell*), 1164; (*Mervayle*), 771*; Mervale, 565, 1814; Mervall, 5292.
 Mervailous (*Mervalous*), *adj.* marvellous, 2864.
 Mery, *adj.* merry, 2740; pleasing, bright, 2864.
 Meryly, *adv.* merrily, 3862.
 Mesopotane (*Mesopothany*), Mesopotamia, 2528; Messopotane, 2596; Mesopotayme, 5664; Mesepotayme, 88.
 Messadone, Macedon, 455, 481, 2012; (*Massidon*), 913; Messadon, 143; Messedone, 215; (*Massydon*), 985; (*Masidon*), 1989, 2002, 2126; (*Masydon*), 762, 1625, 1785, 2033; Messedoyne, 211, 905, 1972; Messidoyne, 228.
 Messadones (*Mesidons*), *pl.* Macedonians, 934, 1341; Messedones (*Masydons*), 1253, 1265, 1279, 1434; Massedons, 2040; Messedoyns (*Massidons*), 1179.
 Message, *s.* message, 1257, 3419.
 Messagere (*Messynger*), *s.* messenger, 1690; Messagere, *error for* *Messagers*, *plural* (*see the Dublin MS.*), messengers, 2403.
 Messangere (*Messenger*), *s.* messenger, 2911; (*Messyngere*), 2235; (*Messynger*), 1951; Messangirs (*Messyngers*), *pl.* messengers, 897, 905, 1814.

Messelyne, *s.* meslin, a kind of brass, 4583. A.S. *mæstling*.
 Mestire (*Mister*), need, 1774. See *mister* in *Cath. Anglicum*.
 Mesure, *s.* measure, 25, 1374; Out of mesure, beyond measure, 3056.
 Mete, *ger.* to meet (i. e. to meet and pass each other), 1324; to meet, 774, 1512; Mete, *v.* meet, 325; Metis, *pr. s.* meets, 455, 770, 1061; (*Metes*), 926, 1210; Metis on, meets with, 4631; Metis (*Metyn*), 1 *pr. pl.* 1943; Metis, *pr. pl.* 796, 3538; Mett, *pt. s.* met, 1429; 1 *pt. pl.* 3510; *pt. pl.* found (for him), 5469; Mete, 2 *pr. s. subj.* 1981.
 Mete, *ger.* to measure, 1350; Metis, *pr. s.* measures (his way), goes, proceeds, 143, 455, 4803; Meten, *pp.* measured out, completed, 3853; fulfilled, come, 564, 5058; (*Metyn*), measured, 1108; gone, 1209.
 Mete, *s.* meat, 4435; much food, 464 (*see the note*); food, 748*; Metis, *pl.* food, 4607.
 Meteles (*Metelesse*), *adj. as s.* want of provisions, 1164. Better read *metelest*, *sb.* = A.S. *meteléast*.
 Meth, *s.* moderation, 816, 1981; hence, Methe, pity, 147; mercy, 4324. A.S. *mæð*. See Meche.
 Metire, *s.* metre, 3464.
 Metis, *pr. s. refl.* dreams, 422. A.S. *mætan*.
 Mett, *s.* dimension, 25.
 (*Metyn*), *pr. pl.* meet, 770, 796.
 Metyn, *pp.* measured, fulfilled, fully come, 374. See Mete, *v.*
 Meve, *v.* move, 1989; Mevis (*Mefis*), *pr. s.* moves, comes, 1951; Mevis him (*Mefez*), moves, 2033; Meue, *pr. pl. 2 p.* move, 2382; Meued (*Mefed*), *pt. s. 1 p.* moved, 2331; Meuyd (*Mevyd*), *pt. s.* 3200; Menand, *pres. pt.* moving, 2865, 3893.
 Mew (*Mefe*), *imper. s. 2 p.* move, remove, 1785. See above.
 Meyhe, *error for* *Meynhe or Meyne*, *s.* troop, host, army, 3604, 3619, 5495. See Meneyhe.

- (Meynyd), *pt. pl.* bemoaned, 1265.
See Menes.
- Meȝne (Meynhe), *s.* company, band, 1269; (Meynȝe), 2084. See Menyhe.
- Mi (My), *pron. my*, 2159, 2289.
- Michare, *s.* truant, petty thief, 3541.
- Miche, *adj.* much, 5602; (Much), great, 2269.
- (Michefe), *s.* misery, 1774.
- Midil-erth, middle earth, the world, 5525.
- (Might), *s.* might, 816, 1981.
- Mikille, *adj.* great, 5530.
- Mild, *adj. as s.* mild one, 5097, 5218.
- Milke-quite, *adj.* white as milk, 1579, 3776, 4533, 5468.
- Mille, *written as a contraction for thousand*, 2685, 3071, 3738.
- Minerua, Minerva, 4530.
- Minister (Mynyster), *s.* servant, 2911; Ministris, *pl.* servants, 1557.
- Ministere, *v.* govern, 1738.
- Ministracion, *s.* service, 3554.
- Miracle, wonder, 5602.
- Mirke, *adj.* dark, 2042, 3851, 4077; (Merke), 3056; Mirk, 4803.
- Mirre, *s.* myrrh, 4809, 4975, 5468.
- Mirthe, *s.* pleasure, 1853, 4378; Mirthis, jests, 4367.
- Mirthe, *v.* make merry, 5342.
- Mischife (Michefe), mischief, mishap, 1163.
- Miserie, *s.* servitude; þi miserie, servitude to thee, 3550; misery, 1774.
- Missyng, *s.* want, lack, 4595.
- Miste (Myssyd), *pt. pl.* missed, 1343.
- Mistris, *pr. s.*; Vs mistris, there is needful for us, 4281. See Mestire.
- Mitre (Myter), *s.* mitre, 1541.
- Miȝt, *s.* power, control, 3306; might, 307; Miȝtes, *pl.* powers, 115; Miȝtis (Mightez), *pl.* powers, 1657; strength, 1226; feats of strength, 1403.
- Miȝt (Might), *pt. s.* 2 *p.* mightest, 1972; Miȝt, *pt. s.* might, 598, 1160; could, 124, 845, 937, 1200; could (go), 1370; Miȝt (Mighten), *pt. pl.* might, 1509.
- Miȝtfull, *adj.* mightful, mighty, 1491, 5492; (Mightfull), 2040, 2059; (Myghtfull), 3424; Miȝtfull (Mightfull), *adj.* mighty, 1201; (Mightyfull), 1420.
- Miȝti (Myghty), *adj.* mighty, 1089; Miȝty, 985.
- Miȝtist, *adj. superl.* mightiest, 3722; (Myghtiest), 1241.
- (Mo), more in number, 2084.
- Mocian, i. e. Ocean, 2540. See note.
- Mode, *s.* mood, 3546.
- Mode, *adj.*; see Mody.
- Modire, *s.* mother, 951; (Moder), 2002; (Modre), 827, 855, 2017; Modir (Moder), 2033; Modyre, 600; Modire, *gen.* mother's, 550.
- Modirson, mother's son, i. e. every man, 4326, 4409; Modire-son (Moderson), 1379, 1429, 2098, 2592; Modirsons, *pl.* mothers' sons, 2438.
- Mody, *adj.* brave, bold, 1195, 2078, 3327; Modi, 228, 1114; Mode, 215, 704, 5399; proud, 704.
- Moghe, *s.* heap of corn, 4434. E. *mow*.
- Mold, *s.* earth, ground, 550, 1130, 3120, 3141, 3267; To mold bring, bury, 3310.
- Molle, *s.* labour, moil, 628; labour, trouble, 4446.
- Mon, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* must, 691, 707; *pr. s.* must, 1502, 3352; will, 2258; Mon, 2 *pr. pl.* must, 4565. Icel. *munu*.
- Monand, *pr. pt.* bemoaning, sorrowful, 1114.
- Mone, *s.* moon, 281, 3862, 4077.
- Mone-tree, moon-tree, 5010.
- Monestis, *pr. s.* admonishes, charges, warns, bids, 2592; (Monyshit, *pt. s.*), 1379; Monest (Monyshett), *pt. s.* admonished, 3127; Moneste (Monyshytt), 1173; (Monyshyd), 2592.
- Moneth, month, 4533; Monethis, *pl.* months, 5025, 5616; Moneths, *pl.* months (*error for Moneth, s.* month), 3699.
- Montayne (Mountane), mountain, 1089, 2669; Montayns, *pl.* 3862, 5097.
- Monte, mountain, 5058; Montts, *pl.* 5117 (see l. 5097). See Mounte.

- Mony, *adj.* many, 2126, 3776 ;
 (Many), 1005.
- More, *adv.* more, 322, 786*.
- Morewane, *s.* morning, 4769. See
 Morne.
- Morne, *s.* morning, morrow, 350,
 430, 564, 1114, 1353, &c.
- Morne-qwile (Morne-while), *s.* morn-
 ing-season, *but prob. an error for*
Mene qwile, mean season, 2771.
- Morsels (Morsellys), *pl.* morsels,
 pieces, 1268.
- Morsure, *s.* biting, 4088.
- Morth (Morte), death, murder, 1279.
- Mosardry, *s.* indolence, idle dream-
 ing, 4486. “*Musardie*, a muse,
 dump, study, dreaming ; a pawse,
 delay, lingering ;” Cotgrave.
- Mose, *v.* muse, 333. See above, and
 see Muses.
- Most, *adv.* most, 808*.
- Mot (Most), must, 1773 ; Mote, *pr.*
pl. 2 *p.* may, 1834.
- Mote, *s.* building, castle, 3832,
 4353 ; palace, 3218, 3324, 5602.
 “*Motte*, a clod, little hill, a fit
 seat for a fort or strong house ;
 (hence) also, such a fort or house
 (of earth) ;” Cotgrave. E. *moat*.
- Mote, *ger.* to discuss, dispute, 5120.
 E. *moot*.
- Move (Mefe), *v.* move, 1989 ; Moue
 (Mefe), 1967 ; Moues, *pr. s.* moves,
 5420 ; Mouys (Mefes), 1201 ;
 Movis, *pr. pl.* (Meffyd, *pt. pl.*),
 move, 2403 (read *messagers*, *pl.*) ;
 (Moved), *pt. s.* 2032 ; Moued
 (Amoved), *pp.* moved to anger,
 1217 ; Moves, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* move,
 go, 5048.
- Mounte, *s.* mountain, 4898 ; Mountis,
pl. 5063. See Monte.
- Mountane, *s.* mountain, 4787 ; Moun-
 tey[n]s (Montannez), 1967.
- Mournes (Murnez), *pr. s.* mourns,
 1136, 2032 ; *pr. pl.* 1265, 1341.
- Mournyng (Murnyng), *s.* mourning,
 1853.
- Mouthe, *s.* mouth, 321, 495 ; Mouth,
 245, 904 ; Mouthis, *pl.* 4429.
- (Mouthed), *pt. s.* ate, 748*.
- Moȝt (Mott), *pr. s. subj.* may, 1605,
 1607, 1609 ; Moȝt (Myght), *pt. s.*
 might, could, 3412.
- (Much), *adj.* great, 927, 955, 1249.
- Muld, *perhaps for* Mult ; þi muld ==
 þi mult, thy toll, 4535. Cf. M. E.
multure, fee or toll for grinding
 corn. But the Lat. text has
mella, which the translater per-
 haps misread or misunderstood.
 Cotgrave has the F. spelling
mouldure, which he explains by
 ‘*multure*, grist.’ The proper
 sense of *muld* is mould or earth ;
 see below.
- Mulde, *s.* mould, earth, 25.
- Mulis (Mulez), *pl.* mules, 2853.
- Multitude, *s.* 69, 104, 927.
- Munster, 1173. The simplest cor-
 rection is to read *minister*, i. e.
 servant. The sense is—He (Alex-
 ander) admonished him (Jaudas)
 as being his (Alexander’s) servant.
 The Ashmole MS. has—He (Alex-
 ander) admonished him (Jaudas)
 as being his (Jaudas’) master ;
 which comes to precisely the same
 thing.
- (Murnand), *pres. pt.* mourning, 1114.
- Muscles, *pl.* mussels, 5469.
- Muses, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* thinkest, 3551 ;
 Muse, 2 *pr. pl.* meditate, 268 ;
 Mused (Musyd), 1 *pt. s.* mused,
 1629.
- Muses (Musys), *pl.* muses, 2113.
- Musike, music, 2238 ; (Musik),
 2113.
- (Must), *pr. s.* must, 707, 1502, 1927.
- Moustours, *pl.* dials, clocks, 130.
 From O.F. *moustrer*, to shew ;
 lit. ‘shewers, pointers’ ; cf. F.
montre, orig. the hand of a watch
 or clock ; Ital. *mostra*, “a watch
 or a dyall of the sunne ;” Florio.
- My, my, 250, 270 ; (Myne), 1724.
- Mydday, *s.* mid-day, 564, 4769.
- Myddest, *adj. superl. as s.* midst,
 5396.
- Myddis, *s.* midst, 3501.
- Myddis þe way (In myd way), mid-
 way, in the midst of his journey,
 1061.
- Myd-fild (Myd-feld), mid-field, 955.
- Mydill (Medyll), *adj.* middle, 1108.
- Mydniȝt, *s.* midnight, 4077.
- Myd-oir-vndorne, the middle of the
 period succeeding ‘undern,’ 3853.

- Mydsomere, Midsummer; Myd-somere euen, Midsummer eve, 3698.
- Myld, *adj.* mild, gracious, 234; *as s.* mild one, 235. See Mild.
- Myle, *s.* mile, 1209; I may a myle knawe, I can tell a mile off, 3286; Mylis, *pl.* 2403.
- Mylk-quyte (Milke-whitte), *adj.* milk-white, 1498. See Milke-quite.
- Mylnestane, *s.* millstone, 5525.
- Myn, *ger.* to mention, relate, 565; (Mene), 2782; (Meyn), to take heed of, notice, relate, record, 1690; Myn, *v.* remember, record, 583; 1 *pr. s.* call to mind, speak of, 2506; Mynnys, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* mentionest; Mynes, *pr. s.* reminds, 4613; (Menys), remembers, 2956; Myns, *pr. s.* intends (to go), 4787; Mynes (Menys), *pr. s. refl.* I remember, 1625; Me mynes, I remember, 2771 (where the Dublin MS. has *me of menys*, i. e. people relate of him); Mynes (Menys), *pr. pl.* tell, record, 1249; Mynned, *pp.* remembered, 1094; Mynes, *imp. pl.* remember ye, 3474.
- Mynde, *s.* mind, 738; remembrance, 1094, 1118; mention, 583; Mynd, attention, 269; memory, 437, 1884; remembrance, 205; recalling (of facts), 1245; In gret mynd, in a great mind, 1254; Out of mynde, beyond memory, hence countless, 3018; (For to mynd), as I can remember, 3018.
- Myndles, *adj.* mindless, stupefied, 5399.
- Myne, *poss.*, *pron.* mine, my, 364, 498, 582, 668, &c.; Myn, 1883, 1912; Myne, i. e. my (rules), 2519.
- Mynes (Mynyn), *pr. pl.* mine, penetrate, dig, 3141.
- Mynesch, *v.* minish, be diminished, 2629.
- Mynistris (Ministers), *pl.* ministers, servants, 1267.
- Mynstre (Mynster), minster, temple, 2174, 4353; Mynstire, 1564.
- Myntis, *pr. s.* points, 1089; (Mynt- yd), *pt. s.* pointed, 1089. A.S. *myntan.*
- Myrrour, *s.* mirror, 3286.
- Myrys (Mires), *pl.* marshes, bogs, lit. mires, 2986.
- Mys, *pl.* mice, 3932; Myse, 1762.
- Myschefe, *s.* mischance, misfortune, 399, 3646; Myschaffe (Mischieff), trouble, 2782.
- Myselfe, myself, 183, 258, 537; (My-selue), 1976; (My-seluen), 991.
- (Myssys), 2 *pr. s.* missest, art in the wrong, 2649; Myssid, *pt. pl.* missed, 149.
- Myster (Mister), need, necessity, 1462. See Mestire.
- Mysters, *pr. s.* is needful, 5117. See Mistris.
- Myte, *s.* mite, 4426.
- Myter, mitre, 1589.
- Myzt, *pt. s.* might, 68, 415, &c.; (Might), 1 *pt. s.* 1629.
- Myztes, *pl.* powers, 615.
- Myzty, *adj.* mighty, 315.
- Na, *adj.* no, 51, 52, 160, 180, 182, &c.; Na mare, no more, 829; Na ma, 890; Na langer, no longer, 830; Na nothire, *for* Nan othire, nothing else, 364, 1683; Na way, no way, 341.
- Nabizanda, Nabuzardon, 5614.
- Nabb, *s.* projecting point of a hill, scar, 5494. Cf. *Nab Scar*, near Grasmere.
- Nacion, nation, 993; Nacions, *pl.* 449.
- Nad, *pt. s.* had (he) not, 1462.
- Naite, *ger.* to use, enjoy, 4341. Icel. *neyta*, to use, enjoy. See Naytes.
- Nakens, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* make bare, 4959. See *nakin* in Stratmann.
- Nakid, *adj.* naked, 4043; Naked, 4026; Nakid, stripped (bare), 4756; *adj. as sb.* naked part of the body, 4182.
- Nakin, no kind; Nakin metall, no sort of metal, 4583. See the note.
- Name, name, 79, 619, 993; To name, as a name, 2734; Names (Namez), *pl.* 1591.
- Namely, *adv.* in particular, especi-

- ally, 582, 4791; precisely, 293; (Nomely), especially, 2011.
- Namely, *adv.* (*error for Manely = mainly or manly*), 1033.
- Nane, *adj.* none, no one, 45, 52, 74; (not) any, 3935; no, 989; (None), not at all, 1148.
- Nanes; For þe nanes, for the nonce, occasion, 3592, 4729, 5276, 5522; (For þe nonest), 3021; For þe nanys (nonest), 1985.
- Nany; A nany, *for An any, erroneously written for Any, any*, 4919. (The right reading clearly is—Or any [curious] clerke, &c.)
- Naples, 5672.
- Nappill; A nappill, an apple, 4777.
- Narawe (Arrow), arrow; A narawe = an arawe, 1066.
- Narrowly, *adv.* with difficulty, 1370.
- Nase, *s.* nose, 4519; Nasee, 4634.
- Na-þing (Noping), nothing, 735.
- Naby, *name* (cf. *Rothe* in the Lat. text), 5494. See note to l. 5497.
- Natour, nature, 4027; (Nature), *s.* natural power, 3379.
- Naue, navy, fleet, 67, 76; (Navy), ships of war, 1160; ship, 3376.
- Naue, *pr. pl.* have not, 1876.
- Nauernes, *pl.* men of Navarre, 5672.
- (Nawne); þi nawne = þin awne, thine own, 1356.
- Nay, *adv.* nay, 298, 470, 1016, 5405; (Nay), *as s.* a refusal, 1460.
- Naylid (Nalyd), *pp.* nailed, 3376.
- Naytely (Nataly), *adv.* quickly, 2896; (Naytly), 828*. The lit. sense is ‘usefully’; Icel. *neytr*, good, fit for use.
- Naytes (Nates), *pr. s.* employs, 2518; employs himself, sets about, begins, 2968; Nayte, 2 *pr. pl.* use, 4605; Naytis (Naytes), *imp. pl.* use, employ, 2468. Icel. *neyta*. See Naite.
- Ne, *adv.* not, 710; nor, 46, 52, 74, &c.
- Ne, *adv.* nearly, 539. Well ne, very nearly.
- Nebb, face, 807, 3940, 4519.
- Necessari, necessary, 125.
- Necke (Neke), *s.* neck, 3251.
- Neddire, *s.* adder, snake, 4757, 5526; Neddirs, *pl.* 3865, 4090, 4200, 5422, 5565.
- Nede, *adv.* needs, of necessity, 3274; (Nedes), 2309.
- Nede, *s.* need, peril, 2518; Nedis, *pl.* necessities, 3419.
- Nedill, *s.* needle, 4026.
- Nedis, *pr. pl.* are needful, 125; Nedid, *pt. pl.* were necessary, 3823.
- Nedis (Nedes), *pr. pl.* compel, urge, 1819.
- Neg, *in phr.* A neg = an eg, i. e. an egg, to the value of an egg, 676.
- (Negh), *adv.* nigh, nearly, 1370, 2153.
- Neghis, *pr. s.* approaches, 4791; Neghes, 3901.
- Nekard (Neker), mean person, nig-gard, 1743.
- Neke, *s.* neck, 3236; Nek (Neke), 2777; (Nek), 807; Nekis (Nekkys), *pl.* necks, 2339; (Nekez), 1812.
- (Nekyd), *pp.* denied, 1460. Cf. Icel. *neita*, to deny. See Nyk.
- (Nemmrys), *imp. pl.* name, 2468.
- Nemellus, *pl.* enamels (?), 3671.
- Nemyll (Nemyll), *adj.* nimble, quick, 1065. From Icel. *nema*, to take, A.S. *niman*.
- Nend; Ilka nend *for Ilkan end*, each end, 5649; A nende, an end, 4860.
- Nerand; A nerand = an erand, an errand, a message, 1460.
- (Nere), *adj.* near, 1161.
- Nere, *adv.* near, closely, 1370; nearly, 400, 489, 1908, 2153, 3995.
- Nere, *for Ne* were, were not, 2404. It means that the messengers had *only* gone a few miles before they alighted.
- (Nerehand), *adv.* nigh, nearly, 3055.
- Nerre, *adv.* more nearly, 590.
- Nest, *s.* nest, 506.
- Nestild, *pt. s.* nestled, 506.
- Nete, *pl.* neat cattle, 1227.
- Nethire, lower; To the nethireward, downward, 5048.
- Nethirgloue, *s.* nether-glove, i. e. shoe, boot, 4959; Nepire-gloues (Lat. *calciamenta*), 2767.
- Nettild (Netlett), *pp.* nettled, 737.
- Neuen, *ger.* to tell, 4881; (Nevyn), to name, 2365; Neuyn, *ger.* to

- name, tell, 318, 449; Nevyn, to reckon, 1466; Neuyn (Newyn), to name, number, 2021; Neuen, *v.* tell, relate, name, 1105, 1456, 1719; Neuyn, 293, 5044, 5655; (Neuen), 1673; Neuyn, 1 *pr. s.* name, 4601; mention, 260; tell, say, 5306; Neuens, *pr. s.* names, 1119; (Neuen, *for* Neuens), tells, 1485; (Neues), names, calls, 2119; Neuynes, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* namest, 4940; Neuyns (Nevens), 2187; Neuenyd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* named, mentioned, 76; (Neuynd), *pt. s.* 2293; Neuened, 1 *pt. s. subj.* should name, 5031; Neuend, *pp.* named, told, 5413; (that can be) mentioned, 5257; Neuyned, named, 619; Neuen, *imp. s.* name, tell, 833*. Icel. *nefna*.
- Neuen, *s.* even; A neuen (An euen), an even, an evening, 1082.
- Neuer, *adv.* never, 45, 62, 563; Neuir, 1874; Neuire, 254, 950.
- Neuer-þe-lattir, nevertheless, none the less, 5332; Neuer-þe-latter, 299, 844*; Neuire-þe-lattir (Neuer-þe-leter), nevertheless, 2413.
- Neuer-the-les (Neuer-þe-lesse), *adv.* nevertheless, 1105.
- Neuer þe mare, none the more, 325; Neuer þe more, 322.
- New, *adj.* new, 1240, 1460; On newe time, newly, 2011.
- Newid, *pt. s.* created, lit. made new, 4491.
- Newly, *adv.* newly, soon, 4740.
- Next, *adj. superl.* nearest, next, 619, 1456; On next, in the next place, at once, 2795.
- Neyd, *for* Noyd, *pt. s. subj.* would vex, would tire, 4881; (Neyt), *for* Noyt, would tire, 771. See Noy.
- Neȝbour (Neghburs), *gen. s.* neighbour's, 3245.
- Neȝe, *v.* approach, 324; (Negh), 1160; Neȝis, *pr. s.* approaches, draws nigh, 1240, 2221, 2615; Neȝes, 2111, 3863, 4067; touches, 4182 (see the note); Neȝehis, 396; Neȝe, 1 *pr. pl.* approach, 4341; Neȝes, 2 *pr. pl.* 4605; *pr. pl.* 5243; (Neghez), *pr. pl.* 2615; Neȝe (Negh), *pr. s. subj.* approach, draw nigh, 3376; (Neghed), *pt. s.* 2221; (Neghyd), *pt. s.* 1240; Neȝed, *pp.* approached, drawn nigh, 2983.
- Neȝe, *adv.* nigh, severely, 3825; almost, 1274; (Neȝ), nigh, 728*.
- Neȝen, *num. nine*, 4810.
- Nicollas (Nicholas), *name*, 737, 753, 771, 793, 807.
- Ninus, Ninus, 3144.
- Nite, *pp.* denied, refused, 1460. F. *nier*, to deny.
- Niȝt (Nyght), *s.* night, 1084, 1345, 1485; On niȝtes (Of nyghtys), by night, 2896.
- No, *adj.* no, 435, 809*; No more, 725*.
- No, *for* Ne, nor, 3570.
- Nobilnes, nobleness, majesty, 2777.
- Noblay, *s.* nobleness, 2716; noble array, 4881.
- Noble, *adj.* good, 3132; noble, 39, 985; noble (people), 1266; Nobles, *pl.* nobles, 481.
- Noble, *s.* the coin so called, 3673; Nobill, 4898.
- Nobly, *adv.* excellently, 260.
- Noke, *s.* nook, corner, 506, 3144, 4831.
- Nold, *pt. s. subj.* might not, should not, 4167. See the note to l. 4168.
- Noll (Nole), noddle, head, 807. A.S. *hnol*.
- Nombre, *s.* number, 60; (Nowmbre), 1554.
- Nombrid, *pp.* numbered, 1992.
- (Nomyn), *pp.* taken, 1094. A.S. *niman*, to take, *pp. numen*.
- None, *s.* noon, 3025, 4740; Nonetyme, noon-tide, 563.
- (None), *adj.* no, 735*; Non, not one, 4582.
- (Nonn), *s.* nun, 2179.
- Noose, *s.* nose, 4380.
- Nor, nor, 46, 316.
- Norischt, *v.* be nourished (*after* latt), 582.
- Norway, 5672.
- Nostanday, *proper name*, 2777; Nostanda (Nostandy), 2773, 2795.
- Note, *s.* employment, business, 3025; work, 324, 4605; fabric (said of a cobweb), 3302; fabric (of the world), 4491; occurrence, circum-

- stance, 1456, 1485, 5044; For that note — on that account, 1160; host, troop, 1240, 1471; fleet, 76; Notis, *pl.* deeds, doings, employments, 1876, 3712; (Notes), 1819; acts, 260; instruments, 125; occurrences, 2365, 3091. A.S. *notu*.
- Note, *s.* tenour (of a letter), 1719. In this sense probably from F. *note*.
- Note, *adj.* excellent (used with *men*), 1227, 4870. See *Nait* in the Troy-book; and cf. Note, *s.* employment, above.
- Notesman, *put for Note man*, i.e. excellent one; hence, *as a form of address*, sir, 833*. See above.
- Notis (Notez), *pr. s.* indites, 2795; Notid, *pt. s.* indited, 4569; Note, *imp. pl.* note, observe, 5655. F. *noter*, to note.
- Noþire, *adj.* another (after a), 184; Na noþire = nan oþire, none other, 180, 364, 3275; Na noþir, 1988.
- Nothire, *conj.* neither, 402; (Nowder), 1444; Nother, 146, 1372.
- Nouches (Ouchez), *pl.* ornaments, 3134. E. *ouch* (see my Etym. Dict.).
- Nounbre, *s.* number, 89, 215, 449, 3641; (Nowmbre), 763, 771, 955.
- Nouþire, *conj.* neither, 180, 575, 800; Nouþir, 675; Nouþer, 600.
- Nouthire-square (Noþerwhare), nowhere else, 993.
- Nowe, now, 101, 188, 193; Now, 80, 212.
- (Nowmbre), number, 1094. See Nounbre.
- Nowte, *s.* neat, ox, 4744; *pl.* cattle, 3823. Icel. *naut*.
- Nowþire, *conj.* neither, 364. See Nouþire.
- Nox; A nox = an ox, 4744.
- Noy (Noye), *s.* harm, misfortune, 3245; trouble, 67.
- Noy, *v.* annoy, vex, 676; To noy (ney) þus [read vs] to neuyn, such as would vex us to number, i.e. innumerable, 2021; Noyis, *pr. s.* injures, hurts, 4182; Noyes, wearies, 771; Noyed, *pt. s.* hurt, 1227; Noyd (Noyed), annoyed,
- 2983; Noyed, *pt. pl.* harmed, 3935. See Neyd.
- Noys, *pr. s.* makes a noise, 4744.
- Noyse, *s.* noise, 4732.
- Noȝt, *adv.* not, 100, 102, 103, 107; (Noght), 721; Noȝt bot, only, 270, 686, 1460, 1670, 3755.
- Noȝt (Noght), *s.* a naught, a thing of no value, 1742.
- Noȝtid (Noȝtyd), *pp.* set at naught, 753.
- Nurtrid (Norturryd), *pp.* well-nurtured, well grown, plump, 3177.
- Nychometis, *pl.* (used to translate Lat. *onichimata*), stones of the onyx kind, 3671.
- (Nyekyng), *s.* nicking, slight mention, 2968. Cf. E. *nick*.
- Nyf (Yf), *for Ne yf*, if not, 1976.
- Nyfils, *pl.* trifles, 3807. See Stratmann.
- Nyk, *pr. pl. 2 p. subj.* say nay, 2339. See Sir Gawayn and the Grene Knight, l. 607.
- Nykid, *s.* small bit, a very little, a trifle, 3935. "Nicket, a small short faggot, West"; Halliwell.
- Nyll he so will he, will-he, nill-he, whether he wish to do so or not, 301.
- Nymme, *v.* take, acquire, 5352; Nymmes, *pr. s.* takes, 5077; (Nymmez), 3236; Nymes him (Nymmez hym), *pr. s.* takes, seizes, 793; Nymes, *pr. pl.* 4870; Nymes of, *imp. pl.* take off, doff, 4959. A.S. *minan*.
- Nynche, inch; A nynche = an ynche, 3675.
- Nyngkiling, *s.* inkling, slight mention; A nyngkiling = An yngkiling, 2968.
- Nyppid, *pt. pl.* nipped; Nyppid fra, nipped from, 3940.
- Nyȝt, night, 344, 419, 563.
- Nyȝter-tale, *s.* night-time, 324. Icel. náttar-tal.
- O, one, a, 3306; (O), 1147.
- O, *prep.* on, in; O lyue, in life, alive, 4055. O bourde, in jest, 462.
- O, *for Of, of*, 3267, 3385, 3636; cf. l. 276; (some) of, 4781

- O newe time (Anew), of late times, recently, 2716 ; O new time, 1460. Here *o* = of ; cf. *of newe*, anew, in Chaucer.
- Obedience, *s.* obedience, 1965 ; (Service obidiens), obedience of service, 1937.
- Obeyi, *v.* obey, 3983 ; Obey, *imp. s.* 2837 ; Obien (*for Obeien*), *pr. pl.* 5671.
- Obesche (Obey), *v.* obey, 2416 ; Obeschchen, *pr. pl.* 1937 ; Obeschchen (Obeysshynge), *pr. pl.* 2694 ; Obeschid (Obeyd), *pt. s.* made obeisance to, 1620.
- Obeyaunce, obedience, 5106.
- Obeyssiant, obedient, p. 279, l. 10.
- O-bofe, *prep.* above, 4912.
- Obrede (Of brede), in breadth, of breadth, 2898.
- Occident, *s.* west, 1045.
- Occean, *s.* ocean, 5503 ; Occiane, 2328.
- Occupy, *ger.* to use, perform, 1478 ; (Occupy in), to be employed about, 1478.
- Odd, *adj.* distinguished, illustrious, 2121 ; special, privy, 4750 ; (Odde), 2631 ; Od, *adj.* odd, notable, excellent, 94 ; Odde, notable, 27.
- Oddest, *adj. superl.* most famous, 2008, 3579 ; Oddist, 189 ; Oddiste, 1751.
- Odly, *adv.* curiously, excellently, 275.
- Odmen, *pl.* chieftains, lit. odd (excellent) men, 3783.
- Of, *prep.* of, 4, 6, &c. ; by, 73, 619, 1106, 3122, 3205, 3621, 3635 ; from, 210, 1045, 4227, 4844 ; out of, 1410, 3920 ; Of lyfe, out of life, 716 ; Of þe werd, out of the world, 2164 ; with, 56, 1390 ; for, 1041, 2576 ; because of, 1040 ; at, 302, 456 ; as regards, 307 ; at the hands of, by, 739*.
- Of, off, 3151, 5035, 774*.
- Of (*for þof*), in Dubl. MS., 862.
- O-ferrom, *adv.* on far, at a distance, 397.
- Off, *adv. of*, from, 599.
- Offire (Offre), *ger.* to offer, 2177 ; to sacrifice, 1478 ; Offirs, *pr. s.* offers sacrifice to, 3658 ; (Offers), sacrifices, 1073 ; Offirre, 2 *pr. pl.* offer, 4468 ; Offird, *pt. s.* sacrificed, 1651. Offyrings, *pl.* offerings, 164.
- (Of-lofte), aloft, 791*.
- (Of-ragthe), lit. attained, pp. of *ofrechen* (but a corrupt reading), 1040.
- Oft, *adv.* often, 106, 145, 667 ; Ofte, 1852.
- Oire (*wrongly in MS. for Oure*), our, 2162.
- Olaathere, *Lat.* Alegthor, 5493.
- (Old), old, 741.
- Oleues, *pl.* olive-trees, 4972.
- Olifant, *s.* elephant, 3922 ; Olifantis, *pl.* 3630 ; Olifants, 3680, 5136, 5293 ; Olifauntis, 3621. See Olyfauntes.
- Olimpadas (Olimphades), 1840, 2008. See Olympadas.
- Olle, *v.* ; Olle on, to triumph over, scorn, contemn, 1861. From A.S. *oll*, scorn, contumely, only used in the phr. *mid olle*, which occurs twice ; see Wulfstan's Sermons, ed. Napier, p. 164, l. 19, and Ælfric's Homilies, ii. 166, l. 15.
- Oloft, *adv.* aloft, 4889 ; O-loft (On-lofte), 858.
- Olyfauntes, *pl.* elephants, 3593 ; Olyfants, 3601. See Olifant.
- Olympadas, Olympias, 223, 310, 572 ; (Olympades), 824 ; (Olimphades), 879. See Olimpadas.
- O-lyue, alive, 3899, 4310 ; (On lyue), in life, alive, 1331, 2253 ; Olyfe, 814. For *on lyue* ; see below.
- O-lyue, out of life, 1304 ; (Of lyfe), 1228. For *of lyue* ; see above.
- O-mys, *adv.* amiss, 4326.
- On, *prep.* upon, on, 3, 83, 133 ; upon, 678 ; in, 13, 230, 341, 666, 1114, 3790 ; into, in, 4177, 4179 ; if, 442 ; at, 214, 3218 ; upon, over, 3153 ; Him on, against him, 3783 ; On first, in the first place, 438 ; On hand, in hand, 713 ; On lawe, a-low, low down, 728 ; On loft, on high, 221 ; On loude (On lowde), *adv.* aloud, 834 ; On lyve, alive, 966.
- On, *adj.* one (man), 2346 ; a, 851 ; (On), an, 964.

- Onane, *adv.* anon, forthwith, straight-way, 79, 95, 191, 290, 352, &c.; (*Anone*), 2216.
- One; By hym one, by himself, 755*.
- Onest (*Honest*), *adj.* seemly, splendid, 1496. *For Honest.*
- On-loft, *adv.* aloft, up, 3193, 3261; (*On-lofte*), 1440, 731*.
- On-lyue, alive, 1875; On lyfe, 540.
- Onone, *adv.* anon, at once, 3110, 3460, 3930; (*Anone*), 1278; (*Onon*), 1045.
- On-slepe, asleep, 1486.
- On-tald, *pp.* untold, 3515.
- Ony, *adj.* any, 3895; (*Ony*), 951, 1102, 1993.
- Onycles, *pl.* onyxes, 5269.
- Open (*Opyn*), *adj.* 2142. See *Opyn*.
- Opence, *pr. s.* (*for Opens*), opens, shews, clearly, reveals, 2422; Opens (*Opyn*), *pr. pl.* open, 1466; Open (*Opyn*), *2 pr. s. subj.* open, 1496.
- Openly (*Opynly*), *adv.* openly, 824, 868, 1381, 1793; Openly, 145, 1111.
- Opon, *prep.* upon, 158; in (*see Kell-wyse*), 3300; Opon lyfe, in life, alive, 42.
- Opressing, *s.* oppressing, 5336.
- Opyn, *adj.* open, 2446. See *Open*. (*Opynly*); see *Openly*.
- Or, ere, before, 3, 171, 308, 381, 1670, 2915, 3215, 3471, 3728, 4053; Or þat, ere that, 3558; Or þen þat, ere the time when, 3187.
- Or, *conj.* or, 3, 67, 107, &c.
- Oratori (*Oratory*), oratory, 1651.
- Ordane (*Ordayne*), *v.* order, prepare, allot, 3176; Ordans (*Ordayns*), *pr. s.* orders, prepares, endites, 3160; orders, 3408; *refl.* prepares himself, 3184; Ordand, *pt. s.* ordained, arrayed, prepared, 52; Ordand, *pp.* ordained, commanded, 3787; formed, made, 3680.
- Ordere, order, 27.
- Ore (*Or*), *conj.* or, 2260.
- Orfrays, *pl.* embroideries, 5269. “*Or-frais*, broad welts, or gards of gold, or silver embroidery;” Cotgrave.
- Oriathire (*Oryather*), Oriathar, 2512.
- Orient, *adj.* eastern, 5269.
- Orient, *s.* the east, 94, 1111, 3079.
- Origyne, *s.* race, 91.
- Orisons, *pl.* prayers, 1478, 4477.
- Oritorie (*Oratory*), oratory, 2177.
- Osses (*Ossus*), *pr. s.* prophesies, 2263; Ossed, *pp.* 2307. See *Oss* in Halliwell.
- Ossing, *s.* attempt, 868; Ossyngis, *pl.* 732. See *Oss* in Halliwell.
- Ost, *s.* host, army, 52, 81; (*Hoste*), 1381; (*Oste*), 765; Oste, 499; (*Ost*), 772; (*Hoste*), 1617; Ostis, *pl.* hosts, 3787; (*Hostes*), 2848; (*Ostez*), 1115, 1987, 2031, 2173.
- Oþer, *adv.* either, 3.
- Oþire, *adj.* second, 2611; the other, 173; Oþir, second, 280; Oþer, other, 1014, 727*; Oþire, *pl.* others, 29, 94, 125, 275, 471; other signs, 240; Othyre (*Oþer*), others, 3377; (*Othre*), 2098.
- Othire-quile, *adv.* at times, 4231; (*Oþer-while*), sometimes, 726.
- Oþer-wyse, *adv.* otherwise, 2013. (*Ouchez*); see *Nouches*.
- Ouer, *prep.* over, 27, 64; (*Oure*), 1027; (*Owre*), 1039.
- Ouer, *adv.* over, 1028; All ouer, wholly, 766*.
- Ouer-comyn, *pp.* overcome, 10, 174.
- Ouer-comers (*Ouercommer*), *for* Ouer-comer, *s.* conqueror, 1903.
- Ouerhand, *for* Ouer hand, upper hand, 810.
- Ouer-heldis, *pr. s.* overturns, is overturned, 726.
- Ouer-laike (*Ouerlayke*), *s.* conquest, lit. over-play, success in battle, 1861. See *Ouirlaiké*.
- Ouer-qwelmys, *pr. s.* overwhelms, rolls over (said of the sea), 560.
- (Ouer-rade), *pt. s.* rode over, 1216.
- Ouer-sheet, *2 pr. s. subj.* overshoot (thy shot), 1767*. *Read Ouer-sheet in one word.*
- Ouer-siȝt (*Ouersight*), circumspection, 1020.
- Ouerȝede, *pt. s.* overpassed, passed away, 350.
- Ouir, *error for Our, pron. poss. our*, 4622. See the note.
- Ouire, *prep.* over, 18, 233; (*Ouer*),

- 1182; beyond, 5038; above, 4263
(see the note); against, 4154.
- Ouire-comen (Ouercomyn), *pp.* overcome, 1903; Ouirecomyn (Ouercommyn), conquered, 1610.
- Ouirecomere (Ouercommer), overcomer, conqueror, 1610.
- Ouire-drafe (Ouer-drafe), *pt. s.* passed away, passed over, 1505.
- Ouire-folden, *pp.* folded or covered over, 5463.
- Ouire-gos (Ouergoose), *pr. s.* surpasses, 2534.
- Ouirlaike (Ouerlake), *s.* conquest, success, supremacy, 3101. See Ouer-laike.
- Quir-lende, *v.* pass beyond, 5069.
- Quirmast, *adj. superl.* uppermost, 3347.
- Ouire-sett (Ouersett), *pp.* overcome, conquered, 2698.
- Ouire-stride, *pt. s. subj.* (if there) strode or crossed over, 5477.
- Oure, *pron.* our, 5, 177, 404, 476, 1006.
- Oures, *pl.* hours of prayer, 1478.
- Oure-selfe, ourselves, 3528, 3745; (Our-selfe), ourself, i. e. I myself, 1727.
- Out-bred, *pp.* outspread, unfurled, spread abroad, 2615.
- Out-by, *adv.* near beyond, just beyond, 2762.
- Oute, *prep.* out, 86; (Owt), 1091; Oute of, 218; Out of, 93, 94, 117, 135.
- Oute, *adv.* out, far away, 23; out, 75; Out, 145, 339; Oute, in existence, well-known (just as in modern slang), 598, 4574, 5410.
- Outhire, *conj.* either, 464, 1777; (Other), 851, 1236; (Owther), 1033; Ouþir, or, 4981.
- Outhire (Other), *pron.* another, 1111.
- Outragez, *for* Outrageouz, *adj.* excessive, p. 293, l. 126.
- Outwith, *prep.* without, outside, 5538.
- Ouyre, *prep.* over, 192.
- Owder; see Authere.
- (Owre), *pron.* ours, our own, 1423; (Owr), our, 1006.
- Owt, *prep.* out, 752*; Owt of, out of, 773*.
- Owte, out, i. e. existent, 2574. (As in mod. E.) See Out.
- Owþir, *conj.* either, 4579.
- Oȝt, *s.* aught, 290; Oȝt bot, anything except, 5352.
- Oȝt, *adv.* in anywise, by any means, at all, 299; (Oght), 684, 689, 757, 1090.
- Paa, *s.* peacock, 4983. M.E. *po.*
- Paciene, patience, 2841.
- Paintid, *pp.* painted, decked, 3028.
- Paire, *ger.* injure, impair, 74; (Pare), 1187.
- Paise, *ger.* to poise, ponder, consider, weigh, 4618.
- Paise, *s.* weight, 5470. Anglo-F. *peis.*
- Paiters, Poictiers, 5658.
- Pake, *s.* pack, crowd, host, band, 648, 954, 1554, 2025, 2083, 2435, 2854, 3009; pack, number, set (of us), 4318; (Pakke), 3009.
- Pakoke, *s.* peacock, 4529. See Paa.
- Palais, *s.* palace, 220, 355, 952, 3135, 4891; (Palace), 938; (Palass), 901; (Palasse), 997; Palas, 151, 365.
- Palestyne, Palestine, 5677.
- Pall, *s.* fine cloth, rich robe, 4178; (Palle), 3393.
- Pallen webis (Pallen webbes), *pl.* fabrics of pall or fine cloth, 1517.
- Palme, *s.* palm (tree), 114, 4541; palm (of victory), 826, 3751.
- Palmetres, *pl.* palm trees, 3146.
- Pamphalie, Pamphylia, 5657.
- Pan, *s.* skull, brain-pan, 3994.
- Pancere, *s.* coat of mail, 4960. Lit. a covering for the paunch.
- Panters, *pl.* panthers, 5138.
- Panthi, Parthia, 5656; Panty, 5312.
- Panthy, *for* Parthy, Parthians, 87; Panthis (Peranthis), Parthians, 2529.
- Pape-joyes, *pl.* parrots, 5129.
- Pappis, *pl.* paps, 4117.
- Paradyse, *s.* paradise, 4905; Parades, 5259; Paradyce (Paradyse), 3217; Paradese (Paradyse), 2595; Paradise, *gen.* of paradise, 5270.
- Paraile, *s.* apparel, 4676.
- Parailed (Paraeld), *pp.* well appalled, 1552.

- Paramour, *s.* wife, 5222; Paramours, *pl.* lovers (female), wives, 4337; lovers (male), 3769.
- Parcele, *s.* part, section, portion, 4496; Parcells, shares, 4318.
- Parchement, *s.* parchment, 5305; (*Perchemyn*), 1704.
- Parde, for *par Dieu*, 2707.
- Pared, *pp.* prepared, made ready, 4208. *F. parer.*
- Pargetis, probably for Pargete, *pp.* pargettēd; Pargete of plate, covered over with gold plate (*Lat. de laminis aureis cōperti*), 3673.
- Pariet, *s.* wall, side-wall of a room, 5286.
- Parlour, *s.* parlour, 5304.
- Parrails (Apperels), *pr. s.* apparels, prepares, 765; Parrelld, *pp.* prepared, 480; got ready, 4208; Parraillid, apparelled, 5285.
- Parray, *s.* nobles, nobility, assembly of nobles, 4028. *O.F. parroye*, with the same sense as *O.F. parage*, rank, quality; see Roquefort.
- Parroke, *s.* park, enclosure, 4702. *A.S. pearruc.*
- Part, *s.* character, 361; Parte, part, 2157.
- Parti (Party), part, 1115; Partie, 4257; Partys, *pl.* 3764; Partis, *pl.* parts, regions, 139; (*Partez*), 1731; (*Parteez*), 2056; Partise, 3560; Partese (*Partez*), 2267; Partyse (*Partyes*), *pl.* parts, regions, 2799; Partise, parties, sides, hostile armies, 3992; Partys, parties, people, 3312.
- Partis, *pr. s.* parts, 5418; (*Partes*), 807; divides, gives, 1660; im-parts, gives, 2027; Part (*Departyd*), *pr. pl.* part, break, 1931; Part, *pp.* parted, divided, 4318.
- Party, *adj.* separate, different, 668.
- Parysch, *s.* Paris, 4659.
- Pas, *v.* pass, go on, advance, 3584; go, 997, 5386; depart, 2665; Pas, *v.* pass (from life), die, 4003; Passe, surpass, 635; Pase, *ger.* pass, march, 50; Pas, *ger.* to march over, 444; to go, 1019; (*Passe*), to go, 1187, 1919; Pas, *pr. s.* passes, goes, 3779, 3788, 4649, 5599; Passis, goes, 132, 133, 334, &c.; Passes, goes, 1076; marches, 170; Passes, surpasses, 656, 2520; Pas, *1 pr. pl.* go, 1852; Passe, *pr. pl.* 1397; Pas, *1 pr. pl. subj.* go, 2167; Pas (Passe), *2 pr. s. subj.* departest, 1099; Past, *pt. s.* went, 139; surpassed, 3988; Past vp, went up, 944; Paste vp, 220; *pt. pl.* passed, 3052; Pas (Passe), *imp. s.* *2 p. pass.* go thou, 1499; Passand, *pres. part.* surpassing, 4242; Passid (Passyd), *pp.* past, 1008; (Passed), 825*.
- Pas (Passe), *s.* pace, 2062.
- Pasage, *s.* passage, course, orbit, 32; Passag (Passage), passage, crossing over, 2904.
- Passandly, *adv.* surpassingly, 1999, 3596; extremely, 3455.
- Passe, *s.* passing, departure, 2978.
- Passe, *s.* passus, fit, canto, 2845. See Passus.
- Passing, *s.* surpassing excellence, 45.
- Passing (Passyng), *prep.* surpassing, beyond, 1750.
- Passus, a division of a poem; see pp. 7, 17, 27, 42, 58, 78, 96, 114, 132, 152, 166, 178, 190, 206, 212, 216, 223, 231, 235, 241, 245, 251, 257, 264, 270, 275.
- Passyngly (Passandly), *adv.* passingly, exceedingly, 2904.
- Pastours, *pl.* pastures, 1198; Pastors (Pasturs), 1234.
- Pasturde, *pp.* fed, 5425.
- Paued (Pafvyd), *pp.* paved, 3220.
- Pauelion, *s.* pavilion, tent, 2175, 4760; Pauillions, 4178; Pauyl-yons, 4149.
- Pauement (Payment), pavement, 1517.
- Paues, *pl.* pavises, large shields, 1389; (*Pavyce*), 2223. *O.F. pauois*, 'a great shield;' Cotgrave.
- Paunche, *s.* paunch, belly, 4536; Paunches, *pl.* 4435.
- Pauoure, *1 pr. s.* fear (?), 3242. (The context requires 'beseech.') Probably corrupt, as the alliteration does not require a word with *p.*

- Pausanna (Pausana), Pausanias, 914, 930, 936, 952.
- Pavyce; see Paues.
- Pay, *s.* satisfaction, 4208.
- Pay, *ger.* to pay, 1180; Paye (Pay), 1176; Pays, *imp. pl.* pay ye, 3719.
- Payne, pain, 530, 3828; Payn, 1782, 1783, 3235; A payn, on pain, 1595; Paynes, *pl.* pains, 3305; effort, difficulty, 2223.
- Paynt, *v.* paint, adorn, 4427; Payntid (Depayntyd), *pt. pl.* painted, depicted, 1704; Payntid, *pp.* depicted, 5642; painted, 4149.
- Payntour, painter, 5145.
- Payse, *s.* weight, balance; In payse (On payse), in the balance, 3260. (Passe), weight, 2397.
- Pece; A pece, apiece, 5474; Peces, pieces, 2998.
- Pees (Pease), peace, 1041.
- Peese (Pese), the value of a pea, 2370.
- Pegge (vs), *ger.* to stuff ourselves, 4278. Cf. mod. E. slang *to peg away*, i. e. to eat heartily; prov. E. *peck*, to eat.
- Pelare, *s.* pillar, 4707, 5065; Pelers, *pl.* 3666.
- Pellicans, *pl.* pelicans, 5129.
- Pellid, *pt. s.* beat, 117. See *Palle*, to beat, in Glos. to P. Plowman.
- Pelloure (Pelour), *s.* fur, rich fur, 2768; Pelour, 3393, 4036. See *pelure* in Jamieson.
- Penaunce (Pennance), penance, 1483.
- Pennes, *pl.* pens, wings, 4529; feathers, 3692; Pennys, 4988.
- Pennons, *pl.* pennons, streamers, 3028.
- Pense (Pensey), *adj.* pensive, lost in thought, 2990.
- Pentapol, Pentapolis, 5677.
- Pentests, *pl.* gems or precious stones so called, 5268. (Not found elsewhere.)
- Peny, *in phr.* Peny-hoge, i. e. penned hog, hog in a sty, 4278. *Perhaps we should read pen-hoge.*
- Peper-cornes, *pl.* pepper-corns, 2025.
- Pepill (Peple), *s.* people, 2223, 3208; nation, 3412; Peple, 1389. See *Pupill*.
- Pepir, *s.* pepper, 5425; (Peper), 2026, 2074; (Piper), 2023.
- Per cas, *adv.* perchance, 4227.
- Peralus, *adj.* perilous, 530.
- Perce, *v.* pierce, 3374; Percid, *pp.* 264; (Persyd), 3378.
- Perchemen, *s.* parchment, 5142.
- Percynne (Persyens, *gen. pl.*), Persian, 2885.
- Pere, *s.* peer, equal, 647, 3009, 4905; peer, noble, 2036, 2954, 3113; Peris, *pl.* peers, 72, 4926; Peris (Pers), peers, companions, 3033.
- Pere, *v.* appear, 3769; Perid, *pt. pl.* appeared, 5466. Short for *apere*.
- Peree (Peir), *for* Pere, equal, 1723.
- Perell, *s.* peril, 2520.
- Perell (Perle), pearl, 1888.
- Peres, 2 *pr. s.* comparest thyself, thinkest thyself equal, 1842; Pere, 2 *pr. pl.* (ye) are like, 4703. See Pere, *s.*
- Perfite, *adj.* perfected, finished, 194.
- Perill (Perle), peril, 1783.
- Perill (Perle), pearl, 1569.
- Perisch (Perische), *ger.* to perish, 1165; Perische, 2 *pr. pl.* perish, 3809; Perischist, *pp.* (*for* Perischit), perished, slain, 4170.
- Perlaous (*for* Peralous), *adj.* perilous, 3949. See Perlious.
- Perle, *s.* pearl, 4036; Worth a perle, to the value of a pearl, 4331; Perles, 3677; (Perelez), *pl.* 1663.
- (Perle), *s.* purl, i. e. rush of water, used poetically for stream, wave, 1154. "Purl, to eddy, as a stream;" Halliwell.
- Perlious, *adj.* perilous, 5431. See Perlaous.
- Permeon, Parmenio, 1617, 2559, 3113; Permes (Permeon), Parmenio, 2581.
- Perpetuall, *adj.* perpetual, 3312.
- Perrils (Perlez), *pl.* pearls, 1542. See Perill.
- Perrour, *error for* Purer (*as in the Dublin MS.*), purer, 1536.
- Perry (Perre), *s.* precious stones, 1536. See *perreye* in Glos. to P. Plowman. And see Pirre.
- Pers, Persia, 3240, 3309, 3616, 5109.
- Pers, *s. pl.* peers, nobles, 3064, 3781,

- 5166 ; (Peres), 2267, 2759. See Pere.
- Persayue, *v.* perceive, understand, 142 ; Persayued, *pt. s.* perceived, 3998.
- Perse, *ger.* to pierce, 4071 ; *v.* 3897 ; Persee, 5537 ; Persed, *pp.* 3675.
- Persee, Persia, 170, 187, 207, 4843 ; (Pers), 2703 ; Perse, 175.
- Persens, *pl.* Persians, 1639, 2099, 3481, 3806, 3968, 5312 ; Perseyns, 87.
- Perses, *pl.* Persians, 3644.
- Pershed, *pp.* pierced, 2657.
- Persid, *pp.* pierced, 5158.
- Persie (Perse), Persia, 901.
- Person, *s.* person, outward appearance, 1704 ; person, 1552 ; figure, 820*.
- Personele, *adj.* personal, 5142 ; Personale, 668.
- Persopole (Persipoll), Persepolis, 2111.
- Persy, Persia, 50, 74, 117, &c. ; (Perse), 1716, 1869 ; (Pers), 3161 ; Persye la graunt (Perse le graunt, great Persia, 1737 ; Persye (Perse), 1658, 1911.
- Persyn (Persen), Persian, 2665 ; Persyns (Persens), *pl.* 2026, 2083 ; (Persyens), 2904 ; Persyns, Persians', 3185.
- Persys, *pr. pl.* pierce, 5560 ; Persyd, *pt. s.* 2617.
- (Pert), *adv.* openly, 2917 ; So pert, so openly, quite publicly, 2295.
- Pertenys, *pr. s.* pertains, 4309 ; Pertines (Pertenys), *pr. pl.* 1772.
- Pertly, *adv.* openly, 255.
- (Perty), *error for Pouerty*, i. e. distress, 2156. See the Ashmole MS.
- Peruyk, *for* Peruynk, *s.* periwinkle (flower), 4541. "Pervinca, Anglice pervynke ;" Wright's Vocab. col. 602, l. 27.
- Pes, *s.* peace, 3312, 3779, 3992, 4042 ; (Pease), 3412 ; Pese (Pease), 2841, 3420 ; Pesse (Pes), 2665.
- Pesan, *s.* gorget, 4960. It occurs, spelt *pesane*, in the allit. Morte Arthure ; and, though left unexplained in the Glossary, is rightly explained in Halliwell's Diction-
- ary (with a reference to that very passage) as "a gorget of mail or plate attached to the helmet." See also *pesane* in Jamieson.
- Pese, *s.* pea ; Charge of a pese, value of a pea, 403.
- Pesid, *pt. s.* calmed, grew calm, 4159 ; Pesed, *pp.* pacified, appeased, 5379 ; Pesse, *imp. s.* pacify, 5362.
- Pete, *s.* pity, 5041 ; (Pite), 2240, 3235 ; (Pyte), suffering, 1169.
- (Pete), *adj.* little, lit. petty, 2025. F. *petit*.
- Petusly, *adv.* piteously, miserably, 3620.
- Philip, 397, 418, 434, 450, &c. ; (Philop), 891, 917 ; (Philopp), 884, 906 ; (Philipp), 2570 ; Philips, gen. 1788.
- Philisophour, *s.* philosopher, 4219 ; Philosofer (*written* Philofr), 814* ; Phylysofyre, 434 ; Philosofours, *pl.* 2336.
- Picard, Picardy, 5657.
- Pickid, *pp.* pitched, 4208.
- Piers, *pl.* stones, 4356, 5270.
- Pik, *s.* pitch, 4172, 5546.
- Pike, *s.* peak, 4818.
- Piktagaras, Pythagoras, 46.
- Pilage (Pelage), *s.* pillage, plunder, booty, 3179.
- Pilars, *pl.* pillars, 5068, 5275.
- Piple (Peple), people, 1561. See Pepill.
- Pirnes, *pl.* long straight shoots or twigs, 4981. Northern E. *prin*, a pin (Halliwell) ; A.S. *preon*, gloss to *fibula*, in Wright's Vocab. col. 152, l. 37 ; Icel. *prjonn*, a knitting-pin. See *pirn* in Jamieson.
- Piromancie, *s.* pyromancy, divination by means of fire, 4612.
- Pirre, *s.* precious stones, 4036 ; jewellery, 3954 ; Of pirre, adorned with precious stones, 4149. See Perry.
- Pirs, *pl.* peers, 5614. See Pers, Pere.
- Pistill, *s.* epistle, 1791, 3160, 3084 ; (Pistell), 1836, 1909, 1930 ; (Pistyll), 2026, 2065 ; Pistils (Pistel-lys), *pl.* letters, 3420 ; Pistils (Pistell), 1801.

- Pite, *s.* pity, sorrow for the dead, 3321; sorrow, 1286; (*Pyte*), pity, 754; (*Pety*), misery, 2156.
- Piȝt, *pt. s.* set up, erected (lit. pitched), 4707, 5061; (*Pyth*), pitched, 2130; (*Pyȝt*), 2175; Piȝt, *pt. s. subj.* should pitch, 4594; Piȝt, *pp.* set, 3666; set, stuck, 5268; established, settled, 4320; brought, put, 3441; ornamented, 194; Piȝt (*Pight*), reared, 3135. (*Piȝt-full*), *adj.* pitched full, filled, 2284.
- Place, *s.* place, 194, 334, 355, 365; (*Place*), house, 952. “*Place*, a house or residence;” Halliwell.
- Plaid, *pp.*; Did bot plaid, did no more than played, merely played, 3947.
- Planet (*Planett*), *s.* planet, 682; *Planettis*, *pl.* 32; *Planetis*, 4172.
- Plangid, *pt. pl.* plunged, 4130. See Plunge.
- Planir, *adj.* flat, 4138. Cotgrave has *planier*, flat, as well as *plain*.
- Planke, *s.* plank, 3740.
- Plant, *pp.* planted, set, 3146, 5656; (*Plantyd*), 1654.
- Plants, *pl.* plants, trees, 4995.
- Plate, *s.* (gold) plate, 3673; (*Playte*), plate, 1590; *Platis*, *pl.* plates (of gold), 4894; plates, 3689; *Platis* (*Plates*), armour-plates, plate-armour, 2214; *Platis* (*Platez*), plates, plate-armour, 1247, 2450; Plates, 911, 917; (*Platez*), 1378; (*Playthes*), 1213.
- Platea, *Plataea*, 2297.
- Plate-rofes, *pl.* roofs made of plates of gold, 5260.
- Plate-werkis, *pl.* works of plate, plated work, 3223.
- Plato, Plato, 46.
- Play, *ger.* to play, 1772, 5053; to play, to see the (Corinthian) games, 2267; *Playe* (*Play*), *v.* play, 1929; With to play (for the child) to play with, 1712; *Playd*, *pt. s.* amused herself, 4416.
- Play, *s.* game, amusement, 2284, 823*.
- Playn, *adj.* level, flat, 4138, 4375, 4818; (*Playne*), plain, revealed, 1099; (*Plane*), clear, free, unim- peded, 3417; *Playn*, plain, whole, 5402.
- Playn, *s.* plain, 2169, 3655; *Playnes*, *pl.* 1198, 1210, 4826.
- Playnely (*Playnly*), *adv.* evidently, plainly, 1654, 1896; *Playnly*, 3764; (*Playnly*), 1791.
- Playntes, *pr. s.* complains, 2312 (the Dublin MS. has *planetys*, corruptly); *Playnt* (*Plenyd*), *pt. pl.* complained, 1698. “*Plaindre*, to plaine;” Cotgrave.
- Playntis, *pl.* complaints, 1791. F. *plainte*.
- Plede (*Plete*), *v.* plead, debate, 2861; *Plede* (*Pledyn*), *2 pr. pl.* plead, declare, 1893.
- Plegg, *s.* pledge, 1783, 3514.
- Plente, *s.* plenty, 1852, 1888, 2167. (*Plenys*), *pr. s.* laments, 729*. See Pleynys.
- Plesaunce, *s.* pleasure, 3382; Plesance, 3162.
- Plese, *ger.* to please; The werd with to plese, to please the world with, 4598; (*Please*), 1180; *v.* 2275; *Plesis*, *pr. s.* pleases, 5386; *Pleses*, 4368; *Plese*, *for* *Plesis*, *pr. s.* pleases, i. e. it pleases us (to regard them) no longer, 3560; *Ples*, *2 pr. s.* pleasest, 2719; *Plece*, *pr. s. subj.* may please, 365; *Plesed*, *pp.* 593.
- Pletours, *pl.* fighting-men, lit. pleaders, 1731. “*Plait*, sute, controversie;” Cotgrave.
- Pleyng, *pres. pt.* pleading, p. 281, l. 78.
- Pleynes, *pr. s.* laments for, 4052; complains, pleads, 5360; *refl.* laments, 399; *Pleynes* (*Plenys*), *pr. s.* complains, 1147; (*Pleynez*), laments, 972; *Pleynis*, *pr. s. refl.* laments, 1169; *Pleynys* (*Plenys*), laments, 1286; *Pleyn*, *pr. pl. 1 p.* lament, 4370; *Pleyne* (*Plenys*), 2156; *Pleyned*, *pt. s.* lamented, 4204.
- Pleynys, *pr. s.* laments, 1286. See Plenys.
- Plied, *pp.* (*with ouir*), overlaid, 5260. “*Plier*, to foul, plait, ply, bend, bow;” Cotgrave.
- (*Plight*), *s.* peril, 1783. See Plizt.

- Plite, *s.* plight, sad state, 3636; state, condition, 635; way, manner, 4042; (Plite), condition, 1165. A word of French origin, and quite distinct from the word below. See Supplement to my Etymological Dictionary, *s. v.* *Plight* (3); and see Plyte.
- Pliȝt, *s.* danger, 4682, 4951. A.S. *pliȝt*. See Plight.
- Plukis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* pluck, 5445.
- Plunge, *s.* pool, place to plunge into, 5546.
- Plyes, *pr. s.* spreads, lit. folds, 1517. See Plied.
- Plyte, plight, condition, state, 305. See Plite.
- Pointid, *pt. pl.* secured, 5546.
- Poisei, *s.* poesy, poetry, 4612. (*Better poisie or poesie.*)
- Poliponenses, Peloponnesus, 825*, 2375; Poliponens, 5677.
- Polisch, *v.* polish, 4427; Polischt, *pp.* 5129; Polischid (Polyshyd), polished, 3223.
- Poll (Polle), poll, head, person, 1497; Pollis, *pl.* heads, men, 3069.
- Pollis, *pl.* poles, 3028.
- Pompe, pomp, 2334. (The Ashmole MS. has *ponpe*.)
- Pond, *s.* pound, 5470; Pond, *pl.* 5474; Ponde (Pound), *pl.* 2397.
- Popill (Peple), *s.* people, 2854, 2930.
- Populande (Populand), *adj.* rushing, foaming, bubbling, 1154. “*Popple*, to bubble up, *North*;” Halliwell. “*Pople*, to bubble up, purl, ripple;” Jamieson.
- Pore, *adj.* poor, 1661, 4021.
- Porpure (Purpure), *s.* purple, 1824.
- Porris, *pr. pl.* thrust, push, 5560. “To porre in; vide *thrust*, and *stuffe*;” Baret’s Alvearie (1580), § 579.
- Porrus, Porus, 3162, 3183, 3540, 3575, 3588, 3596, 3636, 3655, 3661, 3781, &c.
- Port, *s.* port, bearing, appearance, 4983.
- Porte, harbour, 2453.
- Portingale, Portugal, 5658.
- Possede, *v.* possess, 2841. O.F. *posseder*.
- Posterne, postern, small back gate, 132; Posternes, *pl.* 2453.
- Postis, *pl.* pillars, 3664, 5278, 5628.
- Poudire, *s.* powder, dust, 1865, 2334, 3082, 4178, 5206; (Poudre), 2658; (Powder), 2998.
- Pouerte, poverty, distress, 2156, 4052, 4317; Pouert (Pouerte), 1852, 1893.
- Pouret, *pt. pl.* poured; Pouret out, poured out, i.e. burst out, 3427.
- Pouwere (Power), *s.* might, army, 2056. See Powere.
- Powerfull, *adj.* powerful, 3242.
- Powere, *s.* power, 117, 5402; host, 207; army, 3963; (Power), 2023, 2295; an army, help, 3183. See Pouwere.
- Poyn̄t, *s.* point, 682, 3897; circumstance, 305; Poynte, circumstance, 3636; In poyn̄t, at the point, 1165; Poyntis, *pl.* points, 32; minute points, 255; Poyntez, *pl.* points, 808*.
- Practisirs, *pl.* practicers, men of experience, 1582; (Practyf men), 1582.
- Pray, *ger.* to pray, 1477; Pray, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* pray, 826; Prai, 5362; Prayes, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* prayest, 2803, 4247; Prays (Prayes), 1105; Prays, *pr. s.* beseeches, 5141; Pray, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* pray, beseech, 4243; Prays, *pr. pl.* 1041; (Prayd), *pt. pl.* 1041; Prayd, *pp.* prayed, asked, 3183.
- Pray, *s.* prey, 1335; Prai (Pray), 1206.
- Prayris (Prayers), *pl.* prayers, 1483.
- Praye, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* praise, 661; Prays, esteem, 328; Pryses, *pr. pl.* praise, 3751; (Praysez), 1750; Praye (Prasen), 1022; Prayed, *pt. s.* praised, approved of, 3440; Prased, *pt. pl.* (Prasen, *pr. pl.*) praised, 2394; Prayed, 898; Prayed, *pp.* praised, lauded, 2666; (Prassed), 995; Praysid, 5225.
- Precep (Precept), precept, instruction, 982.
- Preciosa, the name of a country, 5080.
- Preciouse, precious, 820*.

- Precioussest, *adj. superl.* preciousest, 4891.
- Predestayned, *pp.* predestined, foreordained, 2745; (Predestinate), 4062; Predestend, 305.
- Predicessour (Predecessour), predecessor, i. e. chief, 1723.
- Prefe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* prove, find out, 4640.
- Prekars (Prekers), *pl.* prickers, riders, 1234.
- Preke, *ger.* to spur, to ride, 3483; *v.* 652; Preke on, ride upon, 2897; Prekis, *pr. s.* pricks, rides, spurs, 5445; (Prekes), 938, 1335; (Prekys), 2169; (Prekys forth), *pr. s.* rides on, 823*; Prekis (Prikyn), *pr. pl.* spur, ride hard, 2982; Prekand, *pres. part.* pricking, riding, 1578.
- Prektane, Priscian, 46.
- Prelate, *s.* prelate, 1529; Prelatis (Prelatez), *pl.* prelates, 1499, 1554; (Prelates), 1660.
- Prematis, *pl.* primates, 1582.
- Prenys, *pl.* 1250. Probably a scribal error for *bernys* (cf. *bernes* in the Dublin MS.), i.e. men. The sense is obvious.
- Pres, *s.* throng, press of battle, 3968; Prese, throng, 3972; (Prese), 2637; Presse (Prese), heat of battle, 1019; Pres (Preese), *s.* pressure, 3382.
- Presand, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* present, 5138; *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* 4529; Presentes, *pr. s.* 5145; Present, *pr. pl.* deliver, 1791; Presandis (Present), *pr. pl.* make presents, 1041.
- Presands, *pl.* presents, 5466; Presandis (Presandez), 1716, 1772; Presand (Presentes), 1869.
- Prese, *ger.* to attack, 3483; *v.* to overcome, 5109; Presis (Preses), *pr. s.* presses, hastens, 954; Preses, *pr. pl.* press, throng, 151, 3638; (Pressen), 2223; (Pressen), 2453; Presis (Prese), press forward, 1389.
- Presens, *s.* presence, 367, 982; Put þam in-to presens, came to court, 3328.
- Present, *s.* present signature, 3162. Cf. "know all men by these presents."
- (Present), *adj.* present, 982.
- Presidine, *error for* Presidence (Presydney), *s.* presidency, authority, 2414. (But the text is corrupt.)
- Presons, *pl.* prisoners, 4703. See *prison* in Glos. to P. Plowman.
- Prest, priest, 328; Prestis (Pristez), *pl.* 1499; (Prestez), 1529, 1582; (Pristes), 1554.
- Prestly, *adv.* quickly, promptly, soon, 1198, 2277, 2833; (Pristly), 1919, 2027; fully, 1397; (Prestely), 2581. O.F. *prest*, F. *pré*.
- Preualy, *adv.* privily, secretly, 132, 220, 355, 361.
- Preuate, *s.* privacy, silence; In preuate, privately, silently, 4997; Preuates, *pl.* secrets, 255; Preuatez, 1582; Preuates, private marks of friendship, special kindnesses, 5386.
- Preue, *adj.* privy, confidential, 3588; secret, 3740; under, 4960; (Prevay), private, 944; (Preuay), private, small, 823*.
- Preue, *v.* prove, experience, 4249; Preues, *pr. s.* lit. proves, hence, gains experience, 4630; Preued, *pt. s.* proved, experienced, 45; Preuyd, gained, 4539; Preued (Preuett), *pp.* proved, 1004.
- Price, *s.* renown, glory, 826.
- Prickis (Prikkez), *pr. s.* prick, 2628.
- Prid (Pride), 1 *pr. pl.* pride, 2745.
- Pride, pride, 724, 936, 1639.
- Prik, *s.* point, high point or reach of wisdom, 45; Prike, *s.* time, age (lit. point of time), 4630.
- Prikid, *pp.* inscribed, marked, lit. pricked, 5074.
- Prime, *s.* prime of day, orig. 9 A.M., 4836.
- Primus (Priamus), *name*, 1911.
- Prince, *s.* prince, 914; Prince, *gen.* prince's, 4760; Princes, *pl.* 151, 480; Princis, 51.
- Princes, princess, 5099.
- Principalete, principality, 2311; Principalte (Principalite), 1737; chief place, 648.
- Printe, *s.* impression, imprint (on the seal), 1931.
- Pris, *s.* renown, 5099; Prisse, price, value, 4242; Prise, prize, 1860, 2284.

- Prise (Pris), *s.* praise, fame, 2508.
 (Perhaps an error for *perse*, Persia.)
- Priues, *pr. s.* quenches, takes away, 4682; Priued, *pt. s.* (Priues, *pr. s.*), deprived, 2381; Priued, *pp.* deprived of, 2657; (Depriued), deprived, 2292.
- Proces, *s.* full account, 4259. “*Proces*, story, relation;” Halliwell.
- Procession, *s.* procession, 1552, 1561.
- Proches (Prokes), *pr. s.* makes extravagant demands, arrogates to himself, 1926. “*Prokkyn*, or styfly askyn; *Procor*, *procito*;” Prompt. Parv.
- Proddest, *adj. superl.* proudest, 3661.
- Prode, *adj.* proud, 4375.
- Profe, *v.* prove, 367.
- Profe, *s.* excellence, benefit, profit, 4309. Apparently the same word as M.E. *prow*. “*Prow*, idem quod *profyte*;” Prompt. Parv. O.F. *prou*.
- Profetez, *pl.* profits, p. 280, l. 37.
- Profet (Profett), *pt. s.* profited, 2370.
- Profurs, *pr. s.* offers, 4052; Proferne (Profre), 2 *pr. pl.* offer, 2202.
- Progenie, progeny, race, 4021.
- Projekte, *s.* design, 3331.
- Prologue, *s.* prologue, announcement, 5066; (Proloug), preamble, 2730.
- Promicid, *error for* prononsid (*pt. s.*), or pronounsand (*pres. pt.*), 3395.
- (Pronounsand), *pres. pt.* pronouncing, uttering, 3395.
- Properties, *pl.* properties, peculiarities, 4257.
- Prophecy, *s.* prophecy, 1099; Prophasys (Prophecyes), *pl.* 1654.
- Prophesid (Prophecied), *pp.* prophesied, 1896.
- Prophet, prophet, 261, 328; *written Proplete*, 142.
- Prophetese, prophetess, 4412; Prophetas (Prophett), 2300.
- Propire, *adj.* correct, certain, 367. See Propire.
- Proporcion, proportion, 668; Proporcions, *pl.* 5142.
- Propure (Propre), *adj.* proper, correct, 2885. See Propire.
- Propurest, *adj. superl.* most ornamental, 3331.
- Propurly (P[ro]prely), *adv.* entirely, 1926; (Propyrl), wholly, 3283.
- Prose, *s.* prose story, 2062, 2397, 3328, 5041.
- Proserpyne, Proserpine, 4412, 4416.
- Pro[s]perite, prosperity, 1860.
- Proud (Prouude), *adj.* proud, 944, 1000, 1169; Proude, 652, &c.; rich, splendid, 480, 2027; noble, 1660; (Prouud), 729*; Proudis, *pl.* proud ones, 5468.
- Proudly, *adv.* splendidly, 652; Proudely, honourably, 4017.
- Proue, *ger.* prove, shew, 261, 334; test, 4071; Proued, *pt. s.* employed, 647; (Preved), proved, 2072; Proued, 1 *pt. s.* described, spoke of, 4867; Provid, *pt. pl.* were usual, were easily found, 5082; Proued, *pp.* proved, 1789; approved, 914, 808*.
- Proudens, *s.* foresight, prudence, 3990; providence, 4062; Prouidence, *as dat.* for thy forethought, 2707.
- Prouince, province, 187, 825*. See Prouynce.
- (Prouud), 729*; see Proud.
- Prouwis (Prowez), *s.* prowess, excellence, 2745.
- Prouynce, province, territory, 72, 1737, 1941, 3123; *pl.* provinces, 444. See Prouince.
- Prouys (Preuez), *pr. pl.* prove, 2000.
- Prowde, *adj.* proud, 3481. See Proud.
- Prowis, *s.* prowess, valour, 444, 614, 3990, 4539; (Prowes), 936.
- Pruddest (Proudest), *adj. superl.* proudest, 2202.
- Pruto, name of a country, 5657.
- Prynce, prince, 99.
- Prynt, *s.* mark, seal, 3162.
- Pryse, praise, fame, 614. See Prise.
- Pull, *s.* throe, 530.
- Pull, *ger.* to pull, 938; Pullis him, *pr. s.* draws himself, 2074.
- Punesch (Ponysh), *ger.* to punish, 2733.
- Pupill, people, 87; (Peple), 1497, 1658, 1999, 2295; Puple, 142, 175.
- Pure, *adj.* pure, 2300; complete, excellent, 3990; clear, 1154;

- simple, small, 3496 ; mere, 1869 ; single, 5108 ; very, 2099.
- Pure, *adv.* very, 3242.
 (Pure), *adj.* poor, 1661.
- Pured, *pp.* purified, 4465 ; (Puryd), purified, cleansed, well prepared, 2768.
- Purely, *adv.* completely, 187 ; entirely, 3283 ; totally, 1639 ; clean, 1658 ; (Purely), entirely, 3243 ; Purly, 4062.
- Purfir, *s.* porphyry, 5275.
- Purgis, *pr. s.* puts away, clears away, 4682.
- Purid, *pt. pl.* grew calm, grew clear, cleared away, 4185.
- Purpose (Purpassee), *s.* intention, 1767.
- Purpose, *pr. pl. 2 p.* intend, 682.
- Purple (Purpure), *adj.* purple, 1532 ; Purperyn, 4375.
- Purple, *s.* purple colour, 4986 ; Purree, 1588.
- Purse, *s.* purse, bag, 1661, 2023.
- Purtrayour, portrait-painter, 5141.
- Purvay, *v.* provide, *p.* 279, *l. 11* ; Purvaid, *pp.* provided, equipped, 175 ; Puruayd, *pp.* purveyed, provided (for thyself), 1731 ; Purueid, provided, foreseen, 5107.
- Put, *v.* put, 982 ; put, place (*with to* = into), 2861 ; (Puttes), *pr. s.* 777* ; Put vp, *pt. s.* put up, 227 ; Put, *pt. pl.* put, placed, 816 ; Putt, *pt. pl.* put, put (themselves) forward, 3968 ; (Putten), set (themselves), 1483 ; Put (Putt), *pp.* 1930.
- Putfull, *adj.* put full, filled (*but read piȝt-full*), 2284.
- Pylars, *pl.* pillars, 5064.
- Pynche, *ger.* (*prob. error for Pycche*), i. e. pitch, place, set, 5064.
- Pyndis, *pr. s.* impounds, pens up, imprisons, 5487.
- Pyne, *s.* torture, pain, 2723, 3506 ; trouble, 1206.
- Pyne, *v.* torture, 1789 ; Pyned, *pt. s. subj.* would put to pain, would trouble, 3333 ; Pynaund, *pres. pt.* causing pain, vexatious, 4172.
- Pyned, *pp.* tormented, vexed, 4702. A far better reading would be *pynned*, i. e. pinned, penned.
- Pyte, *s.* sad fate, 729*.
- Qua, *pron. inter.* who, 636 ; (Wha), 1092 ; Qua sa, whoso, whoever, 146, 1439 ; (Who so), 1527, 1718, 1780 ; As qua, as one who, 4659 ; As qua sai, as who should say, as if he would say, 2240.
- Quadrentis, *pl.* quadrants, 129. (MS. In adrentes ; see the note.)
- Qualite, *s.* quality, dignity, 4660 ; kind, 1556 ; rank, 3303 ; sort of character, 1703.
- Quam, *dat.* whom, 463 ; (Whom), 1637 ; (Whome), 1624.
- Quantite, *s.* size, 1703.
- Quappid (Wappyd), *pt. pl.* struck violently, 2226. E. *whap*, to hit ; M.E. *quappen*, to throb, as in Chaucer.
- Quare, *adv.* where, 104, 363, 373 ; *conj.* (Quar), whether, 2370.
- Quare-of, whereof, 4249, 4380, 5462 ; (Wher-of), 1566.
- Quare-on, *adv.* whereon, whereupon, upon what, 268, 269.
- Quare-þurȝe (Whar-þorow), whereby, 2544.
- Quare-with, where-with, 5434.
- Quarrels (Qwarels), *pl.* bolts (for the cross bow), 2226 ; Quarels, 1414.
- Quarto, *adv.* whereto, to what purpose, 4060 ; (Whare-to), wherefore, 2242.
- Quas (Whoys), *pron.* whose, 1192 ; Quase, *pron. rel. gen.* whose, under whose rule, 4192.
- Qua-sum-euire (Who-someuer), *pron.* whosoever, 3362.
- Quat, *pron.* what, 171, 251, 253, 295, &c. ; why, wherefore, 2519, 3492, 5355 ; (What), how, 2523 ; Quat, reason why ; For any quat, on any account, 581 ; Quat so (Qwat so), whatever, 1640 ; All quat, all what, i. e. all sorts of things, 3046 ; Mekill quat, much of various sorts, 3777. And see Mekill.
- Quat euire (What euer), whatever, 680.
- Quatkyn, what kind of, of what kind, 305, 312, 5007.
- Quaynte, *adj.* quaint, curious, 129.

- Quayntid him, *pt. s.* made himself acquainted, 213.
- Quedire, *adv.* wherever, 3499; Queder, *adv.* whither, in what direction, 166.
- Quele, *s.* wheel, 3303; Queles, *pl.* 5294. See Qwele.
- Quellis (Whelles), *pr. s.* kills, 1307.
- Quen, *adv.* when, 149, 159, 194, &c.; (When), 745; Quene, 3509.
- Quene, queen, 362, 669, 822; (Whene), 919, 938, 944, 1851.
- Question, *s.* question, 1110.
- Quethe, *v.* tell, 4325; Queth, 1 *pr. s.* as *fut.* shall tell, 1110.
- Quethin, *adv.* whence, 4192, 5216.
- Quethire, *conj.* whether (interrogatively), 2161, 3805; Queþir, 3810; whether (introducing a new clause), 5606; (Wheþer), although, 2090; Queþer ȝit, nevertheless, however, 581.
- Quethirs (Whirres), *pr. pl.* whizz, fly whizzing, 1414. See quhidder in Jamieson, and quhendirand in Barbour.
- Qui (Why), why, 1620, 2645.
- Quike, *adj.* alive, 4469.
- Quikly (Whikly), *adv.* quickly, 1414.
- Quile, *s.* space of time, while, 331, 249, 3861; þar-quile, at that time, 157.
- Quilk, *error for* Quil, while, whilst, 4629.
- Quilke (Whilke), *pron.* which, 519, 679, 1447; (which), 3421; what, 1888; Quilk (Whilk), which, 996.
- Quils, *conj. and adv.* whilst, 3535; (Whils), 1678; (Whil), 3416; (Whille), 1687; (Whilse), 989; Quills, 19.
- Quirris (Whirrez), *pr. pl.* whir, i. e. go forth with a buzzing noise, 1556; Quiryrs (Whirres), whir, hurl, 2226.
- Quiryrs (Enquirez), *pr. s.* asks, enquires about, 1703.
- Quirland, *pres. part.* whirling, 5294.
- Quite, *adj.* white, 4534, 5603; (White), *s.* white robes, 1556.
- Quod, *pt. s.* said, 97, 183, 242, 270, &c.
- Quy (Whi), why, 2945. See Qui.
- Quyche (Which), *pron.* what, how great, 1807.
- Quyle, *s.* while, time, 546, 581; (While), 1239, 1861. See Quile.
- Quyte, *adj.* white, 129; (White), 1562; (Whitte), 1498. See Quite.
- Qwaite, *v.* await, 1109. Put for Waite, as in Dest. of Troy, 13245.
- Qwat, what, 740, 1272; Qwatt, 849.
- Qwatis, *pr. s.* (*probably*) becomes quiet, is lulled again, 560. See quate, quait, to lull, in Jamieson, ed. 1880. The sense seems to be that the sea was violently agitated, and again suddenly lulled to rest again. *Euer elike* = continually.
- Qwaynt, *adj.* quaint, curious, 5548.
- Qwele (Whele), *s.* wheel, 1851, 1854; round, circle, 4660. See Quele.
- Qweme, *adj.* convenient, 5078. A.S. gecwéme.
- Qwen, *adv.* when, 374, 392, 649.
- Qwene, queen, 221, 228, 234, &c.
- Qwer, *adv.* where, 1515.
- Qweryns (Quernes), *pl.* cracks, edges of ice on each side of a crack, 3003. Cf. O.F. *carne*, an edge or corner (Cotgrave); and note that the O.F. *carnel*, a battlement (spelt *carneau* in Cotgrave), is spelt *quarnell* in Jamieson. *Carne* is merely another form of F. *cren*, a notch, cleft, breach, Lat. *crena*.
- Qwete, *v.* requisite, satisfy, 2420. For *to question enquere* read *questions to enquere* (see the Dublin MS.); the line means—But to enquire questions of you, and to satisfy my wits with them. *Qwete* is the M.E. *quitten*, to quit, require, also to satisfy.
- Qwete, *s.* wheat, 4511.
- Qweþire (Wheder), whether, can it be that, 2910.
- Qwile, *s.* short time, 653.
- Qwi (Whi), *adv.* why, 2287.
- Qwilke (W hilke), *pron.* which, 1046.
- Q, *conj.* until, 507.
- Qwirre (Whirre), *s.* whir, whirl, 1854; In a qwirre, with a whizzing sound, 560.
- Qwistounes, *pl.* beggars, 4660. O.F. *quistoun*, a beggar; Roquefort. Cf.

- I. 3303. The wheel of Fortune is here called the wheel of beggars, contemptuously, because those who cling to it as it whirls have a chance of being exalted from the lowest condition; see the context.
- Qwistsumnes**, 3303. A corrupt reading; the MS. has 'qwistsūnes', which may also be rendered 'qwistunnes', an error for 'qwistunnes' = qwistoūnes, i. e. beggars. See I. 4660, where the phrase recurs; and see above.
- Rabetis**, *pl.* war-horses, chargers, 1320. See two examples, s. v. *rabite*, in Halliwell. Cf. O.F. *arabi*, an Arab-horse (Godefroy).
- Rabies**, *error for Ribans* (in Dubl. MS. *rybans*), *pl.* borders, streaks, 1538.
- (*Rachez hym*), *pr. s.* prepares himself, 2031. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *rax*, to stretch.
- Rad**, *adv.* speedily, 2428. See *Radly*.
- (*Raddest*), *adj. sup.* most afraid, 2510. Cf. Swed. *rädd*, Dan. *ræd*, afraid. See *Redd*.
- Raddour**, *s.* violence, 2329. O.F. *rador* (Roquefort), later *roideur*, strength, violence.
- Rade**, *pt. s.* rode, 3704.
- Radly**, *adv.* readily, quickly, soon, 409, 430, 1354, 1382, 1494, 1950, 2031, 2973, 3449, 4846, 4961, 5360.
- Raged**, *pt. s.* was angry, 638; *Ragid*, *pp.* been wanton, 460.
- Raggid**, *adj.* jagged, ragged, 5133.
- (*Raghft*), *pp.* reached, taken, 799*. Pp. of *rechen*.
- Raikis**, *pr. s.* proceeds, goes, 5284, 5555. Icel. *reika*, to wander.
- Railed**, *pp.* covered, decked, bordered, 1538, 5128. From A.S. *hrægl*, a garment. See *Gawane* and the *Grene Knight*, and *hræilen*, in Stratmann.
- Rais him**, *pr. s.* arrays him, prepares himself, 2031. Short for *arayis*.
- Rake** (*Rakke*), course, road, way, track, 3383, 5070. See *Gloss.* to *Gawain and the Grene Knight*. "Cartrack, a cart-rut;" Halliwell. See *Raikis*.
- Ramys**, name of a country, 5670.
- (*Ran*), *pt. s.* ran, 794*.
- Rancour** (*Rankour*), *s.* rancour, anger, 2701.
- Range**, *pt. pl.* rang, 5157.
- Ranke**, *adj.* luxuriant, well-grown, 3060.
- Rankest**, *adj. superl.* thickest, 1319.
- Ransons** (*Raunsons*), *pl.* rich gifts, lit. ransoms, 1665.
- Rapis** (*Rapez*), *pl.* ropes, 1520; (*Rapes*), 747*.
- Raryfey**, *name*, 5496.
- Raschis** (*Rachen*), *pr. pl.* hurry along, 1239. Cf. E. *rash*.
- Rase**, *pt. s.* rose, 392, 430, 1216, 1566, 2354, 3817, 5055; (*Rose*), 1354, 2354.
- Rase** (*Rese*), race, hurry, 1513. A.S. *ræs*.
- (*Rastelyng*), *s.* tumult, 943.
- (*Rasyd vp*), *pp.* raised up, levied, 829*.
- Rasyn** (*Raysyn*), raisin, grape, 1352.
- Rathere** (*Rather*), *adv.* rather, 1178.
- (*Raþest*) (MS. *raþeest*), most quickly, 726.
- Ratland**, *pres. part.* rattling, screeching, 4531.
- Ratons**, *pl.* rats, 1762.
- Raueste** (*Reuest*), *pp.* decked, attired, 1500. Lit. re-vested.
- Rauth** (*Rathe*), *adv.* quickly, soon, 2824. See *Rather*.
- Rauyst**, *pp.* ravished, torn away, 4424.
- Ravyn**, raven; *Niȝt ravyn*, night-raven, i. e. owl, 4531.
- Raw** (*Rawe*), row, rank; On a raw = in a row, 1500; Be rawe (*pl.* *Rawes*), in a row, along a row or line, 1320; *Rawis* (*Rawez*), *pl.* lines, 2843; rows, lines (of the letter), 2701.
- Raxsils**, *pr. s.* stretches out, 4930. See *Glos.* to P. *Plowman*.
- Ray**, *s.* king, 5496. O.F. *rei*.
- Rayme**, *ger.* to spread over, overrun, rule oppressively, plunder, 4563; *v.* 177; (*Rame*), 2488; *Raymed* (*Raymet*), *pp.* 1940, 2378;

- (Raymed), *pp.* taken away from, 2510. Halliwell has “*rame*, to rob, plunder; *Lanc.*;” also *raime*, to rule oppressively. But the true sense is not certain.
- Rayme, *s.* plunder, 4563. The line seems to mean—‘For plunder and robbery, to rob men of their goods.’ But *rayme* should not occur twice.
- Rayn, *s.* rain, 4176.
- Ray[n]bowe (Rayne-bowe), rainbow, 2466.
- Raynes, *pr. s.* rains, 566.
- Raynes, fine cloth (or linen) of Rheims, 4339; (Reynes), 1550.
- Rayses, *pr. s.* rouses, lit. raises, 5174.
- (Raythely), *adv.* excellently, 1538. Prob. a false reading. Cf. *g-raith*.
- Razt, *pt. s.* reached, arrived, 5510; delivered, 5542; laid hold of, 5284; departed, got away, 3852; (Raght), caught, 2916, 2973; (Raught), went on, 1048.
- (Realm), realm, 758, 799*, 826*.
- Rebell, *adj.* rebellious, 3504; (Rebellez), 1054.
- Rebelte, rebellion, 2428.
- Reche, *v.* reach, 2466; Reches, *error for* Reche, *ger.* 5520; Reche vp (vppe), *v.* give over, 758 (see the note); Reches, *pr. s.* gives, hands over, 1653; (Rechez), gives, 1665; reaches out (to), 1996; Rechis (Reches), offers, 1906; Reche vp, *pr. pl.* reach up, 817; Rechen, reach, 817; Rechis (Rechys), reach, hand over, 1791; Reches (Rechen) vp, *pr. pl.* hand up, deliver up, 958; Rechid (Raugh-ten), *pt. pl.* reached, 2405.
- Reche (Rachen), *ger.* to relate, 1354; Reched, *pp.* related, 521. A.S. *reccan*.
- Reches, *s.* riches, treasure, 3951.
- Reckend, *pp.* reckoned, 5501.
- Recordis, *pr. s.* records, informs, tells, 214; (Recordez), 709, 1044; (Recordes), 2060.
- Recouerd, *pt. s.* won, gained, 19; Recouyre (Recouer), *imp. s.* recover, win for (myself), 758.
- Redd, *adj.* afraid, full of dread, 1040,
2510. Swed. *rädd*, Dan. *ræd*. See Raddest.
- Rede, *v.* advise, 2837; *ger.* to read, 630; 1 *pr. s.* counsel, advise, 2166, 2464, 2601, 3115; read, 1646; Redis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* tellest, 244; (Redes), *pr. s.* reads, 1182, 1996; Redis (Redes), counsels, 1178; Rede, 1 *pr. pl.* read, 1077; Redes (Redyn), *pr. pl.* 1932; Redd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* I read, 3858; Redd, *pt. pl.* read, 2471; Redd (Redyn, *pr. pl.*), advised, 2872; Red, read, 2344; Redd, *pp.* read, 3588; Rede (Redde), 2843; Red, 1950; Rede, *imp. s.* advise, 5194. A.S. *rédan*.
- Rede, *s.* counsel, 1040. See above.
- Rede, *adj.* red, 20, 425, 1665, 1779, 4176; Redde, 3951.
- Rede, *adj.* ready, 3534. See Redy.
- Rede, reed; Rede-ryse, reed-rushes, reeds, 3858; Redis, *pl.* 3815, 3832, 4206.
- Redell, *s.* curtain, 4930. O.F. *ridel*, F. *rideau*.
- Reden (Riden), *pp.* ridden through, 1940; Redyn (Rydyn), ridden, 1203.
- (Redles), *adj.* without counsel, at a loss, 1040.
- Redy, *adj.* ready, 1382, 5358.
- Redy (Rede), *adj.* red, ruddy, 3369.
- Reede, *adj.* red, 5510.
- Reedis, *pl.* reeds, 5461. See Rede.
- Refete, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* feed, refresh (yourselves), 4587. Formed from L. *refectus*.
- Refis, *pr. s.* carries off, 5153; Refid, *pp.* reft, 5178. See Reft.
- Refreschid, *pp.* refreshed, 3808.
- Refreyne, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* subj. refrain, 4638.
- Reft, *pt. s.* (with vp), tore up, 409; Reft, *pp.* taken away (from), 2510, 4010. See Refis.
- (Refuse), *s.* refuse, 1887. A false reading; see Ashm. MS.
- Region, *s.* region, 992; Regions, *pl.* 19, 1048, 1054.
- Regme (Remes, *pl.*), *s.* realm, 1949. See Regne.
- Regne, kingdom, 1140, 3000, 3164; (Realme), 2653.

- Regne, *ger.* to reign, 518, 836; (*Reyne*), *v.* 1502; Regnyd, *pt. s.* 19.
- Rehers, *v.* rehearse, relate, describe, 21; consider, 329.
- Rehetis, *pr. s.* cheers, encourages (them), 3999; revives, recalls (his courage), 5320. “*Rehaitier, Rehaiter, Reheter*, encourager, reprendre des forces;” Roquefort.
- Reiroyed, *pp.* rejoiced, glad, 3960, 5227; (*Reiossed*), 3407.
- Reiroyed, *pp.* rejoiced, 3112.
- Rekanthes, *pl.* chains, 5128. See Rekenthis.
- Reke, smoke, incense, 1566.
- Reken, *ger.* to reckon, recount, tell, 150, 1206, 1448; to calculate, count, 41, 2269; Reken (*Rekyn*), *ger.* to reckon, 771; Rekens, *pr. s.* relates, 1280; Rekend, 1 *pt. s.* related, 4124; Rekind, *pt. s.* pronounced, uttered, 4931. See Rekyn.
- Rekenthis, *pl.* chains, 5542. A.S. *racente*, Icel. *rekendr*. Hence prov. E. *reckon-creeak*, lit. chain-crook (Halliwell). See Rekenthis.
- Rekilis, *s.* odour, perfume, 4977. A.S. *récels*.
- Rekilis, *pr. s.* smokes, reeks, 566. See above.
- Rekinly (*Rakenly*), *adv.* hastily, 2354; (*Rekenly*), quickly, soon, 2329; (*Rekyndly*), 794*. A.S. *recene*.
- Rekyn, *ger.* to count, 84; (*Reken*), *v.* recount, 1404; Rekyns (*Rekens*), *pr. s.* utters, 2354. E. *reckon*.
- Rekyn, *v.* control, take heed to, 21. A.S. *récan*, to reck.
- Releckis (*Relikkez*), *pl.* relics, 1572.
- Remembris (*Remenbrys*), *pr. s.* remembers, 2844; recalls, 4233; Remenbris, 2958; Remenbrid, 1095.
- Remnant, *s.* part, 22.
- Remowe (*Remefe*), *v.* remove, withdraw, 1975; Remowis, *pr. s.* removes, 4859; Removis (*Remewis*), 2538; Remowis (*Remevez*), 2031; (*Remevys*), rises up, 2943; Re-
- mowed, *pt. s.* removed, 1048, 1450; Remewid, 3704.
- Remys, *pl.* realms, 86.
- Ren (*Rynne*), *v.* run, 3383.
- Renay, *v.* refuse, 3534. O.F. *reneier*, Lat. *renegare*.
- Renewid, *adj.* (*prob. for Renownid*, renowned), 2819. The Dublin MS. has *reuerent*, i.e. reverend, noble.
- Renge, *the same as* Renke, man, 460.
- Rengis (*Ringes*), *pr. s.* rings, 1385. (*Renishit*), *pp.* as *adj.* passionate, 839*. See Renyst.
- Renke, man, 330, 739, 817, 992, 1203, 1216, 2166; Renkis, *pl.* men, warriors, 21, 177; (*Renkes*), 2378; (*Renkez*), 958. A.S. *rinc*. (*Renke*), *s.* rank, 1850.
- Rent, payment, tribute; To rent, in payment, in tribute, 4531.
- (Rent), *pp.* rent, broken, 775*.
- Renysche, *adj.* furious, 2943; Renyst, passionate, loud, 387. “*Rennish*, furious; *North.*”—Halliwell.
- Renyschly, *adv.* vehemently, vigorously, 4931. See above.
- Repaire, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* return, 3751.
- Reportand, *pres. pt.* reporting, relating, or sending back, 2414.
- Repreue (*Reproue*), *s.* reproof, blame, 2421.
- Repreues, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* reprove, blame, 4662; (*Reproued*), *pp.* rebuked, 1789.
- Request, *pp.* requested, demanded (by), 3443.
- Required, *pp.* asked, 2268.
- Rere, *v.* rear, build, 4581; (*Rerre*), 2258; Rerid, *pt. s.* reared, 5510; *pp.* 4068; Reryd, raised, 81; (*Reryd*), reared, 1373.
- Rerid, *s.* voice, noise, 488; Reryd, 387; (*Rerde*), noise, 2900. A.S. *gereord*.
- Res (*Reys*), *s.* race, hurry, 2979. See Rese.
- Resayfe (*Resaue*), *v.* receive, 826; Resayues, *pr. s.* received, 2329; *pr. pl.* 3210; Resayued, *pt. s.* received, took, 3478; received, 1182; (*Resaued*), *pt. pl.* 1695, 2428; Resaued, *pt. pl.* received,

- 1124 ; Resayue (Resaue), *imp. s.*
 3115 ; Resayues, *imp. pl.* 3315 ;
 Resayued (Resaued), *pp.* received,
 1646.
 Resche, *s.* rush, 4126, 4726.
 Reschowe, *ger.* to rescue, aid, 5162 ;
 (Rescew), 2813. See Reskowe.
 Rese (Rase), *s.* hurry, 1996. A.S.
ræs. See Res.
 Resild, *pp.* reticulated, covered with
 network, 4126. O.F. *resel*, F. *ré-seau*, from Low Lat. *retiolum*, net-
 work. The sense is ‘as covered
 with network as a rush,’ which
 probably means no more than
 ‘furrowed like a rush,’ or rough,
 without any very close resem-
 blance to actual network. Other-
 wise, if the reading be corrupt,
 the easiest correction is to read
refild, or rather *rifeld*, i. e. rivel-
 led, wrinkled.
 Reskowe, *ger.* to rescue, 5202. See
 Reschowe.
 Reson, reason, 1670 ; cause, 244 ;
 talk, 3524 ; sentence, 387 ; Resons,
pl. accounts, 1280.
 (Ressynnys) ; see Risonis.
 Reste, *s.* rest ; To reste (At rist), at
 rest, set, spoken of the sun, 686.
 Resyn, *pp.* risen, 82, 351.
 Rethere, *pl.* the cattle, 1239. See
hreoðer in Stratmann. A.S. *hriðer*,
hryðer ; *pl.* *hriðeru*.
 Retorik, rhetoric, 4360.
 Reuere, *s.* river, 5595 ; (Reuer),
 2894 ; Revers, *pl.* 4822.
 Reuerence, *s.* reverence, respect, 197,
 1124, 1182, 1646, 3463.
 Reuerence, *pr. s.* does reverence to,
 1600 ; Reuerenst, *pt. pl.* 2344.
 (Reuerently), *adv.* reverently, 817.
 Reueschid (Reuest, *pp.*), *pt. s. refl.*
 dressed himself, 1530.
 Reuest ; see Raueste.
 Reufully, *adv.* sadly, 3083.
 Reuire, *s.* river, 5279 ; Reuir, 3852.
 Reuth, pity, 2244 ; Reuthe (Reuth),
 sorrow, grief, 1280, 2813.
 Revell, *ger.* to spend in revelling,
 3463.
 Reviles (Revylez), *pr. s.* reviles,
 739.
 Rew (Rewe), *v.* rue, repent, 1975 ;
 Rewis, *pr. s.* 3137 ; (Rewys), *pr.*
s. refl. repents, 871 ; Rewid, *pt.*
pt. repented, 3524 ; Rewis, *imp.*
pl. have pity, 3314.
 Rewfully, *adv.* ruefully, sadly, 2843.
 Rewill, *s.* rule, 4422 ; (Rewle), rule,
 ritual, 1500 ; Rewle, 2894.
 Rewle, *ger.* to guide, 5542 ; to order,
 3609 ; (Rewle), *v.* rule, 799* ; Re-
 welle, 1 *pr. pl.* rule, 4332.
 Rewme, *s.* kingdom, realm, 49, 80,
 82, 185, 197 ; (Realme), 813,
 3241 ; (Reme). 1740 ; Rewmys
 (Realmes), *pl.* kingdoms, 2363.
 Rewthe, *s.* pity, sad sight, 4010.
 See Reuth.
 Reyne, *s.* rein, 2973.
 Reȝt, *adv.* rightly, 1740.
 Reȝt (*perhaps*), *adj.* right, upright,
 2943. For the spelling, see above.
 Rial, *adv.* royally, grandly, 4360.
 Riall, *adj.* royal, 244, 941, 3314.
 Rially, *adv.* royally, 1530, 1572 ;
 (Ryally), 3210.
 Rialme, *s.* realm, dominion, 20.
 Rials, *pl.* men of the royal rank or
 kin, 3443.
 Rialte, *s.* royal power, rule, 3534 ;
 royalty, royal state, 22, 5122 ;
 (Riallte), royalty, pride, 2428.
 Ribans ; see Rabies.
 (Ribbez), *pl.* ribs, 775*.
 Richest, *adj.* *superl.* richest, 4822.
 Richas (Richez), *s.* riches, 1178.
 Riche, *adj.* rich, powerful, 197, 351,
 871, 992, &c. ; (Ryche), 1530.
 Riches, *s.* wealth, 20, 1663.
 Riches, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself,
 5056. See Gloss. to Gawayne
 and the Grene Knight.
 Richest, *adj.* richest, 1572.
 Ridars (Ryders), *pl.* riders, knights,
 1054.
 Ridding (Riddynge), *s.* clearing, ras-
 ing (a town), 2244.
 Riddour (Raddour), *s.* harshness,
 2329. See Raddour.
 Ride, *ger.* to ride, 82, 999 ; (Ryde),
ger. to ride over, 1731 ; *v.* 1502 ;
 Ridis (Rydez), *pr. s.* rides, 943,
 2062 ; (Rides), 1319, 1450 ; Riden
 (Ryde), 1 *pr. pl.* ride, 1850 ; Ride
 (Rydyn), 1 *pr. pl.* subj. 2166 ;
 Ride (Ryden, MS. dyden), *pr. pl.*

- ride, 1803; (Ridyn), *pr. pl.* ride, 796.
 Rife, *adj.* abundant, 1663.
 Rifte, *error for Riste or Reste, ger.* to rest, 4064. See note.
 Rige (Rigge), *s.* back, 2973; (Rige), 784*; (Riggez), *pl.* 775*.
 (Right), *adj.* right, 784*.
 (Right), *adv.* just, 798*.
 (Rightes hym), *pr. s.* sits upright, 839*.
 Rime (Reme), *s.* rim, 1850.
 Ringe, *s.* ring, border, 1850; (Rynggez), *pl.* ring-mail, lit. rings, 2980.
 Risches (Rechez), *s.* riches, treasure, 3115.
 Rise (Ryses), 2 *pr. s.* risest, 1494;
 Risis (Ryses), *pr. s.* rises, 2347.
 Risonis (Ressynnys), *s. pl.* heads of oats, 3060. "Rizome, the head of the oat; Chesh. 'A plume, or bell, or bunch of oats, and such other corn as does not grow in an ear;' Kennett, MS. Lansd. 1033." — Halliwell. Cf. Prov. Swed. *ressma*, an ear of corn, especially of oats, a spike of corn (Rietz).
 Rist, *v.* rest, leave off, 22; Ristis, *pr. s.* 5654; Ristes, 4920.
 Riued (Ryfe), *adj.* abundant, full of abundance, 1740, 1779. Icel. *rifr*, rife; *reifa*, to bestow.
 Rist, *adv.* right, immediately, 95, 431; just, exactly, 101; (Right), exactly, 1365; (Ryght), just, 2483; Rist as (Right as), just as, 1756.
 Ristis (Rightez), *pl.* rights, 3241.
 Riwisnes, righteousness, 4424; Riwysnes (Ryghtwyssnes), 3383.
 Robies (Rubies), *pl.* rubies, 1663.
 Robry, *s.* robbery, 4563.
 Roche, *s.* rock, 5496; Rochis, 4864; Roches, 4877.
 (Rode), rude, 829*.
 (Rodely), *adv.* rudely, boldly, 784*.
 Rodogarus, mother of Darius, 3314; Rodogars (Rodogors), 2819; (Rodogoras), 2824.
 Rofe, *pt. s.* tore, hurt, 638.
 Rogh, *adj.* rough, 4864; Roghe, 4126, 5133.
 (Roke), *s.* rock, 4849; Rokkis, *pl.* 4864.
 (Rolland), *pres. pt.* rolling, galloping, 794*.
 Romance, *s.* the original Romance, 488, 4133; (Romayns), 2900; Romaunce (Romanys), 1077.
 Romayn, Roumania (?), 5670.
 Rome, Rome, 2328, 4649.
 Romys, *pr. s.* roars, cries, 612. Cf. A.S. *hréam*, noise, cry. (Better spelt *remys*.)
 Ronde, *adj.* round, 1502.
 (Rongen), *pt. pl.* rang, 775.
 (Ronke), *adj.* rank, abundant, 1762.
 Ronkenes, *s.* rankness, 3350.
 Ronsees, *pl.* (Rounsey, *s.*) horses, 2887. M.E. *rouncey*, in Chaucer. See Rounsy.
 Roomes, *imp. pl.* roam, stretch out, 2466. See *roam* in my Etym. Dict.
 (Roones), *imp. pl.* rove, roam (after), 2466.
 Ropand, *pres. part.* rushing down, falling swiftly, 4176. Icel. *hrapa*, to fall, fall in ruin.
 Rosan, Roxana, 3315, 3449, 3463.
 Rose, *s.* rose, 4543.
 Rose, 1 *pr. pl.* praise, 4313; Rosid, *pp.* celebrated, 5122. Icel. *hrósá*.
 Rote, *s.* root, 4424; Rotis, *pl.* 409, 3941.
 Rottillyng, *s.* disturbance, 943. Cf. E. *rattle*, which is often provincially pronounced *rottle*.
 Roue, *pt. s.* rived, pierced, 1216.
 Roune, whisper, secret, 244.
 Rounsy, charger, 817. See Ronsees.
 Route, *s.* company, set, 2378; throng, 1319; (Rowte), rout, host, 958, 1239.
 Row (Rawe), *adj.* rough, 2980.
 Rowme, *s.* room, 4920; place, 330.
 Rowme, *adj.* roomy, large, 1762. A.S. *rúm*.
 (Rowmyd), *pt. s.* made room for (but read Removed), 1048.
 Rowste, *s.* voice, 488. Icel. *raust*, Dan. *röst*.
 Rughe, *adj.* rough, 4726, 4877.
 Rughere, *adj.* rougher, 3815.
 Ruschid (Rushes, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* hurled, 1320.

- Russe, Russia, 5670.
 Ruyde, *adj.* rough, turbulent, 5595.
 Ruze, *adj.* rough, 3852; wild, 1762.
 Rybans; see Rabies.
 Ryde, *ger.* to ride, 915, 2813, 762*;
 Rydes, *pr. s.* rides, 1284; Rydis
 (Ryden), *pr. pl.* 1239; Rydyn,
 pr. pl. ride (or *pt. pl.*), rode, 1256.
 Ryfe, *adj.* rife, plain, evident, 1352.
 Ryfenes, *s.* rifeness, plenteousness,
 abundance, 1887.
 Ryft, *s.* rift, cleft, 1756.
 (Ryfyng), *s.* rending, 747*.
 Rymed, *pt. s.* stretched, 4931.
 Ryn, *ger.* to run, 1352; Rynnes,
 pr. s. 1323, 1513; (Rynnys),
 2900; (Rynny), *pr. pl.* 2979;
 Rynand, *pres. part.* running,
 3737.
 Rynge, ring, 425, 436.
 Rynges, *pr. s.* rings, 775.
 Rynoceros, rhinoceros, 4133; Rynos-
 eros, 5133.
 Rype, *adj.* ripe, 1347.
 Ryse (Rise), *v.* rise, 2438; Rysis,
 pr. s. 330, 392; (Risez), 782;
 Rysys, 2871; Ryse (= Risis),
 557; (Rysys); (Rysys), 2870.
 Ryse, *s.* rushes, 3858. See note.
 Ryst (Rist), rest, 2516; To ryst,
 at rest, 374.
 (Rytte), *pp.* torn, 775*. Icel. *rīta*,
 to scratch, cut (hence also to tear,
 as G. *reissen*); cognate with A.S.
 writan.
 Sa, *adv.* so, thus, 146, 259, 268, 269,
 459, &c.; (So), 840.
 Sa ma aydeus (So madeus), so may
 God aid me, 729. *For So m'aide*
 Deus, so may God aid me.
 Saarde, Sardis, 5666.
 Sable (Sabyll), *adj.* sable, black,
 1126.
 Sable, *s.* sable, black colour, 3946.
 Sacchell (Sachell), *s.* wise man, phi-
 losopher (?), 716. Used ironically;
 it seems to be formed from
 O.F. *sache*, wise (Roquefort), Low
 Lat. *sapius*, wise
 Sacrifice, *v.* sacrifice, 5098 (*where read*
 sacrif[ie]e); Sacrifyce, *pr. s.* sacri-
 fices, 1083; (Sacrified), *pt. s.* 1083.
 Sacrifis, *s.* sacrifice, 4461; (Saci-
- fese), 1486; *miswritten* Sacrife,
 2182.
 Sacrilag, *s.* sacrilege, 4561.
 Sad, *adj.* settled, 2895; Sadd, *adj.*
 full, complete, 3883; Sadd sowme,
 close rank, lit. close (*or* full)
 number, 5559; Sadd (Sad), *adj.*
 close, firm, resolute, 2614; sad,
 5052. A.S. *sæd*.
 Sadils, *pl.* saddles, 5453. See Sadyll.
 Sadly, *adv.* seriously, 347; fixedly,
 1859; forcibly, 4146; firmly,
 securely, 2568; with determina-
 tion, 1139; Sadli, sadly, 5584.
 Sadnes (Sadnesse), *s.* staidness, so-
 berness, steadiness, 1017.
 (Sadyll), saddle, 790*, 795*, 839*.
 See Sadils.
 Safe, *adj.* safe, 1677; Safe vouch
 (Saue woche), 2 *p. pr. pl. subj.*
 vouchsafe, 2355; and see Vouchid.
 Saffron, *pp.* coloured with saffron,
 4600.
 Safirs (Saphirez), *pl.* sapphires, 1535;
 Safers, 4880.
 Sage, *adj.* wise, 1649, 4704.
 Sagely, *adv.* wisely, 3359.
 (Sagh), *pt. s.* saw, 770*.
 Saghe, *s.* saw, saying, 4997.
 Sagittarius, the name of a place,
 1070.
 Sai, *v.* say, tell of, 5551; Sais (Says),
 pr. s. 2 *p.* sayest, 730; Sais, *pr. s.*
 says, 80, 192; (Says), 881, 1371;
 Sais, *pr. pl.* say, 1732; Saied, *pt. s.*
 said, 4941; Said, 96, 228; (Sayde),
 1355; Said (Saydyn), *pt. pl.* 1815;
 Sai, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* say, 5193; Sais
 (Says), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* say ye, 890.
 Saile (Sayle), *ger.* to sail, 1026;
 Sailand, *pres. pt.* sailing, 61.
 Sailers, *pl.* sailors, 4359.
 Sailid, *pt. pl.* assailed, 5559. *Short*
 for Asailid.
 (Saire), *adv.* sorely, 2313.
 Sake, *s.* sake, 5, 1813, 2022; guilt,
 3213. A.S. *sacu*.
 Salomon, Solomon, 1649.
 Salcary, *Lat.* Soltani, 5501.
 Sale, *s.* hall, chamber, room, 48, 222,
 332, 487, 502, 1183, 1830, 2063,
 2929, 3074, 3229, 3685, 4432,
 5339; Sales, *pl.* halls, tents, 4016.
 A.S. *sæl* (Grein).

- Sale (Saule), *s.* soul, 1640.
 Sall, 1 *pr. s.* must, am to, 3194; Sall, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* shalt, 688, 774; Sall, *pr. s.* shall, 177, 184, 251, 403, 519; Sal, 388; Sal (Shal), *pl.* 1358.
 Salmary, *s.* baggage, collection of instruments, &c., 126. Low Lat. *salmaria*, the same as *sagmaria*, baggage.
 Salt, *adj.* salt, 154.
 Salue, *s.* unguent, 4976; Salues, salves, 4343; Saluys, 3132.
 Salue, *v.* heal, 3132; Salues, *pr. s.* salves, heals, 4683.
 Salus, *s.* salutation, 4647.
 Salutis, *pl.* salutations, greetings, 3088; (Salutes), 1914; (Salutez), 1490; Salutes, *pl.* greetings, 2759, 2802.
 Same, *adj.* same, 288, 741*.
 Same, *in phr.* In same, i. e. together (though here used as a mere expletive), 2646. "They gaderyd hem *insame*;" Rich. Coer de Lion, ed. Weber, 4386.
 Samen, *adv.* together, 162, 175, 2351, 3671; (Sampnen), 1550; In samen, 5295. See Samme.
 Samme, *adv.* together, 5098. See Samen.
 Sammen (Samme), 1 *pr. s.* collect, assemble, 3168; Sammes (Sampnez), *pr. s.* gathers, 1520; (Sampnes), *pr. pl.* collect, assemble, 2351; Samed, *pt. s.* assembled, 1026; Samyd, 51; Sammed, *pp.* assembled, 2614; Samed (Sampned), collected, 1732; Samed (Sammyd), *pp.* assembled, gathered, 2828; Sammed, *pp.* filled, gathered full, 5290. A.S. *samnian*.
 Sampill, *s.* sample, example, proof, 5306; see Ensampill.
 Sampson, 1202, 1221, 1264, 1288.
 Sand, *s.* land, 4299.
 Sande, *s.* message, 3780; Sand (Sond), embassy, 2524; Sandis (Sondez), *pl.* messages, 890.
 Sande, 1 *pr. s.* send, 3168.
 Sandisman, *s.* messenger, 4234; (Sondesman), 2866, 2964; Sandisman, *pl.* messengers, 2399, 5100; (Sandesmen), 1830; (Sondesmen), 1790; (Sendesmen), ambassadors, 1170.
 Sange, song, 253, 1645.
 Sannd, *s.* sand, 5555.
 Sanng, *pt. pl.* sang, 3698.
 Sanys (read Sauys), *pr. pl.* save, preserve, 1749.
 Sapience, wisdom, 253, 1022; Sapient, 3725; knowledge, 622; Sapient (Sapience), wisdom, 2374; (Sapiens), 2526; Sapientis, *pl.* wise acts, 4449.
 Sarazens (Sariauntez), *pl.* Saracens, 1510.
 Sare, *s.* sore, harm, 3771; Saris, *pl.* 3132, 4343.
 Sare, *adj.* sore, severe, 797.
 Sare, *adv.* sorely, 385, 531, 856, 1464; (Sore), 2532, 2698.
 (Sarkenly), 2401. Perhaps an error for *sekirly*, as in A.; or miswritten for *certenly*.
 Saroparis (Satrapers), *pl.* satraps, 1913.
 Sary, *adj.* sorry, miserable, 665, 1735, 4417; poor, 4037.
 Sat, *pt. s.* sat, 482; Satte, 3336.
 Satraparis (Satrapars), *pl.* satraps, 2758; Satrapaires, 2694; Satrapairs (Satrapers), 1937.
 Sattild, *pp.* settled, 4429.
 Sauagyus, *pl.* savages, 3914.
 Sauand, saving, except, 4037; Sauand bot, except, 3707.
 Saudid (Sawdett), *pp.* stuffed, set, 1535. F. *souder*, to solder, lit. to make firm; Lat. *solidare*.
 Saudiours (Saugeours), *pl.* soldiers, 1921, 2105; (Sougeours), 2828; (Sowiours), 763. See Saugeours.
 Saue (Safe), *v.* save, heal, 2558, 3087; Saued, *pt. s.* saved, 5586. See Sauyd.
 Saue, *prep.* save, except, 3842.
 Sauely, *adv.* safely, 3771. See note.
 (Saugeours), *pl.* soldiers, 2172. See Saudiours. Cf. prov. E. *sodger*.
 Saule, soul, 742, 754, 3089, 3474; (Sawle), 1786, 2628; Sauls, *pl.* 4429.
 Sauour, *s.* smell, sense of smell, 4634.

- Sauour, *s.* knowledge, 4429, 4474.
Cf. F. *savoir*.
- Saute, *s.* assault, 1388, 2221, 2380, 3360; (Sawte), 1156, 1431, 1452, 1766, 2135; (Sawt), 1968.
- Sauyd (Saud), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* saved, 2093; (Saffed), *pp.* preserved, 2668. See Saue.
- Sawe, *ger.* to sow, 4404; 2 *pr. pl.* 4580; Sawis, 1 *pr. pl.* 4268.
- Sawe, *pt. s.* saw, 266; (Saw), *pt. pl.* 1616.
- Sawe, *s.* speech, saying, 1845; (Saw), 863; Sawis, *pl.* words, 5115; sayings, 51, 99, 200, 262; (Sawes), 1655; Sawes, 3567; (Sawes), prophecies, 797*.
- Sawis, *pl.* saws, 5557. See Saze.
- Sawourd, *pt. s.* savoured, tasted, 4821.
- Say, *s.* silk, 4600.
- Say, *v.* say, tell, 51, 165, 1097; *ger.* 240, 253, 294; Say, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* say, address, 2735; Sayes, *pr. s.* says, 5002; (Says), 1207; Sayn, *pr. pl.* tell, 2112; Sayd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* said, 447; 2 *pt. s.* saidest, 246; *pt. s.* 167, 268; *pp.* 262; Say, *imp. s.* tell, 288.
- Saynes, *pl.* nets, 4270. F. *seine*, L. *sagena*.
- Sayntis, *pl.* saints, 4.
- Saynt-ware (Sanctuary), sanctuary, 1567. O.F. *saintuaire*.
- Saze, *s.* saying, saw, 4220; sentence, 5192; answer, 751; (Sagh), 3249; Sazes, *pl.* sayings, words, 4478; (Sawes), 1795, 2322, 2774; (Sawez), 1818; (Sawys), *pl.* sayings, 2356.
- Saze, *s.* saw, 4096. See Sawis.
- Saze, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* saw, 475; (Sawe), 1635; *pt. s.* 61, 222, 419, &c.; (Sawgh), 2072; (Saw), 1433, 2112; (See), 2301; (Se), 1796; Saze, *pt. pl.* saw, 1383, 4003; (Seghen), 2854. See Se.
- Saztill (Saghtyll), *imp. s.* make peace, be reconciled, 865. A.S. *sahtlian*.
- Scales, *pl.* scales, 3895.
- Scalid, *adj.* scaled, furnished with scales, scaly, 3865.
- Scamandra, Scamander, 2119.
- Scath, *s.* harm, 3915.
- Scence, *s.* incense, 4976.
- Sceptoure (Septour), *s.* sceptre, 3161.
- Scere, *ger.* to scare, 3865.
- Schade, *s.* shade, 3800.
- Schaft, shaft, spear, 780; shaft of a spear, 1402; Schaftis, rays, 4816; (Shaftez), shafts, 789.
- Schaftis, *pl.* chaps, jaws, 4797. *Put for Chaftis.* Icel. *kjaptr*, jaw.
- Schakis, *pr. s.* shakes, 551.
- Schalk, man, 469; Schalkis (Shalkys), *pl.* men, 929; (Shalkez), 2454.
- Schame (Shame), *s.* shame, 1800; disgrace, 748.
- Schamed, *pp.* ashamed, 469.
- Schap, *s.* shape, body, 4301; destiny, 180; Schapp, shape, 4761.
- Schapid, *pt. s.* escaped, 3004. *For Aschapid.*
- Schapis, *pr. s.* shapes, forms, 4026;
- Schape, *pr. s. subj.* incline, work towards, 3371; Schapen, *pp.* decreed, 178.
- Schard, *pp.* cut, i.e. formed, 4675. From the weak verb *scharen*, of which the *pt. t.* *scharde* occurs in Sir Degrevant, 1630. See Halliwell.
- Scharpe, *adj.* sharp, 602.
- Scharpid, *pp.* sharpened, 3580.
- Scharply (Sharply), *adv.* sharply, 1299, 1391.
- Schathill (Schatell), *adj.* harmful, dangerous, powerful to injure, 2992. See *Scaþel* in glos. to Allit. Poems. Goth. *skathuls*.
- Schatird, *pt. s.* shattered, 4150. See Alto-schatird.
- Schauadry (Cheualdry), *s.* baseness, 3371. ‘*Shavelder*, an idle vagabond;’ Halliwell.
- Schauyn, *pp.* shaven, 231.
- Schaw, *s.* shaw, wood, 4730, 4731; Schawis, *pl.* groves, thickets, 4382.
- Schawe, *ger.* to shew, 601; Schawid, *pp.* 4390.
- Scheld, *ger.* to shield, protect; To scheld with oure schap, to protect our forms with, 4301.
- Schell, *s.* shell, 3695; Schellis, *pl.* 5469.
- Schellis, *pl.* sheilings, shelters, 4049. Cf. Icel. *skjól*.

- Schemerand, *pres. pt.* glittering, shimmering, 483, 5592. See Schondirhand.
- Schend (Shend), *v.* disgrace, 3371; Schende (Shende), *ger.* to destroy, 870.
- Schene, *adj.* beautiful, 5592; splendid, 483, 780; *adj. as sb.* bright one, fair maid, 4759.
- Schering (Sheryng), *s.* shearing, cutting, 2624.
- Schethe (*pl.* Shether), sheath, 802.
- Scheue, *s.* shive, splinter of a broken spear, 1402. *Better Schiue;* but see below.
- Scheuerand (Sheuerand), *pr. pt.* shivering, splintering, 789.
- Scheuyn (Sheuen), *pr. pl.* shake, 776. Cf. *cheueren*, to quiver, shiver, in the Morte Arthure and Troy-book.
- Schew, *s.* cloud, sky, 4865. Cf. Icel. *ský*, a cloud; Halliwell gives *skew* = sky, from MS. Cot. Vesp. D. 7.
- Schewe, *ger.* to show, 15; (Shewe), 2029; *v.* 255, 684; Schewis, *pr. s.* shews, 286; (Schewez), beholds, 2669; Schewys, shews, 608; (Schewez), 2919; Schewid, *pt. pl.* shewed, 4049; Schewid, *pp.* shewn, 180; Schewyd, 474; Schewid (Schewed), 1896.
- Schewere, *s.* mirror, 4854.
- Schidis (Shidez), *pl.* splinters, fragments, 789. A.S. *scíde*.
- Schild (Sheld), shield, 780; (Shelde), 1402; Schildis, *pl.* shields, 3797, 5560.
- Schilde, *pr. s. imper.* shield, defend, forbid, 3521.
- Schilli (Shilly), *adv.* shrilly, loudly, 929. "Schylle, Sonorus;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Schilling (Schelyng), *pl.* shillings, 3174.
- Schind, *v.* disgrace, 5335. See Schend.
- Schipis, *pl.* ships, 65, 113; (Schippes), 1367; Schippis (Shippes), 1159.
- Schire, *adj.* bright, 483, 5018; sheer, mere, 4301. Icel. *skírr*.
- Schirkind, *pt. pl.* cleared, rendered bright, brightened, 4816. Cf. Icel. *skíra*, to brighten, cleanse.
- Scho, she, 241, 257, 268, 352.
- Schogs, *pr. s. refl.* shivers, shakes, trembles, 5018. See *Shog* in Halliwell.
- Schoke, *pt. s.* shook, 5018.
- Schomes (*in MS. for Schoures*), *pl.* showers, 1299.
- Schondirhand, *pres. pt.*, error for Schemerand (Shemerand in D.), shimmering, gleaming, 780. See Schemerand.
- Schondirhed (Shenderet), *pp.* slain, 2048. *Formed as if from a verb Schonderen, or Schenderen, frequentative of Schonden, Schenden, to disgrace; see Schend, Schont.*
- Schont, *s.* jest, disgrace, 469. *Put for schond; see schand in Stratmann.*
- Schontid; see Schoutis, Schount.
- Schort, *adj.* short, 630.
- Schote (Shote), *s.* shot, i.e. stone shot from engines, 2624.
- Schote (Shote), *ger.* to shoot, 1064; Schotes (Shoton), *pr. pl.* 1391; Schot (Shoton), *pp.* shot, 1299.
- Schount, *ger.* avoid, 180. E. *shunt*.
- Schouris, *pl.* showers, hence sorrows, woes, 529. See also Schomes.
- Schoute, *s.* shout, 4730.
- Schoutis (Shotes), *pr. pl.* shout, 929; Schoutid, *pt. pl.* shouted, clamoured, 580 (but here we should rather read *schontid*, i.e. removed, shrank, lit. *shunted*). See the note, and see Schount.
- Schowid, *pp.* shoved, used force, 4759.
- Sc[h]rewe, *s.* mischievous creature, 4854; Schrewis, *pl.* ill-disposed lads, 628.
- Schrikis, *pr. pl.* shriek, 3866; (Scrikes), 929.
- Schrine, *s.* shrine, 5592. See Schryne.
- Schroude, vestment, robe, 483; covering, 4301. A.S. *scrúd*.
- Schryne, *s.* shrine, 4675. See Schrine.
- Schudering (Shoderyng), *s.* crashing, clashing, lit. shuddering, 2624.

- Schuldire, *s.* shoulder, 5240; Schuldere (Shulder), 1090.
- Schurrys, *pl.* sheds, 4049. Icel. *skúrr*, a shed.
- Schut (Shotyn), *pr. pl.* shoot, 1413.
- Schynes, *pr. s.* shines, 3862; (*Shynes*), 705.
- Sckerres, *pl.* scars, scours, rough rocks, 4865. Icel. *sker*.
- Sekonfet, *pt. s.* discomfited, 4802.
- Scott (Shotten), *pt. pl.* shot, dashed, leapt, hurried, 2454.
- Scoghe, *s.* wood, shaw, 3915. Icel. *skógr*.
- Scolaid, *pt. s.* studied, 645. Chaucer has *scoleye*, Prol.
- Scole, school, 621, 641, 645; Scolis, *pl.* 4363, 4610.
- Scolere, scholar, 641.
- Scopid, *pt. pl.* escaped, 3915. *Put for Scapid.*
- Scopulus, a look-out place, 1575. See the note.
- Score, *s.* score (twenty), 1372, 4200; ix score, one hundred and eighty, 3177.
- Scorpions, *pl.* scorpions, 3865, 4200.
- Scortis, *pr. s.* (for Schortis), grows short, wanes, 3298.
- Scoures (Showrez), *pl.* showers, 2048.
- Scriptour (Scripture), writing, 2119; Scripture (Scriptur), text, 1575.
- Scutis, *pr. pl.* project, 4865. Icel. *skúta*.
- Se, *v. see*, 250, 344; (*See*), 688; Se, *ger.* 356; to look upon, 1528; Se (*See*), 1 *pr. s.* 1998; 2 *pr. pl.* 1802; Se, *pr. pl.* 1 *p. subj.* see, 1846; (*Se*), *pt. s.* saw, 1590; Se, *imp. s.* 1914; (*See*), 702.
- Se, *s. sea*, 83.
- (Seche), *adj.* such, 1191, 1819.
- Seche, *ger.* to seek, 408; Seches (*Sekes*), seeks, goes, 1056. See below.
- Sechis, *pr. pl.* come, 4976. A better reading would be *as sykis out of wellis*, like streams out of wells. *Siche* is a Southern form of *sike*, a stream, torrent.
- Sechus (Sichus), Zethus, 2215.
- Secund, *adj.* second, 2303, 3660; Secunde, 3356.
- Sede, *s.* seed, 586, 1991, 4268; race, 4333; Sedis, *pl.* 3725, 4404.
- Seder, *s.* cedar; Seder-tables, tables of cedar, 5290. See Sedrisse.
- Sedill, *adj.* (probably) chaste, modest, gentle, 3937. Formed from A.S. *sidu*, good manners, lit. custom; cf. *sedefull*, modest (*Ormulum*); Icel. *siðugr*, well-bred; Dan. *saædelig*, modest; G. *sittsam*, modest. The suffix is A.S. *-ol*, as in *wac-ol*.
- Sedrisse, *pl.* cedars, 4973. See Seder.
- See, *s.* sea, 26, 61, 411; Sees, *pl.* 4406.
- See, *v. see*, make out, 5605; *ger.* to attend, 754*; Sees (Seys), 2 *pr. s.* seest, 3279; Sees, *pr. s.* sees, 943; perceives, 5360; See, *pr. pl.* 3208; (*Seen*), 1253; See, *pt. s.* saw, 657, 733*; Seis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* behold, 3878.
- See-bule, *s.* sea-bull, 4098; (*read See-bulis, pl.*), 4197; See-bules, *pl.* sea-bulls, sea-cows, 3846.
- Seele (Seale), *s.* seal, 2344; (Sealle), 1914.
- Seelis, *pl.* seals (sea-animals), 5471; Seeles, 3846.
- Seerties, *pl.* varieties, 4654. See the note; and see Sere, *adj.*
- Seet, *pt. s.* (*for we read he, see note*), set, appointed, 4654; *pp.* set, situate, 5333.
- Seete (Sete), *s.* seat (*supply in, as in the Dublin MS.*), 2995.
- Sege, siege, 1029, 1144, 1156, 3020; camp, 2442; Sege (Seige), siege, 1282, 1336.
- Sege, *s.* seat, chair, 236, 262, 536, 548, 1872, 2324; throne, 3325, 3388, 5182, 5630, 5643; Sege (Seyge), seat, throne, 3284; Segis, *pl.* thrones, 3456; seats (Lat. *sedilia*), 3337.
- (Seget), *pp.* called, 2234. From *seggen*, to say; but the right form is *seid*. The reading is probably corrupt.
- Segge, *s.* man, 111; (Sege), 1316; (Seghe), 2286; Segg (Segge), 2526; (Segh), 1626, 1633; Seg (Sege), 1580; Sege, 2251, 2390; (Segge), 2296; Seggis (Seggez),

- s. *pl.* warriors, men, 1137, 2020, 3168 ; (Segges), 1329 ; (Segez), 797, 1796, 2199 ; (Segez), 2103 ; Segges (Segez), 2291 ; Segis, 34, 86 ; (Segez), 1787, 2043 ; (Segez), 2137 ; Segge, *gen. pl.* of men ; Of segge werke, of the work of men's hands, 4473.
- (Seggen), *pr. pl.* say, 1070.
- (Segh), *pt. s.* saw, 3291.
- Segid, *pp.* besieged, 4296.
- Seis (Sittes), *pr. s.* sits, 980.
- Seising, *s.* seizing, conquest, 4396.
- Seke, *v. seek*, 908, 5532 ; find, 1364 ; go, 3081 ; advance, 1735 ; Seche, seek, attack, 2020 ; Seke (Sech), seek to go, aim, 3295 ; (Sekyn), go, 3081 ; (Seke), *ger.* to seek, 1968 ; Seke (Seche), 1 *pr. s.* seek, seek to fight, advance, 2748 ; Sekis (Sekez), *pr. s.* goes, 924 ; (Sekys), goes, 2189 ; Sekis, 2 *pr. s.* seekest, 1759 ; Sekand, *pres. pt.* seeking, 154.
- Seke, *adj.* sick, ill, 856, 2003, 2017, 2548. A.S. *seoc*.
- Sekeman, *s.* sick man, 5605.
- Sekire, *adj.* certain, 5370 ; true, very, 4479 ; (Sekir), trusty, 2646 ; certain, sure, 2840, 2891 ; (Sekyr), good, sterling, genuine, 1042 ; Sekir (Syker), good, 763 ; trusty, 1202.
- Sekire (Sekerly), *adv.* assuredly, 2748.
- Sekirly, *adv.* for a certainty, 303 ; securely, 2401 ; (Sekerly), certainly, 1634.
- Seknes, *s.* sickness, 2808 ; Sekenes, 4440.
- Selcuth, *adj.* strange, great, 3598 ; valiant, 3043. A.S. *seldcūð*, strange.
- Selcutive, *s.* wonder, marvel, 3663, 5533 ; Selcuthis (Selcouthez), *pl.* wonders, 2112.
- Selcuthely, *adv.* wonderfully, 3076 ; strangely, 5291 ; (Selcouthly), wonderfully, 1022 ; Selcuthly, wondrously, exceedingly, 5584 ; (Selkouthly), wondrously, 2822.
- Selcuthest (Selcoutest), *adj. superl.* wonderfulest, famousest, 1244.
- Seldoum, *adv.* seldom, 4220.
- Sele (Sealle), *s.* seal, 1845, 1931, 2802 ; (Seale), 1717.
- Sele, *s.* happiness, bliss, good luck, 249, 1855, 4547 ; (Ceyle), prosperity, 1862. A.S. *sēl*.
- Sele (Syle), *ger.* to ceil, roof, cover, 1519.
- Sele, *perhaps an error for* Soile, i. e. soil, 2760. Or from A.S. *sele*, a house, dwelling ; hence, habitation, land. (Probably corrupt.)
- Selere, *s.* cellar, apartment, 5291. *But clearly an error for* Solere, a summer-chamber. (Error of *e* for *o* is common.)
- Selfe, *adj.* same, very, 288, 498, 3388, 4895 ; (Self), 3229 ; (Seluen), 754.
- Selfe, self ; ȝour-selfe, yourself, you yourself, 875 ; Selfe, himself, 435.
- Selid, *pp.* sealed, 5100 ; (Selett), 1170.
- Sell (Self), *pron. self*, 2524.
- Selle ; see Selly.
- Selly, *adj.* strange, marvellous, 326, 570, 1580 ; (Sellich), 1732 ; strange, i. e. great, 5575 ; vast, 2089 ; Selle, *adj.* strange, wonderful, great, 4884 ; vast, 89.
- Selly, *adv.* strangely, extremely, 3567.
- Selly, *s.* marvel, 2551 ; Sellis, *pl.* wonders, 5551.
- (Selue), *adj.* very, 1998, 741*.
- Semand, *pres. part.* seeming, 1252. See Seme.
- Semblance, *s.* appearance, demeanour, 5192 ; Sembalaunce, 4098.
- Semblant, *s.* appearance, face, aspect, 4141 ; (Sembland), 1627, 841*.
- Semble, *s.* assembly, army, 3978 ; encounter, meeting, 797 ; Semle (Semble), assembly, 1573.
- Semble (Assemble), *v. assemble*, 1921 ; Semble, *ger.* to assemble, meet in battle, 759 ; Semblis, *pr. s.* attacks, 1333 ; (Sembles), assembles, 2668 ; Semblis, *pr. s.* assembles, 1282 ; Semblis (Assemblies), *pr. pl.* assemble, 2351 ; Sembled, *pt. s.* (Sembles, *pr. s.*), assembled, 2489 ; Sembled, *pt. pl.* assembled, 617 ; Semblid (Semblid), *pp.* assembled, 1244, 2536 ;

- Sembild (Semblyd), *pp.* assembled, 2270.
- Sembling (Semblyng), *s.* assembling, 769.
- Seme, *v.* beseem, suit, 979; Semes, *pr.s.* beseems, 747, 5209; (Semys), 2000; it seems, 1349, 3196; Semys, seems, 1634; it beseems, 716; Semed, *pt. s.* seemed, 635, 1156; (Semyd), seemed, 1423; beseemed, 2779; Semed (Semyd), seemed likely, 2003; seemed, 1375; seemed (to reach), 2108; Semyd, seemed, 70, 1528.
- Seme, *ger. error* for Sene, to see, 682; the Dublin MS. has *se*.
- Semely, *adj.* comely, 238; seemly, 1281; seemly person, 2003; fair one, 5264; (Semelych), 2179; (Semelych), 2017, 3043.
- Semely, *adv.* fitly, 281; fittingly, 198; comelily, 424.
- Semple (Semble), *v.* assemble, 2796; Semble (Assemble), *ger.* to assemble, 2803.
- Semylacre (Symylacre), *s.* image, 2997; Semylacris, *pl.* images, effigies, 5637.
- Sen, *conj.* since, 179, 465, 1105, 1850, 2950, 3438, 3544, 4258; (Seth), 891; (Syon), 1864.
- Send, *v.* send, 1833; Sende, *ger.* 1868; (Send), 1254; Sendis, *pr. s.* sends, 352, 1716; (Sendes), 1711; (Sendys), 1170; Send, *pr. pl.* 1042; Sent, 2 *pt. s.* sentest, 2022; Send, *pt. s.* sent, 4234; Sent, 670; (Send), 1463; Sente, *pt. pl.* sent, 3774; Sent (Send), *pp.* 1490.
- Sendale, fine linen, 1519.
- Sene (See), *ger.* to see, 1061; *pp.* seen, 62, 1551.
- Seneour, *s.* senior, lord (*but a false reading*), 2760. See below.
- Seneours, *pl.* elders, princes, 2487; Seneiours (Senyours), *pl.* seigneurs, lords, 1614. See Senioure.
- Senescalls (Senescallez), *pl.* seneschals, 3400; Seneschalls (Senescalls), 2753.
- Senioure, *s.* prince, 3073; Seniour (Seneour), lord, 2634; Se[n]ioure (Senyour), *s.* ruler, lord, 3198;
- Seniours (Senyours), *pl.* lords, 1937. See Seneours.
- Seniourie (Senory), *s.* dominion, 1913, 1976.
- Sens, *s.* incense, 4184.
- Sensitife, *adj.* sensitive, 4381.
- Sensours (Censours), *pl.* censors, 1565.
- Sent, *s.* feeling, perception, 4615.
- Sent, *s.* assent, 617. *For Asent.*
- Senture, *s.* cincture, girdle, 4963. *F. ceinture.*
- Senurie (Senyoury), *s.* lordship, 2778.
- Senyour, *s.* lord, 5600.
- (Sepe), *ger.* to sink, fail, 716. (Such is the sense required; it is evidently miswritten for *seye* = *seze*.) See Sezes, and cf. the reading of Ashmole MS.
- Septer, sceptre, 502; (Septour), 980; Septere (Septur), 1128; Septour, 198, 2324, 3325.
- Sepulture, *s.* sepulchre, 3143.
- Seraphens, *pl.* Seraphim, 4915.
- Seraphis (Serapys), Serapis, 1084; (Seraphys), 1101.
- Ser, sir, lord, 161, 513, 637, 771, 869, 3239; (Sir), 695, 1005; (Sire), 765; Seris, *pl.* sirs, 182; (Sirys), lords, 2491.
- Serche, *ger.* to search, 3132.
- Sercle, *s.* circle, 3736, 4373; Serclis, *pl.* 277.
- Sere, *adj.* various, separate, divers, 86, 277, 570, 1083, 1585, 1567, 1694, 1889, 2010, 2104, 2112, 2765, 3707, 4453, 4461, 4915; various, many, 2753.
- Sere-lepy, *adj.* separate, 4521; various, sundry, 4440, 5125; Serelypy, different, 605; Serelepis, *adj. pl.* various, 4893.
- Serenon, Ceres, 4510, 4536.
- Seriantis (Sergeantes), *pl.* serjeants, officers, 2475; Seriant (Sergeantez), serjeants, 3403.
- Serke, *s.* shirt, sark, 4963; Serkis, *pl.* 4339, 4672.
- Serop (Syroppe), syrup, drink, 2578; (Syrope), 2558; Serep (Syroppe), 2568.
- Seropis, Serapis, 4460.
- Serpentis, *pl.* serpents, 3707, 3883, 4197.

- Serres, Seres, i.e. Chinese, 3956, 3958.
- Sertan, *s.* certain amount, 5121.
- Sertane, *adj.* certain, 3956.
- Sertis, *adv.* certainly, 4371.
- Seruage, *s.* service, 2778, 3528; (*Seruage*), 918; Seruage (*Seruyce*), servitude, 1937.
- Seruand, *s.* servant, 2779; (*Siruand*), 1962; (*Siruant*), 1727; Seruandis (*Seruandes*), *pl.* servants, 2753.
- Seruand, *error for* Seruise (*as in the Dublin MS.*), service, 2694.
- Serue, *v.* obey, 2410; serve, suit, 1364; Seruyd, *pt. s.* served, was of service, 2374; Serued, *pp.* served, 1685, 5282.
- Serue, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* deserve, 4389; Serued, *pp.* earned, 3426. *Short for Deserue.*
- Serues, *s.* service, 918.
- Seruitute, *s.* servitude, 4349.
- Sese (*Sesyn*), *v.* (1) seize, 1776; Sesis, *pr. s.* seizes, lays hold of, 5283; (*Seses*), takes, 1452; (*Sesez*), seizes, 2115; Sesid, *pt. s.* put, placed, 5637; Sesyd, seized, 1142; Sesid, *pt. pl.* seized, took, 4119; Sesid, *pp.* taken, 2386, 5403; (*Sesyd*), 1358; Sesyd, 2380; Sese, *ger.* (2) to seize, i.e. to give possession (of), put in possession (of), 5220; (*Seyse*), *ger.* to put in possession, 2566, 2633; Sesid, 1 *pt. s.* put in (thy) possession, 2578; Sesid, *pt. s.* put (him) in possession (of), 4210; Sesan, *pp.* seized, put into possession, delivered up, 5313; Sesid, seised, possessed, put in possession, 3161; Sesid, seised, possessed, 3558; Sesid (*Sesyd*), *pp.* seized, taken possession of, 1449.
- Sesis (*Seses*), 2 *pr. s.* ceastes, 2736; Sesis, *pr. s.* ceases, 546, 4377; stops, 4683; Sesid (*Sessyed*), *pt. pl.* ceased, 2045; Seses, *imp. pl.* cease, 182.
- Seson, season, 881; (*Seasun*), 2895.
- Sesonde (*Sesund*), *pp.* seasoned, prepared, 2923.
- Sesse (*Seys*), *pr. s.* sees, 2532.
- Sesyng, *s.* seizing, seizure, 3490.
- Set (Sett), *v.* set, 2796; Sett, *v.* 1766; *ger.* to set, to be set, 1365; to set, 1158; (*Set*), 2296; Sett, 1 *pr. s.* 1802; Settis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* buildest, 5403; Settis, *pr. s.* sets, 3049; (*Settes*), 1431, 1452; Setis (*Settez*), sets, dashes, 1221; Set, sets, 1859; Settis (*Settes*), pitches, 1143; Settis (*Settes*) vpon, begins, 2135; Settes owt, *pr. s.* thrusts out, 841*; Set, *pt. s.* 1 *p.*; Set agayns, attacked, 2082; Sett, *pt. s.* established, 4305; ordered, 4951; Set, *pt. pl.* set, 1139; (*Sett*), appointed, 759; Sett, *pp.* set, placed, 281, 605, 1291; appointed, 179, 443, 522, 5412; established, 1649; rendered, 3911; Sett, seated, 238, 502, 536; set against, opposed to, 1316; Settis (*Settes*), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* set, 2142.
- Sete, *s.* seat, 238, 482, 979, 2962, 3392; throne (*Lat. solium*), 2676; seat, habitation, dwelling, 1749. And see Sette.
- Sete, *adj.* suitable, fit, 249; (*hence*) short, 546; Sete quile (*Sete qwyle*), suitable time, 2356. From A.S. *sittan*, to sit, M.E. *sitten*, to suit. See *sete* in Stratmann.
- Seten (*Settyn*), 1 *pr. pl.* sit, 1850.
- Seteqwile (*Sete-while*), *s.* fitting while, convenient while, i.e. short time, 3081. See Sete, *adj.*
- Sethen, *adv.* afterwards, 282, 424, 495, 631, 2325.
- Sethen (*Syne*), *conj.* since, 2292.
- Setnes, *s.* set time, 5553.
- Sett, *s.* setting, 2045.
- Sette, *s.* seat, habitation, 4952. (*Error for Sete.*) See Sete.
- Sette, *s.* set (*either company or those set or put*), 3284.
- Settynge, *s.* setting, 5508.
- Seuen, *num.* seven; "be seven" = the seven deadly sins, 4293; (*Seuen*), 1961. See Seuyn.
- Seuent (Seuynt), *adj.* seventh, 2342. (*Seuenten*), seventeen, 795*.
- Seuyn, *num.* seven, 44; (*Seuen*), 1528, 1677. See Seuen.
- Seuyn (*Seuent*), *adj.* seventh, 2157; (*Seuente*), 3388.
- Seuynete, *num.* seventy, 634.

- Seuyntene (Seuentene), seventeen, 2105.
- Seuyrd, *pt. s.* was separated, 579.
- Sewe, *ger.* to follow, 2105, 3534; *v.* pursue, go on, 2840; make suit, sue, 5161; imitate, 2515; Sewis, *pr. s.* follows, 5507; Sewes, 3091; (Sewes), 2502; (Sewyd), *pp.* followed, been used to, 795*; Sewe, *imp. s.* follow, 686.
- Sewe, *v.* sew together, 1925 (the Dublin MS. has Insew); Sewys, *pr. s.* sews up, 423.
- Sewes, *pl.* pottages, 4275. See *Sew* in Halliwell.
- Sex, six, 5470.
- Sexes, Xerxes, 2361, 3558; (Serxes), 3136; (Seryxes), 3097; Sexis, 5600; (Sixes), 2483; (Serexies), 2994.
- Sext, *ord.* sixth, 3346, 3384.
- Sextene, sixteen, 3821.
- Sexti (Sexty), sixty, 1042; (Sexty), 806*.
- Seyis (Sezes), *pr. s.* goes, 1573.
- (Seysyd), *pp.* seized; Seysyd to hym, seized for himself, 3187. See *Sese*.
- Sezes, *pr. s.* sinks, falls, 4333; passes, goes, 2182; Sezes, *pr. pl.* sink, fall, drop, 2043, 2057, 3641; Seze, 4844; Sezen, pass, go, 1481; Sezes, *pr. pl.* (*with to*), approach, advance to (the city), 1388. A.S. *ségan*, to cause to sink, confused with *sigan*, to sink, fall. Note also *Seye*, to go, *Sezen*, arrived, in Gloss. to Gawayn and the Grene Knight, and *Seie* in the Troy-book.
- Sezis, 2 *fut. s.* shalt see, 5022; *pr. s.* sees, 3053; Sezes, heeds, 3291; perceives, 5583; Sezis, heeds, 4478; *lit. sees, but used with the sense of seems*, 4704.
- Sezt, *s.* sight, 5537.
- Shaftis (Shaftez), *pl.* shafts, rays, 1544.
- Shalkis (Salkez), *pl.* men, 1391; (Shalkez), 3267*.
- (Shall), *pr. s.* shall, 809*.
- (Shamesly), *adv.* shamefully, 739*.
- Shapid (Echapyn, 1 *pr. pl.*), 1 *pt. pl.* escaped, 1944.
- Shapis, *pr. s.* forms, shapes, 113; Shap, 2 *pr. pl.* intend, 2143; Shapen (Shapyn), *pp.* ordained, 2260; (Shapyn), ordained, 3267*; Shapid (Shapyd), *pp.* decreed, 809.
- (Sharpe), *adj.* sharp, 957.
- Sharpid (Sharped), *pp.* sharpened, 1890.
- Shauys, *pr. s.* shaves, 121.
- Shaw, *ger.* to shew, 321; Shawis, *pr. pl.* shew (themselves), 3429.
- (She), she, 948.
- Sheet, 1767*. See Ouer-sheet and Shote.
- (Shelde), *pr. s. subj.* shield, 1472.
- Shemerand, *pres. part.* shimmering, 1544.
- (Shendes), 2 *pr. s.* spoilest, 1767*; (Shendit), *pp.* spoilt, destroyed, 2236.
- (Shendship), *s.* disgrace, 3267*.
- Shethe (Sheth), *s.* sheath, 2639.
- Shewe, *v.* shew, 1827; *ger.* 1666; Shewis (Shewys), *pr. s.* shews, 928; Shewid, *pt. pl.* 1704.
- Shildis (Sheldez), *pl.* shields, 787.
- (Shillynges), *pl.* shillings, 807*.
- Shipis (Shippez), *pl.* ships, 2454.
- Shire, *adj.* bright, sheer, clear, pure, 113, 1544, 2454, 4675; (Shire), 807*, 2048.
- Sho, *pron. she*, 3928; (Sho), 733*; Shoo, 5145.
- (Shote), *s.* shot; Shote ouer-sheet, overshoot thy shot, 1767*. *Read ouer-sheet.*
- (Shote), *ger.* shoot, cast, 807*; (Shotyn), *pt. pl.* shot, 3041; (Shott), *pp.* 1544.
- Shount, *ger.* to escape, 2143. E. *shunt*.
- Showte, *s.* shout, 1392.
- Shrewe, *s.* mischievous person, 1706.
- Shuldirs (Shulders), *pl.* shoulders, 812; (Shulders), 731*; (Shuldres), 773*.
- Sibbe, *adj.* akin, 4492. See Syb.
- Sibbire, *adj. comp.* nearer of kin, 586.
- Siche, *adj.* such, 83, 1889; Sich, 1076.
- Sichim (Sychim), Sichem, 1759.
- Sichomures, *pl.* sycamores, 4973.

- Sicistrus (*Sicistreus or Sicisterus*), *proper name*, 2234.
- Side, *s.* side, direction, 1221, 1520, 5021; Sidis, *pl.* sides, 773, 1424, 2215, 4672; parts, regions, borders, 1921, 2115; Of þa sidis, in those quarters, 3867. See Syde.
- Side (*Syde*), *adj.* long, 1925.
- Sidlings, *adv.* sidelong, 2057.
- Sighinges, *pl.* sighs, 5052.
- Sighis, *pr. s.* sighs, 5584.
- Signes, *pl.* wonders, 4935. See Sygnes.
- Sike, *adj.* such, 126, 3607; (*Sike*), 868, 1015; Sike, such (men), 946; such (things), 4272; (*Suche*), 2580; (*Slyke*), 2047.
- Sike, *v.* sigh, lament, 2313.
- Silis, *pr. s.* turns, goes, 111, 161, 335, 5264; (*Sylez*), goes, 2922; comes, 1087; Siles, *pr. pl.* sub-side, drop, fall, 3043; Silis, go, 161. See *Sile* in the Troy-book; and see *Sylis*.
- Silke, *s.* silk, 4016; (*Sylke*), 2401.
- Silkin, *adj.* silken, 5295; Silkyn, 236; Silken (*Sylkyn*), 1520.
- Silloure, *s.* canopy, 4915. See *Sylure* in Prompt. Parv.; and see *Sylours*.
- Siluer, silver, 276, 1571, 1588, 1889; Siluyre, 129.
- Silueryn (*Syluer*), *adj.* of silver, silvern, 1565.
- Similitude, *s.* parable, 2735; likeness, similitude, 1627, 2024, 4229.
- Simpill, *adj.* simple, 4664; ignorant, 4404. See *Sympill*.
- Simplenes, *s.* simplicity, 4040, 4051.
- Sinagoges (*sing. Sinagoge*), *pl.* synagogues, 1481. See *Synagogue*.
- Sindid, *pp.* burnt, 2236. Cf. A.S. *sinder*, cinder.
- Siphagoyne (*Prynphagoyne*), *place-name*, 2759.
- Sipris, *s.* cypress-wood, 5290; Sipirs, 4453; Sipresses, *pl.* cypresses, 4973. See *Syppirs*.
- Sipris, Cyprus, 4600.
- Siraphis, Serapis, 200; Sirapis, 5409; Sirraphis, 161.
- Sire, *s.* sire, master, lord, 303, 311, 1131; sir, 363, 517; father, 1786; (*Syre*), father, lord, sire, 1126, 2251; (*Sir*), 1004; (*Syr*), 691, 1720; Siris, *pl.* sirs, lords, 3436; (*Syres*), 2268; Sirs (*Sirres*), 1185; Sirres (*Sirs*), 2286. See *Syre*.
- Sire soile, fatherland, soil of thy sire, 5021.
- Sireland (*Surry*), Syrian land, Syria, 1614.
- Sirie (*Surry*), Syria, 1137.
- Siriens (*Surriens*), *pl.* Syrians, 1696; (*Sariens*), 1447.
- Sise, *s.* size, 26.
- Sit (*Sitte*), *v.* sit, 1855. See *Sitt*.
- Sithe, *s.* time, 4204. A.S. *sit*.
- Sithe, *s.* scythe, 3971.
- Sithen, *conj.* since, p. 282, l. 92.
- Sithid, *adj.* scythed, armed with scythes, 3598, 3821.
- Sithin, *adv.* afterwards, then, 5385; (*Syne*), 1537.
- Sitiles (*Siteles*), City-less, without a city or home, 2286.
- Sitt, *v.* sit, 592; (*Sitte*), dwell, 1677; Sittis (*Sittes*), 2 *pr. s.* sittest, 1872; Sittis, *pr. s.* sits, 161; 1 *pr. s.* sit, 1724; Sitt, *pr. pl.* sit, remain, be left, 3807. See *Sit*.
- Sizis (*Sighez*), *pr. s.* sighs, 3076.
- Sist, *s.* sight, 1252, 2051, 2270; glance, look, 4855; (*Sight*), 967, 1551.
- Skapis, *pr. s.* escapes, 642; Skapid (*Scapett*), *pt. s.* escaped, 2992.
- Skarlet, *adj.* scarlet, 467.
- Skars, *adj.* scarce, short, 5040. (For *fra* read *for*.)
- Skatheles (*Schatheles*), *adj.* unharmed, 2992.
- Skathely, *adv.* with difficulty, with injury, 642.
- Skathill, *adj.* harmful, 4802. Cf. Goth. *skathuls*, harmful.
- Skautand, *pres. pt.* pushing, darting violently, 4200. Halliwell gives *scaut*, to push violently; cf. Icel. *skota*, to shove, allied to E. *shoot*.
- Skelp, *v.* beat, 1924. See *Jamieson*.
- Skere, *s.* scare, fright, 4731.
- Skerrid, *pt. s.* scared away, 4802.
- Skewys, *pl.* skies, 561.
- Skifte, *v.* change, die (lit. shift), 5040; Skiftis, *pr. s.* shifts, changes, 4622. See *Skyftis*.
- Skilfull, *adj.* skilful, 645.

- Skill (Skely), *s.* reason, 1575.
 Skinnes, *pl.* skins, hides, 4114.
 Skire (Skyre), *adj.* sheer, bright, 1824. See Shire, Skyre.
 Skirmard, *pres. part.* screaming, 5157.
 Skirtis (Skirtez), *pl.* skirts, 1533.
 Skity, *adv.* suddenly, swiftly, 5040. Cf. M.E. *skeet*, swift.
 Sklendire, *adj.* slender, 4923.
 Skorge (Scourge), *s.* scourge, 1924.
 Skorne, *s.* scorn, 641.
 Skowis, *pl.* woods, lit. shaws, 5157. Icel. *skógr*.
 Skrike, *s.* screech, shriek, 4731; Skrikes, *pl.* 5157.
 Skyftis, *pr. s.* changes, 467. See Skifte.
 Skynnes, *pl.* skins, 5084. See Skinnes.
 Skyp, *pr. s. subj.* skip aside, leap aside, 642.
 Skyre, *adj.* bright, sheer, 467; (Skyr), pure, 2119. See Skire, Shire.
 Slaa, *ger.* to slay, 5412; *v.* 4403, 5330; Sla, *ger.* 2566; Sla (Slaye), *v.* 1766; Slaes, *pr. s.* slays, 3883, 4841; Sla, 2 *pr. pl.* 4547; Slaa (Sla), 3198; Slayn, *pp.* slain, 722, 1329, 2057; Slay (Slayn), 1264; Slayne, 691, 2089; Slayne vp, *pp.* wholly slain, 1449; Slane, 4733, 4844, 5575.
 Slaare (Slaer), slayer, murderer, 967.
 Slade (Slode, Slayde), *pt. s.* slid, passed quickly, 2870, 2962; (Slayde), 2962.
 Slakis (Aslakes), *pr. s.* ceases, 857; Slakid, *pt. pl.* slackened, ceased, 3050.
 Slane; see Slaa.
 Slauyn, *s. a* (pilgrim's) mantle, 1925. See Slaveine in Halliwell.
 Slawth, *s.* sloth, 4293.
 (Slayde), *pt. s.* slid, 2962; see Slade.
 Slayn, Slayne; see Slaa.
 Slaztere, *s.* slaughter, 3049; Slažter (Slauughther), death, 708; Slažtir, *s.* deadly effect, lit. slaughter, 4855. (The glance of the basilisk caused death.)
 Sleely, *adv.* slily, cautiously, 5174.
 Slee, *pr. pl. 2 p.* slay, 4461. See Slaa.
 (Sleghly), *adv.* quickly, 2057. Cf. Icel. *slétr*, smooth; *slétt*, smoothly. (Slingers), *pl.* slingers, 2219.
 Slepe, *s.* sleep, 351, 375, 419, 1084, 1512; Slep, 344.
 Slepe, 1 *pt. s.* slept, was asleep, 475; Slepit, *pt. s.* slept, was sleeping, 4849.
 Sletis, *pr. s.* hastens, 380. Cf. A.S. *slætan*, to hunt.
 (Slew), *pt. pl.* slew, 2043.
 Slezly (Shyllghly, *sic*), *adv.* slily, 2962. See Slely.
 Sležt, *s.* sleight, cunning contrivance, 4857; (Sleght), 2634; Sležt (Sleght), sleight, skill, 1022; stratagem, 1364; Sležt (Sleghes, *pl.*), skill, 2374; (Slyght), trick, 2566; Sležtis, *pl.* sleights, arts, 38, 334; (Sleghtez), stratagems, 1445.
 Slide, *pp.* slidden, gone away, 4456. See Slade.
 Slike, *adj.* such, 11, 38, 62, 399, 539, &c.; like, 4229; (Slyke), 1752; (Sike), 1742; (Siche), 1516; Slik, such, 67, 69, &c.; (Slyke), 1641; (Suche), 2389; All slike, just such, 3084.
 Slingis (Slingers), *pl.* slings, 2219.
 Slipe, *v.* slip away, pass away, come to naught, 179.
 Slire, *wrongly for* Skire, sheer, pure, 2119. The Dublin MS. has *skyr*. See Skire.
 Sližly, *adv.* slily, silently, 2870.
 Slowefull, *adj.* slothful, *p.* 279, *l.* 16.
 Slowmand, *pres. part.* slumbering, 5174. "Słoum, to slumber, Yorkshire;" Halliwell.
 Sloze (Slogh), *pt. s.* slew, 1431; Sloze, *pt. pl.* slew, 3904, 4113, 5567; (Slogh), 3421; (Slew), slaughtered, 1139; (Sloghen), 3213; Sloze, *pt. pl. 1 p. subj.* (if we) were to slay, 5351.
 Slughe, *s.* slough, outer skin, 4456; Složis, *pl.* sloughs, skins, 5085. See the note.
 (Slyghtly), *adv.* quickly, 2870.
 (Slyke), such-like, such, 2219. See Slike.

- Slymand, *pres. pt. as adj.* slimy, claylike, 4456.
- Small; In small, in small bits, 1309.
- Smallire, *adj. comp.* smaller, 1334.
- Smaragdone, *s.* emerald, smaragdus, 3856; [S]maragadane, 3342; Smaragdans, *pl.* emeralds, 3678; Smaragdens, 5424; Smaragdins, 5272; Sinaragdyns, 3670, 5643.
- Smert, *adj.* rough, 1309.
- Smert, *adv.* smartly, promptly, 5515.
- Smeten, *pp.* beaten, 3678; hence, stuck, decked, 5272; (Smytyn), smitten, 1309. See Smyte.
- Smeth, *adj.* smooth, 3341, 3670, 3678.
- Smethe, *v.* smith, forge, 5515.
- Smithis, *pl.* smiths, 5515.
- Smyles (Smylez), *pr. s.* smiles, 2461; (Smyllys), 2725.
- (Smyte), *v.* smite, 843; Smytis (Smytez), *pr. s.* smites, 1222; Smyten, *pp.* lit. smitten, hampered out, made, 3342; (are) smitten, 3082; Smytten, smitten, beaten, 5424. See Smeten.
- Smythis, *pl.* smiths, 5424.
- Snakis, *pl.* snakes, 3794.
- Snape, *s.* (probably) winter-pasture, patch of grass, 1560. Cf. Icel. *snöp*, 'scanty grass for sheep to nibble at in snow-covered fields'; Vigfusson. Hence, in this passage, it must mean a patch of grass for winter-pasture.
- Snapirs (Snappers), *pr. s.* stumbles, 847. See note, p. 294.
- Snart, *adj.* severe, 3633. See Gloss. to Gawayne and the Grene Knight. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *snarre*, severe.
- Snatirs, *pr. s.* staggers, stumbles, 3995. See Snapirs.
- Snaw, *s.* snow, 4925, 5482; Snawe, 4165; Snawe (Snaw), 1560, 1756.
- Snayles, *gen.* snail's, 4095.
- Snaypid, *pt. s.* disconcerted, marred, 3995; nipped, caught suddenly, checked, severely wounded, 3633. North. E. *sneap*, to check, chide.
- Snelle, *adv.* quickly, swiftly, 3995. A.S. *snel*, quick.
- Snowte, *s.* snout, trunk, 3633.
- Snyppand (Snappand), *pres. part.* dazzling, 1560. See Jamieson.
- Snyth, *adj.* (probably) smooth, 4095. The lit. sense is 'cut', from Icel. *sniða*, to cut. Cf. prov. E. *snod*, smooth; Sc. *sned*, to cut, prune.
- Snyzes, *pr. s.* issues, creeps (out), 4095. Cf. Icel. *snigill*, a snail.
- So, *adv.* so, 14, 69, 140; And so, i. e. and so forth, and the like, 2551, 4184; And soo, and the like, 3821. (A curious phrase.)
- Sobband, *pres. part.* sobbing, 3249.
- Sobire, *adj.* sober, 4266.
- Sobirly, *adv.* soberly, 4643; discreetly, 5340; calmly, 2356.
- Sobirte, sobriety, 4040.
- Socure (Socour), *s.* succour, 959, 1463, 2252.
- Socurs (Socours), *pr. s.* succours, aids, 2834.
- Sodanly, *adv.* suddenly, 1052, 3391; Soda[n]ly, 2862; (Sodenly), 1626; (Sodandy), 1859.
- (Sofre), *v.* suffer, 2435.
- Soft, *adv.* softly, 2401.
- Softe, *adj.* soft, 2000; Soft (Softe), 2024; (Softe), 2071.
- Softly, *adv.* at ease, 482; gently, 548; in an under tone, 2952; Softely (Softly), gently, 698.
- (Soght), error for Sothe, i. e. true, 1806. See the Ashmole MS.
- Soiet (Sugett), *s.* subject, 2682. (*Soiet* = *sojet*.)
- Soile, *s.* soil, country, 1749, 3728; ground, 3284; Soile (Soyle), 3161.
- Solas (Solace), solace, comfort, 1490.
- Solast, *pt. s.* solaced, comforted, 2072.
- Solayne, *adj.* solitary, single, 3805. Hence E. *sullen*.
- Solempnite, solemnity, pomp, 1645.
- Solers, *pl.* upper-rooms, 3684. See *Soler* in Halliwell.
- Solp, *v.* pollute, 4292. " *Sulpen, polluere;*" Stratmann.
- Some, some, 568; (Som), 774*; a certain, 755*; Some tyme, once, 1132.
- (Some), *adj.* same, 2063.
- Somere, *s.* summer, 3959; (Somer), 2895.
- Somere-hall, summer-hall, 5264; (Somer-hall), 2922.

- Somir-bathis, *pl.* summer-baths, 4343.
- Somme, *s. sum, number*, 83; (*Some*), 1889; host, 1026; (*Soume*), number, 2089, 2189; Some, *s. sum, number*, 62; host, 924; (*Somme*), host, 1144; (*Some*), *s. sum, quantity* (*but an error for fone*), 3180. (*Somme*), 1 *pr. s. (the same as Samme)*, collect, 3168.
- (*Sommed*), *pt. s. gathered*, 2219. See Sammen.
- Son, *s. son*, 572, 584, 618, 627; (*Sone*), 686; (*Sonn*), 697; (*Sonne*), 863; Sonnes, *pl. sons*, 4403; Sons, 5091; Biche sons, sons of a bitch, or *read* Biche sous, bitch-sows, 5482.
- Son, *s. sun*, 34, 281, 427, 543, 556; sun-rise, 2303; Sonn (*Son*), 1723; Sone (*Son*), 1518; Sonne, 442, 736, 1842; Son, *gen. sun's*, 62; Vndire son, under the sun, 4300; With vp sun, with sun up, with sunrise, 4067. Cf. *sundown*.
- Sond, *adj. sound, safe*, 5245.
- Sonde, *s. sound health, soundness, security*, 5616. See above, and see *sunde* in Stratmann.
- Sonders, *pr. s. breaks asunder*, 3067; Sondres, breaks up, 4377; Sondire, *pr. pl. 1 p. plough, lit. sun-dar, sever*, 4268; Sondird (*Sounderd*), *pt. pl. broke asunder*, 3003.
- Sondire; In-sondire, asunder, 4150.
- Sone, *adv. soon*, 59, 116, 222, 266, 362, 400; Son, 730; Sone as, as soon as, 394.
- Sonere, *adv. comp. sooner*, 4295.
- Son-sett, *s. sun-set*, 3050.
- Son-tree, *s. sun-tree*, 5008, 5018.
- Soo, *adv. so*, 4772; thus, 179, 3911; so, i. e. the like, 3821 (*cf. lines 2551, 4184*). See So.
- Sope, *s. sup, small quantity*, 3805. See *Sope* in Halliwell.
- Soper, *s. supper*, 2923.
- Sophistri, *s. sophistry*, 4364.
- Sopp, *s. company, body, troop*, 2351. See *Soppe* in Halliwell. Cf. Icel. *soppr*, a ball.
- (*Sorastes*), *name*, 916.
- Sorely, *adv. surely*, 165, 688.
- Soremont, *for Serement, oath*, 1464.
- Soroȝe, sorrow, 249, 529; (*Sorow*), 2051; trouble, 2157; Sorowe (*Sorow*), *s. pitiful creature*, 1753; Soroȝes (*Sorowys*), *pl. sorrows*, 1447; Soroȝis (*Sorowez*), *pl. sorry fellows*, 1735.
- Soroȝe, *v. lament*; Fand hire soroȝe, found her lamenting, 536; Soroȝes, *pr. s. grieves*, 4051; (*Sorowez*), 703; Sorowis (*Sorows*), 1288; Sorowis, *pr. s. grows dark, lit. grows sad*, 4141; Soruȝes, *imp. pl. sorrow ye*, 182.
- Sorsery, sorcery, 38; Sorsry, 5291.
- Sorte, *s. sort, quality*; in sorte (of sorte), according to their rank, 1555.
- Sotellest, *adj. superl. subtlest*, 34; Sotelest, most skilful, 2373; Sotellest (*Sotellest*), most delicate, most choice, 2923.
- Sotellte, subtily, skill, 258.
- Sothe, *adj. true*, 327, 1806; (*Soth*), 722.
- Sothe, *s. truth*, 165, 261, 463, 5412; (*Sothe*), 729; (*Soght*), 2286; For soth, of a truth, 99.
- Sothely, *adv. verily, truly*, 688; (*Sothly*), 691, 1640; Sothly, 5008.
- Sott, *s. sot, fool*, 1776, 4704; (*Sot*), 1862; Sottes, *pl. foolish men*, 2232; Sottis, fools, 4417; (*Sottez*), foolish ones, hence, innocents, children, 1602.
- Sott, *ger. to besot, stultify*; To sot with the pepill, to befool the people with, 4364.
- Souerayn, *s. sovereign, king, lord*, 154; (*Soueren*), 1818; (*Souer-and*), 1512; Souerane, 2774; (*Soueren*), 801*; Souerayne (*Souerend*), *gen. lord's*, 1813; (*Souerand*), 2914.
- Souerayne (*Souerane*), *adj. supreme*, 1724; Souereayn, 4210.
- Soueraynest (*Soueranest*), *adj. superl. chiefest*, 1913; Souerynest (*Soueranest*), most supreme, 3097.
- Soueraynete (*Souerente*), *s. lordship, dominion*, 1859.
- Soueraynlly (*Souerandly*), *adv. chiefly*, 1288.
- (*Souerente*), *error for Soueren, sovereign, lord*, 2774.

- Soukand, *pres. part.* sucking, 4197.
 Soume, *s.* number, 1202; company, 1244; host, 1282; Soume (Sume), sum, 1787; (Some), 763; Soumme (Soume), 1968. See Somme, Sowme.
- Sounde (Sunde), *adj.* sound, un-wounded, 2232.
- Sounde, *adv.* safely, 5532.
 (Sounderytt), *pt. s.* broke asunder, 3067.
- Soundire; In soundire (sonder), asunder, 1416.
- Souorly, *adv.* savourily, 4381. (*Error for Sauorly.*)
- Soupe, *v. sup.*, 2915.
- Soure, *adv.* bitterly (lit. sourly), 2313. See l. 5348; and see Sowe.
- Soute, *s.* under part (?); In soute, beneath (?), 4880. Such seems to be the sense of this doubtful word. Cf. *soute* in Littré, where it is explained that it represents Lat. *subtus*.
- Sowe, *v. refl.* gall, vex, grieve; *in the phr.* Soure suld him sowe = bitterly shall it vex him, 2313, 5348. See *Sow* in Jamieson.
- Sowme, *s.* sum, number, 2532, 3914, 4285, 4799; sum (of men), host, 2796; (Some), sum, number, 3019; (Soume), 2020, 2082; Sowme (Soumez, *pl.*), sum of men, army, 2620; Sowmes, *pl.* quantities, 4433.
- Sowme (Soume), *v. number*, 1986.
- Sowping, *s.* supping, 4439.
- Soyle, soil, 1252; (Sole), 1724.
- Soyned (Soned), *pt. s.* excused, 1464. See *essoin* in Supplement to my Etym. Dict.
- Soyte (Sote), *s.* suit, livery, 1580; (Sott), 1550; In soyte, in his suit (of robes), or among his suite (of men), 3336; Of a soyte, in a suit, alike, 3684.
- Soȝt, *pt. s.* sought, went, got up, 2962; went, 3049; (Soght), went, 1137, 1694; Soȝt him (Soght on), *pt. s.* advanced, 3207; Soȝt, *pt. pl.* sought, 163; Soȝt, *pp.* arrived, 3003.
- Space, *s.* space of time, 630, 971.
- Spacly (Sarply, *for Spacly*), *adv.* speedily, quickly, 2975. See Spakly.
- Spakid, *pt. s. refl.* soothed herself, was quieted, 237. Cf. Icel. *spakr*, Dan. *spag*, gentle, quiet.
- Spakly, *adv.* swiftly, 786. See Gloss. to P. Plowman; and see Spacly.
- Spare, *v.* spare, 364; Spared, *pt. s.* spared, refrained, 5320.
- Sparis (Sparrys), *pr. s.* starts, darts, 2975. See *spar*, to box, in my Etym. Dict.
- Sparke, *s.* spark, 2975.
- Sparles, *adj.* plentiful, lit. spare-less, 5467. The opposite of *sparing*, i. e. scanty.
- Sparth, *s.* halberd, battle-ax, 1403; Sparrethis (Sparthys), *pl.* 2458. Icel. *sparða*.
- Speche, speech, 234, 237, 739, 897; story, 1884.
- Speeches (Spekes), *pr. s.* speaks, 834.
- Specke (Speke), *s.* speck, 743.
- Spede, *v.* speed, prosper, 2178; Spedis (Spedes), *pr. s.* speeds, 931; pushes on, puts forth, 1226; (Spedes), *refl.* 3033; Sped, *pt. s.* hastened on, 1403; *refl.* made speed, 630.
- Spedely, *adv.* speedily, 1419.
- Spedfull, *adv.* speedy, short, 971.
- Spek, *ger.* to speak, 5320; Spekis (Spekes), *pr. s.* 733; (Spekys), 1088, 2185.
- Speke, *s.* speech, 3318.
- Spell, *s.* word, question, discourse, 3840.
- Spell, *ger.* to spell, 630; Spellis, *pr. s.* spells, tells, 4691; Spellis, *pr. pl.* say proverbially, 4397.
- Spelonk, *s.* cave, den, cavern, 5392. See Gloss. to P. Plowman.
- Spend, *ger.* to destroy, consume, kill, 2458; Spends, *pr. pl.* spend, give, 5467.
- Spene, *s.* space (lit. span), 4162. See Spenne in Glos. to Gawayne.
- Spere, spear, 651, 1218, 1226, 1318; (Sper), 793; Speris (Speres), *pl.* 786; (Sperez), 790.
- (Sperete), *s.* spirit, 2178.
- Sperid, *pt. s.* speared, pierced with a spear, 3649.

- Speris, *pr. s.* shuts, 5545; shuts up, 5494; *pr. pl.* shut, 1466.
- Sperpolid, *pt. pl.* dispersed, scattered, 4162. See *Sparpil* in Halliwell.
- Spetous, *adj.* spiteful, contemptuous, 4567; Spetous (*Spitous*), angry, hence terrible, destructive, 2458.
- Spices, *pl.* spices, 4724, 5427.
- Spill, *ger.* to kill, 3190; (*Spyll*), 2663; Spillis (*Spyllez*), *pr. s.* kills, 1318; Spillen, *pr. pl.* spill, shed, 3060; Spill, die, 3798; Spille, *subj. pr. s.* 1 *p.* kill, 5346; Spilt (*Spilten*), *pt. pl.* spilt, scattered, 1419; Spilt, *pp.* overthrown, 4162.
- Spire, *ger.* to ask, enquire, 2178; Spirid, *pt. s.* asked, 3840; Spird, 237. A.S. *spyrian*.
- Spirris (*Sparres*), *pr. s.* spurs, 1226.
- Spise, *v.* despise, 3533; Spises (*Dispysys*), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* despisest, 2746; Spised, *pt. s.* despised, 4567.
- Spitid, *pt. s.* despised, 2346. *Short for Despitid.*
- Spittis (*Spittes*), *pr. s.* spits, 745.
- Spittyng (*Spytting*), *s.* spitting, 743.
- Splene, *s.* spleen, 5054.
- Spoilis, *pr. s.* divests, unclothes, 4962; Spoiles, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* despoil, rob, 4419.
- Spokin (*Spokyn*), *pp.* spoken, 745; Spoken, 243, 298.
- Spon[ges], *pl.* sponges, 5467.
- Sporne, *v.* spurn, contemn, 3533.
- Spouse, *s.* wife, 2677, 3315, 5217.
- Sprede, *v.* spread, 1884; (*Spredes*), *pr. s.* 1514.
- Sprengis (*Sprynges*), *pr. s.* springs, 931.
- Sprent, *pp.* sprinkled, 743. Pp. of M.E. *sprengen*.
- (Sprenten), *pr. pl.* fly out, fly forward, 786. *Sprenten*, prosilire; Stratmann.
- Sprete, *s.* spirit, 3318, 4779, 5000, 5320; (*Spirit*), 971. See Sprite.
- Spring, *v.* spring, 1884; Springis, *pr. s.* springs, 1318; arises, 2044; rises, 1505; Springe, *pr. pl.* grow up, 4769; Sprong, *pt. s.* has spread abroad, 5111; arose, 2044; Sprongen, *pp.*; Of srongen, sprung from, 4213.
- Sprite, *s.* spirit, mind, 5054; Sprites, spirits, 58, 5392.
- Sprotis (*Sprotes*), *pl.* splinters, 790. Icel. *sproti*, twig, stick, rod.
- Sprygaldis (*Springaldez*), *pl.* catapults, engines for shooting heavy missiles, 1419. Miswritten for *spryngaldis*. See *springal* in Halliwell.
- Spurnes, *pr. s.* thrusts, 786; Spurned, *pt. pl.* kicked, 3898.
- Spynnes, *pr. s. refl.* goes swiftly, 3033. Cf. "to go at a spinning pace."
- Spyse (*Spysyn*), *pr. pl.* despise, 2931. *Short for Despyse.*
- Spyte (*Spite*), spite, 745. *Short for Despite.*
- (Stable), *s.* stable, 755*, 758*.
- Stable (*Stabyll*), *adj.* stable, 3259.
- Stable (*Stabill*), *ger.* to make stable, to build up firmly, 1367; *v.* fix, 1091; Stablis, *pr. s.* settles, 4631.
- Stad, *pp.* placed, 465; beset, 499. Icel. *staddr*, placed.
- (Staddes with), *pr. s.* ponders, resolves, settles within himself, 2960. Cf. Icel. *steðja*, to fix, appoint, resolve; *pp. staddr*. But probably a false reading.
- Staffe, *s.* round or rung of a ladder, 1438; Stafe (*Staffe*), staff of a sling, 1444.
- Staffull, *adj.* quite full, 1543, 4897.
- Stagis, *pl.* floors, stories of a building, 5265; rows of windows above one another, 4897.
- Staire (*Stare*), *s.* stair, i.e. ladder, 1438.
- Staire, *adj.* steep, sheer, 4828. A Yorkshireman told me that the ascent of Ingleborough from the West was 'a steer clim.' And so it is. See *stayre* in Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Stairis, *pr. s.* ascends, 4834.
- (Stakez), *pr. s.* staggers, 845. See below.
- Stakirs, *pr. s.* staggers, 845. Icel. *stakra*, to stagger.
- Stallid, *pt. pl.* placed, 195; Stall, *imp. pl.* 1 *p.* let us install, place, 589.

- Stallis, *pl.* stalls, choir-seats, 4543.
(Still common.)
- Stalworthe, *adj.* stalwart, strong, 3017; Stalword, 3937.
- Stalworthly, *adv.* stalwartly, valiantly, 1149; (Stalwartly), 2625; (Stalwortly), stoutly, 745*.
- Stamping (Stampyng), *s.* stamping, 781.
- Stampis, *pr. s.* stamps, pounds, 409.
- Stand-dede, *for Stan-dede, adj.* stone-dead, dead as a stone, 4845.
- Stand-quile, *s.* instant; *prob. an error for Stond-while* = Stound-while, the period of an hour, short-time, 4186.
- Stande, *v.* stand, 636, 1013; Stand, 1322; Standis (Standez), *pr. s.* stands, 861; Stand (Standes), *pr. s. subj.* stands, lasts, 2255; Standis (Standes), *pr. pl.* stand, 2165; Standen, *pp.* stood, 5585; Stand, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* stand, be, 5186.
- Stane, stone, 192, 263, 1127, 1136; Stanes, *pl.* stones, 1300, 1415, 2227; Stanys, 284, 566; Stanes, stones, gems, 483, 804, 1534, 3334; (Stanez), gems, 1074, 1662.
- Stanecast, *s.* stonecast, stone's throw, 3614.
- Staned, *adj.* built with stones, 4352.
- Stank, *s.* pool; Vp þe stank, upon the pool, beside the pool, 3918.
- Staplis, *pl.* staples, 1081.
- Starid, *pt. s.* stared, 263; Stared, *pt. pl.* glittered, 3796; Starand, *part. pres.* shining, gleaming, 804, 1534, 2880, 3615, 5286, 5396. See Prompt. Parv. See Sterind.
- (Startyn), *pr. pl.* leap, 778.
- State, *s.* state, kind, 5646.
- Statour, stature, 667; Statoure (Stature), 1702.
- Statute, *s.* statue, 5641. Lat. *statua*.
- Staues, *pl.* rounds, steps of a ladder, 2481.
- Staunke, *s.* stank, tank, reservoir, pool, 3854, 3923.
- Stayrand, *pres. part.* climbing, mounting, hence, advanceing, 3923. "Staree, to go up and down as it were over steps and stairs; Devon."; Halliwell. And see Staire.
- Stedd, *v.* place, 3977. From *stede*, sb.
- Stede, place, 195, 465, 589, 1069, 1091, 1574; steady, position of responsibility, 1013; steady, 5585; In stede, in good stead, 2165; Stedis (Stedes), *pl.* places, 1495; Steds (Stedes), 2884.
- Stede, *s.* steed, horse, 930, 1229, 5594; Stedis, *pl.* 1251; (Stedes), 781, 785.
- Stedill, *v.* stand still, 3977. Cf. prov. E. *steddle*, to make steady (Halliwell).
- Stee (Stegh), *s.* ladder, 2481. "Stee, a ladder, North;" Halliwell.
- Stekis, *pr. s.* fastens, 5485; (Stekys), sticks, is fastened, 683; Steke, *pr. pl. 1 p.* shut, close, 2139. See *steken* in Stratmann.
- Stele, *s.* steel, 788, 3374; armour, 1378.
- Stele-bowe, *s.* stirrup, 778.
- Stele-grauyn, *adj.* steel-engraven, 284.
- Stelid, *adj.* steeled, hardened; Welestelid, well hardened, 3897.
- Stelis, *pr. s.* gives stealthily, 5385; (Stelez), goes quietly, 2638.
- Stem, *v.* aim, attempt, 2480. Icel. *stefna, stemna*, to aim at, &c.
- Stemes (Stempmys), *pr. s.* speaks (to himself), 2960; Stemes, 5301. In l. 5301 read—'þan stemes he with, þe stoute king,' i. e. then he, the stout king, considers with himself. Icel. *stefna, stemma*, to summon, A.S. *stefnian*; A.S. *stefn, stemn*, the voice. So in Gawayn and the Grene Knight, *stemmed* = considered, pondered, not stopped, as given in the Glossary; i. e. it is allied to Icel. *stefna*, not to Icel. *stemma*, to obstruct.
- Step, 4845. Perhaps *To step* = in a steep direction downwards, i. e. headlong. See Stepe.
- Stepe, *adj.* steep, 4828.
- Steppis (Steppys), *pr. s.* steps, 2481; Stepis (Steppyn, *for which MS. wrongly* Spettyn), *pr. pl.* step, climb, 1437.
- Stere (Stirre), *v.* stir, 2809; Steris, *pr. s.* stirs, moves, 5075;

- animates, encourages, 5046 ; (Steryn), *pr. pl. refl.* bestir themselves, 2625 ; Sterid, *pt. pl. refl.* bestirred themselves, 2625 ; Sterid, *pp.* stirred, excited, 4256.
- Stere, *ger.* to manage, control, 5363.
- Stereops, *pl.* stirrups, 3615. See Sterops.
- Sterind, *pres. part.* shining, gleaming, 5385. See Starid.
- Stering, *s.* stirring, 781.
- (Sterne), *adj.* stern, strong, 1131. See Steryn.
- Sterne, *s.* star, 678, 683, 703 ; Sternes, *pl.* 127, 282, 604, &c. ; Sternys, 1993 ; (Sternez), 3224. Icel. *stjarna*.
- Sternes, *pl.* the stars (but prob. an error for *stours*, i. e. battles), 3495. See above.
- (Sternly), *adv.* sternly, 840*.
- (Sterops), *pl.* stirrups, 840* ; (Stropes), 792*.
- Sterres, *pl.* stars, 4372. See Sterne.
- Sertes, *pr. s.* starts, springs, 778 ; Stert, *pt. s.* started, p. 283, l. 140.
- Steryn, *adj.* stern, fierce, 611, 4256 ; (Sterne), 1386.
- Steuen, *s.* voice, 252, 1131 ; (Stevyn), 2254 ; Steuyn, 611, 1831 ; noise, 1386 ; (Steuen), noise, 1251.
- Stejid, *pt. pl.* mounted, 2194.
- Sticking (Stykkyng), *s.* stabbing, 2623.
- Sties (Styles), *pl.* ladders, 1437. See Stee.
- Stiffe, *adj.* harsh, strong, 611, 1149, 2139 ; valiant, 4758 ; (Styffe), stern, 2298 ; stubborn, 1321 ; Stife (Styffe), *adj.* unyielding, 1015 ; (Styff), strong, 2589, 3374.
- Stifly (Stify), *adv.* strongly, 1081.
- Stiggis, *pr. s.* starts, feels abashed, 5301. Cf. Icel. *styggja*, to shun ; used reflexively, to become shy, to start.
- (Stighillys), *pr. s.* appoints, assigns, 755*. Put for Stighthillys ; see *styzzle* in Gloss. to Sir Gawayn, and see Stijill.
- Stike (Steke), *s.* stick, bit, piece, fragment, 1311.
- Stike (Steke), *v.* stick fast, 1438.
- Stikill, *adj.* piercing (?), 4186.
- Stile, *s.* style, title, 2693 ; (Style), 2754 (where supply *in*, as in the Dublin MS.).
- Still, *adj.* still, 263.
- Still (Stilly), *adv.* silently, 2032.
- Stilly (Stilly), *adv.* stilly, silently, 1136.
- Stingis, *pr. s.* vexes, 667.
- Stinkand, *pres. part.* stinking, 4838.
- Stinke, *s.* stink, 4840.
- Stint, *pp.* stayed, stopped, 4186. See Styntis.
- Stire (Stere), *v.* stir, 1091 ; Stirs (Stirrez), *pr. s. refl.* moves, 1327.
- Stith, *adj.* stiff, strong, 1069, 5461 ; Stithe, severe, 2050 ; stout, 1327 ; great, loud, 1251 ; strong, well-defended, 4352.
- Stithest, *adj. superl.* strongest, 5265.
- Stithli (Styfly), *adv.* severely, 2429.
- Stize, *pt. s.* ascended, 3467.
- Stizt, *pp.* set (lit. disposed), 4897 ; set, stuck, 5385 ; (Stight), set, 1543 ; (Styght), with *in*, disposed, ordered, hence written, 2693. A.S. *stihtan*, to dispose. See below.
- Stizthed, *pt. pl.* set firmly, 195. Put for Stizt. See above.
- Stiztill, *ger.* to order, govern, 589 ; Stiztill, *pr. s. imper.* may (He) dispose of, 3467 ; Stiztild, *pp.* set, placed, 5396 ; made, 5265 ; (Stizlet), established, 2298.
- Stode, *pt. s.* stood, 1136 ; (Stodyn), *pt. pl.* 2271.
- Stody (Study), *v.* take thought, 2480 ; Stody, 2 *pr. pl.* study, gaze intently, 683.
- Study, study, thought, 263.
- Stoken, *pp.* stuck, fastened, 1081, 2201. Pp. of *steken*.
- Stolis (Stolez), *pl.* stoles, 1581.
- Stollen, *pp.* stolen, 465.
- Stomake, *s.* stomach, 4436.
- Stomling (Stomblyng), *s.* stumbling, 2623.
- Stonaid, *pt. s.* astonished, dismayed, 2589 ; Stonayd, astonished, 611 ; (Stoned), *pt. pl.* were astonished, 2589.
- Stonde, *s.* hour, 2831 ; time, 1468 ; short time, 655, 3470 ; (Stounde),

- short time, 2625 ; (Stound), moment, 1327.
- Stondis (Stoundis), *pl.* pains, 2809. " *Stound*, to ache, to smart with pain, *North* ; " Halliwell.
- Stonen (Stonon), *adj.* stone, made of stone, 1574.
- (Stones), *pl.* gems, 1889.
- (Stonndes), *pr. s.* stands, 681.
- Stoppis, *pr. s.* stops, walls up, 5496 ; stops up, 4073 ; (Stoprys), stops, 970.
- Storbis, *pr. s.* disturbs, troubles, 667 ; Storbet, *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 3605. *Short for Distorbis, Distorbet.*
- Store, *adj.* strong, great, large, huge, 1367, 1534, 2165, 3937 ; (Store), 745* ; (Sture), 1741, 2050, 3017 ; Store ben, *for* Store-baned, i. e. strong of bone (the Dublin MS. has Sture-baned), 1702. Icel. stórr.
- Store, *s.* story, 3854, 4828.
- Store, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) store up, 4352.
- Story, *s.* story, tale, 2050.
- Stott, *s.* ox, 4754 ; Stottis, *pl.* oxen, 4267. See Halliwell.
- Stounde, *s.* short time, 3962, 5198 ; moment, 252, 453 ; Stound, 2408, 5063 ; Stounde (Stound), 1311 ; Stoundis, *pl.* times, occasions, 3622. A.S. *stund*.
- Stourbed (Stourblett), *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 934. See Storbis, Strublid.
- Stoure, *s.* agitation, 5046 ; conflict, battle, tumult of battle, 452, 499, 1251, 1332, 1415, 2050, 2832 ; Stoure (Stowre), shock of battle, 1015 ; Stoure, troop, host, battalion, army, 785, 3017, 3501, 3977 ; Stour, host, 3923 ; army, 3597, 5075 ; Stouris, *pl.* battles, 5585 ; Stoures, *pl.* armies, 5485. O.F. *estour*.
- Stoure, *s.* post (to support the tester above), 5646 (where for *wall* read *was*) ; (Stoure), the round of a ladder. " *Stour*, the round of a ladder ; " Halliwell. Icel. *staurr*, a pole, post.
- Stoute, *adj.* stout, strong, 195, 284 ; (Stout), bold, 2429.
- Stoutly, *adv.* proudly, 1495 ; deeply, 279.
- Stra, *s.* the value of a straw, 2165.
- Strad (Strode), *pt. s.* strode ; Strad *vp* himselfe, mounted, 2880.
- Straite, *adj.* narrow, 5485.
- Strake (Stroke), *pt. s.* struck (up), resounded, 1386 (in the Dublin MS. read *vp* for *vpon*) ; Strak'd (Stroken), *pp.* plighted, lit. struck, 3192.
- (Strakez), *pr. s.* strokes, 784*.
- Strakid (Straked), *pt. pl.* (they) sounded, blew, 1386. " *Stroke*, a blast of a horn, a term formerly used by hunters ; " Halliwell. Hence the verb.
- Strakis (Strakez), *pl.* strokes, blows, 1015.
- Strama (Struma), *proper name*, 2884.
- Strande, *s.* shore, 3066 ; Strandis, *pl.* banks, 3814 ; Strands, banks, 5461 ; Strandis, *pl.* streams, 4202, 5280, 5507. The latter sense is not uncommon. See Jamieson.
- (Stranes owt), *pr. s.* stretches out, 840*. E. *strain*. See Strenys.
- Strange, *adj.* strong, 1149, 3017 ; Strang, 2381.
- (Strange), *adj.* strange, 826*.
- Strangild, *pp.* strangled, 4758, 5577.
- Strasageras (Strasagera), Strasagoras, 2298 ; Strasagera, 2429 ; Strasagirs (Strasagera), 2381.
- Straungers, *pl.* strangers, 2688.
- Strayned, *pp.* constrained, 3549.
- Straȝt (Straughten), *pt. pl.* stretched, radiated, 1543 ; Straȝt, *pp.* stretched, raised, elevated, 3077.
- Straȝtill, *adj.* (probably) far-stretching, i. e. long, lengthy, 4838.
- Streke, *adv.* straight, 3854.
- Streken, *pp.* stricken, 3077 ; set, 3224.
- Strekiland, *pres. part.* sprinkling (it) ; but the reading Strenklett, i. e. sprinkled, is far better ; 1534. See Strenkild.
- Strekis (Straughit), *pr. s.* stretches, 1953 ; Strekiȝ, *pr. pl.* extend, 5063.
- Streme, *s.* stream, 1432, 1953, 1995, 2032 ; Stremes, *pl.* streams, 1056 ; (Stremez), 1049 ; Stremys, 75.
- Stremed, *pt. pl.* gleamed, 5286 ;

- Stremand, *pres. part.* streaming, flashing; *Ai stremand*, continually, flashing, 3797.
- Strenkild, *pp.* sprinkled, thickly covered, 3676; Strengkyllyd, 3224. See *Strenkle* in Halliwell.
- Strenth, strength, 662, 1702; Strenthe (Strenth), 1741, 1983, 2139, 2194; Stref[n]the (Strenthe), strength, 2468; (Strenthez, *pl.*), 1013, 1824; Strenthe, castle, stronghold, fort, 5265; (Strenth), 1367; Strenth, 1311; Strenthis, *pl.* forces, powers, 3296, 3716; (Strennthes), 1270; Strenthis, forts, 4352.
- Strenthid, *pt. s.* strengthened, 499. (Strenys), *pr. s.* strains, stretches out, 792*. See *Stranes*, *Streyne*.
- Stretis (Stretes), *pl.* streets, 1475, 1495, 1514.
- Streyne (Strene), *v.* strain, exert, 2809; Streyned (Strenyd), *pp.* constrained, compelled, 3121. See Halliwell.
- Streȝt, *adj.* straight; Streȝt on, straight upon, near, 1574.
- Streȝt, *adv.* straight, 452, 3066; (Streȝt), 1321, 1995; Streȝt, straightway, 4758; (Streȝt vp), 792*.
- Streȝt him (Straght hym), *pt. s.* directed himself, went, goes, 3206.
- Streȝtis, *pr. s.* marches, 2032.
- Stridis, *pr. s.* strides, 778; (Striden), *pr. pl.* 778.
- Strike, *ger.* to strike, 843; Strikis, *pr. s.* strikes, 452, 804; clashes, 785; (Strikez), strikes, 1321; hits, 1069; (Striken), *pr. pl.* strike, 804; clash, 785; Striken (Stryken), *pp.* stricken, i. e. advanced in years, 1001.
- Strinds, *pl.* sons, children, 5104. A.S. *strýnd*, progeny.
- (Strippyng), *s.* stripping, uncasing, 781.
- (Strode), *pt. pl.* strode, went, 2194.
- Stroubid, *pp.* troubled (lit. disturbed), 3818; (Stourbed), 2855. See *Stourbed*.
- Strowid, *pp.* strewn, 4543.
- Stroyes, *pr. s.* destroys, 4840; Stroyed (Stroyde), *pp.* wasted, 1917.
- Strubled (Stroblet), *pp.* troubled, 856. Cf. *Storbis*.
- Struma, *prop. name of a river*, 1953, 1995, 2032, 2064, 3206.
- Stryfe, 1 *pr. pl. subj.* strive, 5356. See *Stryue*.
- Strykis, *pr. pl.* strike; go swiftly; Strykis vp, dart aloft, 1415; (Strykyn), *pp.* stricken, set, 3224; advanced, gone, 826*.
- Stryue, *ger.* to strive, contend, 3758, 4006.
- Stryuys, *pl.* strivings, conflicts, 4251.
- Stude, *pt. s.* stood, 4754; (Stode), stood, i. e. was, 2408; Stude, *pt. pl.* stood, 279.
- Studis (Stodes), *pr. s.* studies, consider, 2960.
- (Stuffe), *s.* stuff, gear, 2980*.
- Stuffis, 2 *pr. pl.* stuff full, 4436.
- Stullis, *pl.* great pieces, 4436. "Stull, luncheon, great piece of bread, cheese, or other eatable; Essex." —Halliwell.
- Stumbils (Stombles), *pr. s.* stumbles, 845.
- Sturbid, *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 513, 1341. See *Stourbed*.
- Sturte, *s.* impetuosity, swift attack, 3758.
- Sturten, *adj.* impetuous, 3758; quarrelsome, 4257.
- Stuynes, *pr. s.* is astounded, is amazed, 2960. Cf. "stoind, astounded;" Halliwell.
- Stye, *s.* path, 4834; Styles, *pl.* 5063.
- (Styff), *adj.* strong, 1327; severe, 2050; (Styf), strong, great, 745*, 1251; Styffe, strong, 1069, 2165.
- Styntis, *pr. s.* stops, ceases, 5046; (Styntyd), *pt. s.* halted, 826*. See *Stint*.
- Stythe, *adj.* brave, stout, bold, 3605. A.S. *stið*.
- Subiet (Seget), *s.* subject, 1727; Subiectis, *pl.* subjects, 4245. (The fourth *subiectis* should be *subject*; see the note to l. 4246, p. 311.)
- Successoure, *s.* successor, 4286.
- Suche, such, 711; (Such), 720.
- Sudanly (Sodonly), suddenly, 3198.

- Sued, *pt. pl.* followed, 3598.
 Suffice, *pr. s. subj.* may suffice, 3196.
 Sufficient, *s.* sufficient, 4396.
 Suffire (Suffre), *v.* suffer, endure, 1011; Suffire, allow (me), put up with (me), 3465; Suffire (Suffre), *ger.* to endure, hold out, 2698; Suffirs, *pr. s.* sufferers, undergoes, 512, 530; (Suffred), 1146; (Sufers), 2052; Suffirs, 2 *pr. s.* sufferest, permittest (to live), 4298; Suffir (Sofre), *pr. s. subj.* undergo, 1858; Suffire (Suffre), 2 *pr. s. subj.* suffer, 1974; Sufird, *pt. s.* suffered, 5554; Suffird (Suffred), *pt. pl.* suffered, 1699; Suffirand, *pres. part.* suffering, temperate, 4266; Suffird (Sofferd), *pp.* 2160; (Sufferd), permitted, 892.
 Suget (Sogett), *s.* subject, 863, 918; Suggets, *pl.* subjects, men under control, 4664.
 Suget (Sogett), *adj.* subject, 908.
 Suld, 1 *pt. s.* should, 273, 664; *pt. s.* 100, 118, 119, &c.; Sulde (Suld), 1515; Suld, *pt. pl.* 141, 618, 908; Suld (Suldyn), should do, 1696.
 Sullepe, *adj.* sole, 4305. *Put for Surlepe.*
 Sum, some, 2, 6, 8, 11, 12, &c.; *dat.* to some, 4; (Some), 1330; (Som), 1413; Summe (Soume), 1696.
 Sumquat (Somqwatt), somewhat, 679.
 Sum-quile, *adv.* formerly, 3136; Sum-quyle (Some-while), some-while, 2994.
 Sum time; In sum (som) time, at one time, 2361.
 (Sun), sun, 1870.
 Sundres; Be sundres, separately, severally, 3909.
 Superfluyte, superfluity, 4277.
 Suppose, *v.* suppose, 577; Suppose, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* suppose, 586; (Suppose), 892, 1640; Suppose, 1806; Supposez, 2 *pr. s.* dost suppose, 842*; Supposis (Supposes), expectest, 1776; (Supposye), 1 *pr. pl.* 1855; Suposid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* formed my opinion, 2578; Suposed (Supposyd), *pt. s.* 2073; Supposand, *part pres.* supposing, 204.
 Supowell, *s.* support, extraneous aid, 4300. See *Suppoelle* in Halliwell.
 Suppe, *pr. s. subj.* 1 *p.* sup, drink, 3805.
 Supplied, *pt. pl.* supplicated, 163.
 Supposez, 2 *pr. s.* supposest, 842*. See Suppose.
 Surprise (Sussprise), *v.* surprise, take by surprise, 2390.
 Surcote, *s.* surcoat, 4339.
 Sure, *adj.* sure, 2010.
 Sure, *adv.* bitterly (lit. sourly), 5348. See Sowe.
 (Sured), *pp.* promised, 2633.
 Surely, *adv.* surely, 475, 1833; (Seurly), 1986.
 Surement, *s.* assurance, 2748.
 Surfete, *s.* surfeit, 4439; Surfet, surfeiting, gluttony, 4277, 4293.
 Surgens, *pl.* surgeons, 3132.
 Surmontes, *pr. pl.* surpass, 4449; Surmountid (Sirmountyd), *pt. s.* overcame, 2361.
 Surples, *pl.* surplices, 1550.
 Surquidry, *s.* pride, arrogance, presumption, 4293; Surquity, 4254, 4561; (Surqidry), 2736; (Surqudry), 3295.
 Surre, Syria, 5666; Surry, 2760; Surre (Surry), 3143.
 Sustenance (*error for Substance, as in the Dublin MS.*), 3391.
 Sustene, *v.* sustain, 3805; Sustenes, *pr. s.* sustains, 2834; Sustaynes, *pr. pl.* sustain, 1749.
 Sustainance, *s.* sustenance, 4269.
 Susys, Susa, 2847, 2866, 3073; Susys, 3512; (Susys), 3207; Susses, 3109.
 Sute, *s.* suit, set, same kind, 2929.
 Suth (Sothe); With a suth, truly, 1846.
 Suthely (Sothly), *adv.* truly, 1962.
 Swa, *adv.* so, 346. See Sa.
 Swallow, *s.* swallow, throat, 4507.
 Swanies, *pl.* swans, 4276.
 Swappis (Swappys), *pr. s.* strikes, smites, 957; (Swappez), 1232; (Swappyn), *pr. pl.* cast, 1299.
 Sware, *v.* answer, 5007; Swaris, *pr. s.* answers, 2183, 2523; Swares, 674; Swaris (Sweres), 2273; (Swerez), 1621; (Aunswars), 2798; Swaris, *pr. s.* 2 *p.*

- answerest, 5331; Sware, *pr. pl.* answer, 2656; Sware, *pr. s. sulj.* may answer, should answer, 750; Swarid, *pt. pl.* answered, 4193; Sward, 2069.
- Sware, *s. answer*, 1184, 4999, 5019, 760*.
- (Sware), *pt. pl.* swore, declared, 2069.
- Swart, *adj.* swarthy, 3969.
- Swayfe (Swaffe), *s. blow*, 806. Cf. E. *sway*. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Sweling, *s. squealing*, 4112. Here *sw* = *squ*.
- Swelle, *ger.* to swell, fill up, 4276; Swellis (Swellez), *pr. s.* swells, 2701.
- Swellis, *pr. s.* burns up, consumes (said of fire), 4181. A.S. *swelan*. Read *swelis*.
- Swelme, *s. heat, glow, fury*, 750. See Glos. to Allit. Poems.
- Sweltid, *pp.* rendered faint, 3790. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Swemyle, *pr. pl.* feel dizzy or faint (with sorrow), 156. Cf. prov. E. *sweem*, to swoon; Icel. *swimra*, to be giddy.
- Swepe, signification (lit. sweep), 248.
- Swerd (Swerde), sword, 957, 1232; Swerde, 1325, 1402; Swerdis, *pl.* swords, 3193; (Swerdes), 801; (Swerdez), 1399.
- Swere, *ger.* to swear, 1186; Swere, 1 *pr. s.* swear, 754; call to witness, 3424; Sweren, *pr. pl.* swear, swear obedience, 2104.
- Swete, *adj.* sweet, 362; good, 5325.
- Swete, sweet one, darling, 2826.
- Swete, *s. sweat, great heat*, 3790; blood, life, 3068. Cf. A.S. *swát*, sweat, blood.
- Swete, *pr. s. 1 p.* sweat, 5325.
- Swettir, *adj. comp.* sweeter, 3855.
- Sweuyn, *s. dream*, 248, 325, 353, 417, 1354. A.S. *swefn*.
- Swey, *pr. pl.* sway, force, 3970; (Sweyd), *pt. pl.* swayed, fell, 2057.
- Swezand, *pres. part.* resounding, 5019. A.S. *swégan*.
- Swiere, *s. esquire, personage* (used with reference to Bacchus), 4507;
- Swiers, *pl. esquires*, 156, 4108; Swiars (Swyers), 1184.
- Swiftly, *adv.* quickly, 1184, 1851; (Swyftly), 2069.
- Swike, *v. deceive*, 4999. A.S. *swican*.
- Swilke, *adj.* such, 584.
- Swire, *s. throat, gullet*, 4507. A.S. *swira*. See Swyre.
- Swollen, *pp.* swollen, 3790.
- (Swone), *s. swoon*, 734*.
- Swouned, *pt. pl.* swooned, 156.
- Swoȝe, *s. sound,oughing noise*, 5019. A.S. *swógan*, verb.
- Swoȝing, *s.oughing*, 4385. See above.
- Swyftnes, swiftness, hastiness, 1017.
- Swym, *v. swim*, 5505; Swymme, *ger.* 3841.
- Swyne, *pl. swine*, 4108. See note.
- Swyng, *s. swing*, 1232.
- Swyngis (Swyngez), *pr. s. swings*, 957; (Swynnges), 806.
- Swyre (Shwyre), *s. neck*, 779. See Swire.
- Swyth, *adv.* quickly, 248, 508, 1410, 1453, 2069, 3128, 4108; soon, 1304, 2310; (Swyth), greatly, 1265; Swythe, *adv.* greatly, 1261; soon, 1393; immediately, 1117; (Swithe), quickly, 761, 1717; (Swith), speedily, soon, 998, 1618; strongly, mightily, 806; (Swyth), quickly, 706; Swyth (Swythe), 1379.
- (Swythly), *adv.* quickly, 1184.
- Syb, *adj.* near akin; Sib men, kinsmen, 617; Sybb, akin, 397. See Sibbe.
- Sychim, *prop. name*, 89.
- Sycile (Secyll), Sicily, 2487. See Sysyll.
- Syde, *s. side, part*, 1052, 1200, 1388, 3978; quarter, 86; coast, 1142; Syd (Sydes), 2892; Sydis, *s. pl.* sides, 348. See Side.
- Sydoyne (Sydone), Sidon, 1142.
- Syeze, *ger.* to sink, fail, 716. A.S. *sígan*.
- Sygnes, *s. pl.* signs, 32, 250, 570; (Signes), ensigns, banners, 946. See Signes.
- Sygnyfys, *pr. s.* signifies, 443; Signified, *pt. s.* signified, 515.
- (Syke), such, 1968.
- Sylis, *pr. s.* goes, 698; Sylez, *pr. pl.*

- go, 1555; (*Syland*), *pres. pt.* dropping, 733*; going, 698. See Silis. “*Sile*, to sink, drop, flow;” Halliwell. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Sylours (*Silours*), *pl.* ceilings, canopies, 1519. See Silloure.
- Sylus, *error for Nylus*, the Nile, 2598. See the note.
- Symolacries, *pl.* similitudes, images, figures, 4460; Symolacres, statues, 3685.
- Sympill, *adj.* simple, innocent, humble, 3083; Sympull, weak, 3550. See Simpill.
- Syn, *conj.* since, seeing that, 1874; (*Sen*), 1619.
- Synagogue, synagogue, temple, 1058; Synagog (Sinagoge), 2182. See Sinagoges.
- Synagyns, *pl.* monsters (?), alluding to the griffins, 5452. The true meaning is quite uncertain.
- Synches (Lat. *Thinthisus*), 5401.
- Syne, *adv.* since, 1008; after that, afterwards, 900, 1119, 1137, 1633, 2578; next, 4886, 806*; afterwards, continually, 4217.
- Synfull, *adj.* sinful, 3663.
- Synge, *v.* singe, burn, 5206.
- Synnars, *pl.* sinners, 4417.
- Synned, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* thou sinnedst, 875.
- Synnys, *pl.* sins, 4403.
- Sypirs, *s.* cypress (wood), 3684. See Sipris.
- Syraphis, Serapis, 167, 183; Syraphas (Serapys), 1097.
- Syre, sire, lord, 1219; sir, 214; father, 701; Syre, *gen. sing.* sire's, father's, 754; Syris, *pl.* chiefs, 790; lords, 4432. See Sire.
- Syre, Syria, 89. See Surre.
- Syres, *a country*, 5666.
- Syzed, *pt. s.* lit. assised, hence constituted, 4654. See note, p. 312.
- Sysyll, Sicily, 5666. See Sycile.
- Syte, *s.* grief, 182; sorrow, pain, 546. Cf. Icel. *sút*, grief; *sýta*, to wail.
- Sythe-bladis, *pl.* scythe-blades, 3023.
- Sythen (MS. *cythen*), *adv.* afterwards, 411.
- Sythis, *pl.* scythes, 3058. See Sithe.
- Sythis, *pl.* times; Oft sythis (Oft sythez), oftentimes, 1203.
- Sytt, *ger.* to sit, 627; to sit down, 235; to dwell, 4024; Syttis, *pr. s.* sits, 47, 479, 977; (*Syttes*), 902; Syttis, *pr. s. impers.* it befits, 3359, 5119; Sytt (Sitt), *pr. s. subj. impers.* befit, become, 862; Syttand, *pres. pt.* sitting, 548. See Sitt.
- Taa; þe taa = þet aa, that one, the one, 3978. See Tane.
- Taa, *s. toe*, 3365. (The Dublin MS. has *toes*.)
- Tabernacle, *s. shrine*, 3688 (see the note); tabernacle, 5593, 5645.
- Table, table, 833, 1830; tablet, 274; Tablis (Tables), *pl.* tables, 853; tablets, 639; (Tables), tablets, 1568.
- Taburs (Taburnes), *pl.* tabors, 1385.
- Tacchis, *pr. s.* fixes, sets, 5065; Taches, *pr. pl.* pierce, 2622; Taclid, *pp.* attached, fastened, 319; Tacchid, *pp.* fixed, fastened, set, 5573; set, 4970; (Tachyng), *pres. pt.* piercing, 2622. Cf. Prov. E. *tack*, a slight blow; to attack, to fasten to (Halliwell); and see Glos. to Troy-book.
- Tafeta (Taffata), taffety, a sort of thin silk, 1515.
- Tailis, *pl.* tails, 5438.
- Taite, *s. joy*, exultation, 1208; play, game, lit. joy, 3979. Icel. *teiti*, joy, play.
- Take, *ger.* to take, 1197, 2149; *v.* 360, 1812; Takis, *pr. s.* takes, 55, 353, 410; (Takes), 713, 749, 1829; captures, 2148; gives, 3154; (Takez), takes, 1142, 1181; Takis (Takys), gives, 2749; delivers, 2026; (Takez vpp), *pr. pl.* take up, plight, 760; Taken (Token), 1 *pt. pl.* took, received, 2091; Take (Takes), *imp. pl.* seize, 1922.
- Taken (Token), *s. token*; To taken, as a token, by way of indication, 2109; Takens, *pl.* tokens, signs, 283, 5608; peculiarities, 4448.
- Takyng, *s.* taking, capture, 2123; (Takyng), taking, 1344; Takynge, 1835.

- Tald, 1 *pt. s.* told (of), 3829; *pt. s.* 200, 353, 2123; *pt. pl.* 906; *pp.* 190, 272, 693.
- Tale, *s.* tale, reckoning, number, 3022, 4879, 5127; account, 609; tale, story, 1448, 1886, 5175; tale (or *perhaps* account), 888; Be tale, in number, by tale, 2213;
- Talis, *pl.* tales, 190; accounts, 283.
- Talent, *for* Talentes (Talentes), *pl.* talents, 1666; talents, large sums of money, 3154.
- Talkis, *pr. s.* talks, says, 267, 660; (Talkez), 752; (Talkys), 1997.
- Taloghid, *pp.* tallowed, 4208.
- Talons, *pl.* talons, 5454.
- Tamed (Tamyd), *pt. pl.* pierced, lit. broached, 2622. *Short for* Atamed.
- Tane, *pp.* taken, 2582, 3491; oppressed, 3825; gone, 1289; be-taken, 463.
- Tane, *adj.* the one (*in phr. þe tane*), 606, 4069. See Taa.
- Tangid, *pp.* stung, 3637, 3886, 4798. Cf. prov. E. *tanging-nadder* (lit. stinging adder), the large dragon-fly.
- Tarbyn, *Lat.* Thirbei, 5500.
- Tare (Taure), mount Taurus, 2109.
- Targetis (Targettes), *pl.* shields, 2622.
- Tarrayn (Tartaren), *short for* Tartaryn, made of Tartary stuff, 1547. See below.
- Tars, *s.* silk of Tartary, 1515, 4673. *Also called* Tartaryn.
- Tartary, 5665.
- Tartaryns, *pl.* Tartars, 5484.
- Tary, *v.* delay, 1448; Taryed, *pt. s.* *subj.* would delay, 1261.
- Tas, *pr. s.* takes, 4886; (Takys), 1644, 2970; (Takes), 1666; Tas, *imp. pl.* go, betake you, 3719. See Take.
- Tasse, Tharsus (?), 5676.
- Tastis, *pr. s.* tastes, 1997; (Tastez), 2074.
- Taunde, *s.* tawney-colour, dark dye, 4335. For *taune* (with excrescent *d*); cf. O.F. *tane*, *tanne*, tawney.
- Tebies, *pl.* (Tebettes), Thebans, 2427.
- Tebet (Tebe), Thebes, 2198; Tebis (Tebet), *gen.* of Thebes, 2228.
- Teche, *v.* teach, tell, 165; Teches, *pr. s.* 1171.
- Teche, *adj.* touchy, quarrelsome, ready to quarrel (*hence, formidable*), 663. See *Techy*, *Tetchy* in Halliwell.
- Techis, *pl.* habits, 4390; (Teches), 787*; Teches, 4640; faults, crimes, 4561; Land-techis, habits of our country, 4248. M.E. *tache*.
- Teching, *s.* teaching, 37.
- Teldid (Tyldet), *pp.* built, 1159; (Te!de), 2174. From *teld*, sb., below.
- Teldis, *pl.* tents, 552. A.S. *teld*.
- Tell, *v. tell*, 248, 524; (Telle), 1112; Tell, *ger.* to tell, 67, 283, 515; to count, 1988; (Telle), 1164; (Telle), 1 *pr. s.* I tell, 1965; Tellis, 2 *pr. s.* tellest, 245, 366, 729; Tellis, *pr. s.* tells, 17, 35, 203, 278, 432, 437; informs us, 144; (Telles), 1613; (Tellez), 885; (Tellys), 699; Telles, *pr. pl.* tell, 903; Tellis, 1485; Tell, 296; Telle, *imp. s.* 5412; Tell, 463; Tellis, *imp. pl.* 896.
- Telle, *v. till*, cultivate, 4581.
- Telomew, Ptolemy, 4964, 5165, 5171, 5195, 5199.
- (Tembret), *pp.* built, lit. timbered, 2110.
- Temes, *pl.* instructions, rules of action, lit. themes, 2519.
- Temperoure, *s.* temper, due order, 543.
- Temprise, *v.* temper, refresh, 3466.
- Temple, *s.* temple, 1478, 1499; (Tempyll), 1060; Templis, *pl.* temples, 522.
- Ten, ten, 649.
- Tend, *pp.* as *adj.* kindled, flaming, 4179. See *tenden* in Stratmann.
- Tende, *ger.* to attend, to wait upon, 4534.
- Tendire, *adj.* tender, gentle, careful, 3317.
- Tene, *s.* shame, vexation, 3637, 5321; affliction, 3519; distress, 2315; sorrow, grief, 150; sorrow, loss, 3000; harm, 1978, 4405; enmity, 2427; anger, 853.
- Tene, *ger.* to damage, 2228; Tened

- (Tenyd), *pt. s.* harmed, vexed, 1212; Tened (Tenyd), *pt. pl.* were angry, 2193; Tene, *imp. s. refl.* be angry, vex thyself, 2309.
- Tenefull, *adj.* sorrowful, miserable, sad, 3149; harmful, 3907.
- Tenelis (Tynkyll), *pr. pl.* play, resound (lit. tinkle), 1385.
- Tenour, *s.* tenor, meaning, 4239; contents, 3566.
- Tent, tent, 1829; Tentis (Tentes), *pl.* tents, 1143, 2130, 2404; Tentis, *pl.* tents, *put for tent, sing.*, 475.
- Tent, *s.* notice, heed, 3317; attention, 4251.
- Tent, *imp. s. 2 p.* take thou heed, pay attention, 3729.
- Terand, *s.* tyrant, 4405; Terant, 5321; Terands, *pl.* tyrants, kings, 5484; (Tiraundez), rulers, 1294.
- Tere, *adj.* tiresome, tedious, difficult, 150, 1404; see *tere* in Stratmann. To tere, too tedious, 4767, 4918.
- (Tere), *v.* tire, 1404; Terid, *pp.* tired, 1009.
- Teres, *pl.* tears, i. e. drops, 4974; tears, 733*; Terys, 154, 3238.
- Tergarontes, *name of a place*, 2174.
- Termé, *s.* term of life, term, while, 478, 1678, 5040; Termes, *pl.* boundaries, 4038; (Terme, *s.*), bounds, boundary, 2315.
- Termyn, *v.* terminate, end, 3979; Termen (Terme), *ger.* to put an end to, 1336; Termens (Termys), *pr. s.* puts an end to, 1304; Termynd, *pt. pl.* finished, ended, put an end to, 3640; Termynd (Termynd), *pp.* ended, 2784; (Termynd), ended, 2901.
- Terne, *s.* tarn, pool, 3860.
- Ternen, *pr. pl.* turn; Ternen of, turn off, strip off, 4114.
- Terrandry, *s.* tyranny, 4251.
- Tessale, Thessaly, 5676.
- Tessaloyne (Thessalon), Thessalonia, 986.
- Testre, *s.* tester, head-frame of a bed, 4914.
- Tetchis, *pl.* habits, 4413. See Techis.
- Tethe, *pl.* teeth, 609, 4097, 4114.
- Tethiest (Thethiest), *adj. superl.* bravest (?), 2198; (Tithiest), 2784. See Tithiest.
- Tetragramaton, word of four letters, 1592. See the note, p. 297.
- Tewid, *pp.* tawed, curried, 5139.
- Texalte, *for To exalte*, p. 281, l. 73.
- Text, original text, story, tale, 214, 525, 916, 1592; (Text), 741*, 1044; Textes (Texte), *pl.* the (Latin) text, 1231.
- Teze (Tizt), *pt. s.* drew, went, 2174. See below.
- Tezt, *pt. s.* approached, 525, 649. See *tuhthen* in Stratmann.
- þa, *pron. pl.* those, 12, 51, 73, 92, 1027, 1224; (*þo*), 2232; they, 2042; (*þai*), 1253, 2472.
- þaes, *pron.* those, 1667.
- þai, *pron.* they, 13, 35, 105, 149, &c.; (*þai*), those, 2104.
- þai, *error for þar (as in the Dublin MS.)*, their, 2374; *so also in* 5458.
- þaim, *pron.* them, 928, 1117; themselves, 816, 982; *dat.* to them, 181, 202; *þaiem*, 1180; (*þaime*), 1210.
- þaim-selfe, *pron.* themselves, 3489; (*þaim-seluen*), 1275; (*þaim-selfe*), by themselves, 698.
- (þair), there, 1145.
- þaire, *poss. pron.* their, 3, 7, 14, 33, &c.; (*þair*), 799, 3201.
- þam, *pron. pl.* them, 11, 61, 106, 201, 203, &c.; (*þaim*), *dat.* for themselves, 759.
- þam-selfe, themselves, 660.
- þan, *adv.* then, 48, 75, 120, 352, &c.
- Thankis, *pr. s.* thanks, 371; (Thankez), 2576; Thankid, *pt. s.* 1686.
- þar, *pron.* their, 150, 152, 154, 206, &c.
- þar, *adv.* there, 140, 237, &c.; where, 211, 3792; (*þair*), where, 1366.
- þar as, there where, 730*.
- þar-agaynys (*þar-agayns*), there beside, 1264.
- þare, *adv.* there, 201, 221, 229, 246, &c.
- Thare, *pr. s.* need; be thare, it is needful for thee, thou needest, 5377. See Thurt.
- þare, *their*, 2. See þar.
- þare as (Thar as), whereas, 2430.
- þare-fore (*þarfore*), *adv.* for it, 922; (*þarfore*), on that account, 876.

- pare-with (**par-with**), therewith, 1890.
- (Parforne), *adv.* beforehand, 2456.
- Par-in, therein, 503, 1078, 1292.
- (Tharmes), *pl.* entrails, 773*. A.S. þearm; Du. darmen, pl.
- Tharne, *error for* Tharned (Tharnyd, D.), *pt. s.* needed, wanted, 2859. Thus the Ashmole MS. has *him tharned*, there needed for him; the Dublin MS. has *he tharnyd*, he needed. See below.
- Parnes, *pr. s.* lacks, 2709; Tharned, *pt. pl.* lost, 3071, 3889. See *þarnen* in Stratmann.
- par-of, thereof, 876.
- par-on, thereon, 832, 1129.
- par-out, *adv.* out of it, 511; (*þarowt*), 945.
- par-quile; see Quile.
- par-to, *adv.* thereto, also, moreover, 760, 1872, 2371.
- þas (Pees), *pron.* those, 1278; þase, 1823, 3536; (*þase*), 1441.
- þat, that, 16, 17, 18, &c.; who, 5, 12, &c.; in order that, 221, &c.; With þat, thereupon, 111.
- þe, *pron.* thee, thyself, 80, 98, 292, 5813; *dat.* 253, 256; The, 1871; þe put for þu, thou, *voc. case*, 107.
- þe . . . þe, the . . . the, 847.
- Thebes, Thebes, 2371; Thebie (Tebe), 2274; Thebea (Tebea), 2190; Theby (Tebet), 2292; Thebees (Tebe), *gen.* of Thebes, 2193. Thebies (Tebes), *pl.* Thebans, 2333.
- Thede, *s.* nation, country, region, 1710, 1803, 2859, 3889, 3955, 4419, 4737, 4806; tribe, nation, people, mass of men, 1246, 2537, 3747, 3824; Thedis, *pl.* nations, people, 2424; Thedes, 5016. A.S. þéod.
- (Thees), *pl.* thighs, 773*.
- (Pees), *pl.* these, 693, 1087, 1604; this, 936.
- Thefe, *s.* thief, 1821, 2494, 3543; (Thef), 1881; Thefis, *pl.* thieves, wretches, 4520; Thefes (Theffes), thieves, 3199. See Theues.
- Theftis, *pl.* thefts, 4652.
- Then, then, 95, 143, 267; than, 130, 1104, 787*.
- þens, *adv.* thence, 4870.
- Theosellus (Teosellus), 1212; (Thoosellus), 1230.
- þer, there, 45, 85, 378, 800; þere, 517; (Thare), 1125; Bot þer aboute, except in the case where, 105.
- þer, their, 5, 14, 149, 197.
- þer-eftire, in like manner, 3879.
- þer-fra, therefrom, 4638.
- þerto (þarto), thereto, 1033.
- (þes), these, 897, 984.
- Thestir, *adj.* dark, gloomy, 4173, 4804. A.S. þéostre.
- Thestres, *pl.* darknesses (?), 4627. The sense is hopeless; for it is clear that this line should follow 4624 immediately, and that the line which should succeed this is lost.
- Thethen, *adv.* thence, 5431; (*þine*), 1068, 1076; þethin, 5563.
- Theues, *pl.* thieves, 1789; Theuys (Thefez), 1734. See Thefe.
- Thewis, *pl.* customs, 3747, 4226; qualities, 3990; (Thewys), manners, 2744; (Thewez), conduct, 2982; Thewes, manners, habits, 4577; Thewys, 4700. A.S. þéaw.
- þi, *pron.* thy, 80, 102, 254.
- Thickest (Thikest), thickest, 1323.
- þik (Thik), *adv.* thickly, 707.
- Thike, *adj.* thick, solid, 4073; numerous, 69; fat, 5433; (Thyke), heavy, clumsy, 2709; (Thike), 1219; Thik, thick, hard, 529.
- Thikefald, *adv.* thickly together, 1407.
- Thikest, densest, 1427.
- Thikire, *adj. comp.* denser, 4176.
- þine, *pron.* thine, 256, 470, 688.
- þine, *adv.* thence, 1036, 3848, 4075. See Thethen.
- þing, *s.* thing, 2; Thing (Thyng), 1685; (*þing*), quantity, 1375; (Thynge), 2072; þingis, *pl.* things, 275, 412, 726; (*þingez*), 1567; (Thyngez), 1710; Any thinge, in any respect, at all, 2275.
- Thingis, *for* Thinkis, *pr. s.* thinks, 672.
- þinkis, *pr. s. impers.* it seems, 363; Thinkes, 1101; Thinkis, 1351,

- 1580; Thinke, it seems, 925, 1461, 1846, 2094, 2203; Me think, methinks, it seems to me, 326, 867; Me þink, methinks, it seems to me, 3299; Thinke, *pr. s. subj. impers.* may seem fit, 3293; may seem, 1638.
- Thinkes, *pr. s.* intends to go, 1121; (pinkez), thinks, 1640.
- þir, *pron. demon. pl.* these, 167; þire, 262, 347, 462, 660, 752, 3192, 3548, 4546, 5502; (þees), 1797; þire, those, 95; (þir), those, 797. Common in Barbour; still in use.
- þis, *pron.* this, 59, 119, 230; þi[s], this, 761; *pl.* these, 190, 2009, 2514; (þees), 860.
- þi-selfe, thyself, 328, 356, 730, 5372; (þi-seluen), 732, 850, 1843.
- þo, *pron. pl.* those, they, 3136, 3676; (þo), 1172, 1635; þo (þoes), 1056; (þoe), 1954; (þoes), 1445.
- þo, *adv.* when, 10, 277.
- þof, *conj.* though, 1739, 1880; (*written Of*), 723, 862; as though, 5259; (þof), 3168; þofe, 254, 471, 1858, 4396; (þof), 3244.
- Thole, *ger.* to suffer, endure, 1015, 1178; *v.* 707; Tholis, 1 *pr. s.* suffer, 539; Tholes, *pr. s.* remains, tarries, 3955; þoled, *pt. s.* suffered, 3876; Tholid, (she) suffered, endured, 529; Tholid, *pt. pl.* suffered, 2329. A.S. þolian.
- Thonere, thunder, 554. Read *thonere-thrastis*, i. e. thunder-claps.
- (þoo), *pl.* those, 2842*.
- Thornes, *pl.* thorns, 3815.
- Thorps (Thorpus), *pl.* villages, 1803.
- þos, *pl.* those, 5639.
- þou, *pron.* thou, 97, 98, 100, 107, &c.
- Thousands, thousand, 1042, 1427, 2084; (Thowsand), 1832; (Thousand), 1246, 2163; Thousandis, *pl.* 1436.
- (þow), *error for yow, you*, 1845.
- þoze, *conj.* though, 51.
- þost, *pt. s.* thought, 240; (Thoght), 1710; *pt. pl.* 3215.
- þost, *imp. pt. s.* seemed; him þost = it seemed to him, 70, 419, 1346.
- þost (Thought), *s.* thought, 1461;
- þoȝtis, *pl.* thoughts, 676, 4314; anxieties, 574.
- Thra, *adj.* bold, 2218, 3824; severe, 554; (Tra), strong, 1631; (Thro), eager, keen, 1246; Thra (Throo), strong, 3071; þraa, stiff, rigid (as a corpse), 4452. Icel. þrár.
- Thra (Thro), *s.* struggle, victory, 2282; (Tro), 2259; lordship, 5016. Icel. þrá, a struggle.
- Thrall, *s.* thrall, slave, 4520.
- Thraly, *adv.* eagerly, 371; hardly, desperately, 2090. See Thra.
- Thrang, *pt. s.* pressed, 1427.
- Thrangs, *adj.* oppressed, 4813.
- Thrangs, throng, 1323.
- Thrast, *pt. s.* thrust, 2939.
- Thrastis, *pl.* claps (of thunder), 554. See Thonere.
- Thrat, *pt. pl.* threatened, 529.
- þrathly, *adv.* (error for þraly), severely, 707. MS. D. has thraly.
- Thraw, moment, 1436; Thrawe (Thraw), 1326; On a thrawe, at a time, 1476; Thre dais out a thraw (in a thraw), fully three days at a time, 2046. A.S. þrág, þráh.
- Thraw, *ger.* to throw, hurl, 2218; Thrawyn, *ger.* to throw, to wind (corpses), 4452.
- Thre, *num.* three, 277, 436, 1476, 2046, 2090, 2259.
- (Thred), *adj.* third, 1485.
- Threpis, *pr. s.* asserts, 4423; contends, 3125; Threpid, *pt. pl.* strove, 3642; Threp, *pr. pl.* (Threpdyd, *pt. pl.*), dispute, 2046. A.S. þréapian.
- Threpild (Threpelytt), *pp.* congregated, assembled, 1476. Cf. þrólen, þrullen, to press; see gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Threschis, *pr. s.* thrashes, beats, 1326.
- Thret (Thratt), 1 *pt. s.* threatened, 2494; (Thrett), *pt. s.* exhorted, 1631; *pp.* threatened, oppressed, 707.
- Threte, *s.* threat, 2742.
- Thretti, *adj.* thirty, 3642; (Threti), 1246; Thretty, 3603, 3843; Be thretty, to the number of thirty, 3610.
- Threuen, *pp. as adj.* well-thriven,

- experienced, 2259, 3007; excellent, 2537; well-grown, 5137, 5433; grown up, hence, strong, mighty, 1326; (*Thrifen*), experienced, 1407; (*Thryffyn*), overgrown, 2709.
- Threw**, *pt. s.* reached, 2939.
- Threyest**, *adj. superl.* strongest (?), 2371. Reading uncertain; perhaps for *thraest*; see *Thra*.
- Thrid**, *adj. third*, 281, 3343; (*Thryd*), 2282.
- Tl.rill**, *s. hole*, 4073.
- Thrillis**, *pr. s.* thrills, pierces, 224.
- Thringes**, *pr. s.*; Thringes to, presses forward, joins in the contest, 2282; *Thringis*, *pr. pl.* rush, throng, 3843; Thringes (*Thronge*), press, crowd, 1436. A.S. *þringan*.
- Thrise** (*Thrisse*), *adv.* thrice, 2279.
- Thrist**, *s. thirst*, 4683.
- Thristis**, *impers. pr. s.* thirsts; Him *thristis*, he is thirsty, 3848; *Thristes*, 2 *pr. pl.* thirst, 4443.
- (*Thristez*), *pr. s.* thrusts, 1326; *Thristis* (*Thraste*, *pt. s.*), *pr. pl.* thrust, 1407; *Thristid*, *pt. pl.* thrust through, pierced, 554; (*Thrist*), *pp.* thrust, 773*.
- (*Thristyn*), *error for Thrist* in or *Thrast* in, thrust in, i. e. hid it away, 2939.
- (Thro)**, *adj. strong*, 2537. See *Thra*.
- (*Throo*); see *Thra*.
- Throm** (*Thrume*), *s. company, troop*, 3007; On a *throm*, in a heap, i. e. successively, 3642. A.S. *þrymm*, a troop.
- Throtis**, *pl. throats*, 1812.
- Throtild**, *pp. throttled, choked*, 4813.
- Throw**, *s. short time, moment*, 3843. See *Thraw*.
- Thryfandly**, *adv. thrivingly, prosperously*, i. e. for her good, 3747.
- (*Thryme*), *adj.; an error for Thryuen*, 1326. See *Threuen*.
- Thryngis**, *pr. pl. 2 p. thrust*, 4419. See *Thringes*.
- Thu**, *pron. thou*, 1987; **þu** (*pou*), 2910.
- Thurghis**, *pl. coffins*, 4452. A.S. *þruh*.
- Thurgh-out**, *adv. in all, continually*, 4737. See *purȝe-out*.
- Thurt**, *pt. s. needed*; Him *thurt*, it needed him = he needed, 1461. See *Thare*, and *þarf* in Stratmann.
- Purȝe**, *prep. through*, 140, 147, 225, 444, 487, 500; (*þorow*), 1427, 1636, 1960; *Thurgh* (*þorow*), 803; *þurȝe* (*Thrush*), 1729; throughout, 571.
- Purȝe-out**, *prep. throughout*, 3229; (*þorow*), right through, 2640; (*Out-þorow*), *adv. continually*, 2090.
- Pus**, *adv. thus*, 35, 135, 178, &c.
- Pus-gate**, *adv. in this way, thus*, 516, 1933, 4030; (*Pus-gates*), 2257.
- Thyn**, *adj. thin*, 320.
- Thyngis**, *pl. things*, 436.
- Thynkes**, 2 *pr. s.* thinkest, 1988.
- Thys**, *this*, 811*.
- Tid**, *adj. (for Tidy)*, excellent, 1060. See *Tidiest*.
- Tide** (*Tyde*), *v. happen*, 2145, 2309, 3729, 4945; *Tidis* (*Tydes*), *pr. s.* happens, 2288; *Tidis* (*Tydez*), *pr. s. as fut.* will happen, 1988; *Tidis*, *pr. pl.* betide, await, 4549; *Tid* (*Tyde*), *pt. s.* betided, happened, 1193. See *Tydis*.
- Tidiest**, *adj. superl. ablest*, 2367.
- Tield** (*Teld*), *v. build*, 2258. (The line is corrupt; for *tilld* read *Tebet*, i. e. Thebes; see the note, p. 301.)
- Tiffid**, *pp. cut out, carved, lit. prepared*, 4465. O.F. *tiffer*.
- (*Tight*), *pt. s. went*, 2304. See *Tiȝt*.
- Tigirs**, *pl. tigers*, 3850; *Tigris*, 3573.
- Tigre** (*Tygre*), the *Tigris*, 2610. See *Tygre*.
- Tild**, *s. building*, 1343, 4581; (*Teld*), 1296, 1304, 1373; *palace*, 3000; (*Tylde*), 1159; (*Tild*), *fort*, 1366. A.S. *teld*.
- Tild**, *v. pitch, set*, 3860; *Tildis*, *pr. s. builds*, 5593; *Tildid* (*Tylde*), *pt. s. covered, defended*, 1151; *Tilld* (*Teld*), *pt. s. built*, 2258 (but the line is corrupt; for *tilld* read *Tebet*, i. e. Thebes); *Tildid*, *pp. built, raised (up)*, 5645; *enshrined, built canopies (over)*, 4462; *built*, 3688; (*Tyldit*), 2110;

- Tild, *pp. set*, pitched, 4140; built, 2110. See above.
- Till, *prep. to*, 340, 463, 1828, 3814, 4875, 5389; (*To*), 2511; Tille, 1072, 5431; unto, 2909.
- Till, *conj. until*, 564, 4875; Tille, 646.
- Tillid, *pt. pl. enticed*, 5479.
- Tiltis, *pr. s. tilts, upsets*, 1303; Tilt, *pt. pl. overturned*, 1418.
- Time, *s. time*, 1460, 2011; (*Tyme*), 1109; Times, *pl.* 2259. See *Tyme*.
- Tinds, *pr. s. kindles, sets on fire*, 4179. Cf. A.S. *ontyndan*.
- Tint (*Tynt*), *pt. s. 1 p. lost*, 2683; Tint, *pp. lost*, 2901; (*Tynt*), 2784. See *Tynt*.
- Tirantes, *pl. tyrants*, 3640.
- Tire, Tyre, 1446, 2367, 5676; (*Tyre*), 1344, 1356. See *Tyre*.
- Tire (*Tyre*), *v. attire, address*, 1632; Tire, *pr. pl. prepare (lit. attire)*, 2398; Tired, *pp. attired*, 3603; (*Tyrett*), 1547. See *Tyris*.
- Tirement, *s. adornment*, 4918.
- Tite, *adv. quickly*, 219, 3719; Titte, 5165. See *Tyte*.
- Tithandis, *pl. tidings*, 5175. Icel. *tīðindi*. See *Tythandis*.
- (Tithiest), *adj. superl. (put for Tidiest)*, most famous, 2371. See *Tidiest*. Cf. Icel. *tīðr*, famous, skilled.
- Titild, *pp. named, inscribed with names*, 5640.
- Titill, *s. title of a letter, hence, letter*, 3566, 4239; inscription, 5071; title, claim, 896; text, 1044; Title, 1592.
- Titly (*Titely*), *adv. quickly, soon*, 888, 1283, 1812, 4886; Titely, 267, 1525, 1632, 3999, 738*; (*Tytely*), 2213; Tittly (*Tyte*), quickly, 1175.
- Tittire, *adv. more quickly, sooner*, 2519.
- Tittis, *pr. s. pulls*, 853; Titt, *pt. pl. pulled, dragged*, 5454; (*Tit*), *in phr. Tit to, pulled to, fastened up*, 2193. Lowl. Sc. *tyte*, to snatch, pull; Jamieson.
- Tiȝt, *pt. s. drew, went*, 1336, 2174; (*Tight*), *refl. went*, 1162; (*To-*
- teȝt), drew towards, approached, 1060; Tiȝt, *pt. pl. refl. prepared, set about*, 2333. A.S. *tihtan*, to draw. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Tiȝt, *pp. erected, built*, 2174; (*Tight*), fastened, 1373. Lit. *tied*; or else the same word as above.
- To, *prep. to*, 48, 58, &c.; for, 1070, 3786; until, 2160; as far as to, 4078; in comparison with, 3587.
- To, *conj. until*, 1034, 3853.
- To, *adv. too*, 316, 317, 461, 2077, 4256.
- To (*Two*), two, 2599.
- To-brest, *v. burst in two*, 640. A.S. *tōbrestan*.
- To-brissid (*To-brysed*), *pp. badly bruised*, 1274.
- (To-brountes), *pr. s. destroys*, 1214.
- (Tochett), *pt. pl. touched, referred to*, 888.
- To-clatirs (*Claters*), *pr. s. shivers, bursts in pieces (with a noise)*, 799.
- To-clefe, *pt. pl. cleft asunder, were rent asunder*, 555.
- To-combirs (-bers), *pr. s. discomfits*, 1302.
- To-drawen, *pp. drawn fully out*, 5364.
- To-gedire, *adv. together*, 61, 377; Togedre, 1873; Togeder, 104.
- Toghid, *pp. dragged, tugged, pulled*, 4628.
- To-hewid, *pt. pl. 1 p. cut in pieces, slew*, 3430.
- Toile, *s. tool*, 4708. See *Toylis*.
- Toke, *pt. s. took*, 127.
- (Toldyn), *pt. pl. told*, 906.
- Tole (*Tule*), *tool, implement*, 3373 (in the *nom. case*); Toles, *pl. 4581*. See *Toile*.
- Tolls, *pr. pl. Tolls of, pull off (their horses)*, 3640. See *tollen* in Stratmann.
- Toly, *s. scarlet dye, scarlet colour*, 4335. See *Tuly* in Halliwell.
- Tombe, *s. tomb*, 5593; Tombis, *pl. 4451*.
- Tomble, *pr. pl. tumble*, 552.
- To-morne, to-morrow, 1493.
- Tonacles, *pl. tunicles*, 1547.
- Toname, *s. nickname*, 2288.

- Tone; *þe tone* = *þet* one, that one, i.e. the one, p. 282, l. 101.
- Tone, *s.* tone; Out of tone, beyond measure, 1343.
- Tonge, *s.* tongue, language, 150, 3926; (*Tong*), 1404, 2075; (*Tounge*), 2885; *Tongis*, *pl.* tongues, languages, 21, 4031, 4428, 5071.
- Tonn, *s.* tun, tub, 5535.
- Toore, *adj.* strong, 5500. Cf. Icel. *tor-*, prefix, difficult. See Torfare.
- Top (*Topp*), *s.* top, 3365; (*Toppe*), 1303; Top, 2110; *Topp*, 4070; (*Top*), top of his head, 752*; *Topp-haris*, hairs of the top of our heads, 1009.
- Topas, topaz, 3343, 3360; *Topaces*, *pl.* topazes, 5644.
- To-paschis (*To-paschys*), *pr. s.* is dashed, becomes broken, 2998.
- To-pliȝt, *pp.* pledged to (*are* being understood), i.e. we are never pledged to it, addicted to it, viz. to vice, 4330.
- To-ponyscht, *pp.* severely punished, 4330.
- Topoures (*Tapers*), *pl.* tapers, 1568.
- Tor (*Towre*), *s.* tor, hill-top, 2109; *Torres*, *pl.* tors, tower-shaped hilltops, 4863. Still in use in Devon.
- To-rased, *pp.* torn up, 2088.
- Torche, *s.* torch, 2970; *Torchis* (*Torchez*), *pl.* torches, 1563.
- Torettis (*Torrettes*), *pl.* turrets, 1418.
- Torfare, *s.* hardship, misery, 3729; difficulty, peril, 4101; *Torfere* (*Torfer*), trouble, 1261; *Torfar* (*Torfer*), hardship, 1193. Cf. Icel. *torfæra*. The prefix *tor-* answers to Goth. *tuz-*, Gk. *δυσ-*.
- Torkans (*Torkys*), *pr. s.* turns (himself) (towards), turns (towards), 2967. Here *with* = towards, in the direction of what is said. See my article on *turken* in N. and Q. 6 S. V. 165.
- To-scailed, *pt. s.* scattered, dispersed utterly, 4150. *Skail*, to disperse; Jamieson.
- To-ȝ prygis, *pr. pl.* fly to pieces, are shivered, 790; (*To-sprongen*), *pt. pl.* flew to pieces, 790.
- (Tote), *v.* peep, 694. See Tute, Toton.
- (To-teght), *pt. s.* approached, 1060. See Tigt.
- To-terid, *pt. s.* tore asunder, 4148.
- Tothe, *s.* tooth, 3907.
- Tothed, *pp.* furnished with teeth, 5482.
- Tothir, *adj.* second, 3342; *þe tothire*, that other, the other, 300, 607, 879, 1368, 3978; *þe toþir* = *þet oþir*, the second, the next, 3006.
- (Toton), *pr. pl.* stick out, 752*. See Tote, Tute.
- Touches, *pr. s.* touches, 386, 3301; *Touchis*, *pr. pl.* touch, refer to, 888; *Touchid*, *pt. s.* touched (upon it), 5190; *Touched* (*Tochyd*), *pt. s.* touched, 2967; *Touch-and* (*Tochand*), *pres. part.* touching, 1894; *Touchid*, *pp.* touched, i.e. attached, 2580 (but read *tachid*). See Glos. to Allit. Poems.
- Toune, town, 216, 1163, 1446, 1525; (*Towne*), 1283, 1385; Toun, 2111, 2150; Tounes, *pl.* towns, 4024.
- Tou[n]les (*Tounles*), *adj.* town-less, without a town, 2288.
- Toure, *s.* tower, 1283, 1303, 3603; dungeon, 3149; (*Towre*), 1159; (*Toure*), 1446; *Touris*, *pl.* towers, 552; (*Toure*, *s.*), 2228; (*Tourez*), 1376; *Toures* (*Towrez*), 1151, 1418, 2267.
- Touiment, *s.* torment, 3515; struggle (lit. torment), 4251; (*Turment*), trouble, 1448.
- Toward, *prep.* towards, 843, 1089.
- (Town), town, 815*; (*Towne*), *gen.* town's, 2135; A towne, in the town, at home, p. 283, l. 127.
- To-wraiste, *pr. pl.* wrest or twist in pieces, 798; (*To-wrasted*), *pt. pl.* twisted to pieces, 798.
- (*Towre*), *s.* tower, 1296. See Toure.
- Toylis, *pl.* implements, lit. tools, 286. See Toile, Tole.
- Toȝe, *adj.* tough, 1812.
- Traces (*Tracez*), *pl.* Thracians, 986.
- Traimmes, *pl.* instruments, 127. Bad spelling for *trammes*; see Tram.
- Traistis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* trustest, 5026; Traist (*Trasten*), 2 *pr. pl.* trust to,

- 2467; Traisted (Traistyt), *pp.*
trusted, 3270.
- Traitours, *pl.* traitors, 3192.
- Tram (Trame), engine, machine,
1373; Trammys (*written* trans-
mlys), instruments, 286. And see
Traumes, Traimmes. See the
article on *tram* in my Etym. Dict.
- Transmitte, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* send about,
send from one place to another,
4335.
- Trappour, *s.* trappings, 4179.
- Trased, *pt. s.* traced, pourtrayed,
4914.
- (Trasped), *error for* Trespast, *pp.*
trespassed, 2385. (The Ashmole
MS. has *trispast*.)
- Trauail (Travell), *s.* labour, trouble,
2683.
- Trauald, *pt. s.* travailed, was in
labour, 525; Trauailid, *pp.* dis-
turbed, 543.
- Traumes (Trawynns), *pl.* engines of
war, 1296. See Tram.
- Trayne, *s.* treachery, deceit, snare,
2580, 2582; train, plot, 5028.
- Trayvelles, 2 *pr. pl. refl.* labour,
toil, p. 281, l. 68.
- Tre, *s.* tree, 4978; Tree, wood, 4465;
Treis, *pl.* trees, 70, 4994, 5007.
- Tribute, *s.* tribute, 3719. See
Tribute.
- Trecherous, *adj.* treacherous, 5028.
- Treichory, *s.* treachery, 3439; Trech-
oure (Trichory), 3192.
- Trechoure (Trechour), traitor, 1768,
2582.
- Trede, *v.* tread, 1515; Tredis
(Tredes), *pr. s.* treads (on), 1348.
- (Trefe), *for* Threuen, *pp.* thriven,
experienced, 3007.
- Treid, *put for* Tried, choice, pure,
5065; tried, attempted, 3439. See
Tried.
- Trekild, *pt. pl.* trickled, 4974.
- Trelest, *adj.* trelliced, adorned with
cross-bars or with gems arranged
in crossed rows, 3343.
- Trenes, *for* Trines, goes, 4888. See
Trines.
- Treson, *s.* treason, 1768, 5028.
- Tresory, treasury, 1666.
- Tresour, *s.* treasure, 123, 1807, 2677;
thing of value, 5372; Tresore
- (Tresour), great wonder, marvel,
2094.
- Trest, *pr. pl.* trust, hope, expect,
1344; (Tristed), *pt. pl.* hoped,
1344.
- Tretis, *pr. s.* treats with, entreats,
5340.
- Tretis (Tretes), treatise, history,
2109; (Tretez), 2190; Tretice
(Tretes), *pl.* treatises, 1568.
- Treuly (Trewly), *adv.* truly, 2094,
2309.
- Treuthe, *s.* truth, 515, 729.
- Trew, *adj.* true, 272, 3174; Trewe
(Trew), 986.
- Trewly, *adv.* truly, 2292.
- Treyned, *pt. s.* proceeded, 694. See
Trines, Trenes.
- Tribochetes (Trebgetes, *for* Trel-
getes, *as in MS.*), *pl.* engines for
casting stones, 1296. O.F. *trebuchet* (Roquefort).
- Tribute, tribute, 888, 896, 1044.
(Trichory), *s.* treachery, 3192.
- Tried, *pp.* well-tried, 3022; select,
approved, choice, 1060, 2198,
3739, 5101, 5640, 5644; picked,
815*.
- Triest, *adj. superl.* choicest, 4970;
(Triest), 2198, 2367.
- Trimblis, *pr. s.* trembles, 5308;
Trimballand, *pres. part.* trem-
bling, 4914. See Trymblid.
- Trines, *pr. s.* goes, proceeds, 5171,
5195, 5231. Dan. *trine*, to step;
trin, a step.
- Trispast, *pp.* trespassed, 2385.
- Trissis, *pl.* tresses, plaits of hair,
3450.
- Tristly, *adv.* trustfully, confidently,
1632.
- Tro; see Thra.
- Trod-gate (Troyde-gate), track,
beaten path, 2988.
- Troi, Troy, 2123. See Troy.
- Trombling, *error for* troubling
(Trublyng *in the* Dublin MS.),
troubling, 3000.
- Trompes (Trompez), *pl.* trumpets,
773; Trompis, 2222.
- Trone, throne, 161, 977, 1490, 1724,
2776, 3406; Trones, *pl.* thrones
(one of the nine orders of angels),
4914.

- Trottis him, *pr. s.* trots, 2610; (Trottes), 2988; Trottes, *pr. pl.* trot, 1208.
- Trouage, *s.* tribute, 3491, 3559, 5101, 5658; (Truage), 884, 903, 1904, 2957; (Trowage), 2525; Trouag (Truage), *s.* tax, 1678. O.F. *trouage* (Roquefort).
- Troubild, *pp.* troubled, 543; (Turblett), 1343.
- Trompis, *pl.* trumpets, 3965.
- Trouthe (Trewth), *s.* truth, faith, 1356; Trouthis (Trewthez), *pl.* troths, pledges, 760.
- Trouthles, *adj.* false, 4462.
- Trowe, *v.* believe, trow, 141, 464; *ger.* 3663; Trowe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* believe, trust, 730; Trow (Trowe), 1886, 2690; Trow, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* trust in, 4548; Trowe, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst believe, 1986; Trowid, *pt. s.* believed, 4833; (Trowyd), 2293; Trowid, *pt. pl.* trusted, expected, 3191; Trowde, 1148; Trowe, *imp. s.* believe, 5372.
- Trowthis (Trouthez), *pl.* troths, 3192.
- Troy, Troy, 3020, 5665.
- (Trublett), *pp.* troubled, 1341.
- Truches, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* failest, 1988. A.S. *trucian*.
- Trufils (Trufels), *pl.* trifles, 1894.
- Trumpis, *pl.* trumpets, 3037, 3610; (Trompettes), 1386.
- Trusses, *pr. s.* packs (it), 123; Trussis (Trussys), *pr. s. refl.* sets out (lit. packs up), 1143. See *Trusse* in Gl. to P. Plowman.
- Tryi, *ger.* to choose, select, 663. See Tried. O.F. *trier*.
- Trymblid, *pt. s.* trembled, 569; (Tremblyd), 1252. See Trimblis.
- Tuenti, *adj.* twenty, 3930.
- Tufe, *adj.* tough, 319.
- Tuke, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* took, received, 2683; took (myself), put (myself), 3515; Tuke, *pt. s.* took, 286, 1044, 1446; (Toke), 2075; took, i. e. went upon (it), took to (it), 2901; Tuke, *pt. pl.* took, 190, 4114; Tuke vp, *pt. pl.* took up, plighted, 760.
- Tuke vp, *pr. pl.* blow, 3610; (Tuk- kyn vp), 773. Properly to beat a drum; here used of the blowing of trumpets. *Tuck of drum*, beat of drum; Jamieson. “*Tuck of trump*, blast of a trumpet,” Glos. to Troy-book.
- Tukkid; see Tulkid.
- (Tule); see Tole.
- Tulke, *s.* man, soldier, knight, 752, 1212, 2258, 2274, 2970; Tulk, 5372; (Tulke), 2580, 3174; Tulkis, *pl.* men, 3149, 3439, 3566, 3999, 4798; (Tulkes), 2075; (Tulkez), 1304, 2367, 2685. Icel. *tulkr*.
- Tulkid, *for* Tukkid, *pt. pl.* beat, 2427. “*Tuck*, to beat;” Jamieson. In MSS. we often find *kk* written more like *ll*, the double letter being denoted only by doubling the down-stroke. Hence we may correct *tulked* to *tukked* in the Glos. to Allit. Poems, which is incorrect. See Tuke vp.
- Tunne, tun, large quantity, 1807.
- Tupis, *pl.* rams, tups, 5566.
- Turbils, *pr. s.* becomes cloudy, is obscured, 4140; Turbled, *pp.* troubled, disturbed, 3637; Turbild, 4063.
- Turestis (Torrettes), *pl.* turrets (but read Turettis), 1151.
- (Turht), *for* Thurt, q. v.
- Turke, Turkey, 5665.
- Turmentis, *pl.* torments, 4549.
- Turnay, *pt. pl.* tourney, i. e. fight, 5429.
- Turne, *s.* turn, bout, 2276, 5429; Turnes (Tournays), exploits, 1404.
- Turne, *v.* turn back, 1631; return, 2607; depart, 5606; Turnes, *pr. s.* turns, 1071, 1854; (Turnes), 1332; turns, goes, 1336; Turnys, 31, 383; Turnes him, *pr. s.* turns, 752; Turne, 2 *pr. s. subj.* return, 1786; *pr. s. subj.* 401; Turned, *pt. s.* went, 2304; (Turned), 694; (Turnyd hym), 752; Turned, *pp.* 218; (Turnyd), 1289; Turne, *imp. s.* turn, return, 1768, 1978.
- Turred, *pt. pl.* butted, 5567. “*Turr*, to but as a ram does;” Halliwell.
- Tuscane, Tuscany, 5665.
- Tuskis, *pl.* tusks, 610, 4114.
- Tute, *ger.* to peep, gaze; Tute in,

- to gaze upon, observe, 127, 694 ; Tutand, *pres. part.* looking, peering, 4776. A.S. *tótian*.
- Tuthe (Tothe), tooth, 1997.
- Twa, two, 317, 319, 348, 353, &c. ; Tway, 284, 545.
- Twelfe, twelve, 1079 ; (Twelf), 815*.
- Twelmonth, *s.* year, 5429.
- Twenti, *num.* twenty, 3886.
- Twiggis (Twygges), *pl.* twigs, 1895.
- Twinlepi, *adj.* twofold, 5013. Cf. Anlepi.
- Twyggis (*Dubl. MS.* Wiggez), *pl.* twigs, 1714. See Twiggis.
- Twynnes (Twynnys), *pr. s.* parts, 2750 ; (Twynnon), *pr. pl.* 760 ; Twyned, *pt. pl.* parted, 760.
- Twyse, *num.* twice, 1605, 3988, 5637.
- Tydis, *pr. s. impers.* betides, 106 ; Tyd, *pt. s.* betided, happened, 478. See Tide.
- Tygre, Tigris, 2597, 2785. See Tigre.
- Tymbre (Tembre), crest of the helmet (lit. timber, the crests being originally made of wood), 1230.
- Tyme, *s.* time, 33, 204, 214, 272, 525, &c. ; Tym, 478 ; Tymes, *pl.* times, seasons, 283 ; Be tyme, be-times, 2830 ; soon enough, 3728 ; In tymes, at times, now and then, 4122. See Time.
- Tyn, *s.* tin, 4465.
- Tynd, *pt. pl.* ; Tynd to, shut to, closed, 2193. A.S. *týnan*.
- Tyndis, *pt.* teeth, tines, 3907, 5133, 5567, 5573 ; tines, horns, prongs, 3925, 752* ; (Tyndez), 1063.
- Tyne, *adj.* tiny, 507.
- (Tynkyll), *pr. pl.* tinkle, i. e. resound, 1384.
- Tynt (Tyntt), *pp.* lost, 903. See Tint.
- (Typys), *pr. s.* tips over, 1303 ; (Typed), *pt. pl.* tipped over, upset, 1418. See Glos. to Allit. Poems.
- Tyre, Tyre, 1141, 1193, 1208, 1289, 1294, 1336. See Tire.
- Tyris, *pr. s.* attires, 5195 ; Tyrid, *pp.* decked, 5644. See Tire.
- Tyte, *adv.* quickly ; As tyte as, as soon as, 693. See Tite.
- Tyhandis (Tithanndez), *pl.* tidings, 2304. See Tithandis.
- Vacant, *adj.* vacant, 4774 ; free (from), 5116 ; Vacand, vacant, 4665.
- Vaile (Wale), *s.* vale, valley, 1205, 1289, 1313.
- Vaile, *s.* defeat (?), 3980. Cf. F. *avaler*, to put down, Cotgrave. Or it may even mean 'valley.'
- Vaile, *v.* avail, 3545 ; Vailes, *pr. s.* avails, 103 ; Vailes (Valys), *pr. pl.* avail, 3122.
- Vailes (Wales), *pl.* veils, 2300.
- Vale, *s.* valley, 4164, 5432 ; Vales, *pl.* 4121.
- Valour, *s.* valour, 2493.
- Vanite, *s.* empty space, 4774 ; (Vanyte), vanity, 2731 ; Vanyte, 1730, 1784.
- Vant, *imp. s. 2 p.* vaunt, 2713.
- Variland, *pres. part.* varying, various, 4637 ; Variant, 4336, 5651.
- Variaunce, *s.* variety, 4632.
- Vaunte (Vaunt), *s.* vaunt, boast, 1880.
- Vaward, *s.* vanward, vanguard, 3617, 4842.
- Vayne, *adj.* vain, 389 ; (Vayn), 1784 ; (Wayn), 1113.
- Vayne-glori (Vaneglory), *s.* vain glory, 2731 ; (Vaynglory), 1730 ; Vayn glorie (Vaneglory), 3265.
- Ve, *for We*, we, 4328.
- Vebbis, *pl.* webs, woven cloth, 4335.
- Velany, villany, wickedness, 4550.
- Velans, *adj.* villainous, horrible, 4164. It may be *velaus* ; Jamie-son has *vylaus*, and the Glos. to the Troy-book has *vilaus*. But these examples are not at all decisive. Cf. F. *vilain*.
- Vemon, *s.* venom, poison, 4797.
- Vemons, *pr. s.* envenoms, poisons, 4842.
- Vencust, *pp.* vanquished, 3122, 3948, 3980 ; (Venkest), 950 ; Vencuste, 3875.
- Vengance, vengeance, 1484.
- Venge, *v.* avenge, 186, 950 ; *ger.* 5326 ; Vengid (Vengyd), 2096 ; (Venged), 969.
- Venus, Venus, 4410, 4414, 4512.

- Venyson, *s.* venison, 4121.
 Verdure, *s.* verdure, 4979.
 Vermeon, *s.* vermillion, 3945. See Vermilion.
 Vermilion, *s.* vermillion colour, 4336.
 Vermyn, *s.* vermin, 3948, 5422 ; Vermyns, *gen. pl.* of the vermin, of the monstrous creatures, 4797.
 Verraly (Veraly), *adv.* truly, verily, 2928.
 Verry, *adj.* true, 5527 ; Verra, 389.
 Vertu, virtue, 103 ; strength, 5527 ; valour, 5324 ; Vertous, *pl.* virtues, 4410 ; Vertuse (Vertuez), good qualities, 2958.
 Vessall, *s.* vessel, often used in plural sense of vessels, plate, 4351 ; Vessale, 3700 ; Vessell, 116 ; Vessell (Veseall), vessels, 2945.
 Vestoure (Vesture), vesture, garment, 1539.
 Viaunce, *s.* food, viands, 4121. *Put for* Viauns = Viaunds.
 Victore (Wictory), *s.* victory, 2096.
 Victour, victor, 950 ; Victoure, 186 ; (Victor), 1484 ; Victor, 389, 1880.
 Vile, *adj.* vile, 186 ; harmful, 4164 ; cowardly, 3617.
 Violet (Vyolet), *adj.* violet, 1539.
 Violett, *s.* violet hue, 4336.
 Virgyns, *pl.* virgins, 4665.
 Virre, *s.* glass, 4351. F. *verre*.
 Vise, *ger.* to look, 1539, 3946 ; To vise on, to look upon, in appearance, 3945 ; Vise, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* look out for, seek out, 4686 ; Visid, *pp.* seen, 5651.
 Vision, *s.* vision, 1508.
 Visit (Viset), *ger.* to visit, 2033 ; (Visytt), 2004 ; Visitis (Viseten), *pr. pl.* visit, 1964.
 Vitaill (Vitale), victual, 2171.
 (Vith), *prep.* with, 1536.
 Vmbe, *prep.* around, 2209 ; (Vmbe), 3393 ; Vmby (Vmbe), round about, 1154 ; (Vmby), 779.
 Vmbe, *adv.* around, 2762, 3250.
 Vmbe-gildid, *pp.* gilded round, 4899.
 (Vmbelappes), *pr. pl.* beset, surround, 2473. See Vmlapis.
 Vmbe-thonrid, *pp.* encompassed, surrounded, 4806 ; Vmby-thonred (*printed* Vmby-thorned), 3857.
 Sense clear ; spelling doubtful.
- (Vmbrayd), *s.* reproach, 1800. See Vnbraydis, Vpbraide.
 Vmby-clappis, *pr. s.* surrounds, embraces, 4171 ; Vm-clappis, *pr. pl.* invest, beset, surround, 2473 ; Vm-by-clappid, *pp.* surrounded, 3451.
 Vmfaldin, *pp.* encompassed, 4717.
 (Vmhede), *imp. s.* look about you, 731.
 Vmlapis (Vmbelappes), *pr. s.* surrounds, 2134 ; Vmlapped (Vnlapped), *pp.* encompassed, 920. See Vnlappis.
 Vm-loke, 2 *pr. pl.* surround, 4672. (Here *loke* = mod. E. *lock*.)
 Vmquile, *adv.* formerly, 23, 1132, 3594, 4511 ; sometime, 3079 ; sometimes, 4744, 4745.
 Vmse, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* look thou around, bethink (thyself), 3728.
 Vn-ably, *adv.* without ability, foolishly, weakly, 2308.
 Vn-behalde (*for* Vm-behalde), *imp. s.* look about you, 731.
 (Vnbende), *v.* unbend, unstring (your bow), 1744 ; (Vnbenden), 1974. See Vnbynd.
 Vn-blythe, *adj.* sorrowful, joyless, 152 ; Vnbyth, 48.
 Vn-braydis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* upbraidest, 2739. *Error for* Vmbraydis ; see Gloss. to Troy-book ; and see Vmbrayd, Vpbraide.
 Vnbynd, *v.* ungird (thyself), 1744 ; Vnbynde, 1974.
 Vncacchid, *pt. pl.* ; in phr. Vncacchid hertis, let loose their hearts, i. e. lost their courage, 2588. See the note, p. 303.
 Vn-callid (Vn-callyd), *pp.* uncalled, 832.
 (Vnchaunce), mischance, 822*.
 (Vnclene), *adj. as s.* unclean substance, poison, 1106.
 Vnclennes, *s.* uncleanness, 4218.
 Vneles, *pl.* uncles, 3443.
 Vnklethe, *v.* unclothe, 5505.
 Vncorsayd, *adj.* unridden, lit. uncoursed, not tried in the course, 3775.
 Vn-corupmid, *pp.* uncorrupted, 4334.
 Vndede, *adj.* undead, alive, 158.

- Vndedlynes, *s.* immortality, 2734; Vnde[d]lynes, 3545, 4058.
- Vndefoulid (Vndefowled), *pp.* not trodden down, undefeated, 2630. See Foules.
- Vnder, *prep.* under, 992, 1156; Vndere, 34. See Vndir.
- Vndere-putt, *pp.* subjugated, 5402. See Vndire-put.
- Vndid, *pt. s.* unfolded, 521. See Vndo.
- Vndir (Vnder), *prep.* under, 1845; Vndire, 247, 1092, 1799. See Vnder.
- Vndire-put (Vnder-put), *pp.* subjected, 2025. See Vndere-putt.
- Vndireling (Vnderlinges), *s.* subject, 1861.
- Vndire-take (Vndertake), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* undertake, 1356; Vndire-tuke (Vndertuke), *pt. s.* understood, 2967.
- Vndirfangid (Vnderfonged), *pt. s.* undertook, 910; Vndirfange, *pt. s.* (Vnderfongez, *pr. s.*), received, 2793; Vndir-fong (Vnderfangez, *pr. s.*), received, 1700.
- Vndirstandings, *pl.* intelligences (an astrological term), 279. See the note to l. 274, p. 289.
- Vndirstandis, *pr. pt.* understand, 252; Vndirstode (Vnderstonde), *pt. pl.* understood, 1794.
- Vndistreyned (Vndistreynyd), *pp.* without being commanded, un-compelled, 2779.
- Vndistrobbed (Vndistourblett), *pp.* undisturbed, untroubled, 3418.
- Vndo, *v.* declare, disclose, 1112; Vndone, *pp.* undone, 1472. See Vndid.
- Vndorne, *s.* the third hour, at first 9 A.M. (but afterwards later), 3853. Here *myd-ouir-vndorne* = middle of the period just after undern, i. e. (as I suppose), the middle of the period from 9 to 12, or about half past 10.
- Vn-esid, *pp.* disturbed, not eased, 5054.
- Vne-slayne (Vnslayne), *pp.* unslain, not slain, 2475.
- Vneth, *adv.* scarcely, 2060. See below.
- Vnethes, *adv.* scarcely, 937; Vnethe, with difficulty, 4437; (Vneth), 1370, 2093; (Vneth), 937.
- Vnfaire, *adj.* terrible, frightful, 4864.
- Vnfaire, *adv.* extremely, beyond measure, 1189, 1212, 3873, 3903, 4566; fiercely, cruelly, terribly, 2041, 4741, 4837; grievously, severely, 1224, 3637; indignantly, 837; horribly, 555; Vnfare (Vnfaire), exceedingly, 1409. See Gloss. to Troy-book.
- Vnfaldis, *pr. pl.* unfold, display, 3027.
- Vnfryndschip, unfriendship, enmity, 2722.
- Vngastly, *adv.* unspiritually, in a worldly way, 4430.
- Vnhalesome, *adj.* unwholesome, unsuitable, 4387.
- Vn-happe, *s.* ill luck, 4554; Vnhapp (Vnhappe), 3287.
- Vnhappeiste (Vnhappyest), *adj. superl.* unhappiest, most unfortunate, 713.
- Vn-hele, *s.* misery, 3291. See Jamie-son. (Perhaps *he* should be *ere*, as in the Dublin MS. But in both MSS. the line is corrupt, and the alliteration is at fault.)
- Vn-helid, *pp.* uncovered, 3450.
- Vnhemed (Vnhemmyd), unrestrained, 2835.
- Vn-hewyn, *pp.* not hewn down, unslain, 1945.
- Vnhid, *pp.* discovered, made public, 3437.
- Vnhome, *s.* 5530. Almost certainly an error for *vnhone*, i. e. haste. The phrase *with mikel vnhone* is merely the equivalent of the phrase *withouten hone*, i. e. without delay; see *hone* in Stratmann. Thus *vnhone* is the opposite of 'delay,' i. e. haste.
- Vn-honourable, *adj.* dishonourable, 2950.
- Vnhurt, *adj.* unhurt, 5530.
- Vnicornes, *pl.* unicorns, 3593.
- Vnkawen, unknown, 3715; (Vnk[n]awyn), 825*.
- Vnlappis (Vnlappyd, *pt. pl.*), *pr. pl.* unfold, 1932. Cf. Vmlapis.

- Vnlikly, *adj.* unlikely, 5552.
 Vnmete, *adj.* unmeasured, immense, very long, 143.
 Vn-metely, *adj.* unfitting, unseemly, 321.
 Vnneth, *adv.* scarcely, 4185, 4801; (*Vneth*), 1774; Vnnethe (*Vnneth*), with difficulty, 2788. See *Vneth*.
 Vnnethes, *adv.* scarcely, 4078. See above.
 Vnnombirable (*Vnnowmerable*), *adj.* innumerable, 2365.
 (*Vnnowmyrd*), *pp.* unnumbered, 1992.
 Vnpossible, *adj.* impossible, 4249.
 Vn-prophetable, *adj.* unprofitable, 3560.
 Vnprouednes, *s.* unprovedness, inexperience, 1019.
 Vnpussible, *adj.* impossible, 635. See *Vnpossible*.
 Vnreproud, *pp.* without reproach or reproof, 3092; (*Vnrefrytt*), 3092.
 Vnride (*Vnrode*), *adj.* cruel, harsh, 871; *Vnid* (*Vnrode*), 739; Vnyrd, rough, wanton, 460. See *Unride* in Halliwell.
 Vnridly, *adv.* fiercely, 638; Vnruyldly, 566.
 Vn-samen, *adv.* not together, far apart, 605.
 Vnschent, *pp.* unharmed, 2143.
 Vnsele, *s.* misfortune, evil fortune, ill luck, 1106, 4471. See *Sele*.
 Vn-semely, *adv.* unseemly, 862; *adj.* 99.
 Vnsene, *adj.* unseen, i. e. unique, extraordinary, 1026; unequalled, 2536.
 Vnsesid, *pp.* untaken, 5334.
 Vnseson; In vnseson, out of season, at an unseasonable time, 4439.
 Vnslayne, *pp.* not killed, 2668; Vnslayn, 2093, 2232.
 Vnsowmyd (*Vnsoumed*), *pp.* unnumbered, 1991. Lit. ‘unsummed.’
 Vnsure, *adj.* insecure, 2136.
 Vntald (*Vntalde*), *adj.* uncounted, countless, 2677.
 Vnthankes, *adv.* against (your) will; At þour vnthankes, against your will, 4698.
 Vn-to, unto, 173, 623, 706, &c.
- Vnwarly, *adv.* unawares, heedlessly, 5329.
 Vnweried, *pp.* unwearied, or uninjured, 3622.
 Vn-wetandy, *adv.* unknown, secretly, 134.
 Vnwondid (*Vnwoundet*), *pp.* unwounded, 1235.
 Vnworthely (*Vnworthly*), *adv.* unworthily, 869.
 Vn-wyn, *s.* sorrow, woe, lit. un-joy, joylessness, 531. See *unwunne* in Stratmann, p. 605, col. 1.
 Vnȝarkid, *pt. pl.* unfastened, 3209; Vnȝarked, unbarred, 2147.
 Voice, *s.* voice, 1000, 1479; (*Voyce*), 1508; Voise, 2958.
 Voide, *v.* get rid of, 4112; (*Voyde*), *ger.* to avoid, 1484; to give up, 1784; Voidis, *pr. s.* gets rid of, 4169; leaves, 3655; (*Woydez*), departs, 1113; Voidis, *pr. pl.* render void; Voidis doun þe leuys, bring down the leaves off the trees, 4145; Voidid, *pp.* deprived, 3980; got rid of, 3948; (*Woydett*), removed, 1338; Voidid, departed, 4650.
 Volatile, *s.* fowls, birds, 4637.
 Vouchid safe, vouchsafed, 303.
 Vowtriere, *s.* adulteress, 4532. *Short for Avowtriere.*
 Vowtres, *pl.* vultres, 3945. See note to l. 3944, p. 309. The usual O.F. form is *voltour* = Lat. acc. *uulturem*; mod. F. *vautour*. But here we have a form *voutre* = Lat. nom. *uultur*; cf. Span. *buitre*, Port. *abutre*, a vulture.
 Voyce, voice, 718. See *Voice*.
 (*Voyde*), *v.* avoid, 2424; Voydis (*Woydes*), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost empty, 2945; Voydis, *pr. s.* removes, 122. See *Voide*.
 Vp, up, 80, 82, &c.; Vpp, 760; (*Vppe*), 758, 977; Vp set, set up, 198; With vp son, with sun-rise, 4067.
 Vp, *adv.* open, 2142; (*Vppe*), 783*. Vpbraide, *s.* reproach, 1800. See Vn-braydis, Vmbrayd.
 Vp-liftis (*Vpp lyftes*), *pr. s.* uplifts, 805.
 Vrym, *s.* urine, 3826.

- Vs, us, 22, 82, &c.; *dat.* for us, 1674.
- Vse, *s.* use, custom, usage, 2950.
- Vse, *v.* use, 1674; Vsyd, *pt. s.* used, was accustomed, 3594; Vsed, used, 645; (Vsed), *pt. pl.* were accustomed, 738*; Vsyd, *pp.* used, 4324; customary, 4023.
- (Utterly), *adv.* utterly, 1472.
- Vulturnus, *s.* the west-wind, 4145. Such seems to be the required sense; but the true sense is "a south-east by-one-third-south wind;" Lewis and Short.
- (Vyce), *s.* fine appearance, 1539. See Vise.
- Vyne, *s.* vine, 1346; Vynes, *pl.* vines, 4899.
- Vysage (Visage), *s.* visage, face, 2958; (Vysage), 3362.
- Vyse, *ger.* to look, 2928; to behold, 3700; Vyses, *pr. s.* pays heed to, considers necessary, 126. *Short for Avyse;* see *Aviser* in Cotgrave.
- Vysite, *ger.* to visit, 573; (Visitt), 859.
- Wa, *s.* woe, sorrow, calamity, 528, 539, 1103, 1168; pain, 2721; (Wo), 2812; misery, 3075; (Woo), 3153; Waa, woe, misery, 3435; illness, 5606; Wa, *interj.* woe, 4564; Wa is me, woe is me, 1468; Waa (Woo), *as adj.* sorry, 2999; Waes, *pl.* miseries, 4592.
- Wacche-men, watchmen, 5164.
- Wacchis, *pl.* watchmen, sentinels, 5215.
- Wacken (Wakyn), *ger.* waken, arouse, 2276.
- Wadis, *pr. s.* wades, goes away, 4141. Perhaps put for *vadis*, i. e. fades.
- Waes, *pl.* woes, miseries, 4592. See Wa.
- Waest (Woest), *adj. superl.* most wretched, most sorrowful, 2004. See Wa.
- (Wafe), *imp. s.* send, 2866. See Wayfe.
- Wage, *s.* hire, reward, wages, 3426.
- Waged (Wagged), *pt. s.* wagged, nodded, 968.
- Waghe (Wagh), *s.* wall, *hence*, a bank of drifted snow, 1757. A.S. *wáh*, a wall. See Wawes.
- Wai, *s.* way, 4847; (Way), road, 1324; Waies, *pl.* ways, 3852; Wais, 2330; ways, wise, 2013. See Way.
- Waik, *adj.* weak, 3917; (Waike), 3587; (Wake), 1271, 2077.
- Wailaway, *interj.* woe! 4564.
- Waite, *v.* pay heed, look, 3354; Waitis, *pr. s.* watches, 4776; looks, 59; (Wates), looks, 956; Waites, *pr. pl.* look, 4129; Waite, 3630; (Waytyn), look, 2930; Waitid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* looked, considered, 5621; Waited (Wayted), observed, 1764; Waiteand, *pres. part.* looking, 3835; Waite, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* see, take heed, 4949. See Waytis.
- Wakens, *pr. s.* awakes, arises, 2222; (Wakned, *pt. s.*), 2222; Wakyns, *pr. s.* awakes, comes to himself, 3249; (Wakens), *pr. s.* remains awake or alive, 725*; Wakand, *pres. pt.* waking, whilst awake, 356.
- Wald, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* wouldest, 311, 354, 1097; (Wold), 690; Wald, *pt. s.* would, 159; required, 128, 485; (Walde), desired, 1667; Wald it, i. e. would it please, 2684; Wald, *pt. pl.* would, 1, 13, 36; would like to, 3164.
- Wald-ezed, *adj.* wall-eyed, 608. Icel. *valdegðr*. See Wawil-ezed.
- Waldis, *pl.* woods, wolds, 3792, 3799.
- Wale, *adj.* excellent, choice, good, valuable, famous, 75, 294, 809*, 827, 841, 949, 1189, 1287, 1376, 2018, 2261, 2287, 2311, 2783, 2932, 3256, 3435, 3515, 3561, 3720, 4153, 4304; chosen, appointed, 4772; respected, 2742; Wale quile, good time, short period, 4597; (Wale), valuable, 2150.
- Wale, *v.* choose, 1667; *ger.* to choose, 4655; *imp. s.* 1014, 806*. Goth. *waljan*.
- Wales; see Vailes.
- Walke, *v.* walk over, overrun, 519;

- Walkis, *imp. pl.* walk about, 541.
- Walke, *s.* walk, march, 3799.
- Wall, *error for Was*, was, 5646.
- Wall, *s.* wall, 1369, 1405; Wallis, *pl.* walls, 1376; (Walle, *s.*), 1153, 1384; (Walles), 1161, 1359, 1420; (Wallez), 1030.
- Walld, *pt. pl.* would, 5335. See Wald.
- (Wallez); see Wawes.
- Wallid, *pp.* walled, 1149.
- Walowand, *pres. part.* wallowing, whirling, 4064. A.S. *wealwian*, to turn about.
- Walows, *pr. s.* fades, grows dull, 4627. Better *welows*; see *welhen, welwen* in Stratmann.
- Walt (Weld), *pt. s.* wielded, 838.
- Wambe, *s.* womb, 550, 579; Wame, 386, 531, 538; Wambs, *pl.* bellies, 3813; (Wambes), 2168*; Wames, 4276. A.S. *wamb*.
- Wan, 1 *pt. s.* got, begot (lit. won), 587; came, 3458; Wan, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* didst win, 949; Wan, *pt. s.* won, 616, 811; conquered, 3471; Wan, *pt. s.* got; Wan up, got up, climbed up, 1384; Wan of, stripped off, 2543; arrived, came, 5213; Wan to wax, attained his full growth, 3986.
- Wand, wand, 57.
- Wande (Wonnd), *v.* hesitate, 2723; Wand (Waned), *pt. pl.* flinched, 1411. A.S. *wandian*. (The spelling *waned* is bad.)
- Wandreth, *s.* peril, 528. Icel. *vandræði*.
- Wane, *v.* decrease, 4772.
- Wanes, *pl.* dwelling, abode, quarters, 134, 3748; (Wane, *s.*), rooms, 3222. Cf. A.S. *wunian*, to dwell.
- Wannes, *pr. s.* lit. makes pale, causes to fade, dims, 4627; grows pale, 4142.
- (Want), *v.* lack, be lacking, 809*; Wantis, *pr. s.* fails, 4586, 5480; lacks, needs, 3497; (Wantes), lacks, 996; is lacking, 2168; Wantis (Vantes), it is lacking (to us), 1854; (Wantes), fails, 1325; (Wantyd), *pt. pl.* lacked, 3150.
- Wanton, *adj.* wanton, irregular, 12.
- Wapen, *pl.* weapons, 3884; (Wapens), 1400; (Waypynnez), 958; Wapens, *pl.* weapons, 65, 4958. A.S. *wēpen*, sing. and pl. (neuter sb.).
- Wapened (Wapenned), *adj.* armed, 1250.
- Wapp, *s.* stroke, blow, 5318; At a wapp, in a moment, at once, on a sudden, 3040; At a wap, 4142.
- Ward, *s.* guard, 5614; troop, 3040; keeping, 5314; Warde, *s.* charge, 77; keeping, 5172; patronage, 4500; protection, 4500.
- Wardan, warden, 75.
- Warde, *ger.* to keep, guard, 5374.
- Wardrere (Wardrer), club, truncheon, warder, 838.
- Ware, *pt. pl.* were, 3, 72, 84, 199; Ware, *pt. s. subj.* were, would be, 13, 150, 225; might be, seems to be, 101, 391.
- Ware, *adj.* aware, 59, 75, 119; wary, skilful, 202; (War), aware, 1585, 3212.
- Ware þe, *imp. s.* beware, take heed to thyself, 2830.
- Warisch, *v.* be cured, recover, 5606; *ger.* to heal, cleanse, 4217. O.F. *warir*, *garir*, F. *guérir*. See Warysche.
- Warke (Werke), *s.* ache, pain, 2811.
- Warlazes, *pl.* warlocks, sorcerers, 4425; evil beasts, monsters, 3795. E. *warlock*. See Warlow.
- (Warlocked), *pp.* fettered, 769*. The same as *warroked*; see Warroke in Gl. to P. Plowman.
- (Warlow), *s.* deceiver, 1706. See Warlazes.
- Warne (Werne), *pr. s. 1 p.* warn, 2014; Warned, *pt. s. 1 p.* refused, 1468; Warned, *pp.* refused, 1467; told by way of warning, 4221.
- Warnes, *s.* wariness, caution, 3354; foreknowledge, 3256.
- Warnyng, *s.* warning, 571.
- (Warpyd), *pt. pl.* twisted, 798.
- Warre, *pt. s. subj.* were, 582. See Ware.
- (Warryd); see Weried.
- Warysche (Warysh), 1 *pr. s. subj.*

- may be healed, hope to recover of, 2811. See Warisch.
- Waryson, *s.* gift, reward, 3431. See *warison* in Halliwell.
- Was, *pt. s.* was, 17, 37, 39, &c.; Wasse (Was), 1366; Was, *pt. pl.* were, 73, 2002.
- Waspe, wasp, 738; Waspis, *pl.* 3011.
- Wast, *adj.* waste, unproductive, 3561.
- Wast, *s.* waste, desert, 3487, 3906, 5565; Wastis, *pl.* waste places, 3792, 4044.
- Wast, *ger.* to waste, destroy, 5382; Wast, 1 *pr. pl.* (Wastyd, 1 *pt. pl.*), 2330; Wastid, *pp.* wasted, 1941; defeated, 4008; (Wastyd), destroyed, 1311, 2141.
- Wastoure, *s.* waster, destroyer, 5310.
- Wate, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* know, wot, 3436, 4153; 2 *p.* knowest, 107; 2 *pr. pl.* know, 3090; (Wayte), 2379.
- (Wates), *pr. s.* waits, looks, gazes, 781*, 1129, 1527; (Watyn), *pr. pl.* gaze, 700. See Waite.
- Wathe, *s.* danger, peril, 119, 5586; (Wothe), 1103; Wathe, evil, harm, 1411, 3523; harm (Lat. *text impericia*, want of skill), 3355. Icel. *váði*; see Stratmann.
- Wath, *adj.* (*error for* Wale, i. e. choice), 2150. The Dublin MS. has Wale.
- Watir (Water), *s.* water, stream, 1303, 2152; Water, 59, 1290; Watere, 112, 2539; Watre, 5470; Wattre, 3737; Wattir, 4299; Waters, *pl.* rivers, 1079; Watirs (Waters), 1967.
- Watirles, *adj.* waterless, dry, 3487. (Waueschyd), *pp.* put away, 822. See Wayue.
- Wawes, *pl.* walls, 5644; (Wallez), 3222; Wawis (Wallez), 1523. See Waghe.
- Wawil-ezed (Waugle-eghed), *adj.* wall-eyed, 1706. See Wald-ezed.
- Wawis (Wawes), *pl.* waves, 1153; Wawys, 26; (Wawes), 3167*. See Wajes.
- Wax, *v.* grow, increase, 4772; *ger.* 3986.
- Wax, *s.* wax, 113.
- Way, *s.* way, 132, 428, 1310; Ways, *pl.* ways, tracks, 4105; Way (Ways, *pl.*), way, wise, 1643.
- Wayfe, *v.* remove, put away, 297; (Wayfe), *ger.* to send, 1868; Wayfe (Wafe), 1 *pr. s.* allow, grant, waive, 723; (Wayfez), *pr. s.* sends, despatches, 1716; Wayfid, *pp.* put away, 822; Wayfe, *imp. pl.* quit, leave, 2469. See Wayue.
- Waykis (Wakens), *pr. s.* becomes weak, 1006.
- Wayne, *error for* Wayue, *v.* give, deliver, 3426. See Wayue.
- Waynes (Waynez), *pl.* wains; Waynes to mete, for wains to pass each other, 1324.
- Waynest (Vanyshit), *pt. s. refl.* vanished, 1113.
- Wayns (Vaynes), *pl.* veins, 1730.
- Wayryngle, *s.* a little villain, 1706. From A.S. *wearg*, Icel. *vargr*, a felon. Cf. *wariangel*, a butcher-bird, Chaucer, C. T. (D. 1408). The suffix is the A.S. *-incel*, as in *ráp-incel*, a little rope.
- (Waystes), *pr. s.* wastes away, 3254.
- Waytis, *pr. s.* looks, 265; perceives, 3636; (Wates), looks, 1585; Waytes, looks, gazes, 700, 945; waits for, looks for, 131; Wayted, *pt. pl.* looked out, found, 194; Waytid, *pp.* looked, 4233. See Waite.
- Wayue (Wafe), *ger.* to send, deliver, 2431; (Wayfe), 1175; Wayue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* give up, 5134; Wayues, *pr. s.* despatches, sends, 4691; (Wayffes), sends, 2316; Wayues, *pr. s.* puts aside, waives, 4656; Wayued, *pp.* transmitted, 4221; sent, 2695; (Wayfed), conveyed, 1728. Not Wayne; see Wayfe. Mod. E. *waive*. See *waiven* in Stratmann.
- Wayues, *pr. s.* leans (?), 945. But D. has Wayfes vp a window, i. e. lifts up a window, opens a window. See above. The reading *out* was due to thinking of *waytes*, i. e. looks, in the latter part of the line.

- Wajes (Wawes), *pl.* waves, 1309.
See Wawis.
- We, *pron.* we, 178, 180, &c.
- We, *s.* man, 541, 3080, 4655; (Wye), 1858, 2302, 2389. See Wee, Wye.
- Webbis, *pl.* fabrics, woven cloths, 4911, 5295; (Webbys), 1547; Webbis, cobwebs, *rather than* webs of cloth, 4807; Webis (Webbes), fabrics, 1577; (Webbez), 1523.
- Wed, *v.* wed, 297; Wedd, *pt. s.* wedded, 3454; 1 *pt. s.* 587; Wed him (Weddit hym), *pp.* wedded, 822.
- Wede, *s.* weed, 413.
- Wede, *s.* garment, 120; (Wedes, *pl.*), stuff, lit. garment, 2229; (Wede), dress, armour, 809*; Wedis, *pl.* weeds, garments, 232, 3796, 3959; armour, 3015; (Wedes), 1506, 1530, 2768; robes, 1559; Wedes, *pl.* weeds, garments, 2886; Here-wedis (-wedes), garments of iron, coats of mail, 1010.
- Wede, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* go mad, 539; Wedis (Wodez), *pr. s.* goes mad, 1926. A.S. *wédan*.
- Weding (Weddyng), *s.* wedding, 827.
- Wedire, *s.* weather, 4142; Wedirs, *pl.* weathers, tempests, 557; Wedres, storms, 4796.
- Wedowe, widow (*Dubl. MS.* albido for a wido), 1977; Wedow, 5089; Wedous, *pl.* widows, 1558.
- Wee, *s.* man, 134, 314, 383, 477, 2521, 5317, &c.; (Wy), 725, 1628; (Wye), 855; (Weght), 1993; Wees, *pl.* men, 3264, 4190, 5374; (Wies), 1030; (Wyes), 1250, 2212. See We, Wye.
- Welcum, *pp.* as *adj.* welcome, 3211; Welcom, 2302.
- Weld, *v.* rule over, obtain, 3423; Weld (Weld), *ger.* to wield, to govern, 2994; Welden, to wield, 651; Weldes, 2 *pr. s.* wieldest, rulest, 4932; (Weldes), *pr. s.* wields, possesses, 3247; (Weldyd), *pt. s.* ruled, 827*.
- Wele, *adv.* well, 30, 44, 171, &c.
- Wele, *s.* weal, 4621; (Whele), 1858.
- Welk, *pt. pl.* walked, 4190.
- Welken, *s.* sky, 247, 1566, 3038; (Welkyn), 714; Welkyn, 554.
- Well ne, well nigh, very nearly, 539. See Wele.
- Wella (Wele), *adv.* very, 1970.
- Welland, *pres. part.* welling, boiling, 4080,
- Wellis, *pl.* springs, streams, 4385; springs, 4976.
- (Welt), *an error for Wilt* = Willid, *pp.* gone astray, 2984. See Willid.
- Welth, *s.* wealth, 3247, 3582; happiness, pleasure, 2276; success, 937; Welthe, prosperity, 3272; Welthis, *s. pl. as sing.* prosperity, 3290; Welthys, *pl.* riches, 4467.
- Weltid, *pt. pl.* rolled, 839; (Weltyn), *pr. pl.* 839.
- Wemen, *pl.* women, 528, 3755.
- Wemles, *adj.* stainless, 4949; un-hurt, untouched, 4066.
- Wenchis (Whenches), *pl.* wenches, maidens, 1558.
- Wende, *v.* go, turn, 865; *ger.* to go, 910; (Wend), *v.* go, 1632; (Wynd), *ger.* depart, 2949; Wendis, *pr. s.* wends, goes, 120, 371, 406; comes, 511; departs from life, dies, 933; (Wendes), goes, 976; Wendis (Wendyn), *pr. pl.* go, 1994. See Went.
- Wene, *s.* weening, supposition, 3516; also as *v.* I suppose, 3516. See below.
- Wene, *ger.* to suppose, 390; (Wene), *v.* 3119; Wenes, 2 *pr. s.* weenest, supposest, 3548; (Wenys), dost expect, 1736; Wenys (Wenes), *pr. s.* weens, expects, 844, 939; Wend, *pt. s.* thought, supposed, 2644; (Wende), 2546; (Wenyd), 933; Wend, *pt. pl.* thought, supposed, 3631; expected, 3431; Wenand, *pres. part.* expecting, 3587, 4308; Wene, *imp. s.* suppose, 3275; Wenys, *imp. pl.* ween, think, 1938.
- Wengis, *pl.* wings, 413.
- Went him, *pt. s.* went, 749; Went, went, 37, 428; *pt. pl.* 1410; (Wenden), 901; Went, *pp.* gone, 159. See Wend.
- (Wepe), *ger.* to weep, 872; Wepis,

- pr. s. weeps*, 972; (*Wepys*), 963, 1287, 727*; *Wepand*, *pres. part.* weeping, 2999.
 (Wer), *were*, 764. See *Were*.
 (Werayour), *s. warrior, soldier*, 2643. See *Werreour*.
 Werbild (*Werblet*, *pt. pl.*), *pp.* blown, lit. warbled, 2222.
 Werd, *s. world*, 18, 24, 37, 40, 247, 519, 3471; earth, 4142; plain, 4136; (*Werld*), *world*, 995, 1051; (*Wardl*), 2653; (*World*), 2255; *Werde*, *world*, 189, 389, 441, 1963, 4305, 5289; Of þe *werde*, in the *world*, 3597; þe *litill werde*, the little *world*, the microcosm, or *world* within a man, 4494; *in l.* 3301, the former *werd* = *world*, but the latter is an error for *werk* = *work*; see *l.* 3299. See *Worde*.
 Werd, *s. fate*, 3247; *Werdes*, *pl.* destinies, fates, 257, 270, 949; *Werdis*, 283; (*Werdes*), 1099; (*Werdez*), 702, 2260. See *Wird*, *Werid*.
 Werdly (*Wordly*), *adj.* worldly, 3262.
 Were, 2 *pt. s. subj.* *were*, mightest be, 368; *pt. s. subj.* 142, 193, 239, 421, &c. See *Wer*.
 Were, *s. war*, 651, 5586, 5598; conflict, 2260; (*Were*), 808*; *Weris*, *pl. wars*, 4400, 4502; *Weres*, 2365; Of *weres*, in *war*, 2373.
 Were, *ger. to wear*, 3959, 5123.
 Were ye (*read Were þe*), *imp. s.* defend thyself, 2830.
 Were (*Wery*), *v. worry*, 2533. See *Wery*.
 Weres, *pr. s. wars*, 3536.
 Weried (*Warryd*), *pp.* accursed, 3212. See *Warien* in *Stratmann*.
 Werid (*Werd*), *s. weird, fate*, 689. See *Werd*.
 Weris, 2 *pr. s. wearest*, 2308; *Werid*, *pt. s. wore*, 3635. See *Werrid*.
 Weris (*Weres*), *pl. men*, 1300. A.S. *wer*.
 Werke, *s. work, deed*, 1423, 3199; doing, 2856; (*Werk*), *work*, 1290; fortification, 1298; *Werk*, *work*, 1071; *Werkis*, *pl. works, deeds*, 12, 38, 3271; (*Werkez*), 727*.
 Werke, *s. pain*, 539. The same word as the above.
 Werkis, *pr. s. pains*, 531.
 Werld, *s. world*, 3254; (*Werlede*) 1502.
 (Werld), *error for Werd, s. fate*, 3247. See *Werd*.
 Werpis, *pr. pl. warp, twist*, 798; (*Warpyn*), *cast*, 1300; *Werpe vp*, *cast up, hence rise up*, 557; *Werpid*, *pt. s. uttered*, 202; (*Warpyd*), *spake*, 709; *Werped* (*Warpyd*), *cast, flung, set*, 1526; *Werpid* (*Wappyd, wrongly for Warpyd*), *pt. s. threw, flung*, 1432; *Werpid*, *pp. uttered*, 243; *Werpis* (*Warpez*), *imp. pl. 2 p. throw*, 2142.
 Werray (*Werre*), *ger. to war upon, fight against*, 2689; *Werrays* (*Warreys*), *pr. s. wars, carries on war*, 2495; *Werraïs* (*Werrys*), *wars, makes war*, 3166; *Werraïd*, *pt. s. warred, carried on war*, 3730. O.F. *werreier* (*Burguy*).
 Werreour, *s. warrior, destroyer by war*, 5310; *Werraïour* (*Weryour*), *warrior*, 3211; *Werreours*, *pl. warriors*, 2643; *Werriouris* (*Weirowrs*), 1014; (*Weryours*), 1798; *Werriours* (*Wereour, s.*), *pl. warriors*, 2206; (*Weryours*), 2325; *Werrayouris*, *warriors*, 3568; *Werraours*, *they who make war (upon us)*, 4294; *Werrayours*, *pl. gen. of warriors*, 4007.
 Werre (*Were*), *war*, 2202; *Werres* (*Werez*), *pl.* 1928.
 Werrid (*Wered*), 2 *pt. pl.* *wore*, 2290. See *Weris*.
 Wers, *adj. comp. worse*, 3199.
 Werst, *adj. worst*, 532, 4656.
 Werstillare (*Wristiller*), *wrestler*, 2287.
 Wery, *adj. weary*, 1271, 3488, 3917.
 (Wery), *ger. to worry*, 759*. See *Were*.
 Weryd, *pt. s. wore*, 3330.
 Weschid (*Wessh*, *pt. pl.*), *pt. s. washed*, 2543.
 Wessell (*Vessell*), *s. plate*, 2928.
 West, *adj. west*, 1733.
 Wete, *v. wit, know*, 241, 304, 680,

- 5016; *ger.* to know, 714, 1718; to wit, 1728; *Wetis*, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* know ye, 3516; know, 294; *Wete*, *pr. s. subj.* may know, may wit, 2783; *Wete*, *imp. s.* know, 1970; *Wete*, *imp. pl.* know, 4007; *Wetis* (*Wetes*), 1938.
- Wete*, *v. error* for *Wene* (*as in D.*), suppose, 3119.
- Wethire*, *adj.* *Wethire halfe, left side, wrong side, evil direction* (*Lat. in sinistrum*), 3355. A.S. *wiðer*. Cf. *Widdersinnis* in Jamieson.
- Wethris*, *pl. wethers*, 4476.
- Wetirly*, *adv. truly*, 4222; (*Witterly*), certainly, 2856; *Weterly*, certainly, surely, 304; (*Witterly*), 1423.
- Wetis*, *pr. s.* waits, watches, 241. See *Waite*.
- Wex*, *pt. s. 1 p.* grew, 5621; *pt. s. 616, 629*; (*Wex*), became, 1189.
- (*Weyle*), *v. choose*, 759*. See *Wale*.
- West*, *s. weight*, 5473.
- (*What*), what, 682, 683; (*Whatt*), 1147; What of, what with, 528; *interj.* what! 723*.
- When*, when, 42, 119, &c.
- (*Whene*), *s. queen*, 733*.
- (*Where*), where, 683.
- Wheþire*, *conj.* whether, 249.
- Which*, who, 828*.
- (*Whil*), *conj.* while, 2255; (*Whils*), whilst, 2172; (*Whilse*), 1220.
- (*Whistely*), *adv. silently*, 1851.
- Whit*, *for With*, with, 3013; (*Whit*), 1613.
- Who, who? 834*.
- (*Whyne*), whence, 834*.
- Whytin* (*Within*), within, 1290.
- Wiche-craft*, *s. witchcraft*, 378.
- Wicket*, *s. small door*, 5545.
- Wickid*, *adj. wicked*, 2425.
- Wickidly*, *adv. wickedly*, 2425; (*Wikedly*), 1728.
- Wickidnes*, *s. wickedness, evil*, 3277, 4425.
- Wide*, *adj. wide*, 37; (*Wyde*), 1970; *Wid open* (*Wide hopyn*), *adv. wide open*, 1526.
- Wife*, wife, 297. See *Wyfe*.
- (*Wight*), *adj. nimble*, 765*.
- (*Wightly*), *adv. actively*, 1405, 1428.
- Wild*, *ger. to rule*, 3477; (*Weld*), *ger. to rule, govern*, 994, 2653; rule over, 3086; to wield, possess, 1669, 1736; *Wild* (*Wilde*), to possess, 939; (*Wyld*), 2949; *Wild*, *v. wield, possess*, 301; *Wild* (*Welde*), *v. rule, possess*, 3227; *Wild* (*Wyld him*), possess for himself, 1667; *Wild*, *ger. to possess*, 1669; *Wildis*, *pr. pl. possess*, 4481; *Wildid* (*Weldit*), *pt. s. governed*, 2303.
- Wild*, *adj. wild*, 378, 557, 1250; (*Wilde*), 1153; (*Wylde*), 1540.
- Wild*, *for Will*, *s. will, desire*, 4622. Lat. text—*uoluntas*.
- Wildare* (*Weldar*), *s. governor, ruler*, 3166. See *Wildire*.
- Wild-hedid*, *adj. wild-headed*, 12.
- Wildire* (*Welder*), *wielder, ruler*, 1608. See *Wildare*.
- Wildernes*, *s. wilderness*, 3487, 4044.
- Wile*, *s. wile, guile*, 416, 5233; *Wiles*, *pl.* 4365; (*Wilez*), 1764; (*Willes*), stratagems, 1363.
- Willy* (*Willyly*), *adv. with guile, carefully*, 1764.
- Will*, *s. wish, desire*, 14, 386, 1718, 4604; *will*, 323; intention, 304; power, disposal, 3503; power to dispose of, 3123; (*Wille*), will, wish, desire, 680, 2013; (*Wyll*), 1973; *Wille*, will, resolution, 106; (*Willes*), *pl. desires*, 1890; At will, 939; To will, at his will, 301.
- Will*, *pr. s. desires*, 636; *will*, 297, 301; (*Wille*), will, 1471; (*Wyll*), 1754; *Will*, 1 *pr. s.* 294; 2 *pr. pl.* 416, 446; *Will ȝe, if ye will*, 212; *Willis*, *pr. s. 2 p. wildest, desirest*, 4240; *Willis*, *pr. s. wills, desires*, 291, 3494.
- Will* (*Wille*), *adj. at a loss*, 1272. So in Barbour. Icel. *villr*. See *Willid*.
- Willi* (*Willy*), *adj. willing, ready, disposed*, 2689.
- Willid*, *pt. pl. strayed*, 4132; *Willid*, *pp. lost, bewildered, astray*, 2984. Cf. Icel. *villr*, astray; see *Will*, *adj.*

- (Wilnet), *pt. s.* desired, 680; Will-ne, *imp. s.* inquire of, ask, 5036. A.S. *wilnian*.
- Wilnyng, *s.* desire, 1876.
- Wilsom, *adj.* wild, waste, desolate (lit. wildsome), 4076, 5565.
- Winde (Wende), *1 pr. s.* wend, go, 827. See Wend.
- Wing (Wynge), wing, portion, district, 1051; Wingis, *pl.* wings, 5523.
- Wintre (Wynter), *s.* winter, 2895; Wintir (Wynter), 2152; Wintir, *pl.* years, 4441; Wintire, years, 3556; Winter (Wynter), 692; Wintris, *gen.* winter's, 3959.
- Wird, *s.* fate, 443; Wirid, 2260; Wirdis, *pl.* weirds, destinies, fate, 41, 178, 4950; Wirdes, 2307, 2379. See Werd, Werid.
- Wirke, *v.* work, do, 937; *ger.* to do, 2013; to act, 160; (Werke), to do, 2949; (Wirche), to act, 3359; Wirke, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* work, 3092; Wirkis (Wirkyd), *pr. pl.* work, 1412.
- Wirling (Wirlyng), *s.* dwarf, 1706; Wirlinges (Wyrlyngez), dwarfs, 1733. Sc. *wirl*, *wurl*, a dwarfish person; Jamieson.
- Wirschip, *s.* honour, 11, 616, 662, 5586; (Worschip), 723, 811, 1949, 2261; Wirschips, *pl.* honours, 3712.
- Wirschip (Worshippys, *pr. pl.*), *pp.* worshipped, honoured, 1963.
- Wirschipfull, *adj.* worshipful, worthy, 243.
- Wirstill (Wrastyll), *v.* wrestle, 2276.
- Wis, *imp. s.* make known, declare, explain, 4997; (Wissez), *pr. s.* instructs, guides, 793*; Wissid (Wist), *pp.* made known, 689. A.S. *wissian*.
- Wisdome (Wisdom), wisdom, 898.
- (Wisely), *adv.* wisely, 765*.
- Wist, *pt. s.* knew, 171, 937, 1189, 3080, 762*; *pt. pl.* 159, 1148, 5465.
- Wit, *s.* wisdom, 662; (Witte), 1858. See Witt.
- Wite, *s.* blame; *read* Na wite, no blame, 477. A.S. *wite*.
- Wite, *v.* blame, 876. See above.
- Wite, *ger.* to depart, 3277; Wite, *v.* send, make to depart, 5032. A.S. *gewitan*, to depart. See Witis.
- Witerwarde, *for* Witherwarde, *adj.* adverse; þa witherwarde, those who are openly adverse, 4297.
- With, *prep.* with, 49, 64, 82, 83, 85; by, 2079, 2397, 2562, 3493, 3578, 4733, 5589; against, 3166, 3607; To saue with oure lyuys, to preserve our lives with, 4269; With þat, thereupon, 330, 3054; provided that, 343.
- With-draw, *1 pr. s.* retreat, 2015; With-drewe, *pt. pl.* retreated, drew back, 5449.
- With-in, *adv.* within, 14, 1030; *prep.* 206, 211, 348; With-inen, *prep.* 251.
- With-out, *prep.* outside, 3919; (With-owte), 815*; Withoute, without, 148.
- With-out, *adv.* outside, 1306; (With-owte), 1032.
- Withouten, *prep.* without, 118; (With-owtyn), 1103, 2196; besides, 3600; Withouten, *prep.* without, outside, 133, 335; (With-owte), 698; (With-out), beyond, 1209.
- Withouten (Withowte), *adv.* outside, 1389.
- With-sitt (Withsitte, *ger.*), *v.* oppose, 2410.
- With-stande, *v.* oppose, resist, 5624; (Withstonde), *ger.* 1738; With-stand (Wit-stande), *ger.* 2077; With-standis (Withstandyn), *pr. pl.* withstand, 1138; Withstand, 1443; With-stude (Withstondyn), *pt. pl.* withstood, 1405; (Withstonde), 1053; (Withstode), 1443; With-stude (With-stondyn), *pt. pl.* 1031.
- Witis, *pr. s.* departs, 5318. See Wite.
- Witles, *adj.* witless, unwise, 107.
- Witnes, *pr. s.* witnesses, shows, 916; (Wittnes), 1439, 2900; Wittnes, witnesses, 488; (Wittnesse), 1592.
- Witrely, *adv.* verily, 422. See Witter.

- Witt, *s.* wisdom, 3092; wit, knowledge, 45, 259, 898; mind, 489; fancy, 5531; Witt (Witte), wit, knowledge, 2689; reason, 1410; Wittis, *pl.* wits, senses, 2336, 2420; dispositions, 14; Man wittis, man's wits, 5552; Wittes, *pl.* understandings, 1890. See Wit.
- Witter, *adj.* knowing, 629. Icel. *vitr.* See witer in Stratmann. (Wittily), *adv.* wisely, 2245.
- Wist (Wight), *adj.* strong, active, vigorous, 1014, 1798, 2206.
- Wiȝtis (Wightez), *pl.* wights, men, 3212.
- Witly, *adv.* nimbly, 651, 3040; vigorously, 2245; quickly, 120, 3774; (Wightly), quickly, 1030; bravely, 1298.
- Wlattis, *pr. pl.* disgust, 4277; Wlated, *pp.* disgusted, nauseated, more than satisfied, 5634.
- Wlonk, *adj.* proud, 5089. A.S. *wlanc.*
- Wod, *s.* wood, forest, 70, 2984, 3795; Wodd, 3906; (Wode), 776; Woddis, *pl.* woods, 4116, 4382, 4721, 5242.
- Wode (Wod), *s.* wood (of a spear-shaft), 798.
- Wode, *adj.* mad, 738, 1410, 5346; angry, 3167; (Wod), raging, 1168. A.S. *wód.*
- (Wode), *adv.* madly, 1189.
- Wodnes, *s.* madness, fury, 4400.
- Wodwose, *pl.* (*though the form is sing.*), satyrs, fauns, 1540. "Wode-wese, *uowyse*, woodwose, Siluanus, satirus;" Prompt. Parv.
- Wold (Wald), *pt. s.* would, 751.
- Wolfe, wolf, 2533; Wolfes, *pl.* 5242.
- Woll, *s.* wool, 4166; Wolle, 3957.
- Woman, woman, 348, 428.
- Wombe, *s.* womb, 755. See Wame.
- Won, *pp.* won, 454; reached, arrived, 4136, 5523; got, passed, 4196; (Wonne), 942; Wonn (Wonne), 818; Wonn (Wonnez, *wrongly*), *pp.* won, 1238.
- Won, *v.* live, dwell, 4044 (see note); *ger.* to dwell, 4310; Wons, *pr. s.* dwells, is, remains, 5565; Wonne, *pr. s.* dwells, 3089; Wonand,
- pres. part.* dwelling, 5475. And see Wont.
- Wond, *adj.* 5428. Read *woud*, i.e. mad, furious, highly excited. See Wode.
- Wonde (Wound), *ger.* to wound, 2212; Wondid, *pt. pl.* wounded, 3939; Wondid (Woundit), *pp.* wounded, 933; (Woundyt), 3131; (Woundett), 1277.
- Wonden (Woundit, i.e. wounded), *pp.* wound, involved in, 2811 (where we should insert *of* before *my* in the Ashmole text); Wondyn, *pp.* wound, wreathed; applied to a wreathed snow-drift, 1757.
- Wonder, wonder; *as adj.* strange, 811, 841.
- Wonder, *adv.* wonderfully, 629.
- Wondid, *pp.* wounded, 3150. (*But an error for wontid, pt. pl. wanted, lacked.*)
- Wonding, *s.* wounding, 4795.
- Wondire, *s.* wonder, 13, 549; (Wondre), 852, 1150, 1616; Wondre, 3917; Wonder, 514.
- Wondirfull, *adj.* wonderful, 416.
- Wondirly (Wondrely), *adv.* wonderfully, 1300; (Wonderly), 933; Wonderly, 898.
- Wondirs (Wonderys); Me wondirs, it is wonderful to me, 3119; Vs wondres, it is wonderful to us, 4033; Wondird (Wounderyd), *pp.* amazed, 2904.
- Wonn, *adj.* wan, pale, white, 1757.
- Wont, *pt. s.* dwelt, 134; Wont, *pt. pl.* dwelt, 4721; Wont, *pp.* wont, 725.
- Wonynge-stede, *s.* dwelling-place, 3734. Cf. Du. *woonstede*, a dwelling-place.
- Worche, *ger.* to work, perform, 313.
- Worde, *s.* word, tale, 243; fame, report, 37; (Word), 709; Out of worde, beyond word, beyond telling, 3099 [the Dublin MS. has *oute of warde*, beyond guard, past restraint]; Wordis, *pl.* words, 95, 167, 202, 237; (Wordes), 840; (Wordez), 984.
- Worde, *s.* world, 5131. See Werd.
- Wordly, *adj.* worldly, p. 279, l. 16.

- Worm, *s.* serpent, snake, 511; Worme, 383; Wormes, *pl.* serpents, 4795, 5428; reptiles, 4198; worms, 5589.
- (Worship), *s.* honour, 2248.
- Worth, *v.* be, 691; become, 4228; come to pass, happen, 3080, 3552; Worth, *v.* get ready (lit. become), 2004; Worth, *v.* get up (lit. become), 2878; (Worth), come to pass, happen, 714, 3275; become, attain, 762*; Worthe, *v.* be, 1834; become, 189, 4597; take place, happen, 119, 171, 341; (Worth), become, 1272, 1881; befall, 2255; Worthe, *ger.* to be, 1817; (Worth), to be, 2084; to become, to turn to, 3391; Worthis, *pr. s.* becomes, 383, 385, 468, 722; is, 4860; mounts, mounts up (lit. becomes), 2973; [spelt Worthes], 3613; Worthis, becomes, turns, 3254; goes, 3302; (Worthes), becomes, 2521; Worthis, *pr. s.* (*as fut.*) will happen, will come to pass, 4059; shall be, 477; Worthis (Worthez), happens, 1736; Worthis, *pr. s. impers.* it is, it needs, 4294; Worthis, 2 *pr. s.* becomest, Worthis thaim ouire, gettest the better of them, subduest them, 4297; Worthe, 2 *pr. pl.* (*ye*) become, 4452; (Worthen), are, 1034; (Worth), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst be (MS. *wroth*), 810*; Worthe, become, 103; Worthe (Worth), *pr. s. subj.* happen, 1978; Worthe (Worthen), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* become, be, 2445; Worthid, *pt. s.* happened, occurred, 2310, 2317, 5531; became, 378; (Worth), *pt. s.* happened, 3090; Worthid, *pt. s. subj.* should come to pass, should be so, 3275; Worthe (Worthen), *pt. pl.* (*or pp.*) became, or become, 1443 [*the form worthen is a pp.*]; Worthe, *pp.* become, turned to, 4524; (Worthen), become, 722; Worthid, become, 591.
- Worth, *v.* esteem worthy, 2124; Worthid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* esteemed, 3090.
- Worthe, *adj.* worthy, 302, 3426; (Worth), worth, 2830; (Worthi), worthy, 755; (Worthy), 2287; Worthi, worthy, deserving, 3436; (Worthy), 1798, 2078, 765*.
- Worthili, *adv.* worthily, 1405; (Worthyly), highly, 2150.
- Worthines, *s.* worthiness, 662; highness, 3163; (Worthynes), 1938; worship, 2684; Worthenes (Worthiness), worthiness, 1825.
- Worthist (Worthiest), *adj. superl.* worthiest, 1608.
- Worthy, *adv.* worthily, 1428.
- Worȝt (Wroght), *pp.* wrought, caused, 3264.
- Wose, *s.* juice, 413. A.S. *wós*.
- Woud, *adj.* mad, furious, excited, 5428. See Wode.
- Wounde (Wound), *s.* wound, 1411; Woundis (Woundez), *pl.* wounds, 1331.
- (Woundes), *pr. s.* wounds, 1214; Woundid, *pt. s.* wounded, 1214; Woundid (Woundit), *pt. pl.* wounded, 3200; Woundid (Wounden, *pr. pl.*), 1396; Woundid (Woundett), *pp.* 2086.
- Woundird (Wondderytt), *pp.* amazed, struck with wonder, 2856.
- Woydis (Woydez), *pr. s.* puts away, dismisses, 879; (Woydez), *imp. pl.* quit, leave, 2469. See Voyde.
- Woȝe (Wogh), injury, wrong, harm, 2812. A.S. *wóh*.
- Woȝes, *pl.* walls, 3300. A.S. *wáh*.
- Wraa, *s.* corner, retired spot, 4190; Wra (Wray), corner, 1585. Icel. *rá*, Dan. *vraa*.
- Wraiste, *adj.* perverse, variable, 4622.
- Wrake, *s.* vengeance, 1412; Wrak, 2721. A.S. *wracu*.
- Wrangle, *s.* wrong, 2812.
- Wrate, 1 *pt. s.* wrote, 2431; (Wrote), 3163; Wrate (Wrote), *pt. s.* 1825; Wrate, *pt. pl.* wrote, 203.
- Wrath, *adj.* angry, wroth, 738, 841, 2245; Wrathe, 3589.
- Wrath, *s.* fit of anger, 2310.
- Wrathfull, *adj.* wrathful, 3167.
- Wrawid, *pp.* angry, peevish, 3167. See Wrah in Stratmann.
- Wreke, *v.* avenge, wreak, 3199; Wrekis (Wrekes), *pr. s.* avenges,

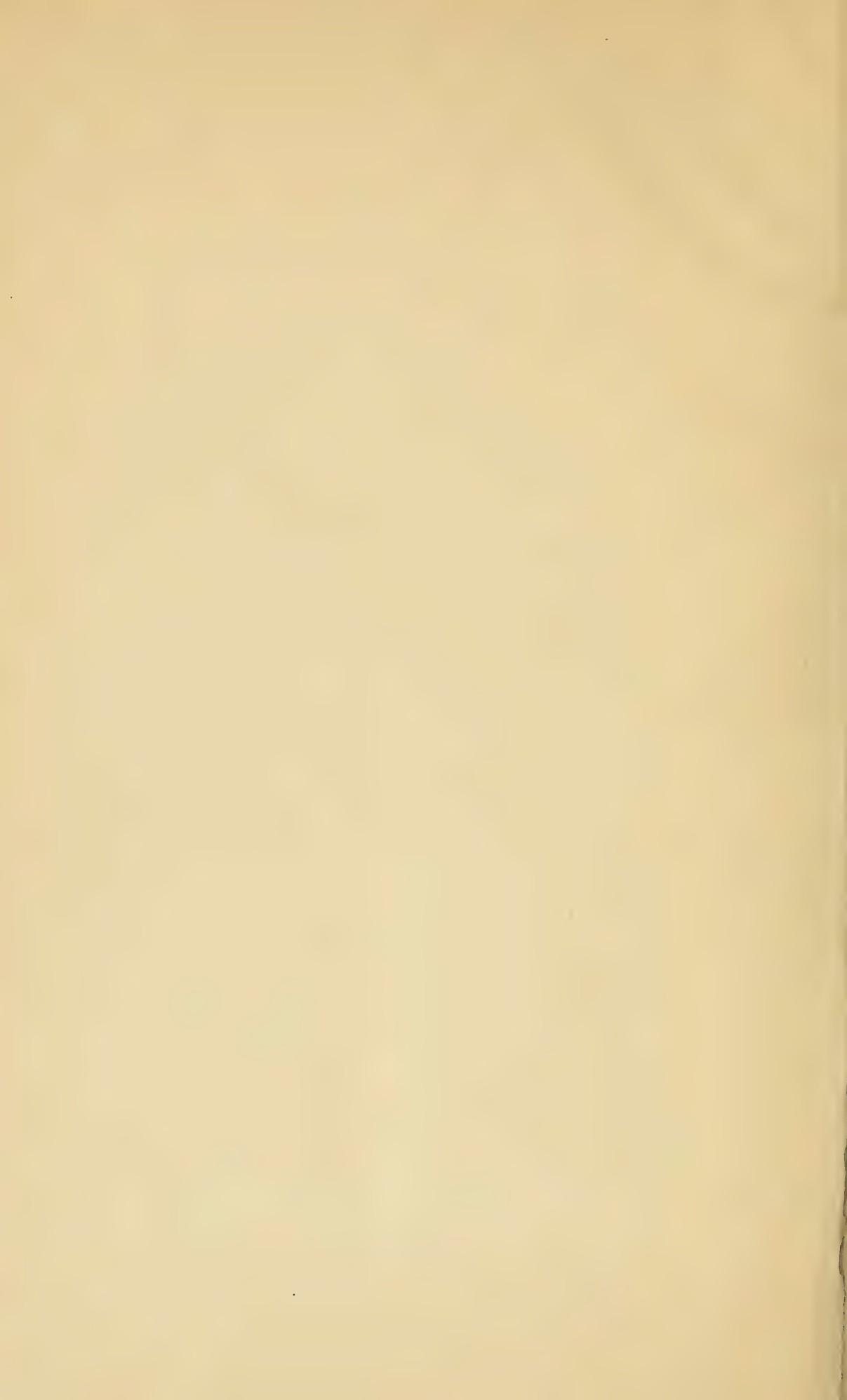
- 855 ; Wrekis (Wrekes), *pr. pl.* avenge, 1410.
 Wrengis, *pr. s.* wrings, 339.
 Wrenkis, *pl.* tricks, 4365. A.S. *wrenc.*
 Wrestild (Wrystyllyd), *pp.* wrestled, 784.
 Wreten, *pp.* written, 643 ; (Written), 1600, 1637 ; (Wrytten), 1845.
 Wreth, *s.* wrath, 855, 865.
 Wrethen, *pp.* writhen, coiled up, 5526.
 Wricchidnes, *s.* wretchedness, misery, 4589.
 Wriche, *s.* wretch, 3075, 4059 ; Wriches, *pl.* wretches, 4005, 4564 ; Wricchis, 4597 ; (Wrechez), 1733.
 Wristilling (Wristylyng), *s.* wrestling, 2260.
 Write, 1 *pr. s.* write, 2009 ; (Writtez), 1 *pr. pl.* 1727.
 Writh, *s.* wrath, ire, 4389, 4847, 5326 ; Writhe, 4153.
 Writhing, *s.* angering ; For writhing, for fear of angering, 5036.
 Writhis, *pr. s. impers.* it makes (you) angry, 4639 (see the note, p. 312) ; Writhis, *pr. s.* becomes wrath, 2593 ; *refl.* 1189 ; Writhis (Wrathen), *pr. pl.* become angry, 1409.
 Writt, *s.* writing, 24 ; original text, 608, 709 ; (Writte), 1376 ; Writte, writing, 2152 ; (Writte), letter, 2022 ; Write, letter, 5102 ; Writ (Writte), writing, 2316 ; Writtis, *pl.* writings, letters, 3735, 4233 ; (Writtes), 881, 2112, 2695.
 Wriȝtis, *pl.* wrights, workmen, 4205.
 (Wroght), *pp.* made, 1149. See Wroȝt.
 (Wroght), *for* Wrath, angry, 2245.
 Wroken, *pp.* banished, driven, limited, 4428.
 (Wroth), *adj.* wroth, angry, 1189.
 Wrothe, *s.* wrath, 2077.
 (Wrothed), *pt. s.* became angry, 2593.
 Wrothir-haile, destruction, calamity, 1759. (Usually *wrotherhele.*)
 Wroȝt, *pt. s.* wrought, 416 ; (Wroȝt), 2 *p.* wroughtest, 869 ; Wroȝt, *pt. pl.* did, 2330 ; (Wroȝt), 2 *pt. pl. subj.* should do, 2204 ; Wroȝt, *pp.* wrought, 386, 422 ; (Wroȝt), 1290, 1540.
 (Wrychednes), *s.* wretchedness, misery, 3277.
 (Wy), man, 727*, 762*, 782* ; (Wyes), *pl.* 809*. See We.
 Wyde, *adj.* wide, 571, 1324.
 Wyfe, *s.* woman, 390 ; wife, 587, 828, 5178. See Wife.
 (Wykydly), *adv.* severely, 1214.
 (Wylde), *s.* dominion, 1608. Lit. *wielding.*
 Wyll, *s.* wish, 782*.
 Wyn, *v.* win, conquer, 519 ; win (to), reach, attain, 4697 ; (Wynne), win, 1629, 2302 ; (Wynne), get, go, 1440 ; Wynn, win, conquer, 449 ; Wyn (Wynne), *ger.* to win, 1892 ; to make their way, 1148, 1156 ; Wynn (Wyn), to win, 2248 ; Wynnes, *pr. s.* goes, advances, 1428 ; (Wynnez), wins, conquers, 1037, 2278 ; Wynnys, *pr. s.* wins, 648 ; conquers, 5611 ; Wynes, *pr. s.* comes, 5530 ; Wynnes him vp, *pr. s.* snatches up, 828 ; Wynnes, *pr. pl.* get ; Wynnes away, get away, get off, 3622 ; Wynnes (ow vp), *imp. pl.* get up, rise up, 541.
 Wynd, *s.* wind, 557, 1757 ; Wynde, 4159 ; Wyndis, *pl.* 4143.
 Wynde (Weynde), *v.* go, return, 1835 ; Wynde, *ger.* to scale, climb, ascend zigzag, 4878 ; Wynd (Wende), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* depart, 2014 ; Wyndis, *pr. s.* wends, 3325 ; (Wendes), goes, 2150, 2177, 2189, 2487, 2971 ; Wyndis, *pr. pl.* turn, go, 3631, 3741 ; (Wenden), 2453 ; Wynde (Wende), 2 *pr. s. subj.* depart, return, 2915.
 Wyndles, *adj.* breathless, 1271.
 Wyndou (Wyndow), window, 945 ; (Wyndow), 769*.
 Wyne (Wynne), *s.* wine, 1350 ; Wynes, *pl.* wines, 3350, 4303, 4436.
 Wynes, *pl.* vines, 3667.
 Wyngis (Wengez), *pl.* wings, 1769, 2709.
 Wynly, *adv.* quickly, readily, 5545. Ray gives "winly, quietly" ; but I suspect it rather means 'cannily,' i. e. quickly, but without

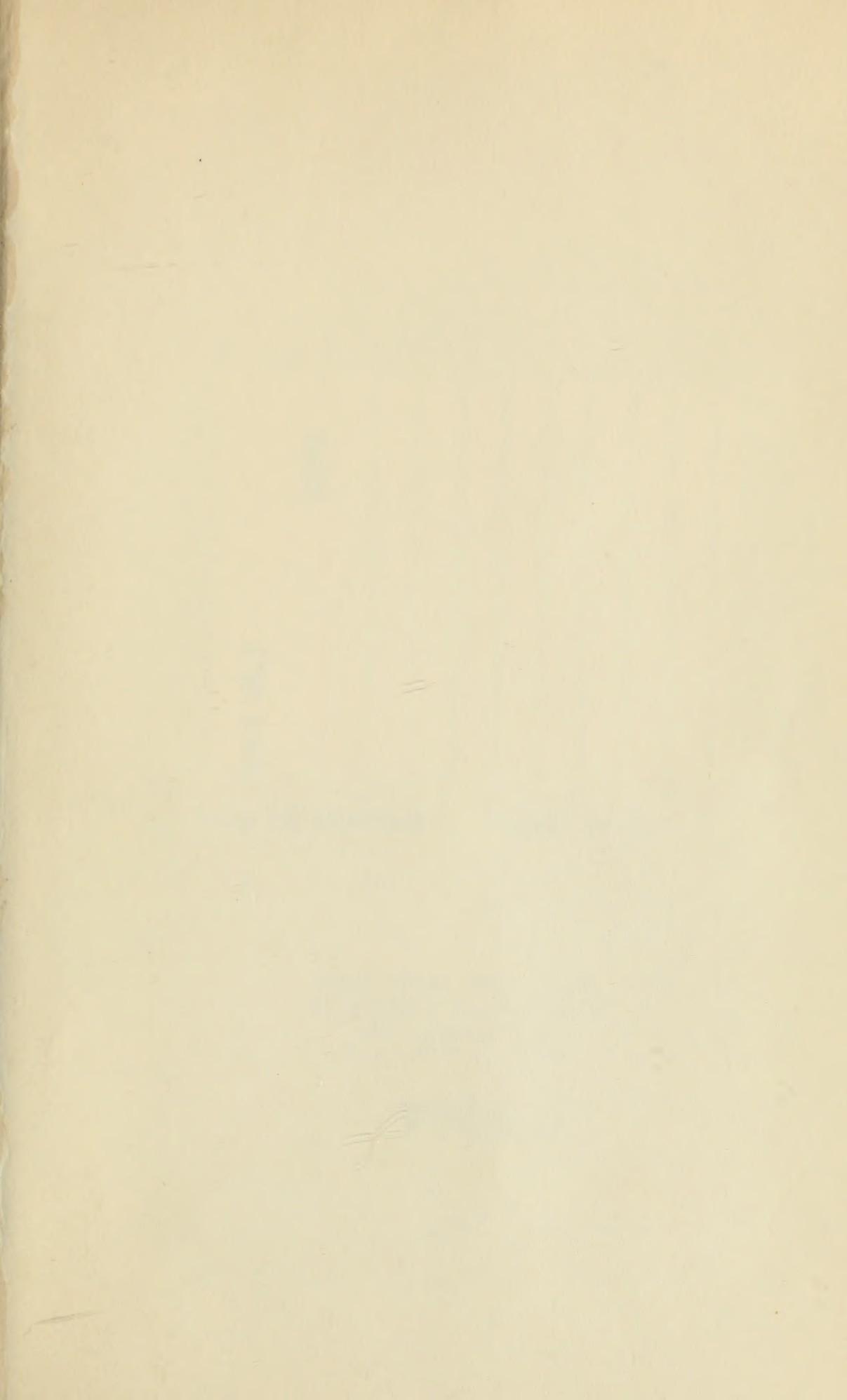
- fuss; in the Troy-book, it means 'readily, quickly' in l. 1165, and 'readily, easily' in l. 8655. From the verb *win*, to get, come by. Quite distinct from *winly* = pleasantly.
- Wynter, *pl.* winters, years, 634, 646, 719, 920; (*Wyntre*), 1005; *Wyn-tir* (*Wynter*), 1677.
- Wyothy, *a city*, 2150.
- Wyrkys, *2 pr. pl.* work, 2425.
- Wyse, *adj.* wise, 11, 41, 629; (*Wise*), 725; Wyse man, *gen.* sage's, 2124.
- Wyse, *s.* wise, manner, way, 13, 230, 2263; guise, 2863; þe same wyse, in the same way, 3352.
- Wysest, *adj. superl.* wisest, 24; *Wisest*, 247.
- (Wysez), *pr. s. refl.* considers, 751. *For Vysez* = Avises.
- Wysid (*Wysett*), *pp.* sent off, directed (to go), 2064. A.S. *wisian*.
- Wyssis (*Vysys*), *pr. s.* shows, 2988. (*Wyssyng*), *s.* instruction, 3256.
- Wyst, *pt. s.* knew, 509.
- Wysti (*Wistus*), *adj.* (perhaps) desolate, deserted, 1757. See *wysty* in Sir Gawain and the Grene Knight, 2189, where it is an adj., not a sb. Cf. M.E. *westi*.
- (Wyth), *prep.* with, 1202.
- Wyues (*Wifes*), *pl.* wives, 1558.
- Ydill; In ydille, in vain, 3975.
- Ydolatry, idolatry, 4459; Ydolatris, *pl.* 4261.
- Ydres, *pl.* hydras, water-snakes, 4089.
- (Ye), ye, 986.
- Yeldis (*zeldes*), *pr. s.* gives up (to), 2951.
- Yeuen, *pp.* given, 1713.
- (Yf), *conj.* if, 951, 1097, 2164; (*Yff*), 1850. See If.
- (Yhe), ye, 682, 683, 1034. See ze.
- Yles (*Ylez*), *pl.* isles, 1027; (*Ylez*), 1039. See Ile.
- Ymage, image, likeness, 191, 1126, 3362; Ymagis (*Ymagez*), *pl.* images, 1564.
- Ynde, India, 3160, 3183, 3484, 4102; (*Inde*), 1523, 2797; Yndee, 5663.
- Ynde, Indian, 5012.
- Yndis, *pl.* Indians, 3639; Yndes, 3617.
- Yndoyes, the Indian language, 5009; Yndoys, 5072.
- (Yoke), *s.* yoke, 818*.
- Yone, *pron.* that man, 1634.
- (You), *dat. pl.* you, 1013.
- (Your), your, 987; (*Yowr*), 1825.
- (Yren), iron, 746*, 756*, 1081. See Iren.
- Yse, *s.* ice, 2883.
- (Ysyd), *pp.* iced, frozen, 2883.
- Yssanna, name of an island, 2106.
- Ytaile (*Itale*), Italy, 1027.
- Ythes, *pl.* waters, waves, 1039. See Ithis.
- Ynde (*Inde*), India, 2799.
- ȝa, *adv.* yea, 354, 541, 889, 1822, 1834, 2142, 5353. See ȝha.
- ȝacora, *a nun*, Zacora, 2179.
- ȝald (*Zolde*), *pt. pl.* yielded, surrendered, 1140; (*Yeld*), 2147.
- ȝalow, *adj.* yellow, 607.
- ȝape, *adj.* vigorous, strong, 3304; (*ȝope*), keen, bold, 2201. A.S. *ȝéap*.
- ȝapely, *adv.* readily, 2406; eagerly, boldly, quickly, 80, 114, 2107, 2909, 4866; (*ȝopely*), vigorously, 1393; *ȝapeli*, 761.
- ȝapest, *adj. superl.* most active, most eager, 818*.
- ȝare, *adv.* readily, 607; quickly, early, 1107. A.S. *gearo*.
- ȝare, *adv.* yore, long ago, 1008.
- ȝarely, *adv.* promptly, 1035; (*ȝarle*), speedily, 1140; (*ȝarly*), quickly, readily, 818*, 1382.
- ȝaris, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 4866; *ȝare þe, imp. s.* prepare thyself, 80, 2909.
- ȝarkid, *pt. s.* prepared, 114; *ȝarkid to* (*ȝarken to*), shut to, fastened, 2449; *ȝarkid*, *pp.* prepared, 4894. A.S. *gearcian*.
- ȝarmand, *pres part.* yelling, bellowing, 4745. See *ȝarme* in Halliwell, p. 951. Cf. Icel. *jarmr*, a bleating, crying; W. *garmio*, to shout.
- (ȝate), *s.* gate, 783*; ȝatis, *pl.* gates, 496, 3209, 3705, 4892; (*ȝates*), 768, 1080, 762*.
- ȝe, *pron.* ye, 21, 212, 268, &c.; (*Ye*), 1802; (*Yhe*), 1801, 1866, 1893.
- ȝe (*for þe*), the, 3055.
- ȝedire, *adj.* vehement, 5042. Cf.

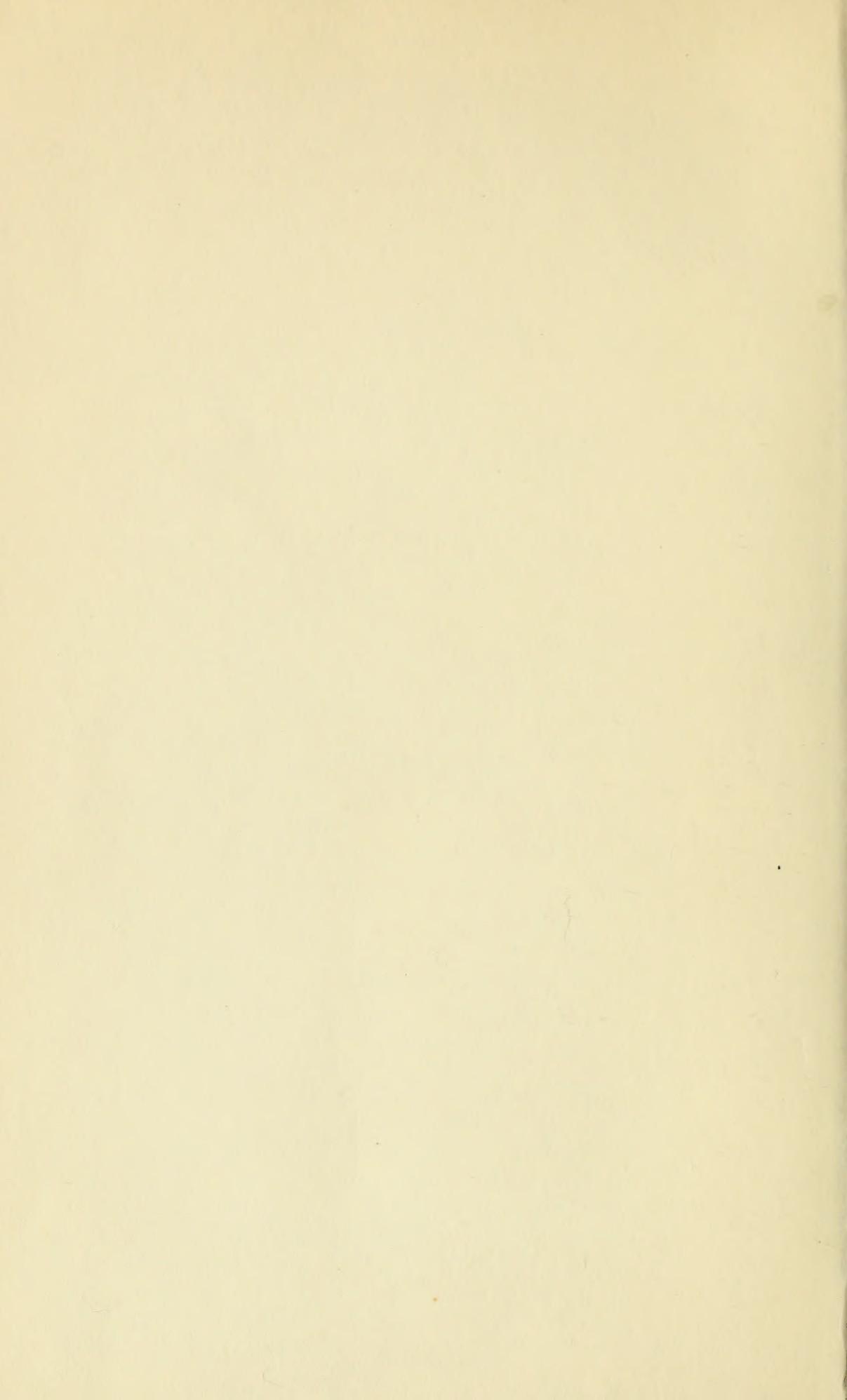
- Icel. *geð*, Norweg. *gjed*, mood, mind, humour; whence Norweg. *gjedad*, bold. See Allit. Poems.
- ȝee*, pron. ye, 2120, 4433. See *ȝe*.
- ȝefes* (Yevez), *imp. pl. 2 p.* give ye, 1035.
- ȝeld*, *v. give*, 3126; (*ȝelde*), 1808; *ȝeld*, *ger. to yield*, pay, 892; to yield, 1276; to give, 1891; (*ȝelde*), 1968; (*Yelde*), 924; *ȝelde*, *ger. to give (battle)*, deliver (battle), 137, 830*; *ȝeld* (*Yeld*), 1 *pr. s. give*, 863; *ȝeld* (*ȝelde*), *pr. s. subj. should give up*, 2313; *ȝeldis*, *pr. s. yields up*, 4286; (*ȝeldez*), *yields*, 971; *gives*, 1184; *ȝeldis* (*ȝelden*), *pr. pl. yield up (themselves)*, 2792; (*ȝeldyn*), *give*, 1388; *ȝeldis*, *pr. pl. (*ȝolden*, *pt. pl.*)*, *surrender*, 2232; *ȝeld*, *pt. s. gave*, 751; *ȝeld him*, *imp. s. let him yield himself*, 3124; *ȝeld*, *imp. pl. yield*, 1035.
- ȝeme*, *ger. to take care of*, 4505; *ȝemed*, 1 *pt. s. governed*, 3304; *ȝemyd*, *pt. s. kept, had charge of*, 1233. A.S. *gýman*.
- Zephall, Zephir, 3800.
- ȝerand*, *pres. part. screaming, chattering*, 4745. A.S. *georran*, to chatter, sound, creak. See *ȝerre*.
- ȝerde*, *s. rod of office, sceptre*, 813; *yard (measure)*, 4750; *sceptre, wand or emblem of office*, 1035; *ȝerd*, *wand*, 114.
- ȝere*, *s. year*, 288; *pl. years*, 633, 649; *ȝeris*, *pl. years*, 654; (*ȝeres*), 1008; (*Yherez*), 1107; *ȝerris*, 316; *ȝerys*, 251.
- ȝerely* (*ȝerly*), *adj. yearly*, 2406.
- ȝerne*, *adv. earnestly*, 457; *bitterly, greatly*, 1265; (*ȝarne*), *eagerly*, 1315, 1700. A.S. *georne*.
- ȝerne* (*ȝarne*), *pr. s. 1 p. yearn, desire*, 3124.
- ȝerre*, *s. outcry, loud lament*, 5042. See *ȝerand*.
- ȝet*, *conj. yet, nevertheless*, 565, 1140, 3742, 4628; (*ȝett*), 919. See *ȝit*.
- ȝeten*, *pp. gotten, obtained, attained*, 1107.
- ȝettes*, *pr. s. flows, gushes*, 3233; *ȝett*, *pt. pl. burst (out), lit. poured (out)*, 5042; *ȝeten*, *pp. molten, cast*, 607, 4894. A.S. *géotan*.
- ȝeuyn* (*ȝefen*), *pp. given*, 2107. *(ȝha)*, *yea*, 724*. See *ȝa*.
- ȝheldez*, *pr. s. yields*, *gives up*, 726*; *gives*, 751.
- ȝiff him*, *imp. let him give himself*, 3124.
- ȝildis*, *pr. s. 2 p. givest, deliverest*, 5192; *ȝildis* (*ȝeldyn*), *pr. pl. repay*, 1393; *ȝild*, *pr. s. subj. may yield*, 3187; *ȝild vp*, *imp. s. yield up*, 80. See *ȝeld*.
- ȝis*, *adv. yes*, 2079.
- ȝit*, *adv. again, still*, 3163; *yet, nevertheless, moreover*, 51, 185, 233, &c.; (*ȝitte*), 815*. See *ȝet*.
- ȝode*, *pt. s. went*, 1140; *ȝode him* (*hym*), *pt. s. went*, 761; *ȝode*, *pt. pl. went*, 1123, 1256, 3208; (*ȝodez*), *pt. pl. subj. should go*, 822* (where read *ȝode*).
- ȝoke*, *s. yoke*, 3124; *ȝokke*, 2909.
- ȝolden* (*ȝelden*), *pt. pl. yielded*, 2326; *ȝolden*, *pp. yielded, given up, delivered up, surrendered*, 1328, 1358, 1449, 1614, 2378, 3981; *paid*, 4531; *ȝolden* (*Yolden*), *pp. yielded*, 813, 2107; (*ȝolden*), 1899; *repaid*, 967; (*ȝoldyn*), 2104; *ȝold*, 3504. See *ȝeld*.
- ȝonder* (*Yonder*), *adj. yonder*, 1090.
- ȝonder*, *adv. yonder*, 702, 705; *ȝondire* (*ȝond*), 1637; (*Yonder*), 1093.
- ȝone*, *adj. yonder, yon, that*, 498, 1093, 4993. See *Yone*.
- ȝonge*, *adj. young*, 185, 594; *ȝong* (*Yong*), 761, 794.
- ȝonger*, *adj. comp. younger*, 1014; *ȝongire* (*Yonger*), 1474; *ȝongir* (*Yonger*), 1619.
- ȝope*; see *ȝape*.
- ȝoskinges*, *pl. sobbings, sobs*, 5042. A.S. *giscian*, to sob; prov. E. *yex*.
- ȝoten*, *s. giant*, 4745. A.S. *eoten*.
- ȝoure* (*Your*), *pron. your*, 1680, 1866, 2161; *ȝour*, 21, 168, &c.
- ȝour-selfe* (*Your-seluen*), *yourselves*, 1867, 2205; *ȝour-self*, 301.
- ȝouth* (*Youth*), *s. youth*, 1008, 1107; *ȝouth*, 316.
- ȝow*, *pron. you*, 15, 172, 186, &c.; (*You*), *dat. 987*; *ȝowe*, 361, 1823, 1845.
- ȝustirday*, *yesterday*, 3304.
- ȝymmes* (*Gemmys*), *pl. gems*, 2935.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS,
BREAD STREET HILL, LONDON,
Bungay, Suffolk.









(Skeat ed.)

23501

Wars of Alexander. (Skeat ed.)

PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE
OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
59 QUEEN'S PARK
TORONTO 5, CANADA

23501

